A

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE;

WITH PERPETUAL EXERCISES IN

SPEAKING AND WRITING.

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS, COLLEGES, AND PRIVATE LEARNERS.

BY

G. J. ADLER, A. M.,
LATE PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK.

"Iter autem per experientiae et rerum particularium silvas perpetuo faciendum est."
FRANCISCUS DE VERULAMIO.

BOSTON:
SANBORN, CARTER, BAZIN, & CO.
M DCCC LVIII.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1857, by
G. J. ADLER,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Massachusetts.

" Atque hoc modo inter empiricam et rationalem facultatem (quarum morosa et inauspicata divortia et repudia omnia in humana familia turbavere) conjugium verum et legitimum in perpetuum nos firmasse existimamus."

" Iter autem . . . . . per experientiae et rerum particularium silvas perpetuo faciendum est."

FRANCISCUS DE VERULAMIO, *Instaur. Magn. Praef.*

☞ A Key to the exercises of this Grammar, by the author, is in preparation, and will soon be published.

CAMBRIDGE:
ELECTROTYPED BY METCALF AND COMPANY.

NOTICE.

The author of this Grammar gives practical instruction in the Latin and German languages and literatures. Circulars containing terms, &c., may be obtained of the Publishers, and also at the bookstore of Ticknor & Fields, 135 Washington St., Boston. Applications may be addressed per Post Office.

TO

CYRUS MASON, D.D., LL.D.,

LATE PROFESSOR OF POLITICAL ECONOMY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK,

IN ASSOCIATION WITH WHOM THE AUTHOR CHERISHES THE MEMORY OF MANY A PLEASANT HOUR DEVOTED TO THE STUDY OF THE CLASSICS, AND TO WHOSE KIND ENCOURAGEMENT HE IS CHIEFLY INDEBTED FOR HIS FIRST SUCCESS AS AN INSTRUCTOR IN THE CITY OF NEW YORK,

This Volume

IS RESPECTFULLY AND GRATEFULLY INSCRIBED.

PREFACE.

THE preparation of a text-book for the study of the Latin, similar to that edited by me, some twelve years ago, on the German, has since that time been repeatedly suggested to me by various persons interested in the progress of education. Years however elapsed before I could even think of entering on such a task, partly on account of other time-absorbing occupations, partly because I felt, in common with many others, some hesitation to undertake the somewhat delicate part of treating a so-called dead language like a living organism, yet in vogue as an element of national existence. It was not until after I had completed what I considered myself bound to render, as professor of a modern language in the city of New York, that I could give the question a serious consideration; and in the winter of 1854, after my secession from the University of that city, some of my leisure hours were devoted to the collection and construction of exercises similar to those contained in my edition of Ollendorff's German Method.

These tentatives, which were commenced for recreation merely, and without any direct reference to publication, were some months after again suspended and postponed indefinitely. I had, however, proceeded far enough to convince myself perfectly of the feasibility of the plan, and felt assured, that, if the student in this practical pursuit of a new language would find a pleasure at all commensurate with the satisfaction I myself experienced in my attempts to explore and point out the road to him, my task would prove a promising and successful one.

It was under this conviction, that, in the spring of 1856, I again took up my papers, and resolved to begin the work in earnest. I accordingly revised and enlarged upon what I had already collected, until my materials amounted to ten fascicles of phrases and exercises, of

about the extent of those contained in my edition of Ollendorff's German Method. Soon after, I concluded an arrangement for the publication of a complete practical Grammar of the Latin upon the basis of these preliminary studies, and after many months of new researches both into the theory and practice of the language, the final result has been the volume now offered to the inspection of the public.

But although it was intended that the book should upon the whole pursue the course indicated by the methods on modern languages now almost exclusively in vogue, and to make constant repetition and the perpetual construction of connected sentences and phrases from English into the language to be acquired the chief exercise of the student, yet I could not make up my mind to surrender system to mere empirical practice to the extent to which this is done by Mr. Ollendorff. My aim was rather to sacrifice nothing of the theory, to leave no point of grammar unexplained or unconnected, but to make the student advance with equal pace from practice to theory, and from theory to practice, until he makes himself the master and conscious possessor of the entire structure of the language, as far at least as this can be effected by a Grammar.

I have therefore commenced with the simplest elements, and with exercises which a child even could comprehend and learn from repetition or dictation. As the course advances, and the rules of construction come gradually more and more into requisition, the syntax commences, of which I have prefixed connected portions to each lesson, to be committed either entirely or in part, as the student progresses with his exercises. I have thus succeeded in incorporating by degrees a complete syntax of the language, to the rules of which perpetual reference is made in subsequent parts of the book, and with which the student must become familiar before he can reach the end of the volume. In regard to the etymology, I have naturally treated the declension of substantives, adjectives, and pronouns in the first lessons. These, with the practice given, are soon completely in the power of the learner. But the doctrine of the gender of substantives, the declension of Greek nouns, the derivation of adjectives and adverbs, &c., which would only have embarrassed and retarded the student in the beginning, are deferred until nearly the close of the book. With the verbs I have proceeded in a similar manner. I first give only the present tense active, then in another lesson the passive, and in a third the present of deponent verbs. A general outline of the formation of tenses follows, in Lesson XXVIII., from which the

student is referred to the paradigms of conjugation on pages 664–665, which may be read and committed, as in ordinary Grammars; but in the regular order of the book, he learns and applies only one tense at a time, on which he practises until he is fit for another, and so on to the end.

I have retained the division into Lessons, as the most suitable arrangement for a book of this description. A strict separation of the etymology and syntax, and a connected scientific treatment of the principles of grammar, however desirable in themselves, would have destroyed the characteristic feature of the method, which begins with sentences instead of isolated vocables, and thus applies the simpler principles of construction at the very outset. It is however by no means intended that those divisions called Lessons should be the task invariably assigned to the student. The judgment of the teacher must in all cases determine the proper *pensum* of the learner, according to the capacity or proficiency of the latter, and that may sometimes be more, and perhaps oftener less, than the *pensum* of the book, which is not unfrequently considerably longer than the average lessons in similar manuals on modern languages.

In the use of the book care should be taken to keep the main design steadily in view, which is the writing and memorizing of the exercises appended to each lesson. In these the student applies directly the principles already acquired, and undergoes as it were a daily self-examination on what has gone before. Hence it is much more important that he should properly attend to those, than that he should be kept too long upon the mere mechanical committing of barren lists of words, or of rules which, without application, always remain a dead letter in the memory.

Much benefit can be derived from the guidance of the instructor, whose aid in reading over the advance lesson, in explaining and removing difficulties, in separating the essential points from those of minor importance, will not fail to contribute greatly to the encouragement and rapid progress of his *studiosi*. As in many lessons of the book the principles advanced are far from being exhausted in the exercises at the end, the teacher or scholar can easily expand them by adding others similar to those given, — a practice which cannot be too strongly recommended.

To insure a correct pronunciation, I give directions at the very beginning for the accentuation of Latin words, and in the examples preceding the exercises, as well as in those given under the principal rules,

the use of the accent is practically exhibited. To enable the student to accent according to the rules set forth in the first lesson, the quantity of all the words given in the vocabularies, as well as of those declined or conjugated, is indicated with almost lexicographical minuteness. In this respect I have rendered what I think is found in no other Grammar of the Latin, and am persuaded that this system, without which we can scarcely conceive of a correct pronunciation, will commend itself to the approbation of all competent to judge upon the subject.

As many of the exercises relate to the familiar talk of daily intercourse, it has sometimes become necessary to designate objects either entirely unknown to the Ancients, or known under a different form. The words employed for this purpose are either modern, as *coffea*, *tabacum*, *bibliopegus* (bookbinder), or else genuine Latin terms, but employed in a sense somewhat different from that in which they occur in classical Latinity, as, for example, *calceus* for our "shoe," *pileus* for our "hat," *speculum* for our "looking-glass," &c. To prevent misunderstanding or confusion on this subject, all the words of this description are marked, as modern or applied to objects of modern life, with an asterisk before them; e. g. **coffea*, **pileus*, &c.

I have one word to add with reference to the syntax. This important part of grammar has been treated much more comprehensively than one might suppose from its somewhat disjointed appearance. The subject of agreement, the syntax of the oblique cases, the use of the infinitive, the somewhat complicated doctrine of the subjunctive, and other equally important topics, are developed as fully as in many Grammars of larger size or greater pretensions, and it is hoped that on this point nothing of any moment will be found omitted. All the rules and remarks are illustrated by numerous examples carefully selected from the classical authors of antiquity. The examples under the rules are separated from the rest of the book by a different arrangement, the Latin on the right and the English on the left, while in the general oral exercises this order is inverted. The book is thus expected to carry its own authority in itself, and to justify the imitative combinations and constructions adopted in the exercises. The doctrine of questions is fully developed and elucidated in Lesson LXXXV.; the order or arrangement of words and sentences, in Lesson XCVII. Both these lessons the teacher will do well to consult before he sets his students to work.

In the elaboration of this volume, I have availed myself of the

best authorities which a long acquaintance with the philology of modern Germany had made familiar to me. On the etymology I have freely used Zumpt; on the syntax, the somewhat larger and completer manuals of Ramshorn and Krüger. On the orthography of words, and on the subject of quantity, I am chiefly indebted to the last edition of Dr. Georges' *Lateinisch-Deutsches Hand-Wörterbuch* (Leipsic, 1855). On the use of the particles I have, besides the authorities already mentioned, examined a number of other sources, especially the original treatise of Tursellinus. For correct Latin equivalents for the English terms and constructions employed in the book, I have diligently consulted the German-Latin Lexicons of Scheller, Kraft, and especially the more recent work of Georges. On doubtful or difficult points I have also had an opportunity to consult the more comprehensive works of Freund, Facciolati and Forcellini, and several others. From these authorities I have, however, adopted nothing but what I could justify by classical examples and analogies, and I have given no Latin equivalents for English terms or phrases, without testing them by comparing all the connections in which they are recorded as occurring in the classical writers. The subject of questions and answers I myself examined by a careful reading of the comedies of Terence, from which I had made numerous extracts before I was in possession of the sources from which I afterwards derived what I have advanced upon this point in Lesson LXXXV.

I have thus had rather a redundancy than a lack of materials on the majority of topics connected with the theory of grammar, while on the practical application of many principles, I was more than once forced to the reading of my Terence or my Cicero in order to obtain the desired light. — In this connection I have publicly to express my obligations to several gentlemen of Cambridge for their politeness in extending to me the privileges of their valuable University Library, to which I am indebted for several of my authorities.

I submit now the result of my somewhat protracted and by no means trivial labors to the candor and enlightened judgment of the classical scholars of America. As to the plan I have pursued, although it aims at nothing short of a radical change in the teaching of the language, I scarcely feel as if it needed an apology. The plan of learning a language by writing it, is not only the surest, but the only, road to its complete acquisition. Methods analogous to this, though unrecorded, must have been employed by those who have used, and who to some extent still use, the Latin as a medium of written com-

munication, and not unfrequently with an elegance that reminds us of the Ancients. Let the reader think of an Erasmus, of Ficinus, of the learned family Stephanus, of Calvin, and other luminaries of the age of the revival of letters and of the Reformation, of others who have since reflected light and strength from the manly literature of ancient Rome. I think experience will prove, that the labor of acquisition, if not easier, will at any rate be more attractive and remunerative, with the method here proposed, which makes the student assist as it were in the production of his Latin, instead of forcing him to lay up barren lists of words or unproductive rules.

I have in conclusion to add, however, that the course here pointed out does not by any means pretend to be the ultimate goal of the journey to be pursued. No method in the shape of grammar, or manual of any kind, can teach completely any language, ancient or modern. It can only be acquired by familiarity with those written monuments, which are at once the flowers and conservatories of the idioms, in which they breathe a life immortal. Of these the Romans have left us many of imperishable excellence, to which we must ever point as the most perfect exponents of their language, as the armories of the Roman mind. And these are yet to add wholesome vigor to the intellect of youth, and consolation to the failing strength of age.

G. J. ADLER.

Boston, February, 1858.

ABBREVIATIONS.

Cf.	*stands for*	confer, *compare.*
Compos.	" "	compositum, *compound, or* composita, *compounds.*
e. g.	" "	exempli gratiâ, *for example.*
i. e.	" "	id est, *that is to say.*

The asterisk (*) before a word shows it to be of modern origin, or applied to a modern object.

ADLER'S

NEW LATIN METHOD.

Lesson I. — PENSUM PRIMUM.

INTRODUCTION.

A. LATIN GRAMMAR, considered as a science, has for its object the investigation of the laws which govern the forms and the construction of the language. When destined for the practical purposes of instruction, it becomes the art of learning to read, write, and speak the Latin language with correctness.

OF THE ALPHABET.

B. The letters of the Latin alphabet are twenty-five:— A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

Letters are divided into vowels (*litterae vocales*) and consonants (*litterae consonantes*).

The sound of vowels is complete in itself, whereas that of consonants becomes distinct only in conjunction with a vowel.

OF VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

C. The simple vowels of the Latin alphabet are six: *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*. To these may be added the double vowels or diphthongs *ae* (*æ*), *ai*, *au*, *ei*, *eu*, *oe* (*œ*), *oi*, and *ui*.

1. The vowel *y* (*ypsilon*) is only found in words adopted from the Greek, as *Cyrus*, *tyrannus*, *syngraphus*.

2. The diphthongs *ei*, *oi*, and *ui* occur only in a few interjections,

such as *hei*, *eia*, *viei*, *hui*, and in *dein*, *proin*, *huic*, and *cui*, when these words are contracted into one syllable.

3. The diphthong *eu* is found in words originally Greek, and in the Latin *ceu*, *seu*, *heu*, *heus*, *neu*, and *neuter*.

4. Respecting the proper sounds of these vowels, there is at present no uniformity of usage, the common custom in vogue among the different nations of Europe being that of following the analogy of their respective vernacular idioms. This has given rise to a diversity of pronunciations, among which the English and the Continental are the most conspicuous. The following table exhibits the difference between the English and the German sounds of each of the vowels, both long (–) and short (⏑) : —

	ENGLISH SOUND.	GERMAN SOUND.
a	māter, mannă*	*ā* always *āh*, *ă* as in *am*.
e	dēlĕo, fessus	*ē* like *a* in *fate*, *ĕ* as in *fret*.
i, y,	fīnis, mirābĭlĭs	*ī* like *ee* in *keen*, *ĭ* as in *fin*.
o	corōnă, dŏmĭnus	*ō* as in *bone*, *ŏ* as in *shone*.
u	ūsŭs, dŭumvir	*ū* like *oo* in *moon*, *ŭ* the same sound short.
ae	Caesar, caestus†	like *ā* in *fate*.
ai	Māĭa,‡ aio	broader, with the sound of both vowels.
au	aurum, causa	like *ou* in *house*.
ei	eia, omneis	like *i* in *shine*.
eu	Orpheus,§ neuter	nearly like *oi* in *foil*.
oe	poena, foedus	like the French *eu* in *feu*.
ui	huic, cui ‖	like *ooi* rapidly sounded.

REMARK. — In the above examples, the learner is expected to sound the vowels as he would under similar circumstances in English words.

OF THE CONSONANTS.

D. The consonants are divided into *liquids*, *mutes*, and *double consonants*.

The liquids are *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*.

The mutes comprise the remaining simple consonants of the alphabet, with the exception of the sibilant *s*.

The mutes are again subdivided, with reference to the organ by which they are pronounced, into *labials* (*v*, *b*, *p*, *f*), *gutturals* (*g*, *c*, *k*, *qu*), and *linguals* (*d*, *t*).

---

* *A* final is generally sounded broad, like *ah*; but this is not prolonged unless the vowel is long, as *Musa* = *Musāh*, but *Musā* = *Musāh*.

† In the diphthongs *ae* and *oe* (which are also printed æ, œ) the sound of *e* (long) only is heard.

‡ But *ai* is also written *aj*, as *Achaja*, *Maja*, &c.

§ This may become, by diæresis, *Orphĕus*, gen. *Orphĕi*. The same is true of other vowels usually treated as diphthongs, as *Laïus*, *Laërtes*, &c.

‖ Pronounced in English *hike*, *kī*.

The double consonants are *x* and *z* (called *zeta*). The former combines the sounds *cs*, the latter *ds*.

E. The power of these consonants is upon the whole the same as that of the corresponding English letters. Nor are there as many international discrepancies of pronunciation as in the vowels. The following remarks will illustrate their force more particularly:—

1. *C* before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant has the hard sound of *k*, as *caput*, *cultus*, *clavis*; and before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, *ei*, *eu*, and *oe* the soft sound of *s*, as *Ceres*, *civis*, *caelebs*, *coelum*.*

2. *Ch* has the force of *k*, as *pulcher*, *machĭna*.

3. *G* before *a*, *o*, *u*, or another consonant is likewise hard, as in English, e. g. *garrŭlus*, *guttus*, *gleba*; but it is soft before *e*, *i*, *y*, or another *g*, e. g. *gener*, *gingiva*, *gypsum*, *agger*.†

4. *H* is a mere aspiration, and not regarded as a consonant. In some words it is either expressed or omitted, e. g. *have* or *ave*, *ahenum* or *aënum*, *mihi* or *mi*.

5. The ancient Romans made no distinction of form between the consonants *j*, *v* and the vowels *i*, *u*; but the same characters *I* and *V* had sometimes the power of vowels and sometimes of consonants.

6. *K* has now become a superfluous letter, and is only used in certain abbreviations, as *K.* for *Kaeso*; *Kal.* for *Calendae*.

7. *M* at the beginning or in the middle of a word is sounded as in English. But *m* final, when preceded by a vowel, was not so distinctly pronounced by the Ancients. Hence, when the following word commenced with a vowel, the *m* final was either entirely silent (in poetry always so) or regarded as a mere connecting link between the vowels.

8. *Q* occurs only in connection with *u* followed by another vowel, as *quum*, *qui*, *coquus*.

9. *S* has upon the whole the same power as in English. Among the older Latin writers, however, it seems to have had the stronger sound of *ss*, as they wrote *cassus*, *caussa*, *accusso*, &c., instead of the later *casus*, *causa*, *accuso*.

10. *Ti* and *ci* short, when followed by another vowel, are generally sounded like *shee*, as in *Horatius*, *nuntius*, *justitia*; *Fabricius*, *novicius*, &c. But *ti* retains its proper sound, *a*) when the *i* is long, as in *istīus*, *tollus*; *b*) when the *t* is preceded by an *s*, *x*, or another *t*, as in *ostium*, *mixtio*, *Bruttii*; *c*) in words originally Greek, as *Miltiades*, *Aegyptius*; *d*) before the *er* of the infinitive passive, as *nitier*, *flectier*, &c.; *e*) at the beginning of a word, as in *tiara*.

---

* It is, however, probable that the Romans once sounded the letter *c* always like *k*, as the Greeks did. But the above distinction is too old and general to be disregarded.

† But in words of Greek origin it retains the hard sound of the original *γ*, as *gigas*, *gigno*, &c.

OF THE HIATUS.

F. The concurrence of two vowels, either in the middle of a word or at the close of one and the beginning of another, gives rise to what is called an *hiatus.* This the Romans avoided, especially in poetry, *a*) by the contraction of the two vowels into one long one, as in *audīsti* for *audiisti*, *deprēndo* for *deprehendo*,* &c.; *b*) by *Synaeresis*, i. e. by pronouncing the two vowels rapidly like a diphthong, as *deinde*, *huic*, *omnia*; and *c*), when the hiatus occurred between two words, by the *elision* (i. e. by the suppression in reading) of the final vowel of the first word, as in *atque ego*, *sapere aude*, which as thus elided read *atqu' ego*, *saper' aude.*

OF SYLLABLES.

G. A syllable may consist either of a single vowel or diphthong, or of the union of a vowel or diphthong with one or more consonants, e. g. *o-vum*, *du-o*, *i-ste*, *con-stans.*

1. The Latin language generally tolerates no more than two consonants at the end of a syllable or word; when there are three, the last is always an *s*, as in *stirps.*

2. Nor does a syllable commonly commence with more than two consonants, except where at the beginning of a word *sc*, *sp*, and *st* are followed by an *r*, or where in the middle of a word one of the letters *c*, *p*, or *s* is followed by a mute and liquid, as *scri-ptor*, *spre-tus*, *stri-ctim*; *do-ctrina*, *clau-strum*, *i-sthmus*, *magi-stri*, *corru-ptrix.*

3. The division of words into syllables may be regulated by the following laws: —

a) A consonant between two vowels belongs to the last, as *e-go*, *pa-ter*, *so-ror.*

b) The consonants which may begin a Greek or Latin word (according to Remark 2) belong together in the division of a word into its component syllables, as *pa-tris*, *i-gnis*, *a-ctus*, *o-mnis*, *i-psi*, *pa-stor*, *po-sco*, *fau-stus*, *sce-ptrum*, *ca-strum*, &c.

c) Combinations of consonants which never occur at the beginning

* The *h*, not being regarded as a consonant, does not prevent the hiatus. In verse this is equally true of *m* final, so that *multum ille et* is pronounced *mult' ill' et*, &c. In a similar manner the older Latin poets elided the final *s* of the terminations *us* and *is*, but only before consonants, as *nuntius' mortis* for *nuntius mortis*, &c.

of a word are treated according to the analogy of the rest, e. g. *Daphne, rhy-thmus, smara-gdus*, &c.

d) Compounds are usually divided according to the parts of which they are composed, as *ab-est, abs-condo, inter-sum, ob-tuli, red-eo*, &c. But where the composition is uncertain or obscure, or when the first component has lost a part of its original termination, the division is effected as in simple words, e. g. *am-bages, ani-madverto* (contracted for *animum adverto*), *long-aevus, po-tes* (for *potis* + *es*), &c.

4. Words consisting of one syllable are called *monosyllables;* those of two, *dissyllables;* and those of more than two, *polysyllables.*

OF THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

H. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in its pronunciation. It is upon this principle that the entire fabric of Latin versification depends.

Every syllable is either *long* (–), or *short* (⏑),* or *common* (⏓), i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short, as *amāvi, legĕrĕ, volūcris.*

1. A syllable is long *by nature*, when its vowel is naturally long, as *causa, concīdo;* it is long *by position*, when its vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant, as *stirpis, sermo, discessit.*

2. All diphthongs and such simple vowels as have originated in a contraction are by nature long, as *caedo, proelium, audax; cōgo* (from *coăgo*), *bōbus* (for *bovibus*).

3. A vowel before another vowel is commonly short, as *mĕus, dĕa, pĭus, vĕho.*

4. A vowel before a mute and liquid is common, as *lūcrum, tenĕbra, tonĭtrus.*

5. The quantity of the simple vowels under other circumstances can only be determined by the authority of the poets, and is commonly given in the Lexicon. The rules respecting the quantity of final syllables, &c. belong to Prosody.

OF THE ACCENT.

I. Accent is the peculiar tone or emphasis with which a particular syllable of a word is uttered.

Every Latin word has one principal or leading accent, and only one.

The leading accent is either the *circumflex* (^) or the *acute* (′).

* The short syllable being taken as the unit of measure, the pronunciation of a long syllable would occupy double the time of a short one.

There is also a subordinate accent called the *grave* (`). But this denotes rather the absence of the principal accent, and is scarcely used. In words of several syllables, the last syllable but one is called the *penult* or *penultĭma* (sc. *syllăba*), and the last but two, the *antepenult* or *antepenultĭma*.

The place of the accent is determined by the following laws: —

1. Monosyllables have the circumflex, when their vowel is long by nature, and the acute, when their vowel is short by nature or long by position, as *flŏs, spês, mŏns, fōns*, but *ărs, dŭx, fax, pars*.

2. In words of two syllables the accent is always on the penult, and it is *a*) circumflex, when the penult is long by nature and the last syllable short, as *fûrĭs, lūcĕ, mūsă, spīnă;* but *b*) acute under all other circumstances,* as *fŏcŭs, hŏmŏ, vīllă, ăxĭs, dĕūs, mūsā*.

3. Words of three or more syllables are accented either on the penult or on the antepenult: —

a) When the penult is short, the antepenult has invariably the acute, as *accéndĕre, caedĕre, hŏmĭnēs*.

b) When the penult is long by nature and the last syllable short, the former has the circumflex, as *humânŭs, amâssĕ, audīsse*.

c) When the penult is long by position, or when the last syllable is likewise long, it has the acute, as *modéstŭs, edúctus, humánīs*.

4. The antepenult is the limit of the accent, and polysyllables are all treated like words of three, e. g. *poëmătĭbus, Constantinŏpŏlis, sollicitudĭnĭbus*.

5. Some words are entirely unaccented, as *ne, que, ve, ce*. But these never appear alone, being always appended to other words, of which they often change the place of the accent,† e. g. *musáque, musâque, habêsne, pleráque*, &c.

6. The quantity of a word being given (as it commonly is in Lexicons), its accent can be easily determined according to one of the above rules. — The beginner should carefully distinguish between quantity and accent, which in Latin are not only distinct, but often apparently at variance. The former is the principle of versification, the latter the indispensable condition of a correct pronunciation and the very soul of living discourse.

OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

J. The words of the Latin language, arranged according to their signification, may be reduced to nine classes, usually called *parts of speech*, of which five are inflected, and four invariable.

---

* That is, 1) when both syllables are short (*fŏcŭs, hŏmŏ*) ; 2) when the first is short and the second long (*dĕūs, mĕūs*) ; 3) when the first is long by position only (*ăxĭs, vīllă*) ; 4) when both are long (*mūsā*).

† This is generally thrown back upon the next syllable preceding them.

1. The declinable parts of speech are: *Substantives* or *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, and *Participles*.

2. The indeclinable are: *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*. All these are termed *Particulae* or *Particles*.

3. To these classes may be added the *Gerunds* and *Supines*, two forms of verbal substantives peculiar to the Latin.

OF DECLENSION.

K. Nouns and adjectives are said to be *declined*, and their inflection is called *Declension*. Verbs are said to be *conjugated*, and their inflection is called *Conjugation*.

In the declension of substantives and adjectives, the relations of *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case* are indicated by certain changes of termination.

Latin nouns have three genders, the *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*; and two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*.

They have six cases: the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

The Nominative is, as in English, employed as the subject of a finite verb.

The Accusative corresponds upon the whole to the English Objective.

The remaining cases serve to express various relations, which in English are usually denoted by such prepositions as *of*, *to*, *for*, *with*, *by*, &c.

There are five different modes of inflecting substantives, called the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth declensions*. These are distinguished from each other by the termination of the genitive singular, which in the first declension is *ae*, in the second *i*, in the third *is*, in the fourth *ūs*, and in the fifth *ēi*.

Lesson II. — PENSUM ALTĔRUM.

OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

A. The first declension comprises all substantives and adjectives which form their genitive in *ae*. The nominative of such of these words as are of purely Roman origin ends in *ă*, that of a few Greek words in *ē*, *ēs*, and *ās*. Those in *ă* and *ē* are mostly feminine, the rest are masculine. The singular of a noun

in *ă* in connection with *mĕa*, "my," and *tŭa*, "thy" or "your," is thus inflected: —

NOM. *my paper*	mĕă chartă
GEN. *of my paper*	mĕae chartae
DAT. *to* or *for my paper*	mĕae chartae
ACC. *my paper*	mĕăm chartăm
VOC. *O my paper*	mĕă chartă
ABL. *with* or *by my paper*	mĕā chartā.
NOM. *your table*	tŭă mensă
GEN. *of your table*	tŭae mensae
DAT. *to* or *for your table*	tŭae mensae
ACC. *your table*	tŭăm mensăm
VOC. *O your table*	tŭă mensă
ABL. *with, from,* or *by your table*	tŭā mensā.

So decline *taenĭa, fascĭa, hōra, penna.*

REMARK. — The *a* of the ablative of the first declension is always long, and sometimes printed *â*. — But in all other cases of words declined, the final *a* is generally short, as *chartă* (Nom.); *candelabră*, candlesticks; *templă*, temples.

N. B. — In the vocabularies of this Grammar the quantity of every Latin word will be given, and the paradigms of inflection will show the quantity of the different case-terminations. From these data the student will accent according to the Rules of Lesson I., page 6. Examples of the application of these principles of accentuation are furnished in the phrases of each Lesson.

Have you?	Habêsne?* Num hábēs? / Éstne tíbi? An hábēs?
Yes, Sir, I have.	Ítaést,† dómĭne, hábĕo. / Sánē quídem, dómĭne,ést.
Have you the hat?	Habêsne (tû) pílĕum?‡ / Éstne tíbi pílĕus?

* In asking questions, the Romans usually employed certain signs of interrogation, of which the most common are the enclitic *ne* (always affixed either to the verb or to some other word of the sentence), the particles *nŭm, ĕn, ecquĭd, numquĭd, utrum, nonnĕ*, &c. — The enclitic *ne* and *ecquid* can be used in questions *of every description*, whether the expected answer be affirmative or negative; *num* and *numquid* only when it is expected to be "no"; *nonne*, only when it is to be "yes"; *an* and *utrum* chiefly in double questions.

† The most current Latin adverbs corresponding to our English "yes" are: *ĕtĭam* (= even, even so), *vērō* (indeed), *rectĕ* (you are right), *certĕ* (certainly), *ītă, ītă est, sic est* (it is so), *sānĕ* or *sānĕ quĭdem* (indeed, surely), *immo* or *immo vērō* (yes, yes). But the Romans frequently reply by a simple repetition of the verb or of the emphatic word of the inquiry, e. g. here with a simple *Hăbĕo* and *Est*. — The ceremonious use of a word like our "Sir" was unknown to the ancients. To *dŏmĭne*, however, the vocative of *dominus* (master, lord), there can be no objection.

‡ The Romans have no article. Its place is in certain cases supplied by a

Yes, Sir, I have the hat.	{ Sic ést, dómine, hábeo pĭlĕum. { Étiam, dómine, ést mihi pĭlĕus.

B. Obs. The verb *hăbĕo*, being transitive, is followed by the accusative of the object, and the neuter verb *est* by the nominative.

The pen.	*Penna, ae, *f.*
The ribbon.	Taenĭa, ae, *f.*; fascĭa, ae, *f.*
The table.	Mensa, ae, *f.*
The paper.	*Charta, ae, *f.*
The hat.	{ *Pĭlĕus, i, *m.*, *Acc.* pĭlĕum, *or* { *Pilĕum, i, *n.* (*Nom.* & *Acc.*)
The sugar	Sacchărum, i, *n.* (*Nom.* & *Acc.*)
The salt.	{ Săl,* *gen.* sălis, *m.*, *acc.* sălem. { Săl, *gen.* sălis, *n.*, *acc.* săl.

C. Obs. Words of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative, singular and plural, always alike.

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
My.	{ Nom.	*mĕŭs*	*mĕă*	*mĕŭm.*
	{ Acc.	*mĕŭm*	*mĕăm*	*mĕŭm.*

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Thy (your).	{ Nom.	*tŭŭs*	*tŭă*	*tŭŭm.*
	{ Acc.	*tŭŭm*	*tŭăm*	*tŭŭm.*

D. Rule. Adjectives and adjective pronouns agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case. Thus: —

My sugar.	Méum sácchărum (*Nom.* & *Acc.*).
My hat.	{ Nom. pĭlĕus méus (*m.*), pĭlĕum méum (*n.*). { Acc. pĭlĕum méum, *or* méŭm pĭlĕum.
My pen.	{ Nom. méa pénna, *or* pénna méa. { Acc. méam pénnam, *or* pénnam méam.
Your salt.	{ Nom. sâl túum (*or m.* túus). { Acc. sâl túum, *or* túum sâl.

Have you my hat?	Habêsne méum pĭlĕum?
Yes, Sir, I have your hat.	{ Véro, dómine, pĭlĕum túum hábĕo.
Have you my ribbon?	Habêsne taénĭam méam?
I have your ribbon.	Hábeo túam taénĭam.

---

demonstrative pronoun, by *unus*, one, *aliquis*, some one, &c. But ordinarily the distinctions expressed by our articles must be mentally supplied from the context. — The learner will also notice the omission of the pronouns *ĕgŏ*, *tū*, which the Latin language employs only for the sake of emphasis or contrast.

* The substantives *pĭlĕus* and *săl* have two forms, i. e. the masculine and neuter, without any difference of signification.

Have you the pen?	Éstne tíbĭ pénnă? / Habêsne pénnam?
I have the pen.	Ést míhĭ pénnă. / Háběo pénnam.

EXERCISE 1.

Have you the table? — Yes, Sir, I have the table. — Have you my table? — I have your table. — Have you your pen? — I have my pen. — Have you the sugar? — I have the sugar. — Have you my sugar? — I have your sugar — Have you the paper? — I have the paper. — Have you your paper? — I have my paper. — Have you the salt? — I have the salt. — Have you my salt? — I have your salt.

Lesson III. — PENSUM TERTIUM.

OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

A. The second declension comprises all substantives and adjectives which form their genitive in ī. The terminations of the nominative are *ŭs* (generally masculine, sometimes feminine), *ĕr*, *ĭr* (masculine),* and *ŭm* (neuter). Examples: —

	Mĕus dŏmĭnus, *m.*, *my master.*		Lĭber tūus, *m.*, *your book.*	
NOM.	*my master*	mĕŭs dŏmĭnŭs	*your book*	lĭbĕr tūŭs
GEN.	*of my master*	mĕī dŏmĭnī	*of your book*	librī tūī
DAT.	*to my master*	mĕō dŏmĭnō	*to your book*	librō tūō
ACC.	*my master*	mĕŭm dŏmĭnŭm	*your book*	librūm tūŭm
VOC.	*O my master*	mī† dŏmĭnĕ	*O your book*	lĭbĕr tūe
ABL.	*with my master*	mĕō dŏmĭnō.	*with your book*	librō tūō.

Săcchărum bŏnum, *n.*, *good sugar.*

NOM.	*the good sugar*	sacchărŭm bŏnŭm
GEN.	*of the good sugar*	sacchărī bŏnī
DAT.	*to the good sugar*	sacchărō bŏnō
ACC.	*the good sugar*	sacchărŭm bŏnŭm
VOC.	*O good sugar*	sacchărŭm bŏnŭm
ABL.	*with the good sugar*	sacchărō bŏnō.

---

* To these must be added one adjective in *ur*, viz. *satur*, *satŭra*, *satŭrum*, sated, satisfied.

† This vocative is sometimes *mĕus* and sometimes *mi*, after the analogy of proper names in *ius*, which have always *i*, as, *Vĭrgĭlius*, *Vĭrgĭli*; *Hŏrātius*, *Hŏrāti*; so also *fĭlius*, *fĭli*; *gĕnius*, *gĕni*.

Like *domĭnus* decline *pīlĕus*, *pannus*, *ĕquus*, *calcĕus*, and all nouns and adjectives of this declension which end in *ŭs*. After the manner of *līber*, decline *āger*, *culter*, *fāber*, *măgister*, &c.;* like *sacchărum*, all neuters in *ŭm*, as *aurum*, *cŏrĭum*, *lignum*, *plumbum*, &c. (Cf. Lesson IV.)

REMARK 1. The final *i* of the genitive of this declension, and of Latin words generally, is *long;* except in *mĭhi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, where it is common (ĭ).

2. The final *o* of the dative and ablative singular of this declension is always long. But in Latin words generally it is common, as *sermŏ*, *amŏ*, *hăbĕŏ*.

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Which (of many)?	NOM.	*Quī(s)*,	*quae*,	*quŏd* or *quĭd*.
	ACC.	*Quĕm*,	*quăm*,	*quŏd* or *quĭd*.
Which (of two)?	NOM.	*Ŭtĕr*,	*utră*,	*utrŭm*.
	ACC.	*Utrŭm*,	*utrăm*,	*utrŭm*.
Good.	NOM.	Bŏnus,	ă,	ŭm.
	ACC.	Bŏnŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.
Great, large, big.	NOM.	Magnŭs,	ă,	ŭm.
	ACC.	Magnŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.
Bad.	NOM.	Mălus,	ă,	ŭm.
	ACC.	Mălum,	ăm,	ŭm.
Bad, i. e. worthless.	NOM.	Vīlis,	vīlis,	vīlĕ.
	ACC.	Vīlĕm,	vīlĕm,	vīlĕ.
	Or: — Nēquăm (*indeclinable*).†			
Beautiful, fine.	NOM.	Pulchĕr,	pulchră,	pulchrŭm.
	ACC.	Pulchrŭm,	pulchrăm,	pulchrŭm.
	Also: — Formōsŭs, ă, ŭm			
Ugly.	NOM.	Turpis,	turpis,	turpĕ,
	ACC.	Turpĕm,	turpĕm,	turpĕ.

My good sugar. Sácchărum méum bónum (*Nom.* & *Acc.*)
Your bad sugar. Sáccharum túum vilĕ (nêquam).

The fine table (paper, ribbon).	NOM.	Ménsa (chárta, taénĭa) púlchra.
	ACC.	Ménsam (chártam, taénĭam) púlchram.
The ugly hat (book, salt).	NOM.	Pílĕus (líber, sâl) túrpis.
	ACC.	Pílĕum (líbrum, sálem) túrpem.
Which hat? Which paper?	NOM.	Quís pílĕus? Quaĕ‡ chárta?
	ACC.	Quém pílĕum? Quám chártam?
Which sugar?	Quód sácchărum? (*Nom.* & *Acc.*)	
	Quíd sácchări? (*Nom.* & *Acc.*)	

* Some nouns (and adjectives) in *er* retain the *e* in the genitive, and have *ĕri* instead of *ri*, as *gĕner*, *gĕnĕri*, a son-in-law; *pŭer*, *-ĕri*, a boy; *liber*, *-ĕri*, free, &c. — *Vir*, a man, has *viri*, and so its compounds, as *decemvir*, *-viri*; *levir*, *-viri*.

† *Mălus* is said of persons, and is *morally bad;* *vilis* chiefly of things *worthless*; *nēquam* of persons and things both.

‡ Diphthongs receive the accent upon the second vowel.

B. Obs. The interrogative *quod* is always used adjectively, and agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case; *quid* is more like the English *what?* and is either used independently or has its noun in the genitive. — The masculine *which?* is more commonly *qui* than *quis* when a substantive is expressed with it.

Have you good sugar?	Éstne tíbĭ sácchărum bónum?
Yes, Sir, I have good sugar.	Sánē, dómine, ést mĭhĭ sáccharum bónum.
Have you the fine ribbon?	Habêsne taénĭam púlchrŭm?
I have the fine ribbon.	Hábĕo taénĭam púlchram.
Which hat have you?	Quí ést tíbĭ pílĕus? / Quém pílĕum hábēs?
I have my ugly hat.	Pílĕum méum túrpem hábĕo.
Which ribbon have you?	Quaê ést tíbĭ taénĭa? / Quám hábēs taénĭam?
I have your fine ribbon.	Taénĭam túam púlchram* hábĕo.

EXERCISE 2.

Have you the fine hat? — Yes, Sir, I have the fine hat. — Have you my bad hat? — I have your bad hat. — Have you the bad salt? — I have the bad salt. — Have you your good salt? — I have my good salt. — Which salt have you? — I have your good salt. — Which sugar have you? — I have my good sugar. — Have you my good sugar? — I have your good sugar. — Which table have you? — I have the fine table. — Have you my fine table? — I have your fine table. — Which paper have you? — I have the bad paper. — Have you my ugly paper? — I have your ugly paper. — Which bad hat have you? — I have my bad hat. — Which fine ribbon have you? — I have your fine ribbon. — Have you my fine pen? — I have your fine pen.

Lesson IV. — PENSUM QUARTUM.

OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A. Substantives and adjectives of the third declension have their genitive in *ĭs*. The terminations of the nominative are numerous, some ending in one of the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, and others in one of the consonants *c*, (*d*), *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. This declension comprises nouns of every gender.

---

* In writing his exercises, the learner should be careful to select the proper case and gender of the adjectives, which must always correspond with that of the nouns with which they are to be connected. In this and the following lessons, the nominative and accusative are the only cases used.

Nouns ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *l*,* and *t* are neuter.

Nouns in *o*, *or*, *os*, and *eus* are generally masculine, but sometimes of other genders.

Those in *as*, *aus*, *es*, *is*, *ys*, *bs*, *ns*, and *ps* are generally feminine, sometimes masculine.

Those in *er* and *n* are masculine and neuter.

Lăpĭs, *m.*, *a stone.*		Vestĭs, *f.*, *a garment.*	
Nom.	*a stone*	lăpĭs	*the garment*	vestĭs
Gen.	*of a stone*	lăpĭdĭs	*of the garment*	vestĭs
Dat.	*to a stone*	lăpĭdī	*to the garment*	vestī
Acc.	*a stone*	lăpĭdĕm	*the garment*	vestĕm
Voc.	*O stone*	lăpĭs	*O the garment*	vestĭs
Abl.	*with a stone*	lăpĭdĕ.	*with the garment*	vestĕ.

Cănis, *m.* & *f.*,† *the dog.*		*Tĭbĭālĕ, *n.*, *the stocking.*	
Nom.	*the dog*	cănĭs	*the stocking*	tĭbĭālĕ
Gen.	*of the dog*	cănĭs	*of the stocking*	tĭbĭālĭs
Dat.	*to the dog*	cănī	*to the stocking*	tĭbĭālī
Acc.	*the dog*	cănĕm	*the stocking*	tĭbĭālĕ
Voc.	*O dog*	cănĭs	*O stocking*	tĭbĭālĕ
Abl.	*with the dog*	cănĕ.	*with the stocking*	tĭbĭālī.‡

Sartŏr, *m.*, *the tailor.*		Căpŭt, *n.*, *the head.*	
Nom.	*the tailor*	sartŏr	*the head*	căpŭt
Gen.	*of the tailor*	sartōrĭs	*of the head*	căpĭtĭs
Dat.	*to the tailor*	sartōrī	*to the head*	căpĭtī
Acc.	*the tailor*	sartōrĕm	*the head*	căpŭt
Voc.	*O tailor*	sartŏr	*O the head*	căpŭt
Abl.	*with the tailor*	sartōrĕ.	*with the head*	căpĭtĕ.

Frātĕr, *m.*, *the brother.*		Sāl, *m.* & *n.*, *the salt.*	
Nom.	*the brother*	frātĕr	*the salt*	sāl *neut.*
Gen.	*of the brother*	frātrĭs	*of the salt*	sālĭs
Dat.	*to the brother*	frātrī	*to the salt*	sālī
Acc.	*the brother*	frātrĕm	*the salt*	sālĕm, sāl
Voc.	*O brother*	frātĕr	*O salt*	sāl
Abl.	*with the brother*	frātrĕ.	*with the salt*	sālĕ *or* -I.

* Nouns in *l* are generally neuter, but sometimes masculine.

† Nouns which are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine, according to the context, are said to be of the *common gender*. So *adolescens* and *juvĕnis*, m. & f., a young man or woman; *conjux*, m. & f., a husband or a wife; *infans*, m. & f., an infant; and a number of others. Nouns of which the gender is unsettled are said to be of the *doubtful gender*; as *dies*, m. & f., a day; *penus*, m., f., & n., provisions.

‡ Neuters ending in *ē*, *āl*, and *ār* have ī in the ablative instead of *ē*; as

REMARK. The final *e* of the ablative of the third declension is always short, and the final *i* long.

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
It.	Nom.	*Is*	*ĕă*	*ĭd.*
	Acc.	*Eŭm*	*ĕăm*	*ĭd.*

B. Obs. The pronoun *is, ea, id* must be put in the same case and gender as the substantive for which it stands.

Not; no.	*Nōn; nōn vērō, mĭnīmĕ.*
I have not.	Nôn hábĕo.
No, Sir.	Nôn (mínīme) véro, dómīne.
Have you the table?	Habêsne ménsam?
No, Sir, I have it not.	Mínīme, dómīne; (éam) nôn hábĕo. / Nôn hábĕo, dómīne, nôn.
Have you the hat?	An hábēs pílĕum?
No, Sir, I have it not.	Mínīme, dómīne; (éum) nôn hábĕo.
Have you the sugar?	Num hábēs sácchărum?
I have it not.	Nôn hábĕo.

D. Obs. The English idiom requires here *id non habeo.* In Latin, however, the pronoun *is, ea, id* is frequently omitted, when it would have to stand in the same case as the noun to which it relates.

The coat.	*Tŏga, ae, *f.*
The cloth.	Pannus, i, *m.*
The horse.	Equus, i, *m.*
The shoe.	*Calcĕus, i, *m.*
The thread.	Fĭlum, i, *n.*
The candlestick.	Candēlābrum, i, *n.*
The wood.	Lignum, i, *n.*
The leather.	Cŏrĭum, i, *n.*
The lead.	Plumbum, i, *n.*
The gold.	Aurum, i, *n.*

Of.	*E, ex.*
Of gold.	Ex aúrō, aúrĕus, a, um.
Of cloth.	E pánnō.

E. Obs. The preposition *e* or *ex* is followed by the ablative. *E* can be put before consonants only, *ex* before vowels and consonants both.

---

mārĕ, mări; ănimăl, ănimālĭ; calcăr, calcări. Except *săl, făr, baccăr, jŭbăr, hĕpăr,* and *nectăr,* which retain the *ĕ.*

F. Obs. The material of which anything is made may either be expressed by the ablative of a substantive with *e* or *ex*, or by means of an adjective in *ĕus*. Thus:—

Wooden *or* of wood.	Ligněus, a, um.
Paper — of paper.	Chartācĕus, a, um.
Leather — of leather.	Scortĕus, a, um, *or* e cŏrio.
Leaden — of lead.	Plumbĕus, a, um, *or* e plumbo.
Linen — of linen.	Lintĕus, a, um.
Stone — of stone.	Lapidĕus, a, um. Saxĕus, a, um.
Pretty.	Bellus, a, um. Venustus, a, um.
The paper hat.	Nom. Pīlĕus chartācĕus. Acc. Pīlĕum chartācĕum.
The wooden table.	Nom. Mēnsa lignĕa. Acc. Mēnsam lignĕam.
The linen (thread) stocking.	Nom. & Acc. Tibiāle līntĕum.
The golden candlestick.	Nom. & Acc. Candēlābrum aurĕum *or* ex aŭro.
The horse of stone.	Nom. Equus lapidĕus. Acc. Equum lapidĕum.
The golden ribbon.	Nom. Taenĭa aurĕa. Acc. Taenĭam aurĕam.
The cloth coat.	Nom. Tŏga e* pānno. Acc. Tŏgam e pānno.
Have you the paper hat?	Num hābēs pīlĕum chartācĕum?
No, Sir, I have it not.	Eum nōn hābĕo, dŏmĭne, nōn. Nōn, dŏmĭne; eum nōn hābĕo.
Have you the stone table?	An hābēs mēnsam lapidĕam?
I have it not.	(Eam) nōn hābĕo.

OF THE GENITIVE OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

G. From the paradigms of this lesson it will be perceived, that substantives of this declension vary considerably as to the manner, in which they assume the characteristic termination of the genitive. The following rules are intended to give the learner some insight into the extent of this variation.†

1. Nouns in *a* change *a* into *ătis*, as *pŏēma, pŏēmătis*, n., a poem.
2. Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*, as *cŭbīlĕ, cŭbīlis*, n., a couch.

* Prepositions before their cases are not accented.

† These rules, though not directly connected with the exercises of this lesson, are yet recommended to the careful attention of the student.

3. Those in *i** are generally indeclinable, but sometimes have *ītos*, as *hydromĕli*, *hydromĕlītos*, n., mead.

4. Those in *y* add *ŏs*, as *mĭsў*, *mĭsўos*, n., vitriol.

5. *O* commonly becomes *ōnis*, as *sermo*, *sermōnis*, m., speech. But *do* and *go* become *dīnis* and *gĭnis*, as *grando*, *grandĭnis*, f., hail; *origo*, *orĭgĭnis*, f., origin.†

6. Nouns in *c*, *d*, *l*, *n* simply add *is*, as *hālĕc*, *hālēcis*, n. & f., a sort of pickle; *Davĭd*, *Davĭdis*, m., a man's name; *cŭbĭtal*, *cŭbĭtālis*, n., a cushion; *ren*, *rēnis*, m., the reins.‡

7. Those in *ar*, *er*, *or*, and *ur* commonly add likewise *is*, as *nectar*, *nectărĭs*, n., nectar; *ansĕr*, *ansĕrĭs*, m., a goose; *lector*, *lectōrĭs*, m., a reader; *sulphŭr*, *sulphŭrĭs*, n., sulphur.§

8. Those in *as* generally change *as* into *ātis*, as *vērĭtas*, *vērĭtātis*, f., truth.‖

9. The only nouns in *aes* are *aes*, n., brass, and *praes*, m., bondsman, which have *aeris* and *praedis*.

10. Nouns in *aus* have *audis*, as *laus*, *laudis*, f., praise; *fraus*, *fraudis*, f., fraud.

11. Those in *es* generally change *es* into *is*, as *fāmes*, *fāmis*, f., hunger; *rūpes*, *rūpis*, f., a rock; but sometimes into *ēdis*, *ĭtis*, or *eris*, as *haeres*, *haerēdis*, m., an heir; *miles*, *mĭlĭtis*, m., a soldier; *Cĕres*, *Cĕrĕris*, f., the goddess Ceres.

12. Nouns in *is* have commonly *is*, as *apis*, *is*, f., a bee; *ovis*, *is*, f., a sheep; but sometimes also *ĕris*, *ĭnis*, *ĭtis*, or *ĭdis*, as *pulvis*, *pulvĕris*, m., dust; *sanguis*, *sanguĭnis*, m., blood; *lāpis*, *lāpĭdis*, m., a stone; *Quĭris*, *Quĭrītis*, m., a Roman. — *Sēmis*, m., one half, has *sēmissis*.

13. Those in *os* change *os* into *ōtis*, as *săcerdos*, *-ōtis*, m., a priest; *nĕpos*, *-ōtis*, m., a grandson; but also into *ōdis*, *ōis*, and *ŏris*, as *custos*, *-ōdis*, m., a keeper; *hĕros*, *-ōis*, m., a hero; *rōs*, *rōris*, m., dew.¶

14. The termination *us* becomes *ŏris*, *ĕris*, *ūris*, *ūdis* (*ūtis*), or *ŏdis*, as *corpus*, *-ŏris*, n., a body; *ŏpus*, *-ĕris*, n., a work; *crūs*, *crūris*, n.,

---

* Nouns in *i* and *y* are Greek, and so are their genitives *ītos* and *yos*.

† A number of other nouns in *o* have likewise *inis*, as *hŏmo*, a man; *nĕmo*, nobody; *Apollo*, &c. — *Căro*, flesh, f., has *carnis*, and *Anio*, m., the name of a river, *Anĭēnis*.

‡ But *lac*, n., milk, has *lactis*, and those in *men* have *mĭnis*, as *nūmĕn*, *nūmĭnis*, n., the deity. Greek nouns in *on* have *onis* and *onis*, as *icŏn*, *icŏnis*, f., an image; *Achĕrōn*, *-ontis*, m., name of a river.

§ But those in *ber* and *ter* have *bris* and *tris*, as *Octōber*, *Octōbris*; *păter*, *patris*, m., a father. Some in *ur* have *ŏris*, as *ebur*, *ebŏris*, n., ivory, &c. — *Jĕcur*, n., the liver, has *jĕcŭris* or *jĕcĭnŏris*, and *hĕpar*, n., the liver, *hĕpătis* or *hĕpătos*; *cŏr*, n., the heart, has *cordis*; *iter*, n., a journey, *ĭtĭnĕris*, and *Jūpiter*, m., *Jŏvis*.

‖ Greek nouns in *as* have *antis* and *ădis* (or *ădos*), as *gigas*, *gigantis*, m., a giant; *lampas*, *lampădis* or *lampădos*, f., a lamp. Other exceptions are: *ās*, *assis*, m., a coin; *mās*, *māris*, m., a male; *vās*, *vădis*, m., a surety, and *vās*, *vāsis*, m., a vessel.

¶ *Ōs*, n., the mouth, has *ōris*, but *ŏs*, n., a bone, has *ossis*. The genitive of *bŏs*, m. & f., an ox *or* cow, is *bŏvis*.

the leg; *incus, -ūdis*, f., an anvil; *sălus, -ūtis*, f., safety; *trĭpūs, -ŏdis*, m., a tripod.

15. Greek nouns in *eus* have *ĕos*, as *Orpheus, Orphĕos*, &c

16. Nouns in *ls*, *ns*, and *rs* change *s* into *tis* or *dis*, as *puls, -tis*, f., a sort of pap; *pars, -tis*, f., a part; *glans, -dis*, f., any kernel-fruit; *serpens, -tis*, f., a serpent

17. Those in *bs*, *ps*, and *ms* have *bis*, *pis*, and *mis*, as *urbs, -bis*, f., a city; *stirps, -pis*, m. & f., offspring; *hiems, hiĕmis*, f, winter.*

18. The only nouns in *t* are *căput, căpĭtis*, m., the head, and its compounds, *occĭput, -ĭtis*, &c.

19. Nouns in *x* change this letter into *cis* or *gis*, as *vox, vōcis*, f., the voice; *călix, călĭcis*, m., a cup; *rex, rēgis*, m., a king; *codex, codĭcis*, m., a book. — But *nix*, f., snow, has *nivis; nox*, f., night, *noctis; sĕnex*, adj., old, *sĕnis* or *sĕnĭcis;* and *sŭpellex*, f., furniture, *sŭpellectĭlis.*

EXERCISE 3.

Have you the wooden table? — No, Sir, I have it not. — Which table have you? — I have the stone table. — Have you my golden candlestick? — I have it not. — Which stocking have you? — I have the thread stocking. — Have you my thread stocking? — I have not your thread stocking. — Which coat have you? — I have my cloth coat. — Which horse have you? — I have the wooden horse. — Have you my leathern shoe? — I have it not. — Have you the leaden horse? — I have it not. — Have you your good wooden horse? — I have it not. — Which wood have you? — I have your good wood. — Have you my good gold? — I have it not. — Which gold have you? — I have the good gold. — Which stone have you? — I have your fine stone. — Which ribbon have you? — I have your golden ribbon. — Have you my fine dog? — I have it. — Have you my ugly horse? — I have it not.

Lesson V. — PENSUM QUINTUM.

OF THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

A. Adjectives are inflected like substantives of the first, second, and third declensions. Those in *ŭs, ă, ŭm* and *ĕr, ă, ŭm* belong to the first and second declension; those in *ĕr, ĭs, ĕ*, those in *ĭs, ĭs, ĕ*, and all the adjectives of one termination, to the third.

---

* But the adjective *caelebs*, single, has *caelĭbis*, and the compounds of *ceps* have *ĭpis*, as *princeps, -ĭpis*, the foremost. The genitive of *anceps*, doubtful, is *ancipĭtis.*

B. Some adjectives have a special termination for each of the three genders (e. g. *bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm, ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ*), some have one common form for the masculine and feminine (e. g. *vīlĭs*, m. & f., *vīlĕ*, n.), and others have but one ending (in the nominative singular) for every gender (e. g. *fēlix, dīvĕs*, &c.). The following paradigms exhibit the declension of *bonus, pulcher*, and *turpis*, in the singular.

Bŏnus, bŏnă, bŏnŭm, *good.*

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	*the good*	bŏnŭs	bŏnă	bŏnŭm
Gen.	*of the good*	bŏnī	bŏnae	bonī
Dat.	*to the good*	bŏnō	bŏnae	bŏnō
Acc.	*the good*	bŏnŭm	bŏnăm	bŏnŭm
Voc.	*O the good*	bŏnĕ	bŏnă	bŏnŭm
Abl.	*with the good*	bŏnō	bŏnā	bŏnō.

Pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm,* *beautiful.*

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	*the beautiful*	pulchĕr	pulchră	pulchrŭm
Gen.	*of the beautiful*	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
Dat.	*to the beautiful*	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Acc.	*the beautiful*	pulchrŭm	pulchrăm	pulchrŭm
Voc.	*O the beautiful*	pulchĕr	pulchră	pulchrŭm
Abl.	*by the beautiful*	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō.

Turpĭs, turpĭs, túrpĕ, *ugly.*

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	*the ugly*	turpĭs	turpĭs	turpĕ
Gen.	*of the ugly*	turpĭs	turpĭs	turpĭs
Dat.	*to the ugly*	turpī	turpī	turpī
Acc.	*the ugly*	turpĕm	turpĕm	turpĕ
Voc.	*O the ugly*	turpĭs	turpĭs	turpĕ
Abl.	*with the ugly.*	turpī †	turpī	turpī.

Like *bŏnŭs* decline *mălŭs, ă, ŭm; mĕŭs, ă, ŭm; formōsŭs, ă, ŭm*, &c. — Like *pulchĕr: aegĕr*, sick; *integĕr*, entire; *nĭgĕr*, black; *pĭgĕr*, slow, &c. — Like *turpĭs: brĕvĭs*, short; *dēformĭs*, deformed; *dulcĭs*, sweet; *omnĭs*, all; *ūtilĭs*, useful, &c.

---

* Some adjectives of this declension *retain* the *e* of the root-termination, e. g. *tĕnĕr, tĕnĕra, tĕnĕrum; miser, misĕra, misĕrum.* But the majority reject it.

† Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular, but those whose neuter ends in *e* have *i* only.

The trunk.	*Riscus, i, *m.*, arca, ae, *f.*
The button.	*Orbĭcŭlus fibulatōrĭus, i, *m.*
The money.	Pĕcūnĭa, ae, *f.*
The cheese.	Căsĕus, i, *m.*
The silver.	Argentum, i, *n.*
Of silver.	Argentĕus, a, um (Adj.).
The baker.	Pistŏr, ōris, *m.*
The neighbor.	Vĭcinus, i, *m.* Proximus, i, *m*

Anything, something.	*Ălĭquid, quidquăm, nonnĭhĭl.*
Nothing.	*Nĭhĭl* (indecl.), *nĭhĭlum, i,* n.

Have you anything?	Éstne tíbĭ álĭquid ? Habêsne (tû) áliquid ?
I have something.	Ést míhĭ nónnĭhĭl. Hábĕo áliquĭd.
Have you anything?	Núm quídquam * hábēs ? Núm ést tíbĭ quídquam ?
I have nothing.	Ést míhĭ níhil. Níhil réi hábĕo.

Hungry.	Esŭrĭens, tis.
Thirsty.	Sĭtĭens,† tis. (Vide Lesson VI. *B.*)
Sleepy.	Somnĭcŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm. Cupĭdŭs (ă, úm) somnĭ.
Tired.	Fessŭs (defessus), ă, ŭm.

Are you hungry?	Esŭrĭsne ?
I am hungry.	(Égo vérō) ēsúrĭo.
Are you thirsty	Sĭtĭsne ?
I am thirsty.	(Égo vérō) sítĭo.
I am not thirsty.	Nôn sítio.
Are you sleepy?	Ésne tû somnĭcŭlôsus ? Án és cúpĭdus sómnĭ ?
I am sleepy.	Súm cúpĭdus sómnĭ.
I am not sleepy.	Nôn súm cúpĭdus sómnĭ. Égo somniculôsus nôn súm.
Are you tired?	Ésne tû féssus ? Núm és féssus ?
I am tired.	Súm féssus.
I am not tired.	Nôn súm féssus.

C. Rule. When a substantive expresses the relation of property or possession, it is put in the genitive; as,

---

* *Quidquam* is generally put, when the sentence contains a *negation* (either expressed or implied), a condition, comparison, &c., and also in connection with the particles *vix*, scarcely, and *sine*, without. (Compare Lesson VI. *C.*)

† *Esuriens* and *sitiens*, properly the present participles of the verbs *ēsŭrĭo*, I am hungry, and *sĭtĭo*, I am thirsty. When *hungry* and *thirsty* are in the predicate of the sentence, it is necessary to use the verbs, and not the participles.

The dog of the baker.	Cánis pistôris (*Nom.*).
The baker's dog.	Pistôris cánem (*Acc.*).*
The coat of the tailor.	Tógam sartôris (*Acc.*).
The tailor's coat.	Sartôris tóga (*Nom.*).
My brother's paper.	Chárta méi frâtris† (*Nom.*). Frâtris méi chártam (*Acc.*).
My neighbor's good salt.	Méi vicíni sâl bónum. Sâl bónum vicíni méi.
The old bread.	Nom. Pânis vétŭlus. Acc. Pânem vétŭlum.
The pretty dog.	Cánem béllum (venústum).
The silver ribbon.	Taéniam argéntĕam (*Acc.*).

D. Rule. Adjectives (and the adjective pronouns *meus*, *tuus*, &c.) may stand either before or after their substantives; but when the substantive is a monosyllable, the adjective comes always last.

Have you the neighbor's good salt?	Núm hábēs sâl bónum vicíni?
I have it not.	Nôn hábĕo.
Have you my brother's silver candlestick?	Án hábēs frâtris méi candēlábrum argéntĕum?

Exercise 4.

Have you the leathern trunk? — I have not the leathern trunk? — Have you my pretty trunk? — I have not your pretty trunk. — Which trunk have you? — I have the wooden trunk. — Have you my old button? — I have it not. — Which money have you? — I have the good money. — Which cheese have you? — I have the old cheese. — Have you anything? — I have something. — Have you my large dog? — I have it not. — Have you your good gold? — I have it. — Which dog have you? — I have the tailor's dog? — Have you the neighbor's large dog? — I have it not. — Have you the dog's golden ribbon? — No, Sir, I have it not. — Which coat have you? — I have the tailor's good coat. — Have you the neighbor's good bread? — I have it not. — Have you my tailor's golden ribbon? — I have it. — Have you my pretty dog's ribbon? — I have it not. — Have you the good baker's good horse? — I have it. — Have you the good tailor's horse? — I have it not. — Are you hungry? — I am hungry. — Are you sleepy? — I am not sleepy. — Which candlestick have you? — I have the golden candlestick of my good baker.

---

* The common rule is that the *genitive* (and in general *every word governed*) should be put *before* the word governing it. This, however, is by no means invariable, and the learner may safely use either of the formulas in the sense of their English equivalents.

† Instead of the possessive genitive, the Romans sometimes employ an adjective; as, *dómus paterna* for *dómus patris*, the father's house; *hómo ingēniōsus* for *hómo ingēnii*, a man of talent, &c.

Lesson VI. — PENSUM SEXTUM.

A. The adjectives in *ĕr, ĭs, ĕ* are but few in number. The nominative masculine has sometimes *ĭs* instead of *ĕr.*

Ācĕr *or* ācrĭs, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *sharp.*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	ācĕr *or* ācrĭs	ācrĭs	ācrĕ
GEN.	ācrĭs	ācrĭs	ācrĭs
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	ācrĕm	ācrĕm	ācrĕ
VOC.	ācĕr *or* ācrĭs	ācrĭs	ācrĕ
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī.

So decline *alăcĕr* or *alacrĭs*, cheerful; *cĕlĕber* or *cĕlĕbrĭs*, famous; *cĕler* or *cĕlĕrĭs*, swift; *sălūbĕr* or *sălūbrĭs*, wholesome.

ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.

B. Adjectives of one termination do not differ essentially from other words of the third declension, except that they may have either *ĕ* or *ĭ* in the ablative. The present participle in *ns* is included in this class. Examples: —

	Dīvĕs, -vĭtĭs, *rich.*		Vĕtŭs, -tĕrĭs, *old.*		Sĭtĭens, -ntĭs, *thirsty.*	
	Masc. & Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. & Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc. & Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	dīvĕs		vĕtŭs		sĭtĭens	
GEN.	dīvĭtĭs		vĕtĕrĭs		sĭtĭentĭs	
DAT.	dīvĭtī		vĕtĕrī		sĭtĭentī	
ACC.	dīvĭtĕm	dīvĕs	vĕtĕrĕm	vĕtŭs	sĭtĭentĕm	sĭtĭens
VOC.	dīvĕs		vĕtŭs		sĭtĭens	
ABL.	dīvĭtĕ.*		vĕtĕrĕ *or* ī.		sĭtĭentĕ *or* ī.	

So decline *fēlix, fēlīcĭs*, happy; *paupĕr, paupĕrĭs*, poor; *anceps, ancĭpĭtĭs*, doubtful; *sollers, sollertĭs*, clever; *prūdens, prūdentĭs*, wise; *ămans, ămantĭs*, loving, &c.

REMARKS ON THE ABLATIVE.

1. Participles in *ans* or *ens* have always *ĕ* in the ablative, when they are used as participles proper or as substantives; as, *sole oriente*, when the sun rises; *infans*, abl. *infantĕ*, the infant. But when used as adjectives, they have rather *ĭ* than *ĕ*.

---

* See Remark 5.

2. Comparatives have rather *ĕ* than *ī*, as *mājŏr*, *mājōrĕ*, greater, &c.

3. *Praesens*, present, when said of things, has *ī*; when said of persons, *ĕ*.

4. Proper names derived from adjectives have always *ĕ*, as *Clēmens*, *Clēmentĕ*.

5. Those that have *ĕ* exclusively are *paupĕr*, *sĕnex*, *princeps*, and the majority of those in *es*, as *dīves*, *sospes*, *dēses*, *pūbēs*, *impūbes*, and *superstes*.

Anything or *something good.*	*Ălĭquĭd* (*quidquăm*, *nonnĭhĭl*) *bŏnŭm.* *Alĭquĭd* (*quidquăm*, *nonnĭhĭl*) *bŏnī.*
Nothing or *not anything good.*	*Nĭhĭl bŏnŭm.* *Nĭhĭl bŏnī.*
Something bad (worthless).	Ălĭquĭd vīlĕ (nēquăm).
Nothing bad (worthless).	Nĭhĭl vīlĕ (nēquăm).

C. Obs. The partitive genitive of neuter adjectives after *alĭquid*, *nĭhĭl*, &c. can only be used when the adjective is of the second declension.. Thus we can only say *alĭquid vīlĕ*, *turpĕ*, &c., and not *alĭquid turpĭs*; but indifferently either *aliquid bŏnŭm* or *alĭquid bŏnī*.

Have you anything good?	Éstne tíbi áliquid bónī ? Habêsne áliquid bónum ?
I have nothing bad.	Nônést míhi quídquam vílĕ. Níhil néquam háběo.
Have you anything ugly ?	Númést tíbī quídquam túrpĕ ? An hábēs áliquid túrpĕ ?
I have nothing ugly.	Nônést míhī quídquam túrpĕ. Níhil túrpe háběo.

What?	*Quid?*
What have you ?	Quíd tíbĭést ? Quíd hábēs ?
What have you good ?	Quíd ést tíbi bónī ? Quíd hábēs bónŭm ?
I have the good bread.	Hábeo bónum pânem. Bónum pânem háběo.

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
That or *the one.*	Nom.	*illĕ*	*illă*	*illŭd.*
	Acc.	*illŭm*	*illăm*	*illŭd.*

D. Obs. The English *that*, or *the one*, is, among the later Latin authors, expressed by the demonstrative *illĕ*, *illă*, *illŭd*. By the earlier classical writers, however, the noun is either itself repeated or to be supplied from the context.

Which book have you?	Quém líbrum hábēs?
I have that of the baker.	Hábeo íllum pistôris. Pistôris líbrum hábĕo.
Which sugar have you?	Quód sácchărum hábēs? Quíd ést tíbi sáccharī?
I have that of my brother.	Hábĕo íllud méī frâtris. Ést míhi sácchărum frâtris.

Or. *Ăn.*

E. Obs. In double questions, the first member is introduced by *utrŭm* (whether) or by the enclitic *-nĕ*, and the second member by *an* (or). Thus:—

Are you tired or sleepy?	*Útrum* és fêssus *án* somnīcŭlôsus? *Ésne* tû fêssus *án* somnīcŭlôsus?
I am sleepy.	Somnīcŭlôsus súm.
Have you my book or that of the neighbor?	*Ésne* tíbi líber méus *án* vīcínī? *Útrum* hábes líbrum méum *án* vīcínī?
I have that of the neighbor.	Ést míhi líber vīcínī. Hábeo íllum vīcínī.
Have you your hat or the baker's?	Útrum tíbi ést líber túus án pistôris? Tuúmne líbrum hábēs án pistôris?
Are you hungry or thirsty?	Útrum ésŭris án sítis? Esurísne án sítis?
I am hungry.	Esúrio.

Exercise 5.

Have you my book? — I have it not. — Which book have you? — I have my good book. — Have you anything ugly? — I have nothing ugly? — I have something pretty.— Which table have you? — I have the baker's. — Have you the baker's dog or the neighbor's? — I have the neighbor's. — What have you? — I have nothing. — Have you the good or bad sugar? — I have the good — Have you the neighbor's good or bad horse? — I have the good (one).* — Have you the golden or the silver candlestick? — I have the silver candlestick. — Have you my neighbor's paper, or that of my tailor? — I have that of your tailor. — Are you hungry or thirsty? — I am hungry. — Are you sleepy or tired? — I am tired. — What have you pretty? — I have nothing pretty. — Have you anything ugly? — I have nothing ugly. — Have you the leather shoe? — I have it not. — What have you good? — I have the good sugar.

---

* The words included in parentheses are not to be translated in these exercises.

Lesson VII. — PENSUM SEPTIMUM.

OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

A. The fourth declension comprises all substantives which form their genitive in *ūs*. The nominative singular has two terminations, viz. *ŭs* for masculine and feminine nouns, and *ū* for neuters. Examples: —

	Fructŭs, *m.*, *the fruit.*	Cornū, *n.*, *the horn.*	Dŏmŭs, *f.*, *the house.*
Nom.	fructŭs	cornū	dŏmŭs
Gen.	fructūs	cornūs	dŏmūs *or* domī *
Dat.	fructuī	cornū (cornūī)	dŏmŭī *or* domō
Acc.	fructŭm	cornū	dŏmŭm
Voc.	fructŭs	cornū	dŏmŭs
Abl.	fructū.	cornū.	dŏmō.

Like *fructus* decline *adŭtus*, access; *cantŭs*, a song; *currŭs*, a chariot; *ictŭs*, a stroke; *mōtŭs*, motion; *risus*, laughter; *sĕnātŭs*, the senate; *sumptŭs*, expense; *victŭs*, living. Also the feminines *ăcŭs*, a needle; *mănŭs*, a hand; *trĭbŭs*, a tribe, &c. — Like *cornū* decline *gĕlū*, ice; *gĕnū*, the knee; *vĕrū*, a spear; *tŏnĭtrū*, thunder.

Remark. — The final *u* of Latin words generally is long.

Have you my coat or the tailor's? { Éstne tíbi tóga méa án sartôris? / Útrum hábēs tógam méam án (illam) sartôris?

I have yours. { Ést míhi túa. / Túam hábĕo.

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Mine.	Nom.	*mĕŭs*	*mĕă*	*mĕŭm.*
	Acc.	*mĕŭm*	*mĕăm*	*mĕŭm.*
Yours.	Nom.	*tŭŭs*	*tŭă*	*tŭŭm.*
	Acc.	*tŭŭm*	*tŭăm*	*tŭŭm.*

B. Obs. The possessive pronouns *mĕus*, *tŭus*, *sŭus*, &c. may either be joined to nouns in the sense of the conjunctive *my*, *your* (*thy*), *his*, &c., or they may stand absolutely, like the English *mine*, *yours* (*thine*), *his*, &c. They are inflected like *bŏnus*, *a*, *um*. (Cf. Lesson V.)

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
This.	Nom.	*hĭc*	*haec*	*hŏc.*
	Acc.	*hunc*	*hanc*	*hŏc.*

* The genitive *domi* is only used in the sense of *at home*. The dative *domui* is the more usual form; but the ablative of this irregular noun is always *domo*.

Is this your hat?	Éstne híc pílĕus túus?
No, Sir, it is not mine, but yours.	Mínime, dómine, nôn ést méus, séd túus.
Is this my ribbon?	Núm haêc ést taénĭa méa?
No, it is not yours, but mine.	Nôn ést túa, séd méa.
Is this your sugar?	An hóc ést sácchărum túum?
It is not mine, but that of my brother.	Nôn ést méum, séd méi frâtris.

The man.	Vĭr,* *gen.* vĭri, *m.*
	Hŏmo, ĭnis, *m.* & *f.*
The stick, cane.	Băcŭlum, i, *n.*
	Scipio, ōnis, *m.*
My brother.	Frāter mĕus, *gen.* frātris mĕi.
The shoemaker.	Sūtor, ōris, *m.*
The merchant.	Mercātor, ōris, *m.*
The friend.	Amĭcus, i, *m.*
	Fămĭlĭāris, is, *m.*
Neither — nor.	*Nĕc — nĕc.*
	Nĕque — nĕque.
	Nĕque — nĕc.

C. Obs. The disjunctive conjunctions *nec* and *nĕque* are used in the same sense, except that the former more frequently stands before consonants and the latter before vowels.

Have you the merchant's stick or yours?	Tĕnêsnĕ† báculum mercātôris án túum?
I have neither the merchant's stick nor yours.	Néc mercatôris báculum néc túum ténĕo.
Are you hungry or thirsty?	Útrum ésŭris án sítis?
	Esŭrisne án sítis?
I am neither hungry nor thirsty.	Égo néque ēsúrio néc sítio.

Exercise 6.

Have you your cloth or mine? — I have neither yours nor mine. — I have neither my bread nor the tailor's. — Have you my stick or yours? — I have mine. — Have you the shoemaker's shoe or the merchant's? — I have neither the shoemaker's nor the merchant's. — Have you my brother's coat? — I have it not. — Which paper have you? — I have your friend's. — Have you my dog or my friend's? — I have your friend's. — Have you my thread stocking or

---

* *Vir* is used with reference to the sex, and *homo* with reference to the species.

† *Tĕnĕo* is properly "I hold," and may be used in these exercises for variety, especially where "to have" may signify "to hold in one's hand," or "to retain, keep."

my brother's? — I have neither yours nor your brother's. — Have you my good baker's good bread or that of my friend? — I have neither your good baker's nor that of your friend. — Which bread have you? — I have mine. — Which ribbon have you? — I have yours. — Have you the good or the bad cheese? — I have neither the good nor the bad. — Have you anything? — I have nothing. — Have you my pretty or my ugly dog? — I have neither your pretty nor your ugly dog. — Have you my friend's stick? — I have it not. — Are you sleepy or hungry? — I am neither sleepy nor hungry. — Have you the good or the bad salt? — I have neither the good nor the bad. — Have you my horse or the man's? — I have neither yours nor the man's. — What have you? — I have nothing fine. — Are you tired? — I am not tired.

Lesson VIII. — PENSUM OCTAVUM.

OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

A. Nouns of the fifth declension have their genitive in *ei* and the nominative in *ēs*. The fifth declension differs but slightly from the third, and is a mere modification of it. Dĭēs, *m.* & *f.*, *the day*, rēs, *f.*, *a thing*, and spĕcĭēs, *f.*, *the appearance*, are thus inflected: —

Nom.	dĭēs	rēs	spĕcĭēs
Gen.	dĭēī	rĕī*	spĕcĭēī
Dat.	dĭēī	rĕī	spĕcĭēī
Acc.	dĭĕm	rĕm	spĕcĭĕm
Voc.	dĭēs	rēs	spĕcĭēs
Abl.	dĭē.	rē.	spĕcĭē.

So decline *ăcĭēs*, f., the edge *or* point; *făcĭēs*, f., the face; *effĭgĭēs*, f., the image, effigy; *mĕrĭdĭēs*, m., midday, noon; *spēs*, f., hope; *sĕrĭēs*, f., the series.

Remark. — The *e* of the ablative of the fifth declension is always long.

B. Obs. Nouns of this declension are feminine, except *dĭēs*, which in the singular is generally masculine and sometimes feminine,† but in the plural always masculine. Its compound, *mĕrĭdĭēs*, is masculine, and used in the singular only.

* The *e* of the genitive and dative is long when a vowel precedes, but short after a consonant, e. g. *aciēi*, *faciēi*, &c., but *spēi*, *rēi*, *fidēi*, &c.

† It is feminine when it denotes, 1) *duration* of time, e. g. *diem perexiguam*, *integram*, (for) a very short day, an entire day; 2) an *appointed day*, e. g. *certā* (*constitutā*, *dictā*, &c.) *die*, on the appointed day.

The cork.	**Embŏlus, i,* m.
The corkscrew.	*Instrumentum* (i, *n.*) embŏlis extrahendis.
The umbrella.	*Mūnimentum (i, *n.*) capĭtis pluvĭāle; umbrācŭlum,† i, *n.*
The boy.	Pŭer, ĕri, *m.*
The Frenchman.	*Francogallus, i, *m.*
The carpenter.	Fāber (bri, *m.*) tignārĭus.
The hammer.	Māllĕus, i, *m.*
The iron.	Ferrum, i, *n.*
Of iron, iron.	Ferrĕus, a, um.
The nail.	Clāvŭs, i, *m.*
The pencil.	*Stilus cerussātus, i, *m.*
The thimble.	*Mūnimentum (i, *n.*) dĭgĭti.
The coffee.	*Coffĕa, ae, *f.*
The honey.	Mĕl, *gen.* mellis, *n.*
The (sea) biscuit.	Pānis nautĭcus (castrensis).
The sweet biscuit.	Pānis dulcĭārĭus, *m.* Buccellātum, i, *n.*
Have I?	*Habeône? Écquĭd égo hábĕo?* *An (égo) hábĕo? Éstne míhĭ?*
You have.	Hábēs. Ténēs. Tíbĭést.
What have I?	Quíd (égo) hábĕo (ténĕo)? Quíd ést míhĭ?
You have the carpenter's hammer.	Málleum fábri tignárii hábes (ténes). Ést tíbi málleus fábri tignárii.
Have I the nail?	Habeône clâvum? Éstne míhĭ clâvus?
You have it.	Hábes. Ést.
Have I (the) biscuit?	Án égo hábĕo pânem castrénsem (naútĭcum)? Éstne míhi pânis (ílle) castrénsis?
You have it.	Hábes. Tíbĭ ést.
I am right (correct).	*Vérē (réctē) lóquŏr.*
I am wrong (incorrect).	*Érro.*
You are correct, wrong.	Récte lóquĕris, érras.
I am right (i. e. morally in doing so).	Ést míhi fâs.
I am wrong (morally in doing so).	Ést míhĭ néfâs.‡

* The Ancients having no term for such an instrument, it must be expressed by circumlocution. On the dative *embolis extrahendis*, "for extracting corks," compare Lesson XXV., *Obs.* — The same remark applies to *munimentum capitis pluviale* (where *pluviale* is an adjective in *e*), to *munimentum digiti*, and to a host of other names of modern objects. In all the cases, we can only approximate by description.

† The word *umbrăculum* (from *umbra*, shade) was used by the Ancients in the sense of our "parasol."

‡ The expressions *vērē* or *rectē lŏquŏr* and *erro* have reference to language or opinions simply; whereas *fâs* and *néfâs* involve the moral distinction of right and wrong in action or in speech. The latter phrases are often followed by an infinitive, as, *Estne mihi fas* (or *licetne mihi*) *hoc facere?* Is it right for

Am I right (i.e. correct) or wrong?	Rectêne lóquor án érro?
You are neither right nor wrong.	Néque réctē lóquĕris, néque érras.
Am I right (correct)?	Loquórne récte?
You are correct.	Vérē (réctē) lóquĕris.
Am I right (correct)?	Núm lóquor vérē?
No, you are wrong.	Ímmo vérō* érras.
Am I right (morally)? / Is it right for me?	Éstne míhi fâs?
It is wrong.	Ést tíbi néfās.
Which biscuit have I?	Quód buccellâtum hábĕo?
You have that of my brother.	Frâtris méi buccellâtum hábes.

EXERCISE 7.

Which dog have you? — I have neither the baker's dog nor that of my friend. — Are you sleepy? — I am not sleepy. — I am hungry. — You are not hungry. — Am I thirsty? — You are not thirsty. — Have I the cork? — No, sir, you have it not. — Have I the carpenter's wood? — You have it not. — Have I the Frenchman's good umbrella? — You have it. — Have I the carpenter's iron nails or yours? — You have mine. — You have neither the carpenter's nor mine. — Which pencil have I? — You have that of the Frenchman. — Have I your thimble or that of the tailor? — You have neither mine nor that of the tailor. — Which umbrella have I? — You have my good umbrella. — Have I the Frenchman's good honey? — You have it not. — Which biscuit have I? — You have that of my good neighbor. — Have you my coffee or that of my boy? — I have that of your good boy. — Have you your cork or mine? — I have neither yours nor mine. — What have you? — I have my good brother's good pencil. — Am I right (correct)? — You are right (correct). — Am I wrong (morally)? — You are wrong. — You are not wrong. — Am I right or wrong? — You are neither right nor wrong. — Am I hungry? — You are hungry. — You are not sleepy. — You are neither hungry nor thirsty. — What have I good? — You have neither the good coffee nor the good sugar. — What have I? — You have nothing. — What have you? — I have something beautiful.

Lesson IX. — PENSUM NONUM.

OF PRONOUNS.

A. The pronouns of the Latin language are divided into the following classes: — 1. PERSONAL: *ĕgŏ*, *tū*,

---

me to do so? Am I right in doing so? *Illud dicere tibi nefas est*, It is wrong for you to say so, You are wrong in saying so. *Fas* and *nefas* are both indeclinable, like *nihil*.

* *Immo vero* corresponds to the English "nay, rather," "nay, on the contrary."

sŭī (and *ipse*). 2. DEMONSTRATIVES: *hĭc, iste, ille, ĭs.* 3. RELATIVES: *quī, quae, quŏd.* 4. POSSESSIVES: *mĕus, tŭus, sŭus, noster, vester.* 5. INTERROGATIVES: *quĭs? quĭd? quī, quae, quŏd?* 6. INDEFINITE: *ălĭquĭs, quĭs, quisquam.* 7. PATRIALS: *nostrās, vestrās, cūjās.*

B. The personal pronouns *ĕgŏ*, I, *tū*, thou, *sŭī*, of himself, of herself, of itself, are thus inflected:—

NOM.	*I*	ĕgŏ		*thou*	tū	——	—
GEN.	*of me*	mĕī		*of thee*	tŭī	*of himself, &c.*	sŭī
DAT.	*to me*	mĭhĭ *or* mī		*to thee*	tĭbĭ	*to himself, &c.*	sĭbĭ
ACC.	*me*	mē		*thee*	tē	*himself, &c.*	sē
VOC.	——	ĕgŏ		*O thou*	tū	——	—
ABL.	*with me*	mē.		*with thee*	tē.	*with himself, &c.*	sē.

REMARK. — The suffix *tĕ* is sometimes emphatically added to the nominative *tu;* as *tūtĕ*, thou *thyself;* and the suffix *mĕt* in the same sense to all the cases of *ego, tu,* and *sui;* as *egŏmĕt, tūtĕmĕt, suīmĕt,* I myself, &c. — So also *mĕmĕ, tētĕ, sēsĕ,* for *me, te, se,* in the accusative and ablative singular.

C. The Latin language has no pronoun of the third person corresponding in every respect to the English *he, she, it,* the termination of the verb being commonly deemed sufficient to indicate the relation of personality. But when perspicuity or emphasis requires a pronoun, one of the demonstratives *hic, iste, ille* (most commonly the latter) is used for the nominative, and the oblique cases of *is, ĕă, ĭd* for the remaining cases. The pronoun of the third person would thus be something like the following:—

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	*he, she, it*	illĕ	illă	illŭd
GEN.	*of him, of her, of it*	ējŭs	ējŭs	ējŭs (rei)*
DAT.	*to him, to her, to it*	ĕī	ĕī	ĕī (rei)
ACC.	*him, her, it*	ĕŭm	ĕăm	ĭd (illŭd)
VOC.	— — —	—	—	—
ABL.	*with him, with her, with it*	ĕō	ĕā	ĕō (eā re).

D. The pronoun *ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm* may be joined to

* The Romans are fond of employing the word *res,* "thing," instead of the neuter of adjectives and pronouns. This becomes necessary in cases where ambiguity as to gender would otherwise arise, as here in the genitive, dative, and ablative. So also *cujus rei, cui rei, quā re,* for *cujus,* &c.

every case of *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*, with the force of the English *self* (*myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, &c.). Its singular is thus declined: —

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsŭm
GEN.		ipsĭus *	
DAT.		ipsī	
ACC.	ipsŭm	ipsăm	ipsŭm
VOC.	ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsŭm
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō.

Thus: *ego ipse* (*ipsa*), I myself; *tu ipse* (*ipsa*), thou thyself; (*ille*) *ipse*, he himself; *mihimet ipsi*, to myself; *temet ipsum*, thyself; *sui ipsius*, of himself.

Have I the iron or the golden nail?	Ferreúmne clâvum hábĕo, án aúrĕum?
You have neither the iron nor the golden nail.	Néque férrĕum hábēs clâvum, néque aúreum.

The sheep.	Ŏvĭs, is, *f.*
The ram.	Vervĕx, ēcis, *m.*
The hen.	Gallīna, ae, *f.*
The chicken.	Pullus gallinācĕus (*gen.* i), *m.*
The ship.	Nāvĭs, is, *f.*
The bag (sack).	Saccŭs, i, *m.*
The painter.	Pictor, ōris, *m.*
The young man.	Jŭvĕnis, is, *m.*
The youth (lad).	Adŏlescens, tis, *m.* Adŏlescentŭlus, i, *m.*

E. The substantives *ŏvĭs*, *nāvĭs*, and *jŭvĕnĭs* are thus inflected: —

NOM. ŏvĭs	nāvĭs	jŭvĕnĭs
GEN. ŏvĭs	nāvĭs	jŭvĕnĭs
DAT. ŏvī	nāvī	jŭvĕnī
ACC. ŏvĕm	nāvĕm *or* nāvim	jŭvĕnĕm
VOC. ŏvĭs	nāvĭs	jŭvĕnĭs
ABL. ŏvĕ.	nāvī *or* nāvĕ.	jŭvĕnĕ.

F. Obs. The words *navis*, *messis*, and *clavis* have usually *em* in the accusative, sometimes *im*. The nouns *febris*, *pelvis*, *puppis*, *vestis*, *securis*, and *turris* have oftener *im* than *em*. Those which have regularly *im* are: a) the substantives *amussis*, *ravis*, *sitis*, *tussis*, and *vis*;

* The genitive *ipsĭus* and the dative *ipsi* are here intended for all the genders. The same applies to all the subsequent paradigms.

b) a variety of nouns and proper names derived from the Greek, as *basis, poësis, paraphrasis, Osiris, Zeuxis, Charybdis*, &c.

Who?	*Quĭs? Cuī* (with *est*)?
Who has?	*Quis habet?* *Cui est?*
Who has the trunk?	Quís hábĕt árcam? Cui ést rĭscus?
The man has the trunk.	Vír rĭscum hábet (ténet).
The man has *not* the trunk.	Vír rĭscum *nôn* hábet (ténet).
Who has it?	Quís ĕŭm hábet?
The youth has it.	Adoléscens éum hábet.
The youth has it *not*.	Adolescéntŭlus éum *nôn* hábet (ténet).
He has.	*Hăbĕt, tĕnĕt* (is, hic, ille).* *Est ei.*
He has the knife.	Ís (ílle) cúltrum hábet.
He has *not* the knife.	Cúltrum *nôn* hábet.
Has the man?	Habétne vír? Écquid hábet hómo? Án hábet hómo?
Has the painter?	Habétne píctor? Núm hábet píctor? Éstne (án, núm ést) pictórī?
Has the friend?	Habétne amícus? Án hábet amícus? Éstne (écquid, án ést) amíco? (Cf. Lesson II. note *.)
Has the boy the carpenter's hammer?	Tenétne púĕr mállĕum fábrī tignárii?
He has it.	Véro (éum) ténet.
Has the youth it?	Eúmne ténet adoléscens?
He has it not.	(Éum) nôn ténet.
Is he thirsty?	Sitítne? Án (écquid) ís sítit?
He is thirsty.	Íta ést, sítit.
Is he tired?	Núm (númquid) féssus ést? Án ést féssus?
He is not tired?	Nôn ést féssus.
Is he right or wrong?	Rectêne lóquĭtŭr, án érrat? Útrum vérē lóquitur, án érrat?
He is right (correct).	Vérē lóquĭtur.
He is not wrong.	Nôn érrat.
Is he hungry?	Esurítne? Núm ésŭrit?
He is not hungry.	Nôn ésŭrit.

Exercise 8.

Is he thirsty or hungry? — He is neither thirsty nor hungry. — Has the friend my hat? — He has it. — He has it not. — Who has

* The pronoun of the third person, like that of the second and first, is commonly omitted, except where perspicuity requires it.

my sheep? — Your friend has it. — Who has my large sack? — The baker has it. — Has the youth my book? — He has it not. — What has he? — He has nothing. — Has he the hammer or the nail? — He has neither the hammer nor the nail. — Has he my umbrella or my stick? — He has neither your umbrella nor your stick. — Has he my coffee or my sugar? — He has neither your coffee nor your sugar; he has your honey. — Has he my brother's biscuit or that of the Frenchman? — He has neither your brother's nor that of the Frenchman; he has that of the good boy. — Which ship has he? — He has my good ship. — Has he the old sheep or the ram?

EXERCISE 9.

Has the young man my knife or that of the painter? — He has neither yours nor that of the painter. — Who has my brother's fine dog? — Your friend has it. — What has my friend? — He has the baker's good bread. — He has the good neighbor's good chicken. — What have you? — I have nothing. — Have you my bag or yours? — I have that of your friend. — Have I your good knife? — You have it. — You have it not. — Has the youth it? — He has it not. — What has he? — He has something good. — He has nothing bad. — Has he anything? — He has nothing. — Is he sleepy? — He is not sleepy. — He is hungry. — Who is hungry? — The young man is hungry. — Your friend is hungry. — Your brother's boy is hungry. — My shoemaker's brother is hungry. — My good tailor's boy is thirsty. — Which man has my book? — The big (*procērus*) man has it. — Which man has my horse? — Your friend has it. — He has your good cheese. — Has he it? — Yes, sir, he has it.

Lesson X. — PENSUM DECIMUM.

The husbandman.	Agrĭcŏla, ae, *m.*
The peasant, rustic.	Rustĭcus, i, *m.*; homo agrestis.
The ox.	Bōs, *gen.* bŏvis, *m.* & *f.* Taurus, i, *m.* (a bull).
The cook.	Cŏquŭs, i, *m.*; cŏquă, ae, *f.*
The servant.	Minister, ri, *m.*; fămŭlus, i, *m.* Ministra, fămŭla, ae, *f.*
The bird.	Ăvis, is, *f.* Vŏlūcris, is, *m.* & *f.*
The broom.	Scōpae, ārum,* *f. pl.*
The eye.	Ŏcŭlus, i, *m.*
The foot.	Pēs, *gen.* pĕdis, *m.*
The rice.	Ŏrȳza, ae, *f.*

* Many nouns in Latin are never used in the singular, as *angustiae*, difficulties; *divitiae*, riches; *feriae*, holidays; *liberi*, children, &c. Compare Lesson XVII. *B.*

His (conjunctive).	{ *Sŭŭs, sŭă, sŭŭm.* *Ējŭs, illĭŭs.*

A. Obs. The possessive pronoun *sŭus* is declined like *mĕus* and *tŭus*. It corresponds to the English "his" when, in the reflexive sense of "his own," the subject of the sentence is meant; but when another person is referred to, *ējus* (of him) or *illĭus* (of that man) must be employed. As:—

Has he his (own) hat?	Tenétne pílĕum súum?
Have you his (the other man's) hat?	Tenêsne tû pílĕum éjus (illĭŭs)?
Has the servant his broom?	Habétne minister scópas súas? (Cf. Lesson XIII. *B.*)
He has his broom.	{ Hábet scópas súas. Scópas súas hábet.
Has the cook his (own) chicken or that of the rustic?	Habétne cóquus gallĭnam súam, an (íllam) rústĭci?
He has his own.	{ Súam hábet. Hábet súam própriam.
His or *his own* (absolute).	{ *Sŭus, sŭa, sŭum.** *Proprĭus, a, um.*† *Ejus, illĭus* (*ipsĭus*).

B. Obs. The absolute possessive pronoun *suus* is declined like the conjunctive. Instead of it, *proprius* is sometimes used. There is here the same distinction between *sŭus* (*proprĭus*) and *ejus* (*illĭus*) as in *Obs. A.*

Has the servant his (own) trunk, or mine?	{ Habétne fámŭlus rí-cum súum (própriam), án méum? Suúmne rí-cum hábet fámŭlus, án méum?
He has his own.	{ Súum própriam hábet. Hábet suúmmet.
Have you your (own) shoe, or his (that man's)?	{ Útrum túum hábes cálcĕum, án éjus (illĭŭs)? Tuúmne hábes cálceum, án éjus (illĭŭs)?

* The suffix *met* is sometimes added to all the cases of *suus*, in the sense of the English "own," and commonly in connection with *ipse*, himself; e. g. *Suummet librum ipse tenet*, He himself has his own book. To the ablative singular *suo*, *sua* (and also to *meo*, *mea*, *tuo*, *tua*, &c.) the syllable *pte* may be annexed in the same sense; as *suapte manu*, with his own hand; *meopte ingenio*, by my own genius; *nostraptē culpā*, by our own fault.

† Both these words are sometimes put together, in order to render the notion of possession still more prominent: *suus proprius*, precisely like the English "his own."

I have his (that man's)	Éjus (hábĕo). Hábeo (cálcĕum) éjus (illĭŭs).
Somebody or *anybody*, *some one* or *any one*. (Indefinite Pronouns.)	*Ălĭquĭs ; quĭs ; quispĭam.* *Quisquam, ullus ; non nēmo.* *Num quĭs ? Ecquis ?*

C. Obs. The indefinite pronouns *ălĭquis*, *quis*, and *quispĭam* are always *positive*, and differ but little from each other, except that *quispĭam* is more general (= "some one or another"). *Quisquam* (like *quidquam* of Lesson VI., q. v.) and *nullus*, on the other hand, are only used where the sentence contains a *negation*, either expressed or implied. *Quis* may stand for *ălĭquis*, but only after particles like *si* (if), *nisi* (unless), *num* (whether), and *ne* (lest). *Ecquis ?* and *num quis ?* are interrogative.

Has any one ? (Yes.)	Hábetne álĭquis (quíspiam) ? Écquis hábet ?
Has any one ? (No.)	Núm quís (quísquam) hábet ? Hábetne quísquam (úllus) ?
Some one has.	Álĭquis (quíspiam) hábet. Nôn némo hábet.
Nor has any one.	Néque quísquam hábet.
If (unless, whether) any one has.	Sí (nísi, núm) quís *or* álĭquis hábet.

D. The indefinite *quis*, and its compounds *aliquis*, *ecquis*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam* are thus inflected: —

Nom.	quĭs	ălĭquĭs	ecquĭs	quisquam	quispĭam
Gen.	cūjus	ălĭcūjus	eccūjus	cūjusquam	cūjuspĭam
Dat.	cuĭ	ălĭcuĭ	eccuĭ	cuĭquam	cuĭpĭam
Acc.	quem	ălĭquem	ecquem	quemquam	quempĭam
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	quō.	ălĭquō.	ecquō.	quōquam.	quōpĭam.

Has any one my hat ?	Hábetne álĭquis méum pĭleum ? Écquis hábet pĭlĕum méum ? Núm quís hábet pĭleum méum ?
Somebody has it.	Hábet éum álĭquis (quíspiam, nôn némo).
Who has my stick ?	Quís ténet scipĭônem méum ? Cuĭ ést bácŭlum méum ?
Nobody has it.	Némo (núllus) éum ténet. Némĭnī (núlli) ést.
No one, *nobody*, or *not anybody*.	*Nēmo, nullus.* *Nēmo hŏmo, nullus homo.* *Nec quisquam, neque ullus.**

* The Romans frequently employ *quisquam* or *ullus* in connection with *nec* or

E. Obs. The indefinite *nēmo* is seldom used in the genitive, *nullĭus* being employed in its stead. The word *homo* is sometimes added to *nēmo* as well as to *nullus*. These words are thus inflected: —

Nom.	nēmo	ullŭs	nullŭs
Gen.	nēmĭnis	ullĭus	nullĭus *
Dat.	nemĭnī	ullī	nullī
Acc.	nemĭnem	ullum	nullum
Voc.	nēmo	——	——
Abl.	nēmĭnĕ.	ullō.	nullō.

Who has my ribbon?	Quís hábet taénĭam méam? / Cuí ést taénĭa méa?
Nobody has it.	Némo (núllus) éam hábet. / (Éa) némini (núlli) ést.
Who is right?	Cuí ést fās? / Quís lóquĭtur vére?
No one is right.	Fās ést némini (núlli). / Némo vére lóquĭtur.
Is any one hungry?	Esurítne áliquis? Núm quís ésurit? Écquis ésurit? Án quísquam ésŭrit?
No one is hungry.	Némo ésŭrit. / Ésŭrit núllus.
Nor is any one hungry.	Néc quísquam (néque úllus) hómo ésŭrit.

Exercise 10.

Have you the ox of the peasant or that of the cook? — I have neither that of the peasant nor that of the cook. — Has the peasant his rice? — He has it. — Have you it? — I have it not. — Has his boy the servant's broom? — He has it. — Who has the boy's pencil? — Nobody has it. — Has your brother my stick or that of the painter? — He has neither yours nor that of the painter; he has his own. — Has he the good or bad money? — He has neither the good nor the bad. — Has he the wooden or the leaden horse? — He has neither the wooden nor the leaden horse. — What has he good? — He has my good honey. — Has my neighbor's boy my book? — He has it not. — Which book has he? — He has his fine book. — Has he my book or his own? — He has his own? — Who has my gold button? — Nobody has it. — Has anybody my thread stocking? — Nobody has it.

---

unquam, instead of *nemo*, as in English we likewise say, "nor was there ever any one," instead of "no one ever was," &c.

* *Ullus* and *nullus* are properly adjectives in *us, a, um*. But they deviate from the inflection of adjectives by having their genitive in *ius* (instead of *i, ae, i*) for every gender, and their dative in *i* (instead of *o, ae, o*). Compare *unus* of Lesson XVIII.

Exercise 11.

Which ship has the merchant? — He has his own? — Which horse has my friend? — He has mine. — Has he his dog? — He has it not. — Who has his dog? — Nobody has it. — Who has my brother's umbrella? — Somebody has it. — Which (*quas*) broom has the servant? — He has his own. — Is anybody hungry? — Nobody is hungry. — Is anybody sleepy? — Nobody is sleepy. — Is any one tired? — No one is tired. — Who is right? — Nobody is right. — Have I his biscuit? — You have it not. — Have I his good brother's ox? — You have it not. — Which chicken have I? — You have his. — Is anybody wrong? — Nobody is wrong.

Lesson XI. — PENSUM UNDECIMUM.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

A. The Latin language has three demonstrative pronouns, with special reference to each of the three persons, viz.: *hĭc, haec, hŏc*, this (of mine); *istĕ, istă, istŭd*, that (of yours); *illĕ, illă, illŭd*, that (of his). To these must be added the determinative *ĭs, ĕă, ĭd*, which sometimes has the demonstrative force of *this* or *that*. These words are thus inflected: —

	Hic, *this* (*of mine*).			Ille, *that* (*of his*).		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	hĭc	haec	hŏc	illĕ	illă	illŭd
Gen.		hūjus			illĭus	
Dat.		huĭc			illī	
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hŏc	illŭm	illăm	illŭd
Voc.	hĭc	haec	hŏc	illĕ	illă	illŭd
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc.	illō	illā	illō.

	Iste, *that* (*of yours*).			Is, *that, this.*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	istĕ	istă	istŭd	ĭs	ĕa	ĭd
Gen.		istĭus			ējŭs	
Dat.		istī			eī	
Acc.	istŭm	istăm	istŭd	ĕŭm	ĕăm	ĭd
Voc.	istĕ	istă	istŭd	ĭs	ĕă	ĭd
Abl.	istō	istā	istō.	ĕō	ĕā	ĕō.

Remarks.

1. The demonstrative force of *hic*, &c. is often increased by the addition of the syllable *ce*, as *hicce*, *haecce*, *hocce*, *hujusce*, &c. — With the interrogative particle *ne*, the pronouns become *hiccĭne* (or with one *c*, *hicine*)? *haeccĭne*? *hoccĭne*? &c.

2. In composition with *ecce* and *en* (= lo! see! here!), these pronouns have given rise to the following forms, frequently used in common discourse: *eccum*, *eccam* (pl. *eccos*, *eccas*); *eccillum* or *ellum*, *ellam* (pl. *ellos*, *ellas*), and *eccistam*, "there he (she) is," "there they come," "see there," &c. — *Ea*, in connection with *re* and the affix *pse*, gives rise to *reapse*, "indeed."

3. *Hic* implies *proximity*, either of space or of time, to the person speaking. *Ille*, on the other hand, refers to something *remote*, and also to something *well known*, *already mentioned*, or *distinguished*. When directly opposed to each other, *ille* signifies "the former," and *hic*, "the latter."

4. *Iste* has always reference to the person spoken to, and is hence called the pronoun of the second person; as *iste liber*, *istud saccharum*, this book, that sugar (of yours or mentioned by you). It sometimes conveys the notion of disapprobation or contempt, as *ille* does that of honor; as *iste homo*, this fellow; *ille Socrates*, the well-known (illustrious) Socrates.

5. *Is*, when used as a demonstrative, points to a person or thing already mentioned, in the sense of the English "this man," "that thing" (of which I am speaking or have just spoken), or of an emphatic "he, she, it"; e. g. *Is est, an non est?* Is it *he* (is this the man) or not? In the oblique cases it is the pronoun of the third person (*his*, *him*, *hers*, *her*, &c.). See Lesson IX. *C*.

6. The pronoun *hic*, in connection with *ille* and *iste*, gives rise to the compounds *istic* (or *isthic*), *istaec*, *istoc* or *istuc*, and *illic*, *illaec*, *illoc* or *illuc*, both of which are declined like *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*.

The sailor.	Hŏmo nautĭcus. / Nauta, ae, *m.*
The chair.	Sella, ae, *f.*
The seat (of honor).	Sōlĭum, i, *n.*; sēdēs, ĭs, *f.*
The looking-glass.	*Spĕcŭlum, i, *n.*
The light.	Lux, lūcis, *f.*; lūmĕn, ĭnis, *n.*
The light, candle.	Lūmĕn, ĭnis, *n.*; candēla, ae, *f.*
The lamp.	Lūcerna, ae, *f.*; lampăs, ădis, *f.**
The tree.	Arbŏr, *or* arbōs, ŏris, *f.*
The garden.	Hortus, i, *m.*
The foreigner.	Pĕregrīnus, i, *m.*; advĕna, ae, *m.* (just arrived).
The stranger (guest).	Hospĕs, ĭtis, *m.*

* *Lampas* is a word of Greek origin, and sometimes retains its original inflection. Thus: N. *lampas*, G. *lampădis* or *-ădos*, D. *lampădi*, Acc. *lampădem* or *-ăda*, V. *lampas*, Abl. *lampăde*.

The glove.	*Digitabŭlum, i, *n.*
The ass.	Asĭnus, i, *m.*
The hay.	Foenum, i, *n.*
The grain (seed).	Grānum, i, *n.*
The corn (grain generally).	Frūmentum, i, *n.*; annōna, ae, *f.* (one year's produce).
The letter.	Epistŏla, ae, *f.*; littĕrae, ārum, *f. pl.* (Cf. Lesson XIII.)
The note (billet).	Schĕdŭla *or* scĭdŭla, ae, *f.*
The horse-shoe.	*Sōlĕa ferrĕa (ae, *f.*) ĕqui.
This book — that book.	NOM. *hĭc lĭber — ille liber.* ACC. *hŭnc lĭbrum — illum lĭbrum.*
This note — that note.	NOM. haêc scĭdŭla — ílla scĭdŭla. ACC. hánc scĭdŭlam — íllam scĭdulam.
This hay — that hay.	Hóc foênum — íllud foênum.
This (that) hay (of yours).	Ístud foênum.
That worthless man.	Hómo íste nêquam.
That great man.	Vír ílle mágnus.
Is he (this) the man?	Án ést ís hŏmo?
That is the cause.	Éă ést caûsa.
Have you this hat or that one?	Habêsne húnc pílĕum án íllum?
I have not this, but that one.	Nôn húnc, séd íllum hábĕo. Nôn húnc hábeo, séd íllum.

But. *Sĕd, vērŭm; autĕm.*

B. Obs. The adversative conjunctions *sed* and *verum** are nearly synonymous, and are always placed at the beginning of the clause introduced by them. *Autem*, like the English "however," gĕnerally stands after the first, second, or third word. Examples: —

Not I, but you.	Nôn égo, séd (vêrum) tû.
You are neither right nor wrong, but (however) your brother is wrong.	Tú néque réctē lóquĕris, néque érras, érrat aûtem frâter túus.
Has the youth this book or that one?	Tenétne adolescéntŭlus húnc lĭbrum án íllum?
He has this, but not that one.	Húnc quídem ténet, íllum aútem nôn.
He has not this, but that one.	Ténet nôn húnc, séd (vêrum) íllum.
Have you this looking-glass or that one?	Útrum hóc spécŭlum hábēs án illud? Hoccíne spécŭlum hábēs, án íllud?

* *Verum* gives preponderance to the second member of the sentence, and may be rendered by "but rather," "but in reality."

I have neither this nor that one.	Néque hóc hábeo néque íllud. Hábeo néque hóc néque íllud.
Have you this man's light or that one's?	Tenêsne lûmen hújus hómĭnis án illĭŭs?
I have neither this man's nor that one's.	Téneo néque lûmen hújus hómĭnis néque illĭus.
I have not this man's, but that one's.	Égo nôn hújus víri lûmen téneo, séd (vêrum) illĭus.

EXERCISE 12.

Which hay has the foreigner? — He has that of the peasant. — Has the sailor my looking-glass? — He has it not. — Have you this candle or that one? — I have this one. — Have you the hay of my garden, or that of yours? — I have neither that of your garden nor that of mine, but that of the foreigner. — Which glove have you? — I have his glove. — Which chair has the foreigner? — He has his own. — Who has my good candle? — This man has it. — Who has that looking-glass? — That foreigner has it. — What has your servant? — He has the tree of this garden. — Has he that man's book? — He has not the book of that man, but that of this boy. — Which ox has this peasant? — He has that of your neighbor. — Have I your letter or his? — You have neither mine nor his, but that of your friend. — Have you this horse's hay? — I have not its hay, but its shoe. — Has your brother my note or his own? — He has that of the sailor. — Has this foreigner my glove or his own? — He has neither yours nor his own, but that of his friend. — Are you hungry or thirsty? — I am neither hungry nor thirsty, but sleepy. — Is he sleepy or hungry? — He is neither sleepy nor hungry, but tired. — Am I right or wrong? — You are neither right nor wrong, but your good boy is wrong. — Have I the good or the bad knife? — You have neither the good nor the bad, but the ugly (one). — What have I? — You have nothing good, but something bad. — Who has my ass? — The peasant has it.

Lesson XII. — PENSUM DUODECIMUM.

OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

A. There are three interrogative pronouns in Latin, viz.: 1) the substantive *quĭs?* (masc. & fem.) "who?" *quĭd?* "what?" 2) the adjective *quī, quae, quŏd?* "which?" and 3) *ŭtĕr, utră, utrŭm?* "which of the two?" They are thus inflected: —

Quĭs? quĭd? *Who? what?*

Nom.	*who? what?*	quĭs?	quĭd?
Gen.	*whose? of what?*	cūjŭs?	cūjŭs rei?*
Dat.	*to whom? to what?*	cuī?	cuī rei?
Acc.	*whom? what?*	quĕm?	quĭd?
Voc.	—— ——	——	——
Abl.	*with whom? with what?*	quō?	quā rē?

Quī, quae, quod? *Which? what?*

Nom.	*which? what?*	quī	quae	quŏd?
Gen.	*of which* or *what?*		cūjŭs?	
Dat.	*to which* or *what?*		cuī?	
Acc.	*which? what?*	quĕm	quăm	quŏd?
Voc.	—— ——	——	——	——
Abl.	*with which* or *what?*	quō	quā	quō?†

Utĕr, utrā, utrŭm? *Which of the two?*

Nom.	ŭtĕr	utrā	utrŭm?
Gen.		utrĭus?‡	
Dat.		utrī?	
Acc.	utrŭm	utrăm	utrŭm?
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	utrō	utrā	utrō?

Remarks.

1. The emphatic *nĕm* affixed to either of these pronouns gives animation to the inquiry; as *quisnĕm?* who, pray? *quidnĕm?* what then? *quinĕm, quaenĕm, quodnĕm?* which, pray?

2. The general rule is that *quis* should stand substantively for both genders, and *qui, quae* adjectively; as, *quis?* who? *qui vir?* which (or what) man? *quae femina?* what woman? But this distinction is frequently disregarded, especially for the sake of euphony; e. g. *qui* (for *quis*) *sis considera*, consider who you are; *quis* (for *qui*) *iste tantus casus?* what is this great calamity of yours?

3. Instead of *quod* in the same case with its substantive, we may

---

* On this use of *rei*, see note, page 29.

† There is an obsolete ablative *quī* for every gender, yet in use in forms like *quicum* (= *quīcum* or *quōcum*, with whom, with which), and adverbially in the sense of *how?* e. g. *Quī fit?* How comes it? *Quī tibi id facere licuit?* How could that have been lawful for you?

‡ The following nine adjectives are pronominals, and their compounds form the genitive in *ĭus*, and the dative in *ī*: *ūnŭs, sōlus, tōtus, ullus; ŭtĕr, neutĕr, alterĕr, nullus*, and *ălius*. Of these, *alter* alone has *alterius*, the rest have *ĭus* in prose and sometimes *ius* in poetry.

use *quid* partitively with the genitive; as *quod saccharum?* or *quid sacchari?*

4. Instead of the genitive *cujus*, "whose" (both interrogative and relative), the adjective *cujus, a, um* is sometimes employed; as *cujus liber? cuja mensa? cujum foenum?* whose book, &c. But this mode of expression is antiquated, and scarcely used except in law.

5. To *quis?* correspond in the answer the pronominal adjectives *alius*, another (one); *ullus*, any one; and *nullus*, no one. To *uter?* we reply with *alter*, the one of two, the other; *neuter*, neither of (the) two; *alteruter*, the one or the other; *utervis* and *uterlibet*, each of the two; and the compound relative *utercunque*, whichever of the two.

6. These pronouns are used precisely in the same manner when the question becomes *indirect*, in which case, however, the verb must be in the subjunctive; e. g. *Quis est?* who is it? *nescio quis sit*, I do not know who it is (may be); *dic mihi, uter habeat*, tell me who has; *uter habeat, nescio*, I know not who has (lit. may have). (Vide Lesson XXX. *C.*)

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

B. The relative *quī, quae, quŏd*, "who," "that *or* which," is inflected like the interrogative of the same form. Relatives always agree with their antecedents in gender and number:—

The man, who, whose, to whom, whom, by whom.	Vír, quĭ, cújus, cuĭ, quém, quô.
The woman, who, whose, to whom, whom, by whom.	Fémĭna, quaê, cújus, cuĭ, quám, quâ.
The affair, which, of which, to which, which, with which.	Negótĭum, quŏd, cújus, cuĭ, quŏd, quô.
Have you the hat which my brother has?	Habêsne tû pĭleum, quem frâter méus hábet?
I have not the hat which your brother has.	Nôn hábeo pĭleum, quém frâter túus hábet. Quém hábet frâter túus pĭleum nôn hábeo.*
Have you the gold which I have?	Án hábes aûrum, quŏd égo hábeo?
I have the gold which you have.	Hábeo aûrum, quŏd tû hábes. Quŏd tû aûrum hábes, ĭd et égo hábeo.*

C. Obs. Of the relative *qui, quae, quod* there are two compounds, *quicunque* and *quisquis*, "whoever," "every one who," of which the

* The general rule is that *the Relative should be placed after its antecedent, and as near as possible to it.* The clauses, however, are frequently inverted; as, *Terra, quod accepit, (id) nunquam sine usurâ reddit*, The earth never returns without usury what it has received.

former is declined like the simple pronoun (with the syllable *cunque* affixed to each case); as, *quicunque*, *quaecunque*, *quodcunque*, gen. *cujuscunque*, &c. — The latter has a double inflection: *quisquis* (masc. & fem.), *quidquid* or *quicquid* (neut.). E. g. *Quisquis ille est*, "whoever he is (may be)." *Quicunque* is est, *ei* me profiteor inimicum, "*Whoever* he may be, I profess myself an enemy *to him*."

OF DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

D. Determinative pronouns are such as serve to point out the antecedent of a relative. They are in Latin: *is, ea, id*, "he, she, *or* it," "that *or* the one"; the demonstrative *ille, illa, illud*, "the," "that *or* the one"; and the compound *idem, eadem, idem*, "the same." They are thus inflected: —

Is, ille — qui, &c., *that* or *the one, which.*

	Masculine.			*Feminine.*			*Neuter.*		
Nom.	ĭs,	illĕ	— quī	ĕă,	illă	— quae	ĭd,	illŭd	— quŏd
Gen.	ējus,	illĭŭs	— cūjŭs	ējŭs,	illĭŭs	— cūjŭs	ējŭs,	illĭŭs	— cūjŭs
Dat.	ēī,	illī	— cuī	ēī,	illī	— cuī	ēī,	illī	— cuī
Acc.	ĕŭm,	illăm	— quĕm	ĕăm,	illăm	— quăm	ĭd,	illŭd	— quŏd
Voc.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Abl.	ēō,	illō	— quō.	ēā,	illā	— quā.	ēō,	illō	— quō.

I have that *or* the one which you have (*masc.* & *fem.*).	Hábeo éum *or* íllum (éam *or* íllam), quém (quám) tû hábes. Est míhi ís *or* ílle (éa *or* ílla), quî (quae) tíbī ést.
I have that *or* the one which you have (*neut.*).	Hábeo íd (íllud), quód tû hábes. Est míhi íd (íllud), quód tíbī ést.
Which horse have you?	Quém équum hábes? Quís ést tíbī équus?
I have that which your friend has.	Hábeo éum (íllum), quém amícus túus hábet.
Have you not the light which I have?	Nónne hábes lûmen, quód égo hábeo?
I have that (the one) which you have.	Hábeo íd (íllud), quód tû hábes.

E. The determinative *ĭdem, ĕădĕm, ĭdĕm*, "the same," "the very one," is a compound of *is, ea, id* and the syllable *dem*. It is thus inflected: —

Idem, eădem, ĭdem, *the same* — quī, *which.*

Nom.	*the same*	īdĕm,	ĕădĕm, ĭdĕm	— quī,	quae, quŏd
Gen.	*of the same*		ējusdĕm	— cūjŭs	
Dat.	*to the same*		ēīdĕm	— cuī	
Acc.	*the same*	ĕundĕm,	ĕandĕm, ĭdĕm	— quĕm,	quăm, quŏd
Voc.	*O the same*	īdĕm,	eădĕm, ĭdĕm	— quī,	quae, quŏd
Abl.	*with the same.*	eōdĕm,	eādĕm, eōdĕm	— quō,	quā, quō.

Have you the same horse which I have ?	Habêsne tû eúndem équum, quém égo háibeo ? Éstne tíbi ídem équus, qui míhi (ést) ?
I have the same.	Hábeo eúndem. Ést míhi ídem.
Which coat has the man ?	Quám tógam hábet vír ílle ? Quaê ést vírō ílli tóga ?
He has the same which you have.	Eándem hábet, quám tû (hábes). Ést éi éădem *ăc* tíbi.

F. Obs. The pronoun *ĭdem* serves to express the identity of two things, and is followed either by the relative *quī, quae, quŏd*, or by one of the particles *ăc, atque, ŭt, quăm* (= the English "as"), *cŭm* (= "with"), *quăsĭ* (= "as if"), &c.

Has he the same corn which you have? Has he the same corn *as* you (*with* you) ?	Habétne ílle *ídem* fruméntum, *quód* tû hábes ? Éstne éi *ídem* fruméntum *ăc* (or *átque, quám*) tíbi (or *têcum* *) ?
He has not the same which I have. He has not the same as I (with me).	Nôn ídem hábet, quód égo hábeo. Éi nôn ést ídem útque míhi (mêcum).
The carriage.	Currŭs, ūs, *m.*; pilentum, i, *n.*
The house.	Dŏmŭs, ūs, *f.*; aedēs, ium, *pl. f.* (Vide Lesson XVII. *D.*)
Which carriage have you ?	Quém hábes cúrrum ? Quód ést tíbi pílentum ?
I have that which your friend has.	Éum hábeo, quém amícus túus hábet. Míhi ést íd, quód ést amíco túo.
Has he the same house which I have ?	Núm hábet ílle eándem dómum, quám et égo hábeo ?
He has not the same.	(Eándem) nôn hábet.

Exercise 13.

Have you the garden which I have ? — I have not the one that you have. — Which looking-glass have you ? — I have the one which your brother has. — Has he the book that your friend has ? — He has not the one which my friend has. — Which candle has he ? — He has that of his neighbor. — He has the one that I have. — Has he this tree or that one ? — He has neither this nor that, but the one which I have. — Which ass has the man ? — He has the

* The preposition *cum*, "with," generally stands *before* the case governed by it; but it is suffixed to the pronominal ablatives *me, te, nob's, vobis*, which are always *mêcum, têcum, nôbiscum, vôbiscum*.

one that his boy has. — Has the stranger your chair or mine? — He has neither yours nor mine; but he has his friend's good chair. — Have you the glove which I have, or the one that my tailor has? — I have neither the one which you have, nor the one which your tailor has, but my own. — Has your shoemaker my fine shoe, or that of his boy? — He has neither yours nor that of his boy, but that of the good stranger. — Which house has the baker? — He has neither yours nor mine, but that of his good brother. — Which carriage have I? — Have I mine or that of the peasant? — You have neither yours nor that of the peasant; you have the one which I have. — Have you my fine carriage? — I have it not; but the Frenchman has it? — What has the Frenchman? — He has nothing. — What has the shoemaker? — He has something fine. — What has he fine? — He has his fine shoe. — Is the shoemaker right? — He is not wrong; but this neighbor, the baker, is right. — Is your horse hungry? — It is not hungry, but thirsty. — Have you my ass's hay, or yours? — I have that which my brother has. — Has your friend the same horse that my brother has? — He has not the same horse, but the same coat. — Has he my umbrella? — He has it not.

Lesson XIII. — PENSUM TERTIUM DECIMUM.

OF THE PLURAL OF SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

A. The nominative plural of the five declensions is characterized by the following terminations: —

1. Substantives and adjectives of the first declension have the nominative in *ae*, and the genitive in *ārŭm*; as *mensae, mensārŭm; bŏnae, bŏnārŭm.*

2. Masculines (and feminines) of the second declension form their plural in *ī*, neuters in *ă*. The genitive of both is *ōrŭm.* E. g. *dŏmĭnī, dŏmĭnōrum; pŭĕrī, pŭĕrōrŭm; fīlă, fīlōrŭm; bŏnī*, neut. *bŏnă, bŏnōrŭm.*

3. Masculines and feminines of the third declension change the *ĭs* of the genitive singular into *ēs*, neuters, into *ă* or *ĭă.* The genitive of this declension is *ŭm* or *ĭŭm.* E. g. *lăpĭdĭs*, pl. *lăpĭdēs, lăpĭdŭm; vestĭs*, pl. *vestēs, vestĭŭm; pistōrĭs*, pl. *pistōrēs, pistōrŭm; căpĭtĭs*, pl. *căpĭtă, căpĭtŭm; turpĭs*, pl. *turpēs*, neut. *turpĭă*, gen. *turpĭŭm.*

4. Masculines and feminines of the fourth declension retain the *ūs* of the genitive singular, and neuters (in *ū*) assume the termination *ŭa.* The genitive plural of this declension is uniformly *ŭum.* E. g. *fructūs, fructŭum; cornŭa, cornŭum.*

5. Nouns of the fifth declension form their plural in *ēs*, and their genitive in *ērŭm*; as *rēs, rērŭm; diēs, diērŭm.*

The following list exhibits the nominative and genitive plural of the majority of substantives thus far used in this book, according to their respective declensions:—

FIRST DECLENSION.

The husbandmen.	Agrĭcŏlae,	ārum.
The candles.	Candēlae,	"
The letters.	Epistŏlae,	"
The hens.	Gallĭnae,	"
The lamps.	Lūcernae,	"
The grains.	Micae,	"
The pens.	*Pennae,	"
The notes.	Schĕdŭlae,	"
The brooms.	Scōpae,	"
The chairs.	Sellae,	"
The horse-shoes.	*Sōlĕae ferrĕae,	"

SECOND DECLENSION.

The friends.	Amīci,	ōrum.
The asses.	Asĭni,	"
The cheeses.	Cāsĕi,	"
The nails.	Clāvi,	"
The cooks.	Cŏqui,	"
The knives.	Cultri,	"
The corks.	*Embŏli,	"
The carpenters.	Făbri tignārii,	"
The servants.	Fămŭli,	"
	Mĭnistri,	"
The Frenchmen.	Francogalli,	"
The gardens.	Horti,	"
The books.	Libri,	"
The hammers.	Mallĕi,	"
The eyes.	Ŏcŭli,	"
The buttons.	*Orbĭcŭli fibulatōrii,	"
The strangers.	Pĕregrīni,	"
The hats.	*Pilĕi, *m.*	"
The chickens.	Pulli gallĭnācĕi,	"
The bags.	Sacci,	"
The pencils.	*Stŭli cerussāti,	"
The men.	Vĭri,	"
The neighbors.	Vicĭni,	"
The canes.	Bacŭla,	"
The gloves.	Digitābŭla,	"
The threads.	Fĭla,	"
The grains.	Grāna,	"
The carriages.	Pilenta,	"
The knives.	Scalpra,	"

The looking-glasses.	*Spĕcŭla, ōrum.
The umbrellas.	*Umbrācŭla, "

THIRD DECLENSION.

The youths.	Adŏlescentes, ĭum, *m.*
The trees.	Arbŏres, um, *f.*
The birds.	Āves, ĭum, *f.*
The oxen.	Bŏves, bŏum, *m.* & *f.*
The dogs.	Cănes, um, *m.* & *f.*
The brothers.	Frātres, um, *m.*
The men.	Hŏmĭnes, um, *m.*
The strangers.	Hospĭtes, um, *m.*
The young men.	Jŭvĕnes, um, *m.*
The lamps.	Lampădes,* um, *f.*
The merchants.	Mercātōres, um, *m.*
The ships.	Nāves, ĭum, *f.*
The sheep.	Ŏves, ĭum, *f.*
The (different sorts of) bread.	Pānes, um, *m.*
The feet.	Pĕdes, um, *m.*
The bakers.	Pistōres, um, *m.*
The (different sorts of) salt	Sāles, ĭum, *m.* Sālĭa, " *n.*
The tailors.	Sartōres, um, *m.*
The canes.	Scĭplōnes, um, *m.*
The shoemakers.	Sūtōres, um, *m.*
The rams.	Vervēces, um, *m.*
The garments.	Vestes, ĭum, *f.*
The birds.	Volucres, um, *m.* & *f.*
The heads.	Căpĭta, um, *n.*
The lights.	Lūmĭna, um, *n.*
The stockings.	*Tĭbĭālĭa, ĭum, *n.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

The carriages.	Currus, ŭum, *m.*
The houses.	Dōmus, ŭum, *f.*

B. The following paradigms may serve as examples of the declension of the plural number.

1. PLURAL OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Mensae, *tables;* fīlĭae, *the daughters;* nautae, *sailors.*

NOM.	mensae	fīlĭae	nautae
GEN.	mensārum	fīlĭārum	nautārum
DAT.	mensīs	fīlĭābŭs	nautīs
ACC.	mensās	fīlĭās	nautās
VOC.	mensae	fīlĭae	nautae
ABL.	mensīs.	fīlĭābŭs.†	nautīs.

* The plural of this noun is likewise partly Greek : N. *lampădes*, G. *-ădum*, D. *-ădibus*, Acc. *-ădes* or *-ădas*, V. *-ădes*, Abl. *-ădibus*.

† This form of the dative and ablative is the best for *dea* and *filia*, in order

REMARK. — In the plural of every declension the nominative and vocative, and the dative and ablative, end always alike.

2. PLURAL OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Ĕquī, *the horses;* librī, *the books;* candēlābrŭ, *the candlesticks.*

NOM.	ĕquī	librī	candēlābră
GEN.	ĕquōrŭm	librōrŭm	candēlābrōrŭm
DAT.	ĕquīs	librīs	candēlābrīs
ACC.	ĕquōs	librōs	candēlābră
VOC.	ĕquī	librī	candēlābră
ABL.	ĕquīs.	librīs.	candēlābrīs.

The *pl.* lĭbĕrī, *children*, and the plural of dĕus, *a god*, are thus declined: —

NOM.	lĭbĕrī	dĕī, dīī *or* dī
GEN.	lĭberōrum *or* liberum *	dĕōrum *or* dĕum *
DAT.	lĭbĕrīs	dĕīs, dīīs *or* dīs,
ACC.	lĭbĕrōs	dĕōs
VOC.	lĭbĕrī	dĕī, dīī *or* dī
ABL.	lĭbĕrīs.	dĕīs, dīīs *or* dīs.

3. PLURAL OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Hŏmĭnēs, *men;* pistōrēs, *bakers;* vestēs, *garments;* nāvēs, *the ships.*

NOM.	hŏmĭnēs	pistōrēs	vestēs	nāvēs
GEN.	hŏmĭnŭm	pistōrum	vestĭŭm	nāvĭŭm
DAT.	hŏmĭnĭbŭs	pistōrĭbŭs	vestĭbŭs	nāvĭbŭs
ACC.	hŏmĭnēs	pistōrēs	vestēs	nāvēs
VOC.	hŏmĭnēs	pistōrēs	vestēs	nāvēs
ABL.	hŏmĭnĭbŭs.	pistōrĭbŭs.	vestĭbŭs.	nāvĭbŭs.

Lūmĭnă, *lights;* tĭbĭālĭă, *stockings;* poëmăta, n., *poems.*

NOM.	lūmĭnă	tĭbĭālĭă	poëmătă
GEN.	lūmĭnŭm	tĭbĭālĭŭm	poëmătŭm
DAT.	lūmĭnĭbŭs	tĭbĭālĭbŭs	poëmătĭs
ACC.	lūmĭnă	tĭbĭālĭă	poëmătă
VOC.	lūmĭnă	tĭbĭālĭă	poëmătă
ABL.	lūmĭnĭbŭs.	tĭbĭālĭbŭs.	poëmătĭs.

---

to distinguish them from the same cases of *dĕus* and *fĭlius* of the second declension. So the words *anĭma*, the soul; *lĭbertă*, a freed-woman; *nătă*, daughter; *mŭlă*, a she-mule; *ĕquă*, a mare; *asĭna*, a she-ass. — may have *ābus* instead of *is*, and for the same reason. The numerals *dŭō*, two, and *ambō*, both, have *duābus* and *ambābus* regularly.

* So also *fabrum*, *socium*, *decemvirum*, instead of *fabrorum*, &c. This con-

Adolescentēs, *young men*; cănēs, *dogs*; bŏvēs, *oxen*.

Nom.	ădŏlescentēs	cănēs	bŏvēs
Gen.	ădŏlescentĭŭm	cănŭm	bŏŭm
Dat.	ădŏlescentĭbŭs	cănĭbŭs	būbŭs *or* bōbŭs
Acc.	ădŏlescentēs	cănēs	bŏvēs
Voc.	ădŏlescentēs	cănēs	bŏvēs
Abl.	ădŏlescentĭbŭs.	cănĭbŭs.	būbŭs *or* bōbŭs.

Remarks.

1. The normal termination for the Nom., Acc., and Voc. *pl.* of neuters is *ă*. Some, however, have always *ĭă*. They are: 1.) Those ending in *e*, *al*, *ar*, as *mărĭa*, *sālĭa*, *calcārĭa*, from *măre*, the sea, *sāl*, salt, and *calcăr*, a spur; 2.) All participles in *ns* and such adjectives as have either *ĭ* or else *ĕ* or *ĭ* in the ablative singular, comparatives excepted, as *ămantĭa*, *ēsŭrĭentĭa*, *pārĭa*, *fācĭlĭa*, *turpĭa*, from *ămans*, *ēsŭrĭens*, *pār*, *fācĭle*, *turpe*. But we say *mājōra*, *doctĭōra*, from the comp. *mājor*, greater, *doctĭor*, more learned.

2. The general termination of the genitive plural is *ŭm*; but the following have *ĭŭm*: —

a) All those which have *ĭa* in the nominative plural, as *mărĭum*, *calcārĭum*, *ămantĭum*, *fācĭlĭum*, *turpĭum*.

b) Words in *ēs* and *ĭs* which do not increase in the genitive singular (i. e. which receive no additional syllable), as *nāvis*, *nāvĭum*; *vestis*, *vestĭum*; *nūbēs*, *nūbĭum*; except *vātēs*, *strŭes*, *cānis*, *pānis*, and *jŭvĕnis*, which have *vātum*, *strŭum*, *cānum*, &c.

c) Of nouns in *er* some have *ĭum*, as *imber*, *imbrĭum*; *linter*, *lintrĭum*; *venter*, *ventrĭum*; *ūtĕr*, *ūtrĭum*; others again have *ŭm*, as *patrum*, *matrum*, *fratrum*, *accĭpĭtrum*, from *păter*, *māter*, &c. — *Căro* has *carnĭum*, and *sĕnex*, *sĕnum*.

d) Many monosyllables, especially those ending in *s* and *x* with a consonant preceding; as *dens*, *dentĭum*; *mons*, *montĭum*; *merx*, *merchandĭum*; *lis*, *lītĭum*; *ŏs*, *ossĭum*; *nox*, *noctĭum*; *vis*, *virĭum*, &c.

e) Dissyllables and polysyllables in *ns* and *rs* have generally *ium* and sometimes *um*; as *cŏhors*, *cŏhortĭum*; *clĭens*, *clientĭum*; *ădŏlescens*, *ădŏlescentĭum*; *sapĭens*, *sapientĭum*; but *parentes*, *parentum*.

3. In the dative and ablative plural, Greek nouns in *ma* have usually *ĭs*, sometimes however *ĭbŭs*; as *poëma*, *poëmătĭs* or *poëmătĭbus*; *diploma*, *diplomătĭs* or *diplomătĭbŭs*, &c.

4. The accusative plural of those words which have *ium* in the genitive is among some writers *ĭs* or *eis*, instead of *ēs*; as *artĭs*, *civis*, *omnĭs*, instead of *artēs*, *civēs*, &c.

---

tracted genitive (commonly but incorrectly printed *ŭm*) is the common form of names of measures, weights, and coins, as *nummum*, *sestertĭum*, *denarĭum*, *cadum*, *medimnum*, *modium*, *jugerum*, *talentum*, the regular genitive plural of *nummus*, *sestertĭus*, &c The poets extend this form to names of nations, and say *Argivum*, *Danaum*, &c., in lieu of *Argivōrum*, &c.

4. Plural of the Fourth and Fifth Declensions.

Fructūs, *m.*, *fruits;* cornŭă, *n.*, *horns;* dŏmūs, *f.*, *houses;* dĭēs, *m.*, *days;* rēs, *f.*, *things.*

Nom.	fructūs	cornŭă	dŏmūs	dĭēs	rēs
Gen.	fructŭŭm	cornŭum	dŏmŭŭm	dĭērŭm	rērum
Dat.	fructĭbŭs	cornĭbŭs	dŏmĭbŭs	dĭēbŭs	rēbus
Acc.	fructūs	cornŭă	dŏmōs	dĭēs	rēs
Voc.	fructūs	cornŭă	dŏmūs	dĭēs	rē
Abl.	fructĭbŭs.	cornĭbŭs.	dŏmĭbŭs.	dĭēbŭs.	rēbus.

Rem. 1. Some nouns of the fourth declension have *ŭbus* instead of *ĭbus* in the dat. and abl. *pl.*; as *arcŭs, arcŭbŭs; vĕrū, verŭbŭs*, &c.

2. The plural of the fifth declension is regular throughout.

5. The Plural of Adjectives.

The plural of adjectives is subject to the same laws as that of substantives. Those in *us*, *a*, *um*, and *er*, *ra*, *rum*, follow the inflection of the first and second declensions, and the rest that of the third. Examples:—

1. Bŏnī, bŏnae, bŏnă, *the good;* pulchrī, pulchrae, pulchră, *the beautiful.*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bŏnī	bŏnae	bŏnă
Gen.	bŏnōrum	bŏnārum	bŏnōrum
Dat.	bŏnīs	bŏnīs	bŏnīs
Acc.	bŏnōs	bŏnās	bŏnă
Voc.	bŏnī	bŏnae	bŏnă
Abl.	bŏnīs	bŏnīs	bŏnīs.
Nom.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchră
Gen.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārŭm	pulchrōrŭm
Dat.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Acc.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchră
Voc.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchră
Abl.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs.

Like *bŏnī, ae, a*, decline *mĕī, mĕae, mĕă*, my, mine; *tŭī, tŭae, tŭă*, thy (your), thine (yours), &c. Like *pulchrī, rae, ra: mĭsĕrī, mĭsĕrae, mĭsĕră*, the miserable, &c.

2. Dēformēs, dēformĭa, *the ugly;* ācrēs, ācrĭa, *the fierce.*

	Masc. & Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. & Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	dēformēs	dēformĭă	ācrēs	ācrĭă
Gen.	deformĭŭm	deformĭum	ācrĭŭm	ācrĭŭm
Dat.	deformĭbŭs	deformĭbŭs	ācrĭbŭs	ācrĭbŭs

Acc.	deformēs	deformĭă	ācrēs	ācrĭă
Voc.	deformēs	deformĭă	ācrēs	ācrĭă
Abl.	deformĭbŭs	deformĭbŭs.	ācrĭbŭs	ācrĭbŭs.

Remark. — The general rule is that all adjectives of the third declension have *ĭa* in the neuter plural and *ĭum* in the genitive. — Like *deformes* are inflected *vīlēs*, *turpēs*, and all adjectives in *is*, *e*; like *ācrēs*, all those ending in *er*, *ris*, *re*.

3. Fēlīcēs, fēlīcĭă, *happy*; vĕtĕrēs, vĕtĕră, *old*; sapĭentēs, sapĭentĭa, *wise*.

Nom.	fēlīces	fēlīcĭă	vĕtĕrēs	vĕtĕră	sapĭentēs -tĭa
Gen.	fēlīcĭŭm	fēlīcĭum	vĕtĕrŭm	vĕtĕrŭm	sapĭentĭŭm *or* -um
Dat.	fēlīcĭbŭs	fēlīcĭbŭs	vĕtĕrĭbŭs	vĕtĕrĭbŭs	sapĭentĭbŭs
Acc.	fēlīcēs	fēlīcĭă	vĕtĕrēs	vĕtĕră	sapĭentēs -tĭa
Voc.	fēlīcēs	fēlīcĭă	vĕtĕrēs	vĕtĕră	sapĭentēs -tĭa
Abl.	fēlīcĭbŭs	fēlīcĭbŭs.	vĕtĕrĭbŭs	vĕtĕrĭbŭs.	sapĭentĭbŭs.

Remark. — Adjectives of one termination, including participles in *ns*, generally have *ĭă* in the neuter plural and *ĭŭm* in the genitive. Some, however, have *ă* instead of *ĭă* in the nominative and accusative, as *vĕtĕră*, *plūra*, and comparatives generally; e. g. *felicĭōră*, *majōră*, &c. — Exceptions to the genitive in *ium* are: 1) such as have *e* only in the abl. sing., as *paupĕrum*, *supersĭtum*; 2) compounds of *facio* and *capio*, or of such nouns as have *ŭm* in the gen. pl., as *ancĭpĭtum*, *inŏpum*, *quadrŭpĕdum*, &c.; 3) the following adjectives have likewise *ŭm*: *caelebs*, *cĕlĕr*, *cĭcŭr*, *compŏs*, *impŏs*, *dĭvēs*, *mĕmŏr*, *immĕmŏr*, *supplex*, *ūbĕr*, *vĕtŭs*, and *vĭgĭl*; 4) participles in *ns* sometimes have *um* among the poets.

C. The following table exhibits the terminations of the five declensions through all the cases, singular and plural.

1. Terminations of the Singular.

	I.	II.		III.	IV.		V.
			Neut.			*Neut.*	
Nom.	ă (ē, ās, ēs)*	ŭs, ĕr,	ŭm (os, on)	a, e, o, c, l, n, r, s, t, x	ŭs,	ū	ēs
Gen.	ae† (ēs)	ī		ĭs	ūs		ēī
Dat.	ae	ō		ī	ūī		ēī
Acc.	ăm (ēn)	ŭm		ĕm, ĭm	ŭm,	ū	ĕm
Voc.	ă (ē)	ĕ, ĕr,	ŭm	Like Nom.	ŭs,	ū	ēs
Abl.	ā (ē).*	ō.		ĕ (ī).	ū.		ē.

* Of the nouns in *e*, *as*, *es* of this declension no examples have as yet been given. They are mostly of Greek origin, and will be considered hereafter.

† Of this there is also an ancient form in *āī*, as *aulāī*, for *aulae*, from *aula* a hall. But this is not used except in poetry.

2. Terminations of the Plural.

	I.	II.		III.		IV.	V.
			Neut.		*Neut.*	*Neut.*	
Nom.	ae	ī,	ă	ēs,	ă (ĭă)	ūs, ŭă	ēs
Gen.	ārŭm	ōrŭm		ŭm (ĭŭm)		ŭŭm	ērŭm
Dat.	īs (ābŭs)	īs		ībŭs		ībŭs	ēbŭs
Acc.	ās	ōs,	ă	ēs,	ă (ĭă)	ūs, ŭă	ēs
Voc.	ae	ī,	ă	ēs,	ă (ĭă)	ūs, ŭă	ēs
Abl.	īs (ābŭs).	īs.		ībŭs.		ībŭs.	ēbŭs.

Remark. — With respect to the quantity of the terminations of the plural number, the following rules may serve to guide the learner: —

1. *I* final is always long, and *a* final always short, as *dŏmĭnī*, *lĭbrī*, *bŏnă*, *fĭlă*.

2. The *is* of the dative and ablative plural of the first and second declensions is long, as *taénĭīs*, *dŏmĭnīs*, *candelābrīs*.

3. The terminations *es* and *os* are long, as *cānēs*, *lăpĭdēs*, *dŏmĭnōs*, *lĭbrōs*.

4. The vowel before the *m* final in all Latin words is generally considered short, as *lăpĭdĕm*, *cānĕm*, *pânĕm*, *dŏmĭnōrŭm*.

5. The *us* of the plural of the fourth declension is long, but in *ābus*, *ēbus*, *ĭbus* it is short; as *frŭctūs*, *mănŭs*; *frŭctĭbŭs*, *diēbŭs*, *hŏmĭnĭbŭs*.

Examples.

The good boys.	Nom. Púĕrī bónī. Acc. Púĕrōs bónōs.
The fine tables.	Nom. Ménsae púlchrae. Acc. Ménsās púlchrās.
The bad boys.	Nom. Púĕrī nêquăm. Acc. Púĕrōs nêquăm.
The pretty dogs.	Nom. Cánēs venústī. Acc. Cánēs venústōs.
The ugly dogs.	Nom. & Acc. Cánēs defórmēs.
The old stockings.	Nom. & Acc. Tibĭállă vétĕră.
My silver candlesticks.	Nom. & Acc. Candelábră méă argéntĕă.
Your good books.	Nom. Líbrī túī bónī. Acc. Líbrōs túōs bónōs.
Have you those fine tables?	Núm hábes ménsas íllas púlchras?
I have them not.	Nôn hábeo.
Have you pretty dogs?	Écquid tíbi súnt * cánes venústi? Habêsne cánes venústos?

* When the noun is in the plural, *sunt*, "there are," must take the place of the singular *est*.

I have pretty dogs.	{ Súnt mĭhĭ cánes venústi. { Hábeo (cánes venústos).
Have you my good books?	Tenêsne tû líbros méos bónos?
I have your good books.	Téneo (líbros túos bónos).
Have you my silver candlesticks?	Habêsne candēlábra méa argéntĕa?
I have them not.	Nôn hábeo.
Have I them?	Án égo hábeo?
You have them not.	Nôn hábes.

Exercise 14.

Have you the tables? — Yes, sir, I have the tables? — Have you my tables? — No, sir, I have not your tables. — Have I your buttons? — You have my buttons. — Have I your fine houses? — You have my fine houses? — Has the tailor the buttons? — He has not the buttons, but the threads. — Has your tailor my good buttons? — My tailor has your good gold buttons. — What has the boy? — He has the gold threads. — Has he my gold or my silver threads? — He has neither your gold nor your silver threads. — Has the Frenchman the fine houses or the good notes? — He has neither the fine houses nor the good notes. — What has he? — He has his good friends. — Has this man my fine umbrellas? — He has not your fine umbrellas, but your good coats. — Has any one my good letters? — No one has your good letters. — Has the tailor's son my good knives or my good thimbles? — He has neither your good knives nor your good thimbles, but the ugly coats of the stranger. — Have I your friend's good ribbons? — You have not my friend's good ribbons, but my neighbor's fine carriage. — Has your friend the shoemaker's pretty sticks, or my good tailor's pretty dogs? — My friend has my good shoemaker's fine books; but he has neither the shoemaker's pretty sticks nor your good tailor's pretty dogs. — Is your neighbor right or wrong? — He is neither right nor wrong. — Is he thirsty or hungry? — He is neither thirsty nor hungry. — Is he tired or sleepy? — He is sleepy. — Am I sleepy? — You are not sleepy. — What have I? — You have my fine notes. — You have the chairs of my neighbor. — Have you the knives of my friend? — I have not the knives of your friend, but the dogs of my neighbor.

Lesson XIV. — PENSUM QUARTUM DECIMUM.

OF THE PLURAL OF PRONOUNS.

A. The plural of the personal pronouns *ego* and *tu* is *nōs*, "we," and *vōs*, "you." The remaining cases are: —

	Masc. & Fem.		*Masc. & Fem.*
NOM. *we*	nōs	*ye* or *you*	vōs
GEN. *of us*	nostrum *or* nostrī	*of you*	vestrum *or* vestrī
DAT. *to us*	nōbīs	*to you*	vōbīs
ACC. *us*	nōs	*you*	vōs
VOC. ——	nōs	*O ye* or *you*	vōs
ABL. *with us*	nōbīs.	*with you*	vōbīs.

REMARK. — The difference between *nostrī*, *vestrī* and *nostrum*, *vestrum* consists in this: that the latter are chiefly used as partitive genitives after interrogatives, numerals, comparatives, and superlatives, and the former after other words; e. g. *uter nostrum?* which of us two? *nemo vestrum*, no one of you; *vestrum primus*, the first of you; but *miserēre nostrī*, pity us; *amor nostrī*, love of (towards) us; *vestrī similes*, your like (those like you).

B. The pronoun of the third person is *illī, illae, illă*, "they," of which the remaining cases are: —

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	*they*	illī	illae	illă
GEN.	*of them*	ĕōrŭm	ĕārŭm	ĕōrŭm
DAT.	*to them*		īīs *or* ĕīs	
ACC.	*them*	ĕōs	ĕās	ĕă
VOC.	——	illī	illae	illă
ABL.	*by them.*		īīs *or* ĕīs.	

C. The reflexive *sui* is the same in the plural as in the singular. The intensive *ipse* has *ipsī*, *ipsae*, *ipsă*. Thus: —

Sŭī, *of themselves.*			Ipsī, ipsae, ipsă, *ourselves, yourselves, themselves.*		
		For every gender.	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	——	—	ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
GEN.	*of themselves*	sŭī	ipsōrŭm	ipsārŭm	ipsōrŭm
DAT.	*to themselves*	sĭbi		ipsīs	
ACC.	*themselves*	sē	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
VOC.	——	—	ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
ABL.	*by themselves*	sē.		ipsīs.	

REMARK. — We thus say, as in the singular, *nos ipsi* (or fem. *ipsae*), we ourselves; *vos ipsi* (or fem. *ipsae*), you yourselves; and *illi ipsi* (or fem. *illae ipsae*) or simply *ipsi*, they themselves; *ea ipsa*, these things themselves, &c.

D. The plurals of the demonstrative pronouns *hĭc*, *ille*, *iste*, and *is*, are *hī*, *illī*, *istī*, and *ĭī*. The remaining genders and cases are as follows: —

Hī, hae, haec, *these*.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hōrŭm	hārŭm	hōrŭm
Dat.		hīs	
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec
Voc.	hī	hae	haec
Abl.		hīs.	

Illī, illae, illă, *those* (*of his*).

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
illī	illae	illă
illōrŭm	illārŭm	illōrŭm
	illīs	
illōs	illās	illă
illī	illae	illă
	illīs.	

Istī, istae, istă, *these* (*of yours*).

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	istī	istae	istă
Gen.	istōrŭm,	istārŭm,	istōrŭm
Dat.		istīs	
Acc.	istōs	istās	istă
Voc.	istī	istae	istă
Abl.		istīs.	

Iī, ĕae, ĕă, *these, those*.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
iī (ĕī)	ĕae	ĕă
ĕōrum	ĕārum	ĕōrŭm
	īīs *or* ĕīs	
ĕōs	ĕās	ĕă
iī (ĕī)	ĕae	ĕă
	īīs *or* ĕīs.	

E. The relative *quī*, *quae*, *quŏd* (and also the interrogatives of the same form) makes its plural in *quī*, *quae*, *quae*, "who, which, *or* that," or interrogatively "which? what?" Thus: —

Quī, quae, quae, *which, that; which? what?*

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	*which*	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	*of which*	quōrŭm	quārŭm	quōrŭm
Dat.	*to which*		quībŭs	
Acc.	*which*	quōs	quās	quae
Voc.	———	——	——	——
Abl.	*by which.*		quībŭs.	

Remark. — For *quĭbus*, in the relative sense, there is an antiquated form *quis* or *queis*, which is not unfrequently employed by prose-writers of a later period.

F. The plural of the determinative *is*, *ea*, *id* is the same as that of the demonstrative; that of *idem* is as follows: —

Iidem, eaedem, eădem, *the same.*

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	*the same*	īdĕm	ĕaedĕm	ĕădĕm
GEN.	*of the same*	ĕōrundĕm	ĕārundĕm	ĕōrundĕm
DAT.	*to the same*		īisdĕm *or* ĕisdĕm	
ACC.	*the same*	ĕosdĕm	ĕasdĕm	ĕădĕm
VOC.	*O the same*	īdĕm	ĕaedĕm	ĕădĕm
ABL.	*by the same.*		īisdĕm *or* ĕisdĕm.	

REMARK. — The form *iisdem* is more common than *eisdem.* The same is true of *iis, ii, eis,* and *ei.*

G. The plural of the relative in connection with the determinative *is, ea, id* (vide Lesson XII. *D.*) is as follows: —

Ii, eae, ea — qui, quae, quae, *those which.*

	Masculine.		*Feminine.*		*Neuter.*	
NOM.	ī	— quī	ĕae	— quae	ĕă	— quae
GEN.	ĕōrŭm	— quōrŭm	ĕārŭm	— quārŭm	ĕōrŭm	— quōrŭm
DAT.	īīs	— quĭbŭs	īīs	— quĭbŭs	īīs	— quĭbŭs
ACC.	ĕōs	— quōs	ĕās	— quās	ĕă	— quae
VOC.	——	——	——	——	——	——
ABL.	īīs	— quĭbŭs	īīs	— quĭbŭs	īīs	— quĭbŭs.

In the same manner decline *illī — quī, illae — quae, illă — quae,* "those which"; and *īidĕm — quī, ĕaedĕm — quae, ĕădĕm — quae,* "the same which."

I have those which you have. (Masc.) — Hăbĕo ĕōs (illōs, &c.), quōs tū hăbēs. / Sunt mihi ī (illī, &c.), qui tibi sunt.

I have those which you have. (Fem.) — Hăbĕo ĕās (illās, &c.), quās tū hăbēs. / Sunt mihi ĕae (illae, &c.), quae tibi sunt.

I have those (things) which you have. (Neut.) — Hăbĕo ĕa (illa, &c.). quae tū hăbēs. / Sunt mihi ĕă, quae tibi sunt.

The Roman.	Rōmānus, i, *m.*
The German.	Germānus, Theodiscus, i, *m.*
The Turk.	*Turca, ae, *m.*
The Italian.	Itălus, i, *m.*
The Spaniard.	Hispānus, i, *m.* / Hispanĭensis, is, *m.*
Large (tall, big).	Grandis, is, e. / Procērus, a, um.
Tall, high.	Altus, a, um.

Small, little.	Parvus, a, um. / Parvŭlus, a, um. / Pusillus, a, um.
Long.	Longus, a, um.
The small books.	Libri parvi, libelli.*
The large horses.	Ĕqui grandes (*or* procēri).
They have.	*Hábent* / *Sunt ûs.*
Have the English the fine horses of the French?	Habéntne Ángli púlchrōs Francogallôrum équōs?
They have not those of the French, but those of the Romans.	Nôn Francogallôrum séd Romanôrum équōs hábent.
Have you the books which the men have?	Habêsne tû (íllos líbros), quôs líbros hómines hábent? †

G. Obs. The antecedent of the relative is sometimes repeated in connection with the pronoun of the second clause. Sometimes it is expressed with the relative only, and sometimes (though rarely) it is entirely omitted.

I have not the books which the men have, but those which you have.	Nôn hábeo (íllos líbros), quôs (líbros) hómines hábent, éos autem hábeo, quôs tû hábes.
Have you not the same books which I have?	Nónne tû eósdem líbrōs hábes, quôs égo hábeo?
I have the same.	Eôsdem (hábeo). / Égo véro eósdem hábeo.
Which books have you?	Quôs líbrōs hábēs? / Quíd librôrum hábēs?
I have those of the Romans.	Líbros Romanôrum hábeo. (*Vide Less.* VI. *C*)
Have you these books or those?	Útrum hôs líbrōs hábēs án íllōs? / Hoscíne líbrōs hábēs án íllōs? (*Vide Less.* XI. *A. Rem.* 1.)
I have neither these nor those.	Hábĕo néque hôs néque íllōs. / (Égo) néque hôs néque íllōs hábĕo.
I have neither those of the Spaniards nor those of the Turks.	Néque Hispanôrum néc Turcârum líbrōs hábĕo. (*Cf. Less.* VI. *C.*)
Have you *what* I have?	An hábēs (íd), *quód* égo hábĕo?

* From the diminutive *libellus, i*, m., a little book, a pamphlet. (Compare Lesson XX. *E.* 7.)

† The question, "Have you the books which the men have?" may thus be expressed in several ways: 1) *Habesne tu* illos libros, *quos homines habent?* 2) *Habesne tu* illos libros, quos libros *homines habent?* 3) *Habesne tu* quos libros *homines habent?* The first of these is the most general. The antecedent is entirely suppressed in: 4) *Sunt qui* (or *quos*), for *Sunt homines qui* (or *quos*), "There are those who," "There are men whom."

H. RULE. Adjectives and pronouns of the neuter gender, both singular and plural, are frequently employed substantively, as *hoc*, "this (thing)," *illud*, "that (thing,)" *haec*, "these things," *illa*, "those things," *triste*, "a sad thing," *multa*, "many things," *omnĭa*, "all things," *summum bonum*, "the chief good."

I have not what you have.	Nôn hábĕo (íd), *quód* tû hábēs.
Have the men those things which you have?	Habéntne hómines *éă*, *quae* tû hábēs?
They have the same things which I myself have (the same things with myself).	*Éădem* hábent, *quae* égo ípse hábĕo. Éădem hábent *átque* égo ípse. (*Cf. Less.* XII. *F.*)

EXERCISE 15.

Have you these horses or those? — I have not these, but those. — Have you the coats of the French or those of the English? — I have not those of the French, but those of the English. — Have you the pretty sheep of the Turks or those of the Spaniards? — I have neither those of the Turks nor those of the Spaniards, but those of my brother. — Has your brother the fine asses of the Spaniards or those of the Italians? — He has neither those of the Spaniards nor those of the Italians, but he has the fine asses of the French. — Which oxen has your brother? — He has those of the Germans. — Has your friend my large letters or those of the Germans? — He has neither the one nor the other (*neque has neque illas*, or *neque illas neque alteras*). — Which letters has he? — He has the small letters which you have. — Have I these houses or those? — You have neither these nor those. — Which houses have I? — You have those of the English. — Has any one the tall tailor's gold buttons? — Nobody has the tailor's gold buttons, but somebody has those of your friend.

EXERCISE 16.

Have I the notes of the foreigners or those of my boy. — You have neither those of the foreigners nor those of your boy, but those of the great Turks. — Has the Turk my fine horse? — He has it not. — Which horse has he? — He has his own. — Has your neighbor my chicken or my sheep? — My neighbor has neither your chicken nor your sheep. — What has he? — He has nothing good. — Have you nothing fine? — I have nothing fine. — Are you tired? — I am not tired. — Which rice has your friend? — He has that of his merchant. — Which sugar has he? — He has that which I have. — Has he your merchant's good coffee or that of mine? — He has neither that of yours nor that of mine; he has his own. — Which ships has the Frenchman? — He has the ships of the English. — Which houses has the Spaniard? — He has the same which you have. — Has he my good knives? — He has your good knives. —

Has he the linen stockings which I have? — He has not the same that you have, but those of his brother. — Which books have you? — I have those of the Romans. — Are those men hungry? — They are not hungry, but thirsty. — They are neither tired nor sleepy.

Lesson XV. — PENSUM QUINTUM DECIMUM.

The glass.	Vās (*gen.* vāsis)* vitrĕum, *n.* Scўphus, i, *m.* (wine-glass).
The goblet.	Pōcŭlum, i, *n.*
The comb.	Pectĕn, ĭnis, *m.* Pectuncŭlus, i, *m.* (small comb).
Have you my small combs?	Habêsne mĕōs pectúncŭlōs?
I have them.	(Ĕōs) hábeo.
I have them not.	(Ĕōs) nôn hábeo.
Them (*those*).	NOM. ī, *ĕae*, *ĕă*. ACC. *ĕōs*, *ĕās*, *ĕă*.

A. Obs. The pronoun *them* is commonly not put in Latin, when it would have to stand in the same case as the substantive to which it relates. (Cf. page 14, *D.*)

My or *mine* (plural).	*Mĕī*, *mĕae*, *mĕă*.
Your (*thy*) or *yours*.	*Tŭī*, *tŭae*, *tŭă*.
His (*own*).	*Sŭī*, *sŭae*, *sŭă*.
His (*another man's*).	*Ējŭs*, *illīŭs* (gen. sing.).
Their (*own*) or *theirs*.	SING. Sŭŭs, sŭă, sŭŭm. PLUR. Sŭī, sŭae, sŭă.†
Their or *theirs* (of a third person).	MASC. Ĕōrŭm, illōrŭm (gen. pl.). FEM. Ĕārŭm, illārŭm "

B. The plural of the possessive pronouns *mĕus*, *tŭus*, *sŭus* is inflected like that of the adjective *bonus*. Thus: —

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	*my* or *mine*	mĕī	mĕae	mĕă
GEN.	*of my* or *mine*	mĕōrŭm	mĕārŭm	mĕōrŭm
DAT.	*to my* or *mine*		mĕīs	
ACC.	*my* or *mine*	mĕōs	mĕās	mĕă
VOC.	*O my* or *mine*	mĕī	mĕae	mĕă
ABL.	*with my* or *mine*.		mĕīs.	

---

* The plural of *vās* is *vāsa*, from another singular, *vāsum*. (See Lesson XIX. *D.* 2.)

† The reflexive adjective pronoun *suus* is equivalent to the English "his,"

Have you my fine glass?	Écquĭd hábēs vâs vítrĕum méum púlchrum?
Has he my fine glasses?	Án ílle hábet vâsa vítrĕa méa púlchra?
He has them.	Hábet.
He has them not.	(Éă) nôn hábet.
Those men have them.	Víri íllī éă hábent.
Have those men them?	Númquid éă víri íllī hábent?
They have them not.	Éă nôn hábent.
Have you my books or his (i. e. that man's)?	Habêsne líbrōs méōs án éjus (illĭus)?
I have neither yours nor his (books).	Égo néque túōs néque illĭus líbrōs hábeo.
Has he his (own) book, his (own) books?	Habétne líbrum súum, líbrōs súōs?
He has them.	(Éōs) hábet.
Have they their (own) house, their (own) houses?	Habéntne dómum súam, dómōs súās?
They have them not.	(Éās) nôn hábent.
Have you yourself their (i. e. those people's) good comb, good combs?	Án tû ípse hábes péctĭnem ĕôrum bónum, péctinēs illôrum bónōs?
I have myself their good little combs.	Égo ípse pectúncŭlōs ĕôrum bónōs hábeo.
Which carriages have you?	Quôs hábes cúrrus? / Quae piléntă hábes?
I have my own.	Hábeo méōs próprĭōs. / Méă própria hábeo.
They (those).	*Illī, illae, illă.*

C. Obs. The pronoun *they* is in Latin commonly omitted with the verb. But when the verb *sum* is employed to denote possession, the dative *iis* or *illis* must be put. E. g.:—

They have.	Habent (*with the Acc.*). / Est iis (illis) (*with the Nom. Sing.*). / Sunt iis (illis) (*with the Nom. Pl.*).
Have they the good book?	Habéntne (íllī) líbrum bónum? / Éstne īs (íllis) líber bónus?
They have the good book.	Hábent líbrum bónum. / Ést ís líber bónus.
Are they hungry? thirsty?	Esurĭúntne? Sitĭúntne?
They are not hungry (thirsty).	Nôn ēsurĭunt (sitĭunt).

when the subject of the sentence is in the *singular*, and to "their" when it is in the plural. E. g. Has *he his* book, *his* books? *Habetne librum* SUUM, *libros* SUOS? — Have *they their* book, *their* books? *Habentne librum* SUUM, *libros* SUOS?

Are they tired, sleepy?	Súntne féssī (*fem.* féssae), somnīcūlósī (*fem.* ae)?
They are sleepy.	Cúpīdi (*fem.* ae) sómnī súnt.
Are they right? wrong?	Loquuntúrne récte? Errántne?
They are neither right nor wrong.	Néque récte loquúntur néque érrant.
Are they right (morally)?	Éstne ĭis fâs? Licétne ĭis?

OF COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

D. The compound or double substantives of the Latin language are comparatively few,* and of these even, many are most commonly treated as separate words. With respect to their declension, they are divided into two classes.

1. Those of which the last component alone is inflected, as *jurisdictio* (= *jūris* + *dictio*), *ōnis*, f., the administration of justice; *jūrisconsultus*, or *jūrĕconsultus*, *i*, m., a lawyer; *plēbiscītum*, *i*, n., a vote of the people; *sĕnātūsconsultum*, *i*, n., a decree of the senate.

2. Those of which both components are inflected, either separately or combined. Such are:—

a) Jusjūrandŭm, *n.*, *an oath.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	jusjūrandŭm	jūrajurandă
Gen.	jūrisjūrandī	jūrumjūrandōrŭm
Dat.	jūrījūrandō	jūrĭbusjūrandĭs.
Acc.	jusjūrandŭm	jūrajūrandă
Voc.	jusjūrandŭm	jūrajūrandă
Abl.	jūrejūrandō	jūrĭbusjūrandĭs.†

b) Pătĕr fămĭlĭās, *or* fămĭlĭae, *m.*, *the master of a family.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	pătĕr fămĭlĭās	*or* -ae	patrēs fămĭlĭās	*or* -ārŭm
Gen.	patris fămĭlĭās	" "	patrŭm fămĭlĭās	" "
Dat.	patrī fămĭlĭās	" "	patrĭbŭs fămĭlĭās	" "
Acc.	patrem fămĭlĭās	" "	patrēs fămĭlĭās	" "
Voc.	păter fămĭlĭās	" "	patrēs fămĭlĭās	" "
Abl.	patrĕ fămĭlĭās	" "	patrĭbŭs fămĭlĭās	" "

In the same manner decline *māter famĭlĭas*, f., the mistress of a family; *fĭlĭus famĭlĭas*, m., and *fĭlĭa famĭlĭas*, f., the son, the daughter, of a family or house.

---

* This remark applies only to such compounds as are formed by the union of a noun with another or with an adjective. Compounds with particles (i. e. prepositions and adverbs) are quite numerous.

† The Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural do not occur.

c) Rēs publĭca, *f.*, *a commonwealth.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	rēs publĭca	rēs publĭcae
Gen.	rēī publĭcae	rērŭm publĭcārŭm
Dat.	rēī publĭcae	rēbŭs publĭcis
Acc.	rĕm publĭcam	rēs publĭcās
Voc.	rēs publĭcă	rēs publĭcae
Abl.	rē publĭcā	rēbŭs publĭcis.

OF IRREGULAR NOUNS.*

E. The irregular nouns of the Latin language may be divided into three general classes: — the *Indeclinable*, the *Defective*, and the *Redundant.*

Those which do not admit of any inflection, i. e. are altogether *indeclinable*, are: —

1. Greek and Latin names of the letters of the alphabet, as *alphă*, *bētă*, *gammă*, *deltă*, &c.

2. A number of substantives adopted from foreign languages, as *mannă*, *paschă*, *gummĭ*, &c.

3. Greek neuters in *ŏs* and plurals in *ē*, as *Argŏs*, *chāŏs*, *cētŏs* or *cētē*, a sea-monster, *Tempē*, &c.

4. Many Hebrew proper names, as *Bethlehem*, *Gabriel*, *Jerusalem*, *Ruth*, &c. — *Jēsŭs* has *Jēsum* in the Acc. and *Jēsū* in the remaining cases.

5. The following Latin neuters: *fās*, right; *nĕfās*, wrong; *instar*, likeness; *mānĕ*, morning; *nīhĭl*, nothing; *pārum*, too little; *pondō*, a pound (or pounds); *sĕcŭs*, sex; *sēmĭs*, half. These are generally used in the Nom. and Acc. only, except *mānĕ*, which occurs also in the ablative.

6. Infinitives, adverbs, and other particles, used substantively, as SCIRE *tŭum*, your knowing (knowledge); *ultĭmum* VALE, the last farewell; *hoc ipsum* DIU, the very word "a long time"; *istud* CRAS, that to-morrow of yours, &c.

7 To these may be added the indeclinable *adjectives: frūgī* (the obsolete dative of *frux*, which is not used), useful, fit, honest; *nēquăm*, bad; *praestō*, present, ready; *pŏtis* or *pŏtĕ* (obsolete, and only with *esse*, to be), able, capable; *sēmĭs*, and a half; and *damnus* (only in law), guilty.

F. Nouns are *defective* in case or in number. Those defective in case are: —

1. Those which want the nominative, as *dăpĭs*, of food; *dĭcĭōnĭs*,

* This examination of the irregular nouns in this and the following lessons has no necessary connection with the exercises, but is nevertheless recommended to the attention of the learner.

of dominion; *fĕmĭnĭs*, of the thigh; *frūgĭs*, of fruit; *internĕcĭōnis*, of carnage; *ŏpis*, of power; *pollĭnis*, of meal-dust; *vĭcis*, of alternation; *verbĕris*, of a lash (stripe). Many of these genitives occur in the remaining cases of both numbers.

2. A number of monosyllables which want the *genitive plural*, as *ōs, ōris*, the mouth; *vās, vădis*, bail; *glōs, glōris*, the husband's sister; *pax, pācis*, a treaty, &c.

3. Those which occur in the *Nom.* and *Acc. only*, as the indeclinable *fās, nĕfās*, &c., to which may be added the plurals *colla*, the neck; *flamĭna*, breezes; *grātēs*, thanks; *murmŭra*, murmurs, &c.

4. A number of substantives, which occur only in certain cases, as *astūs*, cunning, Abl. *astū*, Nom. & Acc. Pl. *astūs; fors*, chance, Abl. *forte*, by chance; *lŭēs*, disease, Acc. *lŭĕm*, Abl. *lŭĕ; prēces*, pl., prayers, Abl. Sing. *prēce; sătĭās* for *sătĭētās*, satiety, occurs only in the Nom. Sing. — *Vis*, might, power, wants the dative; in the remaining cases it has G. *vis*, A. *vim*, V. *vis*, A. *vi;* Pl. N. *vires*, G. *virium*, &c.

5. A number of words used in certain connections are always in a particular case, as: —

a) The Genitives *dĭcis* and *nauci* in *dicis causā*, for form's sake; *non nauci facere*, not to value a straw.

b) Certain Datives with the verb *esse*, to be, as *despĭcātui, dĭrīsui, ostentui, dŭci esse*, to be an object of contempt, to serve for division, for display, as a guide, &c.

c) The Accusatives *infĭtĭas* with *īre*, to deny; *suppĕtĭas* with *ferre*, to bring help; *vēnum* with *īre* (*or* dăre), to be offered for sale (to offer for sale).

d) The Ablatives *nātū* (by birth) in connection with *mājor, mĭnor, maxĭmus*, &c., the elder, younger, oldest, &c. (by birth); *sponte*, with *mĕā, tŭā, sŭā*, of my, thy, his own accord; *in promptu* and *in procinctu* with *esse* and *stāre*, to be ready, to stand prepared.

e) Verbal substantives in Abl. Sing. with one of the possessives *mĕō, tŭō, sŭō*, &c., as *admonĭtu, concessu* or *permissu, mandātu, jussu* (and *injussu*, &c.) *meo, tuo, suo*, at my, thy, his own request, with my, thy, his own permission, command, order, &c.

f) The Abl. Pl. *grātĭīs* (from *grātĭīs*), without reward, gratis; *ingrātĭīs*, against one's will; *fōrīs*, out of doors (to the question *where?*), which to the question *whither?* becomes *fōrās*, Acc.

6. Many nouns do not admit of the *Vocative* from the nature of their signification.

7. The *adjectives* defective in case are: —

a) Those which do not occur in the nominative; as (*sons*) *sontis*, "hurtful"; (*sēmĭnex*) *sēmĭnĕcis*, "half dead"; and a few other similar compounds. To these add (*ceterus*), *a, um* and *ludicrus, a, um*, of which the Nom. Masc. does not occur.

b) The genitive *prīmōris*, "the fore," "first," which wants the Nom. and neuter forms, and the plural *plērique*, "most," which borrows the genitive of *plurīmi*.

c) *Necesse* and the obsolete *necessum*, "necessary," which are used only in the neuter and in connection with *est*, *erat*, or some other verb; and the obsolete *volupe*, "agreeable," likewise used only with *est*, &c.

d) The vocatives *macte*, pl. *macti*, which occur as the only forms of an obsolete *mactus*, *a*, *um*, and commonly with an imperative of *esse*, in the sense of "honored," "praised," "prosperous."

EXERCISE 17.

Have you my good combs? — I have them. — Have you the good horses of the English? — I have them not. — Which brooms have you? — I have those of the foreigners. — Have you my coats or those of my friends? — I have neither yours nor those (*illas*) of your friends. — Have you mine or his? — I have his. — Has the Italian the good cheeses which you have? — He has not those which I have, but those which you have. — Has your boy my good pencils? — He has them. — Has he the carpenter's nails? — He has them not. — What has he? — He has his iron nails. — Has anybody the thimbles of the tailors? — Nobody has them. — Who has the ships of the Spaniards? — The English have them. — Have the English these ships or those? — The English have their ships. — Have your brothers my knives or theirs. — My brothers have neither your knives nor theirs. — Have I your chickens or those of your cooks? — You have neither mine nor those of my cooks. — Which chickens have I? — You have those of the good peasant. — Who has my oxen? — Your servants have them. — Have the Germans them? — The Germans have them not, but the Turks have them. — Who has my wooden table? — Your boys have it. — Who has my good bread? — Your friends have it. — Have those Italians my good letters? — They have not your good letters, but your good books. — Are they hungry or thirsty? — They are neither hungry nor thirsty, but (they are) sleepy. — Are they right or wrong? — They are wrong. — They are neither right nor wrong. — Have they your knives or those (*illos*) of the English? — They have neither mine nor those of the English. — Have I his looking-glasses or those (*illa*) of his cook? — You have neither the one nor the other (neither these nor those).*

Lesson XVI. — PENSUM SEXTUM DECIMUM.

Some, any (some one, any one).

- *Ălĭquĭs, -quă, -quŏd* or *-quĭd.*
- *Quĭdām, quaedām, quoddām* or *quiddām.*
- *Ullŭs, ă, ŭm.*
- *Nonnullŭs, ă, ŭm.*
- *Ălĭquŏt* (pl. indeclinable).

---

* The English "the former — the latter" is *ille — hic*, and "the one — the other," *alter* (or *unus*) — *alter* (or *ille*). See page 103, note ‡.

Does any? Whether any?	*Ecquĭs, ecquae, ecquŏd* or *ecquĭd?*
If any (if any one).	*Sī quĭs, sī quă, sī quŏd* or *quĭd.*
Lest any (= that no).	*Nē quĭs, nē quă, nē quŏd* or *quĭd.*

A. The indefinite pronouns *ălĭquĭs, quīdam, ullŭs, nonnullŭs, sī quis, nē quis*, and *ecquĭs?* are used either as substantives in the sense of *some one, any one, something, anything*, or as adjectives in the sense of *some* or *any*. They are thus inflected: —

Ălĭquĭs, -quă, -quŏd *or* -quĭd, *some, any* (generally).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	ălĭquĭs	ălĭquă	ălĭquŏd / ălĭquĭd	ălĭquī	ălĭquae	ălĭquă
Gen.		ălĭcūjŭs		ălĭquōrŭm	-ārŭm	-ōrŭm
Dat.		ălĭcuĭ			ălĭquĭbŭs	
Acc.	ălĭquĕm	ălĭquām	ălĭquŏd / ălĭquĭd	ălĭquōs	ălĭquās	ălĭquă
Voc.		Like Nom.			Like Nom.	
Abl.	ălĭquō	ălĭquā	ălĭquō		ălĭquĭbŭs.	

Quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* quiddam, *a certain one.*

	Singular.		
Nom.	quīdām	quaedām	quoddām / quiddām
Gen.		cūjusdām	
Dat.		cuīdām	
Acc.	quendām*	quandām	quoddām / quiddām
Voc.		Like Nom.	
Abl.	quōdām	quādām	quōdām.
		Plural.	
Nom.	quīdām	quaedām	quaedām
Gen.	quōrundām	quārundām	quōrundām
Dat.		quĭbusdām	
Acc.	quōsdām	quāsdām	quaedām
Voc.		Like Nom.	
Abl.		quĭbusdam.	

Ecquis, ecquae *or* ecqua, ecquod *or* -quid? *any one* (interrogatively).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	ecquĭs / ecquī	ecquae / ecqua	ecquŏd / ecquĭd	ecquī	ecquae	ecquae / ecquă

* The *n* instead of *m* in *quendam, quandam, quorundam,* and *quarundam* is euphonic.

GEN.		eccūjŭs		ecquōrŭm	-ārŭm	-ōrŭm
DAT.		eccuī			ecquībŭs	
ACC.	ecquĕm	ecquăm	ecquŏd / ecquīd	ecquōs	ecquās	ecquae / ecquă
VOC.	——	——	——	——	——	——
ABL.	ecquō	ecquā	ecquō.		ecquībŭs.	

Ullŭs, ullă, ullŭm, *any* (negatively).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
NOM.	ullŭs	ullă	ullŭm	ullī	ullae	ullă
GEN.		ullīŭs		ullōrŭm	ullārum	ullōrŭm
DAT.		ullī			ullīs	
ACC.	ullŭm	ullăm	ullŭm	ullōs	ullās	ullă
VOC.	——	——	——	——	——	——
ABL.	ullō	ullā	ullō.		ullīs.	

REMARKS.

1. The neuter *ălĭquod* is always used adjectively in agreement with its noun, whereas *ălĭquid* generally stands substantively; as *ălĭquod detrimentum*, some detriment; but *aliquid*, something; *aliquid boni*, something (of) good, &c. — *Aliquis* is both substantive and adjective, and is sometimes joined with *unus*; as (*unus*) *aliquis*, some one; *liber aliquis*, some book.

2. *Quĭdam* is said of individuals or objects, of the nature of which we are either ignorant, or which we do not wish to specify: "a certain (one)," "a sort of," "a certain degree of." E. g. *Quidam de meis amicis*, a certain one (some one) of my friends; *quŏdam tempŏre*, at a certain time; *quoddam commune vincŭlum*, a certain (a sort of) common bond; *quiddam boni*, (a certain) something good, a certain degree of good. — This pronoun may stand either substantively or adjectively, and *quiddam* differs from *quoddam*, like *aliquid* from *aliquod*. — The plural *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quaedam* is often used simply with the sense of *aliquot* or *nonnulli*, "some," "several."

3. Between the forms *ecquis* and *ecqui*, *ecquae* and *ecqua*, there is no appreciable difference, *ecquĭs* and *ecquī* being both used either independently in the sense of "any one," "some one," or adjectively in the sense of "any"; as *Ecquĭs* (or *ecquī*) *hic est?* Is there *any one* here? *Ecquis* (or *ecqui*) *est tibi liber?* Have you any book? The same may be said of the neuters *ecquod* and *ecquid*. The latter, however, (*ecquid*,) frequently loses all pronominal force, and serves merely to introduce a question.

4. *Ullus* is generally an adjective, and is only used in sentences involving a *negation* or *uncertainty*. Hence it is frequently preceded by *nōn*, *nĕc*, *sĭnĕ*, *sī*, *nŭm* or *numquĭd*; as *sine ullā spē*, without any hope; *si tibi est ullus amīcus*, if you have any friend; *nego tibi esse ullum amicum*, I deny that you have any friend, &c. — *Ullus*, how-

ever, becomes *positive* by a double negation in *nonnullus, a, um*, "some," as does also *nihil* in *nonnihil*, "something."

5. *Quis* is commonly put instead of *aliquis* in all sentences involving a condition, a negation, or comparison. When thus employed in the sense of *any* or *any one*, it is preceded by *si, nisi, ne, num, quo, quanto*, or *quum*; as *si quâ ratione*, if in any way; *si quid est tibi bonum*, if you have anything good; *ne quod periculum inciděret*, lest (= that no) danger might occur; *quanto quis est doctior, eo modestior*, the more learned any one is, the more modest he will be. — *Si-quis* and *nēquis* are declined exactly like *ecquis*, i. e. the fem. sing. is *sīqua* or *siquae*, and the neut. *sīquod* or *sīquid*.

6. When the substantive denotes a *quantity* or *mass* in the singular, the English "some" or "any" may be expressed by *ălĭquantum* or *ălĭquantŭlum* (with the genitive), and when it denotes *number* in the plural, by the indeclinable *ălĭquŏt* (in the same case with the noun). E. g. *alĭquantum* sacchari, some sugar; *aliquot* libri *or* libros, some books.

7. The English word "any" is often *entirely suppressed* in Latin. Thus: —

The wine.	Vīnum, i, *n.*; mērum, i, *n.* (*pure wine*).
Some (any) wine.	Vînum *or* alĭquántum víni.
Some (any) bread.	Pânem *or* aliquántum pânis.
Some (any) paper.	Chártam *or* alĭquántum chártae.
Some (any) books.	Líbros *or* álĭquot (nonnúllos) líbros.
Some good cheese.	Cáseum bónum. Aliquántum cáseï bōni.
Have you any wine?	Écquid ést tíbi vînum? Habêsne vînum (alĭquántum víni)?
I have some.	Ést (míhi nonnúllum). (Alĭquántum) hábeo.
Have you any water?	Écqua (écquid) ést tíbi áqua? Habêsne áquam (*or* aliquántum áquae)?
I have some.	Ést (míhi nonnúlla). (Aliquántum) hábeo.
Have you any good wine?	Écquid ést tíbi vînum bónum? Habêsne aliquántum vínī bóni?
I have some.	Ést (míhi aliquántum). (Nonnúllum) hábeo.
Has he any good cloth?	Écqui(s) ést éī bónus pánnus? Habétne bónum pánnum?
He has some.	Ést. Hábet.
Have you any shoes?	Écqui súnt tíbi cálcei? Habêsne cálceos álĭquot (álĭquos)?
I have some.	Súnt míhi álĭquot (álĭqui). Nonnúllos (quôsdam) hábeo.

Have you some good or bad horses?	Écqui tíbi súnt équi bóni án nêquam? Habêsne équos bónos án nêquam?
I have some good ones.	Súnt míhi (állíqui) bóni. Hábeo (nonnúllos *or* quôsdam) bónos.
Have you good or bad water?	Écquaeést tíbi áqua bóna án nêquam? Útrum áquam hábes bónam án vílem?
I have some good.	(Ést míhi) bóna. Bónam hábeo.
Have you good or bad wine?	Éstne tíbi vínum bónum án vílĕ? Útrum vínum hábes bónum án vílĕ?
I have some bad.	(Ést míhi) vílĕ. Víle (nêquam) hábeo.

OF NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

B. Words defective in number are either such as have *no plural*, or such as have *no singular*.

Those which do not admit of a plural are called *singŭlārĭa tantum*. They are:—

1. Abstract nouns, or such as denote a quality or intellectual existence considered as general or indivisible; as *justĭtĭa*, *pĭĕtas*, *tempĕrantĭa*, *sĕnectus*, *fāmes*, *sĭtis*, &c., justice, piety, temperance, old age, hunger, thirst,* &c.

2. Names of materials or of a mass without subdivision; as *aurum*, gold; *argentum*, silver; *argilla*, white clay; *coenum*, mire, mud; *sābŭlum*, sand; *sanguis*, blood, &c.

3. Collectives, i. e. such as denote a totality or mass of individuals or things; as *plebs* and *vulgus*, the vulgar; *pŏpŭlus*, the people; *supellex*, furniture; *victus*, food, support; *virus*, poison (of every kind). So also *indŏlēs*, natural parts; and *scientĭa*, the totality of a man's knowledge, &c.

4. Proper names, except when they are common to several individuals; as *Virgĭlius*, *Cĭcĕro*, *Plautus*, &c. But *Caesar*, *Caesāres*.

5. The following words: *justĭtĭum*, suspension of business (in courts, &c.); *lētum*, death; *mĕrĭdies*, noon; *spĕcĭmen*, example; *vēr*, spring; *vespĕr* and *vespĕra*, evening.

---

* Abstract terms, however, frequently do occur in the plural, *a*) when they denote *different kinds* of the same quality, as *excellentiae*, *quiētes*, *irācundiae*, *fortitūdines*, *mortes*, *mētus*, different kinds of excellence, rest, anger, bravery, death, fear, &c.; and *b*) to express *a repetition* of the same thing in different subjects, as *adventus*, *effūsiōnes*, arrivals, eruptions; *intĕrĭtus*, *exĭtus*, *ōdia*, *ĭnimi*, destruction, exit, odium, courage, as experienced or incurred by different men. — To these may be added the idiomatic Latin plurals *nivēs*, *grandĭnes*, *imbrēs*, *plūviae*, falls of snow, hail, rain, and *soles*, spells of sunshine.

6. To these may be added the peculiar use of names of vegetables and fruits, where in English we employ the plural; as *fŭbam, lentem, rāpum* serĕre, to sow beans, lentils, turnips; *cĭcĕris* cătīnus, a bowl of peas; *nux, ūva*, the nut, grape, i. e. nuts, grapes, &c.

Exercise 18.

Have you any sugar? — I have some. — Have you any good coffee? — I have some. — Have you any salt? — I have some. — Have I any good salt? — You have some. — Have I any shoes? — You have some. — Have I any pretty dogs? — You have some. — Has the man any good honey? — He has some. — What has the man? — He has some good bread. — What has the shoemaker? — He has some pretty shoes. — Has the sailor any biscuits? — He has some. — Has your friend any good pencils? — He has some. — Have you good or bad coffee? — I have some good. — Have you good or bad wood? — I have some good. — Have I good or bad oxen? — You have some bad (ones). — Has your brother good or bad cheese? — He has neither good nor bad. — What has he good? — He has some good friends. — Who has some cloth? — My neighbor has some. — Who has some money? — The French have some. — Who has some gold? — The English have some. — Who has some good horses? — The Germans have some. — Who has some good hay? — This ass has some. — Who has some good bread? — That Spaniard has some. — Who has some good books? — These Frenchmen have some. — Who has some good ships? — Those Englishmen have some. — Has anybody wine? — Nobody has any. — Has the Italian fine or ugly horses? — He has some ugly (ones). — Have you wooden or stone tables? — I have neither wooden nor stone (ones). — Has your boy the fine books of mine? — He has not those of your boy, but his own. — Has he any good thread stockings? — He has some. — What has the Turk? — He has nothing. — He has (a certain) something bad (*quiddam mali*). — Who has something good? —A certain stranger has something good. — Has any one hay? — Certain husbandmen have some hay and (*et*) corn.

Lesson XVII. — PENSUM SEPTIMUM DECIMUM.

No, not any, none.

- *Nullŭs, nullă, nullŭm.*
- *Nĭhĭl* (with the gen.).
- *Numquĭs, -quae, -quŏd* or *-quĭd?*
- Sometimes simply *Nōn.*

A. Obs. The pronominal adjective *nullus* is declined like *ullus.* (Vide Lesson XVI.) Its masculine singular is also employed substantively in the place of *nemo*, "no one, nobody" (Lesson X. *C.*) *Numquis* is declined like *ecquis*, and is used

in questions to which *nullus* is expected in the answer. Instead of the adjective *nullus*, *nihil* is frequently put partitively with the genitive, singular and plural. Sometimes the English "no," "none," is expressed by a simple *non*. Examples: —

Have you any book?	Númquis ést tíbi líber?
	Habêsne líbrum álĭquem?
I have none.	Nôn ést.
	Núllum hábeo.
Have you any wine?	Númquid ést tíbi vĭnum (víni)?
	Núm hábes alĭquántum víni?
I have none.	Nôn (núllum) ést.
	Núllum hábeo.
Have you no bread?	Án ést tíbi níhil pânis?
	Án núllum pânem hábes?
I have none.	Níhil.
	Núllum (hábeo).
Have I no paper?	Númquid ést míhi níhil chártae?
	Núm chártam núllam hábeo?
You have some.	Ést tíbi nónnihil.
	Nonnúllam véro hábes.
Have you no shoes?	Nôn tíbi súnt úlli cálcĕi?
	Án níhil calcĕôrum hábes?
I have none.	Núlli.
	Níhil (núllos, nôn úllos) hábeo.
Have you any?	Númqui tíbi súnt?
	Núm álĭquos (úllos) hábes?
I have none.	Nôn súnt.
	Núllos hábeo.
Has the man any?	Núm qui súnt víroílli?
	Núm vír ílle úllos hábet?
He has none.	Nôn súnt.
	Núllos hábet.
Has he any good books?	Écqui súnt éi líbri bóni?
	Habétne líbros álĭquos bónos?
He has some.	Súnt éi álĭqui (nonnúlli).
	Nonnúllos (álĭquot) hábet.
I have no money, no books.	Níhil pecúnĭae, nihil librôrum hábeo.

The American	*Americānus, i, *m.*
The Irishman.	Hibernus, i, *m.*
The Scotchman.	Scōtus, i, *m.*
The Dutchman.	Batāvus, i, *m.*
The Russian.	*Russus, i, *m.*
Are you an American?	Ésne tû Americānus?
I am (one). I am not.	Sum. Nôn sum.
Have you the books of the Dutch or those of the Russians?	Útrum líbros ténes Batavôrum án Russôrum?
	Batavorúmne líbros ténes án Russôrum?

B. The substantives which are *pluralia tantum*, i. e. used in the plural number only, are: —

1. The names of certain determinate days of the Roman month, as *Calendae*, the Calends; *Nōnae*, the nones; *Idūs*, the ides. To these add *nundĭnae*, a fair (held every ninth day); and *fĕrĭae*, holidays.

2. The names of festivals and public games, as *Bacchānālĭa*, *Flōrālĭa*, *Sāturnālĭa*, &c., festivals in honor of Bacchus, Flora, Saturn, &c., *Olympĭa*, the Olympic games, and *lūdi*, public games generally. So also *nātālĭtĭa*, birthday festival; *rĕpōtĭa*, drinking-bout after a feast; *sponsālĭa*, espousals.

3. Many names of towns and countries, including such as are properly names of nations, e. g. *Arbēlă* (*orum*), Erbil; *Athēnae*, Athens; *Gādēs*, Cadiz; *Leuctră* (*orum*); *Delphi*; *Trēvīri*, the country of the Treviri; *Părīsii*, Paris; *Sўrācūsae*, Syracuse; *Persae*, Persia.

4. The following substantives, which, with a plural form, commonly preserve a *plural signification*: —

Alpes, *the Alps*.
ambāges, *quibbles, subterfuges*.
argūtĭae, *subtleties, wit*.
arma, *arms*.
artus, *limbs*.
bellāria, *dainties*.
cāni, *gray hairs*.
coelites, *the celestials*.
consentes, *the twelve highest gods*.
crepundia, *toys*.
dēlĭcĭae, *delight; darling*.
dīvĭtĭae, *riches*.
donāria, lautia, } *presents*.
excŭbĭae, *watches*.
exta, intestīna, viscĕra, } *the intestines*.
exŭvĭae, spōlĭa, } *spoils*.
facētĭae, *pleasantry*.
fōri, forŭli, } *book-cases*.
fōrĭa, *excrements*.
grātes, *thanks*.
gemĭni, *twins*.
gerrae, quisquĭlĭae, } *nonsense*.
ilĭa, *the entrails*.
impedimenta, *baggage*.
indŭvĭae, *articles of clothing*.
infĕrĭae, justa, } *funeral rites*.
inferi, *the gods below*.
insĭdĭae, *snares*.
lamenta, *complaints*.
lĕmūrēs, *departed spirits*.
lĭbĕri, *children*.
majōres, *ancestors*.
mānes, *shades* (*of the dead*).
mĭnae, *menaces*.
moenĭa, *walls*.
parietīnae, *dilapidated walls*.
pĕnātes, *household-gods*.
postĕri, *descendants*.
praestĭgĭae, *jugglers' tricks*.
prĕces, *prayers*.
primōres, procĕres, } *nobles, leaders*.
rĕlĭquĭae, *the remains*.
salēbrae, *impediments*.
sentes, vĕpres, } *thorns*.
serta, *garlands*.
sŭpĕri, *the upper gods*.
tormĭna, *the gripes*.
trĭcae, *fooleries, gewgaws*.
utensĭlĭa, *necessaries* (*of life*).
valvae, fōres, } *door-folds*.
vērbĕra, *blows*.

5. The following substantives, which, though plural in form, have more or less a *singular signification*: —

altārĭa, *the high altar*.
cancelli, clāthri, } *lattice-work, grating*.
casses, plăgae, } *hunter's net*.
clitellae, *pack-saddle*.
clūnes, nātes, } *the buttocks*.
cūnae, cunābŭla, incunābŭla, } *the cradle*.
exsĕquĭae, *the funeral*.
fauces, *the throat*.
fīdēs, *the lyre*.
indūcĭae, *armistice*.
inimīcĭtĭae, *enmity*.
lōcŭli, *a casket*.
mănŭbĭae, *booty*.
nuptĭae, *a wedding*.
ŏbĭces, *a bolt, bar*.
pantĭces, *the paunch*.
praecordĭa, *the diaphragm*.
pugillāres, tăbŭlae, cērae, } *writing-tablets*.
scālae, *the ladder*.
scōpae, *the broom*.
sordes, *the dirt*.
tenĕbrae, *darkness*.
virgulta, *the brushwood*.

C. Some substantives assume a different signification in the plural, and sometimes also a different gender. Thus: —

Singular.	Plural.
fastus, *pride*.	fastus, fasti, } *the calendar*.
fŏrum, *the market-place*.	fŏri, *the gangways*.
lustrum, *a period of five years*.	lustra, *dens of wild beasts*.
tempus, *time*.	tempŏra, *the temples (of the head)*.

D. Others modify their signification in the plural without abandoning that of the singular: —

Singular.	Plural.
aedes, is, *a temple*.	aedes, ium, *a house*.
ăqua, *water*.	ăquae, *mineral springs*.
auxĭlium, *help*.	auxĭlĭa, *auxiliary troops*.
bŏnum, *something good*.	bŏna, *property*.
carcer, *a prison*.	carcĕres, *the lists (barrier)*.
castrum, *a castle*.	castra, *a camp*.
cŏmĭtĭum, *a part of the Roman forum*.	cŏmĭtĭa, *an election-meeting*.
cōpĭa, *abundance*.	cōpĭae, *military forces*.
cŭpēdĭa, *daintiness*.	cŭpēdĭae *or* cŭpēdĭa, *n.* } *dainty bits*.
ĕpŭlum, *a banquet*.	ĕpŭlae, *the food, meal*.
făcultas, *ability, power*.	făcultātes, *property, means*.
fortūna, *fortune, luck*.	fortūnae, *gifts of fortune*.
hortus, i, *a common garden*.	horti, hortŭli, } *a garden for pleasure*.
littĕra (*or* lītĕra), *a letter of the alphabet*.	littĕrae (lītĕrae), *a letter, writings*.
lūdus, *pastime, school*.	lūdi, *a public spectacle*.

nāris, *the nostril.*	nāres, ĭum, *the nostrils*, or *the nose.*
nātālis (*i. e.* dies), *birthday.*	nātāles, *the birth (with respect to rank).*
(ops), *help.*	ŏpes, *power; property.*
ŏpĕra, *trouble, pains.*	ŏpĕrae, *operatives.*
pars, *the part.*	partes, *a party; rôle.*
rostrum, *a beak, bill.*	rostra, *the orator's stage.**
sāl, *salt.*	sāles, *witty sayings, repartee.*

E. The *Adjectives* defective in number are *pauci*, a few, and *plērique*, most, which in ordinary language want the singular. Of *paucus*, the neuter diminutive *pauxillum* or *pauxillŭlum* only occurs in the sense of "some little." The singular *plerusque* was anciently used in the sense of "the greater part of," but is now only put in the neuter (*plerumque*), and adverbially, "for the most part."

Exercise 19.

Has the American good money? — He has some. — Have the Dutch good cheese? — Yes, sir, the Dutch have some. — Has the Russian no cheese? — He has none. — Have you good stockings? — I have some. — Have you good or bad honey? — I have some good. — Have you some good coffee? — I have none. — Have you some bad coffee? — I have some. — Has the Irishman good wine? — He has none. — Has he good water? — He has some. — Has the Scotchman some good salt? — He has none. — What has the Dutchman? — He has good ships. — Have I some bread? — You have none. — Have I some good friends? — You have none. — Who has good friends? — The Frenchman has some. — Has your servant any coats or brooms? — He has some good brooms, but no coats. — Has any one hay? — Some one has some. — Who has some? — My servant has some. — Has this man any bread? — He has none. — Who has good shoes? — My good shoemaker has some. — Have you the good hats of the Russians, or those of the Dutch? — I have neither those of the Russians nor those of the Dutch, I have those of the Irish. — Which sacks has your friend? — He has the good sacks of the merchants. — Has your boy the good hammers of the carpenters? — No, sir, he has them not. — Has this little boy some sugar? — He has none? — Has the brother of your friend good combs? — The brother of my friend has none, but I have some? — Who has good wooden chairs? — Nobody has any.

Lesson XVIII. — PENSUM DUODEVICESIMUM.

OF NUMERALS.

A. The numerals of the Latin language are either adjectives or adverbs.

---

* The platform or desk from which the ancient Romans spoke, so called from its having been adorned with the *beaks* of captured ships.

Numeral adjectives are divided into five classes: *Cardinal, Ordinal, Distributive, Multiplicative,* and *Proportional.*

Of adverbial numerals there is but one class, which answer to the question *how many times?* as *sĕmĕl,* once, *tĕr,* thrice.

B. Cardinals contain the answer to the question *quŏt?* how many? as *ūnus,* one, *dŭo,* two, *centum,* a hundred. Of these the first three are susceptible of declension, and those from *quattuor* (four) to *centum* (a hundred), inclusive of both, are invariable. The multiples of 100, as far as *mille* (a thousand), are declined like the plural of *bonus;* as *dŭcenti, ae, a,* two hundred, &c. — *Ūnus, dŭo,* and *trēs* are thus inflected: —

Unus, a, um, *one.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ūnŭs	ūnă	ūnŭm	ūnī	ūnae	ūnă
Gen.		ūnĭus		ūnōrŭm	ūnārŭm	ūnōrŭm
Dat.		ūnī			ūnīs	
Acc.	ūnŭm	ūnăm	ūnŭm	ūnōs	ūnās	ūnă
Voc.	ūnĕ	ūnă	ūnŭm	ūnī	ūnae	ūnă
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō.		ūnīs.	

Dŭŏ, dŭae, dŭŏ, *two.*

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	dŭŏ	dŭae	dŭŏ
Gen.	dŭōrŭm	dŭārŭm	dŭōrŭm
Dat.	dŭōbŭs	dŭābŭs	dŭōbŭs
Acc.	dŭōs *or* dŭo	dŭās	dŭŏ
Voc.	dŭŏ	dŭae	dŭŏ
Abl.	dŭōbŭs	dŭābŭs	dŭōbŭs.

Trēs, trĭa, *three.*

	Masc. & Fem.	*Neut.*
Nom.	trēs	trĭă
Gen.	trĭŭm	
Dat.	trĭbŭs	
Acc.	trēs	trĭă
Voc.	trēs	trĭă
Abl.	trĭbŭs.	

Remark 1. The plural *ūnī, ūnae, ūnă,* can only be used, *a*) when joined with substantives that are *pluralĭa tantum,* i. e. used in the plural only; as *ūnae scōpae,* one broom; *ūnae lĭtterae,* one letter; *ūnă castra,* one camp; *in ūnīs aedĭbus,* in one house; *b*) when it assumes the sense of "only," "alone," "one and the same," "like," &c.; as *tres uni passus,* only three steps; *unis morĭbus,* with one and the same kind of manners, &c.

2. Like *dŭŏ* is inflected *ambō, ambae, ambō,* "both." — Instead of the genitives *dŭōrum, dŭārum,* the contracted form *dŭum* is frequently employed, especially with *mīllĭum,* thousand.

C. Obs. The numeral *mille,* thousand, is indeclinable in the singular, but is regularly inflected in the plural, e. g. *mīlĭa, mīlĭum, mīlĭbus,* &c. It is generally followed by the genitive (sometimes by an appositional case) of the objects enumerated, as *mille hominum, duo (tria,*

quattuor,* &c.) *milia hominum* (more rarely *homines*), &c. — This is its construction as a *substantive;* but *mille* is *far more frequently* used as an *indeclinable adjective* in all the cases, singular and plural; e. g. *mille equites*, a thousand knights; *mille hominum numero*, a thousand men in number; *mille modis*, in a thousand ways.

D. The Romans have a separate class of numerals in answer to the question, *How many each (apiece)?* or *How many each time?* (*Quŏtēni, ae, a?*) These are always in the plural, and are called *Distributives.* E. g. *bīni* (*terni, quăterni*, &c.), "two (three, four) *each*," *or* "two (three, four) *each time*," "two by two"; *singŭli*, "one each," "one by one," "one at a time." Examples: —

Boys of sixteen or seventeen years each.	Púĕri *sênum septenúmve dênum*† annôrum.
They met with one interpreter each.	Cúm *singŭlis* interprétĭbus congrési súnt.
He gave us three books apiece.	Dédit nóbis *térnos* líbros.
His daughters have each a son.	Fílĭae éjus *singŭlos* fílĭos hábent.
He does not know how much twice two is.	Nôn dídĭcit, bís bĭna quót éssent.

E. Obs. These distributives are employed instead of the cardinals, *a*) in connection with such substantives as are used in the plural only,‡ as *binae* (not *duae*) *scopae*, two brooms, *quaternae nuptiae*, four weddings, &c.; *b*) with substantives whose plural assumes a simple signification different from the singular, as *castrum*, a castle, *duo castra*, two castles; but *una castra* (*pl.* peculiar), a camp, *bina castra*, two camps; *aedes*, a temple, *tres aedes*, three temples; but *aedes* (a *pl.* with singular signification), a house, *unae aedes*, one house, *trinae* § *aedes*, three houses; *littera*, a letter (of the alphabet), *quattuor litterae*, four letters (of the alphabet); but *litterae* (*pl.*), a letter (epistle), *unae litterae*, one letter, *quaternae litterae*, four letters, &c.

The hatter.	*Opĭfex (*gen.* -ĭcis) pilĕōrum, *m.*
The joiner.	Făbĕr (ri, *m.*) scrinĭārius.
Round.	Rotundus, a, um.
A or *an* (*one*).	{ *Ūnŭs, ă, ŭm.* / *Alĭquis, -quă, -quŏd.*

* It is also customary to use the distributives instead of the cardinal numerals, and to say *bina* (*terna, quaterna*, &c.) *milia* for *duo milia*, &c. — The *accusative* of the objects enumerated becomes necessary when one of the declinable numerals *dūcenti*, &c. is added; as, *habet tria milia trecentos milites*, he has three thousand three hundred soldiers.

† The plural in *um* is the *regular* form for this class of numerals, instead of the *orum, arum, orum* of other adjectives.

‡ This applies only to such nouns as have a singular signification with this plural form. Plurals like *liberi*, children, follow the general law.

§ In all these cases, where the distributive is thus used for the cardinal numeral with nouns of a plural form, the English "one" must be expressed by *uni, ae, a*, and "three" by *trini, ae, a*. *Singuli* and *terni* remain distributive always.

F. Obs. The indefinite article *a* or *an* is generally omitted in Latin. When expressed, however, it is *ūnŭs, ă, ŭm,* "one," or *ălĭquĭs, quă, quŏd,* "some one." Examples:—

Have you a looking-glass?	Éstne tíbi (ûnum) spécŭlum? Habêsne (ûnum) spécŭlum?
I have one.	Est míhi ûnum. Hábeo ûnum.
Have you a book?	Éstne tíbi (ûnus) líber? Habêsne (ûnum) líbrum?
I have one.	Est míhi ûnus. Hábeo ûnum (álĭquem).
I have none.	Est míhi núllus (*or* Non est). Núllum hábeo.
Have you a good round hat?	Éstne tíbi bónum ûnum pílĕum rotúndum? An hábes bónum ûnum pílĕum rotúndum?
I have one.	Est míhi ûnus. Ûnum hábeo.
Has he a beautiful house (home)?	Núm est éi dómus púlchra? Númquid ílle hábet dómum ûnam púlchram?
I have none.	Est éi núlla (*or* Nôn est). Núllam hábet (*or* Nôn hábet).
I have two of them.	Míhi sunt dúae. Ego (eârum) dúas hábeo.
He has three of them.	Sunt éi três. Hábet (eârum) três.

G. Obs. The partitive genitive after numerals is commonly omitted in Latin, when the quantity denoted by them is equal to the whole. But the relative pronoun may stand in the same case with the numeral.

You have four of them.	Sunt tíbi quáttŭor. Quáttŭor (eârum*) hábes.
Of which you have five.	Quae tíbi quínque sunt. Quâs† quínque hábes.
Have you five good horses?	Suntne tíbi quínque équi bóni? Núm quínque hábes équos bónos?
Nay rather, I have six of them.	Ímmo véro míhi sunt séx. Hábeo (eôrum) séx.

* *Eârum* can only be correctly put when it refers to a larger number already alluded to.

† *Quae* and *quas*, because the numeral *quinque* denotes the entire number possessed; but *quōrum* if a larger number is meant.

I have six good and seven bad ones. { Súnt míhi séx bóni *et* séptem víles. / Égo séx bónos septém*que* víles hábeo.

And. (Copulative conjunction.) *Et, ăc, atque, -que.*

H. Obs. The conjunction *ac* cannot be used when the next word begins with a vowel or the letter *h*. *Et* and *atque* stand before vowels and consonants both. The enclitic *que*, like the interrogative *ne*, is always suffixed to the word which it serves to connect.

Have you a (one) letter? { Éstne tíbi ûna epístŏla? / Habêsne únas líteras?

I have ten of them. { Súnt míhi décem. / Hábeo (eârum) dénas.

I have ten letters and five notes. { Súnt míhi décem epístŏlae *et* (*ac*, *átque**) quínque schédŭlae. / (Égo) dénas lítteras *et* (*ac*, *átque*) quínque schédŭlas hábeo. (See *Obs. E.*)

Titus and Cajus have each of them a book. Títus ét Cájus líbros síngulos hábent.

They have five looking-glasses apiece. { Súnt íis quîna spécŭla. / Quîna spécula hábent.

I have three houses and a thousand pens. { Súnt míhi aédes trínae ét mílle pennârum. / Égo aédes trínas *átque* mílle pénnas hábeo.

I. The following Table exhibits a list of the cardinal and distributive numerals of the Latin language:—

Cardinal.			Distributive.	
1. ūnus, a, um,	*one.*	I.	singŭli, ae, a,	*one each.*
2. dŭŏ, ae, o,	*two.*	II.	bīni, ae, a,	*two each.*
3. trēs, tría,	*three.*	III.	terni (*or* trīni), ae, a,	*three each.*
4. quattuor,	*four.*	IV.	quaterni, ae, a,	*four each.*
5. quinque,	*five.*	V.	quīni, ae, a,	*five each.*
6. sex,	*six*, &c.	VI.	sēni, ae, a,	*six each*, &c.
7. septem		VII.	septēni, ae, a.	
8. octo		VIII.	octōni, ae, a.	
9. nŏvem		IX.	novēni, ae, a.	
10. dĕcem		X.	dēni, ae, a.	

* *Atque* (= ad + que) is emphatic, and may be rendered by "and besides." *Et* connects objects considered as *distinct*, *que* things *belonging to*, or *resulting from*, each other. *Ac* has upon the whole the same force as *atque*, but it is often employed instead of a simple *et*, to prevent a repetition of the latter.

	Cardinal.		Distributive.
11.	undĕcim	XI.	undēni, ae, a.
12.	dŭŏdĕcim	XII.	dŭŏdēni, ae, a.
13.	trĕdĕcim *or* dĕcem et tres	XIII.	terni dēni, ae, a.
14.	quattuordĕcim	XIV.	quaterni dēni, ae, a.
15.	quindĕcim	XV.	quīni dēni, ae, a.
16.	sēdĕcim (sexdecim) *or* dĕcem et sex	XVI.	sēni dēni, ae, a.
17.	septendĕcim *or* dĕcem et septem	XVII.	septēni dēni, ae, a.
18.	dĕcem et octo *or* dŭŏdēvīginti *	XVIII.	octōni dēni, ae, a. / duodevicēni, ae, a.
19.	dĕcem et nŏvem *or* undēvīginti	XIX.	novēni dēni, ae, a. / undēvicēni, ae, a.
20.	vīginti	XX.	vicēni, ae, a.
21.	unus et vīginti / vīginti ūnus †	XXI.	vicēni singŭli, ae, a.
22.	dŭo et vīginti / vīginti dŭo	XXII.	vicēni bīni, ae, a.
23.	tres et vīginti	XXIII.	vicēni terni, ae, a.
28.	octo et vīginti / dŭŏdētrīginta	XXVIII.	vicēni octōni, ae, a.
29.	nŏvem et vīginti / undētrīginta	XXIX.	vicēni nŏvēni, ae, a.
30.	trīginta	XXX.	tricēni, ae, a.
40.	quădrāginta	XL.	quădrāgēni, ae, a.
50.	quinquāginta	L.	quinquāgēni, ae, a.
60.	sexāgintā	LX.	sexāgēni, ae, a.
70.	septuāginta	LXX.	septuāgēni, ae, a.
80.	octōginta	LXXX.	octōgēni, ae, a.
90.	nōnāginta	XC.	nonāgēni, ae, a.
99.	nōnāginta nŏvem / undēcentum	IC.	nonāgēni nŏvēni, ae, a. / undēcēni, ae, a.
100.	centum	C.	centēni, ae, a.
109.	centum et nŏvem / centum nŏvem	CIX.	centēni nŏvēni, ae,
200.	dŭcenti, ae, a	CC.	dŭcēni, ae, a.
300.	trĕcenti, ae, a	CCC.	trĕcēni, ae, a.
400.	quădringenti, ae, a	CCCC.	quădringēni, ae, a.
500.	quingenti, ae, a	IↃ *or* D.	quingēni, ae, a.

* For 18, 28, 38, &c. and for 19, 29, 39, &c. the subtractive expressions *dŭŏdevīginti, dŭŏdētrīginta, undēvīginta*, &c., as far as *undĕcentum*, are more common than the compounds *dĕcem et octo*, &c., and neither the *dŭo* nor the *un* of these words is inflected.

† The rule for the juxtaposition of the *intermediate* numbers is, that *from* 20 *to* 100 *either the smaller may precede* WITH *et, or the larger* WITHOUT *et*, as in the case of 21. But beyond 100, *the larger always comes first*, with or without *et*; e. g. *dŭcenti quadrāginta sex*, or *dŭcenti et quadrāginta sex*, 246.

	Cardinal.		Distributive.
600.	sexcenti, ae, a	DC.	sexcēni, ae, a.
700.	septingenti, ae, a	DCC.	septingēni, ae, a.
800.	octingenti, ae, a	DCCC.	octingēni, ae, a.
900.	nongenti, ae, a / noningenti, ae, a	DCCCC.	nonagēni, ae, a.
1,000.	mille	CIↃ *or* M.	singŭla millĭa.
2,000.	dŭo (*or* bīna)* millĭa	MM.	bīna millĭa.
5,000.	quinque (*or* quīna) millĭa	IↃↃ.	quīna millĭa.
10,000.	dĕcem millĭa	CCIↃↃ.	dēna millĭa.
100,000.	centum millĭa	CCCIↃↃↃ.	centēna millĭa.

Exercise 20.

Have you a good letter? — I have a good letter and a good book. — Has your servant a broom? — He has six brooms and five chickens. — Has your friend any houses? — He has some. — He has ten houses (*aedes*) and five gardens. — What has the youth? — He has a thousand books and two thousand notes. — Who has a beautiful round table? — The hatter has one. — The friend of our tailor has ten round tables and twenty chairs. — Have you a good servant? — I have one. — Has your hatmaker a beautiful house? — He has two (of them). — Have I a pretty gold ribbon? — You have one. — What has the joiner? — He has beautiful tables. — Has he a beautiful round table? — He has one. — Has the baker a large looking-glass? — He has one. — Has the Scotchman the friends that I have? — He has not the same that you have, but he has good friends. — Has he your good books? — He has them. — Have I their good hammers? — You have them not, but you have your good iron nails. — Has that hatter my good hat? — He has not yours, but his own. — Have I my good shoes? — You have not yours; you have his. — Who has mine? — Somebody has them. — Has anybody two letters? — The brother of my neighbor has three. — Has your cook two sheep? — He has four. — Has he six good chickens? — He has three good and seven bad. — Has the merchant good wine? — He has some. — Has the tailor good coats? — He has none. — Has the baker good bread? — He has some. — What has the carpenter? — He has good nails. — What has your merchant? — He has good pencils, good coffee, good honey, and good biscuits. — Who has good iron? — My good friend has some. — Am I right or wrong? — You are wrong. — Is anybody sleepy? — The shoemaker is sleepy and thirsty. — Is he tired? — He is not tired. — Has your servant the glasses of our (*nostrorum*, vide next Lesson) friends? — He has not those of your friends, but those of his great merchants. — Has he my wooden chair? — He has not yours, but that of his boy. — Are you thirsty? — I am not thirsty, but very hungry (*vehementer esurio*).

---

* Vide page 74, note *.

Lesson XIX. — PENSUM UNDEVICESIMUM.

How much?	*Quăm multŭm? quantŭm?* (with the gen.).
How many?	*Quăm multi, ae, ă?* / *Quŏt?* (indeclinable).
How much bread, wine, water?	Quám múltum pânis, víni, áquae?
	Quántum pânis, vini, áquae?
How many knives?	Quót (quám múlti) cúltri?
	Quám múlti cultrôrum?
How many tables?	Quót (quám múltae) ménsae?
	Quám múltae mensârum?
How many looking-glasses?	Quót (quám múlta) spécŭla?
	Quám múlta speculôrum?
Only, but. (Adv.)	*Tantum, sōlŭm,* nôn nīsĭ, duntaxăt.*
How many tables have you?	Quót tíbi ménsae sunt?
	Quám múltas ménsas hábes?
I have only two.	Míhi nôn sunt nísi dúae.
	Dúas tántum hábeo.
How many knives have you?	Quót sunt tíbi cúltri?
	Quúm múltos cúltros hábes?
I have but one good one.	Est míhi ûnus sôlus bónus.
	Únum sōlum bónum hábeo.
How many glasses have you?	Quót sunt tíbi vâsa vítrĕa?
	Quám múlta vâsa vítrĕa hábes?
I have but six.	Sunt míhi duntáxat séx.
	Séx tántum hábeo.
I have ten, *and those* (*and indeed*) good ones.	Décem míhi sunt, *éaque* (*ét éa, átque éa*) bóna.

A. Obs. The demonstrative *is, ea, id* is often put with the conjunctions *et, atque, que, et—quĭdem*, and *nec* by way of explanation of something that precedes, in the sense of the English "and that," "and indeed," "nor indeed," "and not indeed" (*nec is*).

I have a hundred books, and those good ones.	Céntum líbros (librôrum) hábeo, ét éos bónos.
I have but one table, and that a poor one.	Únam tántum ménsam hábeo, eámque ténŭem.

What? What kind of? What sort of?	*Quĭs, quae, quŏd* or *quĭd.*
	Qui(s)năm, quaenăm, quodnăm or *quidnăm?*
	Quālis, quālis, quāle?

* In connection with a substantive, and especially with one denoting a person, the English "only" is frequently expressed by the adjective *solus* or *unus* ("alone"); as, *ego solus habeo*, I only (alone) have; *solos poëtas legit*, he reads only poets.

B. Obs. The pronominal adjective *quālis* denotes the nature or quality of a person or object, and is the correlative of *tālis*, "such," "so constituted." It is inflected like *turpis* (Lessons IV. and XIII.). The pronoun *quī, quae, quŏd* agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, but *quĭd* stands substantively, and is followed by the genitive.

What (sort of a) book have you?	Quâlis (quís) ést tíbi líber? Quâlem líbrum (quíd líbri) habes?
I have a fine book.	Ést míhi líber púlcher. Líbrum púlchrum hábeo.
What (kind of a) table has he?	Quâlis (quaênam) ést éi ménsa? Quíd ménsae hábet? Quám *or* quâlem ménsam hábet?
He has a wooden table.	Ést éi ménsa lígnĕa. Ménsam lígneam hábet.
What (sort of) sugar has your friend?	Quâle (quód) ést amíco túo sácchărum? Quídnam ést amíco túo sácchări? Quâle (quód) hábet amícus túus sáccharum?
He has good sugar.	Ést éi sáccharum bónum. Bónum sácchărum hábet.
What (sort of) knives has he?	Quáles (qui) súnt éi líbri? Quíd librôrum hábet? Quáles (quôsnam) líbros hábet?
He has bad books.	Súnt éi líbri víles (nêquam). Líbros hábet nêquam (víles).
What paper have you?	Quâlis (quaê) ést tíbi chárta? Quídnam chártae hábes? Quâlem (quám) chártam hábes?
I have beautiful paper.	Ést míhi chárta púlchra. Púlchram chártam hábeo.

Our, ours. *Nostĕr, nostrā, nostrŭm.*
Your, yours (plural). *Vestĕr, vestrā, vestrŭm.*

C. The possessive pronouns *noster* and *vester* are declined like *pulcher*. Thus: —

Nostĕr, nostrā, nostrŭm, *our, ours.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	nostĕr	nostrā	nostrŭm	nostrī	nostrae	nostrā
Gen.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrŭm	-ārŭm	-ōrŭm
Dat.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō		nostrīs	
Acc.	nostrŭm	nostrām	nostrŭm	nostrōs	nostrās	nostrā
Voc.	Like Nom.			Like Nom.		
Abl.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō.		nostrīs.	

Have you our candlestick or his?	Nostrúmne candēlábrum hábes án éjus (illius)?
I have his.	Éjus (hábeo).
Has he his own hats or ours?	Útrum ílle ténet píleos suôsmet án nóstros?
He has ours.	Nóstros (ténet).
Which paper have you?	Quám chártam hábes?
I have that of our friends.	Familiárium nostrôrum chártam hábeo.
How many are there of us?	Quót (quám múlti) súmus?

D. Obs. When *quot* or *quam multi* denotes the entire number, they do not admit the partitive genitive after them. The latter can only be put where in English we use *among*.

How many are there of you?	Quót éstis?
How many are there of them?	Quót suntílli?
There are twenty of us, of you, of them.	Vigínti súmus, éstis, súnt.
How many are there *among* us, *among* you, *among* them?	Quót sunt nóstrum, véstrum, illôrum?
There are twelve among us, you, them.	Duódĕcim súnt nóstrum, véstrum, illôrum.

OF REDUNDANT NOUNS.

E. Redundant nouns are such as exhibit a superfluity of forms. This may take place in several ways:—

1. There may be two forms for the nominative and one only for the remaining cases; as *arbŏr* or *arbōs*, gen. *arbŏris*, f., a tree; *hŏnŏr* or *hŏnūs*, gen. *hŏnōris*, m., honor, &c., &c.

2. There may be one form for the nominative, and two forms of different declensions for the genitive and remaining cases; as *laurŭs*, gen. *i* & *ūs*, f., the laurel-tree *; *cupressŭs*, *i* & *ūs*, f., the cypress; *fĭcŭs*, *i* & *ūs*, f., the fig-tree; *pīnŭs*, *i* & *ūs*, f., the pine; and *cŏlŭs*, *i* & *ūs*, f., a distaff. Among these may be included *jūgĕrum*, *i*, n., a Roman acre, which has a redundant ablative: sing. *jūgĕrō* & *jūgĕre*, pl. *jūgĕrīs* & *jūgĕrĭbŭs* †; and the plural *ĭlĭa*, the entrails, which in the gen. has *ĭlĭum* & *ĭlĭōrum*, and in the dat. and abl. *ĭlĭbŭs* & *ĭlĭis*. *Vās*, gen. *vāsis*, n., a vessel, has its plural from the secondary form *vāsum*, *i*, n.:—*vāsa*, *vasōrum*, &c.

---

* The remaining cases are, Dat. *laurō*, Acc. *laurŭm*, Voc. *laurĕ*, Abl. *laurō* and *laurū*; Pl. Nom. *laurī* and *laurūs*, Gen. *laurōrum*, Dat. and Abl. *lauris*, Acc. *laurōs*, Voc. *lauri*. Other names of trees prefer the second declension, except *quercus*, which is entirely of the fourth.

† The forms of the second declension are to be preferred in prose.

3. One and the same noun may have two forms of different genders, but of the same declension. Such are:—

băcŭlum,* i, *n.*	*and*	băcŭlus, i, *m.*	*a staff, stick.*
baltĕus, i, *m.*	"	baltĕum, i, *n.*	*girdle, belt.*
callus, i, *m.*	"	callum, i, *n.*	*hard flesh, callus.*
cătillus, i, *m.*	"	cătillum, i, *n.*	*a small dish.*
cătīnus, i, *m.*	"	cătīnum, i, *n.*	*a dish, platter.*
clĭpĕus, i, *m.*	"	clĭpĕum, i, *n.*	*a shield.*
cŭbĭtus, i. *m.*	"	cŭbĭtum, i, *n.*	*the fore-arm; a cubit.*†
intŭbus, i, *m.*	"	intŭbum, i, *n.*	*succory (a plant).*
jŭgŭlum, i, *n.*	"	jŭgŭlus, i, *m.*	*the collar-bone.*
lŭpīnus, i, *m.*	"	lŭpīnum, i, *n.*	*lupine (a plant).*
pălātum, i, *n.*	"	pălātus, i, *m.*	*the palate.*
păpȳrus, i, *m.* & *f.*	"	păpȳrum, i, *n.*	*the papyrus (reed).*
pīlĕum, i, *n.*	"	pīlĕus, i, *n.*	*sort of hat.*
porrum, i, *n.*	"	porrus, i, *m.*	*leek.*

4. One and the same substantive may have two forms of different declensions, as:—

ălīmōnĭa, ae, *f.*	*and*	ălīmōnĭum, i, *n.*	*aliment.*
angĭportus, ūs, *m.*	"	angĭportum, i, *n.*	*alley, lane.*
arcus, ūs, *m.*	"	arcus,‡ i, *m.*	*a bow; an arch.*
buccĭna, ae, *f.*	"	buccĭnum, i, *n.*	*a horn, trumpet.*
cingŭlum, i, *m.*	"	cingŭla, ae, *f.*	*a girdle, belt.*
consortĭo, ōnis, *f.*	"	consortĭum, i. *n.*	*partnership.*
delphīnus, i, *m.*	"	delphīn, īnis, *m.*	*a dolphin.*
ĕlĕphantus, i, *m.*	"	ĕlĕphās, antis, *m.*	*an elephant.*
essĕdum, i, *n.*	"	essĕda, ae, *f.*	*a war-chariot.*
hebdŏmăs, ădis, *f.*	"	hebdŏmăda, ae, *f.*	*a week.*
jŭventus, ūtis, *f.*	"	jŭventa, ae, *f.* jŭventās,§ ātis, *f.*	*(the age of) youth.*
mendum, i, *n.*	"	menda, ae, *f.*	*a fault, error.*
pălumbēs, is, *m.* & *f.*		pălumbus, i, *m.* pălumba, ae, *f.*	*the ring-dove.*
paupertās, ātis, *f.*	"	paupĕrĭēs,‖ ēi, *f.*	*poverty.*
pāvō, ōnis, *m.*	"	pāvus, i, *m.*	*a peacock.*
pĕnum, i, *n.*	"	pĕnus, ūs & i, *m.* & *f.* pĕnus, ŏris, *n.*	*provisions.*
plebs, *gen.* plēbis, *f.*	"	plēbēs, ēi, *f.*	*the common people.*
senectus, ūtis, *f.*	"	senecta,¶ ae, *f.*	*old age.*
tăpētē, is, *n.*	"	tăpētum, i, *n.* (tăpēs,) ētis, *m.*	*tapestry; carpet.*

* In this list the form most generally in use is put first, without reference to gender.

† The measure is commonly denoted by *cubitum*, especially in the plural.

‡ The latter chiefly of the rainbow. But this noun may also be referred to case 2.

§ Chiefly in poetry:—youth personified.

‖ The poetical form.

¶ This latter is poetical.

tŏnĭtrus, ūs, *m.* tōnĭtrū, ūs, *n.*	*and*	tŏnĭtrŭum, i. *n.*	*thunder.*
vespĕra, ae, *f.*	"	vesper(us), ĕri,* *m.* vesper, ĕris, *m.*	*evening.*

5. A number of feminine nouns have two forms, one of the first, the other of the fifth declension†:—

barbărĭa, ae,	*and*	barbărĭēs, ēi, *f.*	*barbarity.*
dūrĭtĭa, ae,	"	dūrĭtĭēs, ēi, *f.*	*hardness.*
luxŭrĭa, ae,	"	luxŭrĭēs, ēi, *f.*	*profusion, luxury.*
măcĕrĭa, ae,	"	măcĕrĭēs, ēi, *f.*	*a garden-wall.*
mātĕrĭa, ae,	"	mātĕrĭēs, ēi, *f.*	*matter, materials.*
mollĭtĭa, ae,	"	mollĭtĭēs, ēi, *f.*	*suppleness, softness.*
mūrĭa, ae,	"	mūrĭēs, ēi, *f.*	*salt liquor, brine.*
segnĭtĭa, ae,	"	segnĭtĭēs, ēi, *f.*	*sluggishness.*

6. Verbal substantives of the fourth declension with a secondary form in *um*:—

cōnātus, ūs, *m.*	*and*	cōnātum, i, *n.*	*an effort, attempt.*
eventus, ūs, *m.*	"	eventum, i, *n.*	*an issue, event.*
praetextus, ūs, *m*	"	praetextum, i, *n.*	*an ornament, a pretext.*
rictus, ūs, *m.*	"	rictum, i, *n.*	*the jaws, open mouth.*

F. Among redundant nouns we must include those which, in the plural, assume another gender and another form, partly in addition to the regular form. Such are:—

1. MASCULINES, which in the plural have an additional NEUTER form:—

jŏcus, i, *m.*	*a jest, joke;*	*pl.*	jŏci	*and*	jŏca.
lŏcus, i, *m.*	*a place;*	"	lŏci‡	"	lŏca.
sībĭlus, i, *m.*	*a whistling sound;*	"	sībĭli	"	sībĭla.§
Tartărus, i, *m.*	*the infernal region;*	"	Tartăra (*only*).		

2. FEMININES with an additional NEUTER form in the plural:—

carbăsus, i, *f.*	*a curtain, sail;*	*pl.*	carbăsi	*and*	carbăsa.
margărīta, ae, *f.*	*a pearl;*	"	margărītae	"	margărīta, -orum.
ostrĕa, ae, *f.*	*an oyster;*	"	ostrĕae	"	ostrĕa, -orum.

3. NEUTERS with plurals of different genders:—

balnĕum, i, *n.*	*a bath;*	*pl.* balnĕa, *n. and* balnĕae,‖ *f.*
coelum, i, *n.*	*the sky, heavens;*	" coeli (*only*), *m.*

* Of this form there is only the Acc. *vespĕrum* and the Nom. commonly *vesper*, sometimes *vespĕrus*. The ablative is *vespĕre* and *vesperi*. But *vesper, ĕri*, m., the evening-star, is regular.

† But this form of the fifth declension is commonly used only in the Nom., Acc., and Abl.

‡ The masculine, chiefly of *places* or *passages* in books; the neuter, of localities proper.

§ *Sībĭli* denotes single or isolated whistling or hissing sounds, and *sibila* continued hissing (chiefly in poetry).

‖ The latter more frequent, and in the sense of "public baths."

dēlĭcĭum, i, *n.*	*delight;*	*pl.* dēlĭcĭae (*only*), *f.*
ĕpŭlum, i, *n.*	*a public banquet;*	" epŭlae (*only*), *f.*
frēnum, i, *n.*	*the bridle, rein;*	" frēni, *m. and* frēna, *n.*
porrum,* i, *n.*	*leek;*	" porri (*only*), *m.*
rastrum, i, *n.*	*a rake, harrow;*	" rastri, *m. and* rastra, *n.*
sisĕr, ĕris, *n.*	*skirwort (a plant);*	" sisĕres (*only*), *m.*

Exercise 21.

How many friends have you? — I have two good friends. — Have you eight good trunks? — I have nine. — Has your friend ten good brooms? — He has only three. — Has he two good ships? — He has only one? — How many hammers has the carpenter? — He has only four. — How many shoes has the shoemaker? — He has ten. — Has the young man ten good books? — He has only five. — Has the painter seven good umbrellas? — He has not seven, but one? — How many corks have I? — You have only three. — Has your neighbor our good bread? — He has not ours, but that of his brother. — Has our horse any hay? — It has some. — Has the friend of our tailor good buttons? — He has some. — Has he gold buttons? — He has no gold (buttons), but silver (ones). — How many oxen has our brother? — He has no oxen. — How many coats has the young man of our neighbors? — The young man of our neighbor has only one good coat, but that of your friend has three of them. — Has he our good rams? — He has them. — Have I his? — You have not his, but ours. — How many good rams have I? — You have nine.

Exercise 22.

Who has our silver candlesticks? — Our merchant's boy has them. — Has he our large birds? — He has not ours, but those of the great Irishman. — Has the Italian great eyes or great feet? — He has great eyes and great feet. — Who has great thread stockings? — The Spaniard has some. — Has he any cheese? — He has none? — Has he corn? — He has some. — What kind of corn has he? — He has good corn. — What kind of rice has our cook? — He has good rice. — What kind of pencils has our merchant? — He has good pencils. — Has our baker good bread? — He has good bread and wine. — Who has good cheese? — Our neighbor has some. — Has our tailor's friend some cloth? — He has some. — He has none. — What has he? — He has our bad coats. — Who is thirsty? — Nobody is thirsty; but the friend of our neighbor is sleepy. — Who has our iron knives? — The Scotchman has them. — Has he them? — He has them. — What kind of friends have you? — I have good friends. — Is the friend of our Englishman right? — He is neither right nor wrong. — Has he good little birds, and good little sheep? — He has neither birds nor sheep. — What has the Italian? — He has nothing.

---

* The singular *porrus*, m. is rarely used.

— Has our tailor's boy anything beautiful? — He has nothing beautiful, but something ugly. — What has he ugly? — He has an ugly dog. — Has he an ugly horse? — He has no horse. — What has our young friend? — He has nothing. — Has he a good book? — He has one? — Has he good salt? — He has none. — How many are there of us? — There are fifty of us. — How many are there among them? — There are a thousand among them. — How many are there of you? — There are twenty-five of us. — What sort of combs have you? — I have good combs.

Lesson XX. — PENSUM VICESIMUM.

Much, a good deal.	*Multŭm* (with the gen.). *Multŭs, ă, ŭm.* *Permultŭm* (*a good deal*).
Many, a large number.	*Multī, ae, ă.* *Multŭm* (with the gen. pl.). *Non pauci, ae, ă.** *Cōpĭa magna, ae,* f. (with the gen.).

A. Obs. The indefinite numeral *multus* is declined like *bonus*, and has the construction of adjectives. But instead of *multus* in agreement with its substantive, the neuter *multum* is often put partitively, and followed by the genitive, either singular in the sense of "much," or plural in the sense of "many." As

Much bread, money, sugar.	Múltum pânis, pecúnĭae, sácchări.
Many books, letters, candlesticks.	Múlti lĭbri, múltae epistŏlae, múlta candelábra. Múltum librôrum, epistŏlârum, candelabrôrum.
Many men.	Múltĭ hómĭnes (*or* hómĭnum).† Cópĭa (hómĭnum) mágna.
Many (i. e. men); many things.	Múlti; múlta (*neut. pl.*) = rês múltae.
Have you much good wine?	Éstne tĭbi (habêsne) múltum vĭni bóni?
I have a good deal.	Est mĭhi permúltum. Permúltum habeo.

* *Non pauci* is negative: "not a few." — *Copia* or *multitūdo* (gen. *-dĭnis*) *magna*, "a large force, body, or multitude." Besides these, *frequentes* is also used in the sense of "numerous."

† *Multi hominum* is the same as the English "many among men," "many of the human family."

Have you much of the money?	Éstne tíbi (habêsne) múltum éjus pecúniae?
I have a good deal of it.	Ést míhi éjus sátis múltum. Sátis múltum éjus hábeo.
Too much.	*Nímius, ă, ŭm.* *Nimis multŭm, nímium* (with the gen.).
Too many.	*Nímis multi, ae, ă.* *Nimis multŭm* or *nímium* (with the gen. pl.).
Too much bread, money, wine.	Nimis múltum (nímium) pânis, pecúniae, víni.
Too many men.	Nímis multi hómines (hóminum). Nímium hóminum.

We.	*Nōs.* (Lesson IX. *B.*)
We have.	Nóbis ést (*pl.* sunt). Nôs habêmus (tenêmus).
We are.	Nôs súmus.
We are hungry, thirsty.	(Nôs) ēsŭrímus, sitímus.

B. Obs. The pronoun *nos*, like *ego*, *tu*, *ille*, &c., is commonly not expressed before the verb.

We are right (correct), wrong.	(Nôs) récte lóquimur, (nôs) errâmus.
We have not much money.	Nóbis nôn ést múltum pecúniae. Nôn múltum pecúniae habêmus.

Ye or *you* (pl.).	*Vōs.* (Lesson IX. *B.*)
Ye (*or* you) have.	Vóbis ést (*pl.* sunt). Vôs habêtis.
Ye (*or* you) are.	Vôs éstis.
Ye (*or* you) are hungry, thirsty.	(Vôs) ēsŭrítis, sítitis.
Ye (*or* you) are right, wrong.	(Vôs) récte lŏquímini. (Vôs) errâtis.
Ye (*or* you) are tired, sleepy.	(Vôs) éstis féssi, somnīcŭlósi.
Enough.	*Sătĭs, săt, adsătĭm* (with the gen.); pl. *sătĭs multi, ae, ă.*

C. Obs. The adverb *sătis* is often employed substantively, like the pronouns *nihil*, *quid*, *quantum*, *multum*, &c., and is followed by the genitive singular or plural. E. g.

Enough bread, money, sugar.	Sátis (sát) pânis, pecúniae, sácchari.*

---

* *Sătis* may, however, also stand adjectively; as *sătis ōtium*, *sătis consilium*, leisure, advice enough; so that we may likewise say, *Sătis pecunia, sacchărum, homines*, &c. — In questions, *satin'* for *satisne* is very common; as *Satin' salve?* Is all quite well? *Satin' plane audio?* Do I hear with sufficient distinctness?

Men enough.	Sát (sátis) hóminum. Sátis multi hómines.
Looking-glasses enough.	Sátis specŭlórum. Sátis multa spécŭla.
Have you money enough?	Éstne tíbi sátis pecúniae? Habêsne sátis pecúniae?
I have only a little, but (yet) enough.	Párum tántum hábeo, séd (támen) sátis.
Little.	*Părŭm, paulŭm* (with the gen.). *Pauxillum, pauxillŭlum.*

D. Obs. The construction of the adverb *părum* (*paulum*) is the same as that of *sătis*. *Părum* is frequently used in the sense of "too little."

(But) little bread, money, sugar.	Párum (paúlum) pânis, pecúniae, sácchari.
Only a little, not much, but little.	*Nonnĭsĭ părŭm* (*paulŭm*). *Paulŭm* (*părŭm*) *tantŭm.* *Nōn multŭm.* (All with the gen.)
A little (*a small quantity*).	*Paulŭm, paulŭlŭm, ălĭquantŭlŭm, pauxillŭm.*
A little wine, salt, bread.	Aliquántulum (paúlulum) víni, sális, pânis.
Have you a little sugar?	Éstne tíbi aliquántulum sácchari? Habêsne paúlulum sácchari?
I have.	Est. — Hábeo.
You have but little courage.	Nôn est tíbi múltum ánimi. Párum tántum hábes fortitúdinis.
The courage (spirit, gallantry).	Ănĭmus, i, *m.*; fortĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*; virtus, ūtis, *f.*
A few, few.	*Paucī, ae, ă* (pl.). *Perpaucī, ae, ă* (quite few).
(A) few men.	Paúci hómines (hóminum). Paúci (*without* homines).
(A) few things.	Paúcae rês *or* paûcă (*neut. pl.*)
Few men have money enough.	Paúci (hómines) sátis pecúniae hábent.
I have only a few things.	Paûca tántum hábeo.
Have you (ye) many friends?	Hăbētísne múltos amícos?
We have but few (of them).	Paúcos tántum (eôrum) habêmus. Habêmus nôn nisi paúcos.
Of them.	*Eōrum, eārum, eōrum.*
Has the stranger much money?	Habétne peregrínus múltum pecúniae?
He has but little (of it).	Párum tántum (éjus) hábet. Nôn hábet (éjus) nísi párum (pauxíllum).

OF THE CLASSIFICATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

E. Latin substantives are commonly divided into a number of general classes, of which some are peculiar to the language. The principle of division depends partly on their signification and partly on their derivation. These classes are: —

1. *Common Nouns*, or such as denote a genus or species comprehending a plurality of individuals or parts; as *hŏmo*, a man; *ĕquus*, a horse; *dŏmus*, a house.

Among common nouns may be included the *names of materials*: as *aurum*, gold; *sāl*, salt; *argentum*, silver.

2. *Collectives*, or those which, though singular in form, are plural in signification; as *pŏpŭlus*, a people; *sĕnātus*, a senate.

3. *Abstract Nouns*, or such as denote some *quality*, *activity*, or *mode of existence*; as *pulchritūdo*, *-ĭnis*, beauty; *pĭĕtas*, *-ātis*, f., piety; *infantia*, *ae*, f., infancy; *cursus*, *-ūs*, m., a course; *fāmes*, *-is*, f., hunger.

The majority of these substantives are formed from adjectives or verbs. Those derived from adjectives commonly end in *ĭtas* (*ietas*), *ĭa*, *tūdo*, *ĭtĭa*, or *ēdo*; as *bŏnus* — *bŏnĭtas*, goodness; *vĕtus* — *vĕtustas*, oldness, age; *ēlĕgans* — *ēlĕgantĭa*, elegance; *mĭsĕr* — *mĭsĕrĭa*, misery; *longus* — *longĭtūdo*, length; *justus* — *justĭtĭa*, justice; *dulcis* — *dulcēdo*, sweetness.

4. *Proper Nouns*, or names of individuals, countries, and places; as *Cæsăr*, *Cĭcĕro*, *Virgĭlĭus*; *Itălĭa*, *Rōma*.

5. *Patronymics*, derived from proper names of persons, and indicative of extraction. These generally end in *ĭdes* (*īdes*, *ades*, *iades*) masculine, and in *is* (*ēis*, *ias*), *īne*, or *ione** feminine. E. g. *Prĭămĭdēs*, a son of Priam; *Lāërtiădēs*, a son of Laertes; *Nērēis*, a daughter of Nereus; *Neptūnīnē*, a daughter of Neptune.

6. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, derived from proper names of countries or places, and indicative of nationality; as *Anglus*, an Englishman; *Arabs*, an Arab; *Celta*, a Celt; *Trōs* (gen. *Trōis*), a native of Troy; *Trōăs*, *-ădis*, f., a woman born at Troy; *Arpīnās*, *-ātis*, a native of Arpinum.

The majority of Patrials are originally adjectives; as *Romānus*, *a*, *um*; *Syracusānus*, *a*, *um*; *Antĭŏchensis*, *is*, *e*; *Athēnĭensis*, *is*, *e*, &c.

---

* Patronymics in *dēs* and *nē* are of the first declension; as *Priamides*, *-dae*, *-dae*, *-den*, *-de*, *-dē* (*dā*); *Neptunīnē*, *-ēs*, *-ē*, *-en*, *-ē*, *-ē*. Those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as *Nerēis*, *-ĭdis* or *-ĭdos*, &c.; *Thestias*, *-ădis*, f., &c.

7. *Diminutives*, or such as convey the idea of littleness, and sometimes of endearment; as *fratercŭlus*, a little brother; *litterlŭla*, a little (short) letter.

This class of substantives is very numerous in Latin. They are formed from other substantives, and end (according to the gender of their primitives) most commonly in *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum*, or *cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum*; sometimes also in *ŏlus, a, um*; *ellus* (*illus*), *a, um*, or *uncŭlus, a, um*. The following, formed from words already known to the learner, may serve as examples: —

servŭlus, i, *m.*	*a little servant;*	*from*	servus.
hortŭlus, i, *m.*	" *garden;*	"	hortus.
puercŭlus, puellus, puellŭlus, i, *m.*	" *boy;*	"	puer.
infantŭlus, i, *m.*	" *infant;*	"	infans.
căpĭtŭlum, i, *n.*	" *head;*	"	caput.
opuscŭlum, i, *n.*	" *work;*	"	opus.
chartŭla, ae, f.	" *paper;*	"	charta.
aedicŭla, ae, *f.*	" *house;*	"	aedes.
diēcŭla, ae, *f.*	" *while;*	"	dies.
currĭcŭlum, i, *n.*	" *chariot;*	"	currus.
corcŭlum, i, *n.*	" *heart;*	"	cor.
cornĭcŭlum, i, *n.*	" *horn;*	"	cornu.
ocellus, i, *m.*	" *eye;*	"	oculus.
lĭbellus, i, *m.*	" *book;*	"	liber.
cultellus, i, *m.*	" *knife;*	"	culter.
cătellus, cătŭlus, i, *m.*	" *dog;*	"	canis.
fīlĭŏlus, i, *m.*	" *son;*	"	filius.
fīlĭŏla, ae, *f.*	" *daughter;*	"	filia.
pilĕŏlus, i, *m.* pilĕŏlum, i, *n.*	" *hat;*	"	pileus (um).
băcillum, i, *n.*	" *stick;*	"	baculum.
villum, i, *n.*	" *wine;*	"	vinum.
lăpillus, i, *m.*	" *stone;*	"	lapis.
hŏmuncŭlus, i, *m.*	" *man;*	"	homo.
dŏmuncŭla, ae, *f.*	" *house;*	"	domus.
equŭlĕus, i, *m.*	" *horse;*	"	equus.

8. *Amplificatives* (usually in *o*), which convey the notion of largeness and contempt; as *bucco, ōnis*, m. (from *bucca*, the cheek), a blubber-head; *nāso, ōnis*, m. (from *nāsus*, the nose), a man with a large nose.

9. *Verbal Nouns*, or such as are derived from verbs. These are either common or abstract; as *lector, ōris*, m., a reader; *audītor, ōris*, m., a hearer; *ămor, ōris*, m., love; *clāmor, ōris*, m., a clamor; *contemptĭo, ōnis*, f., and *contemptus, ūs*, m., contempt; *gaudĭum, i*, n., joy; *ornāmentum, i*, n., an ornament.

Exercise 23.

Have you much coffee? — I have only a little. — Has your friend much water? — He has a great deal. — Has the foreigner much corn? — He has not much. — What has the American? — He has much sugar. — What has the Russian? — He has much salt. — Have we much rice? — We have but little. — What have we? — We have much wine, much water, and many friends. — Have we much gold? — We have only a little, but enough. — Have you many boys? — We have only a few. — Has our neighbor much hay? — He has enough. — Has the Dutchman much cheese? — He has a great deal. — Has this man courage? — He has none. — Has that foreigner money? — He has not a great deal, but enough. — Has the painter's boy candles? — He has some. — Have we good letters? — We have some. — We have none. — Has the joiner good bread? — He has some. — He has none. — Has he good honey? — He has none. — Has the Englishman a good horse? — He has one. — What have we? — We have good horses. — Who has a beautiful house? — The German has one. — Has the Italian many pretty looking-glasses? — He has a great many; but he has only a little corn. — Has my good neighbor the same horse which you have? — He has not the same horse, but the same carriage. — Has the Turk the same ships that we have? — He has not the same; he has those of the Russians.

Exercise 24.

How many servants have we? — We have only one, but our brothers have three of them. — What knives have you? — We have iron knives. — What bag has the peasant? — He has a thread bag. — Has the young man our long (*longas*) letters? — He has them not. — Who has our pretty notes? — The father of the sailor has them. — Has the carpenter his nails? — The carpenter has his iron nails, and the hatmaker his paper hats. — Has the painter beautiful gardens? — He has some, but his brother has none. — Have you many glasses? — We have only a few. — Have you enough wine? — We have enough of it. — Has anybody my brooms? — Nobody has them. — Has the friend of your hatmaker our combs or yours? — He has neither yours nor ours; he has his. — Has your boy my note or yours? — He has that of his brother. — Have you my stick? — I have not yours, but that of the merchant. — Have you my gloves? — I have not yours, but those of my good neighbor.

Exercise 25.

Has your little servant my broom? — He has it not. — Who has my little paper? — Our neighbor's little son has it. — Has any one my little daughter's little book? — Nobody has your little daughter's little book, but somebody has her little carriage. — What has the little boy? — He has the little work of his friend. — Have you any little houses? — I have ten little houses, and six young (little) horses. — Who has my little stick? — Your little brother has it. — Is any one

sleepy? — The little daughter of the tailor is sleepy. — What has that little man? — He has his little gardens, and his little knives. — Is he a Roman? — No, sir, he is not a Roman, but an Arab. — Are you a Celt? — I am not a Celt, but a German. — How many little eyes has that child (*infantŭlus*)? — It has two. — How many little hats have you? — I have but one. — Who is right (correct)? — My little son is right. — Is any one wrong? — The young man (*adolescentŭlus*) is wrong.

Lesson XXI. — PENSUM UNUM ET VICESIMUM.

The pepper.	Pĭpĕr, ĕris, *n.*
The meat (flesh).	Căro, *gen.* carnis, *f.*
The meat (food).	Cĭbŭs, i, *m.*; esca, ae, *f.*
The vinegar.	Ăcētum, i, *n.*; vinum ăcĭdum, i, *n.*
The beer.	Cerevisĭa (cervisĭa), ae, *f.*
The shirt.	*Indūsĭum, i, *n.*; tŭnica lintĕa, ae, *f.*
The leg.	Crūs, *gen.* crūris, *n.*; pēs, pĕdis, *m.* (the foot).
The head.	Căpŭt, ĭtis, *n.*
The head (i. e. natural talent).	Ingĕnĭum, i, *n.*; indōles, is, *f.*
The arm.	Bracchĭum, i, *n.*
The heart.	Cŏr, *gen.* cordis, *n.*
The heart (i. e. soul)	Pectŭs, ŏris, *n.*; ănĭmus, i, *m.*
The month.	Mensis, is, *m.*
The work.	Ŏpŭs,* ĕris, *n.*
The volume.	Vŏlūmĕn, ĭnis, *n.*; tŏmus, i, *n.*
The florin.	*Flōrēnus, i, *m.*
The dollar (crown).	*Thălērus, i, *m.*
The kreutzer (a coin).	*Kreutzĕrus,† i. *m.*
The shilling.	*Schillingus, i, *m.*
A few, some few.	*Alĭquŏt* (indeclinable). *Nonnulli, ae, ă.* *Pauci, ae, ă; perpauci, ae, ă* (very few).

A. Obs. The proper equivalent for the English "few" is *paucī, ae, ă*, and is opposed to "many." — Instead of this, *nonnulli* and *alĭquōt* may be used in the sense of "some, some few, several."

---

* This word, like the English, signifies both *work* or *labor* in general, and also a literary production.

† I put these modern coins with a Latin termination, instead of the more inconvenient circumlocution *nummus nomen gerens kreutzer, schilling.*

Have you a few books?	{ Súntne tíbi álīquot líbri? { Habêsne álīquot líbros?
I have a few (some few).	{ Súnt míhi álīquot. { Nonnúllos hábeo.
He has a few.	{ Súnt éi álīquot (nonnúlli). { Nonnúllos (áliquot) hábet.
I have only (but) a few knives.	{ Pauci tántum cúltri míhi súnt. { Cúltros hábeo nôn nísi paúcos.
You have only a few.	{ Paúci modo (tántum) tíbi súnt. { Hábes nôn nísi paúcos.
Few men.	Paúci hómines, paúci.
Few things.	Paúcae res, paûca (*n. pl.*).
Very few (men), things.	Perpaúci, perpaûca.
Other, the other, another.	{ *Altĕr, ĕra, ĕrŭm* (of two). { *Ālĭus, ă, ŭd* (of several).

B. Obs. *Altĕr* is opposed to *ūnus* or another *alter*, and signifies *the other of two*. *Alĭus*, on the other hand, is applied to several or many, and is *another* (of many). These words are thus inflected:—

	S. altĕr, *the other.*			P. altĕrī, *the others.*		
Nom.	altĕr	altĕră	altĕrŭm	altĕrī,	altĕrae,	altĕră
Gen.		altĕrĭus		altĕrōrŭm	altĕrārŭm	-ōrŭm
Dat.		altĕrī			altĕrīs	
Acc.	altĕrŭm	altĕrăm	altĕrŭm	altĕrōs	altĕrās	altĕră
Voc.	altĕr	altĕră	altĕrŭm	altĕrī	altĕrae	altĕră
Abl.	altĕrō	altĕrā	altĕrō.		altĕrīs.	

	S. ălĭus, *another.*			P. ălĭi, *others.*		
Nom.	ălĭŭs	ălĭă	ălĭŭd	ălĭī	ălĭae	ălĭă
Gen.		ălĭŭs		ălĭōrŭm	-ārŭm	-ōrŭm
Dat.		ălĭī			ălĭīs	
Acc.	ălĭŭm	ălĭăm	ălĭŭd	ălĭōs	ălĭās	ălĭă
Voc.	ălĭŭs	ălĭă	ălĭŭd	ălĭī	ălĭae	ălĭă
Abl.	ălĭō	ălĭā	ălĭō.		alĭīs	

The other horse (of two).	{ Álter équus. { Álter equôrum *or* ex équis.
The other horses (of two troops).	Équi áltĕri.
Another horse.	Álĭus équus.
Other horses.	Álĭi équi.
Another thing.	Rês álĭa, (*or simply*) áliud. (Lesson XV. *H.*)
Other things.	Rês álĭae, (*or simply*) álĭa.
Have you another horse?	{ Éstne tíbi álĭus équus? { Habêsne álĭum équum?
I have another.	{Ést míhi álĭus. { Hábeo álĭum.

Have you the other horse? { Éstne tíbi álter equôrum? / Habêsne áltĕrum éx équis?
I have it not. Nônést. Nôn hábeo.

		Nom.	Acc.
No (*none*) *other.*	Masc.	*nullŭs ălĭŭs*	*nullŭm ălĭŭm.*
	Fem.	*nullă ălĭă*	*nullăm ălĭăm.*
	Neut.	*nullŭm ălĭŭd*	*nullŭm ălĭŭd.*
No other.	Masc.	*nullī ălĭī*	*nullōs ălĭōs.*
	Fem.	*nullae ălĭae*	*nullās ălĭās.*
	Neut.	*nullă ălĭă*	*nullă ălĭă.*

I have no other horse. {Ést míhi núllus équus álĭus (*or* alĭôrum equôrum). / Álĭum équum núllum hábeo.
I have no other. { Míhiést álĭus (áliôrum) núllus. / Álĭum núllum hábeo.
Have you other horses? { Núm tíbi súnt équi álli? / Númquid hábes équos álĭos?
I have no others. { Súnt míhi álli núlli. / Núllos álĭos hábeo.
I have some others. { Súnt míhi alĭi quídam. / Nonnúllos álĭos hábeo.
Has he another shirt? { Éstne éi indúsĭum álĭud? / Habétne (ílle) indúsĭum álĭud?
He has another. {Ést (éi álĭud). / Hábet álĭud.
He has no other. {Ést éi álĭud núllum. / Núllum álĭud hábet.

C. Obs. When the words *alter* and *alĭus* are repeated in opposition to each other, the first *alter* signifies "the one," and the second "the other"; and the first *alius* "one," and the second "the other."

The one hates the other. Álter (*or* ûnus) áltĕrum ôdit.
One (of many or of two parties) hates the other. Álĭus álĭum ôdit.
They hate each other. Álĭi álĭos odérunt.
It is one thing to asperse and another to accuse. Álĭudést maledícĕre álĭud accusâre.

The rest (*the others*). { *Rĕlĭquī, ae, ă.* / *Cĕtĕri, ae, ă.*

Have you the other (the rest of the) horses? { Súntne tíbi équi cétĕri? / Habêsne équos cétĕros (rélĭquos)?
I have them not. Nôn súnt. Nôn hábeo.
What have the rest (the others)? { Quíd hábent cétĕri? / Quídést cétĕris (rélĭquis)?
They have nothing. Níhil hábent.
Has he the other things (i. e. the rest, remainder)? Án hábet cétĕra (rélĭqua)? (Vide Lesson XV. *H.*)
He has them not. (Éa) nôn hábet.

OF ORDINAL NUMERALS.

D. Ordinal numerals contain the answer to the question *Quŏtŭs, ă, ŭm?* "Which of a certain number, rank, or place?" as *prīmus*, the first; *sĕcundŭs*, the second; *dĕcĭmŭs*, the tenth. They are all of them adjectives of the first and second declensions, and inflected like *bŏnus, a, um.* Examples:—

Have you the first or the second book?	Éstne tíbi líber primus án sĕcúndus? Útrum líbrum hábes primum án sĕcúndum?
I have the third.	Est míhi tértius. Tértium hábeo.
Which volume have you?	Quótum est tíbi volûmĕn? Quótum volûmĕn hábes?
I have the fifth.	Est míhi quíntum. Quíntum hábeo.
Which note have you?	Quóta est tíbi schédŭla? Quótam schédŭlam hábes?
I have the fifth.	Est míhi quínta. Hábeo quíntam.
Which is the hour (of the day)?	Quóta hôra est?
It is ten o'clock (the tenth).	Hôra décima est.*
What day of the month is it?	Quótus est díes ménsis?
It is the sixth.	Séxtus est. Díes est ménsis séxtus.

E. Adverbial numerals correspond to the question *Quŏtĭens?* or *Quŏtĭēs?* "How many times?" The answer then is either, generally, *tŏtĭens* (or *tŏtĭēs*), so many times; *ălĭquŏtĭens* (or *-ēs*), several times; or definitely, *sĕmĕl*, once; *bĭs*, twice; *dĕcĭēs*, ten times, &c.

F. The following table exhibits a list of the ordinals of the Latin language, and of the corresponding adverbial numerals:—

	Ordinals.		Numeral Adverbs.	
1.	prīmŭs, ă, ŭm, *the first.* prior, prius, ōris, (of two).		sĕmĕl,	*once.*
2.	sĕcundus, a, um, *the second.* alter, ĕra, ĕrum (of two).		bĭs,	*twice.*

* Among the ancient Romans the tenth hour was *four* o'clock, P. M., the first being our six, A. M. The division of the days of the month was likewise different from ours (as will be shown hereafter). In writing and speaking the Latin, however, it is now customary to follow the modern method. It is necessary to add here, that "*at* an hour," "*on* a day" (or, more generally, "time when"), must be put in the ablative; as *horā primā*, at one o'clock; *tertio Aprīlis*, on the third of April. A date may be written thus:—*Romae, tertio Octobris, a. p. Chr.* MDCCCLVI.; Rome, October 3d, 1856.

	Ordinals.		Numeral Adverbs.	
3.	tertĭus, a, um,	*the third.*	tĕr,	*thrice.*
4.	quartus, a, um,	*the fourth.*	quătĕr,	*four times.*
5.	quintus, a, um,	*the fifth.*	quinquiēs,	*five times.*
6.	sextus, a, um,	*the sixth*, &c.	sexiēs,	*six times*, &c.
7.	septĭmus, a, um.		septiēs.	
8.	octāvus, a, um.		octiēs.	
9.	nōnus, a, um.		nŏviēs.	
10.	dēcĭmus, a, um.		dēciēs.	
11.	undēcĭmus, a, um.		undēciēs.	
12.	dŭŏdēcĭmus, a, um.		dŭŏdēciēs.	
13.	tertĭus dēcĭmus, a, um.		terdēciēs *or* trĕdēciēs.	
14.	quartus dēcĭmus, a, um.		quaterdēciēs *or* quattuordēciēs.	
15.	quintus dēcĭmus, a, um.		quinquiesdēcies *or* quindēciēs.	
16.	sextus dēcĭmus, a, um.		sexiesdēciēs *or* sēdēciēs.	
17.	septĭmus dēcĭmus, a, um.		septiesdēciēs.	
18.	octāvus dēcĭmus, a, um.		octiēsdēciēs.	
	dŭŏdevicēsĭmus, a, um.		dŭŏdēviciēs.	
19.	nōnus dēcĭmus, a, um.		nŏviēsdēciēs.	
	undēvicēsĭmus, a, um.		undēviciēs.	
20.	vīcēsĭmus, a, um.		viciēs.	
	vigēsĭmus, a, um.			
21.	vicēsĭmus primus,* a, um.		sēmĕl et viciēs.	
	ūnus et vicēsĭmus, a, um.		viciēs (et) sēmĕl.	
22.	alter et vicēsĭmus, a, um.		bis et viciēs.	
	vicēsĭmus et alter, a, um.		viciēs (et) bis.	
23.	tertius et vicēsĭmus, a, um		tĕr et viciēs.	
	vicēsĭmus tertĭus, a, um.		viciēs (et) tĕr.	
28.	vicēsĭmus octavus, a, um.		octiēs et viciēs.	
	dŭŏdētrīcēsĭmus,† a, um.		viciēs (et) octiēs.	
29.	nōnus et vicēsĭmus, a, um.		nŏviēs et viciēs.	
	undētrīcēsĭmus, a, um.		viciēs (et) nŏviēs.	
30.	trīcēsĭmus, a, um.		trīciēs.	
	trigēsĭmus, a, um.			
40.	quādrāgēsĭmus, a, um.		quadrāgies.	
50.	quinquāgēsĭmus, a, um.		quinquāgies.	
60.	sexāgēsĭmus, a, um.		sexāgies.	
70.	septuāgēsĭmus, a, um.		septuāgies.	
80.	octōgēsĭmus, a, um.		octōgies.	

* The rule respecting the juxtaposition of ordinals is, that *either the smaller numeral should precede the greater* WITH "*et*," or *the greater the smaller* WITHOUT "*et*," as in this instance. To this, however, those from 13 to 19 must be regarded as exceptions, *tertius decimus* or *tertius et decimus*, &c. being here the only admissible forms. For 21st, ŪNUS *et vicēsimus*, fem. ŪNA *et vicēsima* (or, contracted, *unetvicēsima*), are more common than PRĪMUS *et vicēsimus*, &c. So also ALTER *et vicēsimus* (*tricēsimus, quādrāgēsimus*, &c.) better than SĔCUNDUS *et vicēsimus*, &c.

† For 28, 38, &c., 29, 39, 99, &c., the subtractive expressions *dŭŏdētricēsimus, dŭŏdēquādrāgēsimus*, &c., *undētricēsimus, undēquādrāgēsimus, undēcentēsimus*, &c., are used, without any change of *duo* or *us*, precisely as in cardinals.

	Ordinals.	Numeral Adverbs.
90.	nōnāgēsĭmus, ă, ŭm.	nongiēs, *ninety times.*
100.	centēsĭmus, a, um.	centies.
200.	dŭcentēsĭmus, a, um.	dŭcenties.
300.	trĕcentēsĭmus, a, um.	trĕcenties.
400.	quădringentēsĭmus, a, um.	quădringenties.
500.	quingentēsĭmus, a, um.	quingenties.
600.	sexcentēsĭmus, a, um.	sexcenties.
700.	septingentēsĭmus, a, um.	septingenties.
800.	octingentēsĭmus, a, um.	octingenties.
900.	nongentēsĭmus, a, um.	nongenties.
1,000.	millēsĭmus, a, um.	millies.
2,000.	bis millēsĭmus, a, um.	bis millies.
3,000.	tĕr millēsĭmus, a, um.	tĕr millies.
10,000.	dĕciēs millēsĭmus, a, um.	dĕcies millies.
100,000.	centiēs millēsĭmus, a, um.	centies millies.
1,000,000.	dĕciēs centiēs millēsĭmus, a, um.	millies millies.

Exercise 26.

Have you a few knives? — I have a few. — Have you many rams? — I have only a few. — Has the friend of the great painter many looking-glasses? — He has only a few. — Have you a few florins? — I have a few. — How many florins have you? — I have ten. — How many kreutzers has your servant? — He has not many, he has only two. — Have the men the beautiful glasses of the Italians? — The men have them not, but we have them. — What have we? — We have much money. — Have you the carriage of the Dutchman or that of the German? — I have neither the one nor the other. — Has the peasant's boy the fine or the ugly letter? — He has neither the one nor the other. — Has he the gloves of the merchant or those of his brother? — He has neither the one nor the other. — Which gloves has he? — He has his own. — Have we the horses of the English or those of the Germans? — We have neither the one nor the other. — Have we the umbrellas of the Spaniards? — We have them not; the Americans have them. — Have you much pepper? — I have only a little, but enough. — Have you much vinegar? — I have only a little. — Have the Russians much meat? — The Russians have a great deal, but the Turks have only a little. — Have you no other pepper? — I have no other. — Have I no other beer? — You have no other. — Have we no other good friends? — We have no others. — Has the sailor many shirts? — He has not many; he has only two. — Have you a wooden leg? — I have not a wooden leg, but a good heart. — Has this man a good head? — He has a good head and a good heart. — How many arms has that boy? — He has only one; the other is of wood. — What kind of head (i. e. talents) has your boy? — He has a good head.

Exercise 27.

Which volume have you? — I have the first. — Have you the second volume of my work? — I have it. — Have you the third or the

fourth book? — I have neither the one nor the other. — Have we the fifth or sixth volume? — We have neither the one nor the other. — Which volume have we? — We have the seventh. — What day of the month is it? — It is the eighth. — Is it not (*nonne*) the eleventh? — No, sir, it is the tenth. — Have the Spaniards many crowns? — The Spaniards have only a few; but the English have a great many. — Who has our crowns? — The French have them. — Has the youth much head (i. e. talent)? — He has not much head, but much courage. — How many arms has the man? — He has two. — How many shirts has he? — He has only two. — He has six good and ten bad (ones).

Exercise 28.

Have you the crowns of the French or those o. the English? — I have neither those of the French nor those of the English, but those of the Americans. — Has the German a few kreutzers? — He has a few. — Has he a few florins? — He has six of them. — Have you another stick? — I have another. — What other stick have you? — I have another iron stick. — Have you a few gold candlesticks? — We have a few. — Have these men vinegar? — These men have none, but their friends have some. — Have our boys candles? — Our boys have none, but the friends of our boys have some. — Have you some other bags? — I have no others. — Have you any other cheeses? — I have some others. — Have you other meat? — I have no other. — Has your friend many other books? — He has but very few others. — How many shillings has that boy? — He has only five. — Have you the other horse? — I have them not. — Have they the other (the rest) of the books? — They have them. — Have you the other things (the remainder)? — I have it not. — What is the hour? — It is twelve o'clock. — Is it not five? — No, sir, it is only four.

Lesson XXII. — PENSUM ALTERUM ET VICESIMUM.

The part, portion.	Pars, *gen.* partis, *f.*
The volume, tome.	Völūmĕn, ĭnis, *n.* Tŏmŭs, i, *m.*
Have you the first or third tome of my work?	Útrum ópĕris méi tómum hábes primum án tértium?
I have both.	Ámbos (utrúmque) hábeo.
Both.	*Ambō, ambae, ambō.* *Uterquĕ, utrăquĕ, utrumquĕ.*

A., Obs. Ambō is "both," considered as united; *uterque*, "both" in the sense of "each of the two," "the one as well as the other." The former is inflected like *duo*, and the latter like *uter*. (Cf. Lesson XII. A.) Thus: —

		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	*both*	ambō	ambae	ambō
GEN.	*of both*	ambōrŭm	ambārŭm	ambōrŭm
DAT.	*to both*	ambōbŭs	ambābŭs	ambōbŭs
ACC.	*both*	ambōs (ambō)	ambās	ambō
VOC.	*O both*	ambō	ambae	ambō
L.	*with both*	ambōbŭs	ambābŭs	ambōbŭs.

	SINGULAR.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
NOM.	ŭterquĕ	utrăque	utrumquĕ
GEN.		utrĭusquĕ	
DAT.		utrīquĕ	
ACC.	utrumquĕ	utramque	utrumquĕ
VOC.	uterquĕ	utrăquĕ	utrumquĕ
ABL.	utrōquĕ	utrāquĕ	utrōquĕ.
	PLURAL.		
NOM.	utrīquĕ	utraequĕ	utrăquĕ
GEN.	utrōrumquĕ	utrārumquĕ	utrōrumquĕ
DAT.		utrīsquĕ	
ACC.	utrosquĕ	utrasquĕ	utrăquĕ
VOC.	utrīquĕ	utraequĕ	utrăquĕ
ABL.		utrīsquĕ.	

REMARKS.

1. *Ambō*, like *duŏ*, *trēs*, *dŭcenti*, &c., is a natural plural, and consequently wants the singular.

2. *Uterque*, although involving a plural signification, is commonly put in the singular; as *uterque polus*, both poles; *utrăque fortūna*, both good and bad fortune; *uterque părens*, both parents. Sometimes, however, also in the plural; as *utrique Dionysii*, both the Dionysiuses; *utrăque oppĭda*, both towns.

3. The plural *utrique* is regularly used, when two parties or collective bodies are spoken of; as *Utrique* (i. e. plebs et senatus) *victorĭam crudelĭter exercebant*, They both (i.e. the people and the senate) made a cruel use of their (respective) victories.

4. The remaining correlatives of *ŭtĕr*, "which of (the) two?" are: *altĕr*, "the one of two," *or* "the other" (Lesson XXI. *B.*); *altĕrŭter*, "one or other of two," "the one or the other"; *neuter*, "neither of the two"; *ŭtervis* and *uterlĭbet*, "any one of the two you please," "either of the two." All these compounds of *uter* are inflected like the simple pronoun, except *alterŭter*, of which either both components are declined separately, as *alter ŭter*, *altĕra utra*, *altĕrum utrum*, gen. *altĕrĭus utrĭus*, &c., or the last only, as *altĕrŭter*, *altĕrutra*, *altĕrutrum*, gen. *altĕrutrĭus*, &c.

Have you my book or my paper? — Ŭtrum hăbes méum lĭbrum ăn méam chártam?

I have both. — Ambō (utrúmque) hábeo.

B. RULE. — An adjective, participle, or pronoun, belonging to two or more nouns, is generally put in the plural. Its gender is determined according to the following rules: —

1. When the substantives are of *the same gender*, the adjective, participle, or pronoun agrees with them in gender. E. g. *Pater mihi et frater* mortui *sunt*, My father and brother are dead. *Soror ejus et mater* mortuae *sunt*, His sister and mother are dead.

2. When substantives denoting *living beings* are of *different genders*, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine, and feminine rather than neuter. E. g. *Pater mihi et mater* mortui *sunt*, My father and mother are dead. *Soror tua et ejus mancipium* (*neut.*) inventae *sunt*, Your sister and her slave have been found.*

3. When substantives denoting *inanimate objects* are of different genders, the adjective is neuter. E. g. *Libros atque mensas* multa pulchraque *habeo*, I have many fine books and tables. *Labor voluptasque* dissimilia *naturā sunt*, Labor and pleasure are naturally unlike.

4. When there is a *mixture* of animate and inanimate objects, the adjective either assumes the gender of the animate object, or is put into the neuter. E. g. *Famulos et domos bonos multosque* habeo, I have good servants and houses, and many of them. *Canes mihi et cornua venatica* multa eaque bona *sunt*, I have many dogs and hunting-horns, and those good ones.

5. The adjective, however, frequently agrees (in gender, number, and case) with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest. E. g. *Amor* tuus *ac judicium* (*sc.* tuum) *de me*, Your affection and (your) opinion of me. *Libros atque mensas* multas easque pulchras *habeo*.

Which of us (of you, of them) two has that book?	Úter nóstrum (véstrum, eôrum) líbrum íllum hábet?
Neither of us (of you, of them) has it.	Neúter nóstrum (véstrum, eôrum) éum hábet.
One or the other of us (of you, of them) has it.	Álterúter nóstrum (véstrum, eôrum) éum hábet.
Both of us (of you, of them) have it.	Utérque nóstrum (véstrum, eôrum) éum hábet. Nôs (vôs,ílli) ámbo éum hábent.
Which of the two books have you?	Útrum† líbrum (librôrum) hábes?
I have either, neither, both, of them.	Alterútrum, neútrum, utrúmque eôrum (éos ámbos) hábeo.
Which of the two pens has your brother?	Útram hábet frâter túus pénnam (pennârum)?

* *Inventae*, if the slave is a female, but *inventi* if a male.

† From this we must distinguish the interrogative *útrum*, which has no influence upon the construction of other words, except as the sign of a double question.

He has both.	Utrámque (utrásque) hábet. Ámbas hábet.
Have you my light or my stick?	Utrúmne hábes méum lûmen án bácŭlum?
I have them both?	Utrúmque (útraque) hábeo. Hábeo éa ámbo.
Which of the two sets of books have you?	Útri súnt tíbi líbri (librôrum)?
I have both.	Utrique. (Vide *A.* Rem. 3.)
Still, yet.	*Etĭamnŭm, adhŭc* * (adverbs).
Some or *any more.*	SING. *Etĭamnŭm (adhŭc) ălĭquantŭm.* PLUR. *Etĭamnŭm (adhŭc) ălĭquŏt* (or *ălĭquōs, -quās, -quă*).
Left, remaining.	*Rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm.*
Some *or* any more bread, money, wine.	Etiámnum (ádhuc) alíquántum pânis, pecúniae, víni. Aliquántum pânis, pecúniae, víni rélíquum.
Some or any more books, letters, glasses.	Ádhuc (etiámnum) álíquot líbros, epístolas, vâsa vítrĕa. Álíquos líbros rélíquos. Álíquas epístolas rélíquas. Álíqua vâsa vítrĕa rélíqua.
Have you any more wine, water, bread (left)?	Éstne tíbi ádhuc aliquántum víni, áquae, pânis? Habêsne aliquántum víni, áquae, pânis rélíquum?
I have some more (left).	Ést míhi ádhuc aliquántum. Hábeo nonnúllum rélíquum.
Has he any more books?	Écqui tíbi súnt ádhuc (etiámnum) líbri? Habêsne álíquos (álíquot) líbros rélíquos?
I have some more (left).	Súnt míhi ádhuc álíquot. Hábeo nonnúllos rélíquos.
Have I any more candlesticks?	Écqua (númqua) míhi súnt ádhuc candēlábra? An égo álíquot candēlábra rélíqua hábeo?
You have no more (left).	Núlla (nôn) súnt. Núlla rélíqua hábes.
Not any more, no more.	*Nihĭl amplĭus* (with the gen.). *Nullŭs* (*ă, ŭm*) *rĕlĭquŭs* (*ă, ŭm*).

* The primary signification of *adhuc* (= *ad* + *huc*) is "hitherto," "thus far," "as yet." There is good authority, however, for its secondary senses of *praetĕrĕa*, "besides," and *etiámnum*, "yet," "as yet," "still."

Has he any more bread, water, vinegar?
- Númquid ést éi ádhuc pânis, áquae, acéti?
- Núm ílle aliquántum pânis, áquae, acéti réliquum hábet?

He has no more (left).
- Ést éi níhil réliquum.
- Níhil éjus ámplius hábet.

I have no more books.
- Líbri míhi núlli rélíqui súnt.
- Níhil ámplius librórum hábeo

I have no more letters.
- Epístŏlae míhi núllae réliquae súnt.
- Níhil ámplius epistolárum hábeo.

I have no more looking-glasses.
- Spécŭla míhi núlla réliqua sunt.
- Níhil speculórum ámplius hábeo.

Not much more (left).
- *Părum (paulum) rĕliquum.*
- *Non (haud) multum amplius* (with the gen. sing. and pl.)

Not many more (left).
- *Non multi (ae, ă) rĕliqui (ae, ă).*

(Only a few left).
- *Nŏnnĭsi pauci (ae, ă) rĕliqui (ae, ă).*

Have you much more wine?
- Númquid ést tíbi ádhuc múltum víni?
- Núm múltum hábes víni réliquum?

I have not much more.
- Ést míhi éjus réliquum nôn nísi párum.
- Haûd múltum ámplius hábeo.

Have you many more books?
- Núm tíbi etiámnum múlti líbri súnt?
- Núm líbros múltos ádhuc hábes réliquos?

I have not many more.
- Paúci tántum míhi réliqui súnt.
- Nôn múltos réliquos hábeo.

Has he one more book?
- Éstne éi ádhuc ûnus líber réliquus?
- Habétne etiámnum ûnum líbrum?

He has one more good book.
- Ést éi ádhuc ûnus líber bónus réliquus.
- Hábet etiámnum ûnum líbrum bónum.

Have we a few more knives?
- Habemúsne ádhuc álĭquot líbros (réliquos)?

We have a few more.
- Habêmus (ádhuc) nonnúllos réliquos.

Have they any more letters?
- Écquae íis ádhuc súnt epístŏlae?

They have a few (some) more.
- Súnt íis ádhuc álĭquot.
- Hábent nonnúllas réliquas.

Has he a few good goblets (left)?
- Súntne éi ádhuc álĭquot bóna pócŭla?
- Habétne nonnúlla bóna pócŭla réliqua?

He has a few more (left). { Sunt ei adhuc aliquot. / Habet nonnulla reliqua.*

Exercise 29.

Which volume of his work have you? — I have the second. — How many tomes has this work? — It has three. — Have you my work, or that of my brother? — I have both. — Has the foreigner my comb or my knife? — He has both. — Have you our bread or our cheese? — I have both. — Have you my glass or that of my friend? — I have neither the one nor the other. — Have we any more hay? — We have some more. — Has our merchant any more pepper? — He has some more. — Has he any more candles? — He has some more. — Have you any more coffee? — We have no more coffee, but we have some more vinegar. — Has the German any more water? — He has no more water, but he has some more meat. — Have we any more gold ribbons? — We have no more gold ribbons, but we have some more silver (ribbons). — Has our friend any more sugar? — He has no more. — Have I any more beer? — You have no more. — Has your young man any more friends? — He has no more.

Exercise 30.

Has your brother one more horse? — He has one more. — Have you one more? — I have one more. — Has the peasant one more ox? — He has one more. — Have you a few more gardens? — We have a few more. — What have you more? — We have a few good ships, and a few good sailors more. — Has our brother a few more friends? — He has a few more. — Have I a little more money? — You have a little more. — Have you any more courage? — I have no more. — Have you much more money? — I have much more, but my brother has no more. — Has he enough salt? — He has not enough. — Have we buttons enough? — We have not enough. — Has the good son of your good tailor buttons enough? — He has not enough. — Which of you two has some money left? — Neither of us has any left. — One or the other of us has a good deal of it left. — Has the sailor my stick or my sack? — He has neither (*neutrum*) of the two. — Have you my hat or my coat? — I have both. — Which of you (three) has my paper? — I have it not. — Has the youth anything left? — He has nothing left. — Have you many more candles? — I have not many more.

---

* Instead of *reliquus* (*a, um*) *est*, and *reliqui* (*ae, a*) *sunt*, the compounds of *sum*, *superest* and *supersunt*, may be employed in a similar sense. E. g. *Superestne tibi aliquantum aquae, vini, pecuniae? — Superest. — Non superest. — Libri mihi multi iique boni supersunt*, &c.

Lesson XXIII. — PENSUM TERTIUM ET VICESIMUM.

As much — as.	*Tăm mŭltam — quăm* (*multŭm*). *Tantŭm — quantŭm** (*quăm*), (with the gen.).
As many — as.	*Tăm multī, ae, a — quăm multi, ae, a.* *Tŏt* (indecl.) — *quŏt* (indecl.).
As much bread as wine.	Tántum (tám múltum) pânis, quántum (quám múltum *or* quám) víni.
As many men as children.	Tót hómines quót† líberi. Tám multi hómines, quám (multi) líberi.
Have you as much gold as silver?	Habêsne tántum aúri, quántum (quám) argénti?
I have as much of the former as of the latter.	Hábeo tántum illíus, quántum (quám) hújus.
I have as much of the one as of the other.	Tántum ex (de) áltĕro (úno), quám éx (de) áltĕro hábeo.

A. Obs. The partitive relation denoted by the English "of" is in Latin expressed either by the genitive or by the prepositions *e*, *ex*, or *de* with the ablative.

Have you as many hats as coats?	Habêsne tót pílĕos quót tógas?
I have as many of these as of those.	Tót (tám múltas) illôrum, quót (quám múltas) hârum hábeo.
I have as many of the one as of the other.	Hábeo tám múltas (tót) ex ûnis, quám múltos (quót) ex áltĕris. ‡
Have you as many (wine-) glasses as goblets?	Súntne tíbi tót (tám multi) scýphi, quót (quám múlta *or* quám) pócŭla?

* In a similar manner the Romans say, *tantus — quantus*, as great — as; *tālis — quālis*, such — as; *tŏtĭes — quŏtĭes*, as many times — as, &c. Words thus corresponding with each other are called *correlatives*.

† *Tot — quot*, *tantum — quantum* are more frequent than *tam multi*, &c. The Romans are fond of inverting the logical order of these clauses, and of saying *quot — tot*, *quantum — tantum*, &c., and sometimes the *tot*, *tantum*, &c. is entirely suppressed; as *Cras et quot dies* (= *tot dies, quot*) *erimus in Tusculano*, To-morrow and *as many days as* we shall be in Tusculanum.

‡ "The former" of two persons or things is commonly expressed by *ille*, and sometimes also (especially when two persons are spoken of) by *prior*, m. & f., *prius*, gen. *priōris*. "The latter" may then be either *hic* or *posterior*, m. & f., *posterius*, n., gen. *posteriōris*. "The one" may be expressed by *alter* or *unus*, "the other," by *alter* or *ille*. The words may thus be used in every gender and in any of their cases, singular and plural. The plural *úni — altĕri* is here employed precisely like *utrique* of Lesson XXI. *A.* Rem. 3.

I have quite as many of the one as of the other.	Súnt mihi tótidem ex álteris, quót ex álteris *or* íllis.
Quite (or *just*) *as many — as.*	*Tótidém* (indecl.) — *quót.*
Quite (or *just*) *as much — as.*	*Tantumdém* (or *tantundém*) — *quantúm.*

B. Obs. *Tótiden* is a compound of *tot* and *ítidem*, and *tantumdem* of *tantum* and *ítidem* (= likewise). The construction of these words is the same as that of *tot* and *tantum*.

I have just as much of this as of that.	Est mihi tantúndem hújus, quántum illíus.
I have just as many of these as of those.	Sunt mihi tótidem hórum, quót illórum.
I have just as much wine as water.	Est mihi tantúndem víni, quántum áquae.
You have just as many hats as letters.	Tibi sunt tótidem pílei, quót epístolae.
More.	*Plus*, pl. *plures*, *plura*.

C. Obs. The comparative *plus* has only the neuter in the singular, but a double form in the plural. It is thus inflected: —

	Singular.	Plural.	
	Neut.	*Masc. & Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	plus	plures	plura (pluria)
Gen.	pluris	plurium	
Dat.	———	pluribus	
Acc.	plus	plures	plura (pluria)
Voc.	———	———	———
Abl.	plure *or* i.	pluribus.	

Remarks.

1. The dative singular of *plus* is wanting.
2. The form *pluria* for *plura* is obsolete, but still in use in the compound *compluria*, several.
3. *Plures* and *complures* are the only comparatives which have their genitives in *ium*. All others have *um*. (Cf. Less. XIII.).
4. The neuters *plus* and *plura* are often used substantively,* and then the former signifies "more" (in the abstract), the latter "more things."

D. Obs. The neuter singular *plus* stands partitively, and is followed by the genitive of the noun, which may be either sin-

* And *plus* also adverbially; as *plus formosus* (= *formosior*), more beautiful; *plus plusque diligere*, to cherish more and more.

gular or plural. *Plures* and *plura* have the agreement of regular adjectives, but they are frequently employed in the sense of "more than one," or "several." Thus: —

More bread, water, wine.	Plûs pânis, áquae, vínī.
More men.	Plûs hóminum, plúrēs hóminēs.
More letters.	Plûs epistŏlârum, plúrēs epístŏlae.
More goblets.	Plûs pōcŭlôrum, plúră pócŭlă.
Than.	*Quam;* quam quod, quam quantum; quam quot.*
More water than wine.	Plûs áquae quám (quantum) vínī.
More men than children.	Plûs hóminum quám (quot) lĭbĕrum (= liberôrum). Plúres hómines quám (quot) liberi.
More of this than of that.	Plûs hujúsce quam illíus. Plûs de (ex) hôc quám de (ex) íllo.
More of the one than of the other.	Plûs ex (de) áltero (úno), quám ex (de) áltĕro *or* íllo.
More of these than of those.	Plûs hôrum (hârum, hôrum) quám illôrum (illârum, illôrum). Plûs (plúres, plûra) ex (de) his quám ex (de) íllis.
More of the one than of the other.	Plûs (plúres, plûra) de álteris (únis), quam de álteris *or* íllis.
I have more of your sugar than of mine.	Est mihi plûs túi sácchări quám quantum méi. Ego plûs de sácchăro túo hábeo, quám quod de méo.
I have more books than letters.	Súnt mihi plúres librôrum quám quot epistolârum.
Less.	*Mĭnŭs* (neut. with the gen.).
Less water than wine.	Mínus áquae quám (quam quantum) vínī.
Less bread than sugar.	Mínus pânis quám (quod) sácchări.
How many books have you?	Quót súnt tíbi líbri? Quót líbros hábes?
I have more than five hundred.	Súnt mihi plûs quingénti. Plûs quingéntos hábeo.

E. Obs. When the comparatives *plus*, *amplius*, and *minus* are followed by a numeral, the particle *quam* is often omitted.

---

* With reference to this *quam*, and the construction of comparatives generally, see Lesson XLII. The student will notice here the idiomatic use of *quantum*, *quod*, and *quot*.

I have less than twenty.	Súnt míhi mínus vigínti. / Mínus vigínti hábeo.
How much money have you?	Quántam pecúniam hábes?
I have less than ten dollars (crowns).	Mínus décem thaléros hábeo.
I have more than twenty thousand dollars.	Súnt míhi ámplius víginti mília thalêrum (= thalerórum).
Less (i. e. fewer) men than children.	Paucióres hómines quám (quam quot) líberi.
Fewer (less).	*Paucíōres*, m. & f., *paucíōra*, n.

F. Obs. The neuter singular *mĭnus*, "less," is construed like *plus*,* and the plural *paucíōres, a*, "fewer," like *plures*. They are thus inflected: —

Nom.	mĭnŭs	paucíōrēs	paucíōră
Gen.	mĭnōrĭs	paucíōrŭm	
Dat.	mĭnōrī	paucíōrĭbŭs	
Acc.	mĭnŭs	paucíōrēs	paucíōră
Voc.	———	———	———
Abl.	mĭnōrĕ *or* ī.	paucíōrĭbŭs.	

Less of this than of that.	Mínus hujúsce quám illíus. / Mínus de (ex) hôc quám de (ex) íllo.
Fewer of these than of those.	Paucióres ex (de) his quám ex (de) íllis.
Fewer of the one than of the other.	Paucióres de álteris (únis), quam de álteris *or* íllis.
Fewer of us than of you.	Paucióres nóstrum quám (quam quot) véstrum.
More than I, than you, than he.	*Plûs (plúrēs, plûră) quám† égo, quám tû, quám ílle.*
Less than I, than you, than he.	*Mínus quám égo, quám tû, quám ílle.*
More than we, than you, than they.	Plûs (plúrēs, plûră) quám nôs, quám vôs, quám íllī.
Fewer than I, than you, than he.	Paucíōrēs quám égo, quám tû, quám ílle.
Fewer things (less) than we, than you, than they.	Paucíōră quám nôs, quám vôs, quám ílli.
As much as I, you, he.	*Tántum (tám múltum), quántum (quám) égo, tû, ílle.*

* With this difference, however, that *mĭnus* is followed by the genitive *singular* only. In the plural, *paucíōres*, fewer, becomes necessary.

† Or *quam quantum, quam quod, quam quot*, according to the context.

As many as we, you, they.	*Tót* (*tám múltos*), *quót* (*quám*) *nôs, vôs,ílli.*
Have you more books than I?	Tenêsne tû plûs librôrum, quám égo? Súntne tíbi plúres librôrum, quám míhi?
I have more of them than you.	Téneo eôrum plûs quám tû. Súnt míhi plúres quám tíbi.
Have I less sugar than they?	Núm ést míhi mínus sácchări quám íllis?
Nay (on the contrary), you have more.	Ímmo véro tíbi plûs ést.
Has the young man fewer friends than we?	Habétne júvĕnis pauclóres amícos, quám nôs (habêmus)? Súntne júvĕni pauclóres amíci, quám nóbis (súnt)?
He has less (fewer).	Pauclóres hábet. (Súnt éi) pauclóres.
Have we as much bread as they?	Habemúsne tántum pânis, quántumílli (hábent)? Éstne nóbis tám múltum pânis quám íllis?
We have just as much as they.	Tantúndem habêmus, quántum (quám) ílli. Nóbis ést tantúndem, quántum (quám) íllis.
Have you as many children as they?	Écquid vôs tót líbĕros habêtis, quótílli (hábent)? Súntne vóbis tót líbĕri quót íllis?
We have just as many as they.	Tótidem habêmus, quót ílli (hábent). Nóbis súnt tótidem quót íllis.
Several.	*Plūrēs*, m. & f., *plūrā*, n. *Complūrēs*, m. & f., *complūrĭa*,* n. *Nonnullī, ae, ă.*
Several different (diverse).	*Diversī, ae, ă.* *Vărīī, ae, ă.*
Several men, women, children.	Plúres (complúres) víri, mulíĕres, líbĕri.
Several lights, looking-glasses, candlesticks.	Plûra (complúrĭa) lúmĭna, spécŭla, candelábra.
Several (different) houses, books, horses.	Dómūs, líbri, équi divérsi (várii).†
The father.	Pătĕr, *gen.* patris, *m.*
The son.	Filĭŭs, i, *m.*
The woman.	Mŭlĭĕr, ĕris, *f.*

* Compare *C. Obs.* and Remarks of this Lesson.
† Compare Lesson XXII. *B. Obs.*

The daughter.	Fīlĭa, ae, *f.*; nāta, ae, *f.*
The child (infant).	Infans, tis, *m.* & *f.*
The children.	Lĭbĕrī, ōrum, *m. pl.**
The captain (of the army).	Centŭrĭo, ōnis, *m.*
The sea-captain.	Praefectus (i, *m.*) nāvis. Navarchus, i, *m.*
The tea.	Thēa, ae, *f.*; infūsum (i, *n.*) thēae.†
The cake.	Plăcenta, ae, *f.*
Cakes (of every kind).	Pānĭfĭcĭa, ōrum, *n. pl.*
The enemy.	Inimicus, i, *m.*; hostis, is, *m.*
The finger.	Digĭtus, i, *m.*‡
The boot.	Căliga, ae, *f.*

Exercise 31.

Have you a coat? — I have several. — Has he a looking-glass? — He has several. — What kind of looking-glasses has he? — He has beautiful looking-glasses. — Who has my good cakes? — Several men have them. — Has your brother a child? — He has several. — Have you as much coffee as honey? — I have as much of the one as of the other. — Has he as much tea as beer? — He has as much of the one as of the other. — Has this man as many friends as enemies? — He has as many of the one as of the other. — Has the son of your friend as many coats as shirts? — He has as many of the one as of the other. — Have we as many boots as shoes? — We have as many of the one as of the other. — We have more of the one than of the other. — Have we less hay than he? — We have just as much as he.

Exercise 32.

Has your father as much gold as silver? — He has more of the latter than of the former. — Has he as much tea as coffee? — He has more of the latter than of the former. — Has the captain as many sailors as ships? — He has more of the one than of the other. — Have you as many rams as I? — I have just as many. — Has the foreigner as much courage as we? — He has quite as much. — Have we as much good as bad paper? — We have as much of the one as of the other. — Have we as much cheese as bread? — We have more of the latter than of the former. — Has your son as many cakes as books? — He has more of the latter than of the former; more of the one than of the other. — How many books has he? — He has more than five thousand. — Has he more than twenty ships? — He has less than twenty; he has only fifteen. — Has this little boy more than ten fingers? — He has no more than ten.

---

* On this *plurāle tantum*, see Lesson XVII. *B.* 4.

† *Thea* is the Linnæan name of the plant; *infūsum*, an infusion generally.

‡ This is the general name. The special names are: *pollex*, *ĭcis*, m. (the thumb); *index*, *ĭcis*, m.; *mĕdius*, i, m. (the middle finger); *annūlāris*, *is*, m. (ring-finger); *minimus*, i, m. (little finger).

Exercise 33.

How many children have you? — I have only one, but my brother has more than I; he has five. — Has your son as much head as mine? — He has less head than yours, but he has more courage. — My children have more courage than yours. — Have I as much money as you? — You have less than I. — Have you as many books as I? — I have less than you. — Have I as many enemies as your father? — You have fewer than he. — Have the Americans more children than we? — They have fewer than we. — Have we as many ships as the English? — We have less than they. — Have we fewer knives than the children of our friends? — We have fewer than they. — How many have they? — They have more than eighty. — How many have we? — We have less than twelve.

Exercise 34.

Who has fewer friends than we? — Nobody has fewer. — Have you as much of my tea as of yours? — I have as much of yours as of mine. — Have I as many of your books as of mine? — You have fewer of mine than of yours. — Has the Spaniard as much of your money as of his own? — He has less of his own than of ours. — Has your baker less bread than money? — He has less of the latter than of the former. — Has our merchant fewer dogs than horses? He has fewer of the latter than of the former; fewer of the one than of the other. — He has fewer horses than we, and we have less bread than he. — Have our neighbors as many carriages as we? — We have fewer than they. — We have less corn and less meat than they. — We have but little corn, but meat enough. — How many houses have you? — I have more than thirty of them. — How many horses has the brother of our friend? — He has more than a hundred horses, and less than fifty books. — How much money have we? — We have less than ten shillings. — Has your young man less (fewer) mirrors than we? — He has more than you; he has more than a thousand.

Lesson XXIV. — PENSUM VICESIMUM QUARTUM.

OF THE LATIN VERBS.

A. Latin verbs are divided into three principal classes: — 1. *Transitive verbs;* 2. *Intransitive* or *neuter verbs;* 3. *Deponent verbs.*

1. Transitive verbs are active verbs, the sense of which is not complete without the addition of an object, which is gener-

ally in the accusative; as *ămo*, I love, sc. *amīcum*, my friend; *scrībo*, I write, sc. *epistŏlam*, a letter.

2. Intransitive or neuter verbs are those which denote either a simple mode of existence, or such an activity as does not terminate in any object; as *dormĭo*, I sleep, *curro*, I run.

3. The class of deponent verbs is peculiar to the Latin. They have a passive form with an active (or reflexive) signification; as *lŏquor*, I speak, *sĕquor*, I follow.

4. Transitive verbs have two forms, called the *Active* and the *Passive Voices*; as *mŏnĕo*, I remind, *mŏnĕor*, I am reminded; *audĭo*, I hear, *audĭor*, I am heard.

5. Latin verbs have four Moods, viz.: — 1. the *Indicative*; 2. the *Subjunctive*; 3. the *Imperative*; and 4. the *Infinitive*; as, 1. *ămo*, I love; 2. *amārem*, I might love; 3. *amāto*, let him love; 4. *amāre*, to love.

6. They have *six* Tenses: — 1. the *Present*; 2. the *Imperfect*; 3. the *Perfect*; 4. the *Pluperfect*; 5. the *First Future*; and 6. the *Future Perfect*. E. g. 1. *audĭo*, I hear; 2. *audĭēbam*, I heard; 3. *audīvi*, I have heard; 4. *audīvĕram*, I had heard; 5. *audĭam*, I shall hear; 6. *audīvĕro*, I shall have heard.

7. The Latin verb has *four* Participles: — The *present active* in *ns*; the *future active*, in *tūrus*; the *perfect passive*, in *tus*; and the *future passive*, in *ndus*; e. g. *ămans*, loving; *amātūrus*, about to love; *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

8. Among the forms of the Latin verb are usually included the *Gerund* (vide Lesson XXV.), the active *Supine* in *um*, and the passive Supine in *ū*; e. g. *amātum*, to love; *amātū*, to be loved.

OF THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

B. There are in Latin *four Conjugations*, distinguished from each other by the termination of the *Infinitive Present*, which ends as follows: —

1. āre; 2. ēre; 3. ĕre; 4. īre.

Examples: — *amāre*, to love; *monēre*, to remind; *legĕre*, to read; *audīre*, to hear.

The characteristic terminations of the Present Indicative in the first and second persons are: —

1. o, ās; 2. ĕo, ēs; 3. o (ĭo), ĭs; 4. ĭo, īs.

Examples: — *ămo*, *ămās*, I love, thou lovest; *mŏneō*, *mŏnēs*, I remind, thou remindest; *lĕgo*, *lĕgĭs*, I read, thou readest; *audĭo*, *audĭs*, I hear, thou hearest.

C. To the full conjugation of Latin verbs, it is essential to know *four principal parts*, from which the rest are derived. These parts are: — *a*) *the Present Indicative; b*) the *Present Infinitive; c*) the *Perfect Indicative; d*) the *Supine* in *um*. The terminations of these parts are: —

1st conj.	o,	āre,	āvi,	ātum,
2d conj.	ĕo,	ēre,	ŭi,	ĭtum,
3d conj.	o (ĭo),	ĕre,	i,	tum,
4th conj.	ĭo,	īre,	īvi,	ītum.

Examples: — 1. amo, amāre, amāvi, amātum; 2. monĕo monēre, monŭi, monĭtum; 3. lego, legĕre, lēgi, lectum; facĭo, facĕre, fēci, factum; 4. audĭo, audīre, audīvi, audītum.

REMARK 1. — The invariable or permanent part of the present (indicative and infinitive) is called the first or general *root* of the verb (*am*, *mon*, *lĕg*, *aud*); that of the perfect, the second root (*amāv*, *monŭ*, *lēg*, *audīv*); and that of the supine in *um*, the third root (*amāt*, *monĭt*, *lect*, *audīt*).*

REMARK 2. — Many verbs are irregular in the formation of these principal parts, which frequently follow the analogy of two different conjugations (e. g. the verb *do* below). In these cases the infinitive present determines to which of the conjugations the verb is to be referred. Some verbs again are defective, the supine, or the perfect and the supine both, being wanting.

To love, cherish.	Ămo, āre, āvi, ātum, Dĭlĭgo, ĕre, lexi, lectum. (ALIQUEM, ALIQUID).†
To set in order, arrange.	Dispōno, ĕre, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum (ALIQUID).
To open.	Āpĕrĭo, īre, pĕrŭi, pertum (ALIQUID).
To do.	Ago, ĕre, ēgi, actum (ALIQUID).
To do (make).	Făcĭo, ĕre, fēci, factum (ALIQUID).
To give.	Dō, dăre, dĕdi, dătum ‡ (ALICUI ALIQUID).
To see.	Vĭdĕo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum (ALIQUEM, ALIQUID).
To say, speak.	Dico, ĕre, dixi, dictum (ALIQUID).
To carry.	Porto, āre, āvi, ātum (ALIQUID).
To wash.	Lăvo, āre, āvi (*or* lāvi), ātum (lautum *or* lōtum) (ALIQUEM, ALIQUID).
To want, need.	Ĕgĕo, ēre, ŭi, — (ALIQUĀ RE). Indĭgĕo, ēre, ŭi, — (ALICŪJUS).

* The manner in which the different tenses, &c. are formed from these primary parts is explained in Lesson XXVIII., which see. The student should make himself familiar with the formula of every verb, as it occurs in this and in subsequent lessons.

† See Rules *F.* and *G.* of this Lesson.

‡ The verb *dō* has the syllable *dă* short; as *dăre*, *dămus*. The monosyllabic forms *dă* and *dās* are the only exceptions.

OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE.

D. The present indicative of Latin verbs corresponds in general to that of the English. The distinctions, however, indicated by the English *I love*, *do love*, *am loving*, are not expressed by any separate forms in Latin. The present indicative of the respective conjugations is thus inflected: —

	1. Amo, *I love.*		2. Mŏnĕo, *I remind.*	
Sing.	*I love*	ămŏ *	*I remind*	mŏnĕŏ
	Thou lovest	ămās	*Thou remindest*	mŏnēs
	He loves,	ămăt,	*He reminds,*	mŏnĕt,
Plur.	*We love*	ămāmŭs	*We remind*	mŏnēmŭs
	Ye love	ămātĭs	*Ye remind*	mŏnētĭs
	They love.	ămant.	*They remind.*	mŏnent.

	3. Lĕgo, *I read.*		4. Audĭo, *I hear.*	
Sing.	*I read*	lĕgŏ	*I hear*	audĭŏ
	Thou readest	lĕgĭs	*Thou hearest*	audīs
	He reads,	lĕgĭt,	*He hears,*	audĭt,
Plur.	*We read*	lĕgĭmŭs	*We hear*	audīmŭs
	Ye read	lĕgĭtĭs	*Ye hear*	audītĭs
	They read.	lĕgunt.	*They hear.*	audĭunt.

Like *ămo* inflect: do, porto, lăvo, &c. — Like *moneo*: hăbĕo, vĭdeo, ĕgĕo, and indĭgĕo, &c. — Like *lĕgo*: dĭlĭgo, dispōno, dīco, &c. — Like *audĭo*: ăpĕrĭo, ēsŭrĭo, sĭtĭo, &c.

E. Obs. Verbs of the third conjugation in *io* are inflected like *audio*, except that the *i* of the different persons is short. The verb *sum*, I am, is irregular. The present indicative of *făcĭo*, I make, do, and *sŭm* runs thus:

Sing.	*I do*	făcĭŏ	*I am*	sŭm
	Thou dost	făcĭs	*Thou art*	ĕs
	He does,	făcĭt,	*He is,*	est,
Plur.	*We do*	făcĭmŭs	*We are*	sŭmŭs
	Ye do	făcĭtĭs	*Ye are*	estĭs
	They do.	făcĭunt.	*They are.*	sunt.

Do you love your brother?	Amâsne tû frâtrem túum?
I do love him.	Véro, éum ámo.

F. Rule. — The object of an active transitive verb is put in the Accusative. This accusative may be either a person (*aliquem*) or a thing (*aliquid*). As

* The *o* final of the present tense of all verbs is commonly long, but in poetry sometimes short.

Púer líbrum légit.	*The boy reads the book.*
Vídĕo hóminem.	*I see the man.*
Ápĕri fenéstram.	*Open the window.*
Does your brother arrange his books?	Disponítne frâter túus líbros súos?
He does arrange them.	Dispônit.
He does not arrange them.	Éos nôn dispônit.
Do ye see anything beautiful?	Videtísne álĭquid púlchri?
We do see something beautiful.	Vidêmus véro quíddam púlchri.
What is that little boy doing?	Quíd ágit ílle puércŭlus?
He is doing something bad.	Ágit álĭquid nêquam (máli).
Do you open the window?	Apĕrísne fenéstram?
I am opening it.	Apério.
Who is washing his stockings?	Quis lávat tibiálĭa súa?
The sailors are washing them.	Lávant éa naútae.
What do the men say?	Quid dícunt hómines?
They say nothing.	Níhil dícunt.
Does your father give you a good book?	Dátne tíbi páter líbrum bónum?
He gives me a good book.	Dát míhi líbrum bónum.

G. Obs. In Latin, as in English, the *immediate* object of transitive verbs (whether they be active or deponent) is put in the *Accusative* (*álĭquem* or *álĭquid*), and the *remote* object (i. e. that *for* or *with reference to which* anything is done) in the *Dative* (*álĭcui*).* As

Dâ míhi líbrum.	*Give me the book.*
Mítto tibi epístolam.	*I send you the letter.*
Cómmŏdat nóbis cúltrum.	*He lends us the knife.*
Nôn schólae, sed vítae díscimus.	*We learn not for school, but for life.*
Dost thou love him?	Eúmne ámas? / Númquid éum ámas?
I do not love him.	Éum nôn ámo (nôn díligo).
Do you want your money?	Egêsne tû pecúniā túā? / Indígêsne pecúniae túae?

H. Obs. The verb *ĕgĕo* and its compound *indĭgĕo* are intransitive, and are generally followed† by the Ablative, but sometimes by the Genitive of the object needed. (Cf. Lesson XXVI. *B.*)

---

* In connection with this rule it is necessary to remark, that many verbs in Latin are neuter, while their English equivalents are transitive. No details can at present be given, but the construction of every verb will be pointed out as it is needed by the student of this method. Of Latin verbs generally, some are followed by the *Nominative*, others govern the *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, or *Ablative*.

† I. e. they *govern* the Ablative and Genitive. In Latin the object commonly precedes the verb, and can only be said to follow in *logical order*.

I really do need it.	Ego véro éā égĕo. Sáne, éjus indígĕo.
What do you stand in need of?	Quâ rê índĭges?
I do not need anything.	Níhil égĕo.
Do you want any one (anything)?	Egêsne álĭquo (áliquā rê)?
I need my father.	Pátris* indígĕo.

Exercise 35.

Does your brother love you? — He does love me. — Do you love him? — I do love him. — Does your father love him? — He does not love him. — Dost thou love me, my good child? — I love thee. — Dost thou love this ugly man? — I do not love him. — Does the servant open the window? — He does open it. — Dost thou open it? — I do not open it. — Does he open the book? — He does not open it. — Dost thou set my books in order? — I set them in order. — Does the servant arrange our boots and shoes? — He sets both the one and the other in order. — Do our children love us? — They do love us. — Do we love our enemies? — We do not love them. — What do you give me? — I do not give thee anything (I give thee nothing). — Do you give my brother the book? — I do give it to him. — Do you give him a hat? — I do give him one. — What do you give him? — I give him something beautiful. — What does he give you? — He gives me nothing.

Exercise 36.

Does the sailor wash his stockings? — He does wash them. — Do you wash your hands (*manus tuas*)? — I do wash them. — Does your brother wash as many shirts as stockings? — He washes more of the one than of the other. — Do you wash your shirts? — I do not wash them. — Do your brothers wash their stockings or ours? — They neither wash yours nor theirs; they wash those (i. e. the stockings) of their children. — What does your servant carry? — He carries a large table. — What do these men carry? — They carry their wooden chairs. — What books does the young man carry? — He carries good books. — Does he read them? — He does not read them? — What do you read? — I am reading nothing. — What do the men say? — They are saying something good. — What dost thou say? — I do not say anything. — What are you doing? — I am doing nothing. — What are the boys doing? — They are doing something bad. — They are reading good books. — Are these men hungry or thirsty? — They are neither hungry nor thirsty.

Exercise 37.

Dost thou hear anything? — I hear nothing. — Does your father hear anything? — He neither hears nor sees anything. — Dost thou

---

* The genitive (especially of the person) is quite frequent after *indĭgeo*.

see anything? — I see nothing. — Do you see my large garden? — I do see it. — Does your father see our ship? — He does not see it, but we see it. — How many ships do you see? — We see a good many; we see more than thirty (*plus triginta*). — Do you give me books? — I do give thee some. — Does your father give you money? — He does not give us any. — Does he give you hats? — He does not give us any. — Do you see many sailors? — We see more soldiers than sailors (*quam nautarum*). — Do the soldiers see many storehouses? — They see more gardens than storehouses. — Do the English give you good cakes? — They do give us some. — Do you give me as much wine as beer? — I give thee as much of the one as of the other. — Do you give me some more cakes (*panificia aliquot amplius*)? — I do not give you any more. — Do you give me the horse which you have? — I do not give you that which I have? — Which horse do you give me? — I give you that of my brother. — Do you want (need) your money? — I do want it. — Does your father want his servant? — He does want him. — Dost thou need anything (*aliquā re*)? — I need nothing (*nihil*). — Do we want our carriage? — We do want it. — Do our friends want their clothes? — They do want them.

Lesson XXV. — PENSUM VICESIMUM QUINTUM.

OF THE GERUND.

A. The gerund is a verbal substantive of the second declension neuter gender. It is formed from the present indicative by changing the 1. *o*, 2. *eo*, 3. *o* (*io*), 4. *io* of the respective conjugations into 1. *andi*, 2. *endi*, 3. *endi* (*iendi*), 4. *iendi;* as, ămo, *amandi;* mŏnĕo, *mŏnendi;* lĕgo, *lĕgendi* (făcio, *făciendi*); audio, *audiendi.* Its nominative is wanting, the present infinitive being commonly used in its stead. The gerund is thus declined: —

GEN.	*of loving*	ămandī	GEN.	*of seeing*	vĭdendī
DAT.	*to loving*	ămandō	DAT.	*for seeing*	vĭdendō
ACC.	*loving*	ămandŭm	ACC.	*seeing*	vĭdendŭm
ABL.	*by loving*	ămandō.	ABL.	*by seeing*	vĭdendō.

So decline: apĕrĭendi, dandi, dīcendi, făcĭendi, lăvandi, lĕgendi, mŏnendi, portandi, &c.

B. Gerunds generally govern the same cases as their verbs. They are in other respects construed like substantives, according to the following rules: —

a) The Genitive is used: 1. After certain adjectives implying an operation of the mind; as *cupĭdus, dĭligens, gnārus, ignārus, mĕmor, immĕmor, perītus, studĭōsus*, &c. 2. After many substantives, especially after *ars, causa, consilium, cupiditas, facultas, occasio, potestas, spes, studium, tempus, voluntas*, and the ablatives *causā* and *gratiā*, "for the sake of." E. g. *cupidus dicendi*, desirous of speaking; *studiosus audiendi*, fond of hearing; *ars pingendi*, the art of painting; *tempus abeundi*, the time of leaving (to leave); *discendi causâ*, for the sake of learning.

b) The Dative of the gerund is employed after verbs and adjectives, especially after *intentum esse, opĕram dare, tempus impendere*, and after *utilis, inutilis, noxĭus, par, aptus, indoneus*, &c.; as, *operam dat studendo*, he applies himself to study; *intentus est legendo*, he is bent on reading; *aptus discendo*, apt to learn; *utilis bibendo*, useful to drink.

c) The Accusative of the gerund always depends on prepositions, especially on *ad* (to, for) and *inter* (during, while); sometimes also on *ante* (before), *circa*, and *ob*. E. g. *paratus ad videndum*, ready to see; *inter ludendum*, while playing, &c.

d) The Ablative of the gerund is either used, 1. to denote the instrument in answer to the question *whereby? wherewith?* or, 2. it is dependent on one of the prepositions *ab, de, ex*, or *in*; as, *defessus sum scribendo*, I am wearied with writing; *justĭtia in suo cuique tribuendo*, justice in giving every man his own.

EXAMPLES: —

The desire of living well.	Cŭpíditas béně vivéndi.
The science of avoiding unnecessary expenses.	Sciéntia vitándi súmptus supervácŭos.
Desirous, fond of hearing.	Cúpidus, studĭôsus audiéndi.
Sulphur water is useful for drinking (to drink).	Áqua nitrôsa útĭlis ést bibéndo.
He is not solvent (able to pay).	Nôn (par) ést solvéndo (*dat.*).
They were present at the registration.	Scribéndo (*dat.*) adfŭérunt. (A law term.)
He came for the purpose of seeing (to see).	Vênĭt ad vidéndum.
He keeps dogs for hunting purposes.	Álit cánes ad venándum.
Easy to take (to be taken).	Fácĭlis ad capiéndum.
While walking, drinking, playing.	Inter eúndum (ambulándum), bibéndum, ludéndum.
The mind of man is nourished by learning and thinking.	Hóminis méns discéndo álĭtur ét cogĭtándo.
He spends his leisure in reading and writing.	Ótium súum in legéndo consûmit ínque scribéndo.

OF THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

C. The future passive participle is formed according

to the analogy of the gerund. Its terminations for the respective conjugations are:—

1. *andus, a, um;* 2. *endus, a, um;* 3. *endus, a, um* (*iendus, a, um*); 4. *iendus, a, um.* As, *ămandus, a, um,* to be loved; *vĭdendus, a, um,* to be seen; *lĕgendus, a, um,* to be read; *făcĭendus, a, um,* to be done; *audĭendus, a, um,* to be heard. This participle is regularly inflected like *bonus, a, um;* it is used in all the cases, both singular and plural, and agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case.

REMARK. — Verbs of the third and fourth conjugations may also have *undus* instead of *endus*, especially when *i* precedes; as *dicundus, faciundus, audiundus*, &c. Thus, regularly, *potiundus*, from *potior*, I possess. In other verbs this form occurs chiefly in certain standard expressions, such as *In jure dicundo*, In administering justice; *In finibus dividundis*, In determining the boundaries, &c.

OF THE NOMINATIVE OF THE PARTICIPLE IN "DUS."

D. The nominative (and sometimes the accusative) of the future passive participle has generally the signification of *necessity* or of *propriety*, more rarely also of *possibility;* as *amandus*, "one that must be loved, is to be loved, ought to be loved"; *legendus*, "that must be read, is required to be read," &c. The construction of this participle has the peculiarity of requiring the agent (*by* whom the action is to be performed) in *the dative case*, instead of in the ablative with *ab.* (Cf. Lesson XXXIV.) Examples:—

I, thou, he, must love.	Amándum ést míhi, tíbi, ílli.
We, you, they, must see.	Vidéndum ést nóbis, vóbis, íllis.
I, you, they, must read.	Lĕgéndum ést míhi, tíbi, íis.
I (thou, he) must write a letter (I have a letter to write).	Epístŏla míhi (tíbi, éi) scribénda * ést.
We (ye, they) must write letters (have to write letters).	Epístolae (nóbis, vóbis, éis) scribéndae súnt.
I (you, they) have to read the book.	Libér ést míhi (tíbi, íllis) lĕgéndus.
We (you, he) have to read books.	Líbri súnt míhi (tíbi, ílli) legéndi.

* It was customary among the earlier Latin writers (and also among the later poets) to employ the object *accusative* after the neuter form of the participle of transitive verbs, and to say, *epistolam* (or *epistolas*) mihi scribendum est; as, for example, Lucretius: *Quoniam aeternas poenas in morte timendum est*, instead of *Quoniam aeternae poenae in morte timendae sunt* (Since we must dread eternal punishment in death). But this construction is rarely used by Cicero, and the rule should be to employ the nominative and the participle in the same case.

I, thou, he, must rest (go, sleep), &c.	Quiescéndum (ĕúndum,* dormiéndum) ést míhi, tíbi, éi, &c.
We ought especially to cherish diligence, and to practise it always.	Diligéntĭa praecípŭe colénda ést nóbis, et sémper adhibénda.
One must venture (risk), one must die.	Audéndum ést, moriéndum ést.
Every one must (should) use his own judgment.	Súo cuíque judícĭo (*abl.*) uténdum ést.
I know that I must write a letter.	Scío epístolam míhi ésse scribéndam.

OF THE OBLIQUE CASES OF THE PARTICIPLE IN "DUS," OR OF THE GERUNDIVE.

E. The future passive participle rarely retains its original signification of necessity or propriety in the oblique cases (i. e. in the genitive, dative, &c.), but is commonly employed in the sense of a present participle or of the gerund. When thus used, it is called the *Gerundive*. Thus we say:—

The design of writing a letter (*lit.* of a letter to be written).	Consílĭum epístolae scribéndae, *instead of* consílĭum scribéndi epístolam.†
The design of writing letters (*lit.* of letters to be written).	Consílĭum epistolârum scribendârum, *instead of* consílĭum epístolas scribéndi.
A committee of ten on legislation (*lit.* for the writing of laws).	Decémvĭri légĭbus scribéndis (*dat.*).
One of the committee of three on grants of public lands.	Triúmvĭr ágro dándo (*dat.*).
He is born for the endurance of miseries.	Nâtus ést misérĭis feréndis (*dat.*).
He was sent to procure ships.	Míssus ést ad náves comparándas (*for* ad comparándum náves).
He comes to defend the city.	Vénit ad úrbem defendéndam (*for* ad defendéndum úrbem).

* In intransitive verbs this neuter form of the participle with *est, erat*, &c. is the only one in use. The dative of the agent is often left indeterminate.

† This conversion of the object accusative of the gerund into the passive construction of the gerundive may always take place, unless in those cases where perspicuity would suffer from the change. When the accusative after the gerund is a pronoun or adjective of the *neuter* gender, the conversion usually does not take place, to prevent ambiguity respecting the gender of these words. Thus always: Stúdium *illud efficiéndi* (the desire of accomplishing that), and never *illius efficiendi*; *Cúpidus plúra cognoscéndi* (desirous of knowing more), and never *plúrium cognoscendórum*. Thus also: In *suum* cuíque *tribuéndo* (in giving every one his own), more commonly than, In *súo* cuíque *tribuéndo*. In general, however, the rule is, that, *when the verb governs the accusative, the passive construction with the participle is to be preferred to the gerund with the accusative.*

Fortitude in the endurance of hardships and dangers.	Fortĭtúdo in labóribus periculísque subĕúndis (*for* in subĕúndo labóres, &c.).
I am engaged in writing a letter.	Occupâtus súm in epístŏlā scribéndā (*for* in scribéndo epístŏlam).
I am engaged in writing letters.	Occupâtus súm in epístŏlis scribéndis (*for* in scribéndo epístolas).
The plan has been formed of destroying the city, of murdering the inhabitants, of blotting out the Roman name.	Ínita súnt consília úrbis deléndae, cívium trucidandôrum, nóminis Románi extinguéndi.

F. Obs. From the above examples, it will be perceived that the gerundive agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case. Violations of this general rule, however, both with respect to gender and to number, are not unfrequent in the genitive of substantives, and especially of pronouns. E. g.: —

Since there is an opportunity of seeing you (*fem.*).	Quóniam *tui* (fem.) *vidéndi* (for *videndae*) ést cópia.
For the sake of exhorting you.	Véstri *exhortándi* (for *exhortandôrum*) caúsā.
The liberty of plundering fruit.	Licéntia diripiéndi pomôrum (*for* poma).
The power of selecting examples.	Exemplôrum (*for* exémpla) eligéndi potéstas.

Exercise 38.

Are you fond of reading? — I am fond of reading. — Are your brothers fond of reading? — They are not fond of reading. — Who is fond of hearing? — The merchants are fond of hearing. — Does he come for the purpose of seeing? — He does come for the purpose of seeing. — They come (*veniunt*) for the purpose of hearing. — Is it useful to drink wine? — It is useful. — It is not useful to drink wine. — Are you (*esne tu*) solvent (i. e. can you pay your debts)? — I am solvent. — I cannot pay my debts. — Is the place easy to take (easily taken)? — It is difficult (*difficilis*) to be taken. — Do you read while you are playing? — I do not read while I am playing. — By what (*quā re*) is the mind of man nourished? — It is nourished by learning and thinking. — Does he spend his leisure in reading? — No, sir, he spends it in playing. — Does he read for the sake of learning (*discendi gratiâ*)? — He reads for the sake of writing.

Exercise 39.

Must you read? — I am not obliged to read. — Must they sleep? — They must sleep. — Must your brother go? — He must go. — Who must go (*cui*)? — The sailor must go. — The boys must go. — Must the captains go? — They must go. — Must one venture? — One must

venture. — One must not venture. — What must (should) one do (*quid est faciendum*) ? — Every one must (should) use his own judgment. — Do you keep (*alisne tu*) dogs for hunting ? — I do not keep any. — Must you write a letter (Have you a letter to write) ? — I must write one (I have one to write). — Have I any letters to write ? — You have some to write. — Who has (*cui sunt*) many letters to write ? — The merchant has many to write. — I have none to write. — Who should practise diligence ? — We all (*nobis omnibus*) should practise and cherish it.

Exercise 40.

Have you (*estne tibi*) the design of writing a letter ? — I have the design of writing several. — Has your father the design of writing letters ? — He has the design of writing letters and notes. — Is the time of departure at hand (*adestne tempus abeundi*) ? — It is at hand. — The time of departure is not yet (*nondum*) at hand. — Is it time to speak ? — It is time to speak. — Are you (*esne tu*) engaged (*occupatus*) in writing a letter ? — I am not engaged in writing a letter, but in writing notes. — Is your son fond of writing letters ? — He is not fond of writing, but of reading them. — Is paper useful for writing letters ? — It is. — Have you an opportunity to speak ? — I have an opportunity to speak. — Who has an opportunity to read ? — Your son has an opportunity to read and to write ? — Who comes to see ? — I come (*ego venio*) to see. — Who was (*quis missus est*) sent to procure ships ? — The captain was sent. — Have you the desire to accomplish (i. e. of accomplishing) that ? — I have (*est*). — What must we do ? — We must give every man his own.

Lesson XXVI. — PENSUM VICESIMUM SEXTUM.

A wish, a mind, desire.	*Cŭpĭdĭtas, voluntas, ātis, f.; stŭdĭum, i, n.*
Time, leisure.	*Tempus, ŏris, n.; spătĭum, ōtĭum,* i, n.*
A mind (desire) to work.	Volúntas opĕrándi. Stúdĭum ópĕris facĭéndi.
Time to work.	Spátĭum ad laborándum. Ótĭum (témpus) ad ópus facĭéndum.
I have a mind (wish, desire) to do anything.	Est míhi volúntas (cupídĭtas, stúdĭum) álĭquid faciéndi. Cúpĭdus súm álĭquid faciéndi. Cúpio áliquid fácĕre.

* *Tempus* is the proper word for "time" generally. *Otium* is "leisure." *Spatium* is properly "space," "room," i. e. a certain portion of time, an allotment or allowance of time for doing anything.

A. Obs. The preposition *to*, which in English is always the sign of the infinitive, is not always so in Latin. It is sometimes rendered by the infinitive, sometimes by the supine in *um*, and sometimes by one of the oblique cases of the gerund or gerundive. The shade of difference in these expressions will readily be perceived by the learner.

I have time to work (for working).	Est mihi spatium ad laborandum. Habeo otium ad opus faciendum.
I have a mind (desire) to work.	Cupidus sum laborandi. Cupio opus facere.
I have the courage to speak.	Est mihi animus loquendi. Audeo loqui (dicere).
To work.	*Laboro, are, avi, atum.* *Opus facere* (to do work).
To speak.	Loquor, loqui, locutus sum.* Dico, ere, xi, ctum.
To desire.	Cupio, ere, ivi (ii), itum (ALIQUID FACERE).
To venture, dare.	Audeo, ere, ausus sum † (ALIQUID FACERE).
To cut.	Seco, are, secui, sectum (ALIQUEM, ALIQUID).
To buy.	Emo, ere, emi, emptum (ALIQUEM, ALIQUID).
To lack (want, to be without).	Careo, ere, ui, itum (ALIQUA RE).

B. RULE. Verbs signifying plenty or want are generally followed by the Ablative, sometimes by the Genitive. As: —

Egeo pecunia.	*I want (am in want of) money.*
Caret animo.	*He lacks (has not) the courage.*
Liber scatet vitiis.	*The book abounds in errors.*
Indiget patris.	*He needs his father.*
I have not, I lack.	Non habeo (*with the acc.*). Mihi deest (*with the nom.*). Careo (*with the abl.*).

* *Loquor* is a deponent verb of the third conjugation. The principal parts of verbs of the passive form are only *three*, viz.: — 1. the Present Indicative (*loquor*); 2. the Present Infinitive (*loqui*); and 3. the Perfect Indicative (*locutus sum*). With respect to the signification, *loqui* is properly "to speak," "to talk," e. g. Latin, English; and *dicere*, "to say," or "to speak," in connected or formal discourse.

† On this deponent perfect, see Lesson XXXIII. *A.* Rem. 4.

I have not (I lack) the courage to speak.	Déest* míhi ánimus loquéndi. Cáreo ánimo loquéndi. Nôn aúdĕo lóqui (fári).
To cut it (of cutting, for cutting it).	Éum, éam, íd secâre (secándi). Ad éum, íd secándum. Ad éam secándam (*fem.*).
To cut them (of cutting, for cutting them).	Éos, éas, éa secâre (secándi). Ad éos secándos (*masc.*). Ad éas secándas (*fem.*). Ad éa secánda (*neut.*).
To cut some (*sing.*).	Alíquid secâre (secándi). Ad nonnúllum secándum. Ad nonnúllam secándam (*fem.*).
To cut some (*plur.*).	Aliquot (nonnúllos, &c.) secâre (secándi). Ad nonnúllos secándos, &c. Ad áliquot secánda.
Have you time to cut trees?	Habêsne ótium ad secándum arbóres? Éstne tíbi spátium ad arbóres áliquas secándas?
I have time to cut some.	Hábeo ótium ad secándum áliquas. Ést míhi spátium ad áliquot secándas.
Have you a mind to cut the bread?	Cupidúsne es pânis ín frústa secándi? Cupísne pânem ín frústa secâre?
I have no mind (desire) to cut it.	Nôn súm cúpidus éjus ín frústa secándi. Éum in frústa secâre nôn cúpio.
To buy some more.	*Plûs* (*ámplius*) *ĕmĕre* or *eméndi.* *Ad ámplius* (*plûs*) *eméndum.*
To buy one.	Ûnum (-am, -um) ĕmĕre *or* eméndi. Ad ûnum (-am, -um) eméndum.
To buy one more.	*Úno* (*-a, -o*) *ámplius* (*plûs*)† *ĕmĕre* or *eméndi.* *Ad eméndum úno* (*-a, -o*) *plûs* (*ámplius*).

---

* *Deest* is compounded of *de* + *sum*, and is inflected precisely like the simple verb. It is construed with the dative of the person: — *Deest mihi, tibi, hominibus*, &c., "There is wanting to me, to you, to the men"; i. e. "I have not, lack, want."

† *Plus* and *amplius* are here used substantively, like *aliquid, nihil*, and may like them be followed by a partitive genitive; e. g. *plus equorum*, more horses; *amplius librorum*, more books. *Uno* is the ablative of excess: "more by one." We thus can say either *uno equo amplius*, or *uno amplius equorum*, one more horse.

To buy two.	Dúos (dúas, dúo) émĕre *or* eméndi. Ad eméndum dúos (dúas, dúo).
To buy two more.	Duôbus (-âbus, -ôbus) ámplius (plûs) émere *or* eméndi. Ad eméndum duôbus (-âbus, -ôbus) plûs (ámplius).*
Have you a mind to buy one more horse?	Cupísne émere úno plûs equôrum? Ésne cúpĭdus eméndi úno ámplius equôrum?
I have a mind to buy one more.	Cúpio émere úno plûs. Súm cúpĭdus eméndi úno ámplĭus.
Have you a mind to buy some books?	Cupísne émere líbros áliquos? Cupĭdúsne és librôrum áliquot eméndi?
I have a mind to buy some, but I have no time.	Cúpio áliquot (nonnúllos) émere, séd cáreo ótio (déest mihi spátium).
Am I right in doing so? (Is it right for me to do so?)	Éstne mihi fas (*or* licétne mihi) hóc facĕre?
You are not right. (It is wrong for you.)	Nôn est tibi fas (nôn licet). Est tibi néfas.

EXERCISE 41.

Have you still a mind to buy the house of my friend? — I have still a mind to buy it, but I have no more money. — Have you time to work? — I have time, but no mind to work. — Has he time to cut some sticks? — He has time to cut some. — Have you a mind to cut some bread? — I have a mind to cut some, but I have no knife. — Have you time to cut some cheese? — I have time to cut some. — Has he a desire to cut the tree? — He has a desire to cut it, but he has no time. — Has he time to cut the cloth? — He has time to cut it. — Have I time to cut the trees? — You have time to cut them? — Has the painter a mind to buy a horse? — He has a mind to buy two. — Has your captain of the navy time to speak (*ad loquendum*)? — He has time, but no desire to speak. — Have you a mind to buy a carriage? — I have a mind to buy one. — Have I a mind to buy a house? — You have a mind to buy one. — Has your brother a mind to buy a great ox? — He has a mind to buy a little one. — We have a mind to buy little oxen. — How many horses have you a mind to buy? — I have a mind to buy four. — Has any one a mind to buy a broom? — This man has a mind to buy one. — What has that man a mind to buy? — He has a mind to buy a beautiful carriage, three beautiful horses, good tea, and good meat.

---

* The learner must bear in mind that, although these formulas are arranged with special reference to the expressions *cupio, cupidus sum*, and *otium ad* of this Lesson, they are of general importance, as these same constructions will perpetually recur with other words in different parts of the book.

Exercise 42.

Have you a desire to speak? — I have a desire, but no time to speak. — Have you the courage to cut your arm? — I have not the courage to cut it. — Am I right in speaking? — You are not wrong in speaking; but you are wrong in cutting my trees. — Has the son of your friend a desire to buy one more bird? — He has a desire to buy one more. — Have you a mind to buy one more beautiful coat? — I have a mind to buy one more. — Have we a mind to buy a few more horses? — We have a mind to buy a few more, but we have no more money. — What have you a mind to buy? — We have a mind to buy something good, and our neighbors have a mind to buy something beautiful. — Have their children a desire to buy any birds? — Their children have no desire to buy any. — Have you the courage to buy the trunk of the captain? — I have a desire to buy it, but I have no more money. — Who has a mind to buy my beautiful dog? — Nobody has a mind to buy it. — Have you a mind to buy my beautiful birds, or those of the Frenchman? — I have a mind to buy those of the Frenchman. — Which book has he a mind to buy? — He has a mind to buy that which you have, that which your son has, and that which mine has. — Have you two horses? — I have only one, but I have a wish to buy one more.

Lesson XXVII. — PENSUM VICESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

OF COMPOUND VERBS.

A. The majority of Latin compound verbs are formed by prefixing certain particles to simple verbs. These particles are either the separable prepositions *a* (*ab* or *abs*), *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *cum*, *de*, *e* or *ex*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *post*, *prae*, *praeter*, *pro*, *sub*, *super*, *supter*, and *trans*, or one of the inseparable prefixes *amb* (*an*), *dis* (or *di*), *re*, and *se*.

Remarks.

1. It is frequently the case that the radical vowel or diphthong of the simple verb is changed in the compound; as *frango*, *diffringo*; *laedo*, *collido*, &c.

2. The final consonant of many of the above prepositions is often *assimilated*, i. e. changed, into the initial of the verb. The notes to the following list of compound verbs will show to what extent this is done.

Examples of Compound Verbs.

A[1] — āmitto, *I lose.*
Ab — ābĕo, *I go away.*
" — aufŭgio, *I escape.*
Abs — abscondo, *I conceal.*
Ad[2] — addo, *I add (to).*
" — affĕro, *I bring (to).*
" — assūmo, *I take, assume.*
Ante[3] — antĕpōno, *I prefer.*
" — anticipo, *I anticipate.*
Circum — circumĕo, *I go around.*
Cum[4] — combūro, *I burn up.*
" — compōno, *I compose.*
" — colligo, *I collect.*
" — corripio, *I seize.*
" — conservo, *I preserve.*
" — cŏŭlesco, *I blend with.*
" — cōmĕdo, *I eat up.*
" — cōgito (= co-agito), *I think, reflect.*
De — descendo, *I descend.*
E[5] — ējicio, *I cast out.*
" — escendo, *I disembark.*
Ex — exaudio, *I hear.*
" — expōno, *I expound.*
In[6] — intro, *I enter.*
In — illīdo, *I strike against.*
" — immūto, *I change.*
" — irrumpo, *I burst into.*
Inter[7] — interpōno, *I put between.*
" — intelligo, *I comprehend.*
Ob[8] — obsto, *I stand against.*
" — oppōno, *I place against.*
" — ostendo, *I show.*
Per[9] — perlĕgo, *I read through.*
" — pellicio, *I allure.*
Post — postpōno, *I value less.*
Prae — praefĕro, *I prefer.*
Praeter — praetermitto, *I omit.*
Pro — prōcurro, *I run forward.*
" — prōdĕo,[10] *I go forth.*
Sub[11] — subjicio, *I subject.*
" — succēdo, *I follow.*
" — suspendo, *I suspend.*
Super — supĕrimpōno, *I place upon.*
Supter — suptĕrīgo, *I drive under.*
Trans[12] — transĕo, *I pass over (beyond).*
" — tradūco, *I lead over.*
" — transcribo, *I transcribe.*

B. The particle *amb* (*am*, *an*) has the sense of *around*, *about*, *concerning*. *Dis* or *di* denotes separation or dispersion, sometimes also

---

[1] *A* is put before *m* and *v*; *ab* before vowels and the majority of consonants; *abs* only before *c* and *t*. In the verbs *aufero*, *aufugio*, the *ab* is changed into *av* = *au*.

[2] *Ad* remains unchanged before vowels, and before *d*, *j*, *v*, *m*; but before the remaining consonants it is assimilated.

[3] *Ante* changes its *e* into *i* only in the verbs *anticipare* and *antistare*.

[4] *Cum* in composition never appears without a change of form. Before *b*, *p*, *m*, it becomes *com*; before *l*, *n*, *r*, it is assimilated into *col*, *con*, *cor*; before the remaining consonants it is always *con*; before vowels it is generally *co*, but sometimes *com*.

[5] Before vowels, and before *c*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*, generally *ex*; before the rest of the consonants, *e*; before *f*, assimilation.

[6] *In*, before *m*, *b*, *p*, becomes *im*; before *l* and *r* it is assimilated; in all other cases it remains unchanged.

[7] *Inter* remains unaltered, except in *intelligo*.

[8] *Ob* is assimilated only before *f*, *g*, *p*. The form *ostendo* is from the obsolete *obs* and *tendo*.

[9] *Per* generally remains unaltered, except sometimes before *r*.

[10] The letter *d* is sometimes inserted between the prefix and the verb, to prevent a hiatus; as *pro-d-eo*, *re-d-eo*, &c.

[11] *Sub* before vowels remains unchanged; it is assimilated before the consonants *c*. *f*. *g*, *m*, *p*, and sometimes also before *r*.

[12] *Trans* rejects the final *s*, when the verb begins with one; it sometimes becomes *tra* before consonants.

intensity. *Re* is generally *back*, *again*, but it sometimes likewise denotes separation. Its form before a vowel is *red*. *Se* is equivalent to the English *aside*, *apart*. These particles are called inseparable, because they are never used as independent words. Examples: —

Amb — ambĭo, *I go about.*
" — ambīgo, *I quarrel (about).*
" — ampŭto, *I cut off.*
" — anquīro, *I investigate.*
Dis — disjĭcĭo, *I scatter.*
" — dispōno, *I arrange*
" — dīmitto, *I dismiss.*
" — differo, *I put off.*
Re — rĕmitto, *I send back.*
" — rĕlĕgo, *I read again.*
" — reclūdo, *I unlock.*
" — rĕdĕo, *I return.*
Se — sēvŏco, *I call aside.*
" — sēdūco, *I lead aside.*
" — sējungo, *I separate.*

C. Obs. Verbs are also compounded with nouns, adjectives, and with other verbs and adverbs; as *vēnumdăre*, from *vēnum* + *dăre*; *călĕfacĕre*, from *călĭdus* + *facĕre*; *obstŭpĕfăcĕre*, from *ob* + *stŭpĕo* + *facĕre*, &c. But the great majority are compounds with prepositions.

To break, to break into pieces.	Frango, ĕre, frēgi, fractum (ALIQUID and NEUTER). Confringo, ĕre, frēgi, fractum. Diffringo (ALIQUID).
To keep, take care of.	Servo, āre, āvi, ātum. Rĕpōno, ĕre, pōsŭi, posĭtum. (ALIQUID).
To pick up.	Tollo, ĕre, sustŭli, sublātum (ALIQUID).
To mend, repair.	Rĕpăro, āre, āvi, ātum. Rĕfĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum. (ALIQUID).
To light, kindle.	Accendo, ĕre, di, sum (ALIQUID).
To make (*or* light) a fire.	Ignem (*m.*) accendĕre (făcĕre).
To burn (be on fire).	Ūro, ĕre, ussi, ustum. Ardĕo, ēre, arsi, arsum.
To burn up, destroy by burning.	Combūro, ĕre, bussi, bustum. Concrĕmo, āre, āvi, ātum. (ALIQUEM, ALIQUID).
To seek, look for.	Quaero, ĕre, quaesīvi, quaesītum. Conquīro, ĕre, isīvi, isītum. (ALIQUEM, ALIQUID).
To warm.	Călĕfăcĭo, ĕre, fēci, factum (ALIQUID).
To make.	Făcio, facĕre, fēci, factum. Confĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum. (ALIQUID).
To do.	Ago, ăgĕre, ēgi, actum. Făcĭo, făcĕre, fēci, factum. (ALIQUID).

To be willing, to wish. *Vŏlo, velle, vŏlŭi* (ALIQUID FACĔRE).

D. Obs. The present indicative of the verb *vŏlo*, which is irregular, is thus inflected.

SING.	*I will, am willing*, or *wish*	ĕgo vŏlo
	Thou wilt (you will), &c.	tū vīs
	He will, is willing, &c.	ille vult,
PLUR.	*We will, wish*, &c.	nōs vŏlŭmŭs
	Ye will, wish, &c.	vōs vultĭs
	They will, wish, &c.	hī, ĭi, illi vŏlunt.

REMARK. — The forms *volt* and *voltis* occur in ancient authors instead of *vult* and *vultis*.

Will you? Do you wish? Are you willing?	Vĭsne? Écquid vis? Án (tū) vis? Núm vis?
Will he? Is he willing? Does he wish?	Vúltne? Équid (ĭs) vúlt? Án (ílle) vúlt? Núm vúlt?
Do you wish to make my fire?	Vĭsne tū mĭhi accéndĕre (făcĕre) ĭgnem?
I am willing to make it.	Vólo éum accéndĕre. Égo éum fácere nôn nólo.
I do not wish to make it.	Nólo éum accéndere.
Does he wish to buy your horse?	Vúltne équum túum émere?
He wishes to buy it.	Vúlt éum émere.
He does not wish to buy it.	Nôn vúlt éum émĕre. Éum émĕre nôn vúlt.

To be unwilling. *Nōlo, nollĕ, nōlŭi* (ALIQUID FACĔRE).

E. Obs. The verb *nōlo* is compounded of *nōn* and *vŏlo*, and follows the inflection of the simple verb. Thus: —

SING.	*I am unwilling*, &c.	nōlo
	Thou art unwilling, &c.	nōn vīs
	He is unwilling, &c.	nōn vult,
PLUR.	*We are unwilling*	nōlŭmŭs
	Ye are unwilling	nōn vultĭs
	They are unwilling.	nōlunt.

REMARK. — *Nevis* and *nevolt* occur in the older Latin writers instead of *nonvis* and *nonvult*.

F. RULE. The verbs *vŏlo, nōlo, mālo, cŭpĭo, sŏlĕo, audeo*, and others expressing willingness, desire, ability, custom, duty, and the like, are followed by the infinitive; as,

*Vólo fíĕri dóctus.**	*I wish to become learned.*
Nôn vúlt abíre.	*He is unwilling to go.*
Débes ésse díligens.	*You ought to be diligent.*
Sólet trístis ésse.	*He is wont to be sad.*
Pótest líber ésse.	*He can be free.*
Has the tailor time to mend my coat.	Habétne sártor spátium ad reparándum méam tógam ? Éstne sartóri ótium ad tógam méam reficiéndam ?
He has time to mend it.	Ést éi ótium ad éam reficiéndam.
Has the shoemaker time to mend my boots ?	Éstne sutóri spátium ad cáligas méas reficiéndas ?
He has time to mend them.	Ést éi spátium ad éas reficiéndas.
Am I right in keeping (is it right for me to keep) your money ?	Éstne míhi fas pecúniam túam servâre (repónĕre) ?
You are not right in keeping it.	Nônést tíbi fas (tíbi néfas est) éam servâre (repónĕre).
Who has to mend (who must mend) our coats ?	Cuí súnt tógae nóstrae reparándae ?
The tailor has to mend them.	Reparándae súnt sartóri.
What have I to do ?	Quídést míhi faciéndum ?
You have to warm our coffee.	Coffĕa nóstra tíbi calefaciénda ést.

Exercise 43.

Have you a desire to keep my letter ? — I have a desire to keep it. — Am I right in keeping your money ? — You are right in keeping it. — Has the tailor a desire to make my coat ? — He has a desire to make it, but he has no time. — Has your tailor time to mend my coats ? — He has time to mend them. — Have you courage to burn my hat ? — I have not the courage to burn it ; I have a mind to keep it ? — Has the shoemaker's boy a mind to mend my boots ? — He has no time to mend them. — What has our friend's tailor to mend ? — He has to mend our old coats. — Who has to mend our boots ? — Our shoemaker has to mend them. — What has our hatmaker to do ? — He has to mend your great hats. — Has your brother's joiner anything to do ? — He has to mend our great tables and our little chairs. — Do you wish to keep my twenty-seven crowns ? — I wish to keep them. — Will you pick up that crown or that florin ? — I will pick up both. — Do you wish to cut his finger ? — I do not wish to cut it. — Does the painter wish to burn vinegar ? — He wishes to burn some.

---

* After verbs expressing a desire or wish (such as *vólo*, *nôlo*, *málo*, *cúpio*, *opto*, *studĕo*), the noun, adjective, or participle of the predicate is in the *Nominative*, *when the subject* of the sentence *remains the same*, but in the *Accusative* when *a new subject is introduced*, or the pronoun of the same person repeated. Thus: *Cupio esse clemens*, I desire to be clement; but *Cupio te esse clementem*, I desire you to be clement; and also *Cupio me esse clementem*, instead of *Cupio esse clemens*. And in the same way: *Volo eum fíĕri doctum*, I wish him to become learned; and *Volo me fíĕri doctum*, instead of *Volo fieri doctus*.

— Is the peasant willing to burn his bread? — He is not willing to burn his own, but that of his neighbor. — Have you anything to do? — I have nothing to do. — Have we anything to do? — We have to warm our coffee. — Do you wish to speak? — I wish to speak. — Is your son willing to work? — He is not willing to work.

Exercise 44.

Do you wish to buy anything? — I wish to buy something. — What do you wish to buy? — I wish to buy some good books. — What has he to buy? — He has to buy a good horse. — Will you buy this or that table? — I will buy neither this nor that. — Which house does your friend wish to buy? — He wishes to buy your brother's great house. — Is your servant willing to make my fire? — He is willing to make it. — Will your father buy these rams or these oxen? He will buy neither the one nor the other. — Does he wish to buy my umbrella or my cane? — He wishes to buy both. — Do you wish to make a fire? — We do not wish to make any. — What do you wish to make? — I wish to make vinegar. — Will you seek my knife? — I will seek it. — Have you to look for anything? — I have nothing to look for. — Has he time to seek my son? — He has time, but he will not seek him. — What has he to do? — He has to make a fire, to wash my thread stockings, to buy good coffee, good sugar, good water, and good meat. — Will he buy your good trunk? — He will buy it. — Will you buy my great or my little house? — I will buy neither your great nor your little house; I wish to buy that of our friend. — Will you buy my beautiful horses? — I will not buy them. — How many rams will you buy? — I will buy twenty-two. — Does the foreigner wish to buy much corn? — He wishes to buy but little. — Do you wish to buy a great many gloves? — We wish to buy only a few, but our children wish to buy a great many. — Will they seek the same boots which we have? — They will not seek those which you have, but those which my father has. — Will you look for my coats, or those of the good Frenchman. — I will look neither for yours nor for those of the good Frenchman; I will look for mine and for those of my good son.

Lesson XXVIII. — PENSUM DUODETRICESIMUM.

OF THE DERIVATION OF TENSES.

It has already been said (Lesson XXIV.) that the different tenses and other parts of the Latin verbs are all formed from four principal parts; namely, from the Present Indicative, the Present Infinitive, the Perfect Indicative, and the Supine in *um*. This formation takes place according to the following laws: —

A. From the PRESENT INFINITIVE (*ămāre, mŏnēre, lĕgĕre, audīre*) are derived: —

1. The *Imperative Passive*, which has invariably the same form; as *amāre, mŏnēre, lĕgĕre, audīre*, be thou loved, admonished, read, heard.

2. The *Imperative Active*, by dropping the final *re;* as *ămā, mŏnē, lĕgĕ, audī*, love, admonish, read, hear thou.

3. The *Present Infinitive Passive*, by changing, 1. *āre*, 2. *ēre*, 4. *īre*, into, 1. *āri*, 2. *ēri*, 4. *īri*, and 3. *ĕre* into *i;* as *amārī, monērī, lĕgī, audīrī*, to be loved, admonished, read, heard.

4. The *Imperfect Subjunctive Active*, by adding *m;* as *amārĕm, monērĕm, legĕrĕm, audīrĕm*, that I might be loved, admonished, read, heard.

5. The *Imperfect Subjunctive Passive*, by adding *r;* as *amārĕr, monērĕr, legĕrĕr, audīrĕr*, that I might be loved, admonished, read, heard.

B. From the PRESENT INDICATIVE (*ămo, mŏnĕo, lĕgo, audĭo*) are derived: —

1. The *Present Indicative Passive*, by adding *r;* as *ămor, mŏnĕor, lĕgor, audĭor*, I am loved, admonished, read, heard.

2. The *Present Subjunctive Active*, by changing the terminations of the Present Indicative (1. *o*, 2. *ĕo*, 3. *o* (*ĭo*), 4. *ĭo*) into, 1. *em*, 2. *ĕam*, 3. *am* (*ĭam*), 4. *ĭam;* as *ămem, mŏnĕam, lĕgam* (*capĭam*), *audĭam*, that I may love, admonish, read (take), hear.

3. The *Present Subjunctive Passive*, by changing the final *m* of the Active into *r;* as *ămer, mŏnĕar, lĕgar* (*capĭar*), *audĭar*, that I may be loved, admonished, read (taken), heard.

4. The *Imperfect Indicative Active*, by changing the terminations of the Present into, 1. *ābam*, 2. *ēbam*, 3. *ēbam* (*iēbam*), 4. *iēbam;* as *amābam, monēbam, legēbam* (*capiēbam*), *audiēbam*, I loved, admonished, read (took), heard.

5. The *Imperfect Indicative Passive*, by changing the final *m* of the same tense in the Active into *r;* as *amābar, monēbar, legēbar* (*capiēbar*), *audiēbar*, I was loved, admonished, read (taken), heard.

6. The *First Future Active*, by changing the termination of the Present into, 1. *ābo*, 2. *ēbo*, 3. *am* (*ĭam*), 4. *ĭam;* as *amābo, monēbo, lĕgam* (*capĭam*), *audĭam*, I shall love, admonish, read (take), hear.

7. The *First Future Passive*, by changing the final *m* of the same tense in the Active into *r;* as *amābor, monēbor, lĕgar* (*capĭar*), *audĭar*, I shall be loved, admonished, read (taken), heard.

8. The *Present Participle Active*, by changing the terminations of the Present Indicative into, 1. *ans*, 2. *ens*, 3. *ens* (*ĭens*), 4. *ĭens;* as *ămans, mŏnens, lĕgens* (*capĭens*), *audĭens*, loving, admonishing, reading (taking), hearing.

9. The *Future Passive Participle*, by changing the same terminations into, 1. *andus*, 2. *endus*, 3. *endus* (*iendus*), 4. *iendus;* as *aman-*

dus, monendus, legendus (capiendus), audiendus, to be loved, admonished, read (taken), heard.

10. The *Gerund*, in a similar manner; as *amandi, monendi, legendi (capiendi), audiendi*, of loving, admonishing, reading (taking), hearing.

C. From the PERFECT INDICATIVE (*amāvi, monŭi, lēgi, audīvi*) are derived: —

1. The *Pluperfect Indicative*, by changing the final *i* into *ĕram;* as *amāvĕram, monŭĕram, lēgĕram, audīvĕram*, I had loved, admonished, read, heard.

2. The *Future Perfect*, by changing the final *i* into *ĕro;* as *amāvĕro, monŭĕro, lēgĕro, audīvĕro*, I shall have loved, admonished, read, heard.

3. The *Perfect Subjunctive*, by changing *i* into *ĕrim;* as *amāvĕrim monuĕrim, lēgĕrim, audīvĕrim*, that I may have loved, admonished, read, heard.

4. The *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, by changing *i* into *issem;* as *amāvissem, monŭissem, lēgissem, audīvissem*, that I might have loved, admonished, read, heard.

5. The *Perfect Infinitive Active*, by changing *i* into *isse;* as *amāvisse, monŭisse, lēgisse, audīvisse*, to have loved, admonished, read, heard.

D. From the SUPINE IN "UM" (*amātum, monĭtum, lectum, audītum*) are derived: —

1. The *Perfect Participle Passive*, by changing the final *um* into *us, a, um;* as *amātus, a, um*, loved; *monĭtus, a, um*, admonished; *lectus, a, um*, read; *audītus, a, um*, heard.

2. The *Future Participle Active*, by changing *um* into *ūrus, a, um;* as *amātūrus, a, um*, about to love; *monĭtūrus, a, um*, about to admonish; *lectūrus, a, um*, about to read; *audītūrus, a, um*, about to hear.

REMARK. — The Participle in *ūrus* in connection with *esse* serves to form the *Future Infinitive Active;* as *amātūrum (am, um) esse*, to be about to love; *monĭtūrum (am, um) esse*, to be about to admonish, &c. The same Participle, compounded with the different tenses of the verb *sum*, gives rise to a new conjugation, by which the various shades of a future or incipient action are indicated; as *amatūrus sum*, I am about to love; *amatūrus ĕram*, I was about to love; *amatūrus ĕro*, I shall be about to love, &c.

E. In the PASSIVE VOICE several tenses are *periphrastic* or *compound*, and are formed by combining the Perfect Participle with one of the tenses of the verb *sum*. These compound tenses are: —

1. The *Perfect Indicative*, with *sum;* as *amātus (a, um) sum*, I have been loved; *monĭtus (a, um) sum*, I have been admonished, &c.

2. The *Perfect Subjunctive*, with *sim;* as *amatus* (*a, um*) *sim*, that I may have been loved; *audītus* (*a, um*) *sim*, that I may have been heard, &c.

3. The *Pluperfect Indicative*, with *ĕram;* as *lectus* (*a, um*) *ĕram*, I had been read; *audītus* (*a, um*) *ĕram*, I had been heard, &c.

4. The *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, with *essem;* as *amātus* (*a, um*) *essem*, that I might have been loved; *monĭtus* (*a, um*) *essem*, that I might have been admonished, &c.

5. The *Future Perfect*, with *ĕro;* as *audītus* (*a, um*) *ĕro*, I shall have been heard; *lectus* (*a um*) *ĕro*, I shall have been read, &c.

6. The *Perfect Infinitive*, with *esse;* as *amātum* (*am, um*) *esse*, to have been loved; *audītum* (*am, um*) *esse*, to have been heard, &c.

7. To these compound or periphrastic parts of the Passive Voice we must add the *Future Infinitive*, which is formed by combining the Supine in *um* with *iri;* as *amātum iri, lectum iri*, &c., to be about to be loved, read, &c. (See Paradigms, pp. 664, 665.)

To tear, lacerate.	*Discindo, ĕre, ĭdi, issum.* *Lăcĕro, āre, āvi, ātum.* (ALIQUID).
To drink.	Bĭbo, ĕre, bĭbi, bĭbĭtum. Pōto, āre, āvi, ātum *or* pōtum. (ALIQUID).
To carry (take).	Fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum. Porto, āre, āvi, ātum. (ALIQUID).
To bring (carry).	Affĕro, afferre, attŭli, allātum. Apporto, āre, āvi, ātum. (ALICUI ALIQUID).
To go.	Ĕo, īre, īvi *or* ĭi, ĭtum (NEUTER).

F. Obs. The verbs *fĕro*, I bear, carry, and *ĕo*, I go, are irregular in several tenses. The present indicative is thus inflected: —

SING.	*I carry*	fĕro	SING.	*I go*	ĕo
	Thou carriest	fers		*Thou goest*	īs
	He carries,	fert,		*He goes,*	ĭt,
PLUR.	*We carry*	fĕrĭmus	PLUR.	*We go*	īmus
	Ye carry	fertis		*Ye go*	ītis
	They carry.	fĕrunt.		*They go.*	ĕunt.

To be.	Sŭm, esse, fŭī, fūturus.
To be at home.	*Dŏmī* (gen.) *esse.*
To go home.	*Dŏmum* (acc.) *īre.*

G. Obs. 1. The English "at home" is in Latin expressed by the genitive *dŏmī*, to which may be added *meae, tuae, nostrae, vestrae*, and *aliēnae*, in the sense of "at my, thy (your), our, your, another man's house *or* home"; but when another adjective or pronoun follows, the

ablative with *in* is required; as *in illā domo*, in that home; *in domo privātā*, in a private house. When the genitive of the possessor is added, either *domi* or *in domo* may be used; as *domi* or *in domo alicujus*, at some one's house or home; *domi* or *in domo Caesăris*, at the house of Cæsar.

2. The English "home" (after verbs of motion) is expressed by the accusative *domum*, and so also *domum meam, tuam, nostram, vestram, aliēnam*, "to my, thy (your), our, your, another man's house or home"; but with any other adjective or pronoun the preposition *in* is required; as *in domum illam*, to that house or home; *in domum novam*, to the new house or home. When the genitive of the possessor is added, it is either *domum* or *in domum alicujus*, to some one's house or home.

Is your father at home?	Éstne páter túus dómi?
He is not at home.	Nôn est (dómi).
Is his brother going home?	Ítne frâter éjus dómum?
He is going home.	Ît (dómum).
With or *at the house of.*	*Apud* (Prep. with the Acc.). *Cum* (Prep. with the Abl.). *Domi* or *in domo* (with the Gen.).
To or *to the house of.*	*Ad* (Prep. with the Acc.). *Domum* or *in domum* (with the Gen.).
To be with the man *or* at the man's house.	Apud vírum *or* cum víro ésse. Dómi *or* in dómo víri esse.
To go to the man *or* to the man's house.	Ad vírum îre. Dómum *or* in dómum víri îre.
To be with one's friend (at the house of one's friend).	Apud amîcum *or* cum amîco (súo) ésse. Dómi *or* in dómo amîci ésse.
To go to one's friend *or* to the house of one's friend.	Ad amîcum (súum) îre. Dómum *or* in dómum amîci îre.
To be with me, thee (you), us, you, at my house, &c.	Apud mê, tê, nôs, vôs ésse. Mêcum, têcum, nobîscum,* vobîscum esse. Dómi méae, túae, nóstrae, véstrae ésse.
To be at one's own, at another man's house.	Dómi súae, aliénae esse.
To go to one's own, to another man's house.	Dómum súam, aliênam îre.
To be with him, with them, with some one.	Apud éum, éos, álîquem ésse. Cum éo, îs, álîquo ĕsse. Dómi *or* in dómo éjus, eôrum, alicújus ésse.

* The preposition *cum* with *mĕ, tĕ, sĕ*, always becomes *mêcum, têcum, sêcum*; with *nōbis, vōbis*, either *nōbiscum, vōbiscum*, or *cum nōbis, cum vōbis*.

To go to him, to them, to some one.	Ad éum, éos, álĭquem īre. Dómum *or* in dómum éjus, eôrum, alicújus īre.
To be with no one, at no one's house.	Apud némĭnem (núllum) ésse. Cum núllo (némĭne) ésse. Dómi *or* in dómo nullius ésse.
To go to no one, to no one's house.	Ad núllum (némĭnem) īre. Dómum *or* in dómum núllius īre.
To be with one's father, at one's father's house.	Apud pátrem (cum pátre) ésse. In dómo patérnā ésse.
To go to one's father, to one's father's house.	Ad pátrem īre. In dómum patérnam īre.
Is your little boy at any one's house?	Éstne puércŭlus túus apud áliquem (in dómo alicújus)?
He is at no one's house (with no one)?	Nôn est apud quénquam. In dómo nullius est.
Do you wish to go to your friend?	Vīsne ad amīcum túum (dómum *or* in dómum amíci túi) īre?
I do not wish to go to him.	Nólo ad éum (dómum *or* in dómum éjus) īre.
At whose house? With whom? *To whose house? To whom?*	*Cújus in dómo? Apud quém?* *Cújus in dómum? Ad quem?*
To whom (to whose house) do you wish to go?	Ad quem (cújus in dómum) vis īre?
I do not wish to go to any one (to any one's house).	Nólo ad quénquam (in dómum cujúsquam) īre.
With whom (at whose house) is your brother?	Apud quem (cújus in dómo) est frâter túus?
He is with us (at our house).	Est apud nôs. Dómi nóstrae est.

Exercise 45.

Do you wish to tear my coat? — I do not wish to tear it. — Does your brother wish to tear my beautiful book? — He does not wish to tear it. — What does he wish to tear? — He wishes to tear your heart. — With whom is our father? — He is with his friend. — To whom do you wish to go? — I wish to go to you. — Will you go to my house? — I will not go to yours, but to my tailor's. — Does your father wish to go to his friend? — He wishes to go to him. — At whose house is your son? — He is at our house. — Do your children wish to go to our friends? — They wish to go to them. — Is the foreigner at our brother's? — He is there (*apud éum*). — At whose house is the Englishman? — He is at yours. — Is the American at our house? — No, sir, he is not at our house; he is at his friend's. — Is the Italian at his friends'? — He is at their house.

Exercise 46.

Do you wish to go home? — I do not wish to go home; I wish to go to the son of my neighbor. — Is your father at home? — No, sir,

he is not at home. — With whom is he? — He is with the good children of our old neighbor. — Will you go to any one's house? — I will go to no one's house. — At whose house is your son? — He is at no one's house; he is at home. — What will he do at home? — He will drink good wine. — Will you carry my letters home? — I will carry them to my father's. — Who will carry my notes? — The young man will carry them. — Will he carry them to my house? — No; he will carry them to his brother's. — Is his father at home? — He is not at home; he is at the foreigner's. — What have you to drink? — I have nothing to drink. — Has your son anything to drink? — He has good wine and good water to drink. — Will your servant carry my books to my brothers'? — He will carry them to their house. — What will you carry to my house? — I will carry to your house two chickens, three birds, good bread, and good wine. — Will you carry these chairs to my house? — I will not carry these, but those. — What will the German do at home? — He will work and drink good wine.

EXERCISE 47.

What have you at home? — I have nothing at home. — Have you anything good to drink at home? — I have nothing good to drink; I have only bad water. — Has the captain as much coffee as sugar at home? — He has as much of the one as of the other at home. — Will you carry as many crowns as buttons to my brother's? — I will carry to his house as many of the one as of the other. — Will you carry great glasses to my house? — I will carry some to your house. — Has the merchant a desire to buy as many oxen as rams? — He wishes to buy as many of the one as of the other. — Has the shoemaker as many shoes as boots to mend? — He has as many of the one as of the other to mend. — Has he as much wine as water to drink? — He has as much to drink of the one as of the other. — Has the Turk a desire to break some glasses? — He has a desire to break some. — Has he a mind to drink some wine? — He has no mind to drink any. — Will you buy anything of me (*de mê*)? — I will buy nothing of you. — Of whom (*de quô*)* will you buy your corn? — I will buy it of the great merchant. — Of whom will the English buy their oxen? — They will buy them of the Dutch. — Will the Spaniards buy anything? — They will buy nothing.

---

* The person *of whom* any is bought is in Latin put in the Ablative with the preposition *de*; so that the formula is: *aliquid de aliquo emêre*, to buy any of any one.

Lesson XXIX. — PENSUM UNDETRICESIMUM.

OF THE CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS.

A. Latin verbs in general may be divided into *Primitive* and *Derivative*, and with reference to their composition into *Simple* and *Compound*.

Primitive verbs are those which are not derived from any other word, but are themselves the roots for other parts of speech.

Derivatives are formed either from nouns, adjectives, or other verbs.

Simple verbs may be either primitive or derivative.

Compound verbs are formed by the union of a verb with another verb or with some other part of speech. (See Lesson XXVI.)

B. The verbs derived from other verbs are subdivided into a number of classes. These classes are: —

1. *Frequentatives*, or such as denote a reiteration or frequent repetition of the action expressed by the primitive; as *dictāre* (from *dico*), to say often; *quaeritāre* (from *quaero*), to inquire repeatedly.

These verbs are all of the first conjugation, and are generally formed from the supine of their primitives, by changing the *ātum* of the first conjugation into *ĭto*, *ĭtāre*, and the *um* of the remaining conjugations into *o*, *āre*; as *portātum* (the supine of *porto*, I carry) — *portĭto*, *āre*, I carry often; *dormītum* (the supine of *dormio*, I sleep) — *dormĭto*, *āre*, I am apt to sleep constantly, I am sleepy. But others again are formed from the present indicative of their primitive, and some even from other frequentatives; as *agĭto*, *āre* (from *ago*, I drive), to drive up and down; *latĭto*, *āre* (from *latĕo*, I am concealed), I hide myself; *dictĭto*, *āre*, I say or tell often; *lectĭto*, *āre*, I read again and again (from the obsolete frequentatives *dictāre*, *lectāre*), &c.

2. *Desideratives*, in *ŭrĭo*, *ŭrīre*, denoting a desire for that which is indicated by the primitive. These verbs are likewise derived from the supine of the primitive, and are always of the fourth conjugation; as *ēsum* (the supine of *edo*, I eat) — *ēsŭrĭo*, *īre*, I desire to eat, I am hungry; *emptum* (from *emo*, I buy) — *emptŭrĭo*, *īre*, I desire to buy; *coenātum* (from *coeno*, I dine) — *coenātŭrĭo*, *īre*, I desire to dine, &c.

But a number of verbs in *ūrĭo*, *ūrīre* (and *ŭrĭo*, *ŭrīre*) are no frequentatives and can readily be distinguished by the long *u*; as *ligūrīre*, to be dainty; *prūrīre*, to itch; *centurĭāre*, to divide into centuries; *decŭrĭāre*, to divide into companies.

3. *Inchoatives* or *Inceptives* in *sco*, *scĕre*, which serve to indicate the beginning of an action or state; as *languesco*, *ĕre*, I

am growing languid (from *languēre*, to be languid); *ingemisco, ĕre*, I begin to sigh (from *gemēre*, to sigh).

The final *sco* of these inchoatives is *asco* from primitives of the first conjugation, *esco* from those of the second, and *isco* from those of the third and fourth.

Inchoatives frequently occur compounded with prepositions, while their primitives are simple verbs; as *pertimesco*, I begin to dread, from *timeo*, I am afraid; *conticesco*, I become silent, from *tacĕo*, I am silent; *obdormisco*, I fall asleep, from *dormĭo*, I sleep.

Some inchoatives are derived from substantives and adjectives: as *maturesco*, I grow ripe, from *matūrus, a, um*; *puĕrasco*, I am becoming a boy, from *puer*, a boy, &c.

A number of verbs in *sco* are no inchoatives, as *cresco*, I grow; *nosco*, I learn to know; *posco*, I demand.

4. *Diminutives*, with the termination *illo, illāre*, which is annexed to the root of the primitive without any other change; as *cantillo*, I sing a little, I trill (from *cantare*, to sing); *conscribillo*, I scribble (from *scribĕre*, to write); *sorbillo*, I sip (from *sorbēre*, to sup, drink up). The verbs of this class are but few in number.

5. *Intensives* in *sso, ssĕre*; as *capesso, facesso, petesso* (from *capĭo, facĭo, pĕto*), I seize, perform, seek with earnestness or eagerness.

C. Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*. E. g. *lucĕo*, I shine; *fraudo*, I deceive, defraud; *vulnĕro*, I wound (from *lux, fraus, vulnus*), &c.

A large number of Latin verbs derived from substantives signify *to be* or *to imitate that which is indicated by the noun*. The majority of these verbs are deponents of the first conjugation; as *domĭnus — domĭnāri*, to act the lord, to domineer; *cornix — cornĭcāri*, to chatter like a crow; *fūr — fūrāri*, to be a thief, to steal; *Graecŭlus — graecāri*, to live like a Graeculus, to live luxuriously and effeminately; but also *păter — patrisso, āre*, I take after my father; *būbo — būbŭlo, āre*, to screech like an owl, &c.

Where?	*Ŭbĭ?*	*Ŭbĭnam?** (Adverbs.)
Whither? Where to?	*Quō?*	*Quorsŭm? Quorsŭs?* (Adverbs.)

D. Obs. 1. The interrogative adverb *ŭbi?* implies motion or rest in a place, and the noun of the answer generally stands either in the genitive or ablative,† but sometimes in the accusative with one of the prepositions *ad, apud, super*, or *supter*.

* This *nam* is affixed with some emphasis. So also *Ubi loci? Ubi gentium? Ubi terrarum?* Where in the world?

† When this ablative is the *name of a town* of the third declension, it stands *without* a preposition; as *Carthagine*, at Carthage; but otherwise it has *in* before it.

Obs. 2. The interrogative adverb *quô?* implies motion or direction towards a place, and the noun of the answer is always in the accusative, either with or without a preposition.

There.	*Ĭbĭ, illĭc, ictĭc* (rest).
Thither (there).	*Ĕō, illō, illŭc* (motion).
To carry thither.	Éō (íllo, íllŭc) portâre (férre).
To carry it thither.	(Éum, éam), íd íllō portâre.
To carry some thither.	SING. Alíquántum éō (íllo, ílluc) portâre (férre). PLUR. Áliquot éō (íllō, ílluc) portâre (férre).
To carry them thither.	Éos (éas, éa) éō (íllo, ílluc) portâre *or* férre.
Where is my son?	Úbiést fílius méus?
He is at home.	Dómi ést. Dómi súae ést.
Is his brother there too?	Éstne íbi ét* frâter éjus?
He is not there, but at the neighbor's.	Nôn ést íbi; apud vicínum est.
Will you carry my books to the merchant?	Vísne tû líbros méos ad mercatôrem portâre?
I do not wish to carry them to him.	Nólo éos ad íllum portâre.
To send.	Mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum (ALICUI ALIQUID, ALIQUID AD ALIQUEM).
To come.	Vĕnio, ĕre, vēni, ventum. Pervĕnio, ĕre, vēni, ventum (NEUTER).
To lead.	Dūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum. Dēdūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum. (ALIQUEM AD ALIQUEM).
When? At what time?	*Quandŏ? Quō tempŏre?*

E. RULE. Time *when* is put in the Ablative without a preposition, as:—

Hórā duodécĭmā.	*At twelve o'clock.*
Hôc témpŏre.	*At this time.*
Diĕ constitútā.	*On the appointed day.*
To-morrow.	Crās (*adv.*), crastĭnō tempŏre.
To-day, this day.	Hŏdiē (*adv.*), hōc diē, hodiernō tempŏre.
Somewhere, anywhere.	*Ălĭcŭbĭ, usquăm, uspĭăm* (rest).
Somewhither, anywhither.	*Ălĭquō, quōquăm, quōpĭăm* (motion).

* The conjunction *et* has sometimes the sense of *also, too.*

F. Obs. The adverb *ălĭcŭbi* is compounded of *alĭquis* and *ŭbi*, and is synonymous with *in aliquo loco*, "in some place," or "somewhere," "anywhere," generally. *Uspĭam* may commonly stand in the same sense, but *usquam* can only be employed in clauses involving a condition or negation, as after the conjunctions *si*, *nisi*, *neque* (*nec*), *non*, *nunquam*, &c. The same distinctions apply to the corresponding adverbs of motion, *alĭquo*, *quopiam*, and *quoquam*.

Nowhere, not anywhere.	*Nusquăm*, *nuspĭăm* (rest).
Nowhither, not anywhither.	*Nusquăm* (motion).
Do you desire to go anywhere (anywhither)?	Cupísne íre álĭquo (quópiam)?
I do desire to go somewhere (somewhither).	Cúpio íre álĭquo.
I desire to go to the house of my father.	In dómum patérnam íre cúpio.
I do not desire to go anywhere.	Núsquam íre cúpio.
Nor do I desire to go anywhere.	Neque égo quôquam íre cúpio.
If he desires to go anywhere.	Si ílle quôquam íre cúpit.
Is your brother anywhere?	Éstne frâter túus alĭcŭbi (úspiam)?
He is somewhere.	Est alĭcŭbi (in áliquo loco).
He is at the house of his father.	In dómo patérnā est.
He is nowhere.	Núsquam (núspiam) est.
Nor is his friend anywhere.	Néque amícus éjus úsquam est.
Unless your friend is anywhere.	Nísi amícus túus úsquam est.
Will you conduct me to your tailor?	Visne me ad sartórem túum dúcĕre?
I will conduct you to him.	Vólo tê ad éum dúcĕre (dedúcere).
When will you lead me to him?	Quándo (quô témpŏre) mê vis ad éum dúcĕre?
I will lead you to him to-morrow.	Égo tê crâs (crástĭno témpore) ad éum dúcĕre vólo.
Who will send me good books?	Quís vúlt mĭhi míttĕre líbros bónos?
No one will send you any.	Némo tíbi úllos míttĕre vult.
The physician.	Mĕdĭcus, i, *m*.
To write.	Scribo, ĕre, psi, ptum (ALIQUID ALICUI *or* AD ALIQUEM).
Have you as many letters to write as my father?	Scribendaêne tíbi sunt tam múltae líttĕrae quam pátri méo? / Habêsne tót littĕras scribéndas, quót páter méus?
I have more (of them) to write than he.	Scribéndae sunt mĭhi plûs (plúres) quám éi. / Scribéndas égo plúres hábeo quam ílle (ípse).

Exercise 48.

Will you go anywhither (anywhere)? — I will go nowhither (nowhere). — Will your good son go to any one? — He will go to no one. — When will you take your young man to the painter? — I will take him there (*ad éum*) to-day. — Where will he carry these birds to? — He will carry them nowhither. — Will you take the physician to this man? — I will take him there (*ad éum*, to him). — When will you take him there? — I will take him there to-day. — Will the physicians come to your good brother? — They will not come to him. — Will you send me a servant? — I will send you none. — Will you send a child to the physician? — I will send one to him. — With whom is the physician? — He is with nobody. — Do you wish to go anywhither? — I wish to go to the good Americans. — Has he time to come to my house? — He has no time to come there. — Will the captain write one more letter? — He will write one more. — Will you write a note? — I will write one. — Has your friend a mind to write as many letters as I? — He has a mind to write quite as many.

Exercise 49.

Where is your brother? — He is at home. — Whither do you wish to go? — I wish to go home. — Whither does your father wish to go? — He wishes to go to your house. — Whither will you carry this letter? — I will carry it to my neighbor's. — Is your son at home? — He is there. — Whither will the shoemaker carry my boots? — He will carry them to your house? — Will he carry them home? — He will carry them thither. — Will you send good sugar home? — I will send some thither. — Will the baker send good bread home? — He will send some thither. — Will you come to me? — I will come to you. — Whither do you wish to go? — I wish to go to the good Frenchmen. — Will the good Italians go to our house? — They will go nowhither. — Will you take your son to my house? — I will not take him to your house, but to the captain's. — When will you take him to the captain's? — I will take him there to-morrow. — Have you many letters to write? — I have only a few to write. — How many letters has our old neighbor to write? — He has as many to write as you. — Who has long letters to write? — The youth has some to write. — How many more letters has he to write? — He has six more to write. — How many has he to send? — He has twenty to send. — Has he as many letters to send as his father? — He has fewer to send. — Has the hatmaker some more hats to send? — He has no more to send. — Has your son the courage (*audétne fílius túus*) to write a long letter? — He has the courage to write one. — Will he write as many letters as mine? — He will write quite as many. — Will you buy as many carriages as horses? — I will buy more of the latter than of the former.

Lesson XXX. — PENSUM TRICESIMUM.

OF THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

A. The Present Subjunctive is formed from the Present Indicative by changing the terminations of the respective conjugations into, 1. *em*, 2. *ĕam*, 3. *am* (*ĭam*), 4. *ĭam*; as, amo, *amem*; moneo, *monĕam*; lego, *legam* (facio, *faciam*); audio, *audĭam*.* It is inflected as follows: —

FIRST CONJUGATION.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
That I may love	ămĕm	*That we may love*	ămēmŭs
That thou mayst love	ămēs	*That ye may love*	ămētĭs
That he may love,	ămĕt,	*That they may love.*	ăment.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
That I may remind	mŏnĕăm	*That we may remind*	mŏnĕāmŭs
That thou mayst remind	mŏnĕās	*That ye may remind*	mŏnĕātĭs
That he may remind,	mŏnĕăt,	*That they may remind.*	mŏnĕant.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
That I may read	lĕgăm	*That we may read*	lĕgāmŭs
That thou mayst read	lĕgās	*That ye may read*	lĕgātĭs
That he may read,	lĕgăt,	*That they may read.*	lĕgant.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
That I may hear	audīăm	*That we may hear*	audīāmŭs
That thou mayst hear	audīās	*That ye may hear*	audīātĭs
That he may hear,	audīăt,	*That they may hear.*	audĭant.

Like *amem* inflect: *ordinem, dem, portem, laborem, lavem*, &c. Like *monĕam: habĕam, vidĕam, fovĕam*, &c. Like *lĕgam: dĭcam, dispōnam, scrĭbam, faciam*,† &c. Like *audĭam: aperĭam, esŭrĭam, sĭtĭam, vĕnĭam*, &c.

REMARK. — The present subjunctive of the first and third conjugations sometimes has *im* instead of *em* or *am*; as *edim, comĕdim; duim, perduim*;‡ for *edam, comĕdam; dem, perdam*. But this anti-

* See Lesson XXVIII. *B.* 2.

† Verbs of the third conjugation in *to* have their present subjunctive in *tiam*. Thus, also, capio, *capiam*, calefacio, *calefaciam*, &c.

‡ From the obsolete forms *duo, perduo* (= do, *perdo*).

quated form occurs only in a few verbs. It is retained in the irregular verbs *esse* and *velle*, and their compounds; as *velim, nolim, malim; sim, possim, prosim*, &c.

B. The Present Subjunctive of the irregular verbs *sum, vŏlo, nŏlo, ĕo*, and *fĕro* (*affĕro*) is thus inflected: —

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
That I may be	sĭm	*That we may be*	sīmus
That thou mayst be	sīs	*That ye may be*	sītis
That he may be,	sĭt,*	*That they may be.*	sint.
That I may be willing	vĕlĭm	*That we may be willing*	vĕlīmŭs
That thou mayst be willing	vĕlīs	*That ye may be willing*	vĕlītĭs
That he may be willing,	vĕlĭt,	*That they may be willing.*	vĕlint.
That I may go	ĕăm	*That we may go*	ĕāmŭs
That thou mayst go	ĕās	*That ye may go*	ĕātĭs
That he may go,	ĕăt,	*That they may go.*	ĕant.
That I may carry	fĕrăm	*That we may carry*	fĕrāmŭs
That thou mayst carry	fĕrās	*That ye may carry*	fĕrātĭs
That he may carry,	fĕrăt,	*That they may carry.*	fĕrant.

REMARK. — The compounds of these verbs are all of them inflected in the same way; as *desim, possim, prōsim*, from *desum, possum, prosum; mālĭm*,† *nōlĭm*, from *mālo, nōlo; abĕam, prodĕam, transĕam*, from *abeo, prodĕo, transĕo; affĕram, differam, circumfĕram*, from *affĕro, differo, circumfĕro*, &c.

OF THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

C. Obs. The Subjunctive serves to denote various modifications of the action or state expressed by the verb, and is often put in Latin where the English idiom requires the Indicative or Infinitive. It is chiefly employed: —

1st. After certain conjunctions, such as *ut* and *quō*, that, in order that; *nē*, that not, lest; *lĭcet* and *quamvis*, although; *ŭtĭnam*, would that; *quin* and *quominŭs*, but that, &c. E. g.: —

Vĕnĭo ut vĭdĕam. — *I come to see (in order that I may see).*

---

* Instead of *sim, sis, sit*, the older Latin writers employ the forms *siem, sies, siet;* and also from the obsolete *fŭo*, the forms *fŭam, fŭas, fŭat;* ——, ——, *fŭant.*

† An ancient form of this is *mavĕlim, is, it*, &c. So the Imp. Subj. *mavellem* for *mallem;* the Pres. Ind. *mavŏlo* for *malo;* the Future Indic. *mavōlam* for *malam*, &c.

Cáve nê scríbas.	*Take care lest you write.*
Útĭnam habêrem.	*Would that I had.*

2d. In indirect or dependent questions, introduced by an interrogative adjective, pronoun, or adverb, such as *quantus, qualis, quotus; quis, qui, cujas; ubi, quo, quorsum, quando, quoties, quomŏdo; an, ne,* &c. E. g.:—

Néscĭo quántum hábĕas.	*I do not know how much you have.*
Dic míhi quís (quâlis) sít.	*Tell me who he is.*
Scísne quándo vénĭat?	*Do you know when he comes?*
*Víde án ventûrus sít.**	*See whether he is about to come.*

3d. To denote possibility in general, and also an exhortation or command; as

Fórsĭtan témĕre fécĕrim.	*I may possibly have acted rashly.*
Émas quód necesse est.	*Buy what is necessary.*
Eâmus. Scribâmus.	*Let us go. Let us write.*
I come in order to see (for the sake of seeing, to see, about to see).	*Vénĭo ut vídĕam.* *Vénĭo ad vidéndum.* *Vénĭo vidéndi caúsā.* *Vénĭo vidêre* or *vísum.* *Vénĭo visûrus.*

D. Obs. The compound conjunction *in order to, in order that,* is commonly expressed in Latin either by *ut* with the subjunctive, or (after verbs of motion) by the supine in *um;* but it may frequently be likewise rendered by the accusative of the gerund or gerundive with *ad,* by the genitive of the gerund with the ablative *causā* or *gratiā,* "for the sake of," by a mere infinitive, or, lastly, by the future participle in *ūrus.*

Do you wish to go to your brother in order to see him?	Vísne ad frâtrem túum íre, ut éum vídĕās? Vísne íre vísum frâtrem túum?
I desire to go to him in order to see him (for the sake of seeing him).	Cúpio ad éum íre, ut éum vídĕam. Ego éum vísum íre cúpio. Cúpio ad éum íre vidéndi grátĭā.
Has your brother a knife to cut his bread?	Éstne frátri túo cúlter ad secándum pânem súum? Habétne frâter túus cúltrum, qui† pânem súum sécet?
He has one to cut it (wherewith to cut it).	Est éi ûnus ad éum secándum. Hábet ûnum, qui éum secâre póssit.

* The *direct* questions involved in these examples are:— *Quantum habes?*— *Quis (qualis) est?*— *Quando (quo tempŏre) venit?*— *Venturusne est?*

† This *qui* is an old ablative, and may stand for every gender of that case singular and plural (i. e. for *quō, quā, quĭbus*). When thus used it represents the *instrument* or *means,* exactly like the English "wherewith," "whereby." Thus Nepos:—*ut, qui efferretur, vix reliquerit,* so that he left scarcely enough, wherewith he might be buried.

I have no money to buy bread (wherewith I may buy bread).	Pecúniam, quī pânem émam, nôn hábeo. Cárĕo pecúniā ad eméndum pânem.
Have you paper enough to write a letter (for writing a letter).	Éstne tĭbi sátis chártae ad lítteram scribéndam ?
I have not enough.	Nôn est (mĭhi sátis).
To sweep (out).	Everro, ĕre, erri, ersum. Scopis purgo, āre, āvi, ātum. (ALIQUID, LOCUM ALIQUEM).
To kill, slay.	Occīdo, ĕre, idi, īsum. Interfĭcio, ĕre, fēci, factum. (ALIQUEM).
To slaughter.	Macto, āre, āvi, ātum (ALIQUEM, ANIMAL ALIQUOD).
To salt.	Salio, īre, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum (ALIQUID).
To lend.	Commodo, āre, āvi, ātum. Credo, ĕre, crēdĭti, crēditum. (ALICUI ALIQUID).
To be able. To know how (to be able).	Possum, posse, potui. Scio, īre, īvi *or* ĭi, ītum. (ALIQUID FACĔRE).

E. Obs. *Possum* signifies "to have the power *or* ability," *scio*, "to have the knowledge *or* skill," "to know how." Both these verbs may be followed by the infinitive of another verb. *Possum* is a compound of *pŏtis* and *sum*, and is inflected in the present as follows: —

INDICATIVE.

Singular.		Plural.	
I can (am able)	pŏssŭm	*We can (are able)*	possŭmus
Thou canst (art able)	pŏtĕs	*Ye can (are able)*	pŏtestĭs
He can (is able),	pŏtest,	*They can (are able)*.	possunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Singular.		Plural.	
That I may be able	possĭm	*That we may be able*	possimŭs
That thou mayst be able	possis	*That ye may be able*	possitĭs
That he may be able,	possĭt,	*That they may be able.*	possint.*

Can you write a letter ?	Potésne scrĭbĕre epístŏlam ? Scisne scrĭbere epístolam ?
I can write one.	Póssum (scío) ûnam scrĭbĕre.
Can he work ?	Núm ílle laborâre (ópus fácĕre) pótest ?
He cannot work.	Laborâre (ópus fácĕre) non pótest.
Can they come to us ?	Possúntne venire ad nôs ?
They cannot come to you.	Ad vôs venîre nôn póssunt.

* Antiquated forms of this are *possiem, es, et*, &c., or *potessim, is, it*, &c. So also *potestur* for *potest*, and *potesse* for *posse*.

To kill me.	Mê occídere (interfícĕre).
To see me.	Mê vidēre.

F. Obs. In Latin the accusative generally takes its place before the verb on which it depends, and the dative before the accusative.* The verb itself is commonly put at the end of the sentence.

To speak to me (with me).	*Mêcum lóqui, ad mê lóqui.*
To speak to you (with you).	Têcum† lóqui, ad tê lóqui.
To speak to him (with him).	Cum éo lóqui, ad éum lóqui.
To speak to us (with us).	Nobiscum lóqui, ad nôs lóqui.
To speak to you (with you).	Vobiscum lóqui, ad vôs lóqui.
To speak to them (with them).	Cum íllis lóqui, ad íllos lóqui.
To send to him.	Éi míttĕre.
To send to his house.	Ad éum (in dómum éjus) míttĕre.
To send it to me.	Éum (éam, íd) míhi míttĕre.
To send him (them, &c.) to me, to my house.	Éum (éos) ad mê (dómum méam) míttere.
To send it to me to-morrow.	Éum (éam, íd) míhi crástĭno témpŏre míttere.
To send him (them) to me (i.e. to my house) to-morrow	Éum (éos) ad mê (dómum méam) crâs míttēre.
When will you send me the hat?	Quándo vis míhi pílĕum míttere? (Cf. Lesson XXIV. *G.*)
I will send it to you to day.	Ego tíbi éum míttere vólo hódie.
Will you lend me some money?	Vísne míhi crédĕre aliquántum pecúniae?
I will lend you a little.	Vólo tíbi aliquántŭlum crédĕre.
Do you desire to see my brother, in order to speak to him?	Cupísne frâtrem méum vidēre, ut cum éo (ad eum) lŏquâris?
I do desire to see him, in order to speak to him?	Cúpio éum vidēre, ut cum éo (ad éum) lóquar.‡
Has he a broom to sweep my house?	Habétne scópas ad dómum méam everréndam?
He has none.	Nôn habet.
Have you anything to write, to eat, to say?	*Habêsne quod scríbas, quod édas, quod dícas?*
I have something to write, to eat, to say.	Hábeo quod scribam, édam, dícam.
I have nothing to write, to eat, to say.	Nôn hábeo quod scríbam, édam, dícam.
Has he any money to give me?	Habétne quid míhi dét pecúniae?

* Unless the accusative be a personal pronoun, which frequently precedes the dative.

† Compare Lesson XXVIII. p. 133, note.

‡ The present subjunctive of the deponent *loquor* is: — SING. *lŏquar, lŏquāris* or *lŏquāre, lŏquātur*; PLUR. *lŏquāmur, lŏquamini, lŏquantur*. Compare Lesson XXXV.

He has no money to give you.	Nôn' hábet quid tíbi dét pecúniae.
Do you lend us books to read?	Commodátisne nóbis líbros legéndos?
We lend you books and letters to read.	Vóbis et líbros legéndos et lítteras commodámus. (Vide Lesson XXII. *B.* 5.)

Exercise 50.

Can you cut me some bread? — I can cut you some. — Have you a knife to cut me some? — I have one. — Can you wash your gloves? I can wash them, but have no wish to do it. — Can the tailor make me a coat? — He can make you one. — Will you speak to the physician? — I will speak to him. — Does your son wish to see me in order to speak to me (*ut mêcum* or *ad me loquatur*)? — He wishes to see you, in order to give you (*ut tibi det*) a crown. — Does he wish to kill me? — He does not wish to kill you; he only wishes to see you. — Does the son of our old friend wish to kill an ox? — He wishes to kill two. — How much money can you send me? — I can send you thirty crowns. — Will you send me my letter? — I will send it to you. — Will you send the shoemaker anything? — I will send him my boots. — Will you send him your coats? — No, I will send them to my tailor. — Can the tailor send me my coat? — He cannot send it to you. — Are your children able to write letters? — They are able to write some.

Exercise 51.

Have you a glass to drink your wine? — I have one, but I have no wine; I have only water. — Will you give me money to buy some? — I will give you some, but I have only a little. — Will you give me that which (*quod*) you have? — I will give it to you. — Can you drink as much wine as water? — I can drink as much of the one as of the other. — Has our poor neighbor any wood to make a fire (*ad ignem accendendum*)? — He has some to make one, but he has no money to buy bread and meat. — Are you willing to lend him some? — I am willing to lend him some. — Do you wish to speak to the German? — I wish to speak to him. — Where is he? — He is with the son of the captain. — Does the German wish to speak to me? — He wishes to speak to you. — Does he wish to speak to my brother or to yours? — He wishes to speak to both. — Can the children of our tailor work? — They can work, but they will not.

Exercise 52.

Has the carpenter money to buy a hammer? — He has some to buy one. — Has the captain money to buy a ship? — He has some to buy one. — Has the peasant money to buy sheep? — He has none to buy any. — Have you time to see my father? — I have no time to see him. — Does your father wish to see me? — He does not wish to see you. — Has the servant a broom to sweep the house? — He has one to sweep it. — Is he willing to sweep it? — He is willing to sweep it.

— Have I salt enough to salt my meat? — You have not enough of it to salt it. — Will your friend come to my house in order to see me? — He will neither come to your house nor see you. — Has our neighbor a desire to kill his horse? — He has no desire to kill it. — Will you kill your friends? — I will kill only my enemies. — Do you wish to speak to the children of your shoemaker? — I wish to speak to them. What will you give them? — I will give them large cakes. — Will you lend them anything? — I have nothing to lend them (*quod iis commodem*). — Has the cook some more salt to salt the meat? — He has a little more. — Has he some more rice? — He has a great deal more. — Will he give me some? — He will give you some. — Will he give some to my poor children (*liberis meis egenis*)? — He will give them some. — Will he kill this or that hen? — He will kill neither (*neutram*). — Will he kill this or that ox? — He will kill both. — Who will send us biscuits? — The baker will send you some. — Have you anything good to give me? — I have nothing good to give you.

Lesson XXXI. — PENSUM UNUM ET TRICESIMUM.

OF THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

A. A sentence is a thought or concept of the mind expressed in words. As

Puer lĕgit, the boy reads. *Arbor flŏret*, the tree blossoms. *Deus est* (*erat, erit*) *justus*, God is (was, will be) just.

Every sentence is composed of at least one *subject* and one *predicate*.

The subject of a sentence is the person or object of which anything is affirmed; as *puer, arbor, Deus*.

The predicate is that which is affirmed of the person or thing called the subject; as *legit, floret, est* (*erat, erit*) *justus*.

The subject is always a substantive, or some other word used substantively, and generally stands in the nominative.

REMARK. — But the subject of a verb in the infinitive mood is put in the accusative.

The predicate is either a finite verb,* or else a noun, adjective, participle, or adverb, with one of the tenses of the copula *sum*; e. g. *est, erat, erit*, &c.

---

* The term *finite verb* (*verbum finitum*) includes all the verbal forms of every mood, except the infinitive (*verbum infinitum*).

B. The subject nominative may be variously modified or expanded by the addition of other words, which are said to stand in the *attributive relation* to it. This may be done, —

1. By another noun, either in the same case or one of the oblique cases; as, *Deus, rex coelorum, justus est*, God, the king of heaven, is just; *amīci nostri puer lĕgit*, the boy of our friend is reading.

2. By an adjective, adjective pronoun, participle, or relative clause; as, *puer noster studiōsus lĕgit*, our studious boy is reading; *arbor, quam hĕri in horto vidisti, hodĭe flōret*, the tree which you saw yesterday in the garden blossoms to-day.

C. In a similar manner, the predicate may be modified or expanded by the addition of other words, which are said to stand in the *objective relation* to it. These words may be, —

1. A noun in one of the oblique cases, or an adverb; as, *puer librum suum bonum lĕgit*, the boy reads his good book; *arbor in horto nostro flōret*, the tree blossoms in our garden; *Deus semper erit justus*, God will always be just.

2. An infinitive or another finite verb introduced by a relative, or a conjunction expressed or understood; as, *cupĭo abīre*, I desire to leave; (*ille*) *idōnĕus non est, qui impetret*, he is not fit to obtain; *cave* (*ne*) *cadas*, take care lest you fall.

3. By a noun or adjective in the same case with the subject; as, *Pompējus imperātor est appellātus*, Pompey was called commander; (*tu*) *vidēris vir bonus esse*, you seem to be a good man; *incēdo regĭna*, I walk a queen.

REMARK. — This construction takes place after certain neuter and passive verbs of naming, becoming, remaining, appearing, &c. (Cf. Lesson XXXIV. *C.*)

D. The subject and predicate both are either *simple* or *compound.*

A simple subject consists of one substantive or word used substantively, either alone or modified by attributes; as *Deus, arbor, puer noster studiōsus.*

A compound subject consists of two or more simple subjects, generally connected by a conjunction, and belonging to one common predicate; as, *puer et puella lĕgunt*, the boy and girl are reading; *ego et tu diligentes sumus*, I and you are diligent.

A simple predicate consists of one finite verb, either alone or expanded into the objective relation; as, *legit, floret, librum suum bonum legit, semper erit justus.*

A compound predicate consists of two or more simple predicates depending on one common subject; as, *Deus est, fŭit, ĕrit*, God is, was, will be; *Id et nobis erit perjucundum, et tibi non sane dĭcrĭum*, This will be extremely pleasant for us, and surely not out of your way.

E. Sentences, like subject and predicate, are also either *simple* or *compound.*

A simple sentence is one which contains a simple predicate, or one finite verb only.

REMARK. — There can be no sentence without a finite verb expressed or understood, and there are as many sentences as there are finite verbs.

A compound sentence contains two or more simple sentences, which are commonly called its *members* or *clauses.*

The members of a compound sentence are either all coördinated as independent, or else one of them assumes the rank of a leading clause, to which the rest are subordinated as dependent.

Independent clauses are such as make complete sense apart from their connection with each other; as, *Ego rēges ejēci, vos tyrannos intrōdūcītis; ego libertātem pĕpĕri, vos partam servāre non vultis,* I have expelled the kings, you are introducing tyrants; I have procured liberty, you are unwilling to preserve it.

A subordinate clause can make complete sense only in connection with the main or leading clause, on which it is dependent; as, *Vīta brĕvis est, lĭcet supra mille annos exĕat,* Life is short, and were it to exceed a thousand years; *Hoc ideo exposui, ut scires,* I have explained this, in order that you might know it.

REMARK 1. — In these sentences the clauses commencing with *lĭcet* and *ut* are subordinate and dependent on the leading clauses, by which they are preceded.

REMARK 2. — The members of a compound sentence are commonly linked together by conjunctions, relatives, or adverbs.

F. Words are said to agree with each other when they correspond in gender, number, case, or person, and this relation is called *Concord* or *Agreement.*

Agreement may take place under the following circumstances: —

1. Between one substantive and another; as, *Cicĕro orātor,* Cicero the orator; *Augustus impĕrātor,* Augustus the Emperor.
2. Between an adjective or participle and a noun; as, *vir justus et sapĭens,* a good and wise man; *vĭri optĭmi,* most excellent men.
3. Between a relative and its antecedent; as, *puer, qui lĕgit,* the boy who reads; *puella, quae currit,* the girl who runs.
4. Between a finite verb and its subject nominative; as, *ego lĕgo, tu ămas, nos sŭmus, homĭnes dicunt.*

G. One word is said to *govern* another, when it requires it to be put in a determinate case or mood, and this relation is called *Government.*

A word subject to another, according to the laws of concord or government, is said to *depend upon* or *follow* it.

All the oblique cases of Latin nouns, except the vocative, are commonly determined by some other word.

1. The genitive is governed by nouns, adjectives, verbs, participles, and adverbs.

2. The dative is governed by adjectives, verbs, participles, and adverbs.

3. The accusative is governed by active transitive verbs or participles, and by prepositions.

4. The ablative is governed by adjectives, verbs, participles, and prepositions.

To whom?	*Cuī? Cuīnăm*? Ad quĕm?*
Whom?	*Quĕm? Quemnăm?*
What?	*Quĭd? Quidnăm?*
To answer, reply.	Respondĕo, ēre, di, sum (ALICUI ALIQUID; EPISTOLAE *or* AD EPISTOLAM). Rescrībo, ĕre, ipsi, iptum (ALICUI *or* AD ALIQUEM; LITTERIS *or* AD LITTERAS).
To answer or reply to some one.	Álicuī respondêre.† Álicuī *or* ad áliquem rescríbĕre.
To answer a letter.	Epístŏlae *or* ad epístolam respondêre. Lítteris *or* ad líttĕras rescríbĕre.
Do you wish to answer me?	Núm vis míhi respondêre? Núm vis míhi (ad mê) rescríbĕre?
I do not wish to answer you.	Nólo tíbi respondêre. Nólo tíbi (ad tê) rescríbĕre.
To whom do you wish to reply?	Cuī vis respondêre? Ad quém (cuī) vis rescríbĕre?
I wish to reply to my good friend.	Amícō méō bónō respondêre vólo. Égo ad amícum méum bónum rescríbĕre vólo.
What do you desire to answer him?	Quíd cúpis éi respondêre (rescríbĕre)?
I desire to answer him only (in) a few words.	Éi nôn nísi paûca rescríbĕre cúpio.
To whom must we reply?	Ad quém (cuī) ést nóbīs rescrībéndum?
We must reply to the Englishman.	Rescribéndum ést nóbīs Ánglo (ad Ánglum).

* Compare Lesson XII. *A.* 1 – 6.

† The verb *respondĕre* is properly "to answer or reply orally," and is sometimes opposed to *rescrībĕre*, which signifies "to write back or to answer in writing." But this distinction is not always observed, and *respondĕre* is often used in the sense of *rescrībĕre*.

What have I to do?	Quíd ést míhi faciéndum?
You have to reply to the letter of the Frenchmen.	Rescrībéndum ést tíbi líttĕris (úd líttĕras) Francogallôrum.
The place (in general).	Lŏcus, *m. pl.*, lōci *or* lōca.
The garden.	Hortus,* i, *m.*; hortŭlus, i, *m. dim.*
The theatre.	Thĕatrum, i, *n.*
The forest, wood.	Silva, ae, *f.*
The grove.	Lūcus,† i, *m.*; nĕmus, ŏris, *n.*
The warehouse.	Rĕceptācŭlum (i, *n.*) mercium.‡
The storehouse.	Cella pĕnārĭa, ae, *f.*
The magazine.	Horrĕum, i, *n.*
The store, provisions.	Pĕnus, ūs *or* i, *m.*; commĕātus, ūs, *m.* (*of an army*).
The supply, abundance.	Cōpĭa, ae, *f.*
The room.	Conclāve, is, *n.*; dĭaeta, ae, *f.*
The chamber (sleeping-room).	Cŭbĭcŭlum, i, *n.*
The butcher.	Lănĭus, i, *m.*
To go into (an enclosed place).	Inéo, īre, ĭi (īvi), ĭtum. Introĕo, īre, īvi (ĭi), ĭtum.§ (LOCUM *or* IN LOCUM, AD ALIQUEM).
In, into (preposition).	*In* (with the acc. and abl.).
Under (preposition).	*Sub* (with the acc. and abl.).

H. Obs. The prepositions *in* and *sub*, denoting a tendency or motion towards a place, are followed by the accusative, but when they denote rest or situation in a place, they are followed by the ablative.

To go into the room.	In conclâve inire (introīre). Conclâve inire (introīre).‖
To be in the room.	In conclâvi ésse.
To go into the garden.	In hórtos inire (introīre). Hortos inire (introīre).
To be in the garden.	In hórtis ésse.
To go in (i. e. into the house).	Íntrō (*adv.*) īre.
To be within (i. e. in the house).	Íntŭs (*adv.*) ésse.
To go under the table.	Sub ménsam ire.
To be under the table.	Sub ménsā ésse.

---

* The singular has commonly the sense of a "vegetable garden," and the plural *horti* or the dim. *hortŭlus*, "a garden for pleasure." (Cf. Lesson XVIII. *D.*)

† *Lucus* is a sacred grove; *nemus* a woody landscape laid out for pleasure.

‡ The genitive pl. of *merx*, merchandise.

§ The verbs are compounds of *ĕo* (= *in* + *ĕo*, *intrō* + *ĕo*), and are inflected like the simple verb. (Cf. Lesson XXVIII. *F.*)

‖ The compounds *inire* and *introire* have frequently the force of transitive verbs, and then the preposition *in* before the object accusative is omitted.

To go out (i. e. out of the house).	Fórās (*adv.*) īre. Exīre dómo (*abl.*).
To be out (i. e. out of the house).	Fóris (*adv.*) esse.
To go out.	*Exĕo, īre, ĭī (īvi), ĭtum.*
Where is our son?	Úbi ést nóster fílius?
He is in his room.	(Est) in cubículo súo.
Where is the Englishman going to?	Quô (quórsum) ít Ánglus?
He is going into the forest.	(Ínit) in sílvam.
Do you wish to go into the theatre?	Núm vîs (in) thĕátrum inīre?
I do not wish to go there (thither).	Nólo éo inīre.
Is your father in (in the house)?	Éstne páter túus íntus?
He is not in; he is out.	Nôn ést íntus; fóris ést.
Does the stranger desire to go in (into the house)?	Cupítne ádvĕna īre íntrō?
No, he desires to go out.	Ímmo véro fóras īre (dómo exīre) cúpit.
Where is my dog?	Úbi ést cánis méus?
He is under the table.	Sub ménsā (ést).

Exercise 53.

Will you answer your friend? — I will answer him. — But whom will you answer? — I will answer my good father. — Will you not answer your good friends? — I will answer them. — Who will answer me? — The Russian wishes to answer you, but he cannot. — Will the Russian write me a letter? — He will write you one. — Can the Spaniards answer us? — They cannot answer us, but we can answer them. — What has the Englishman to do? — He has to answer a letter. — Which letter has he to answer? — He has to answer that of the good Frenchman. — Have I to answer a letter? — You have not to answer a letter, but a note. — Which note have I to answer? — You have to answer that of the great captain. — Have we to answer the letters of the merchants? — We have to answer them. — Will you answer the note of your tailor? — I will answer it. — Will any one answer my great letter? — No one will answer it. — Will your father answer this or that note? — He will answer neither this nor that. — Which notes will he answer? — He will answer only those of his good friends. — Will he answer me my letter? — He will answer it you. — Will your father go anywhither? — He will go nowhither. — Where is your brother? — He is in the garden of our friend. — Where is the Englishman? — He is in his little garden. — Where do we wish to go to? — We wish to go into the garden of the French. — Where is your son? — He is in his room. — Will he go to the magazine? — He will go thither. — Will you go to the great theatre? — I will not go thither, but my son has a mind to go thither. — Where is the Irishman? — He is in the theatre. — Is the American in the forest? — He is there.

EXERCISE 54.

Will you come to me in order to go to the forest? — I have no wish to go the forest. — To which theatre do you wish to go? — I wish to go to the great theatre. — Will you go into my garden, or into that of the Dutchman? — I will go neither into yours nor into that of the Dutchman; I will go into the gardens of the French. — Will you go into those of the Germans? — I will not go thither. — Have the Americans great warehouses? — They have some. — Have the English great stores? — They have some. — Have the Germans as many warehouses as stores? — They have as many of the latter as of the former. — Will you see our great stores? — I will go into your warehouses in order to see them. — Have you much hay in your storehouses? — We have a great deal, but we have not enough corn. — Do you wish to buy some? — We wish to buy some. — Have we as much corn as wine in our storehouses? — We have as much of the one as of the other. — Have the English as much cloth as paper in their warehouses? — They have more of the one than of the other in them. — Has your father time to write me a letter? — He wishes to write you one, but he has no time to-day. — When will he answer that of my brother? — He will answer it to-morrow. — Will you come to my house in order to see my great warehouses. — I cannot come to your house to-day; I have letters to write. — Where is the knife? — It is under the table. — Is our friend in (the house)? — He is in. — He is going in. — Do you desire to go out? — No; I desire to go in. — Is the painter out? — He is not out.

Lesson XXXII. — PENSUM ALTERUM ET TRICESIMUM.

OF THE AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

A. RULE. — The verb must agree with its subject nominative in number and person. E. g.

Ego ámo.	*I love.*
Tu légis.	*Thou readest.*
Ille scribit. Púer scribit.	*He writes. The boy writes.*
Nós mittímus.	*We send.*
Vós hábêtis.	*Ye have.*
Illi dícunt. Hómines dícunt.	*They say. The men say.*

REMARKS.

1. It has already been noticed in several places, that the pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *ille*, *nos*, *vos*, *illi* are commonly omitted, and only put where perspicuity or emphasis requires them.

2. The nominative is entirely wanting before impersonal verbs and verbs used impersonally; as, *Pluit*, it rains. *Pingit*, it snows. *Pudet*

me tui, I am ashamed before you. *Actum est de me*, It is all over with me. *Orandum est nobis*, We must pray.

3. An infinitive, either alone or modified by other words, an adverb, participle, and an entire sentence, may become the subject of a finite verb, which then stands in the third person singular; as, *Mentīri est turpe*, It is disgraceful to lie. *Dulce et decorum est pro patriā mori*, To die for one's country is honorable and sweet. *Docto homĭni vivĕre* est *cogitāre*, To a man of letters living is thinking. *Cras istud, quando venit?* When will that "to-morrow" come? *Homĭnes errāre non mirum est*, That men should err is not strange.*

4. The infinitive sometimes supplies the place of the finite verb, especially in animated narration; as, *Arma, tela, equi, viri, hostes, cives, permixti* (sc. *sunt*); *nihil consilio, neque imperio* agi; *fors omnia* regĕre, — Arms, weapons, horses, men, enemies, and friends were mixed in promiscuous disorder; nothing is now done by design or in obedience to command; chance controls everything. This is called the *historical infinitive*, and is generally translated by the imperfect.

5. The verb is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Bona verba* (sc. *loquĕre*), Do not be angry! Softly! *Dii meliōra* (sc. *dent*)! God forbid! *Quid plūra* (sc. *dicam*)? In short. *Quot homĭnes, tot sententiae* (sc. *sunt*), As many men, so many minds.

B. Rule. — After a collective noun the predicate is either in the singular or the plural. E. g.

Pars mīlĭtum caĕsi, pars cápti sunt.	*Part of the soldiers were killed, and a part of them taken prisoners.*
Pars stúpet *dōnum exitiāle, et mōlem* miránturque *equi.*	*Some are transfixed with amazement at the fatal present, and admire the huge size of the horse.*

Remarks.

1. A verb in the plural is very common, especially among the poets, after *pars, turba, vis, multitudo, exercitus, juventus, nobilitas, gens, plebs*, and *vulgus*.

2. The pronouns *uterque*, each; *quisque*, every one; *alter* .... *alterum*, and *alius* .... *alium*, may likewise take a plural verb; as, *Uterque eorum ex castris stativis exercitum* educunt, Each of them leads his army out of the camp. *Quisque suos* patĭmur *manes*, Every one of us suffers the punishment due to him. *Alius alii subsidium* ferebant, One brought help to the other.

C. Rule. — Two or more subject-nominatives in the singular, connected by a copulative conjunction, ex-

* The infinitive or an entire clause may also stand as the subject of an impersonal verb; as, Te hilāri animo esse *valde me juvat*, I am delighted (*lit* it delights me) that you are in good spirits. *Juvat me, quod* vigent studia, I am glad that the study of letters is prosperous. This construction is very common.

pressed or understood, generally have a plural verb. E. g.

Senātus populúsque Romānus pâcem comprobavérunt.	*The Roman senate and people approved of the peace.*
Vita, mors, divĭtĭae, paupértas ómnes hómines vehementíssime permóvent.	*Life, death, wealth, poverty, affect all men most powerfully.*

REMARKS.

1. The verb is in the singular when the compound subject is conceived of as one complex notion or whole; as, *Tempus necessitasque* postŭlat, Time and necessity demands. *Senātus populusque Romanus* intellĭgit, The Roman senate and people understand.

2. When the verb is referred to each of the simple subjects separately, or to the emphatic one, it is likewise in the singular; as, *Conon plurĭmum Cypri* vixit, *Iphicrates in Thracia, Timotheus Lesbi, Chares in Sigĕo*, Conon lived mostly on the island of Cyprus, Iphicrates in Thrace, Timotheus on Lesbos, and Chares in Sigeum. *Aetas et forma et super omnĭa* Romānum nomen *te fervciōrem* facit, Age and beauty, and, above all, the name of Roman, render thee more warlike.

3. When the sentence contains *et .... et, tum .... tum* (both .... and) or *nec .... nec*, the verb is commonly singular; as, *Illam ratiōnem* et *Pompejus* et *Flaccus* secutus est, Pompey and Flaccus both pursued that plan.

4. When the nominatives are connected by the disjunctive *aut*, "or," or by *aut .... aut*, "either .... or," the verb is commonly singular, but sometimes plural; as, *Si Aĕacus* aut *Minos* diceret, If Æacus or Minos should say. *Ne Sulpicius* aut *Cotta plus quam ego apud te valēre* vidĕantur, Lest Sulpicius or Cotta should appear to have more influence with you than I have.

5. If an ablative with *cum* is put instead of a second nominative, the predicate is generally plural, but sometimes singular; as, *Demosthenes* cum cetĕris *in exĭlium* erant expulsi, Demosthenes with the rest had been driven into exile. *Tu ipse* cum Sexto *scire velim, quid* cogites. I should like to know what purpose you yourself and Sextus have in view.

D. RULE. — When the nominatives of a compound subject are of different persons, the predicate agrees with the first person in preference to the second, and with the second in preference to the third. E. g.

Si tû et Túllĭa valêtis, égo et Cicĕro valêmus.	*If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.*

REMARK. — In sentences containing an antithesis or a division (e. g. an *et .... et*), the verb assumes the person of the nearest noun; as, Et *tu* et *omnes homĭnes* sciunt, You yourself and all men know.

Postquam in tuto ipse (ego) *et* ille *in periculo esse* coepit, After I myself began to be safe and he in danger.

The market (-place).	Fŏrum, i, *n.*
The ball.	Saltātĭo, ōnis, *f.*
The country (as opposed to city).	Rūs, rūris, *n.*
The square, public place.	Campus, i. *m.*; lŏcus publĭcus, i, *m.*
The field.	Ager, *gen.* agri, *m.*, *or in the pl.* agri, ōrum.*
The nobleman.	Hŏmo nōbĭlis; ĕquĕs, ĭtis, *m.* (a knight).
The boatman.	Nauta, ae, *m.*; hŏmo nautĭcus, *m.*
The bailiff.	Quaesītor, ōris, *m.*
The judge.	Jūdex, ĭcis, *m.*
People (in general).	Hŏmĭnes, *pl. m.*
To, towards (prep.).	*In, ad*† (with the acc.).
To go to the market.	In (ad) fŏrum īre.
To be at the market.	In fŏro ésse.
To go to the square.	In lŏcum públĭcum īre.
To be in the square.	In lŏco públĭco ésse.
To go into the field.	In ágrum (ágros) īre.
To be in the field.	In ágro (ágris) ésse.

E. Rule. — Verbs signifying motion or direction towards a place or object are generally followed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*, or by an adverb of place. As,

Where (in what direction) are these people going?	Quô (quórsum) éunt hómĭnes ílli?
They are going to (towards) the square.	Éunt ad lócum públĭcum.
Will you lead us into the fields?	Núm vîs nôs in ágros dúcĕre?
I am unwilling to lead you thither.	Nólo vôs éo (ílluc) dúcere.
Does your brother come to the market?	Venítne frâter túus in fórum?
He does not come there.	Nôn vénit.
Whither do you send your little servant?	Quô mittis sérvŭlum túum?
I am sending him to the city to my father.	Mítto éum ad pátrem in úrbem.
To go into the country.	Rûs (*acc.*) īre.
To be in the country.	Rúri (*or* rûre)‡ ésse.

* Often in the plural, especially when opposed to a collection of houses, like the English "fields."

† *Ad* properly implies approximation, and has something of the force of the English "towards." It may thus stand before the names of persons as well as of places; *in* (in this sense), before the latter only.

‡ The form *rūri* is preferable to *rūre*.

F. Obs. *Rus* follows the construction of the names of towns, and rejects the preposition *in* before the accusative and ablative. As,

Do you desire to go anywhere?	Cupísne íre áliquo?
I desire to go into the country.	Égo rûs íre cúpio.
Is the bailiff in the country?	Núm est quaesitor rúri (rûre)?
No; he is at our house.	Nôn; apud nôs ést. / Ímmo véro dómi nóstrae est.
To go to the ball.	Saltātum íre.*
To be (present) at the ball.	Saltatióni interésse (adésse).
To dance.	Salto, āre, āvi, ātum.
The (act of) dancing.	Saltātio, ōnis, *f.*
To be present at.	Adsum, esse, fŭi, fŭtūrus. / Intersum,† esse, fŭi, fŭtūrus.
Are the young men going to the ball?	Eúntne adolescéntŭli saltâtum?
Yes, sir, they are going.	Véro, dómine, éunt.
By no means, sir; they are not going.	Mínime géntium, dómine; nôn éunt.
Is the tailor at the ball?	Adéstne (interéstne) sártor saltatióni?
He is there.	Ádest (ínterest).

G. RULE. — Many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, and *super* are followed by the dative. As,

Praêsum reipúblicae.	*I preside over the commonwealth.*
Antecéllit ómnibus.	*He excels every one.*
Áffer (ádfer) míhi lítteras.	*Bring me the letters.*
Sĭdera sédibus súis inhaérunt.	*The stars remain fixed in their abodes.*
Objêcit sê télibus hóstium.‡	*He exposed himself to the weapons of the enemy.*
At, near (*prep.*).	Ăpŭd, juxta, ad (*cum acc.*).
To stand.	Stō, stāre, stĕti, stătum.
To stand by *or* near.	Adsto, āre, stĭti, —— (ALICUI REI, APUD, JUXTA).
The window.	Fenestra, ae, *f.*

* *Saltātum* is the supine of *salto*, thus put with *ire* to denote the purpose: "to dance," "for the purpose of dancing." Cf. Less. XLVII. *A.*

† *Adsum* is properly "to be near *or* present." *Intersum* conveys the additional notion of "participating in." Both these compounds of *sum* are conjugated like the simple verb.

‡ Intransitive verbs comprehended under this rule are followed by the dative of the *direct* object (e. g. *antecellit, inhaerent, praesum*), and transitive verbs by that of the *remote* object (e. g. *affer mihi, objecit telibus*). This rule includes several compounds of *sum*: — *adsum, insum, intersum, praesum, subsum, supersum.*

The fire.	Ignis, is, *m.*; carbōnes, *pl. m.* (*the coal fire*).
The fireplace, hearth.	Fŏcus, i, *m.*
To go to the window.	Ad fenéstram īre. Adīre (ad)* fenéstram.
To stand at (near) the window.	Apud (juxta, ad) fenéstram stâre. Adstâre fenéstrae (juxta fenestram).
To go to the fire.	Ad fócum īre. Adīre (ad) fócum.
To stand by the fire.	Apud (ad) carbónes stâre. Adstâre fóco (apud fócum).
Where is the boatman?	Úbinam est naûta?
He is standing by the fire.	Stát apud fócum. Ádstat carbónibus (apud carbónes).
Are we going to the window?	Imúsne (adimúsne) ad fenéstram?
We are not going.	Nôn īmus.
To write to some one (to send one a letter).	Littĕras ad alĭquem dăre *or* mittĕre (*absolutely*). Scribĕre alĭcui *or* ad alĭquem† (*with* ut *and the subj.*).
Are you willing to write to me?	Visne dáre (míttere) littĕras ad mê?
I am unwilling to write to you.	Nólo dáre (míttĕre) littĕras ad tê.
To whom is you father writing?	Ad quém dát páter túus lítteras?
He is writing to his best friend.	Lítteras dát ad amícum súum óptĭmum.
What is he writing him?	Quíd ei scribit?
He is writing him to come to the city.	Scribit éi, ut in úrbem véniăt (Less. XXX. *C.* 1.)

Exercise 55.

Where is our friend? — He is at the market. — Where is my brother? — He is in the country. — Do you wish to go into the country? — I do not wish to go there. — Whither do you desire to go? — I desire to go to the market. — Is your brother at home? — No; he is at the ball. — Whither does your son wish to go? — He wishes to go to the great place. — Does the Englishman go into the country in order to see the fields? — He does not wish to go into the country in order to see the fields, but in order to see the forests, the birds, the water, and to drink tea. — Where is the son of the peasant? — He is in the fields to cut corn (cutting corn = *frumentum secans*). — Does the son of the nobleman wish to go anywhither? — He does not wish to go anywhither; he is tired. — Whither does the son of

* *Ad* commonly implies motion towards a place; but sometimes also rest or situation in a place. The compound *adīre* of this sentence belongs to Rule *E*.

† The construction *scribĕre alĭcui* or *ad alĭquem* can only be used properly when the contents of the letter are mentioned, or when a command or exhortation is conveyed.

the bailiff wish to carry corn? — He wishes to carry some to the storehouse of your brother. — Does he wish to carry thither the wine and the meat? — He wishes to carry both thither.

Exercise 56.

Have you time to stand at (*ad standum apud*) the window? — I have no time to stand at the window. — Is your brother at home? — He is not at home? — Where is he? — He is in the country. — Has he anything to do in the country? — He has nothing to do there. — Whither do you wish to go? — I wish to go to the theatre. — Is the Turk in the theatre? — He is there. — Who is in the garden? — The children of the English and those of the Germans are there. — Where does your father wish to speak to me? — He wishes to speak to you in his room. — To whom does your brother wish to speak? — He wishes to speak to the Irishman. — Does he not wish to speak to the Scotchman? — He wishes to speak to him. — Where will he speak to him? — He will speak to him at the theatre. — Does the Italian wish to speak to anybody? — He wishes to speak to the physician. — Where will he speak to him? — He will speak to him at the ball (*inter saltandum*, Less. XXV. *B. c.*). — Can you send me some money? — I can send you some. — How much money can you send me? — I can send you thirty-two crowns. — When will you send me that money? — I will send it to you to-day. — Will you send it to me into the country? — I will send it to you thither. — Will you send your servant to the market? — I will send him thither. — Have you anything to buy at the market? — I have to buy good cloth, good boots, and good shoes.

Exercise 57.

What does the butcher wish to do in the country? — He wishes to buy there oxen and rams in order to kill them. — Do you wish to buy a chicken in order to kill it? — I wish to buy one, but I have not the courage to kill it. — Does the boatman wish to kill any one? — He does not wish to kill any one. — Have you a desire to burn my letters? — I have not the courage to do it. — Will the servant seek my knife or my paper? — He will seek both. — Which knife do you wish (to have)? — I wish (to have) my large knife. — What oxen does the butcher wish to kill? — He wishes to kill large oxen. — What provisions does the merchant wish to buy? — He wishes to buy good provisions. — Where does he wish to buy them? — He wishes to buy them at the market. — To whom does he wish to send them? — He wishes to send them to our enemies. — Will you send me one more book? — I will send you several more. — Are you able to drink as much as your neighbor? — I am able to drink as much as he; but our friend the Russian is able to drink more than both of us (*uterque nostrum*). — Is the Russian able to drink as much of this wine as of that? — He is able to drink as much of the one as of the other. — Have you anything good to drink? — I have nothing to drink.

Exercise 58.

Is the friend of the Spaniard able to carry provisions? — He can carry some. — Whither does he wish to carry provisions? — He wishes to carry some to our storehouses. — Do you wish to buy provisions in order to carry them to our storehouses? — I wish to buy some in order to carry them into the country. — Do you wish to go to the window in order to see the youth? — I have no time to go (*ad eundum*) to the window. — Have you anything to do? — I have a letter to write. — To whom have you a letter to write? — I have to write one to my friend. — Do you wish to write to the bailiff? — I wish to write to him. — What do you wish to write to him? — I wish to answer (him) his letter. — Are you able to write as many letters as I? — I am able to write more (of them) than you. — Can you write to your absent friends (*ad amicos absentes*)? — I can write to them. — Have you paper to write (*ad scribendum*)? — I have some. — Is the bailiff able to write to anybody? — He is not able to write to anybody.

Lesson XXXIII. — PENSUM TRICESIMUM TERTIUM.

OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

A. In the active voice the agent is the nominative of the verb, and is represented as acting upon an object in the accusative; in the passive voice the object becomes the subject of the verb, and is represented as acted upon by the agent in the ablative. E. g.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Páter ámat fílium.	*Fílius amátur a pátre.*
Sól múndum illústrat.	*Sóle múndus illustrátur.*
Déi providéntia múndum administrat.	*Déi providéntiā múndus administrátur.**

Remarks.

1. The passive voice in Latin is distinguished from the active by peculiar terminations. It has the same number of moods and tenses, but a number of its tenses are periphrastic. (Cf. Lesson XXVIII. *E.*)

2. Neuter verbs, from the nature of their signification, do not admit of a passive voice. The Romans, however, sometimes employ them passively, but only in the third person singular and impersonally; as, *Bibitur, curritur, itur, venitur*, There is drinking, running, going,

---

* The father loves the son. Pass. The son is loved by the father. — The sun illumines the world. Pass. The world is illumined by the sun. — God's providence rules the world. Pass. The world is ruled by God's providence.

coming. So also the neuter of the future passive participle: *Eundum est, veniendum est,* There must be going, coming.

3. The verbs *fio,* I become (am made); *vapŭlo,* I am beaten; and *venĕo,* I am sold, have an active form with a passive signification.

4. The neuters *audĕo,* I venture; *fido,* I trust; *gaudĕo,* I rejoice; and *solĕo,* I am accustomed, — assume a passive form in the perfect and the tenses derived from it. Thus: *Ausus, fisus, gavisus, solĭtus sum,* I have ventured, trusted, rejoiced, been accustomed. They are hence called *semi-deponentia.*

5. A numerous class of Latin verbs, both active and neuter, are only passive in form, having an active signification. They are called *Deponent* Verbs,* and are of every conjugation.

B. I. The principal parts of the passive voice, from which all the remaining forms are derived, are, 1. *The Present Indicative,* 2. *The Present Infinitive,* and 3. *The Perfect Participle.* Thus: —

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Part.
1.	āmŏr,	āmārī,	ātŭs.
2.	mŏnĕŏr,	mŏnērī,	mŏnĭtŭs.
3.	lĕgŏr,	lĕgī,	lectŭs.
4.	audĭŏr,	audīrī,	audītŭs.

II. The formation of the different tenses of the passive voice has already been explained in Lesson XXVIII. *A – E.* The parts to be considered in this Lesson are,—

1. The Present Indicative Passive, formed from the same tense of the active voice by adding *r;* as,

1. āmō — āmŏr, *I am loved.*
2. mŏnĕō — mŏnĕŏr, *I am reminded.*
3. lĕgō — lĕgŏr, *I am read.*
4. audĭō — audĭŏr, *I am heard.*

2. The Present Infinitive Passive, formed from the corresponding mood of the active voice, by converting, 1. *ārĕ,* 2. *ērĕ,* 4. *īrĕ,* into, 1. *ārī,* 2. *ērī,* 4. *īrī,* and the *ĕrĕ* of the third conjugation into ī only †; as,

1. āmārĕ — āmārī, *to be loved.*
2. mŏnērĕ — mŏnērī, *to be reminded.*
3. lĕgĕrĕ — lĕgī, *to be read.*
4. audīrĕ — audīrī, *to be heard.*

3. The Perfect Participle, formed from the supine, by changing *um* into *us, a, um;* as,

1. āmātŭm — āmātus, ă, ŭm, *loved.*
2. mŏnĭtŭm — mŏnĭtŭs, ă, ŭm, *reminded.*

* So called from being supposed to have laid aside (*depōno,* I put off, lay aside) the active voice and passive signification.

† In the older monuments of the Latin language, and also among the later poets, the syllable *er* is sometimes appended to the infinitive passive; as *amarier, legier, mittier,* &c.

3. lectŭm — lectŭs, ă, ŭm, *read.*
4. auditŭm — auditŭs, ă, ŭm, *heard.*

4. The Present Subjunctive, formed from the same tense of the active voice, by changing the final *m* into *r*; as,

1. ămĕm — ămĕr, *that I may be loved.*
2. mŏnĕăm — mŏnĕăr, *that I may be reminded.*
3. lĕgăm — lĕgăr, *that I may be read.*
4. audĭăm — audĭăr, *that I may be heard.*

Conjugation of the Present Passive.

C. The following paradigms exhibit the inflection of the present tense of the passive voice, indicative and subjunctive:—

First Conjugation.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Amor, *I am loved.*	Amer, *that I may be loved.*
Sing. ămŏr	Sing. ămĕr
ămārĭs *or* -rĕ *	ămērĕ *or* -rĭs *
ămātŭr,	ămētŭr,
Plur. ămāmŭr	Plur. ămēmŭr
ămāmĭnĭ	ămēmĭnĭ
ămantŭr.	ămentŭr.

Second Conjugation.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Monĕor, *I am reminded.*	Monĕar, *that I may be reminded.*
Sing. mŏnĕor	Sing. mŏnĕăr
mŏnērĭs *or* -rĕ	mŏnĕārĕ *or* -rĭs
mŏnētŭr,	mŏnĕātŭr,
Plur. mŏnēmŭr	Plur. mŏnĕāmŭr
mŏnēmĭnĭ	mŏnĕāmĭnĭ
mŏnentŭr.	mŏnĕantŭr.

Third Conjugation.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Lĕgor, *I am read.*	Lĕgar, *that I may be read.*
Sing. lĕgŏr	Sing. lĕgăr
lĕgĕrĭs *or* -rĕ	lĕgārĕ *or* -rĭs
lĕgĭtŭr,	lĕgātŭr,
Plur. lĕgĭmŭr	Plur. lĕgāmŭr
lĕgĭmĭnĭ	lĕgāmĭnĭ
lĕguntŭr.	lĕgantŭr.

* Of this second person singular the form in *ris* is to be preferred for the indicative and that in *re* for the subjunctive. Thus the student may put Ind. *amāris, monēris, legĕris, audīris,* and Subj. *amēre, monēare, legāre, audīāre.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Audĭor, *I am heard.*	Audĭar, *that I may be heard.*
SING. audĭŏr	SING. audĭăr.
audīrĭs *or* -rĕ	audĭārĕ *or* -rĭs
audītŭr,	audĭātŭr,
PLUR. audīmŭr	PLUR. audĭāmŭr
audīmĭnī	audĭāmĭnī
audĭuntŭr.	audĭantŭr.

Like *amor*, inflect *commodor*, *dor*,* *laceror*, *lavor*, *portor*, *reparor*, *secor*, *servor*, &c. Like *monĕor: docĕor* (I am taught), *habĕor*, *jubĕor* (I am commanded), *tenĕor*, *videor*, &c. Like *legor: dicor*, *diligor*, *ducor*, *emor*, *frangor*, *mittor*, *quæror*, *scribor*, *tollor*, &c. Like *audĭor: custodĭor* (I am guarded), *erudĭor* (I am instructed), *munĭor* (I am fortified), *vestĭor* (I am clothed), &c.

D. The Present Passive of *căpĭo*, and of other verbs in *io* of the third conjugation, is thus inflected: —

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Căpĭor, *I am taken.*	Căpĭar, *that I may be taken.*
SING. căpĭŏr	SING. căpĭăr
căpĕrĭs *or* -rĕ	căpĭārĕ *or* -rĭs
căpĭtŭr,	căpĭātŭr,
PLUR. căpĭmŭr	PLUR. căpĭāmŭr
căpĭmĭnī	căpĭāmĭnī
căpĭuntur.	căpĭantŭr.

Like *capior* are conjugated: 1. All its compounds; as, *accipior*, *decipior*, *excipior*, &c. 2. Those compounds of *facio* which change the radical *a* into *i*; as, *afficior*, *conficior*, *interficior*, &c. 3. *Jacior*, I am thrown, and its compounds *abjicior*, *dejicior*, *rejicior*, &c.

E. The Present Passive of the verb *fĕro*, and its compounds (*affĕro*, *antefĕro*, *conferro*, *defĕro*, &c.), is irregular. Thus: —

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Fĕror, *I am carried.*	Fĕrar, *that I may be carried.*
SING. fĕrŏr	SING. fĕrăr
ferrĭs	fĕrārĕ *or* -rĭs
fertur,	fĕrātŭr,
PLUR. fĕrĭmŭr	PLUR. fĕrāmŭr
fĕrĭmĭnī	fĕrāmĭnī
fĕruntŭr.	fĕrantur.

F. The passive of *facio* is likewise irregular: *fĭo*, *fĭĕrī*, *factus sum*. The present of *fĭo* is inflected as follows: —

* The passive of *do* shortens the first *a*, as in the active; as, *dăris*, *dătur*; *dămur*, *dămini*, *dantur*. The forms *dor* and *der*, however, are never used.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Fĭo,* *I am made, I become.*	Fĭăm, *that I may be made*, &c.
Sing. fĭo	Sing. fĭăm
fĭs	fĭās
fĭt,	fĭăt,
Plur. fĭmus	Plur. fĭāmŭs
fĭtĭs	fĭātĭs
fĭunt.	fĭant.

Remark. — These compounds of *facio*, which retain the radical *a*, have likewise *fio* in the passive, but those which change the *a* in *i* have *ficior*; e. g. *arefacĭo — arefio*; *calefacĭo — calefio*: *labefacĭo — labefio*, &c.; but *conficĭo — conficĭor*, *interficĭo — interficĭor*, &c.

G. Obs. The Present Passive always represents the action denoted by the verb as *incomplete* and *still going on*. In this respect it is to be distinguished from the perfect, which exhibits it as already accomplished and complete. E. g.

Pres. *Dómus aedificâtur.*	*The house is being built (is building).*
Perf. *Dómus aedificâta est.*	*The house is built (finished).*
Are you (being) loved ?	Amarísne ? Ecquid amâris ?
Yes, sir, I am loved.	Véro, dómine, ámor.
Is your brother loved ?	Fratérne túus amâtur ?
He is not loved.	Nôn amâtur.
Which book is read ?	Quis líber légitur ?
Mine.	Méus.
Are we heard or they ?	Útrum audímur nôs anílli ?
They are heard.	Audiúnturílli.
Are ye reminded ?	Monēmĭnine ? Num monémini ?
We are reminded.	Monêmur.
We are not reminded.	Non monêmur.
Where is the trunk carried to ?	Quô fértur rìscus ?
It is carried home.	Dómum (fértur).
Is the coffee (being) warmed ?	Calefítne coffĕa ?
Yes, it is (being) warmed.	Ítaést, cálĕfit.
Is any one killed ?	Núm quis interfícĭtur ?
No one is killed.	Nèmo (núllus) interfícitur.
There are many (being) killed.	Múlti interficiúntur.
Good, well-behaved.	*Bĕnĕ† mōrātus, a, um ; bŏnus, a, um.*
Naughty, bad.	*Prāvus, a, um ; mālis mōrĭbus.‡*
Skilful, clever, diligent.	Pĕrītus, a, um ; sollers, tis ; dilĭgens, tis.
Awkward.	Impĕrītus, a, um ; ineptus, a, um.

* The *i* of the verb *fio* (although preceding another vowel) is long, except when followed by *er* ; as, *fiam*, *fiunt* ; but *fieri*, *fierem*.

† An adverb qualifying *morātus*.

‡ This is called the ablative of *quality*, which must be translated like a genitive: "of bad manners."

Assiduous, sedulous, studious.	Sēdŭlus, a, um; assĭdŭus, a, um; stŭdĭōsus, a, um.
Idle, lazy.	Ignāvus, a, um; pĭger, ra, rum; segnis, e.
The idler, lazy fellow.	(Hŏmo) dēsĕs, -ĭdis, *m.*
To praise.	Laudo, āre, āvi, ātum (ALIQUEM; ALIQUID).
To blame.	Vĭtŭpero, āre, āvi, ātum. Rĕprĕhendo, ĕre, di, sum. (ALIQUEM DE ALIQUA RE).
To reward (any one).	Praemĭum alĭcui dăre *or* dēferre. Praemio* alĭquem affĭcĕre *or* ornāre.
To be rewarded.	Praemĭo affĭci *or* ornāri. Praemĭum consĕquor,† -sĕqui, -sĕcūtus sum (*dep.*).
To punish.	Pūnĭo, īre, īvi (ĭi), ītum (ALIQUEM). Alĭquem poenā affĭcĕre.
To esteem.	Alĭquem magni‡ făcĕre *or* aestĭmāre.
To despise.	Contemno, ĕre, -tempsi, -temptum. Despĭcātŭi§ hăbēre (ALIQUEM).
To hate, to bear hatred towards any one.	Odĭum hăbēre *or* gĕrĕre (IN ALIQUEM).
To be hated.	Odĭo (*dat.*) esse (ALICUI). In ŏdĭo esse (APUD ALIQUEM).
By me — by us.	A mĕ — a nōbis.
By thee — by you.	A tē — a vōbis.
By him — by them.	Ab ĕo (ĭllo) — ab ĭis (ĭllis).
By the father — by men.	A pătre — ab homĭnĭbus.
By fire, heat, by the sword.	Ĭgni, aestu, fĕrro (*abl.*).

H. RULE. — If the agent of a passive verb is a person, it is put in the ablative, with the preposition *a* or *ab*, but if it is an impersonal cause, means, or instrument, it stands in the ablative without a preposition. E. g.

Laudántur a mê, a tê, ab éo (íllo).	*They are praised by me, by you, by him.*
Vituperâris a nôbis, ab íllis, a pâtre.	*You are blamed by us, by them, by your father.*

* The Ablative = "to affect or adorn one *with* a reward."

† Literally, "I obtain (*consequor*, deponent) a reward."

‡ Literally, "to make (or esteem) one of much account." *Magni* is the genitive of price, and agrees with *prĕtii* understood.

§ The Dative of *despicātus*. Literally, "to have (hold) one for contempt"; like the English "to hold one in contempt."

Térra ílla férro ignîque pervastâta est.	*That land was destroyed by fire and sword.*
Fecunditâte árbŏrum deléctor.	*I am delighted by the fruitfulness of the trees.*
Who is punished?	Quís punítur?
The boy is punished by his father.	Púer punítur a pátre.
Why is he punished?	Quám ob rém poénā afficitur?
Because he is lazy and bad.	Quía ést ignâvus et nêquam.
Which man is praised, and which one blamed?	Quís hómo laudâtur, quís vituperâtur?
He who is skilful is praised, but he who is awkward is blamed.	Quicúnque perítus est, laudâtur, qui autem est imperítus, is vituperâtur.
Which boys are rewarded, and which punished?	Quí púeri praémiis afficiúntur, quí puniúntur?
Those who are clever and studious are rewarded, but those who are awkward and lazy are punished.	Quí sollértes átque studiósi súnt, praémiis ornántur, qui aûtem inépti ac ségnes súnt, ií puniúntur.
We are loved by our friends, and you are despised by every one.	Nôs ab amícis nóstris amâmur, vôs aûtem ab ómnibus contemnímini.
I am punished, and you are rewarded.	Égo poénā afficior, tû ornâris praémio.
These children are praised because they are diligent and well-behaved; but those are reprehended because they are lazy and bad.	Hí líberi laudántur, quía diligéntes et béne moráti sunt, ílli aûtem reprehendúntur, quía ignávi átque mális móribus sunt.

Why?	Cur? quam ob rem? (*Conj.*)
Because.	Quia, quod (*Conj.*).
The tutor, master.	Tūtor, ōris, *m.*; magister, ri, *m.*
The pupil, scholar.	Discipŭlus, i, *m.*; alumnus, i, *m.*

Exercise 59.

Are you loved by your father? — I am loved by him. — Is your brother loved by him? — He is loved by him. — By whom am I loved? — Thou art loved by thy parents (*parentes*). — Are we loved? — You are loved. — By whom are we loved. — You are loved by your friends. — Are these men loved? — They are loved by us and by their good friends. — By whom is the blind (*caecus*) man led? — He is led by me. — Where do you lead him to? — I am leading him home. — By whom are we blamed? — We are blamed by our enemies. — Why are we blamed by them? — Because they do not love us. — Are you punished by your tutor? — We are not punished by him, because we are studious and good. — Are we heard? — We are heard. — By whom are we heard? — We are heard by our neighbors. — Is the master heard by his pupils? — He is heard by them. — Which

children are praised? — Those that are good. — Which are punished? — Those that are idle and naughty. — Are you praised or blamed? — We are neither praised nor blamed. — Is our friend loved by his masters? — He is loved and praised by them, because he is studious and good (well-behaved); but his brother is despised by his, because he is naughty and idle. — Is the letter (being) written? — It is (being) written. — By whom are those books written? — They are written by our friends. — To whom is the table (being) sent? — It is sent to our neighbor. — Where are the knives sent to? — They are sent to our house. — Are you sent anywhere? — I am sent nowhere. — Are our shirts washed by any one? — They are washed by no one. — Is your brother becoming studious? — He is not becoming so. — Is our coffee (being) warmed? — It is being warmed. — By whom are our coats (being) mended? — They are mended by the tailor. — Are our horses (being) bought by any one? — They are bought by no one. — By whom is the wine drunk? — It is drunk by our friends. — Is the book read by any one? — It is not read by any one. — By whom are good books read? — They are read by the wise and the learned (*a sapientibus doctisque*). — By what (*quâ re*) are you delighted? — I am delighted by my new (*nŏvus*) books. — How (*quomodo*) are our enemies killed? — They are killed by the sword.

Lesson XXXIV. — PENSUM TRICESIMUM QUARTUM.

OF THE NOMINATIVE AFTER VERBS.

A. RULE. — After certain neuter and passive verbs, the noun serving to complete the predicate is put in the same case as the subject to which it relates. E. g.

Nōs sŭmus amīci.	*We are friends.*
Sĕrvus fĭt libertīnus.	*The slave is made a freed man.*
Cŭpĭo evādĕre orātor.	*I desire to become an orator.*
Camillus dictātor dĭcĭtur.	*Camillus is called dictator.*

REMARKS.

1. The noun in the predicate may be of any gender, but if it has a form of the same gender as the subject, that form is preferred; as, *Amicĭtia* vĭncŭlum quoddam *est hominum ĭnter se*, Friendship is a kind of bond which links men to each other. But, *Licentia* corruptrix *est morum*, Licentiousness is the corruptrix of morals. *Aquila volucrum* regina* *est*, The eagle is the queen of birds. *Stĭlus* optĭmus *est dicendi* magister, Style is the best teacher of oratory.

2. The noun of the predicate may be of a different number; as,

---

* *Regĭna*, because the grammatical gender of *aquila* is feminine. But the masculine *rex* would not be incorrect here.

Captīvi mīlĭtum praeda (*sing.*) *fuerant*, The captives had been booty of the soldiers. *Omnia Caesar erat*, Cæsar was everything. *Haec urbs est Thebae*, This city is Thebes.

3. The verb commonly agrees with the subject, but is sometimes attracted into concord with the nearer noun of the predicate; as, *Loca, quae proxŭma Carthagĭnem* Numidia vocatur, The places in the vicinity of Carthage, which are called Numidia. *Amantĭum irae* (pl.) *amōris* integratio est, The quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.

B. RULE. — An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, serving to complete the predicate after verbs neuter or passive, agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject to which it relates. E. g.

Ille púer est modéstus.	*That boy is modest.*
Hī libri sunt méi.	*These books are mine.*
Tū vocâris jústus.	*You are called just.*
Cúpit putári bélla.	*She desires to be considered handsome.*
Scýthae invícti *mansêre.*	*The Scythians remained unconquered.*

REMARKS.

1. The adjective of the predicate is sometimes put substantively in the neuter; as, Varĭum et mutabĭle *semper* (*est*) *femĭna*, Woman is always a fickle and changeable being. Aliud *est actio bona*, aliud *oratio*, A good action is one thing, and good talk another. In these instances we commonly supply in English some general term, like "thing," "things," "being," &c.

2. The adjective of the predicate sometimes agrees with another noun *implied* in the subject; as, *Capĭta* (neut.) *conjurationis* caesi * (*masc.*) *sunt*, The heads of the conspiracy were killed. This is called the *Constructio ad Synesin.*

3. If the predicate contains a participle with *esse*, it generally agrees with the nearest noun; as, *Non omnis error* stultitia *est* dicenda, Every error cannot be called stupidity. *Paupertas mihi* onus (*neut.*) visum *est misĕrum et grave*, Poverty seemed to me to be a wretched and a heavy burden.

4. If the subject is compound, i. e. composed of two or more nominatives, the adjective or participle is generally in the plural, and its gender is determined by the rules of Lesson XXII. *B.* 1 – 5. Additional examples are: *Rex regiaque classis una* profecti (sc. *sunt*), The king and the royal fleet departed together. *Murus et porta de coelo* tacta *sunt*, The wall and gate were struck by lightning. *Filia atque unus e filiis* captus *est*, The daughter and one of the sons were captured. *Populi provinciaeque* liberatae *sunt*, The nations and provinces were made free.

* In the masculine, because the heads of the conspiracy were considered men.

5. When the subject is in the accusative, the noun, adjective, or participle of the predicate is in the same case; as, *Cupio* me *esse* clementem,* I desire to be clement. *Scio* te *haberi* doctum, I know that you are considered a scholar.

6. When the infinitive of a verb neuter or passive is preceded by a dative, the noun or adjective of the predicate may stand in the same case; as, *Natura dedit* omnibus *esse beatis*, Nature has conceded happiness to all men. *Licet* mihi *esse* beāto,† It is lawful for me to be happy. This construction is frequent with impersonal verbs governing the dative.

7. After the verb *sum* the predicate is frequently an adverb or a noun in an oblique case; as, *Conatus ejus* frustra *fuērunt*, His attempts were in vain. Recte *est aeger*, The patient is doing well. *Esse cum imperio*, To be in command (of an army).

C. The neuter and passive verbs which may thus be followed by nouns, adjectives, or participles, in the same case as the subject, are, —

1. The copula *sum*, and certain neuter verbs denoting motion or situation; as,

cado, *I fall.*	jaceo, *I lie.*
eo, *I go.*	maneo, *I remain.*
evado, *I come off* (*become*).	sedeo, *I sit.*
fio, *I become.*	sto, *I stand.*
fugio, *I escape.*	venio, *I come.*‡
incedo, *I walk.*	

2. Passive verbs of naming, choosing, constituting, rendering; as,

appellor, *I am called.*	nominor, *I am nominated.*
constituor, *I am constituted.*	nuncupor, *I am named.*
creor, *I am created.*	perhibeor, *I am said.*§
declaror, *I am declared.*	reddor, *I am rendered.*
designor, *I am designated.*	renuntior, *I am proclaimed.*
dicor, *I am said* (*called*).	salutor, *I am saluted.*
eligor, *I am elected.*	vocor, *I am called.*‖

* Compare page 128, note.

† This may also be, *Licet mihi esse beatum.* The logical order is, *Me beatum esse mihi licet.* So also, *Mihi* negligenti *esse non licuit*, I was not allowed to be negligent. Vobis *necesse est* fortibus *esse* viris, It is necessary for you to be brave men.

‡ Thus: *In pectus cecidit* prōnus, He fell flat on his chest. *In causam it* prīnceps, He goes headlong into the case. *Evadit* victor, He comes off victor. *Incedo* regina, I walk queen. *Manebit* imperator, He will remain commander, &c.

§ Many of these passive verbs, especially those of case 3, are construed with an infinitive of *sum* expressed or understood; as, *Nuntii* fuisse *perhibentur*, They are said to have been messengers. *Videmini viri boni* esse, Ye seem to be good men, &c.

‖ To these may be added *audio*, which sometimes = *appellor*; as, *Rex patersque* audisti, You heard yourself called king and father.

3. Passive verbs of esteeming, numbering, considering, and the like; as,

censeor, *I am supposed.*	judicor, *I am judged.*
credor, *I am believed.*	memoror, *I am recounted.*
deprehendor, *I am discovered.*	numeror, *I am numbered.*
existimor, *I am esteemed.*	putor, *I am thought.*
feror, *I am reported.*	reperior, *I am found.*
habeor, *I am considered.*	videor, *I seem.*

The corner.	Angŭlus, i, *m.*; lătĭbŭlum, i, *n.* (hiding-place).
The well.	Pŭtĕus, i, *m.*
The fountain.	Fons, tis, *m.*
The hole.	Fŏrāmen, ĭnis, *n.*
To order, command.	Jŭbĕo, ēre, jussi, jussum (ALIQUID FIERI, ALIQUEM FACERE ALIQUID).
I direct, let.	Cūro, āre, āvi, ātum (ALIQUID FACIENDUM).
To go for, fetch (of things).	Affĕro, -ferre, attŭli, allātum. / Apporto, āre, āvi, ātum. (ALIQUID ALIQUO).
To go for, fetch, or call (a person).	Arcesso, ĕre, īvi, ītum (ALIQUEM ALICUNDE* ALIQUO).
To fetch, conduct.	Adduco, ĕre, xi, ctum (ALIQUEM ALIQUO *or* AD ALIQUEM).
To send for (anything).	Jŭbĕo aliquid afferri *or* apportāri. / Cūro aliquid apportandum.
To send for (a person).	Jŭbeo aliquem arcessi *or* addūci.†
Does the servant fetch anything for us?	Affértne (apportátne) sérvus áliquid ad nôs?
He does not fetch us anything.	Níhil áffert ad nôs. / Nóbis nôn áffert quídquam.
Do you go for (call) any one?	Arcessísne áliquem?
I call (go for) no one.	Néminem (núllum) arcésso.
Do you send for anything?	Jubêsne apportári áliquid?
I am sending for some wine.	Vínum apportári júbĕo.
I order my books to be brought (I send for my books).	Líbros méos apportándos cúro.
Will you send for the physician?	Vísne jubêre médĭcum arcessi?
I will send for him.	Vólo jubêre éum arcéssi.
We desire wine to be brought.	Nôs vînum apportári cúpĭmus.
I direct paper to be brought (send for paper).	Ego chártam apportándam cúro.

* From some place somewhither.

† The verbs *jubeo* and *curo* are, however, frequently suppressed, and the verb itself is used in a factitive sense; as, *Annulum sibi fecit*, He *had* a ring *made*. *Securi percussit archipiratam*, He *ordered* the chief of the pirates *to be executed*. So *arcessere* may stand in the sense of "to send for" a person, and *apportare* "to send for (cause to be brought)" a thing, &c.

Let us send for a little bread. (Less. XXX. *C.* 3.)	Jubeâmus affĕrri aliquántŭlum pânis.
We must work (it behooves us to work).	*Laborándum est nóbis.* *Nôs opórtet laborâre.* *Necésse est laborémus.*

D. Obs. The English phrase *I must, I am obliged,* is expressed in Latin either by the participle in *dus,* or by the impersonal verbs *oportet,* "it behooves," and *necesse est,* "it is necessary." The former of the verbs is followed either by the accusative with an infinitive, or by the subjunctive without *ut;* the latter is commonly followed by the dative and infinitive, or by the subjunctive without *ut.* Thus:—

I must write.	Scribéndum est mĭhi.
It behooves me to (I must) write.	Mê opórtet scrĭbĕre. Opórtet (égo) scribam.
It is necessary for me to write (I must write).	Necésse est mĭhi scrĭbere. Necésse est (égo) scribam.
Must you write a letter to your brother?	Oportétne tê dáre lítteras ad frátrem?
I must write one.	Opórtet mê dáre únas. Opórtet dém únas.
Is he obliged to go to the market?	Necesséne est éi in fórum īre? Necesséne est éat in fórum?
He is obliged to go thither.	Necésse est éat ílluc.
Must you go?	Eundúmne est tĭbi?
I am not obliged to go.	Míhi nôn ést eúndum.
What has the man to do?	Quid hómini faciéndum est?
He is obliged to go into the forest.	Necésse est éat in sĭlvam.
What have you to do?	Quid est tĭbi faciéndum? Quid hábes faciéndum?
I have nothing to do.	Nôn est mĭhi quídquam faciéndum. Níhil fàciéndum hábeo.
What have you to drink?	Quid est tĭbi (quid hábes) ad bibéndum?
I have nothing to drink.	Níhil ad bibéndum hábeo. Nôn hábeo quód bĭbam.
I have nothing but water to drink.	Áquam sôlam ad bibéndum hábeo. Nôn hábeo quod bĭbam nĭsi áquam.
Are you willing to make my fire?	Visne mĭhi accéndĕre carbónes?
I am not unwilling to make it, but I have no time.	Éos accendere nôn nólo, cárĕo autem ótio.

This evening.	Hŏdïe vespĕri.
In the evening.	Vespĕri, vespĕre (*abl.*).
This morning.	Hŏdïe māne (*adv.*).
In the morning.	Māne (*adv.*).

When must you go into the country?	Quô témpore te opórtet íre rûs?
I must absolutely go this morning.	Necésse est éam hódie mâne.

Exercise 60.

Will you go for some sugar? — I will go for some. — My son (*mi fili*, cf. page 10, note *), wilt thou go for some water? — Yes, father (*mi pater*), I will go for some. — Whither wilt thou go? — I will go to the well, in order to fetch some water. — Where is thy brother? — He is at the well. — Will you send for my son? — I will send for him. — Will the captain send for my child? — He will send for him. — Where is he? — He is in a corner of the ship. — Art thou able to write a letter to me? — I am able to write one to you. — Must I go anywhither? — Thou must go into the garden. — Must I send for anything? — Thou must send for good wine, good cheese, and good bread. — What must I do? — You must write a long letter. — To whom must I write a long letter? — You must write one to your friend. — Is your little boy diligent? — He is both * modest and diligent. — Are these boys awkward and lazy? — They are neither awkward nor lazy. — What are you called? — I am called learned and wise (*doctus et sapiens*). — Are they becoming learned? — They are becoming (so). — Does he come off (*evadûne*) an orator? — He does come off one. — Do they remain good? — They do not remain (so). — Do I walk (as) commander? — You do walk (as one). — Are they considered handsome (*formôsi*)? — They are, on the contrary, considered ugly (*deformes*). — Do they desire to become (*fieri*) clement? — They do desire to become (so). — Is it lawful for me to be happy? — It is lawful. — Do we seem to be just? — You do not seem (to be so).

Exercise 61.

What must we do? — You must go into the forest in order to cut some wood. — What has the Englishman to do? — He has nothing to do. — Has the Spaniard anything to do? — He has to work. — Where can he work? — He can work in his room and in mine. — When will you give me some money? — I will give you some this evening. — Must I come to your house? — You must come to my house. — When must I come to your house? — This morning. — Must I come to your house in the morning or in the evening? — You must come in the morning and in the evening. — Whither must I go? — You must go to the great square in order to speak to the merchants. — Where must the peasant go to? — He must go into the field in order to cut some hay. — Must I keep anything for you? — You must keep for me my good gold and my good works. — Must the children of our friends do anything? — They must work in the morning and in the evening. — What must the tailor mend for you? — He must mend my old coat for me. — Which chicken must the cook

* "Both .... and" is in Latin *et .... et*, or *non minus .... quam*.

kill? — He must kill this and that. — Must I send you these or those books? — You must send me both these and those. — Have you anything to drink? — I have nothing to drink. — What have they to drink? — They have nothing but water to drink? — Where must you go? — I must go into the garden. — Is it necessary for them to write? — It is not necessary. — Does it behoove us to speak? — It does behoove (you to speak). — Must I send for water? — You must send for some. — Who must send for the book? — Our brother has to send for them. — Do they send for me? — They do not send for you.

Lesson XXXV. — PENSUM TRICESIMUM QUINTUM.

OF DEPONENT VERBS.

A. The deponent verbs of the Latin language are regularly conjugated like the passive voice of other verbs. They are either active or neuter, and belong to every conjugation. E. g.

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
1st Conj.	Hortor,	āri,	ātus sum, *I exhort.*
2d Conj.	Vĕrĕor,	ēri,	vĕrĭtus sum, *I fear.*
3d Conj.	Lŏquor,	lŏqui,	lŏcūtus sum, *I speak.*
4th Conj.	Blandĭor,	īri,	ītus sum, *I flatter.*

THE PRESENT TENSE OF DEPONENT VERBS.

First Conjugation.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Hortor, *I exhort.*		Horter, *that I may exhort.*	
Sing.	hortŏr	Sing.	hortĕr
	hortārĭs *or* -rĕ		hortērĕ *or* -rĭs
	hortātŭr,		hortētŭr,
Plur.	hortāmŭr	Plur.	hortēmŭr
	hortāmĭnī		hortēmĭnī
	hortantŭr.		hortentŭr.

Second Conjugation.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Vĕrĕor, *I fear,*		Vĕrĕar, *that I may fear.*	
Sing.	vĕrĕŏr	Sing.	vĕrĕăr
	vĕrērĭs *or* -rĕ		vĕrĕārĕ *or* -rĭs
	vĕrētŭr,		vĕrĕātŭr,

PLUR. vĕrēmŭr	PLUR. vĕrĕāmŭr
vĕrēmĭnĭ	verĕāmĭnĭ
vĕrentŭr.	vĕrĕantŭr.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Lŏquor, *I speak.*	Lŏquar, *that I may speak.*
SING. lŏquŏr	SING. lŏquăr
lŏquĕrĭs *or* -rĕ	lŏquārĕ *or* -rĭs
lŏquĭtŭr,	lŏquātŭr,
PLUR. lŏquĭmŭr	PLUR. lŏquāmŭr
lŏquĭmĭnĭ	lŏquāmĭnĭ
lŏquuntŭr.	lŏquantŭr.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Blandĭor, *I flatter.*	Blandĭar, *that I may flatter.*
SING. blandĭŏr	SING. blandĭăr
blandīrĭs *or* -rĕ	blandīārĕ *or* -rĭs
blandītŭr,	blandīātŭr,
PLUR. blandīmŭr	PLUR. blandīāmŭr
blandīmĭnĭ	blandīāmĭnĭ
blandĭuntŭr.	blandĭantŭr.

Like *hortor* are inflected *arbitror*, I think; *comĭtor*, I escort; *dominor*, I rule; *fātur*, he speaks; *moror*, I delay, stay, &c. — Like *vereor* go *fatĕor*, I confess; *mereor*, I earn; *misereor*, I pity; *tueor*, I defend, &c. — Like *loquor* go *fungor*, I perform; *labor*, I slip (fall); *obliviscor*, I forget; *sĕquor*, I follow, &c. — Like *blandior* inflect *experior*, I experience; *mentior*, I lie; *largior*, I lavish; *partior*, I divide, &c.

Do you speak Latin?	Loquĕrĭsne Latīne?
Yes, sir, I do speak it.	Véro, dómine, lóquor.
No, sir, I am not able to speak it.	Nôn, dómine, lóqui nôn póssum.
Do ye speak it?	Loquiminine?
We do not speak it.	Nôn lóquimur.
Who speaks Latin?	Quis lóquitur Latíne?
The learned only speak it.	Dócti sóli loquúntur.
Do you flatter any one?	Blandirísne álicui.* / Númquid álicui blandíris?
I do not flatter any one.	Némini blándior.
Nor do I flatter any one.	Néque égo cuíquam blándior.
Do ye flatter?	Blandiminine?
We flatter every one.	Blandimur ómnibus.
Whom do you exhort?	Quém hortâris?
I exhort my friends.	Amícos méos hórtor.

* Verbs of flattering govern the Dative.

What do they exhort us to do?	Quid nôs fácĕre hortántur?
They exhort us to come to them.	Nôs hortántur, ut* ad ípsos veniámus.
Do ye exhort us?	Hortaminíne nôs?
We exhort you to send letters.	Vôs hortamur, ut lítteras dêtis
Are ye afraid of anything?	Númquid verémini?
We are afraid of nothing.	Níhil verêmur.
Are you afraid to speak?	Vĕrērísne lóqui?
I am not afraid to speak, but to write.	Nôn lóqui, sed scríbere véreor.
He is afraid that the enemy might kill him.	Verêtur, ne† hóstis éum interfíciat.
As far as.	*Usque ad, usque in* (with the acc.); *tĕnŭs* (prep. with abl. *or* gen.).
How far?	*Quô úsque? Quórsum úsque?*
As far as here.	Hucúsque (*adv*).
As far as there.	Éo úsque; úsque ísthinc.
Thus far, up to this point.	Hactĕnus (*adv.*)
As far as the city.	Úsque ad úrbem.
As far as the fields.	Úsque in ágros.
As far as Rome.	Úsque Rômam.
As far as the end of the road.	Úsque ad términum víae.
As far as (i. e. up to) the chest.	Péctŏre (*or gen.* péctŏris) ténus.

B. Obs. The preposition *tĕnus* is always put after its noun, which may stand either in the ablative or genitive.

To the bottom of the cask.	Úsque ad fúndum dólii. Fúndo ténus dólii.
To the bottom of the well.	Úsque ad ima pútei. Ímis ténus pútei.
The end (extremity, termination).	Finis, *m.* & *f.* (*generally*). Extrēmum, i, *n.* (*of time and space*). Terminus, i, *m.* (*of space only*).
The way, road.	Via, ae, *f.*
The bottom; ground.	Fundus, i, *m.*; ima, ōrum, *n. pl.*
The garret.	Tabŭlātum, i, *n.*
The cask.	Dŏlium, i, *n.*; *dim.* dŏlĭŏlum, i, *n.*
The barrel, hogshead.	Cūpa, ae, *f.*
The purse.	Marsūpium, i, *n.*; crūmēna,‡ ae, *f.*
How far do you wish to go?	Quô úsque vis íre?
I wish to go as far as the square, as the fields, as Rome.	Égo úsque ad cámpum (in ágros, Rômam) íre cúpio.
How far does the water go (i. e. extend)?	Quô úsque exténditur áqua?

* This might also be expressed by an Accusative and Infinitive, *nos ad se venire.*

† After verbs of fearing, *ne* = "lest," "that," and *ut*, "that not."

‡ The latter was commonly worn around the neck.

It goes to the bottom of the sea.	Exténditur úsque ad ĭma máris (ímis ténus máris).
Every day, daily.	Síngŭlis diēbus, quŏtīdĭe, nullo non dĭe.
Every morning.	Quŏtīdĭe māne, quot diēbus māne.
Every evening.	Quŏtīdĭe vespĕri. / Nullo non vespere.
At what o'clock?	*Quŏtā hōrā? Quā hōrā?*
At what time?	*Quŏ témpŏre?*
At one o'clock.	Hórā prímā.*
At twelve o'clock.	Hórā duodécĭmā.
At half past one.	Médĭā hórā post prímam.
At a quarter past three.	Quadránte hórae post tértiam.
At a quarter before four.	Dodránte hórae post quartám.
At noon.	Meridie, témpore meridiáno.
At midnight.	Médĭā nócte.
At, i. e. *about, towards.*	*Circĭter, sub* (*c.* Acc. & Abl.).
About six o'clock.	Circĭter hórā séxtā. / Sub hôram séxtam.
About noon.	Circĭter merídie (meridiem). / Sub meridiem.
About a quarter before five.	Quadránte círciter hórae ante quíntam.
Towards (*or* about) ten.	Sub hôram décĭmam.
Noon, midday.	Meridies, ei, *m.*
Night.	Nox, *gen.* noctis, *f.*
The quarter.	Quadrans, tis, *m.*; pars (-tis, *f.*) quarta.
Three fourths.	Dodrans, tis, *m.*
Half.	Dimĭdium, i, *n.*
The half part of.	Dimĭdius, a, um
The middle part of.	Médĭus, a, um.
The lowest part of.	Infĭmus, *or* ĭmus, a, um.

C. Rule. — The adjectives *prīmus, mĕdius, extrēmus, ultĭmus, infĭmus, ĭmus, summus, relĭquus,* and *cetĕrus,* frequently signify *the first part, the middle part,* &c. of the object denoted by the noun with which they are connected.† As,

Médĭa nóx (= *médium* or *média pars nóctis*).	*The middle of the night.*

* Among the Romans the first hour was from six to seven, A. M. In these exercises, however, the adjectives *prima, secunda,* &c. refer to the modern division of the day.

† But when the noun with which these adjectives are connected is compared with other objects of the same kind, they retain their original sense of *the first, middle, last,* &c.; as, *infimo loco,* of the lowest rank.

In prímo límine vítae.	*At the very threshold of life.*
Extréino béllo Peloponnésio.	*During the latter part of the Peloponnesian war.*
Alexándrĭa reliquáque Aegýptus.	*Alexandria and the rest of Egypt.*
To go out (of any place), walk out.	Exĕo, īre, ĭi (īvi), ĭtum. / Egredĭor, di, egressus sum (*dep.*). (EX *or* AB ALIQUO LOCO).
To go out, walk out (in public).	Prōdĕo, īre, ĭi, ĭtum (IN PUBLICUM; EX LOCO).
To remain, stay.	Mănĕo, ēre, nsi, nsum.* / Mŏror, āri, ātus sum (*dep.*). (ALIQUO LOCO).
At present, now.	Nunc, hōc tempŏre, in praesentiā.
Here (in this place).	Hic (*adv.*), hōc lŏco.
There (in that place).	Ĭbi, illic, isthic (*adv.*).
To remain here.	Hic mănēre.
To remain there.	Ibi (illic, istic) permanēre.
To remain *or* stay at home.	Dŏmi manēre (morāri *or* se tenēre).
To be present (*to be here*).	*Adsum, esse, fŭi, futurus.* / *Adsto, āre, stĭti, ——.*
To be absent (*away*).	*Absum, esse, fŭi, futurus.*
Who is here (present)?	Quis ádest?
The young men are here.	Adolescéntes ádsunt.
Is my son here?	Adéstne fílĭus méus?
No, he is absent.	Ímmo véro ábest.
When will you go out?	Quándo vis prodíre in públicum?
I wish to go out now.	Prodíre in públicum nunc vólo.
Is any one going out of the house?	Exítne (egredítúrne) áliquis (ex) dómo?
No one is going out.	Némo éxit (egrédĭtur).
Are you going to your brother?	Ísne tû ad frâtrem?
I am going to him.	Éo (ad éum).
Do your children remain at home?	Manéntne líberi túi dómi?
They do remain at home.	Mánent (dómi).
They do not remain at home.	Nôn mánent (dómi).
Do you wish to take me to my father?	Cupísne me ad pátrem dúcĕre?
I do wish to take you to him.	Cúpĭo te ad éum dúcere.
Are you willing to give me a knife?	Vísne míhi cúltrum dáre?
I am willing to give you one.	Vólo tíbi ûnum dáre.
Am I going to him?	Egóne ad éum éo?
Thou art going not to him, but to me.	Tû nôn ís ad éum, séd ad mê.

* So also the compounds *permanēre*, to remain for a given length of time, and *demorāri*, to abide, tarry in a place.

Have your friends my books?	Núm amíci túi líbros méos hábent?
They have them not.	(Éos) nôn hábent.
Or have they time to write?	An est ûs spatium ad scribéndum?
They have.	Est.
When do you go out in the morning?	Quándo pródis in públicum matútino témpore?
I go out every morning about eight o'clock.	Pródĕo in públicum quotídie mâne hórā círciter octávā.

Exercise 62.

Do they speak Latin? — They cannot speak (it). — Do we speak (it)? — We do not speak (it). — Whom do ye flatter? — We flatter no one. — Do they exhort any one? — They exhort their friends. — Do they exhort you to come to them? — They do not exhort me to come to them, but to send them letters. — Art thou afraid of anything? — I am afraid of nothing. — Are they afraid of being killed (*ne interficiantur*)? — They are not afraid. — How far do you wish to go? — I wish to go as far as the end of the forest. — How far does your brother wish to go? — He wishes to go as far as the end of that road. — How far does the wine go? — It goes to the bottom of the cask. — How far does the water go? — It goes to the bottom of the well. — Whither art thou going? — I am going to the market. — Whither are we going? — We are going into the country. — Are you going as far as the square? — I am going as far as the fountain. — When does your cook go to the market? — He goes there every morning. — Can you speak to the nobleman? — I can speak to him every day. — Can I see your father? — You can see him every evening. — At what o'clock can I see him? — You can see him every evening at eight o'clock. — Will you come to me to-day? — I cannot come to you to-day, but to-morrow. — At what o'clock will you come to-morrow? — I will come at half past eight. — Can you not come at a quarter past eight? — I cannot. — At what o'clock does your son go to the captain? — He goes to him at a quarter before one. — At what o'clock is your friend at home? — At midnight.

Exercise 63.

Have you a mind to go out? — I have no mind to go out. — When will you go out? — I will go out at half past three. — Does your father wish to go out? — He does not wish to go out; he wishes to remain at home. — Are you willing to remain here, my dear friend (*amice mi carissime*, voc.)? — I cannot remain here; I must go to the warehouse. — Must you go to your brother? — I must go to him. — At what o'clock must you write your letters? — I must write them at midnight. — Do you go to your neighbor in the evening or in the morning? — I go to him (both) in the evening and in the morning. — Where are you going to now? — I am going to the play. — Where are you going to to-night? — I am going nowhither; I must remain at home in order to write letters. — Are your brothers at home? —

They are not there. — Where are they? — They are in the country. — Where are your friends going to? — They are going home. — Has your tailor as many children as your shoemaker? — He has quite as many of them. — Have the sons of your shoemaker as many boots as their father? — They have more than he. — Have the children of our hatter as much bread as wine? — They have more of the one than of the other. — Has our carpenter one more son? — He has several more. — Are the Italians thirsty? — They are thirsty and hungry. — Have they anything to do? — They have nothing to do. — Are the children of the Irish hungry or thirsty? — They are neither hungry nor thirsty, but fatigued.

EXERCISE 64.

Have you time to go out? — I have no time to go out. — What have you to do at home? — I must write letters to my friends. — Must you sweep your room? — I must sweep it. — Are you obliged to lend your brothers money? — I am obliged to lend them some. — Must you go into the garden? — I must go thither. — At what o'clock must you go thither? — I must go thither at a quarter past twelve. — Are you obliged to go to my father at eleven o'clock at night (*noctis*)? — I am obliged to go to him at midnight. — Where are the brothers of our bailiff? — They are in the great forest in order to cut great trees. — Have they money to buy bread and wine? — They have some. — Does it behoove the children of the French to go to the children of the English? — It does behoove them. — Will you send for some wine and glasses? — Is it lawful (*licetne*) for the Turk to remain with the Russian? — It is lawful for him to remain with him. — It is not wrong (*non est nefas*) for him to remain there. — Are you willing to give me some money, so that I may go for some bread? — I am willing to give you some, to go for some bread and beer. — Do your children walk out every day? — They do walk out every day at eleven o'clock. — When do you walk out? — I walk out every morning. — At what hour does your brother walk out? — He walks out at nine. — How far does he desire to go? — He desires to go as far as Rome. — How far does he dare (*audeo*) to go into the water? — He dares to go (in) up to his chest.

Lesson XXXVI. — PENSUM TRICESIMUM SEXTUM.

OF APPOSITION.

A. RULE. — A noun added to another noun for the sake of explanation is put in the same case, and, if its form admits of it, in the same gender and number. E. g.

Taûrus môns.	*Mount Taurus.*
Tigránes, réx Arménius.	*Tigranes, the king of Armenia.*
Regina pecúnĭa.	*Queen money.*
Philosóphĭa, invéntrix lêgum, magístra mórum et disciplínae.	*Philosophy, the inventrix of laws, the mistress of morals and discipline.*
Athénae ómnĭum doctrinârum inventrices.	*Athens, the inventrix of all the sciences.*

Remarks.

1. The noun thus added to another, for the sake of characterizing or describing, is said to be in apposition with it. The explanatory noun is called the *appositum*, and is commonly placed last.*

2. Apposition may take place in the oblique cases as well as in the nominative. E. g. *Apud Herŏdŏtum, patrem histŏrĭae*, In Herodotus, the father of history. *Nĕro Senĕcae, jam tunc senatōri, in disciplīnam tradĭtus est*, Nero was put under the tuition of Seneca, then already senator. *Quid enim dicam de thesauro omnĭum, memŏrĭā?* What shall I say in regard to memory, the treasure-house of all things?

3. A pronoun, either expressed or implied in the verb, may stand in place of the first noun; as, *Nōs cōnsŭles dēsŭmus*, We consuls are remiss. *Post me quaestōrem*, After my being quæstor. *Hoc tibi juventus Romāna indīcīmus bellum* (sc. *nos*), We, the young men of Rome, declare this war against you. *Philosŏphĭae multum adolescens tempŏris tribŭi* (sc. *ego*), In my youth I devoted much time to the study of philosophy.

4. The *appositum* is often of a different gender or number; as, *Tragoedĭa Thyestes*, The tragedy Thyestes. *Delĭcĭae meae, Dicaearchus*, Dicæarchus, my favorite authority. *Aborīgĭnes, gĕnus homĭnum agreste*, The aborigines, an uncouth race of men.

5. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is commonly in the plural; as, *Cupīdo atque īra, pessĭmi consultatōres*, Desire and passion, the worst of advisers. *Ennius ferēbat duo, quae maxĭma putantur onĕra, paupertātem et senectūtem*, Ennius bore two burdens, which are deemed the greatest, poverty and old age.

6. Two or more Roman prænomina (of brothers, &c.) are followed by the common family name in the plural; as, *Cn. et P. Scipiōnes*, Cneius and Publius Scipio. *Tiberĭo Drusōque Nerōnibus*, To Tiberius and Drusus Nero.

7. The appositum sometimes agrees with a genitive implied in a possessive pronoun; as, *Studĭum tuum, adolescentis, perspexi*, I have witnessed your zeal as a young man. *Tuum, hominis simplĭcis, pectus vidīmus*, We have seen the heart of you, simple man.

8. A noun denoting a whole, instead of being in the genitive, is sometimes put in apposition with its partitive. E. g. *Mīlites* (= *mīlĭ-*

* But sometimes emphatically first, as in the last example of Rem. 2.

tum), *pars victoriae fiduciā, pars ignominiae dolōre ad omnem licentiam processĕrant*, The soldiers, some from the confidence of the victory and others from the pain of the disgrace, had plunged themselves into excesses of every kind. *Facĕrent, quod se dignum quisque ducĕrent*, They might do what every one deemed worthy of himself.

9. Adjectives used substantively, especially those of the neuter gender, may likewise stand in apposition; as, *Propinquum nostrum, Crassum, illum divĭtem, laudandum pu'o*, Our relative, Crassus, the rich (man), ought in my opinion to be praised. *Batāvi machĭnas etiam, insolĭtum sibi, ausi*, The Batavi even dared (to employ) the war-engine, a thing to which they were unaccustomed.

10. The appositum may have reference to an entire sentence, and *vice versa;* e. g. *Postrēmo dēsĕrunt tribūnal, mānus intentantes, causam discordiae et initium armōrum*, At last they desert the tribunal, stretching out their hands, the cause of discord and the commencement of hostilities. *Ūnum certāmen erat relictum, sententia Vulcātii*, There was one subject of dispute left, namely, the opinion of Vulcatius.

11. The genitive is sometimes put instead of the appositum; as, *Arbor fici*, The fig-tree. *Oppĭdum Antiŏchiae*, The city of Antioch. *Amnis Erĭdāni*, The river Eridanus. *Nōmen Mercŭrii*, The name (of) Mercury. But this is not so common as *flūmen Rhēnus, terra Gallia, mons Avenna, oppĭdum Genābum*, &c.

12. The ablatives *urbe, oppĭdo*, &c. are sometimes found in apposition with the name of a town in the genitive; as, *Corinthi, Achaiae urbe*, At Corinth, a city of Achaia.

13. After expressions like *est* (*dātur, indĭtur, impōnitur*) *mihi nōmen*, "I am called," "my name is," the proper name is sometimes by attraction put in apposition with the dative of the pronoun (*mihi*, &c.), rather than with *nomen* or *cognomen;* as, *Scipio, cui postĕa Africāno cognōmen ex virtūte fŭit*, Scipio, who afterwards was surnamed Africanus from his valor. *Tibi nōmen insāno posuēre*, They gave you the name of an insane man. But also *Fonti nōmen Arethūsa est*, The fountain's name is Arethusa, &c.

14. The appositum is sometimes introduced by *ut, vĕlŭt, quāsi, tanquam* (= "as," "as if," "like"), *quamvis*, or *ceu;* e. g. *Aegyptii cānem et fēlem ut dĕos cŏlunt*, The Egyptians worship the dog and cat as divinities. *Herŏdŏtus quāsi sedātus amnis flŭit*, Herodotus flows like a gentle stream. *Filium suum, quamvis victōrem, occīdit*, He killed his own son, although victorious.*

15. The appositum may be modified by an adverb; as, *C. Flamĭnius, consul itĕrum*, C. Flaminius a second time consul. *Popŭlum lāte rēgem*, A people ruling (lit. *king*) far and wide.

---

* *Pro victis*, as conquered; *legatōrum numĕro*, as legates; *praedae nomine*, as booty, — occur in the same construction. So also *pro consŭle;* as, (*Ego*) *pro consŭle Athēnas veneram*, I had come as proconsul to Athens.

To sell.	*Vendo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum.* *Divendo*, &c. (in small quantities). (ALICUI ALIQUID).
To say, affirm.	*Dico, ĕre, xi, ctum.* *Aio; inquam* (defective).

B. Obs. *Aio* (*ājo*), I say, affirm, and *dīco*, I say, are opposed to *nego*, I deny. *Aio* and *inquam* are defective verbs, and are chiefly used in citing the language of another. They are thus inflected in the present: —

PRES. IND. āio, ăis, ăit; ——, ——, āiunt.
PRES. SUBJ. ——, āias, āiat; ——, ——, āiant.
PRES. IND. inquam, inquo, inquĭs, inquĭt; inquĭmus, inquĭtis, inquĭunt.
PRES. SUBJ. ——, ——, inquĭat; ——, ——. ——.

What do you say (think)?	Quid áis?
Do you say so? Is it possible?	Ain' (= ăísne)*? Aín' tû?
What do they say?	Quid áiunt?
They say that the city is occupied by the enemy.	Áiunt (dícunt), úrbem ab hóstibus tenéri.
I am delighted with Ennius, says one; and I with Pecuvius, says another.	Énnio deléctor, *áit*† quíspiam .... Pecúvio, *inquit* álius.
To tell, order, direct.	*Jubēre* (with acc. and infin.). *Mando, āre, āvi, ātum.* (ALICUI ALIQUID *or* UT).
Will you tell the servant to make the fire?	Vín' jubêre fámŭlum accéndĕre ígnem?
I will tell him to do it.	Jubêre éum vólo fácĕre hoc. Vólo éi mandâre, ut hoc faciat.
Will you tell the servant to buy a broom?	Vín' jubêre fámŭlum scópas émĕre? Vín' mandâre fámŭlo, ut scópas émat?
I will order him to buy one.	Vólo éi mandâre, ut únas émat.
What do you desire to sell me?	Quid míhi véndere cúpis?
I wish to sell you a horse.	Cúpio tíbi véndere équum.
The word.	Vox, vōcis, *f.*; vocabŭlum, i, *n.*; verbum‡ i, *n.*
The favor.	Officium, i, *n.*; grātum.
The pleasure.	Voluptas, ātis, *f.*; oblectātio, ōnis, *f.*

* In familiar discourse the enclitic *ne* often loses its final *e* by Apocope. If the letter *s* precedes, this is likewise dropped, and the vowel of the syllable, if long, is shortened; as, *jussin'*, *adeōn'*, *egon'*, *vin* (= *visne*), *jubēn* (= *jubēsne*), *satin'* (= *satisne*), *vidēn'* (= *vidēsne*).

† So also with *ut;* as *ut ait*, *ut aiunt*, as he says, &c.; *ut Cicero ait, dicit, docet.*

‡ *Vox* is a word as spoken and heard; *vocabulum*, an isolated word or term; *verbum* is any part of speech, especially in connected discourse.

To give one pleasure.	Voluptātem afferre (ALICUI). Grātum * esse (ALICUI).
To do one a favor.	Officium praestāre alicui. Grātum facĕre alicui. (ALIQUA RE).
Will you do me a favor?	Visne mihi grâtum fácere?
What one? In what respect?	Quâ rĕ?
This gives me great pleasure.	Hóc est mihi gratíssimum.
To become acquainted with, to learn to know.	Nosco, ĕre, nōvi, nōtum. Cognosco, ĕre, nōvi, nĭtum. (ALIQUEM, ALIQUID).
To know, to be acquainted with any one or anything.	Nōsse (= nōvisse) aliquem *or* aliquid.
I know, thou knowest, he knows.	Nōvi, nōvisti (nōsti), nōvit.
We know, ye know, they know.	Nōvĭmus, nōvistis, nōvērunt (nōrunt).
Do you know this man?	Novistine hunc hóminem?
I do not know him.	Éum non nóvi. Nôn est mihi nôtus.
Do you wish to become acquainted with him?	Vín' éum nóscere (cognóscere)?
Yes, I desire to become acquainted with him.	Cúpio véro éum nóscere (cognóscere).
To want, need.	*Ŏpus* (n. indecl.) *est mihi* (RES, RE; ALIQUIS, ALIQUO).
To be in want of.	*Eyĕo alĭquā rē.* *Indĭgeo alicujus, alĭquā re.* (Cf. page 113, *Obs. II*)
Do you want (need) this hat?	Éstne tibi ópus hôc píleo (hícce píleus)?

C. Obs. The phrase *opus est*, "there is need," is followed either by the nominative or the ablative of the person or object needed.†

I do want (need) it. We are in want of it.	Est mihi (éo) ópus. Éjus indígeo.
We want (need) a teacher. We are in want of a teacher.	Ópus est nóbis praecéptor (praeceptôre). Indigêmus praeceptôris.
Do you want as much coffee as sugar?	Éstne tibi ópus tántum coffĕae, quántum sáccheri?

* This is the neuter of *gratus*, agreeable, grateful. In phrases like these, the comparative and superlative, *gratius, gratissimum* (more agreeable, most agreeable), are often used.

† In this rule is usually included *ūsus est*, which is commonly followed by the ablative, but sometimes by the genitive or accusative; as, *Si quid ūsus sit*, If anything is wanting. *Spéculo mihi usus est*, I want a looking-glass. *Usus est hóminem astutum.*

I want more of the latter than of the former.	Ópus est mihi plûs* hújus quam illíus.
Do you want oxen (cattle)?	Núm vóbis ópus sunt bóves (ópus est bŏbus)?
We do not (want any).	Nôn sunt.
We do need some (a few).	Ópus sunt nóbis nonnúlli (est nonnullis).
Do you want (need) this money?	Éstne tibi opus hâc pecúniā? / Egêsne hâc pecúniā?
I do want (am in want of) it.	Est. Égĕo.
I do not want it.	Non est mihi (éā) ópus. / Éjus nôn indígeo.
Do you want (any) money?	Éstne tibi ópus pecúnia? / Egêsne pecúniā.
I do want some (a little).	Est míhi ópus aliquántulum. / Égeo véro aliquántulā.
I do not want any.	Nôn est míhi ópus úlla. / Núllā égeo.
Do you want (are you in want of) anything?	Núm quid est tíbi ópus? / Núm áliquā rē índiges?
I do not want anything.	Ópus est míhi níhil quídquam.† / Nihil índigeo.
Nor do I want anything.	Néque míhi quídquam ópus est.
What do you want?	Quíd (quâ rē) est tibi ópus?
Whom are you in want of?	Cujúsnam índiges?
I am in want of you, of him, of them.	Indígeo túi, éjus, illôrum.
Is he in want of me?	Meîne índiget?
He is not in want of you.	Túi nôn índiget.
Is he in want of his friends?	Indigétne amicōrum suōrum?
He is in want of them.	(Eôrum) índiget.
Do you want these books?	Éstne tíbi ópus his líbris? / Egêsne (egén') his líbris?
I do want them.	Sunt míhi ópus. / Égeo íis.
Late (adv.).	*Sērō, sērum.*
Too late.	*Sērĭus* (neut. comp.), *sēro.*‡
Is it late?	Éstne séro? Sērúmne est?
Is it late in the day, in the night?	Éstne sêrum dĭei, nóctis?
It is late.	Est sêrum (séro).
It is too late.	Séro (sérius) est.
What time is it?	Quóta hôra est?

* Neuter adjectives or pronouns, such as *tantum, quantum, quid, hoc, illud*, &c. are always in the nominative after *opus*. Both *opus* and *usus* are sometimes (though rarely) followed by the genitive or accusative; as, *Temporis, cibum opus* (*usus*) *est*, There is need of time, food.

† "Nothing whatever," "nothing at all."

‡ The adverbial ablative *sēro* is frequently put for the comparative *serius*, too late.

It is three o'clock.	Hôra est tértia.
It is twelve o'clock.	Duodécima est hôra.
It is about noon.	Sub (circiter) meridiem est.
It is midnight.	Média nox est.
It is half past one.	Hôra prima et dimídia est.
It is a quarter past two.	Quádrans hórae post secúndam est.
It wants a quarter to three.	Dódrans hórae post secúndam est.
Have you anything to sell?	Habêsne áliquid, quód véndas (ad vendéndum)?
I have nothing to sell.	Níhil hábeo, quód véndam.
I have these things to sell.	Haèc hábeo, quaê véndam.

Exercise 65.

Will you do me a favor? — Yes, sir; what one? — Will you tell your brother to sell me his horse? — I will tell him to sell it you. — Will you tell my servants to sweep my large rooms? — I will tell them to sweep them. — Will you tell your son to come to my father? — I will tell him to come to him. — Do you wish to tell me anything? (Have you anything to tell me?) — I have nothing to tell you (*Non habeo quod tibi dicam*). — Have you anything to say to my father? — I have a word to say to him. — Do your brothers wish to sell their carriage? — They do not wish to sell it. — John (*Joannes*)! are you here? — Yes, sir, I am here. — Wilt thou go to my hatter to tell him to mend my hat? — I will go to him. — Wilt thou go to the tailor to tell him to mend my coats? — I will go to him. — Art thou willing to go the market? — I am willing to go thither. — What has the merchant to sell? — He has beautiful leather gloves, combs, and good cloth to sell. — Has he any shirts to sell? — He has some to sell. — Does he wish to sell me his horses? — He wishes to sell them to you. — Who can read the tragedy of Thyestes? — I am unable to read it, but my brother desires to read it. — Who is reading my book? — Your scholar, my brother, is reading it. — Who wishes to sell me a knife? — His friend, the baker, wishes to sell you one. — Are you in want of any one? — Yes; I am in want of your father, the merchant. — Whom do they praise? — They praise our enemy, the painter.

Exercise 66.

What are you in want of? — I am in want of a good hat. — Are you in want of this knife? — I am in want of it. — Do you want money? — I want some. — Does your brother want pepper? — He does not want any. — Does he want some boots? — He does not want any. — What does my brother want? — He wants nothing. — Who wants some sugar? — Nobody wants any. — Does anybody want money? — Nobody wants any. — Does your father want anything? — He wants nothing. — What do I want? — You want nothing. — Art thou in want of my book? — I am in want of it. — Is thy father in want of it? — He is not in want of it. — Does your friend want this stick? — He wants it. — Does he want these or those corks? — He wants neither these nor those. — Are you in want of

me? — I am in want of thee. — When do you want me? — At present. — What have you (= do you wish) to say to me? — I desire to tell you something new (*novum*). — What do you want (*Quid tibi vis*)? — I wish to speak with you. — Is your son in want of us? — He is in want of you and your brothers. — Are you in want of my servants? — I am in want of them. — Does any one want my brother? — No one wants him.

Exercise 67.

Is it late? — It is not late. — What o'clock is it? — It is a quarter past twelve. — At what o'clock does your father wish to go out? — He wishes to go out at a quarter to nine. — Will he sell this or that horse? — He will sell neither this nor that. — Does he wish to buy this or that coat? — He wishes to buy both. — Has he one horse more to sell? — He has one more, but he does not wish to sell it. — Has he one carriage more to sell? — He has not one more carriage to sell; but he has a few more oxen to sell. — When will he sell them? — He will sell them to-day. — Will he sell them in the morning or in the evening? — He will sell them this evening. — At what o'clock? — At half past five. — Can you go to the baker? — I cannot go to him; it is late. — How late is it? — It is midnight. — Do you wish to see that man? — I wish to see him, in order to know him. — Does your father wish to see my brothers? — He wishes to see them, in order to know them. — Does he wish to see my horse? — He wishes to see it. — At what o'clock does he wish to see it? — He wishes to see it at six o'clock. — Where does he wish to see it? — He wishes to see it in the great square. — Has the German much corn to sell? — He has but little to sell. — What knives has the merchant to sell? — He has good knives to sell. — How many more knives has he? — He has six more. — Has the Irishman much more wine? — He has not much more. — Hast thou wine enough to drink? — I have not much, but enough. — Art thou able to drink much wine? — I am able to drink much. — Canst thou drink some every day? — I can drink some every morning and every evening. — Can thy brother drink as much as thou? — He can drink more than I.

Lesson XXXVII. — PENSUM TRICESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

A. Rule. — An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case. E. g.

Amicus certus.	*A sure friend.*
Sprêta glória.	*Disdained glory.*

Gramen víridе.	*The green grass.*
Térrae sitiéntis.	*Of the thirsty earth.*
Móntes álti.	*High mountains.*
Colúmnas nítidas.	*Shining columns.*
Malórum impendéntium.	*Of impending evils.*
Diébus praetéritis.	*In days past.*

REMARKS.

1. All adjectives may generally be employed in two distinct relations. *a*) They are either directly connected with the substantive as its attributes; as, *vir justus, dies praeteritae;* or, *b*) they are linked to it by the copula *sum*, and constitute the predicate; as, *vir est justus, dies praeteritae sunt.* The former of these relations is called the *attributive* and the latter the *predicative.*

2. Adjectives* in the predicative relation have in general the same agreement as those in the attributive. (Cf. Less. XXXIV. *B.*)

3. Personal pronouns may have adjectives in agreement with them, like nouns. The gender of the adjective is determined by that of the substantive represented. E. g. *Ego solus*, or fem. *Ego sola*, I alone. *Tu* carus *omnibus* expectatusque *venies*, You will be welcomed by all. *Illis absentibus*, They being absent. *Dicitur esse liběra*, She is said to be free. *Miseri* (fem. *miserae*) *sumus*, We are wretched.

4. Words not properly substantives, but employed as such (e. g. adverbs, infinitives, or entire clauses), may take an adjective of the neuter gender. Vide examples Less. XXXII. *A.* Rem. 3.

5. The place of the adjective is sometimes supplied by a noun or adverb; as, *Victor exercitus*, A victorious army. *Contemptor animus*, A contemptuous mind. *Minime largitor*, No profuse spender. *Praeclare facta*, Distinguished deeds.

6. The Romans sometimes employ an adjective in agreement with the subject of a sentence, where the English idiom requires an adverb in the predicate. E. g. *Ego primus hanc orationem legi*, I have read this oration first (= am the first that read it). *Hannibal* princeps *in proelium ibat*, ultimus *conserto proelio excedebat*, Hannibal always was the first that entered into battle and the last that left it. *Nullus dubito* (= *non dubito*), I do not doubt. So chiefly *domesticus* (= *domi*), *matutinus* (= *mane*), *nocturnus* (= *noctu*), *multus* (= *multum*), *prior, primus, propior, proximus, solus, totus, ultimus, unus*, &c., with many of which the adjective is regularly put instead of the corresponding adverb.

7. When two or more adjectives, regarded as distinct, precede their noun, they are commonly connected by conjunctions; but when they come after it, the conjunction is frequently omitted. E. g. *Multi fortissimi atque optimi viri*, Many brave and excellent men. *Unus et perangustus aditus*, One way of approach, and a narrow one. *Oratio*

* In these remarks the term "adjective" includes adjective pronouns and participles.

compŏsĭta, ornāta, copiōsa, An oration well arranged, elegant, and copious.

8. But when one of the adjectives is so closely allied to the noun as to form one complex notion with it, the remaining adjectives are added without a conjunction. E. g. *Festi dies anniversārii,* Anniversary festivals. *Privāta nāvis onerāria maxĭma,* A private carrying-ship of the largest size. *Externos multos claros viros nominārem,* I might name many foreigners of distinction.

9. A plural noun has sometimes two adjectives in the singular. E. g. *Mare* supĕrum *atque* infĕrum, The upper and the lower seas (parts of the Mediterranean).

10. An adjective belonging to two or more nouns is generally put in the plural; as, *Veneno* absumpti *sunt Hannibal et Philopoemen,* Hannibal and Philopœmen were killed by poison. *Liber et Libera Cerere nāti,* Bacchus and Libera born of Ceres. *Naturā* inimica *inter se sunt civitas et rex,* The king and state are naturally the enemies of each other. *Injustitiam et intemperantiam dicimus esse fugienda,* We say that injustice and intemperance must be shunned. (On the gender of these adjectives, see Less. XXII. *B.* Compare also Less. XXXIV. *B.* 4.)

11. A collective noun may have an adjective in the plural, which commonly assumes the gender of the individuals denoted by the noun. E. g. *Magna pars vulnerati aut occīsi,* A large number killed or wounded. *Cetera multitudo sorte decimus quisque ad supplicium lecti sunt,* Of the remaining multitude every tenth man was doomed to punishment by lot.

12. Adjectives and pronouns are frequently put partitively in the neuter gender and followed by the genitive of their noun, instead of agreeing with it in case; as, *Multum operae,* Much attention (study). *Minus viae,* Less of the journey. *Dimidium pecuniae,* Half the money. *Hoc litterarum,* This letter. *Hoc solatii,* This consolation. *Ad id locorum,* To that time. *Quid causae est?** What is the reason? Also in the plural: *Subĭta belli,* The surprises of war. *Summa pectŏris,* The upper part of the chest. *Occulta templi,* The recesses of the temple. *Strata viarum saxea,* The stone pavement of the streets. (Compare Lessons XVIII. – XXIII.)

13. An adjective used partitively and followed by the genitive plural of the genus or entire number commonly assumes the gender of that genitive; as, *Animalium* alia *ratione expertia sunt,* alia *ratione utentia,* Of animals, some are destitute of reason and others enjoying it. *Multae istārum arbŏrum meā manū sunt sătae,* Many of these trees were planted by my hand.

14. When a partitive is followed by the genitive singular of a collective noun, it takes the gender of the individuals implied in it; as,

---

* But this can only be done in the Nom. and Acc. In the remaining cases the adjective *agrees* with the noun; as, *multā operā* (Abl.), *huic solatio, minore viā, harum litterarum.* (Compare Lesson XXXVIII. *A.* 6.)

Primus Romāni generis, The first of the Roman nation. *Ceteri nostri ordĭnis*, The rest of our order. *Nec est quisquam gentis ullius*, Nor is there any one of any nation.

15. Possessive pronouns, being considered the representatives of personal pronouns in the genitive, sometimes take another pronoun, adjective, or participle in the genitive; as, *Nostra* ipsorum *amicitia*, Our own friendship. *In* unius *mea salute*, On my safety alone. *Nōmen meum* absentis, My name while absent. *Suo* solius *perīculo*, At his own peril. *Vestrae* paucorum *laudes*, The praises of you few.

16. In exclamations and addresses the adjective is sometimes in the vocative instead of the nominative, and *vice versa*; as, *Quo* moriture *ruis?* Where are you rushing to, dying man? *Rufe, mihi frustra credĭte amice!* O Rufus! in vain believed my friend. *Projice tela manu, sanguis meus!* Cast away your weapons, my son! *Novus anne, veni!* Come, new year, come!

17. Adjectives of the neuter gender, singular and plural, are sometimes used as adverbs. E. g. *Id* multum *faciebam*, I practised that a good deal. *Qui* multa *deos venerāti sunt*, Who besought the gods much and earnestly. *Inde Romam*, recens *condĭtam, commigravit*, He thence emigrated to Rome, then recently founded. *Dormivit* altum, He slept profoundly.

The pain, ache.	*Dŏlor, ōris*, m., or pl. *dolōres.*
The violent pain.	*Cruciātus, ūs*, m.
The evil, misfortune,	Mălum, i, *n.*
Bad, wicked.	Mălus, prāvus, a, um; nēquam (*indecl.*).
Bad, sad (*of circumstances*).	Mălus, a, um; tristis, e; asper, ĕra, ĕrum.
Bad, sick, sore.	Infirmus, invalĭdus, a, um; aegrotans, tis; ulcerōsus, a, um.
The tooth.	Dens, tis, *m.*
The ear.	Auris, is, *f.*
The neck.	Collum, i, *n.*; cervix, īcis, *f.*
The throat (*internally*).	Fauces, ĭum, *f. pl.*
The elbow.	Cubĭtum, i, *n.*
The back.	Dorsum, i, *n.*
The knee.	Gĕnu, ūs, *n.*
The headache.	Dŏlor (dolōres) capĭtis.
The toothache.	Dŏlor dentĭum.
The earache.	Dŏlor aurĭum.
The sore throat.	Dŏlor (dolōres) fauclum; angĭna, ae, *f.*
A pain in one's back.	*Notalgĭa, ae, *f.*
Sore eyes.	Ocŭli invalĭdi *or* aegrotantes.
A sore finger.	Digĭtus ulcerōsus.
The sickness, disease.	Morbus, i, *m.*

To suffer pain from anything (anywhere).	*Dólet * míhi áliqua rês.* *Dolóribus labóro, āre, āvi,* &c.
To be affected with pain.	*Dolóre* or *dolóribus áffici.*
To be sick, infirm (in any respect).	*Aegrōto, āre, āvi, ātum.* *Mínus valĕo, ēre, ŭi,* ——. (ALIQUA RE).
Are you affected with any pain?	Afficĕrísne áliquo dolóre?
I am affected, sir.	Affĭcior, véro quídem, dómine.
Have you a sore finger?	Dolétne tíbi dígitus? Laborâsne dígito?
I have (a sore finger).	Dólet. Labóro.
Has your little boy a sore throat?	Laborátne puérculus túus faúcium dolóribus?
No; he has a sore eye.	Ímmo véro áltero óculo aegrôtat.
We have sore eyes (suffer from weak eyes).	Nôs oculôrum infirmitâte laborâmus.
He has a sore foot.	Áltero péde aegrôtat (mínus válet).
They have the toothache.	Dólent íis déntes. Déntium dolóribus afficiúntur.
Have you the headache?	Habêsne cápitis dolóres? Dolétne tíbi cáput? Laborâsne cápitis dolóribus?
I have it.	Hábeo. Dólet. Labóro.
Has he a pain in his back?	Notálgiā afficitur?
He has none.	Nôn afficitur.
To find.	*Invĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum.* *Reperĭo, īre, pĕri, pertum.*

B. Obs. Invenīre is to find without any special effort or design; *reperīre*, on the other hand, involves the idea of labor, of difficulty and obscurity.

Do you find what you are looking for?	Reperísne, quod quaêris?
I do find what I am looking for.	Repério, quod quaéro. Rem, quam quaéro, repério.
He does not find what he is looking for.	Nôn réperit, quod quaêrit.
Do we find what we are looking for?	Reperímusne quod quaérimus?
You do not find what you are looking for.	Nôn reperítis, quod quaérĭtis.
Have you what you want?	Habêsne quod tíbi ópus est?
I have not what I want.	Nôn hábeo, quod míhi ópus est.
I find what you are finding.	Quod ínvenis, id et ego invénio.
To learn.	*Dĭsco, ĕre, dĭdĭci, discĭtūrus* † (ALIQUID AB *or* DE ALIQUO).

* From *dŏlĕo, ēre, ŭi.*

† The verbs *discĕre* and *studĕre* have no supine, but of the former a participle in *urus* exists.

To study, to apply one's self to, to learn (anything).	Stŭdĕo, ēre, ŭi, —— (ALICUI REI). Opĕram dăre (ALICUI REI). Discĕre (ALIQUID).
To study letters, apply one's self to literature and the arts.	Operam dare litteris. Studēre optimis disciplīnis atque artibus.
To learn one's letters.	Primas litteras discĕre.
I learn to read, write, speak.	Disco légere, scríbere, lóqui.
To learn a language.	Línguam áliquam díscere (edíscere*).
To know a language.	Línguam scire; línguae sciens esse.
The language.	Lingua, ae, *f.*; sermo, ōnis, *m.*
Latin.	Latinus, a, um; *adv.* Latīne.
French.	Francogallicus, a, um; *adv.* Francogallĭce.
English.	Anglĭcus, a, um; *adv.* Anglĭce.
German.	Germanicus, a, um; *adv.* Germanice.
Are you learning Latin?	Discísne línguam Latínam?
I am learning it, sir.	Véro, dómine, disco.
How many languages does he know?	Quam multas scit linguas?
He knows all the languages.	Ómnes línguas scit. Linguârum ómnium sciens est.
Do you know Latin, Greek, English?	Scísne Latíne, Graéce, Anglice?
Are you learning to speak Latin?	Discísne lóqui Latíne?
I am learning to read, write, and speak Latin.	Égo Latíne légere, scríbere atque lóqui edísco.
Do they desire to learn English?	Cupiúntne díscĕre línguam Anglicam?
They do not desire it.	Nôn cúpiunt.
Who is studying letters?	Quis óperam dat lítteris?
The young men are studying the liberal arts and sciences.	Adolescéntŭli óptimis disciplínis atque ártibus óperam dant.
What are you doing?	Quid ágis?
I am studying the Latin language and literature.	Litteris Latínis stúdeo (óperam dô).
Can the boy read German?	Potéstne (scítne) púer légere Germánice?
He cannot do it yet, but he is learning it.	Nóndum pótest, at díscit.

Exercise 68.

Where is your father? — He is at home. — Does he not go out? — He is not able to go out; he has the headache. — Hast thou the headache? — I have not the headache, but the earache. — What day of

---

* *Ediscere* is to learn thoroughly, to learn by heart.

the month is it to-day? — It is the twelfth to-day. — What day of the month is to-morrow? — To-morrow is the thirteenth. — What teeth have you? — I have good teeth. — What teeth has your brother? — He has bad teeth. — Has the Englishman the toothache? — He has not the toothache; he has a sore eye. — Has the Italian a sore eye? — He has not a sore eye, but a sore foot. — Have I a sore finger? — You have no sore finger, but a sore knee. — Will you cut me some bread? — I cannot cut you any; I have sore fingers. — Will anybody cut me some cheese? — Nobody will cut you any. — Are you looking for any one? — I am not looking for any one. — Has any one the earache? — No one has the earache. — What is the painter looking for? — He is not looking for anything. — Whom are you looking for? — I am looking for your son. — Who is looking for me? — No one is looking for you. — Dost thou find what thou art looking for? — I do find what I am looking for; but the captain does not find what he is looking for.

Exercise 69.

Who has a sore throat? — We have sore throats. — Has any one sore eyes? — The Germans have sore eyes. — Does the tailor make my coat? — He does not make it; he has a pain in his back. — Does the shoemaker make my shoes? — He is unable to make them; he has sore elbows. — Does the merchant bring us beautiful purses (*marsupia*)? — He cannot go out; he has sore feet. — Does the Spaniard find the umbrella which he is looking for? — He does find it. — Do the butchers find the sheep which they are looking for? — They do find them. — Does the tailor find his thimble? — He does not find it. — Dost thou find the paper which thou art looking for? — I do not find it. — Do we find what we are looking for? — We do not find what we are looking for. — What is the nobleman doing? — He does what you are doing. — What is he doing in his room? — He is reading. — How many languages does your brother know? — He knows only one. — Do they find what they are looking for? — They do not find (it). — Does our master suffer from weak eyes? — He does suffer (from them). — Are you troubled with a pain in your back? — I am not troubled.

Exercise 70.

Art thou reading? — I am not reading. — Do the sons of the nobleman study? — They do study. — What are they studying? — They are studying German. — Art thou studying English? — I have no time to study it. — Are the Dutch looking for this or that ship? — They are looking for both. — Is the servant looking for this or that broom? — He is neither looking for this nor that. — Who is learning German? — The sons of the captains and those of the noblemen are learning it. — When does your friend study French? — He studies it in the morning. — At what o'clock does he study it? — He studies it at ten o'clock. — Does he study it every day? — He studies it every morning and every evening. What are the children of the carpenter doing? — They are reading. — Are they reading German? — They

are reading French; but we are reading English. — What books does your son read? — He reads French books. — What book are you reading? — I am reading a German book. — Do you read as much as I? — I read more than you. — Does your father read the same book which I read? — He is not reading that which you read, but that which I read. — Does he read as much as I? — He reads less than you, but he learns more than you. — Do you lend me a book? — I do lend you one. — Do your friends lend you any books? — They do lend me some.

Lesson XXXVIII. — PENSUM DUODEQUADRAGESIMUM.

A. RULE. — Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles are often employed independently, especially in the plural, either with or without a noun understood. E. g.

Bóni, máli, dócti, dívites, paúperes; amántes.	*The good, the bad, the learned, the rich, the poor; lovers.*
Méi, túi, súi, nóstri, véstri.	*My, thy, his, our, your friends, men,* &c.
Bónum, málum, vêrum, jústum.	*The good, the bad, the true, the just.*
Bóna, mála, vêra, fálsa, acérba, indígna.	*Good, bad, true, false, bitter, unworthy things.*

REMARKS.

1. With plurals denoting persons *homines* is commonly supplied.* So with *omnes, pauci, plerique, nonnulli,* &c. But the possessives *mei, tui,* &c. have reference to *amici, milites* (men, soldiers), *cives* (citizens). With *immortales* the word *dii* is understood.

2. Adjectives of the singular number denoting persons usually have *vir* or *homo* expressed with them; as, *vir doctus, bonus, justus; homo pauper, dives, improbus,* &c. They sometimes, however, appear alone in all the cases. E. g. *Sapiens, dives, socius, nupta,* a wise man, a rich man, an ally, a married woman. *Quid interest inter doctum et rudem?* What is the difference between an educated and an ignorant man? *Quid minus libero dignum?* What can be more unworthy of a free man?

3. With adjectives denoting objects, various words are understood; as, *Dextra, sinistra* (sc. *manus*), the right hand, left hand. *Ferina, agnina, bubula, porcina* (sc. *caro*), Venison, lamb, beef, pork. *Calida,*

* And not unfrequently expressed, as in *Homines Romani,* Roman men. *Homines adolescentuli,* young men, &c.

frigida (sc. *aqua*), Warm, cold water. *Tertiāna, quartāna* (sc. *febris*), The tertian, quartan fever. *Decumāna* (sc. *pars*), The tenth part. *Primae* (sc. *partes*), The first part or rôle. *Hiberna, aestiva* (sc. *castra*), The winter, summer quarters. *In Tusculāno* (sc. *praedo*), At the country-seat Tusculanum. *Brevi* (sc. *tempore*), In a short time; and also *ex quo, ex eo, ex illo* (sc. *tempore*, which is frequently understood), &c., &c.

4. Of adjectives used substantively, those of the neuter gender are the most common. The singular denotes either an abstract quality or an individual act or object; as, *bonum, malum, vērum*, the good, bad, true (or something good, bad, true); *commune, dictum, factum*, something in common, something said, done (= a saying, deed). So the pronouns *hoc, illud, quid, aliquid*; and *quantum, tantum, multum*, &c.

5. The plural of neuter adjectives used substantively indicates a diversity of things of the same quality; as, *bona, mala, vera, falsa, multa, omnia, rēliqua*, good, bad, true, false, many, all, the remaining *things* (the rest, remainder). *Dicta, facta*, things said, done, i. e. words uttered, actions. So also *haec, illa, quae, aliqua*, these, those, which, some *things*.*

6. Neuter adjectives can thus be used substantively in the nominative and accusative only. In the remaining cases the feminine of the adjective with *res* is commonly employed, to prevent ambiguity. Thus *cujus rei, hac de re, alicui rei, ulla in re, bonarum rerum, omnibus in rebus*,† &c.

7. Adjectives used substantively may have other adjectives in agreement with them; as, *meus natalis* (sc. *dies*), My birthday. *Paternus inimīcus*, A paternal enemy. *Nova nupta*, A newly married woman. *Summum bonum*, The chief good. *Praeclārum responsum*, A famous reply, *Prāva facta*,‡ Depraved actions.

8. A number of words originally adjectives have acquired the rank of substantives; as, *juvenis, adolescens, amīcus, familiāris, comes, vicīnus, statuārius, artifex, index, particeps; summa* (a sum), *confluens* (junction of rivers); *Grammatica, Rhetorica, Statuāria* (sc. *ars*), &c.

9. Additional Examples of adjectives used as substantives are:— *Fortes creantur fortībus et bonis*, The brave are made for the brave and good. *Plerique* vana *mirantur*, The majority of men are captivated by vanity.§ *Erubescunt* pudīci *etiam* impudica *loqui*, The chaste‖ blush even to utter unchaste things. *Aiunt* multum *legendum*

---

* With many of these neuters the English words *thing, things* may be supplied. Sometimes, however, the sense requires other words, such as *place, part, respect, property*, &c.

† This use of *res* extends to all the cases, and the Romans often say *res ea, nulla res, rem aliquam, rem difficilem, res bonae, malae*, &c.

‡ Participles of the neuter gender sometimes take an adverb instead of an adjective; as, *bene, crudeliter facta, acute responsa, facete dictum*, &c.

§ The plural of these neuter adjectives is frequently rendered by the singular.

‖ In general propositions including both sexes, the adjective is always masculine; as here *fortes, plerique, pudici*, &c.

esse non multa, They say that we ought to read much, not many things. *Quis rem tam veterem* pro certo *affirmet?* Who can assert a thing so old as a certainty? *Idcirco abestis, ut* in tuto *sitis,* You are absent in order to be safe. *Amicōrum* omnia *sunt communia,* Friends have everything in common. *Ita comprobābis divina* praedicta, Thus you will confirm the divine prediction. *Nihil addo* de meo,* I add nothing of my own.

The Polish.	Polōnus, i, *m.*
The Roman.	Romānus, i, *m.*
The Greek.	Graecus, Grājus, i, *m.*
The Arab.	Arabs, is, *m.*
The Athenian.	Atheniensis, is, *m.*
The Syrian.	Syrus, Syrĭus, i, *m.*

B. The patrials or gentiles of the Latin language are either derived from the proper names of countries, or else they are themselves the roots for the formation of the latter.

1. The majority of patrials are primitives, from which the name of the country is formed by annexing *ia* to the root;† as, *Arabs — Arabia, Arcas — Arcadia, Gallus — Gallia, Ītălus — Italia, Thrax — Thracia.*

2. The patrials derived from names of countries are generally adjectives, with one of the terminations *ānus, as* (gen. *ātis*), *ensis* (*iensis*), *ĭnus* (*ēnus*), *ĭcus* (*ĭăcus, aicus*), and *ius.* E. g. *Roma — Romānus, Arpinum — Arpinas, Athenae — Atheniensis, Thebae — Thebaicus, Aegyptus — Aegyptiacus, Tarentum — Tarentīnus, Cyprus — Cyprius.*

3. From patrial adjectives in *us, a, um,* adverbs are formed, by changing that termination into *ē.* The following may serve as examples: —

	Adjective.	Adverb.
Spanish.	Hispaniensis, Hispanĭcus,	Hispanĭcē.
Italian.	Italĭcus,	Italĭcē.
Polish.	Polonĭcus,	Polonĭcē.
Russian.	Russĭcus,	Russĭcē.
Latin.	Latīnus,	Latīnē.
Greek.	Graecus,	Graecē.
Arabic.	Arabĭcus,	Arabĭcē.
Syriac.	Syrĭăcus,	Syrĭăcē.
Persian.	Persĭcus,	Persĭcē.
Egyptian.	Aegyptĭăcus,	Aegyptĭăcē.

* The neuter singular of all the possessives (*meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*) is thus employed to denote possession, like the English "mine," "my own," &c.

† The root of a noun is found in the genitive singular by separating the case-termination; as *Arabs,* gen. *Arab-is; Arcas,* gen. *Arcad-is; Gallus,* gen. *Gall-i; Thrax,* gen. *Thrac-is,* &c.

Sanscrit.	{ Sanscrĭtus, / Sanscriticus, }	Sanscrĭtē.
Turkish.	Turcĭcus,	Turcĭcē.

Are you a Roman?	Ésne tû Românus?
No, indeed, I am an American.	Mínime véro; Americânus sum.
Is he a shoemaker?	Sutórne est ílle?
No, he is a tailor.	Nôn véro; sártor est.
Are you mad?	Núm és insânus?
No, surely, no.	Nôn hércle véro.
Do you know Spanish?	Scísne Hispánice?
I do know it. I do not.	Scío. Haud scío.
The fool.	(Homo) stultus, fatŭus.
The mouth.	Ōs, *gen.* ōris, *n.*; *dim.* oscŭlum, i, *n.*
The memory.	Mĕmŏrĭa, ae, *f.*
A good, excellent, weak memory.	Mĕmŏrĭa tenax (-ācis), singulāris, infirma.
To have a good memory.	Vălēre* memoriā.
To have a bad memory.	Părum (minus) valēre memoriā.
To have an excellent memory.	Multum valēre memoriā.
Blue.	Caerŭlĕus, violācĕus, glaucus, a, um.
Black.	Ater, atra, atrum; nĭger, gra, grum.
To have, to be furnished or *endowed with anything.*	*Praedĭtum, instructum, ornātum esse* ALIQUA RE.
He has an excellent memory.	Memŏriā singulāri praéditus est. / Múltum válet memóriā.
She has blue eyes.	Óculis glaúcis ornâta est. / Caerúlea† est.
He has a small mouth (is a man of small mouth).	Ore párvŭlo instrúctus est. / Vir est ôris párvi.
Have you a good memory?	Valêsne memóriā? / Praeditúsne es bónā memóriā?
I have an excellent memory.	Múltum váleo memóriā. / Singulári memóriā instructus sum.
No, I have a bad (weak) memory.	Ímmo véro párum váleo memóriā. / Memóriae infírmae sum.
To play, sport.	*Lūdo, ĕre, ūsi, ūsum* (NEUT.).
To hear, listen.	*Audīre, auscultāre.*
Instead of, in place or *in lieu of* (*any one*).	*Lóco, in lócum* ALICUJUS. / *Vice, in vícem, vícem* REI *or* ALICUJUS. / *Pro*, with the Abl.

* From *vāleo, ēre, ŭi, —*, "I am sound, strong," with the ablative "with respect to."

† *Caeruleus*, used substantively, a blue-eyed man, and the fem. here a woman.

Instead *or* in place of my father.	Lóco pátris, in vícem pátris, pro pátre.
Instead of salt, sugar, &c.	Sális, sácchari více.
Instead of me, thee, us, you.	Méam, túam, nóstram, véstram vícem.
Instead of him, them.	In lócum (vícem) éjus, eôrum.

C. Obs. The English *instead of*, when it relates to persons or things in the sense of *in lieu of*, *in the place of*, is in Latin expressed by *loco*, *vice*, or *pro*; but when it limits the meaning of a verb, the formulas *tantum abest ut . . . . ut*, *non modo non . . . . sed etiam*, *magis* (*potius*) *quam*, and *quum debeam* * must be employed.

Do you play instead of studying (rather than study, when you ought to study)?	Operámne dâs lúdo mágis (pótius) quam lítteris? Ludísne, quum lítteris studêre débĕas?
I study instead of playing.	Óperam dô lítteris, pótius quam lúdo.
So far from playing, I am studying.	Tántum ábest, ut lûdam, ut óperam dém lítteris.
I not only do not play, but I even study.	Nôn módo nôn lúdo, sed lítteris etiam stúdeo.
This boy speaks instead of listening (when he ought to listen).	Púer íste lóquitur, quum auscultâre débeat.
This boy is so far from listening, that he even talks.	Tántum ábest, ut púer íste aúdiat, ut loquâtur. Púer íste nôn módo nôn aûdit, sed étiam lóquitur.
To listen or *attend to any one.*	*Audíre aliquem.* *Auscultâre alicui.*† *Alicui aures dare.*
To listen or attend to anything.	Audíre aliquid. Observâre aliquid.
Not to listen to (care for) anything.	Non curâre aliquid.
Whom are you hearing (listening to)?	Quém aúdis? Cui dâs aúres?
I am listening to the speaker.	Oratôrem aúdio. Aúres dô oratóri.
Will you listen to (i. e. obey) me?	Vísne mihi auscultâre?

* *Tantum abest, ut . . . . ut*, I am so far from . . . . that rather. *Non modo non . . . . sed etiam*, not only not . . . . but even. *Magis* (*potius*) . . . . *quam*, rather than. *Quum* (*cum*) *debeam*, when I ought. The student should notice that the *ut* of the first formula, and the *quum* of the last, require the subjunctive. See the examples.

† *Auscultare* conveys the secondary notion of deference or obedience.

Do you listen to what the teacher tells you?	Audísne (observâsne), quod (quae) praecéptor tíbi dícat (ímpĕret)?
I do listen to it.	Aúdio (obsérvo).
He listens to what I tell him.	Míhi auscúltat. Ómnia quaê éi dícam, obsérvat.
That which.	*Id quod, ea quae.*
What (= *that which*).	*Quod, quae.*
He does not listen to (observe) what the master tells him.	Quae praecéptor éi ímpĕrat, nôn cûrat.
To correct.	Emendo, āre, āvi, ātum. Corrígo, ĕre, rexi, rectum. (ALIQUID).
To take.	Sūmo, ĕre, mpsi, mptum. Căpio, ĕre, cēpi, captum. (ALIQUID).
To take away.	Aufĕro, ferre, abstŭli, ablātum. Tollo, ĕre, sustŭli, sublātum. (ALIQUID).
To take off, pull off.	Exŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum. Dētrăho, ĕre, xi, ctum.
To take off one's clothes.	Exúĕre sê véstibus. Detráhĕre síbi véstes.
To take off one's shoes.	Detráhĕre pédibus cálceos. Excalceâre pédes.
To take off one's hat.	Detráhĕre cápiti píleum. Nudâre cáput.
Are you correcting your letter?	Emendâsne (corrigísne) epístolam túam?
Yes, I am correcting it.	Sáne quídem, éam émendo.
Does he take off his clothes?	Exŭítne se véstibus? Detrahítne síbi véstes?
He is taking them off.	Éxŭit. Détrăhit.
We are taking off our clothes.	Exúimus nôs véstibus.
I am taking off my coat.	Éxŭo me tógā. Détrăho míhi tógam.
Are you taking off your shoes?	Detrahísne tíbi cálceos? Excalceâsne pédes?
No; I am taking off my hat.	Nôn véro; píleum détraho cápiti.
What is the servant taking away?	Quid aúfert sérvus?
He is carrying away the chairs.	Séllas (aúfert).
Do you wish me a good morning (good day, good evening).	Jubêsne mê sálvum ésse (salvūre)? Salutâsne mê máne, vésperi?
Good morning (day, evening).	Sálve!* *Plur.* Salvête!
To salute any one, to bid or wish one good morning, &c.	Salutāre aliquem. Aliquem salvum esse (salvēre) jubēre.

* This was the common formula for any time of the day.

Exercise 71.

Do you speak Spanish? — No, sir, I speak Italian. — Who speaks Polish? — My brother speaks Polish. — Do our neighbors speak Russian? — They do not speak Russian, but Arabic. — Do you speak Arabic? — No, I speak Greek and Latin. — What knife have you? — I have an English knife. — What money have you there? — Is it Italian or Spanish money? — It is Russian money. — Have you an Italian hat? — No, I have a Spanish hat. — Are you a German? — No, I am an Englishman. — Art thou a Greek? — No, I am a Spaniard. — Are these men Poles? — No, they are Russians. — Do the Russians speak Polish? — They do not speak Polish, but Latin, Greek, and Arabic. — Is your brother a merchant? — No, he is a joiner. — Are these men merchants? — No, they are carpenters. — Are we boatmen? — No, we are shoemakers. — Art thou a fool? — I am not a fool. — What is that man? — He is a tailor. — Do you wish* me anything? — I wish you a good morning. — What does the young man wish me? — He wishes you a good evening. — Whither must I go? — Thou must go to our friends to wish them a good day. — Do your children come to me in order to wish me a good evening? — They come to you in order to wish you a good morning.

Exercise 72.

Does the man listen to what you are telling him? — He does listen to it. — Do the children of the physician listen to what we tell them? — They do not listen to it. — Dost thou listen to what thy brother tells thee? — I do listen to it. — Do you go to the theatre? — I am going to the storehouse instead of going to the theatre. — Are you willing to listen to me? — I am willing to listen to you, but I cannot; I have the earache. — Does thy father correct my notes or thine? — He corrects neither yours nor mine. — Which notes does he correct? — He corrects those which he writes. — Does he listen to what you tell him? — He does listen to it. — Do you take off your hat in order to speak to my father? — I do take it off in order to speak to him. — Does thy brother listen to what our father tells him? — He does listen to it. — Does our servant go for some beer? — He goes for some vinegar instead of going for some beer. — Do you correct my letter? — I do not correct it; I have sore eyes. — Does the servant take off his coat in order to make a fire? — He does take it off. — Do you take off your gloves in order to give me money? — I do take them off in order to give you some. — Does he take off his shoes in order to go to your house? — He does not take them off. — Who takes away the tables and chairs? — The servants take them away. — Will you take away this glass? — I have no mind to take it away. — Is he wrong to take off his boots? — He is right to take them off. — Dost thou take away anything? — I do not take away anything. — Does anybody take off his hat? — Nobody takes it off.

---

* *Precāri* (dep.) *alicui aliquid*, to wish any one anything.

Exercise 73.

Has the nobleman blue eyes? — He has black eyes and a little mouth. — Hast thou a good memory? — I have not a very good memory (*parum váleo*), but my brother is endowed with an excellent one. — Can he write in place of his father? — He cannot. — Do they send bread instead of salt? — They send salt instead of bread. — Will you go to the ball in my stead? — I cannot go in your stead. — What dost thou (do) instead of playing? — I study instead of playing. — Dost thou learn instead of writing? — I write instead of learning. — What does the son of our bailiff (do)? — He goes into the garden instead of going into the field. — Do the children of our neighbors read? — They write instead of reading. — What does our cook (do)? — He makes a fire instead of going to the market. — Does your father sell his ox? — He sells his horse instead of selling his ox. — Do the physicians go out? — They remain in their rooms instead of going out. — At what o'clock does our physician come to you? — He comes every morning at a quarter to nine. — Does the son of the painter study English? — He studies Greek instead of studying English. — Does the butcher kill oxen? — He kills sheep instead of killing oxen. — Do you listen to me? — I do listen to you. — Does your brother listen to me? — He speaks instead of listening to you. — Do you listen to what I am telling you? — I do listen to what you are telling me.

Lesson XXXIX. — PENSUM UNDEQUADRAGESIMUM.

OF THE AGREEMENT OF RELATIVES.

A. The relative *qui, quae, quod* agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause introduced by it. E. g.

Égo, quî (quaê) légo, scríbo, lóquor.	*I who read, write, speak.*
Tû, quém (quám) díligo.	*Thou whom I cherish.*
Púer, quém *vidísti*, dequô *audivísti*, cújus *tutor és.*	*The boy whom you saw, of whom you have heard, whose guardian you are.*
Púeri, quôs *vidísti*, de quíbus *audivísti*, quôrum *tutor és.*	*The boys whom you saw, of whom you have heard, whose guardian you are.*
Flûmen, quód *appellâtur Támĕsis.*	*The river which is called the Thames.*
Ómnia, quaê *tíbi díxi, vêra sunt.*	*All that I have told you is true.*

Remarks.

1. The word to which the relative refers, and which it serves to limit and explain, is called its *Antecedent*. This may be either a noun, a personal, determinative, demonstrative, or indefinite pronoun, or an entire sentence.

2. The determinatives *is* and *idem*, and the demonstratives *hic*, *ille*, *iste*, &c., are called the *correlatives* of *qui*. They are either employed adjectively in agreement with the antecedent, or as substantives constituting the antecedent; e. g. *Loquimur de* iis amīcis, quos *norit vita communis*, We are speaking of those friends, which occur in ordinary life. *Nam* eum, qui *palam est adversarius, facile cavendo vitare possis*, For him, who is openly your adversary, you can easily avoid by being on your guard.

3. The construction of the correlative pronominals *tantus* . . . . *quantus*, *talis* . . . . *qualis*, and *tot* . . . . *quot*, is the same as that of *is* . . . . *qui*, and the remarks on the latter may in general be applied to them also.

4. The relative *qui* may represent any one of the three persons of either number, and its verb agrees in person with the antecedent; as, *Ego*, qui *te* confirmo, *ipse me non possum*, I, who am consoling you, am unable to console myself. *Tu es is*, qui *me sepissime* ornāsti, You are the man who has honored me the oftenest. *Nobis quidem*, qui *te* amamus, *erit gratum*, To us at any rate, who love you, it will be agreeable. *Etiam is*, qui *omnia* tenet, *favet ingeniis*, Even he, who now has the control of everything, favors genius. *Fere libenter homines* id, quod *volunt*, *credunt*, Men are always ready to believe what they desire.

5. The clause of the antecedent commonly precedes that of the relative; but this order is frequently inverted in Latin. E. g. *Male se res habet*, *cum*, quod *virtute effici debet*, id *tentatur pecuniā*, There is a bad state of things, when that which ought to be effected by virtue is attempted with money. Quam *quisque norit artem*, in hāc *se exerceat*, Let every one practise the art he may have learnt. *Hoc non concedo*, *ut*, quibus rebus *gloriemini in vobis*, easdem *in aliis reprehendatis*, I do not concede to you the right of reprehending in others what you boast of in yourselves.

6. The noun, to which the relative refers, is commonly expressed but once, and in the leading clause. Sometimes, however, it is repeated with the relative, and agrees with it in gender, number, and case; as, *Tantum* bellum, *tam diurnum*, *tam longe lateque dispersum*, quo bello *omnes gentes premebantur*, So great, so long, so wide-spread a war, by which all nations were oppressed. *Caesar intellexit* diem *instare*, quo die *frumentum militibus metiri oporteret*, Cæsar understood that the day was approaching, on which the soldiers were to receive their allowance of corn.

7. The noun is sometimes expressed with the relative only, and understood in the leading clause. This is especially the case when the logical order of the clauses is inverted, as in Rem. 5. E. g. *Accu-*

sātor non ferendus est is, *qui*, quod *in altero* vitium *reprehendit*, in eo ipso *deprehenditur*, He cannot be admitted as accuser who is himself caught in the very vice he reprehends in another. *Bestiae*, in quo loco *natae sunt*, ex eo *se non commŏvent*, Wild animals do not remove from the locality in which they were born. Quantā vi *civitates libertatem expetunt*, tantā *regna reges defendunt*, Kings defend monarchies with the same vehemence with which states seek their liberty.

8. The antecedent is sometimes entirely suppressed, and the relative *qui*, *quod* stands in the sense of "he who," "what." E. g. *Qui* (= is, qui) *e nuce nucleum esse vult, frangit nucem*, He who wishes the nut to become a kernel breaks the nut. *Est profecto deus, qui, quae* (= ea quae) *nos gerĭmus, auditque et videt*, There is certainly a God, who hears and sees whatever we are doing. *Maximum ornamentum amicitiae tollit*, qui (= is, qui) *ex ea tollit verecundiam*, He robs friendship of its greatest ornament who robs it of decorum and respect. So, *Sunt* qui *dicunt*, There are those who say. *Sunt* quos *juvat*, There are men whom it delights. *Nos imitamur*, quos *cuique visum est*, We imitate whomsoever it pleases us. *Non habeo* quod *scribam*, I have nothing to write.*

9. The antecedent sometimes assumes the case of the relative, and *vice versa*. This is called attraction. E. g. *Naucratem* (= *Naucratis*) *quem convenire volui, in navi non erat*, Naucratis, whom I wanted to find, was not in the ship. *Urbem* (= urbs), *quam statuo, vestra est*, The city which I am building is yours. *Hac, quā* (= quam) *diximus, aetate*, At the age (of life) which we have mentioned. *Video me desertum, a quibus* (= ab iis, quibus) *minime conveniebat*, I see myself deserted by those to whom it was least becoming (to desert me). *Judice quo* (= quem) *nōsti populo*, With the people, which you know, for a judge.

Wet, moist.	*Humĭdus, ūdus, madĭdus, a, um.*
To wet, moisten.	*Madefăcĭo, ĕre, fēci, factum.* *Humecto, āre, āvi, ātum.* (ALIQUID).
To show, point out.	Monstro, āre, āvi, ātum (ALICUI ALIQUID).
To show, let see.	Ostendo, ĕre, ndi, nsum (ALICUI ALIQUID).
Will you show me your gold ribbons?	Visne mihi osténdere taénias túas aúreas?
I am willing to show them to you.	Véro, vólo tíbi éas osténdere.
Are ye willing to show us the way?	Vultísne monstrâre nóbis viam?

* So also commonly *quisquis* and *quicunque*; as, Quidquid *non licet, nefas putare debemus*, We ought to consider wrong whatever is unlawful. *In* quascunque partes *velint, proficisci licet*, They may go in whatever direction they please.

Certainly we are willing.	Sáne quídem, nôn nólumus.
Is the boy wetting anything?	Madefácitne púer áliquid?
He is not wetting anything; he is only moistening the handkerchief.	Níhil madefácit, huméctat duntáxat muccínium.
Brandy.	*Vīnum adustum, i, *n.*
Tobacco.	*Tābăcum, i, *n.*; herba nicotiàna, ae, *f.*
Smoking tobacco.	*Tābăcum fumārium, i, *n.*
Snuff.	*Tābăcum sternutatōrium.
Flour.	Farina, ae, *f.*
Cider.	Vīnum ex mālis confectum.
The fruit.	Pōmum, i, *n.*
The apple.	Mālum, i, *n.*, pōmum mālum.
The pear.	Pirum, i, *n.*
The gardener.	Hortulānus, i, *m.*
The relative.	Cognātus, i, *m.*; propinquus, i, *m.*
The cousin.	Consobrīnus, i, *m.*; consobrīna,* ae, *f.*
The brother-in-law (= husband's brother, wife's brother, sister's husband).	Lēvir, i, *m.*; marīti frāter;† uxōris frāter; marītus sorōris.
The husband.	Marītus, i, *m.*; conjux, ŭgis, *m.*
The wife.	Uxor, ōris. *f.*; conjux, ŭgis, *f.*
The handkerchief.	Sudārium, i, *n.*; muccinium, i, *n.*
The valet, servant.	Famŭlus, servus, i, *m.*; minister, ri, *m.*
Does the servant fetch us some tobacco?	Apportátne nóbis sérvus tábacum?
He does fetch us a little.	Appórtat véro nóbis aliquántŭlum.
Will you call (go for) your cousin?	Visne túum consobrínum arcéssere?
I am willing (am not unwilling) to go for him.	Arcéssere éum nôn nôlo.
Are you desirous of drinking some of my brandy?	Cupidúsne es bibéndi de víno méo adústo?
No, I would rather drink pure water.	Ímmo véro cúpidus sum bibéndi áquam pûram.
To intend, think of.	*Cogĭto, āre, āvi, ātum* (ALIQUID FĂCĔRE).
Do you intend to go to the ball to-night?	Cogitâsne hódie vésperi saltâtum íre?
I do intend to go, sir.	Sic est, dómine, cógito.

* The Roman subdivisions of cousinship are: *Patrŭēlis*, m. & f., the son or daughter of a paternal uncle. *Amĭtīnus*, *i*, m. (fem. *-a*), maternal uncle's or paternal aunt's child. *Sobrīnus*, *i*, m. (fem. *-a*), a second-cousin.

† *Lēvir* = *marīti frater*, the husband's brother.

What do they intend to do?	Quid fácere cógitant?
They are intending to write letters?	Epístolas conscríbere cógitant.

To know.	*Scĭo, īre, īvi, ītum.*
Not to know (to be ignorant).	*Nescīre, non (haud) scīre.*
To swim.	Nō, nāre, nāvi, ——. / Nāto, āre, āvi, ātum.
To be able (to have the power or opportunity).	Possum, posse, potŭi, ——. / Quĕo, īre, īvi (ii), ĭtum.

B. Obs. Possum is to have the physical power, or the means or influence to do anything, and is used in sentences of every kind. *Queo* is to have the ability or qualifications, and is only put in sentences containing a negation (*non queo, nequeo*). *Queo* is anomalous, and its present tense is as follows: —

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Subj.
Sing. Quĕo, quīs, quĭt,	Sing. Quĕăm, quĕās, quĕăt,
Plur. Quīmus, quītis, quĕunt.	Plur. Quĕāmus, quĕātis, quĕant.
Does this boy know Latin?	Num púer íste scit Latíne (línguam Latínam)?
He does not know it.	Nôn scit. Haûd scit. Néscit.
Or can he read French?	An légere pótest Francogállice?
He cannot.	Non pótest. Néquit.
Can you write an English letter?	Potésne (scísne) scríbere epístolam Ánglice?
I can write one.	Póssum. Scío.
I cannot (am not able) to do it.	Fácere nôn póssum (nôn quéo, néqueo).
Can you swim (do you know how to swim)?	Ésne tu péritus nándi. / Habêsne sciéntiam nándi?
I do not know how.	Nôn sum péritus. / Sciéntiam nôn hábeo.
Where do you intend to go (think of going)?	Quo īre cógitas?
I think of going into the country.	Rûs īre cógito.
Does your cousin wet his handkerchief?	Humectátne consobrínus túus sudárium (súum)?
He does not wet it.	Nôn huméctat.
He does wet it.	Sic est, huméctat.
Can you drink brandy?	Potésne bíbere vínum adústum?
I cannot.	Nôn (haûd) póssum.

Exercise 74.

Do you intend to study Arabic? — I intend to study Arabic and Syriac. — Does the Englishman know Polish? — He does not know it, but he intends learning it. — Do you know how to swim? — I do not know how to swim, but how to play. — Does your cousin know how to make coats? — He does not know how to make any; he is no

tailor. — Is he a merchant? — He is not one. — What is he? — He is a physician. — Whither are you going? — I am going into my garden, in order to speak to the gardener. — What do you wish to tell him? — I wish to tell him to open the window of his room. — Does your gardener listen to you? — He does listen to me. — Do you wish to drink some cider? — No, I have a mind to drink some beer; have you any? — I have none; but I will send for some. — When will you send for some? — Now. — Do you send for apples? — I do send for some. — Have you a good deal of water? — I have enough to wash my feet. — Has your brother water enough? — He has only a little, but enough to moisten his pocket-handkerchief. — Do you know how to make tea? — I know how to make some. — Does your cousin listen to what you tell him? — He does listen to it. — Does he know how to swim? — He does not know how to swim. — Where is he going to? — He is going nowhither; he remains at home.

Exercise 75.

Dost thou go to fetch (*arcessitum*)* thy father? — I do go to fetch him. — May I go to fetch my cousin? — You may go to fetch him. — Does your valet find the man whom he is looking for? — He does find him. — Do your sons find the friends whom they are looking for? — They do not find them. — When do you intend going to the ball? — I intend going thither this evening. — Do your cousins intend to go into the country? — They intend to go thither. — When do they intend to go thither? — They intend to go thither to-morrow. — At what o'clock? — At half past nine. — What does the merchant wish to sell you? — He wishes to sell me pocket-handkerchiefs. — Do you intend to buy some? — I will not buy any. — Dost thou know anything? — I do not know anything. — What does thy cousin know? — He knows how to read and to write. — Does he know German? — He does not know it. — Do you know Spanish? — I do know it. — Do your brothers know Greek? — They do not know it; but they intend to learn it. — Do I know English? — You do not know it; but you intend to study it. — Do my children know how to read Italian? — They know how to read, but not how to speak it.

Exercise 76.

Do you desire to drink brandy? — No, I wish to drink wine. — Do you sell brandy? — I do not sell any; but my neighbor the merchant sells some. — Will you fetch me some tobacco? — I will fetch you some; what tobacco do you wish (to have)? — I wish to have some snuff; but my friend, the German, wishes to have some smoking-tobacco. — Does the merchant show you cloth? — He does not show me any. — Does your valet go for some cider? — He does go for some. — Do you want anything else (*amplius*)? — I want some flour; will you send for some for me? — Does your friend buy apples? — He does buy some. — Does he buy handkerchiefs? — He buys tobac-

* Compare Lesson XLVII. *A.*

co instead of buying handkerchiefs. — Do you show me anything? — I show you my gold and silver clothes. — Whither does your cousin go? — He goes to the ball. — Do you go to the ball? — I go to the theatre instead of going to the ball. — Does the gardener go into the garden? — He goes to the market instead of going into the garden. — Do you send your servant to the shoemaker? — I send him to the tailor, instead of sending him to the shoemaker.

Lesson XL. — PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM.

THE AGREEMENT OF RELATIVES CONTINUED.

A. 1. When the relative refers to two or more nouns, it stands in the plural, and assumes the gender of an adjective under similar circumstances (cf. Lesson XXII. *B*, and Lesson XXXVII. *A.* 10). E. g.

Pater ejus et mater, qui *mortui sunt*, His father and mother, who are dead. *Arbitrum habebimus Civilem et Velĕdam, apud* quos *pacta sancientur*, We shall have Civilis and Veleda (a woman) as arbitrators, in whose presence the compact will be ratified. *Favent pietati fideique dii, per* quae* *populus Romanus ad tantum fastigii venit*, The gods bestow their favor upon piety and faith, by which the Roman people has attained such eminent distinction. *Duilius delectabatur crebro funali et tibicine*, quae *sibi nullo exemplo privatus sumpserat.*

2. When the antecedent is a collective noun, the relative sometimes assumes the gender and number of the individuals composing it. E. g. *Caesar* equitatum omnem *praemittit*, qui *videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant*, Cæsar sends ahead all his cavalry, to see (*lit.* who may or might see) in what direction the enemy is pursuing his way. *Academia*, a quibus *nunquam dictum est, aut calorem, aut saporem, aut sonum nullum esse*, The Academy, by which (i. e. by the persons composing it) it was never maintained, that either heat or smell or sound were nonentities.

3. If the antecedent is a proper name in apposition with a generic term, the relative may agree with either. E. g. *Helvetii continentur flumine Rheno*, qui (i. e. *Rhenus*) *agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit*, The Helvetii are bounded by the river Rhine, which divides the Helvetian territory from that of the Germans. *Caesar ad flumen Scaldem*, quod (sc. *flumen*) *influit in Mosam, ire constituit*, Cæsar resolved to advance towards the river Scheldt, which empties into the Moselle.

---

* Cf. Lesson XXII. *B.* 3.

4. If a noun descriptive of the antecedent is added to the relative, it agrees with that noun in preference to the antecedent. E. g. *Eodem anno Cumae*, quam *Graeci tum* urbem *tenebant, capiuntur*, Cumæ, a city which the Greeks then occupied, was taken in the same year. *Accidit, ut luna plena esset*, qui dies *maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit*, It happened to be full moon, which day usually gave rise to the highest tide in the ocean. *Oppius negotia procurat Egnatii Rufi*, quo *ego* uno equite Romano *familiarissime utor*, Oppius is managing the affairs of Egnatius Rufus, the only Roman knight with whom I am on terms of intimacy.

5. An adjective, qualifying the antecedent, is sometimes joined to the relative, and agrees with it in preference to the antecedent. E. g. *Verres mittit ad Antiochum regem, rogatum vasa ea* quae pulcherrima *apud eum viderat*, Verres sent to King Antiochus, to ask him for the handsomest vases which he had seen at his residence. *Themistocles de servis suis* quem *habuit* fidelissimum, *ad Xerxem misit*, Themistocles sent to Xerxes one of his servants, whom he regarded the most faithful. *Consul*, qui unus *supererat, moritur*, The only surviving consul is on his death-bed. This is the common construction when the adjective is a superlative, a comparative, or a numeral.

6. When, in connection with the verb *sum*, or a verb of naming, calling, esteeming,* &c., the relative clause contains a noun of a different gender from the antecedent, the relative may agree either with that noun or with the antecedent. E. g. *Est genus quoddam hominum*, quod *Helotes vocatur*, There is a class of men (which is) called the Helots. *Domicilia conjuncta*, quas urbes *dicimus*, Assemblages of dwelling-houses, which we call cities. *Thebae ipsae*, quod *Boeotiae* caput *est*, Thebes itself, which is the capital of Bœotia. *Flumen*, qui *provinciae ejus* finis *erat*, The river, which was the boundary line of that province.

7. The relative sometimes agrees with an antecedent implied in a possessive pronoun, an adjective, or in the context generally. E. g. *Scauri dicendi genus ad* senatoriam *sententiam*, cujus *ille erat princeps, vel maxime aptum videbatur*, Scaurus's style of oratory seemed to be most admirably adapted to senatorial speaking, of which (i. e. of the senate) he was the princeps. *Illud quidem* nostrum *consilium jure laudandum est*, qui . . . . *noluerim*, That plan of mine is justly entitled to praise, who was unwilling, &c. Veiens *bellum exortum*, quibus† *Sabini arma conjunxerant*, The Veian war broke out, with whom the Sabines had united their arms.

8. The neuters *quod* and *quae* sometimes refer to a noun of a different gender, especially to *res*. E. g. *Sumptu ne parcas* ullā in re, quod *ad valetudinem opus sit*, Do not spare expense in anything which may be necessary for your health. *Otium et abundantia* earum rerum, quae *prima mortales ducunt*, Leisure and an abundance of those things,

---

* Cf. Lesson XXXIV. *C.*

† I. e. with the *Veii* implied in the adjective *Veiens*.

which men deem of the first importance. *In sermonibus*, quae *nec possunt scribi, nec scribenda sunt*, In conversations, which are neither to be written, nor can be written.

9. When the antecedent is an entire sentence, or part of one, the relative is the neuter *quod* or *id quod*. E. g. *Conclamat omnis multitudo Gallorum* . . . . quod *facere in eo consuerunt, cujus orationem approbant*, All the Gauls shouted, — a thing which they were accustomed to do to one, whose harangue they approved. *Timoleon*, id quod *difficilius putatur, multo sapientius tulit secundam, quam adversam fortunam*, Timoleon (did) what is considered the more difficult of the two, — he bore prosperity with wiser moderation than adversity. *Si nos*, id quod *maxime debet, nostra patria delectat*, If our country, as it especially ought to do, inspires us with delight.

10. The relative is sometimes employed idiomatically to denote a quality or species, in the sense of the English *such, as, in consideration of*, &c. It is thus used either alone or in connection with *is* or *idem*. E. g. Quae *tua est prudentia*, or quā *es prudentiā*, Such is your prudence (in consideration of your prudence).* *Ego* is *in Dionysium sum*, quem *tu me esse vis*, I am towards Dionysius as (*or* what) you wish me to be. *Nos* ii *sumus*, qui *esse debemus, id est, studio digni ac litteris nostris*, We are such as (*or* what) we ought to be, that is, worthy of our zeal and letters. So also, *Quae tua natura est*, In consideration of your natural kindness. Quod *tuum est judicium de hominibus*, Such is your knowledge of human character. Qui *illius in te amor fuit*, In consideration of his regard for you. Quā *est humanitate Caesar*, Such is the humanity of Cæsar.

11. Relative adjectives and adverbs follow the construction of the relative pronoun. E. g. *Non sunt* tanti *ulla merita*, quanta *insolentia hominis*, quantumque *fastidium*, No merits are of so much account as (to counterbalance) the insolence and haughtiness of man. *Nemo orator* tam multa *scripsit*, quam multa *sunt nostra*, No orator has written as much as I have. Quot *orationum genera esse diximus*, totidem *oratorum reperiuntur*, There are (found) just as many of orators, as we have mentioned styles of oratory. Quales *in republica principes sunt*, tales *reliqui solent esse cives*, As are the leaders of a republic, so are the rest of the citizens wont to be. Quam diu *animus remanet in nobis*, tam diu *sensus et vita remanet*, Sensation and life remain in us as long as the spirit remains. *Crocodilus parit ova*, quanta *anseres*, The crocodile lays eggs as large as geese.

12. The Latin relative frequently assumes the force of a demonstrative, and becomes equivalent to the English *and this* (*these*), *since this, although this*, &c.; as, *Quae cum ita sint*, Since these things are so. *Res loquitur ipsa*, quae *semper valet plurimum*, The thing speaks for itself, *and this* is always the most powerful argument. *Magna vis est conscientiae*, quam *qui negligunt, se ipsi indicant*, Great is the power of conscience, *hence those* who disregard it, betray themselves.

---

* Equivalent to *pro tuā prudentiā*, which also occurs in the same sense.

Oculorum est in nobis sensus acerrimus, quibus *sapientiam non cernimus*, Our eyesight is the keenest of all our senses, *and yet* wisdom is not discerned *by it*.

The intention, design.	*Consilium, i,* n.; *propŏsĭtum, i,* n.
It is my intention, I intend (to do anything).	*Propósitum est mihi (fácere áliquid).*
It is our intention to do this.	Id fácere nóbis est propósitum.
Does your father intend to go out this morning?	Cogitátne páter túus hódie mâne in públicum prodîre?
It is his intention to do so.	Propósitum est éi fácere hóc.
To receive (anything sent).	*Accĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum.* / *Recĭpĕre* (ALIQUID AB ALIQUO).
To receive (a guest, &c.).	Excĭpĕre, accĭpĕre (ALIQUEM).
To obtain, get (with effort).	Consĕquor, i, cūtus sum. / Assĕquor, &c. (ALIQUID).
Who obtains the preference?	Quis conséquitur principâtum (prióres pártes)?
Our friend (obtains it).	Amícus nóster.
Does he receive money, letters, books?	Accipítne pecúniam, epístolas, líbros?
He does not (receive any).	Non áccipit.
When do you receive (entertain) your friends?	Quô témpore familiáres túos éxcipis?
I receive them in the evening.	Excípio éos véspere.
The preference.	*Princĭpātus, ūs,* m.; *priōres partes,* f. pl.
The stable.	Stabŭlum, i, *n.*
Blind.	Caecus, a, um; ocŭlis captus, a, um.
Sick, ill.	Aeger, ra, rum; aegrōtus, a, um.
To be sick or ill.	Aegrōtum esse, aegrotāre; laborāre morbo (*abl.*).
Poor, needy.	Inops, is; pauper, ĕris; egēnus, a, um.
To take, conduct.	*Dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum* (ALIQUEM ALIQUO, AD ALIQUEM).
To guide, lead one by the hand.	Mănū dūcĕre aliquem. / Dăre mănūs alicui.
To extinguish, put out.	*Extinguo, ĕre, nxi, nctum.*
To light, kindle.	Accendo, ĕre, i, sum.
To set on fire.	Succendĕre (rem). / Ignem inferre (alicui rei).
To depart, set out on a journey.	*Proficiscor, i, -fectus sum* (dep.).
To go off, leave.	Abĕo, īre, ĭi (īvi), ĭtum. / Discēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum.

Is any one sick?	Écquis aegrôtus est? / Num quís mórbo labôrat?
No one is sick.	Némo est aegrôtus. / Némo mórbo labôrat.
Do you conduct any one?	Ducísne áliquem?
I am conducting my good little daughter.	Dúco véro filíolam méam bónam.
Does the boy guide the blind man?	Ducítne caécum púer mánu? (Lesson XXXVIII. *A.* Rem. 2.) / Dátne púer mánus caéco?
He does guide him.	Ducit. Dat mánus.
Do you extinguish the candle?	Extinguísne candêlam?
No, I am (on the contrary) lighting it.	Ímmo véro (éam) accéndo.
Who sets fire to the house?	Quis succéndit aédes? / Quis ígnem ínfert aédíbus?
The bad man sets fire to it.	Hómo nêquam éas accéndit.
Do you design to leave?	Éstne tíbi propósitum abíre (discédere)?
It is my design.	Est míhi propósitum.
When do you think of setting out?	Quô témpore cógitas proficísci?
To-morrow morning.	Crâs mâne.
Do I set out?	Egóne proficíscor?
You do not set out.	Nôn proficísceris.

Exercise 77.

Do your brothers intend to go into the country? — They do intend to go thither. — Do you intend to go to my cousin? — I do intend to go to him. — Dost thou intend to do anything? — I intend to do nothing. — Do you intend to go to the theatre this evening? — I do intend to go thither, but not this evening. — Dost thou receive anything? — I receive money. — From whom dost thou receive some? — I receive some from my father, my brother, and my cousin. — Does your son receive books? — He does receive some. — From whom does he receive some? — He receives some from me, from his friends and neighbors. — Does the poor man receive money? — He does receive some? — From whom does he receive some? — He receives some from the rich. — Dost thou receive wine? — I do not receive any. — Do I receive money? — You do not receive any. — Does your servant receive clothes? — He does not receive any. — Do you receive the books which our friends receive? — We do not receive the same which your friends receive; but we receive others. — Does your friend receive the letters which you write to him? — He does receive them. — Do you receive the apples which I send you? — I do not receive them. — Does the American receive as much brandy as cider? — He receives as much of the one as of the other. — Do the Scotch receive as many books as letters? — They receive as many of the one as of the other.

Exercise 78.

Does the Englishman obtain the preference? — He does obtain it. — Does your cousin receive as much money as I? — He receives more than you. — Does the Frenchman receive his letters? — He does receive them. — When does he receive them? — He receives them in the evening. — When dost thou receive thy letters? — I receive them in the morning. — At what o'clock? — At a quarter to ten. — Dost thou receive as many letters as I? — I receive more of them than thou. — Dost thou receive any to-day? — I receive some to-day and to-morrow. — Does your father receive as many friends as ours (as our father)? — He receives fewer of them than yours (than your father). — Does the Spaniard receive as many enemies as friends? — He receives as many of the one as of the other. — Do you receive one more crown? — I do receive one more. — Does your son receive one more book? — He does receive one more. — What does the physician receive? — He receives good tobacco, good snuff, and good pocket-handkerchiefs. — Does he receive brandy? — He does receive some.

Exercise 79.

Do you intend to go to the theatre this evening? — I intend to go there to-morrow. — Do you depart to-day? — I depart now. — When do you intend to write to your friends? — I intend to write to them to-day. — Do your friends answer your letters? — They do answer them. — Do you extinguish the fire? — I do not extinguish it? — Does your servant light the candle? — He does light it. — Does this man intend to set your warehouse on fire? — He does intend to set it on fire. — Does your servant receive shirts? — He does receive some. — Does he receive as many of them as my valet. — He receives quite as many. — Do you receive anything to-day? — I receive something every day. — Dost thou conduct anybody. — I conduct nobody. — Whom do you guide? — I guide my son. — Where are you conducting him to? — I conduct him to my neighbors, in order to wish them a good morning. — What is your son? — He is a physician. — Does your servant guide any one? — He guides my child. — Whom must I guide? — Thou must guide the blind man. — Must he conduct the sick person? — He must conduct him. — Whither must he conduct him? — He must conduct him home. — Whither is he leading the horse? — He is leading it into the stable. — Dost thou guide the child or the blind man? — I guide both. — When does the foreigner intend to depart? — He intends to depart this morning. — At what o'clock? — At half past one. — Does he not wish to remain here? — He does not wish to remain.

Lesson XLI. — PENSUM UNUM ET QUADRAGESIMUM.

OF THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

A. The property or quality denoted by an adjective may be attributed to an object either absolutely or relatively. This difference has given rise to several distinct forms of one and the same adjective, called its *Degrees of Comparison.*

1. That form of the adjective by which the quality denoted by it is attributed to an object or class of objects, without any reference to other objects possessed of the same quality, is called the *Positive* degree. E. g. Vir *audax*, a bold man; mel *dulce*, the sweet honey; montes *alti*, high mountains. This is to be regarded as its general and fundamental form.

2. When the quality denoted by an adjective is attributed to an object or class of objects in a greater degree than to another or to others, the form of the adjective expressing this relation is called the *Comparative* degree. E. g. *Vir audacior*, a bolder man; *mel dulcius*, the sweeter honey; *montes altiores*, higher mountains.

3. When the quality inherent in a number of objects is attributed to one or more of them in a higher degree than to all the rest, the form of the adjective expressing this relation is said to be in the *Superlative* degree. E. g. *Vir audacissimus*, the boldest man (of a certain number of men); *mel dulcissimum*, the sweetest honey; *montes altissimi*, the highest mountains.

We have thus found three forms of adjectives: — the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

B. Comparison in its widest sense comprehends the relations of *equality* and of *inequality*. The relation of inequality is subdivided into that of *inferiority* or of *superiority*.

1. The relation of equality is in Latin expressed by the positive with *tam* .... *quam*, *aeque* .... *ac* (*atque*), *pariter* .... *ac*, &c.; as, *Tam felix*, *quam bonus*, As happy as good. *Duo montes aeque alti*, Two mountains equally high. *Aeque altus*, *atque longus*, As high as long.

2. The relation of inferiority is likewise expressed by the positive form of the adjective, which becomes comparative by *minus* .... *quam*, less .... than, and superlative by *minime*, least. E. g. *Minus felix*, *quam bonus*, Less happy than good. *Minime felix*, Least happy.

3. The relation of superiority is sometimes indicated by *magis* .... *quam*, more .... than, and *maxime*, most; as, *Magis idoneus quam tu*, More competent than you. *Maxime idoneus*, The most competent.

But it is more commonly expressed by those peculiar forms of the adjective already known as the Comparative and Superlative.

REGULAR COMPARISON.

C. The comparative degree is formed by adding the terminations *ĭor*, m. & f., and *ĭus*, n., to the root of the positive *; and the superlative by adding *issĭmus*, *issĭma*, *issĭmum*. Thus: —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
Longus,	longior,	longissimus;	*long, longer, longest.*
Brevis,	brevior,	brevissimus;	*short, shorter, shortest.*
Audax,	audacior,	audacissimus;	*bold, bolder, boldest.*
Felix,	felicior,	felicissimus;	*happy, happier, happiest.*
Iners,	inertior,	inertissimus;	*sluggish, more sluggish,* &c.
Diligens,	diligentior,	diligentissimus;	*diligent, more diligent,* &c.
Doctus,	doctior,	doctissimus;	*learned, more learned,* &c.

ANOMALOUS COMPARISON.

D. Some adjectives are irregular in their mode of comparison.

1. Adjectives in *er* form their superlative by simply adding *rĭmus*. E. g.

Acer,	acrior,	acerrimus;	*sharp, sharper, sharpest.*
Celeber,	celebrior,	celeberrimus;	*distinguished, more d., most dis.*
Pauper,	pauperior,	pauperrimus;	*poor, poorer, poorest.*
Pulcher,	pulchrior,	pulcherrimus;	*beautiful, more beautiful, most b.*
Vetus,†	———,	veterrimus;	*old, older, oldest.*
Nuperus,	———,	nuperrimus;	*recent, more recent, most recent.*

2. The following in *ĭlis* form their superlative by adding *lĭmus* to the root: —

Facilis,	facilior,	facillimus;	*easy, easier, easiest.*
Gracilis,	gracilior,	gracillimus;	*slender, more slender, most slen.*
Humilis,	humilior,	humillimus;	*low, lower, lowest.*
Imbecillis,	imbecillior,	imbecillimus;	*feeble, feebler, feeblest.*
Similis,	similior,	simillimus‡;	*like, more like, most like.*

3. Compounds in *dĭcus*, *fĭcus*, and *vŏlus* compare from a participial form in *ens*. As, —

---

* This root is found from the genitive singular by dropping its case-termination; as, *longus — long-i, brevis — brev-is, audax — audac-is, felix — felic-is, iners — inert-is, diligens — diligent-is.*

† The original form of this was *veter;* and the superlative of *nuperus* is derived from the adverb *nuper.*

‡ So the compounds *difficilis* and *dissimilis.* But all other adjectives in *ĭlis* have *issĭmus.*

Mălĕdĭcus,	maledĭcentior,	maledicentissimus;	*slanderous.*
Munifĭcus,	munificentior,	munificentissimus;	*munificent.*
Benevŏlus,	benevolentior,	benevolentissimus;	*benevolent.*

So *honorifĭcus*, *magnifĭcus*, *malefĭcus*, *mirifĭcus*; *malevŏlus.*

4. The following derive their comparatives and superlatives from a different root: —

Bonus,	melior,	optĭmus;	*good, better, best.*
Malus,	pejor,	pessĭmus;	*bad, worse, worst.*
Magnus,	major,	maxĭmus;	*great, greater, greatest.*
Parvus,	minor,	minĭmus;	*small, smaller, smallest.*
Multus,	plūs,*	plurĭmus;	*much, more, most.*

5. Several adjectives have an irregular superlative, and some a double form of the comparative or superlative:

Dexter,	dexterior,	dextĭmus;	*to the right.*
Dives,	divitior, ditior,	divitissimus; ditĭmus;	*rich.*
Extera, *f.*	exterior,	extĭmus; extrēmus;	*outward.*
Juvĕnis,	juvenior, junior,	———; †	*young.*
Infĕrus,	inferior,	infĭmus; imus;	*low.*
Postĕra, *f.*	posterior,	postrēmus; postŭmus;	*hind.*
Supĕrus,	superior,	suprēmus; sumnus;	*high.*

6. The indeclinable *nēquam*, bad, has *nēquior*, *nēquissĭmus*, and *frugi*, frugal, *frugalior*, *frugalissĭmus.*

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

E. The comparison of some adjectives is defective; i. e. they occur only in some of the forms of comparison.

1. The following are not used in the positive, which is either entirely obsolete, or only represented by adverbs or prepositions: —

Comparative.	Superlative.		Positive.
Citerior,	citĭmus,	*nearer;*	*citer*, obs. *citra*, this side).
Deterior,	deterrĭmus,	*worse;*	(from *deter*, not used).
Interior,	intĭmus,	*inner;*	(from *intus*, adv., within).
Ocior,	ocissĭmus,	*faster;*	(from the Greek ὠκύς).

* This form is properly the neuter comparative of *multum.*

† This superlative is *minimus natu*, as that of *senex*, old, is *maximus natu* (= the greatest by birth). So the comparatives *minor natu* and *major natu*, instead of *juvenior* and *senior.*

Potior,	potissĭmus,	*preferable;*	(from *pŏtis*, obsolete).
Prior,	primus,	*former;*	(from *prae*, prep., before).
Propĭor,	proximus,	*nearer;*	(from *prope*, adv., near).
Ulterior,	ultĭmus,	*further;*	(from *ultra*, adv., farther.)

2. The comparative of the following adjectives and participles seldom or never occurs: —

Apricus,	apricissĭmus;	*sunny.*
Bellus,	bellissĭmus;	*pretty.*
Comis,	comissĭmus;	*affable.*
Consultus,	consultissĭmus;	*proficient.*
Diversus,	diversissĭmus;	*different.*
Falsus,	falsissĭmus;	*false.*
Inclytus,	inclytissĭmus;	*renowned.*
Invictus,	invictissĭmus;	*unconquerable.*
Invitus,	invitissĭmus;	*unwilling.*
Novus,	novissĭmus;	*new.*
Nupĕrus,	nuperrĭmus;	*recent.*
Par,	parissĭmus;	*equal.*
Persuāsus,	persuasissĭmus;	*persuaded*
Sacer,	sacerrĭmus;	*sacred.*
Vetus,	veterrĭmus;	*old.*

3. The following want the superlative: —

Adolescens,	adolescentĭor·	*young.*
Agrestis,	agrestĭor;	*rural.*
Alacer	alacrĭor;	*sprightly.*
Arcānus,	arcānĭor;	*secret.*
Caecus,	caecĭor;	*blind.*
Declīvis,	declivĭor;	*steep.*
Dēsĕs,	dēsĭor;	*sluggish.*
Diuturnus,	diuturnĭor,	*long.*
Jejūnus,	jejūnĭor,	*fasting.*
Juvĕnis,	jūnĭor;	*young.*
Longinquus,	longinquĭor;	*distant.*
Opimus,	opimĭor;	*opulent.*
Proclīvis,	proclivĭor;	*sloping.*
Prōnus,	prōnĭor;	*inclined forward.*
Propinquus,	propinquĭor;	*near.*
Salutāris,	salutārĭor;	*salutary.*
Satis,	satĭor;*	*better.*
Sătŭr,	satŭrĭor;	*sated.*
Sĕnex,	sĕnĭor;	*old.*
Secus,	sequĭor;	*inferior.*
Silvester,	silvestrĭor;	*woody.*
Sinister,	sinisterĭor;	*left.*
Supīnus,	supīnĭor;	*supine.*

* *Satĭor* and *sequĭor* (neut. *sequĭus* or *secĭus*) are isolated comparatives, which may be referred to the adverbs *satis* and *secus*.

4. The superlative is likewise wanting in the majority of verbal adjectives in *bĭlis*, *ĭlis*, *ālis*, and in many of those in *ĭlis*.

F. The form of many adjectives does not admit of simple comparison, and these require *magis*, *maxĭme*. Such are:—

1. Those ending in *us* preceded by a vowel; as *idoneus*, fit; *dubius*, doubtful; *vacuus*, empty; Comp. *magis idōneus*; Sup. *maxĭme idoneus*.*

2. Participles in *dus*† and verbals in *bundus*;‡ as *amandus*, *moribundus*, ready to die.

3. Adjectives ending in *ĭcus*, *īvus*, *ĭnus*, *ĭmus*, *ōrus*, and many in *ōsus* and *entus*;§ as, *modĭcus*, moderate; *fugĭtīvus*, fugitive; *matūtĭnus*, early; *legĭtĭmus*, lawful; *canōrus*, singing.

4. The following, partly on account of their form, and partly on account of their signification:—

Almus,	*gracious.*	Impos,	*not master of.*
Blaesus,	*lisping.*	Lăcer,	*maimed.*
Balbus,	*stammering.*	Mancus,	*crippled.*
Cadūcus,	*falling.*	Mediocris,	*inferior.*
Calvus,	*bald.*	Mĕmor,	*mindful.*
Cānus,	*white.*	Mīrus,	*wonderful.*
Cĭcur,	*tame.*	Mūtĭlus,	*mutilated.*
Claudus,	*lame.*	Mūtus,	*mute.*
Curvus,	*crooked.*	Nĕfastus,	*wrong.*
Compos,	*possessed of.*	Par,	*equal.*
Egēnus,	*needy.*	Dispar,	*unequal.*
Fĕrus,	*wild.*	Sospes,	*safe.*
Gnārus,	*expert.*	Trux,	*grim.*
Jejūnus,	*hungry.*	Vulgāris,	*common.*

G. Many adjectives admit of no comparison of any kind, from the nature of their signification. Such are:—

1. Those denoting the material of which anything is made, possession, or descent; e. g. *aurĕus*, *ferrĕus*, *ligněus*; *Romanus*, *Atheniensis*; *paternus*, *patrius*.

2. Those denoting a definite quantity or time; e. g. *unĭcus*,

---

* But not those ending in the monosyllabic *quus* and *quis*, which are regularly compared; as, *antiquus*, *antiquior*, *antiquissimus*; *pinguis*, *pinguior*, *pinquissimus*. So also *tenuis*, *tenuior*, *tenuissimus*, and a few of those in *uus* and *ius*; e. g. *assiduus*, *exiguus*, *pius*, *strenuus*.

† Of the participles in *ns* and *tus*, many are used adjectively and regularly compared; e. g. *amans*, *amantior*, *amantissimus*; *doctus*, *doctissimus*, &c. But these are frequently defective.

‡ Except the two superlatives *infandissimus*, abominable; and *nefandissimus*, impious.

§ Except *divīnus*, *festīvus*, *lascivus*, *rustĭcus*, *tempestīvus*, and *vicīnus*, of which some of the comparative forms occur; e. g. *divīnior*, *divīnissimus*, &c.

single; *aestīvus*, of the summer; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *hibernus*, of the winter.

3. Those already involving a comparison, such as compounds of *per*, *prae* (= very), and *sub* (= somewhat); e. g. *permagnus*, very great; *praedives*, very rich; *subdifficilis*, somewhat difficult.*

4. Diminutives and other adjectives in *lus*; as, *parvŭlus*, very little; *vetŭlus*, a little old; *garrŭlus*, talkative; *anhēlus*, out of breath, &c.

5. Compound adjectives derived from nouns;† as, *versicolor*, of various colors; *dēgĕner*, degenerate.

DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

H. The superlative is declined like *bonus*, *a*, *um*, and the comparative like an adjective of one termination (Lessons V. and XIII.). Thus:—

Altĭor, *m.* & *f.*, altĭus, *n.*, *higher.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. & *Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.* & *Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	altĭor	altĭŭs	altĭōrēs	altĭōră
Gen.	altĭōrĭs	altĭōrĭs	altĭōrŭm	altĭōrŭm
Dat.	altĭōrī	altĭōrī	altĭōrĭbŭs	altĭōrĭbŭs
Acc.	altĭōrem	altĭŭs	altĭōrēs	altĭōră
Voc.	altĭŏr	altĭŭs	altĭōrēs	altĭōră
Abl.	altĭōrĕ *or* -ī,	altĭōrĕ *or* -ī,	altĭōrĭbŭs	altĭōrĭbŭs.

So decline *pulchrior*, *venustior*, handsomer, prettier; *facilior*, easier; *difficilior*, more difficult; *major*, greater; *longior*, longer; *brevior*, shorter; *rotundior*, rounder; *divitior*, richer, &c.

Is your book as good as mine?	Éstne líber túus tám bónus, quám méus (aêque bónus átque méus)?
It is better than yours.	Mélior est, quám túus.
It is not as good as yours.	Nôn ést tám bónus, quám túus. Mínus bónus ést, quám túus.
Are the merchant's children as good (well-behaved) as ours?	An líberi mercatóris tám béne sunt moráti, quam nostri?
They are better than ours.	Melióres, quám nóstri, súnt.
They are quite as good as ours.	Aéque bóni súnt ac nóstri. Nôn mínus bóni súnt quám nóstri.
Is my table as high as it is long?	Éstne ménsa méa tám álta, quám longa?

* Except *praeclārus*, *-ior*, *-issimus*; *praestans*, *-tior*, *-tissimus*, eminent; and others derived from verbs, as *praesens*, prompt; *perturbātus*, troubled.

† Except *iners*, inert; *misericors*, compassionate; *perennis*, perennial; and *dēmens*, crazy; which occur in the comparative, though derived from *ars*, *cor*, *annus*, *mens*.

It is not as high as it is long.	Nôn ést tám álta quám lónga. / Mínus lónga ést quám álta.
It is higher than it is long.	Áltior ést quám lóngior.
Is it higher than your tables?	Éstne altiór quam ménsae túae?
It is the highest of them all.	Altíssima ést ómnium.
Whose umbrella is the largest?	Cújus umbráculum ést május?
This (of mine) is large, that (of yours) is larger, but that (of his) is the largest of all.	Hóc ést mágnum, ístud május ést, íllud véro ómnium est máximum.
Which hat is the smallest?	Quís píleus est mínimus?
Mine is rather small, yours is even smaller, but that of our friend is the smallest of all.	Méus est párvulus, túus étiam minor est, sed amíci nostri píleus omnium est mínimus.
Whose? / *It is.*	*Cŭjus?* / *Est.*
Whose book is this?	Cújus líber ést hóc? / Cújus ést híc líber?
It is the book of my brother.	Líber ést frâtris méi.
It is my brother's.	Frâtris est.
Whose ribbon is the handsomest, yours or mine?	Útra taeniârum pulchrior est, tuáne an méa?
Yours is the handsomest (of the two).	Túa ést púlchrior.
Are the handkerchiefs of the Italians whiter than those of the Dutch?	Écquid muccínia Italôrum candidiôra súnt, quám ílla Batavôrum?
They are not any whiter.	Candidiôra nôn súnt.
They are whiter, but not as good.	Candidiôra súnt véro, at nôn aéque bóna.
Is his coat as black as mine?	Estne tóga éjus tám nígra quám méa (aéque nígra átque méa)?
It is even blacker than yours.	Est etiam nígrior quám túa est.
Do you read as well as I?	Écquid tû aéque béne légis atque égo?
I read equally well.	Égo non mínus béne légo quám tû.
I read better than you.	Égo mélius légo quám tû.
I do not read as well as you.	Mínus sciénter légo quám tû.
Well, properly.	Bĕne, belle; scienter, commŏde (*adv.*).
Better.	Mĕlius, scientius.
Light (not heavy).	Lĕvis, e.
Heavy.	Grăvis, e.
Easy.	Făcilis, e.
Difficult.	Difficilis, e.
Great, large, big.	Magnus, a, um. / Grandis, e.
Huge.	Ingens, tis.
Long.	Longus, a, um.
Short.	Brĕvis, e.

Rather short (too short).	Curtus, a, um.
Round.	Rotundus, a, um.
Rich.	Dives, itis.

Exercise 80.

Is your brother taller (*grandis*) than mine? — He is not so tall, but better than yours. — Is thy hat as bad as that of thy father? — It is better, but not so black as his. — Are the shirts of the Italians as white as those of the Irish? — They are whiter, but not so good. — Are the sticks of our friends longer than ours? — They are not longer, but heavier. — Who have the most beautiful gloves? — The French have them. — Whose horses are the finest? — Mine are fine, yours are finer than mine; but those of our friends are the finest of all. — Is your horse good? — It is good, but yours is better, and that of the Englishman is the best of all the horses which we are acquainted with. — Have you pretty shoes? — I have very pretty (ones); but my brother has prettier ones than I. — From whom (*a quo*) does he receive them? — He receives them from his best friend. — Is your wine as good as mine? — It is better. — Does your merchant sell good handkerchiefs? — He sells the best handkerchiefs that I know. — Have we more books than the French? — We have more of them than they; but the Germans have more of them than we, and the English have the most of them. — Hast thou a finer garden than that of our physician? — I have a finer (one). — Has the American a finer house than thou? — He has a finer (one). — Have we as fine children as our neighbors? — We have finer (ones).

Exercise 81.

Is your coat as long as mine? — It is shorter, but prettier than yours. — Do you go out to-day? — I do not go out to-day. — When does your father go out? — He goes out at a quarter past twelve. — Is this man older (*grandior natu*) than that (man)? — He is older, but that (man) is healthier (*robustus*). — Which of these two children is the better? — The one who studies is better than the one who plays. — Does your servant sweep as well as mine? — He sweeps better than yours. — Does the German read as many bad books as good (ones)? — He reads more good than bad (ones). — Do the merchants sell more sugar than coffee? — They sell more of the one than of the other. — Does your shoemaker make as many boots as shoes? — He makes more of the one than of the other. — Can you swim as well as the son of the nobleman? — I can swim better than he; but he can speak German better than I. — Does he read as well as you? — He reads better than I. — Have you the headache? — No, I have the earache. — Does your cousin listen to what you tell him? — He does not listen to it. — Does the son of your bailiff go into the forest? — No, he remains at home; he has sore feet. — Do you learn as well as our gardener's son? — I learn better than he, but he works better than I. — Whose carriage is the finest? — Yours is very fine, but that of the captain is still finer, and ours is the finest of all. — Has any one as fine apples as we? — No one has such fine (ones).

Lesson XLII. — PENSUM ALTERUM ET QUADRAGESIMUM.

OF THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

A. Adverbs derived from adjectives or participles, and ending in *ē*, *ter*, or *ō*,* are compared like their primitives.

The comparative of the adverb ends in *ius*, like the accusative neuter of the adjective, and the superlative assumes the termination *ē*. E. g.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
Longē,	longius,	longissimē;	*far.*
Pulchrē,	pulchrius,	pulcherrimē;	*handsomely.*
Făcilē,	făcilius,	făcillimē;	*easily.*
Audacter,	audācius,	audacissimē;	*boldly.*
Lĕvĭter,	lĕvius,	lĕvissimē;	*easily.*
Prudenter,	prudentius,	prudentissimē;	*prudently.*
Tūtō,	tūtius,	tūtissimē;	*safely.*
Rārō,	rārius,	rārissimē;	*rarely.*
Honorificē,	honorificentius,†	honorificentissimē;	*honorably.*
Saepĕ,	saepius,	saepissimē;	*often.*
Dĭū,	dĭūtius,‡	dĭūtissimē;	*long.*

B. Adverbs derived from adjectives of anomalous comparison follow the anomalies of their primitives. E. g.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
Bĕnĕ,	melius,	optimē;	*well.*
Mălē,	pejus,	pessimē;	*bad.*
Părum,	minus,	minimē;	*little.*
——,	măgis,§	maximē;	*more.*
Multum,	plūs,	plūrimum;‖	*much.*

C. The following list exhibits the adverbs of defective comparison: —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
——,	dēterius,	dēterrimē;	*worse.*
——,	ōcius,	ōcissimē;	*swifter.*

---

* Many of those in *o*, however, are not compared. On the formation of adverbs generally, see Lesson XCIII.

† Compare Lesson XL. *D.* 8.

‡ *Diu* and *saepe* have no corresponding adjectives. The root of the former seems to have been *diutus*.

§ This is properly the comp. of *magnum*, which is not used adverbially. Instead of it, *valde* and *magnopere* are commonly employed.

‖ The superlative of adverbs sometimes ends in *o* or *um*. So *primo* or *primum*, *potissimum*, *meritissimo*, &c.

———,	prĭus,	prīmum;	*before, sooner.*
———,	ūbĕrĭus,	ūberrīmē;	*more copiously.*
Nŏvē,	———,	nŏvissĭmē;	*newly, lately.*
Nūper,	———,	nūperrĭmē;	*recently.*
Paenē,	———,	paenissĭmē;	*almost, entirely.*
Pĕnĭtus,	pĕnĭtĭus,	———;	*inwardly.*
———,	pŏtĭus,	pŏtissĭmum;*	*rather.*
Mĕrĭto,	———,	mĕrĭtissĭmo;	*deservedly.*
Sătis,	sătĭus,	———;	*sufficiently.*
Tempĕrī,	tempĕrĭus,	———;	*seasonably.*
Valdē,	valdĭus,	———;	*greatly.*
Sĕcus,	sĕcĭus,	———;	*differently.*

The beginning. *The end.* *Initĭum, i,* n. *Fīnis,* m. & f.

To begin, commence.
- Incĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum.
- Exordĭor, īrī, orsus sum (*dep.*) (ALIQUID FACĔRE).
- Initĭum facere (ALICUJUS REI FACIENDAE).

To end, finish, conclude.
- Fĭnio, ire, īvī (ĭī), ītum (ALIQUID).
- Finem făcĕre (ALICUJUS REI).
- Conclūdo, ĕre, ūsi, ūsum (ALIQUID).

Will you begin to speak?
- Visne incípere lóqui?
- Visne initium făcĕre loquéndi?

I am willing to begin. Incípere nôn nôlo.

Is he beginning to speak (= to discourse).
- Incipítne (exorditúrne) dícere?
- Facítne initium dicéndi?

He is beginning. Incĭpit. Fácit initium.

No, he is finishing. Ímmo véro fînem fácit (dicéndi).

Are you finishing your letter? Concludísne epístolam túam?

I am not concluding it. Nôn conclúdo.

Not yet. Nōndŭm, haud dŭm, adhŭc nōn.

Already. Jam, jamjam, jam jamque (*adv.*).

Before.
- Prius quam (prĭusquam).
- Ante quam (antequam).
- Antĕa quam (anteaquam).
- (*Conj. with the ind. and subj.*)

Do you speak before you listen? Núm lóqueris prius quám aúdis (auscúltas)?

I never speak before I listen. Égo núnquam lóquor ánte quám aúdio.

Do you take off your stockings before you take off your boots? Núm tibiália túa prius pédibus détrahis quám cáligas?

No, I take off my boots first. Ímmo véro cáligas prius détraho.

* Also more rarely *potissime.*

Does your servant sweep the same room which I am sweeping?	Everrítne sérvus túus ipsum conclâve, quód égo evérro?
He is not sweeping the same.	Ídem nôn evérrit.
Often, frequently.	*Saepĕ, frequenter, crēbro.**
As often as you.	Tûm saépe quám tû.
As many times as you.	Tótĭes, quótĭes tû.
Quite as often as you.	Nôn mínus saépe (frequénter) quám tû.
Oftener than you.	Saépius (frequéntius) quám tû.
Not as often as you.	Nôn tám saépe, quám tû.
Early (in the morning).	Mānĕ (*adv.*), tempŏre matutīno.
Early (= in good time).	Matūrē (*comp.* matūrĭus).
Quite early (in the morning).	Bĕnĕ māne, prīmā lūce.
Quite early (generally).	Admŏdum matūre.
Late.	Sērō; tardē.
Quite late.	Sērō admŏdum. Pervespĕrī (*in the evening*).
Too.	*Nĭmis, nimium.*
Too late.	Sērō,† nĭmis sērō; post tempus. Nĭmis tarde, tardĭus. ‡
Too early (in the morning).	Nĭmio māne.
Too early (generally).	Nĭmis matūre, maturĭus.‡ Praematūre.
Too great.	Nĭmis magnus (grandis). Major, grandior (*sc.* aequo).
Too little (small).	Nĭmis parvŭlus; perparvŭlus.
Too much.	Nĭmis, nimĭum (*adv.*). Nĭmĭus, a, um. Plūs aequo, plūs justo.
To breakfast.	*Jento, āre, āvi, ātum.* *Jentācŭlum sumĕre.*
The breakfast.	Jentācŭlum, i, *n.*
Do you breakfast as early as I?	Jentâsne (sumísne jentáculum) tám béne mâne quám égo?
I breakfast as early as you.	Jénto véro tám béne mâne quám tû. Jentáculum súmo aéque matúre átque tû.
I breakfast earlier, later than you.	Égo jentáculum súmo matúrius, sérius quám tû.

* These are regularly compared: *crebrius, creberrime, frequentius, frequentissime*, &c.

† *Sero* has often the sense of *nimis sero.*

‡ With these neuter comparatives it is necessary to supply *aequo, justo*, or *opinione*; i. e. "later than expected" = "too late," "earlier than usual" = "too early," &c. (Cf. Lesson XLIII. *E.* 2.)

Does he breakfast before he begins to work?	Sumítne jentáculum, priúsquam ópus fácere íncipit?
No, indeed, he works before he breakfasts.	Mínime véro; inítium fácit operándi, antea quam jentat.
Do I come too early?	Veniône praematúre?
No, you come rather too late.	Ímmo véro (nímis) séro vénis.
Do you speak too much?	Núm lóqueris nímis?
I do not speak enough.	Ímmo véro, égo nôn sátis lóquor.

EXERCISE 82.

Do you begin to speak? — I begin to speak. — Does your brother begin to learn Italian? — He begins to learn it. — Can you already speak German? — Not yet, but I am beginning. — Do our friends begin to speak? — They do not yet begin to speak, but to read. — Does our father already begin his letter? — He does not yet begin it. — Does the merchant begin to sell? — He does begin. — Can you swim already? — Not yet, but I begin to learn. — Does your son speak before he listens? — He listens before he speaks. — Does your brother listen to you before he speaks? — He speaks before he listens to me. — Do your children read before they write? — They write before they read. — Does your servant sweep the warehouse before he sweeps the room? — He sweeps the room before he sweeps the warehouse. — Dost thou drink before thou goest out? — I go out before I drink. — Does your cousin wash his hands (*manus*) before he washes his feet? — He washes his feet before he washes his hands. — Do you extinguish the fire before you extinguish the candle? — I extinguish neither the fire nor the candle. — Do you intend to go out before you write your letters? — I intend writing my letters before I go out. — Does your son take off his boots before he takes off his coat? — My son takes off neither his boots nor his coat.

EXERCISE 83.

Do you intend to depart soon? — I intend to depart to-morrow. — Do you speak as often as I? — I do not speak as often, but my brother speaks oftener than you. — Do I go out as often as your father? — You do not go out as often as he; but he drinks oftener than you. — Do you begin to know this man? — I begin to know him. — Do you breakfast early? — We breakfast at a quarter past nine. — Does your cousin breakfast earlier than you? — He breakfasts later than I. — At what o'clock does he breakfast? — He breakfasts at eight o'clock, and I at half past six. — Do you not breakfast too early? — I breakfast too late. — Does your father breakfast as early as you? — He breakfasts later than I. — Does he finish his letters before he breakfasts? — He breakfasts before he finishes them. — Is your hat too large? — It is neither too large nor too small. — Does our gardener breakfast before he goes into the garden? — He goes into the garden before he breakfasts. — Do you read French as often as German? — I read French oftener than German. — Does the physician speak too much? — He does not speak enough. — Do the Germans drink too

much wine? — They do not drink enough of it. — Do they drink more beer than cider? — They drink more of the one than of the other. — Have you much money? — We have not enough of it. — Have your cousins much corn? — They have only a little, but enough. — Have you much more brandy? — We have not much more of it. — Have you as many tables as chairs? — I have as many of the one as of the other. — Does your friend receive as many letters as notes? — He receives more of the latter than of the former. — Do you finish before you begin? — I must begin before I finish.

Lesson XLIII. — PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM TERTIUM.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE COMPARATIVE.

A. RULE. — When two objects are compared with each other, and the first is the *subject* of the sentence, the second is frequently put in the ablative without *quam*. E. g.

Túllius Hostílius ferócior fúit *Rómulo.**	Tullius Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus.
Vílius ést argéntum *aúro, virtútibus* aûrum.	Silver is inferior to gold, and gold to virtue.
Quíd ést in hómine *ratiône* divínius?	What is there in man diviner than reason?
Quaê figûra, quaê spécies *humánā* pótest ésse púlchrior?	What figure or form can be more beautiful than the human?
Níhil ést laudabílius, níhil mágno et praecláro víro dígnius *placabilitâte* átque *clementiā*.	Nothing is more commendable, nothing more worthy of a great and distinguished man, than a forgiving disposition and clemency.
Lácrimā níhil cítius† aréscit.	Nothing dries faster than a tear.
Ne lóngius *tríduo* ab cástris ábsit.	Not to be absent from the camp longer than three days.
Fortûna plûs *consíliis humánis* póllet.	Fortune is stronger than human designs.

---

* This = *quam Romŭlus (fuit)*. So the remaining ablatives of these examples: — *quam aurum (est)*, — *quam virtutes sunt*, — *quam ratio est*. — *quam humāna (figūra* seu *species) est*, — *quam placabilitas atque clementia sunt*, &c., and in general every ablative after a comparative.

† This, and the two following examples, show that the same rule applies also to the comparative of adverbs. But this is only so when the comparison relates to the *subject* of the sentence.

Néminem* Romanôrum *Cicerône* eloquentiôrem fuísse véteres judicárunt.	In the opinion of the ancients, no Roman was more eloquent than Cicero.

REMARKS.

1. Among the most common forms of the ablative after comparatives are the neuter adjectives and participles *aequo, necessario, nimio, credibili, vero, solito, justo, dicto,* and the nouns *spe, opinione, expectatione;* as, *plus aequo,* more than is fair; *longius necessario,* further than is necessary; *magis solito,* more than usually; *dicto citius,* sooner than the word was uttered; *opinione celerius,* quicker than was expected; *serius spe,* later than was hoped; *plus nimio,* more than too much. But these ablatives are often omitted. (Compare *E.* 2.)

2. *Quam* is always put instead of the ablative, where the latter would give rise to ambiguity. E. g. *Hibernia est dimidio minor, ut aestimatur,* quam *Britannia,* Hibernia is supposed to be smaller by one half than Britannia.

3. The ablative after comparatives is the standard by which the object compared is measured with reference to the quality common to both. It may be considered an abridged proposition, and can be resolved into *quam est,* &c. Hence *quam* may always be employed instead of the ablative, but not *vice versa.* E. g.

Mélior tutiórque est cérta páx, *quám sperâta victória.*†	A certain peace is better and safer than an expected victory.
Ita séntio, locupletiôrem esse Latinam linguam,‡ *quám Graêcam.*	It is my opinion, that the Latin language is richer than the Greek.
Núllum ést cértius amicítiae vínculum, *quám consénsus et societas* consiliórum et voluntâtum.	There is no surer bond of friendship than the harmony and community of plans and wishes.
Páter Tarquínius poténtior Rómae nôn fúit, *quám filius* Gabiis.§	Tarquin the father was no more powerful at Rome than was the son at Gabii.

B. RULE. — If the object compared with another is in *an oblique case,* and dependent on another word, the conjunction *quam* is used, and the second object is either in the nominative with *est, fuit,*‖ &c., or in the same case with the first. E. g.

---

* *Neminem* is here the subject of the infinitive *fuisse,* and consequently included in the rule.

† In all these examples, *est, fuit, esse* is understood.

‡ The *subject* accusative to *esse.*

§ In this and in the preceding example the ablative is entirely inadmissible, as it would give rise to a confusion of cases.

‖ Or with the verb of the sentence understood.

Flagítii mágis nôs púdet, *quám errôris.**	We are more ashamed of a disgraceful act than of an error.
Némini mágis fáveo, *quám tibi.*	There is no one whom I favor more than I do you.
Égo hóminem calidiôrem vídi néminem, *quám Phormiônem.*	I have seen no shrewder man than Phormio.
Consílio majóres rês gerúntur, *quám* fortitúdine.	Greater things are accomplished by deliberation, than by valor.
Ab Hanníbale majóres rês géstae súnt, *quám* ab Hamílcare.	Greater exploits have been achieved by Hannibal than by Hamilcar.
Drusum Germánicum minôrem nátu, *quám ípse érat*, frâtrem amisit.	He lost Drusus Germanicus, a brother younger than he himself was.
Haêc vérba súnt M. Varrônis, *quám fúit Claúdius*, doctiôris.	These are the words of Marcus Varro, a more learned man than Claudius was.
Longínqua itínera sólā dúcis patiéntiā mitigabántur, eôdem *plûra, quám* gregário mílite, toleránte.	The long marches were mitigated by the patience of the leader alone, — he himself enduring more than a common soldier.

Remarks.

1. Instead of *quam* with an object accusative,† the ablative sometimes occurs in prose and frequently in poetry. E. g. *Est boni consŭlis suam salūtem posteriōrem* salūte commūni *ducere*, It is the duty of a consul to consider his own safety secondary to that of the commonwealth. *Neminem* Lycurgo‡ *aut majorem aut utiliorem virum Lacedaemon genuit*, Lacedæmon produced no man either greater or more useful than Lycurgus. *Quid prius dicam* solitis *parentis* laudibus? What shall I say (sing) before the accustomed praises of our parent?

2. A relative or demonstrative pronoun is commonly in the ablative where we would expect the object accusative with *quam*. E. g. *Hic Attalo*, quo§ *graviorem inimīco non habui, sororem suam in matrimonium dedi*, He gave his sister in marriage to Attalus, *than whom* I had no enemy more mortal. Hōc *mihi gratius nihil facere potes*, You could not do me a greater favor *than this.*

3. The comparative *inferior* is occasionally followed by the dative. E. g. *Nullā arte* cuiquam *inferior est*, He is not inferior to any one in any art. But commonly by the ablative or *quam;* as, *Non inferior fuit*, quam *pater*, He was not inferior to his father.

4. The adjective *alius* has sometimes the force of a comparative; as, *Ne putes alium* sapiente bonōque *beatum*, Do not consider any one but a wise and good man happy. *Nec quidquam aliud* libertate

---

* In this and the following examples the ellipsis is *quam nos pudet, quam tibi faveo, quam Phormio est, quam geruntur, quam gestae sunt.*

† After transitive verbs.

‡ Instead of *quam Lycurgum* or *quam Lycurgus fuit.*

§ Better than *quam quem.*

communi *quaesivimus*, Nor did we aim at anything else but our common liberty.

5. The prepositions *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, and *supra* serve to impart a comparative force to the positive, and to enhance that of the comparative or superlative. E. g. *Felix* ante alias *virgo*, A maiden fortunate before (= more fortunate than) others. Praeter alios *doctus*, Learned beyond others. Ante alios *immanior* omnes, More inhuman than all other men. Prae nobis *beatus*, Happier than ourselves.

6. *Magis*, *minus*, and *potius* are sometimes put emphatically with a comparative, or with *malo*, *praeopto* (I would rather, I prefer), &c. E. g. *Hoc enim* magis *est dulcius*, This is much sweeter. *Potius maluit*, He preferred. *Non* minus admirabilior *illius exitus belli*, The issue of that war was no less wonderful.

7. *Quam pro* frequently occurs after comparatives, and is equivalent to the English "than in proportion to," "than might be expected from." E. g. *Minor*, quam pro tumultu, *caedes*, Less of a massacre than one might have expected from the bustle. *Species viri majoris*, quam pro humano habitu, *augustiorisque*, The form of a man of greater than human size, and more majestic.

8. The conjunction *atque* occasionally takes the place of *quam*. E. g. *Amīcior mihi nullus vivit* atque *is est*, I have no better friend alive than he is. But this does not occur in classical prose.

9. The comparative is often negative, especially in the formulas *non magis* (*non plus*) .... *quam*, no more .... than (but rather less); *non minus* .... *quam*, no less .... than (but rather more); *non melior* .... *quam*, no better .... than (but rather worse); *non deterior* .... *quam*, no worse .... than (but rather better). E. g. *Animus in aliquo morbo* non magis *est sanus*, quam *id corpus*, *quod in morbo est*, In sickness the mind is no more (= as little) sound, than (as) the body in disease. *Patria hominibus* non minus *cara esse debet*, quam *liberi*, Their country ought to be no less dear (= equally dear) to men than (as) their children. *Luctus non Romae* major, quam *per totam Hispaniam fuit*, There was as great a sorrow throughout entire Spain, as there was at Rome.

C. After the comparatives *plus*, *amplius*, *minus*, and *longius*, the conjunction *quam* is frequently omitted without any change of case in the second object.* E. g.

Nôn *ámplius* érant *quingénti*.	There were no more than (not over) five hundred.
Plûs tértia pârs interfécta ést.	More than (over) one third of them were killed.
Constâbat *non minus ducéntos* Carthaginiénsium équites fuisse.	It was manifest, that there were no less than (at least) two hundred horsemen among the Carthaginians.

* There is generally a numeral expressed or understood in this construction. The case remains the same which it would be under the same conditions without *plus*, &c.

Quíntus têcum *plûs ánnum* víxit.	Quintus lived with you more than (over) a year.
Revérsus ést in Ásiam *mínus diêbus trigínta.*	He returned into Asia in less than thirty days.
Spátium, quód nôn ést *ámplius pédum sexcentôrum.*	A space of no more than (not over) six hundred feet.
Non *longius milia* passuum *octo.*	No farther than eight miles.

REMARKS.

1. *Quam* is likewise omitted after *major* and *minor*, when these words denote a definite age of life. E. g. *Major* (quam) *quinque annis natus*, Older than five years. *Minor* (quam) *decem annos natus*, Younger than ten years.

2. Sometimes, however, these comparatives are regularly construed with *quam* or an ablative. E. g. *Plus quam quattuor milia*, More than four thousand. *Amplius duobus milibus*, More than two thousand. *Minus tribus medimnis*, Less than three medimni. *Plus quam annum*, For more than a year.

D. When two qualities denoted by different adjectives are attributed to the same object in an unequal degree, the adjectives are either both positive with *magis* . . . . *quam*, or both comparative with *quam* simply. E. g.

Céler túus *disértus mágis* ést, *quám sápiens.*	Your friend Celer is rather eloquent than wise.*
Ártem juris habébitis, *magis* magnam atque úberem, *quam* difficilem atque obscûram.	You will have a science of law more comprehensive and rich than difficult and obscure.
Pestiléntia *minácior quám periculósior.*	A pestilence more menacing than dangerous.
Paúli Aemílii cóncio fúit *vérior, quám grátior* pópulo.	The address of Paulus Æmilius was not so acceptable to the people as it was true.
Ímpetus, nôn *ácrior, quám pertinácior.*	An assault as obstinate as it was fierce.

REMARKS.

1. The construction of adverbs is precisely the same: — *Temere* magis, quam *satis caute*, Rather rashly than with sufficient caution. Magis *honeste*, quam *vere*, More for honor's sake than correctly. *Fortius* quam *felicius*, More bravely than successfully. *Non contumeliosius* quam *verius*, No more contemptuously than truly, &c.

2. Of these two constructions the double comparative with *quam* is the most common. Sometimes the second adverb is in the positive

* I. e. More of an eloquent than of a wise man, — he has less prudence than eloquence. *Disertior est, quam sapientior*, He has considerable prudence, but yet more eloquence.

degree; as, *Vehementius quam caute*, More impetuously than cautiously. But this is an exception to the general rule.

E. The second member of a comparison is frequently suppressed. This happens, —

1. When the comparative serves to distinguish two objects of the same kind. E. g. *Graecia major, Gallia ulterior, ex duobus filiis major* seu *minor* (= the elder or younger of two sons), *major pars hominum*. So, *Uter est melior?* Which is the better of the two? *Respondeo* priori prius, I reply first to the former (of two letters).

2. When it is so general as to be readily understood from the context. E. g. *Quam ceteri, solito, aequo, justo,** &c. In these cases the comparative is commonly rendered by the positive with *somewhat, rather, too*, or *quite*. As,

Si vérsus ést syllabā unā *brévior* aut *lóngior* (sc. justo).	If the verse is a syllable too short or too long.
Senéctus ést natúrā *loquácior* (sc. quám céterae aetátes).	Old age is naturally somewhat loquacious.
Themístocles *libérius* vivêbat (sc. aequo).	Themistocles lived rather too freely.
Ócius ómnes império laéti párent (sc. dicto).†	They all obey the command with alacrity, sooner than it is uttered.
Níhil fére quóndam *majóris réi*, nísi auspicáto, gerebâtur.	Scarcely any matter of importance was formerly undertaken without auspices.
Médici *gravióribus* morbis periculósas curatiónes et ancípites adhibêre sólent.	To the acuter diseases physicians are accustomed to apply dangerous and doubtful remedies.

F. The comparative may be variously modified by other words: —

1. By the intensive *etiam* or *adhuc*, "even," "yet," "still." E. g. Etiam *majores varietates*, A still greater diversity. *Multo* etiam *longius*, Much further even. *Punctum est, quod vivimus, et* adhuc *puncto* minus, Our life is but a moment, and even less than one.

2. By the ablative of the thing, *in respect to which* one object is superior to another. E. g. *Quis Carthaginiensium pluris fuit Hannibale*, consilio, virtute, rebus gestis? What Carthaginian was superior to Hannibal, in sagacity, in valor, or in exploits? *Superior ordine*, Superior in rank. *Inferior fortunā*, Inferior in fortune.

3. By the ablative of the measure or quantity, by which the difference is estimated. E. g. *Dimidio minor*, Smaller by one half. *Decem annis minor*, Younger by ten years. Uno die *longiorem mensem aut* biduo, A month longer by one day or by two days. Uno digito *plus*

* Compare *A.* 1.

† So *plures* (sc. *quam unam*) *uxores habere*, to have several wives. *Diutius morari*, to remain too long. *Plura loqui*, to talk too much, &c.

habere, To have one finger too many. Altero tanto *longiorem esse*, To be as long again (twice as long). Sesqui *esse majorem*, To be greater by one half. *Sol* multis partibus *major atque amplior est, quam terra universa*, The sun is many times as large as our entire globe.

4. So generally by the neuter ablatives *multo*, by much, much; *paulo, parvo*, a little; *aliquanto*, somewhat, considerably; *quanto*, by as much; *tanto*, by so much; *quo*, the (more, &c.); *hoc, eo*, the (more, &c.); *altero, tanto*, by as much again; *dimidio*, by one half; *sesqui*, by one and a half; *nihilo*, by nothing. E. g. *Paulo vehementius*, A little more violently. *Multo artificiosius*, Much more skilfully. *Aliquanto atrocius*, Considerably more atrocious. *Quanto superiores sumus*, tanto *nos geramus submissius*, The greater our superiority, the more humbly let us conduct ourselves. Quo *plures erant*, (hoc) *major caedes fuit*, The greater their number, the more bloody was the massacre. Quo *major est in animis praestantia et divinior*, eo *majore indigent diligentiā*, The greater and diviner the intellectual superiority, the greater is the necessity of application. *Homines* quo *plura habent*, eo *cupiunt ampliora*, The more men possess, the more they desire.

5. Instead of the ablatives *tanto*, *quanto*, *aliquanto*, the adverbial accusatives *tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, are sometimes employed. E. g. Quantum *domo inferior*, tantum *gloriā superior evasit*, He turned out as much superior in renown, as he was inferior by birth.

Exercise 84.

Is the English language richer than the French? — It is richer. — Is it as rich (*locuples*) as the Greek? — It is not as rich; it is less rich and less flexible (*flexibilis*) than the Greek. — Which language is the richest of all? — There is no language richer than the Greek. — Is there anything more valuable (*praestantius*) than gold? — Virtues are far (*multo* or *longe*) more valuable. — Is there anything diviner in man than reason? — There is nothing diviner or fairer (*vel pulchrius*). — Can any form be fairer than the human? — No figure or form can be fairer. — What is more commendable in a great man than clemency? — There is nothing more commendable. — Is your friend more learned than his brother? — He is far more learned, but not as good. — Is he more learned than our neighbor? — He is not so learned. — Who of the Romans was (*fuit*) the most eloquent? — Cicero was the most eloquent of Roman orators. — Do you favor any one more than me? — I favor no one more than you. — Are you loved as much by your father as by your friend? — I am loved more by the former than by the latter. — Is that man inferior to the other? — He is not inferior. — Do we seek anything else than liberty. — We seek nothing else. — Is our neighbor more fortunate than others? — He is less fortunate. — Who is happier than we? — No one. — Ought our country to be as dear to us as our children? — It should be no less dear to us. — How much money have you left? — I have more than one third left. — How much has your brother left? — He has less than ten dollars left. — How many are there of us? — There are more than fifty of us.

Lesson XLIV. — PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM QUARTUM.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE SUPERLATIVE.

A. The Latin superlative serves to express two distinct relations: —

I. The quality denoted by it may be attributed to one of several objects in a higher degree than to any of the rest. This is called the *Superlative of Comparison*, and is translated by the English superlative, or by *most*. E. g.

Epístolae míhi úno díe três súnt rédditae. Rescrípsi epístolae *máximae*.	Three letters were handed to me in one day. I replied to the longest of them.
Numitóri, quî stírpis *máximus* érat, régnum légat.	He bequeathed his kingdom to Numitor, the eldest of the line.
Miltíades et glóriâ majórum et súâ modéstiâ *únus ómnium máxime* florébat.	Miltiades enjoyed the very highest distinction, both for the glory of his ancestors and for his own modesty.
Péssima sít, núlli nôn súa fórma plúcet.	Every one likes his own appearance, be it never so bad.
Míser homo est, qui ipsi quod edit* quaerit, et id aegre ínvenit; sed ílle ést *misérior*, quî et aégre quaêrit, et níhil ínvenit; ílle *misérrimus* est, qui, cum êsse† cupit, quod edit non habet.	The man is a wretched one, who has himself to seek his livelihood, and scarcely finds it; but he is more wretched, who seeks it hard and finds none; the most wretched (of all) is he, who, when he desires to eat, has nothing.

II. The quality denoted by the superlative may be attributed to an object simply in an eminent or uncommon degree. This is called the *Superlative of Eminence*, and is usually rendered by *very, uncommonly, extremely, most*, &c. As,

Gratíssimae míhi túae lítterae fuérunt.	Your letter was most (= extremely) welcome to me.
Jactâtur dómi súae vír *prîmus* et *hómo honestíssimus*.‡	He is boasted of as the first man of his family, and a most (highly) honorable man.
Si Aurélios honorífice liberalitérque tractâris, et tíbi *gratíssimos*	If you treat the Aurelii honorably and liberally, you will oblige

* For *edat*, "what he may eat." † For *edĕre*, to eat.

‡ The superlative of eminence thus commonly occurs in titles and superscriptions. E. g. *Viro* fortissimo *atque* innocentissimo *Sext. Peducaeo praetori. De viro* fortissimo *et* clarissimo *L. Sullâ, quem honoris causâ nomino*, &c.

optimôsque adolescéntes adjúnxeris, et míhi *gratíssimum* féceris.	most agreeable and excellent young men, and do me a very great favor.
Égo misérior sum, quám tú, quaê és *miserrima*.*	I am more miserable than yourself, who are extremely miserable.

B. The superlative singular frequently occurs with *quisque*, every one, and the plural with *quīque*, all. But here the singular is commonly translated by the plural. E. g.

Doctíssimus quísque.	*Every one of the most learned.*
Óptimi quíque.†	*The best men all (as a class).*
Excellentíssima quaêque.	*The most excellent things all (as a class).*
Márs ípse ex ácie *fortíssimum quémque* pignerári sólet.	Mars himself is wont to elect the bravest of the battle-field.
Pecúnia sémper *amplíssimo quôque, clarissimóque* contémpta est.	Money was always despised by all the greatest and most illustrious of men.
Múlti mortáles convenêre, máxime *próximi quíque.*	Many flocked together, especially (all) the nearest neighbors.
Notíssimum quódque málum maxime tolerábile est.	The most familiar evil is always‡ the easiest to bear.
Óptimus quísque máxime posteritáti sérvit.	The best man always serves posterity the most.
Miltiades máxime nitebâtur, ut *prímo quóque témpore*§ cástra fierent.	Miltiades made special efforts to have the camp constructed at the earliest moment possible.
Máximae cuíque fortúnae míninme credéndum est.	The greatest prosperity is always least to be trusted.

C. The superlative is sometjmes linked to another superlative of a separate clause, by means of *ut* . . . . *ita*, as . . . . so (the . . . . the).‖ E. g.

Ut quísquis óptime dicit, *ita máxime* dicéndi difficultâtem pertímescit.	The better any one speaks, the more he dreads the difficulty of speaking.

---

* The superlative of eminence alone may thus admit of a comparative.

† *Quisque* designates distributively every individual possessed of the same quality in its highest degree, and *quique* the several classes to which that quality is common.

‡ When the predicate contains an additional superlative, as in this instance, the *quisque* of the subject may be rendered by *always*. So *Optimum quidque* rarissimum *est*, The best things are always the rarest.

§ So also *Primo quoque die*, At the earliest possible day. And frequently in connection with an ordinal; as, *Quinto quoque anno*, In every fifth year. *Septimus quisque dies*, Every seventh day. *Decimum quemque militem*, Every tenth soldier.

‖ Here the superlative is rendered by the comparative, as will be perceived from the examples.

Út quísque ést vîr *óptimus, íta difficíllime* ésse álios ímprobos suspicátur.	The better the man, the less easily will he suspect others of being bad.

D. The superlative often appears in connection with *quam, quantus, qui, ut qui,** to denote that the object admits of comparison with the most eminent of its kind. E. g.

Tám súm mítis, *quám qui lenissimus.*	I am as mild as the most lenient man (that ever lived).
Tám grâtum id míhi érit, *quám quód gratíssimum.*	It will be as acceptable to me as anything ever was.
Gratíssimum míhi féceris, si huíc commendatióni méae tántum tribúeris, *quántum cuí* tribuísti *plúrimum.*	You will oblige me greatly, if you will attach as much importance to this recommendation of mine, as you ever did to any.
Grâta éa rês, *ut quae máxime* senátui únquam, fúit.	That affair was as grateful, as any ever was to the senate.
Caêsar sit pro praetôre éo jûre, *quô quí óptimo.*	Cæsar can be proprætor with as good a right, as any one ever was.
Dómus celebrâtur *íta, út cúm máxime.*	The house is as much frequented, as it ever was.
Mâter múltos jám ánnos, et núnc *cum máxime,* fílium interféctum cúpit.	For many years already the mother has wished her son killed, and now more than ever.

E. The force of the superlative may be increased in several ways: —

1. By the particles *multo, longe* (= by far), *quam,* or *vel* (= even). E. g. *Multo maximum bellum,* By much the greatest war. *Longe humanissimus,* By far the most humane. *Quam gratissimus,* Extremely grateful. *Vel minima,* Even the smallest things. *Quam brevissime,* With the utmost possible brevity.

2. By *quam, quantus, qualis,* or *ut* in connection with one of the forms of *possum.* E. g.

Caêsar *quám aequíssimo* lóco *potest,*† cástra commûnit.	Cæsar fortifies his camp in the most favorable locality he can (find).
Jugúrtha *quám máximas pótest*† cópias ármat.	Jugurtha equips the largest force he can.
Tántis ánimi corporísque dolóribus, *quánti* in hóminem *máximi* cádere *possunt.*	With as much suffering of mind and body as can possibly fall to the lot of man.
Sic Caésari tê commendávi, *ut*	I have recommended you to Cæsar

* Here the indefinite *qui* = "any one."

† With *possum* in this construction the infinitive of the nearest verb is commonly understood, as here *communire, armare.*

gravíssime diligentissimêque pótui.	in the most earnest and urgent manner I could.

3. Sometimes (though rarely) by *maxime;* as, *Maxime gravissimum,* By far the heaviest. *Hi sunt vel maxime humanissimi,* These are by far the most humane.

4. *Quam* with the positive, or *quam* (*quantum*) *volo* or *possum,* sometimes have superlative force. E. g. *quam late* (= *latissime*), far and wide; *quam magnum* = *maximum; quam potero dilucide atque perspicue,* as clearly and perspicuously as I can.

F. THE PERFECT TENSE OF "SUM."

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
I have been	fŭī	*We have been*	fŭĭmŭs
Thou hast been	fŭistī	*Ye have been*	fŭistĭs
He has been,	fŭĭt,	*They have been,*	fŭērunt *or* fŭērĕ.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
That I may have been	fŭĕrĭm	*That we may have been*	fŭĕrĭmŭs
That thou mayst have been	fŭĕrĭs	*That ye may have been*	fŭĕrĭtĭs
That he may have been,	fŭĕrĭt,	*That they may have been,*	fŭĕrĭnt.

In like manner are inflected all the compounds of *sum;* as, *abfui,* I have been absent; *adfui* and *interfui,* I have been present; *potui,* I have been able.

Ever, at any time.	*Unquam.*
Never.	*Nunquam, nullo tempŏre.*
Have you been at the market?	Fuistĭne in fóro?
I have been there.	Fúi.
Have I been there?	Egón' íbi fúi?
You have been there.	Fuísti.
You have not been there.	(Íbi) nôn fuísti.
Has your father been there?	Fuítne páter túus íllic?
He has not been there?	Nôn fúit (íllic).
Have we been there?	Án nôs íbi fúimus?
Yes, ye have been there.	Sáne quídem, fuístis.
Have you been at the ball?	Interfuistĭne saltatióni?
I have been there.	Intérfui.
Have they been there?	Núm ílli interfuérunt? / Illĭne interfuérunt?
They have not been there.	Nôn interfuérunt.
Have you ever been at the play?	Interfuistine únquam spectáculo?
I have never been there.	Ego véro núnquam intérfui.
You have never been there.	Tù núnquam interfuísti.
He has never been there.	Ílle núnquam intérfuit.
Have you already been in the garden?	Fuistine jám in hórtulo?

I have not yet been there.	Nôndum fúi. Égo íbi nôndum fúi.
You have not yet been there.	Tû íbi nôndum fuísti.
Nor have they ever been there.	Néque ílli únquam íbi fuérunt.
Have you already been at my father's ?	Fuistîne jám ápud pátrem méam (cum pátre méo) ?
I have not yet been there ?	Égo ápud éum (cum éo) nôndum fúi.
The play, spectacle.	Spectacŭlum, i, *n.*

Exercise 85.

Where have you been ? — I have been at the market. — Have you been at the ball ? — I have been there. — Have I been at the play ? — You have been there. — Hast thou been there ? — I have not been there. — Has your cousin ever been at the theatre ? — He has never been there. — Hast thou already been in the great square ? — I have never been there. — Do you intend to go thither ? — I intend to go thither — When will you go thither ? — I will go thither to-morrow. — At what o'clock ? — At twelve o'clock. — Has your son already been in my large garden ? — He has not yet been there. — Does he intend to see it ? — He does intend to see it. — When will he go thither ? — He will go thither to-day. — Does he intend to go to the ball this evening ? — He does intend to go thither. — Have you already been at the ball ? — I have not yet been there. — When do you intend to go thither ? — I intend to go thither to-morrow. — Have you already been in the Englishman's room ? — I have not yet been in it. — Have you been in my rooms ? — I have been there. — When have you been there ? — I have been there this morning. — Have I been in your room or in that (*an in illo*) of your friend ? — You have neither been in mine nor in that of my friend, but in that of the Italian.

Exercise 86.

Has the Dutchman been in our storehouses or in those (*in illis*) of the English ? — He has neither been in ours nor in those of the English, but in those of the Italians. — Hast thou already been at the market ? — I have not yet been there, but I intend to go thither. — Has the son of our bailiff been there ? — He has been there. — When has he been there ? — He has been there to-day. — Does the son of our neighbor intend to go to the market ? — He does intend to go thither. — What does he wish to buy there ? — He wishes to buy some chickens, oxen, cheese, beer, and cider there. — Have you already been at my cousin's house ? — I have already been there. — Has your friend already been there ? — He has not yet been there. — Have we already been at our friends' ? — We have not yet been there. — Have our friends ever been at our house ? — They have never been there. — Have you ever been at the theatre ? — I have never been there. — Have you a mind to write a letter ? — I have a mind to write one. — To whom do you wish to write ? — I wish to write to my son. —

Has your father already been in the country? — He has not yet been there, but he intends to go thither. — Does he intend to go thither to-day? — He intends to go thither to-morrow. — At what o'clock will he depart? — He will depart at half past six. — Does he intend to depart before he breakfasts? — He intends to breakfast before he departs. — Have you been anywhere? — I have been nowhere.

Lesson XLV. — PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM QUINTUM.

OF THE PERFECT TENSE.

A. The perfect tense serves to represent an action or event as completed, either just now or at some indefinite past time. As,

Amāvi, { I have loved (just now), *or* I loved (once, yesterday).

Scripsi, { I have written (and have now done writing), *or* I wrote (at some past time).

1. With the former of these significations it is called the *perfect definite*, and corresponds to the same tense in English. With the latter, it is called the *perfect indefinite*, and corresponds to the simple form of the English imperfect.*

2. The perfect indefinite occurs most frequently as the tense of historical narration. E. g. *Cato, quoad* vixit, *virtutum laude* crēvit, Cato increased in reputation for virtue, as long as he lived. *Lepidus ad me heri vesperi litteras* misit, Lepidus sent me a letter last evening.

3. Examples of the perfect definite are: — *Filium unĭcum adolescentulum habeo. Ah! quid* dixi, *me habere? imo* habui, — I have an only son. Alas! What, did I say "I have one"? No, I have had one. Fuimus *Troes*, fuit *Ilium*, We Trojans have been, Ilium has existed (but is now no longer). *Ferus omnia Juppiter Argos* transtŭlit, Cruel Jupiter has transferred everything to Argos (and it is there now).

FORMATION OF THE PERFECT ACTIVE.

B. The terminations of the perfect tense for the respective conjugations are: 1. *āvi*, 2. *ŭi* (*ēvi*), 3. *i*, 4. *īvi* (*ĭi*). E. g.

---

* I. e. to the form *I loved, wrote*, &c., but not to *I was loving, writing*, which is the Latin Imperfect.

1. Amāvi, laborāvi, apportāvi, lāvi (= lavāvi).
2. Monŭi, habŭi, studŭi, — delēvi, complēvi.
3. Lēgi, scripsi, dilexi, attŭli, mīsi.
4. Audīvi, scīvi, īvi, prodlī, sitīvi.

Remarks.

1. The perfect tense contains the second root of the verb, which serves as the basis for the formation of several other parts. (Cf. Lesson XXVIII. *C.* 1–5).

2. The second root of the first, second, and fourth conjugations is formed from the first or general root (*am*, *mon*, *aud*), by adding, 1. *āv*, 2. *ēv* (*ŭ*),* 4. *iv*; as *amāv*, *delēv* (*monŭ*), *audīv*.

3. The second root of the third conjugation is either the same as the first,† as *lēg*, *exŭ*, *blb*, or is formed by adding *s*,‡ as *scrips* (= scrib + s), *dix* (= dic + s), *dux* (= duc + s).

4. Some verbs of the second conjugation form their second root according to the analogy of the third, and, *vice versa*, several of the third assume *ŭi*. E. *g.* *augeo — auxi*, *fulgeo — fulsi*, *video — vīdi*;§ *alo — alŭi*, *colo — colŭi*, *pōno — pŏsŭi*, &c.

5. Many verbs form their second root irregularly; as, 1. *Seco — secŭi*, *lavo — lāvi*, *veto — vetŭi*, &c. 2. *Jubeo — jussi*, *haereo — haesi*, *audeo — ausus sum*, &c. 3. *Arcesso — arcessīvi*, *cresco — crēvi*, *cupio — cupīvi*, *fĕro — tŭli*, *mitto — mīsi*, *nosco — nōvi*, *quaero — quaesīvi*, *sperno — sprēvi*, *uro — ussi*, *verro* (*everro*) *— verri*, &c. 4. *Aperio — aperŭi*, *farcio — farsi*, *salio — salŭi*, *sarcio — sarsi*, *venio — vēni*, &c. A list of these is given at the end of the Grammar.

6. A number of verbs reduplicate the initial consonant in the second root; as, *do — dĕdi*, *sto — stĕti*,‖ *curro — cucurri*, *disco — didici*, *posco — popŏsci*, *mordeo — momordi*, &c.

7. Compounds generally form the second root like their simple verbs; as, *affero* (*adfero*) *— attŭli* (= ad + tuli), *conficio — confēci*, *exaudio — exaudīvi*, &c.

---

* Most verbs of the second conjugation have *u*, but the original termination was *ev*, which by dropping *e* becomes *v* or *u*.

† Always the same when the root ends in a vowel; as, *minŭo — minŭi*, *acŭo, — acŭi*, *metŭo — metŭi*, &c.

‡ This *s*, preceded by *c*, *g*, *h*, or *qu*, gives rise to the compound consonant *x*; as, *dico — dixi*, *figo — fixi*, *traho — traxi*, *coquo — coxi*.

When preceded by *b*, the latter is changed into *p*; as *nubo — nupsi*, *scribo — scripsi*, &c.

When preceded by *d*, either *d* or *s* is dropped (most commonly the latter); as, *edo — ēdi*, *defendo — defendi*; *claudo — clausi*, *lūdo — lūsi*.

An *s* in the first root is frequently dropped in the second, and the root-vowel prolonged; as, *frango — frēgi*, *fundo — fūdi*, *vinco — vīci*, *relinquo — relīqui*.

§ The prolongation (and change) of the root-vowel is quite frequent; as, *căpio — cēpi*, *ago — ēgi*, *făcio — fēci*, *lĕgo — lēgi*, *vĕnio — vēni*, &c.

‖ *Sto* and *spondeo* drop the second *s*: *spopondi*. This reduplication includes the vowel following the consonant, which sometimes, however, is changed into *e*; as *fallo — fefelli*.

8. The perfect subjunctive is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ĕrim*, as, *amāvi* — *amāvĕrim*, *monŭi* — *monŭerim*, &c.

INFLECTION OF THE PERFECT ACTIVE.

C. The following paradigms exhibit the inflection of the perfect, indicative and subjunctive: —

FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Amāvi, *I loved, have loved.*	Amāvĕrim, *that I may have loved.*
SING. ămāvī	SING. ămāvĕrĭm
ămāvistī	ămāvĕrĭs
ămāvĭt,	ămāvĕrĭt,
PLUR. ămāvĭmŭs	PLUR. ămāvĕrĭmŭs
ămāvistĭs	ămāvĕrĭtis
ămāvērunt *or* -re.*	ămāvĕrint.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Monŭi, *I reminded, have reminded.*	Monuĕrim, *that I may have reminded.*
SING. mŏnŭī	SING. mŏnŭĕrĭm
mŏnŭistī	mŏnŭĕrĭs
mŏnŭĭt,	mŏnŭĕrĭt,
PLUR. mŏnŭĭmŭs	PLUR. mŏnŭĕrĭmŭs
mŏnŭistĭs	mŏnŭĕrĭtĭs
mŏnuērunt *or* -re.	mŏnŭĕrint.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Lēgi, *I read, have read.*	Lēgĕrim, *that I may have read.*
SING. lēgī	SING. lēgĕrĭm
lēgistī	lēgĕrĭs
lēgĭt,	lēgĕrĭt,
PLUR. lēgĭmŭs	PLUR. lēgĕrĭmŭs
lēgistĭs	lēgĕrĭtĭs
lēgērunt *or* -re.	lēgĕrint.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Audīvi, *I heard, have heard.*	Audīvĕrim, *that I may have heard.*
SING. audīvī	SING. audīvĕrĭm
audīvistī	audīvĕrĭs
audīvĭt,	audīvĕrĭt,

* The form in *ērunt* is the more common of the two.

PLUR. audīvīmŭs	PLUR. audīvĕrīmŭs
audīvistīs	audīvĕrītis
audīvērunt *or* -re.	audīvērint.

So conjugate *apportāvi*, I have brought; *lāvi*, I have washed; *curāvi*, I have ordered; — *vīdi*, I have seen; *vēni*, I have come; *habŭi*, I have had; *secŭi*, I have cut; *jussi*, I have commanded; — *fēci*, I have made; *refēci*, I have mended; *mīsi*, I have sent; *volŭi* and *nolŭi*, I have been willing, unwilling; — *cupīvi*, I have desired; *īvi* (*exīi*, *prodīi*), * I have gone (out, forth); *quaesīvi*, I have sought, &c.

REMARKS.

In the tenses derived from the second root, the syllables *āvi*, *ēvi*, *īvi* are frequently contracted.

a.) In the first conjugation, *āvi* followed by an *s*, and *ave* followed by an *r*, are changed into *ā*; as, *amâsti*, *amâstis*, *amâssem*, *amâsse*, for *amavisti*, *amavistis*, *amavissem*, *amavisse*, &c., and *amârunt*, *amârim*, *amâram*, *amâro*, instead of *amavērunt*, *amāvĕram*, *amāvĕro*, &c.

b.) The same takes place with *ēvi* of the second and third conjugations; as, *complêsti*, *complêsse*, *nêsti*, *nêstis*, for *complevisti*, *complevisse*, *nevisti*, *nevistis*, and *delêram*, *consuêrunt*, *nêrunt*, instead of *delevĕram*, *consuevērunt*, *nevērunt*. So *decrêssem*, *decrêsse*, *quiêssem siris*, for *decrevissem*, &c. The termination *ōvi* of *novi* and its compounds, and also of the compounds of *moveo*, suffers a similar contraction; as, *nôrunt*, *nôsse*, *cognôram*, *commôssem*, instead of *novērunt*, *novisse*, &c.

c.) In the fourth conjugation *īvi* before *s* frequently experiences a similar change; as, *audîsti*, *audîssem*, *audîsse*, for *audīvisti*, *audīvissem*, *audīvisse*, &c. But most verbs of this conjugation have a second form in *ii*, which sometimes occurs in poetry, and, when an *r* follows, also in prose; as, *audĭit*, *impedĭit*, *abĭisse*, for *audīvit*, *impedīvit*, *abīvisse*, and (more frequently) *audieram*, *quaesierat*, *definierant*, instead of *audiveram*, &c.

d.) The syllable *is*, when preceded by an *s* or *x*, is sometimes syncopated in the perfect tense of the third conjugation; as, *dixti*, *surrexe*, *evasti*, *divisse*, for *dixisti*, *surrexisse*, *evasisti*, *divisisse*, &c. But this contraction is antiquated, and used sometimes only by the poets.

e.) Antiquated forms of the perfect subjunctive are those in *assim*, *essim*, and *sim* (for *averim*, *uerim*, *erim*), which frequently occur in Plautus and Terence. E. g. *imperassit*, *licessit*, *occĭsit*, instead of *imperaverit*, *licuerit*, *occiserit*. Among these forms are included *faxit*, *faxint* (for *fecerit*, *fecerint*),† and *ausim*, *ausit* (for *ausus sim*, *ausus sit*), which have remained in use among the later writers.

Have you had my coat?	Habuistīne méam tógam?
I have had it.	Hábui.

* All the compos. of *eo* have *ĭi* rather than *īvi*.

† In invocations and wishes, as, *Faxit Deus*, God grant! *Dii immortales faxint!*

No, indeed, I have not had it.	Nôn véro, égo éam nôn hábui.
Have I had it?	Án égo éam hábui? / Egón' éam hábui?
Yes, you have had it.	Sáne quídem, éam habuísti.
Has he had any wine?	Habuítne vînum?
He has had a little.	Hábuit véro aliquántulum.
He has had none.	Núllum hábuit. / Nôn hábuit.
Have we had some books?	Habuimúsne áliquot líbros?
Yes, you have had some.	Sáne quídem, nonnúllos habuístis.
Have they had anything?	Núm quíd habuérunt?
They have had nothing.	Nihil habuérunt.
Has he been right or wrong?	Útrum vére locûtus est, an errâvit?
He has been correct.	Vére locûtus est.
He has never been either right or wrong.	Ílle núnquam néque vére locûtus est, néque errâvit.
To take place.	*Lŏcum habēre.* / *Lŏcus est alicui rei.* / *Lŏcus datur alicui rei.*
Does the ball take place this evening?	Datúrne (éstne) lócus saltatióni hódie vésperi?
It does take place.	Dátur. Est.
When did the ball take place?	Quándo fúit lócus saltatióni? / Quô témpore dátus est lócus saltatióni?
It took place yesterday.	Héri.
Yesterday.	Hĕri; hesterno die.
The day before yesterday.	Nudĭus tertĭus.
The first time, the second time, the third time, &c.	Primum, itĕrum, tertium, quartum, &c. (*adverbs*).
The last time.	Postrēmum, ultĭmum.
This time.	Nunc (*adv.*), hoc tempŏre.
Another time.	Alĭas (*adv.*), allo tempŏre.
Many times.	Saepĭus (*adv. comp.*), sexcenties.
Several times.	Diversis temporĭbus. / Non uno tempore.
Time and again.	Iterum ac saepius, semel atque iterum.
How many times?	*Quotĭes? Quotĭens?* (adv.)
So (*as*) *many times.*	*Totĭes, totĭens.* (adv.)
As many times (as often) .... as.	Quotĭes .... totĭes. / Totĭes .... quotĭes.
Once, twice, three times, four times, &c. (Cf. Lesson XXI. *F.*)	Sĕmĕl, bis, tĕr, quăter, quinquĭes, sexĭes, &c.
Sometimes.	Interĭum, nonnunquam. (*adv.*)
Formerly, once.	Antĕhac, ōlim, quondam.

To be accustomed, wont.	*Sŏlĕo, ēre, sŏlĭtus sum* (ALIQUID FACERE).
It is lawful, right.	*Lĭcĕt, lĭcŭit,* or *lĭcĭtum est* (ALICUI ALIQUID FACERE).
Are you accustomed to go to the market sometimes?	Solêsne íre ínterdum in fórum?
I am accustomed to go there sometimes.	Sóleo éo íre nonnúnquam.
Have you ever gone to the ball?	Ivístine únquam saltâtum?
I have gone there several times.	Égo véro ívi divérsis tempóribus.
I have gone there time and again.	Ívi véro sémel átque íterum (íterum ac saépius)
And I have never gone.	Égo aûtem núnquam ívi
Have I been wrong in buying books?	Núm míhi líbros émere nôn lícuit?
You have not been wrong in buying.	Ímmo véro tíbi quôsdam émere lícuit.

EXERCISE 87.

Have you had my glove? — I have had it. — Have you had my pocket-handkerchief? — I have not had it. — Hast thou had my umbrella? — I have not had it. — Hast thou had my pretty knife? — I have had it. — When hadst thou it? — I had it yesterday. — Have I had thy gloves? — You have had them. — Has your brother had my wooden hammer? — He has had it. — Has he had my golden ribbon? — He has not had it. — Have the English had my beautiful ship? — They have had it. — Who has had my thread stockings? — Your servants have had them. — Have we had the iron trunk of our good neighbor? — We have had it. — Have we had his fine carriage? — We have not had it. — Have we had the stone tables of the foreigners? — We have not had them. — Have we had the wooden leg of the Irishman? — We have not had it. — Has the American had my good work? — He has had it. — Has he had my silver knife? — He has not had it. — Has the young man had the first volume of my work? — He has not had the first, but the second. — Has he had it? — Yes, sir, he has had it — When has he had it? — He has had it this morning. — Have you had sugar? — I have had some. — Have I had good paper? — You have had some. — Has the sailor had brandy? — He has had some. — Have you had any? — I have had none. — Have you had the headache? — I have had the toothache. — Have you had anything good? — I have had nothing bad. — Did the ball take place yesterday? — It did take place. — When does the ball take place? — It takes place this evening.

EXERCISE 88.

Has the German had good beer? — He has had some. — Hast thou had large cakes? — I have had some. — Has thy brother had any? — He has had none. — Has the son of our gardener had flour? — He has had some. — Have the Poles had good tobacco? — They have had

some. — What tobacco have they had? — They have had tobacco for smoking, and snuff. — Have the English had as much sugar as tea? — They have had as much of the one as of the other. — Has the physician been right? — He has been wrong. — Has the Dutchman been right or wrong? — He never has been either right or wrong? — Have I been wrong in buying honey? — You have been wrong in buying some. — What has your cousin had? — He has had your boots and shoes. — Has he had my good biscuits? — He has not had them. — What has the Spaniard had? — He has had nothing. — Who has had courage? — The English have had some. — Have the English had many friends? — They have had many of them. — Have we had many enemies? — We have not had many of them. — Have we had more friends than enemies? — We have had more of the latter than of the former. — Has your son had more wine than meat? — He has had more of the latter than of the former. — Has the Turk had more pepper than corn? — He has had more of the one than of the other. — Has the painter had anything? — He has had nothing.

Exercise 89.

How often have you read that book? — I have read it twice. — Have you ever heard this man? — I have never heard him. — Have you heard him sometimes? — I have heard him sometimes. — Do you sometimes go to the theatre? — I go thither sometimes. — Has your brother gone to the ball? — He has (gone there). — Has he gone to the ball as often as you? — He has gone (thither) oftener than I. — Do you sometimes go into the garden? — I formerly went into it frequently. — Does your old cook ever go to the market? — He goes there frequently. — He went there the day before yesterday — Hast thou gone to the ball oftener than thy brothers? — I have gone thither oftener than they — Has your cousin often been at the play? — He has been there several times — Have you sometimes been hungry? I have often been hungry. — Has your valet often been thirsty? — He has never been either hungry or thirsty. — Have you gone to the play early? — I have gone thither late. — Have I gone to the ball as early as you? — You have gone thither earlier than I. — Has your brother gone thither too late? — He has gone thither too early. — Have your brothers had anything? — They have had nothing. — Who has had my purse and my money? — Your servant has had both. — Has he had my stick and my hat? — He has had both. — Hast thou had my horse or that of my brother? — I have had neither yours nor that of your brother. — Have I had your note or that of the physician? — You have had both — What has the physician had? — He has had nothing — Has anybody had my golden candlestick? — Nobody has had it. — When hast thou been at the ball? — I was (there) last evening. — Hast thou found any one there? — I have found no one there.

Lesson XLVI. — PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM SEXTUM.

OF THE PERFECT PASSIVE.

A. The perfect tense of the passive voice is composed of the perfect participle and *sum* or *fui*. Thus: —

INDICATIV		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Amātus sum *or* fui, *I have been loved*, or *I was loved.*		Amātus sim *or* fuĕrim, *that I may have been loved.*	
SING.	amātus sum *or* fui	SING.	amātus sĭm *or* fuĕrim
	amātus ĕs *or* fuisti		amātus sĭs *or* fuĕris
	amātus est *or* fuit,		amātus sĭt *or* fuĕrit,
PLUR.	amāti sŭmus *or* fuĭmus	PLUR.	amāti sīmus *or* fuerĭmus
	amāti estis *or* fuistis		amāti sītis *or* fuerĭtis
	amāti sunt *or* fuērunt.*		amāti sint *or* fuĕrint.

So inflect *monĭtus sum*, I have been admonished; *lectus sum*, I have been read; *audītus sum*, I have been heard. To these add *lacerātus sum*, I have been torn; *lautus sum*, I have been washed; *servātus sum*, I have been preserved; *laudātus sum*, I have been praised; *vituperātus sum*, I have been blamed; *ornātus sum*, I have been adorned; *doctus sum*, I have been taught; *habĭtus sum*, I have been held; *jussus sum*, I have been commanded; — *dilectus sum*, I have been cherished; *ductus sum*, I have been led; *fractus sum*, I have been broken; *missus sum*, I have been sent; *scriptus sum*, I have been written; *sublātus sum*, I have been taken away; *erudītus sum*, I have been instructed; *munītus sum*, I have been defended; *punītus sum*, I have been punished; *vestītus sum*, I have been clothed.

REMARKS.

1. The perfect participle employed in the formation of this tense is derived from the supine in *um*, which is usually termed the *third* root of the verb. (Cf. Lesson XXIV. *C.* Rem. 1.)

2. The third root of the first, second, and fourth conjugations is derived from the first or general root (*am*, *mon*, *aud*) by annexing, 1. *āt*, 2. *ĭt* (*ĕt*), 4. *ĭt*; as, *amātum*, *monĭtum* (*delētum*), *audītum*.

3. The third root of the third conjugation is formed by annexing *t* to the general root; as, *dictum*, *exūtum*, *lectum*. This *t* of the third root, like the *s* of the second (p. 237, note ‡), gives rise to several modifications of the consonants preceding it. Thus: —

a.) When the first root ends in *g*, *h*, or *qu*, these letters are changed into *c*; as, *rego* — *rectum*, *traho* — *tractum*, *coquo* — *coctum*.

---

* So if the subject is feminine, Sing. *amāta sum*, *es*, *est*; Plur. *amātæ sŭmus*, *estis*, *sunt*; and when neuter, Sing. *amātum est*; Plur. *amāta sunt*.

b.) *B* is changed into *p*; as, *scribo — scriptum, nubo — nuptum.*

c.) Sometimes the root is changed before the addition of *t*; as, *colo — cultum, frango — fractum, gero — gestum, rumpo — ruptum, sperno — sprētum, sterno — strātum, uro — ustum, vinco — victum.*

d.) When the first root ends in *d* or *t*, the third adds *s* instead of *t*, and those letters are either dropped or converted into *s*; as, *edo — ēsum, defendo — defensum, lūdo — lūsum, discedo — discessum.*

e.) A number of other verbs add likewise *s* and modify the root; as, *excello — excelsum, fallo — falsum, pello — pulsum, premo — pressum, spargo — sparsum, verro — versum.*

f.) Some verbs in *sco* drop *sc* before the *t* of the third root; as, *cresco — crētum, nosco — nōtum, quiesco — quiētum, pasco — pastum.*

g.) A number of verbs form their third root in *ĭt* or *ūt*, as, *bĭbo — bibĭtum, vomo — vomĭtum, pōno — posĭtum, arcesso — arcessītum, cupio — cupītum, quaero — quaesītum*, &c.

4. The reduplication (p. 237, Rem. 6) does not extend to the third root. E. g *do — dătum, stō — stătum, curro — cursum, mordeo — morsum*, &c.

5. Verbs which are irregular in the second root are generally likewise so in the third; as, *seco — sectum, lavo — lavātum* (but *lautus* or *lōtus*), *fero — latum, aperio — apertum, mitto — missum, salio — salsum, venio — ventum*, &c.

6. Inceptive verbs in *sco* generally want the third root, and so many others. For these, and other irregularities of verbs, the student may consult the list of irregular verbs at the end of the book, or his lexicon.

Have you been loved?	Ésne (fuistíne) amâtus?
I have been loved.	Amâtus sum.
Has he been hated?	Fuítne in ódio?
He was not hated.	In ódio nôn fúit.
Has she been praised?	Écquid est laudâta? Éstne laudâta?
Yes, truly, she has been praised.	Sáne quídem, laudâta est (fúit).
No, she has been blamed	Immo véro vituperâta est.
Has any one been punished?	Écquis ést punîtus? Númquis est poénā afféctus?
No one has been punished.	Némo punîtus ést. Némo quísquam poénā afféctus est.
Who has been rewarded?	Quís est praémio ornâtus?
The young man has been rewarded.	Adolescéntulus praémio ornâtus est.
Have we been despised?	Núm nôs contémpti súmus?
We have not been despised.	Nôn súmus
Have they (*fem.*) been reprehended?	An íllae reprehénsae sunt?
They have been reprehended.	Véro quídem, reprehénsae sunt.
Have ye been sent?	Éstis míssi? Núm éstis míssi?
We have not been sent.	Míssi nôn súmus.

PERFECT OF DEPONENT VERBS.

B. The perfect tense of deponent verbs is formed like that of the passive voice (cf. *A.*). Thus: —

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Hortātus sum *or* fui, *I have exhorted, I exhorted.*	Hortātus sim *or* fuerim, *that I may have exhorted.*
SING.	hortātus sum *or* fui	hortātus sim *or* fuĕrim
	hortātus ĕs *or* fuisti	hortātus sīs *or* fuĕris
	hortātus est *or* fuit,	hortātus sit *or* fuĕrit,
PLUR.	hortāti sūmus *or* fuímus	hortāti sīmus *or* fuĕrímus
	hortāti estis *or* fuistis	hortāti sītis *or* fuĕrítis
	hortāti sunt *or* fuērunt.	hortāti sint *or* fuerint.

So *verĭtus sum* or *fui*, I have feared; *locūtus sum* or *fui*, I have spoken; *blandītus sum* or *fui*, I have flattered. To these add *arbitrātus sum*, I have thought; *comitātus sum*, I have escorted; *morātus sum*, I have delayed; — *mĕrĭtus sum*, I have earned; *miserĭtus sum*, I have pitied; *tŭĭtus sum*, I have defended; — *lapsus sum*, I have fallen; *oblītus sum*, I have forgotten; *profectus sum*, I have departed; *secūtus sum*, I have followed; — *expertus sum*, I have experienced; *largītus sum*, I have lavished, &c. (Cf. Lesson XXXV.)

Have you ever spoken Latin?	*Locutúsne és únquam Latíne?*
I have never spoken it.	*Núnquam locútus sum.*
Has he been accustomed to write letters?	Solitúsne est scríbere epístolas?
He has been accustomed (to do so).	Sáne quídem, sólitus est.
Who have obtained the preference?	Quís principâtum consecûtus est?
Our friend (has obtained it).	Nóster amícus.
We have obtained it ourselves.	Nôsmet ípsi principâtum consecúti súmus.
Whom have they flattered?	Cui * blandíti súnt?
They have flattered no one.	Blandíti súnt némini.
Has he departed (for a journey)?	Núm est profĕctus?
He has not yet left.	Nôndum profĕctus ést.
Has she remained at home?	Moratáne est dómi?
Yes, she has (remained).	Véro, morâta est.
How much money has he lavished?	Quántum pecúniae largítus est ílle?
He has lavished more than was proper.	Largítus ést plûs (ámplius) aéquo.
Have you spent more money than I?	Largitúsne és majórem pecúniam quám égo?

* *Blandīri* ALICUI is the usual construction.

No, I have (on the contrary) spent less.	Immo véro minôrem largítus sum.
The king.	Rex, rēgis, *m.*
The successor.	Successor, ōris,* *m.*
The lawyer, barrister, counsellor.	Patrōnus (i, *m.*) causārum; causídicus, i, *m.*; jurisconsultus, i, *m.*
The office, employment.	Mūnus, ĕris, *n.*
Learned.	Doctus, erudītus, a, um.
To succeed (one in office).	Succēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum (IN ALICUJUS LOCUM, REGNO).
To grow sick, to be taken ill.	Aegresco, ĕre, ——, ——.† / Fīo (fiĕri, factus sum) aegrōtus.
To fall sick.	Incīdo (ĕre, cīdi, cāsum) in morbum.
To recover one's health, to grow well.	Convalesco, ĕre, lūi, ——. / Fīo (fiĕri, factus sum) sānus.
What has become of him?	*Quid ex éo factum est?* / *Quid éi (de éo) fáctum ést?*
He has become a doctor, a lawyer, a king.	Fáctus ést médicus, patrônus causârum, réx.
He has turned soldier.	Fáctus ést miles.
He has enlisted.	Relâtus‡ est inter mílites.
Have you become a lawyer?	Factúsne és consídicus?
No, I have become a merchant.	Nôn véro, fáctus súm mercâtor.
What becomes of children?	Quíd fít ex líberis?
Children become men.	Líberi fiunt homines adúlti. / Fíunt ex líberis hómines adúlti.
Has he fallen sick?	Incidítne in mórbum?
He has fallen sick.	Véro quídem, incidit.
Have you recovered your health?	Factúsne és sânus? / Convaluistîne ex mórbo?
I have not recovered.	Nôn factus sum. / Nôn conválui.
Whom has he succeeded (in office)?	Cújus in lócum succéssit? / Cújus múneris fáctus est succéssor?
He has succeeded the king (to the throne).	In lócum rêgis succéssit. / Fáctus est succéssor rêgis.

EXERCISE 90.

Why has that child been praised? — It has been praised because it has studied well. — Hast thou ever been praised? — I have often been praised. — Why has that other child been punished? — It has been punished because it has been naughty and idle. — Has this child been rewarded? — It has been rewarded, because it has worked well. — When was that man punished? — He was punished day before

---

* This word always requires the genitive of the office.

† Compare *A.* Rem. 6.

‡ From *refĕro, -ĕrre, -tŭli, -lātum.*

yesterday. — Why have we been esteemed? — Because we have been studious and obedient. — Why have these people been hated? — Because they have been disobedient. — By whom has the room been swept? — It has been swept by your servant. — How many times has it been swept? — It has been swept twice. — Has your book been read as often as mine? — It has been read oftener than yours. — Why has that book been burnt? — Because it was a worthless one. — Have you been commanded to write? — I have not been commanded to write, but to speak. — Whither has the young man been sent? — He has been sent into the country. — By whom have you been instructed? — I have been instructed by my parents and masters. — Has the book been torn by any one? — It has been torn by our children. — Have our shirts been washed? — They have not yet been washed. — When were our glasses broken? — They were broken yesterday. — Have you been punished as severely (*tam severe*) as I? — I have been punished more severely than you. — By whom were these letters written? — They were written by our enemies. — Has our friend been loved by his masters? — He has been loved and praised by them, because he was studious and good; but his brother has been despised by his, because he was naughty and idle.

Exercise 91.

What has become of your friend? — He has become a lawyer. — What has become of your cousin? — He has enlisted. — Was your uncle taken ill? — He was taken ill, and I became his successor in his office. — Why did this man not work? — He could not work, because he was taken ill. — Has he recovered? — He has recovered. — What has become of him? — He has turned a merchant. — What has become of his children? — His children have become men. — What has become of your son? — He has become a great man. — Has he become learned? — He has become learned. — What has become of my book? — I do not know (*Haud scio*) what has become of it. — Have you torn it? — I have not torn it. — What has become of our neighbor? — I do not know what has become of him. — When did your father set out? — He set out yesterday. — Have our friends already set out? — They have not yet set out. — With whom have you spoken? — I have spoken with my neighbor. — Has any one spoken to those men? — No one has spoken to them. — Whose money have they squandered? — They have squandered their own. — Has any one exhorted you? — My master has exhorted me. — Has your brother obtained the preference? — He has not obtained it. — Have you flattered any one? — I never flatter any one. — Do our enemies flatter us? — They do flatter us. — Has your father remained at home? — He has remained. — Did he remain at home yesterday? — He did not remain at home. — Have you been accustomed to go to the theatre? — I have not been accustomed to go. — Whom has your brother succeeded in office? — He has become the successor of his father.

Lesson XLVII. — PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

OF THE SUPINES.

A. The supine in *um* always implies a purpose (*to, in order to, for the purpose of*), and is chiefly used after verbs of motion, such as *eo, abeo, venio, mitto, missus sum, do*, &c. As,

Éo cúbĭtum, saltâtum, venâtum, êsum.	I go to sleep, to dance, to hunt, to eat.
Ábeo exulâtum, pátriam defénsum, pâcem petîtum.	I go off into exile, to defend my country, to sue for peace.
Vénio quéstum, sciscitâtum, gratulâtum.	I come to complain, to inquire, to congratulate.
Rédeo spectâtum, obsecrâtum, hiemâtum.	I return to see, to beseech, to winter.
Míssus sum bellâtum, cónsúltum.	I have been sent to wage war, to consult.
Dô álicui áliquam núptum.	I give some one in marriage.

B. Rule. — Supines in *um* have an active sense, and govern the same cases as their verbs.* E. g.

Divitíacus Rômam ad senâtum *vênit, auxílium postulâtum.*	Divitiacus came to Rome to the senate, in order to ask for aid.
Venérunt questum injúrias, ét ex fœdere *rês repetîtum.*	They came to complain of injuries, and to demand restitution according to the treaty.
Nôn égo Graiis *servîtum mátribus* íbo.	I shall not go to serve Grecian matrons.
Hánnibal invíctus *pátriam defensum* revocâtus est.	Hannibal was recalled unconquered to defend his country.
Cóctum égo, nôn *vapulâtum* conúctus súm.	I was employed to cook, not to be flogged.
Míssus ést *sciscitâtum*, quíbus précibus suppliciísque déos póssent placâre.	He was sent to inquire by what prayers or offerings they might appease the gods.

Remarks.

1. The verb *ire* with the supine in *um* is sometimes equivalent to the English *I will, I am about;* as, *Cur te is perdîtum?* Why will you

* The supines in *um* and *u* are, in point of form, nouns of the fourth declension, the former in the accusative, the latter in the ablative or dative (when *u* = *ui*). Their construction, however, shows them to be parts of the verb.

make yourself unhappy? *Fuēre cives*, qui *seque remque publicam* perditum irent, There were citizens, who were engaged in ruining both themselves and the republic. But *ire* with the supine is frequently nothing more than a circumlocution for the same tense of the verb; as, *ultum ire = ulcisci*, to revenge; *raptum eunt = eripiunt*, they plunder; *perditum eamus = perdamus*, we may ruin.

2. The supine in *um* retains its active signification with a passive verb. E. g. *Contumeliam mihi per hujusce petulantiam* factum *itur*, They are insulting me with the petulance of this man.

3. In connection with the passive infinitive *iri*, the supine in *um* serves to form the future infinitive passive; as, *amatum iri*, to be about to be loved; *auditum iri*,* to be about to be heard, &c. (Cf. Lesson XLVIII. *B.*)

4. Many verbs want the supine in *um*. In these cases (and often also where the supine exists), the purpose implied in the verb of motion may be indicated by various other constructions; as, *Venio spectātum, ad spectandum, spectandi causā, spectaturus, ut spectem*, or *spectāre*, I come to see, for the sake of seeing, about to see, &c. In general, the use of the supine is not extensive, and the best writers more frequently prefer the gerund with *ad* or. *causā*, or the future participle in *urus*. (Cf. Lesson XXX. *D.*)

C. The supine in *u* is used in a passive sense after *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*, and after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, *worthy* or *unworthy*, *easy* or *difficult*, and the like. E. g.

Si hóc *fās* est *dictu*.	If it is right to say so.
Néfas est *dictu*.	It is impiety to say so.
Íta *dictu ópus* est.	Thus we must say.
Honéstum, dígnum, túrpe, mirábile est *dictu*.	It is honorable, worthy, disgraceful, wonderful to tell *or* to be told.
Fácile, difficile, mélius, óptimum ést *fáctu*.†	It is easy, difficult, better, best, to do *or* to be done.
Quíd ést tám *jucúndum cógnitu* atque *audítu*, quam sapiéntibus senténtiis gravibúsque vérbis ornâta orátio?	Is there anything so delightful to know and to hear as a discourse replete with sage sentiments and weighty arguments?
Sápiens *vitátu*, quídque *petítu* sit *mélius*, caúsas réddet tíbi.	The philosopher will render you an account of what it is best to avoid, and what best to seek.
Hernici níhil úsquam *dictu dígnum* aúsi súnt.	The Hernici never achieved anything worth mentioning anywhere.

* The passive infinitive *iri* in this connection is used *impersonally*.

† So likewise *dulce auditu*, sweet to hear; *mollissimum tactu*, of the softest touch; *facile inventu*, easy to find, *or* to be found; *speciosa dictu*, plausible to be said; *foedum inceptu*, foul to be undertaken, &c.

Remarks.

1. The supine in *u* does not govern any case, and is hence put with the passive voice. It is commonly rendered like the infinitive passive, but frequently better translated actively. The supines thus employed are not numerous. The principal are *dictu*, *auditu*, *cognĭtu*, *factu*, *inventu*, *memorātu*.

2. The adjectives most frequently found in connection with this supine are *bonus*, *parvus*, *magnus*, *dulcis*, *gravis*, *levis*, *fidus*, *durus*, *deformis*, *speciosus*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *proclivis*, *facilis*, *difficilis*, *mirabilis*, and others in *lis*; also *rārus*, *necessarius*, *acerbus*, *vehemens*, *turpis*, *foedus*, &c.

3. The supine in *u* sometimes (though rarely) occurs with a verb; as, *Pudet dictu*, It is shameful to be said. *Primus* cubĭtu surgat, *postrēmus cubĭtum eat*, Let him (the steward) be the first to rise and the last to go to bed. *Priusquam ego* obsonātu redeo, Before I return from the purchase of food.*

4. Instead of the supine in *u*, especially after *facilis* and *difficilis*, the following constructions frequently occur: —

a.) The infinitive present; as, *Facile est* vincere *non repugnantes*, It is easy to conquer where there is no resistance. *Id* dicere *obscoenum est*, It is obscene to say so.

b.) The gerund with *ad*; as, *Facillimus ad concoquendum*, The easiest to cook. *Jucundum ad audiendum*, Delightful to hear *or* to be heard.

c.) The passive voice and the adjectives *facile*, *difficile*, &c. as adverbs. E. g. *Non* facile dijudicatur *amor verus et fictus*, Real love and feigned are not easily distinguished.

d.) Sometimes the present participle, and more rarely a supine in *um*; as, *Decemviri* colloquentibus *erant difficiles*, The decemviri were difficult of access. *Optimum factum*, Best to do.

e.) Quite frequently a verbal noun in the case required by the adjective; as, *Justae causae* facilis *est* defensio, The defense of a just cause is an easy one. Difficilis *est animi, quid aut qualis sit*, intelligentia (= *Difficile est* intellectu, *quid*, &c.), It is difficult to understand the nature of the mind. So *jucunda potui* (for *potu*), Delightful to drink. *Facilis divisui*, Easy to divide. *Erant rari aditūs*, They were rarely to be seen (rare of access). *Cognitione dignum*, Worth knowing.

	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.†
To do — done.	*Agĕre*	— *ēgi*,	*actum.*
To make (do) — made.	*Facĕre*	— *fēci*,	*factum.*
To make (manufacture) — made.	Conficĕre	— confēci,	confectum.
To take off — taken off.	Exuĕre	— exŭi,	exūtum.

* In these cases the supine appears really as the ablative of a verbal substantive. But here the verbals in *io* are by far more common; e. g. *a frumentatione redire*, to return from a foraging expedition.

† The forms *actum*, *factum*, &c. may either be regarded as the supine "to act," "to do," or as the neuter of the perfect participle "acted," "done," &c.

To pull off — pulled off.	Detrahĕre — detraxi, detractum.
To say — said.	Dīcĕre — dixi, dictum.
To speak — spoken.	Loqui — locūtus sum.
To converse with — conversed with.	Collŏqui — collocūtus sum.
To dare — dared.	Audēre — ausus sum.
To cut — cut.	Secāre — secŭi, sectum.
To mow — mowed.	Mĕtĕre — messŭi, messum.
To burn — burnt.	Combūrĕre — combussi, combustum. Concremāre — āvi, ātum.
To wash — washed.	Lavāre — lāvi, lavātum (lautus, lōtus).
To pick up — picked up.	Tollĕre — sustŭli, sublātum.
To preserve — preserved.	Servāre — āvi, ātum. Seponĕre — posŭi, positum.
To tear — torn.	Lacerāre — āvi, ātum.

What have you done?	Quíd fecísti (egísti)?
I have done nothing.	Égo níhil féci.
Has the tailor made my coat?	Confecítne sártor méam tógam?
He has made it.	Confēcit véro.
He has not yet made it.	Éam nóndum confēcit.
Have you taken off your clothes?	Exuistine te véstibus?
I have taken them off.	Sic est, éxui.
Have they taken off their boots?	Detraxerúntne sibi cáligas pédibus?
They have not taken them off.	Nôn detraxérunt.
Have we taken off our hats?	Núm nôs cápita nudávimus?
You have not taken off your hats.	Vôs cápita nôn nudavístis.
Has he told you that?	Dixítne tíbi hoc?
He has told me.	Díxit véro.
Who has told him that?	Quís hoc (íllud) éi díxit?
I have told him myself.	Egómet ípse.
Are you the brother of my friend?	Ésne tû frâter amíci méi?
I am.	Súm véro.
With which man have you spoken?	Cum quô hómine locûtus es?
I have spoken with that man.	Collocûtus súm cum hómine íllo.
Have you spoken to your friend?	Locutúsne és amíco túo (ad amicum túum)?
I have spoken to him.	Locûtus sum (éi, ad éum).
Which gloves have you picked up?	Quae digitábula sustulísti?
I have picked up yours.	(Súsluli) túa.
Have you preserved my books?	Servavistine (servastine) líbros méos?
I have not preserved them.	(Éos) nôn servávi.
Which books have you burnt?	Quôs líbros combussísti?
I have burnt no books.	Núllos (combússi). Égo nôn úllos líbros combússi.

Have you torn any shirts?	Lacerâsti áliqua indúsia?
I have torn some.	Lacerávi nonnúlla.
Has he torn any?	Núm quae lacerâvit?
He has torn none.	{ Nôn lacerâvit. / { Núlla lacerâvit.
What have ye washed?	Quid lavístis?
We have washed our white handkerchiefs.	Muccínia nóstra cándida lávimus.
What have they cut?	Quíd secuérunt?
They have cut our canes.	Secuérunt bácula nóstra.

Exercise 92.

Have you anything to do? — I have nothing to do. — What has your brother to do? — He has to write letters. — What hast thou done? — I have done nothing. — Have I done anything? — You have torn my clothes. — What have your children done? — They have torn their beautiful books. — What have we done? — You have done nothing; but your brothers have burnt my fine chairs. — Has the tailor already made your coat? — He has not yet made it. — Has your shoemaker already made your boots? — He has already made them. — Have you sometimes made a hat? — I have never made one. — Hast thou already made thy purse? — I have not yet made it. — Have our neighbors ever made books? — They made some formerly. — How many coats has your tailor made? — He has made thirty or forty of them. — Has he made good or bad coats? — He has made (both) good and bad (ones). — Has our father taken his hat off? — He has taken it off. — Have your brothers taken their coats off? — They have taken them off. — Has the physician taken his stockings or his shoes off? — He has taken off neither the one nor the other. — What has he taken away? — He has taken away nothing, but he has taken off his large hat. — Who has told you that? — My servant has told it to me. — What has your cousin told you? — He has told me nothing. — Who has told it to your neighbor? — The English have told it to him. — Are you the brother of that youth? — I am. — Is that boy your son? — He is. — How many children have you? — I have but two. — Has the bailiff gone to the market? — He has not gone thither. — Is he ill? — He is. — Am I ill? — You are not. — Are you as tall as I? — I am. — Are your friends as rich as they say? — They are. — Art thou as fatigued as thy brother? — I am more (so) than he.

Exercise 93.

Did you come to complain? — I did not come to complain; I came to inquire and to congratulate. — Were they sent to see? — They were sent to see and to congratulate. — Did he return (*Rediritne*) to make war? — No, he returned to sue for peace. — Have you spoken to my father? — I have spoken to him. — When did you speak to him? — I spoke to him the day before yesterday. — Have you sometimes spoken with the Turk? — I have never spoken with him. — How many times have you spoken to the captain? — I have spoken

to him six times. — Has the nobleman ever spoken with you? — He has never spoken with me. — Have you often spoken with his son? — I have often spoken with him. — Have you spoken with him oftener than we? — I have not spoken with him so often as you (have). — To which son of the nobleman have you spoken? — I have spoken to the youngest (*minĭmus natu*). — To which men has your brother spoken? — He has spoken to these. — What has your gardener's son cut? — He has cut trees. — Has he cut (*messuitne*) corn? — He has cut some. — Has he cut as much hay as corn? — He has cut as much of the one as of the other. — Have you picked up my knife? — I have picked it up. — What have you picked up? — We have picked up nothing. — Have you burnt anything? — We have burnt nothing. — Hast thou burnt my fine ribbons? — I have not burnt them. — Which books has the Greek burnt? — He has burnt his own. — Which ships have the Spaniards burnt? — They have burnt no ships. — Have you burnt paper? — I have not burnt any. — Has the physician burnt notes? — He has burnt none. — Have you had the courage to burn my hat? — I have had the courage to burn it. — When did you burn it? — I burnt it yesterday. — Where have you burnt it? — I have burnt it in my room. — Who has torn your shirt? — The ugly boy of our neighbor has torn it. — Has any one torn your books. — Nobody has torn them. — Is it right to do so? — It is wrong. — Is it wonderful to be told? — It is very wonderful (*permirabile*). — What is best to be done? — It is best to depart (set out). — Is there any so delightful to know and to hear as the Latin tongue? — There is nothing more delightful (*jucundius*). — What has he achieved? — It is not worth mentioning what he has achieved.

Lesson XLVIII. — PENSUM DUODEQUINQUAGESIMUM.

OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

A. The infinitive mood expresses the action of the verb in an indefinite or general manner, but at the same time represents it either as completed or uncompleted, i. e. as present, past, or future.

Hence the infinitive of Latin verbs has three tenses: the *present*, *perfect*, and *future*. For each of these the active and the passive voices both have separate forms. They are: —

1. The present infinitive active, derived from the first root of the verb; as, amāre, monēre, lĕgĕre, audīre, to love, admonish, read, hear.*

* Compare Lesson XXIV. *B. C.*

2. The present infinitive passive, likewise derived from the first root; as, amāri, monēri, legi, audīri, to be loved, admonished, read, heard.*

3. The perfect infinitive active, formed from the second root by adding *isse;* as, amāv*isse* (amâsse),† monŭ*isse*, lēg*isse* audīv*isse* (audisse), to have loved, admonished, read, heard.

4. The perfect infinitive passive, formed by combining *esse* or *fuisse* with the perfect participle; as, *amātum* (*am, um*)‡ *esse* or *fuisse*, to have been loved, &c.

5. The future infinitive active, formed by adding *esse* to the future participle active; as, *amātūrum* (*am, um*) § *esse*, to be about to love, &c.

6. The future infinitive passive, formed by adding the passive infinitive of *ire* to the supine in *um;* as, *amātum īri*, to be about to be loved, &c.

B. The following paradigms exhibit all the forms of the infinitive mood, both active and passive.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

	Infinitive Active.	Infinitive Passive.
Pres.	amāre, *to love.*	amārī, *to be loved.*
Perf.	amāvisse (amâsse), *to have loved.*	amātum esse *or* fŭisse, *to have been loved.*
Fut.	amātūrum esse, *to be about to love.*	amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Pres.	monēre, *to remind.*	monērī, *to be reminded.*
Perf.	monŭisse, *to have reminded.*	monĭtum esse *or* fŭisse, *to have been reminded.*
Fut.	monĭtūrum esse, *to be about to remind.*	monĭtum īrī, *to be about to be reminded.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Pres.	lĕgĕre, *to read.*	lĕgī, *to be read.*
Perf.	lēgisse, *to have read.*	lectum esse *or* fuisse, *to have been read.*
Fut.	lectūrum esse, *to be about to read.*	lectum īrī, *to be about to be read.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Pres.	audīre, *to hear*	audīrī, *to be heard.*
Perf.	audīvisse (audîsse), *to have heard.*	audītum esse *or* fuisse, *to have been heard.*
Fut.	audītūrum esse, *to be about to hear.*	audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

* Compare Lesson XXXIII. *B.* † See page 289, Remarks.
‡ And when it occurs in the nominative, *amātus* (*a, um*) *esse* or *fuisse*, &c.
§ And in the nominative *amatūrus* (*a, um*) *esse*, &c.

Remarks.

1. Instead of the future infinitive active or passive, the periphrastic forms *fŏre*,* *ut*, or *fŭturum esse*, *ut*, with the subjunctive, are often employed, especially when the verb has no supine or participle in *ūrus*. E. g. *Spĕro* fore (*or* futūrum esse), ut *venias*, for *Spĕro te ventūrum esse*, I hope that you will come. *Crēdo* fore ut *epistola scribātur*, instead of *Credo epistolam scriptum iri*, I think that the letter will be written. So also in the past tenses: *Sperābam* fore, ut *venīres*, I hoped that you might come. *Credēbam* fore, ut *epistola scriberētur*, I thought that the letter would be written. And of an act completed at some future time: *Spero* fore, ut *vēnĕris* (perf. subj.), I hope that you will have come. *Sperābam* fore, ut *vēnisses*, I hoped that you might have come. *Credo* (*Credēbam*) *epistolam scriptam fŏre*, I think (thought) that the letter will be (would be) written.

2. Neuter verbs (unless they are used impersonally) have generally the infinitives of the active voice only. Many of this class want the supine and future participle, and have consequently *fore ut*. E. g.

Īre,	īvisse,	ītūrum esse.
Vĕnīre,	vēnisse,	ventūrum esse.
Esse,	fŭisse,	fŭtūrum esse.
Posse,	pŏtŭisse,	*fore, ut possim.*
Velle,	vŏlŭisse,	*fore, ut velim*, &c.

	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.
To drink — drink.	*Bibĕre*	*— bĭbi,*	——.
To carry — carried.	*Ferre*	*— tŭli,*	*lātum.*
	Portāre	*— āvi,*	*ātum.*
To bring — brought.	Afferre	— attŭli, allātum.	
	Apportāre	— āvi, ātum.	
To send — sent.	Mittĕre	— mīsi, missum.	
To write — written.	Scribĕre	— scripsi, scriptum.	
To learn — learnt.	Discĕre	— dĭdĭci, ——.	
To see — seen.	Vĭdēre	— vīdi, vīsum.	
To give — given.	Dăre	— dĕdi, dătum.	
To lend — lent.	Commodāre	— āvi, ātum.	
	Credĕre	— credĭdi, creditum.	
To go — gone.	Īre	— īvi, ĭtum.	
To come — come.	Vĕnīre	— vēni, ventum.	
To know (to be acquainted with) — known.	Nōsse	— nōvi, nōtum.	
	Cognoscĕre	— cognōvi, cognĭtum.	

Did you drink some of my wine?	Bibistīne de víno méo?
I did not drink (any of it).	Nôn bíbi.
Has he brought me the book?	Apportavítne (attulítne) míhi líbrum?

* This is the present infinitive of the obsolete *fĭo*, I am; but generally = *futurum esse*. The only remaining forms of *fuo* in actual use are the imperf. subj. *fŏrem, fŏres, fŏret*, ——, ——, *fŏrent*.

He has brought it.	Apportâvit (áttŭlit).
Did they send us letters?	Miserúntne nóbis lítteras? / Dederúntne lítteras ad nôs?
They have sent none.	Nôn misérunt. / Dedérunt núllas.
Did we write notes?	Scripsimúsne schédŭlas?
We have written some.	Scripsimus véro nonnúllas.
Have you seen the man?	Vidistísne hominem?
We have not seen him.	(Éum) nôn vídimus.
Have you seen my book?	An vidístis líbrum méum?
Yes, we have seen it.	Véro quídem, vídimus.
Where have you seen it?	Úbinam éum vidístis?
(We have seen it) in your room.	(Vídimus éum) in cubículo túo.
Have you become acquainted with (do you know) those people?	Nostíne (congnovistíne) hómines íllos?
I have become acquainted with them.	Sáne quídem, égo éos nóvi (cognóvi).
Have you known these men?	Notíne tibi fuérunt hóminesílli?
I have not known them.	Nôn fuérunt.
Do you learn to write?	Discísne scríbere?
Yes, I am learning it.	Ita est, disco.
I am learning the art of writing.	Égo ártem scribendi edisco.
Have you learnt to read Latin?	Didicistíne légere Latíne (lítteras Latínas)?
I have learnt it.	Dídici.
Of whom?	Apud quem (a quô)?
Of my master.	Apud magístrum méum (a magístro méo).
When did you lend me that umbrella?	Quándo míhi umbráculum íllud commodavísti?
(I lent it to you) day before yesterday.	Núdius tertius.
Did the man come to your father?	Ivítne hómo ad pátrem túum?
He did come.	Ívit véro.
Did your brother go out into the fields?	Exíitne fratérculus túus in ágros?
He did go out.	Éxiit.
At what time did you come into the city?	Quô témpore venístis in úrbem?
(We came) yesterday evening.	(Vénimus) héri vésperi.
When did they come home?	Quándo advenérunt (ílli) dómum súam?
They came this morning.	Advenérunt hódie mâne.
Where have you seen my cousin?	Úbi (quô lóco) consobrinum méum vidísti (conspéxisti)?
I have seen him in the theatre.	Égo éum in theátro vídi (conspéxi).

To get, order (anything to be done). See page 170. { *Jubēre — jussi, jussum.* / *Curāre — āvi, ātum.*

To get anything mended.	Aliquid reparāri jubēre. / Aliquid reficiendum curāre.
To get anything washed.	Aliquid lavāri jubēre. / Aliquid abluendum curāre.
To get anything made.	Aliquid confĭci jubēre. / Aliquid confĭciendum curāre.
Are you getting a coat made?	Jubêsne tógam cónfici? / Curâsne tĭbi tógam conficiéndam?
I am getting one made.	Júbeo véro ûnam cónfici. / Cúro ûnam conficiéndam.
I have ordered (got) one made.	Jússi ûnam cónfici. / Égo ûnam conficiéndam curávi.
Has your brother had his shirt washed?	Curavítne frâter túus indúsium súum lavándum?
He has (had it done).	Curâvit id faciéndum.
Have you ordered your stockings to be washed?	Jussistĭne tû tibiália túa lavári?
I have ordered them to be washed.	Jússi (éa lavári).
Have you had your shoes mended?	Curavistísne cálceos véstros reficiéndos?
We have not had them mended.	Reficiéndos éos nôn curávimus.
The cravat.	*Focāle, is, *n.*
To bind (a book).	Compingo, ĕre, pēgi, pactum.
Have you sometimes had cravats mended?	Curávistine ínterdum focália reficiénda?
I have had some mended sometimes.	Curávi véro ínterdum nonnúlla reficiénda.
Have you ordered your book to be bound?	Jussistĭne líbrum túum compingi?
I have ordered it to be bound.	Sáne quídem, jússi éum compíngi.
By whom have you had your books bound?	Cui líbros túos compingendos credidísti?
I have had them bound by our neighbor, the binder.	Égo éos vicíno nóstro, bibliopégo, compingendos crédidi.
The bookbinder.	*Bibliopegus, i, *m.* / *Librōrum compactor, ōris, *m.*

Exercise 94.

Have you drunk wine? — I have drunk some. — Have you drunk much of it? — I have drunk but little of it. — Hast thou drunk some beer? — I have drunk some. — Has thy brother drunk much good cider? — He has not drunk much of it, but enough. — When did you drink any wine? — I drank some yesterday and to-day. — Has the servant carried the letter? — He has carried it. — Where has he carried it to? — He has carried it to your friend. — Have you brought us some apples? — We have brought you some. — How many apples have you brought us? — We have brought you twenty-five of them. — When did you bring them? — I brought them this morning. — At

what o'clock? — At a quarter to eight. — Have you sent your little boy to the market? — I have sent him thither. — When did you send him thither? — This evening. — Have you written to your father? — I have written to him. — Has he answered you? — He has not yet answered me. — Have you ever written to the physician? — I have never written to him. — Has he sometimes written to you? — He has often written to me. — What has he written to you? — He has written to me something. — Have your friends ever written to you? — They have often written to me. — How many times have they written to you? — They have written to me more than thirty times. — Have you ever seen my son? — I have never seen him. — Has he ever seen you? — He has often seen me. — Hast thou ever seen any Greeks? — I have often seen some. — Have you already seen a Syrian? — I have already seen one. — Where have you seen one? — At the theatre. — Have you given the book to my brother? — I have given it to him. — Have you given money to the merchant? — I have given some to him. — How much have you given to him? — I have given to him fifteen crowns. — Have you given gold ribbons to our good neighbors' children? — I have given some to them. — Will you give some bread to the poor (man)? — I have already given some to him. — Wilt thou give me some wine? — I have already given you some. — When didst thou give me some? — I gave you some formerly. — Wilt thou give me some now? — I cannot give you any.

Exercise 95.

Has the American lent you money? — He has lent me some. — Has he often lent you some? — He has lent me some sometimes. — When did he lend you any? — He lent me some formerly. — Has the Italian ever lent you money? — He has never lent me any. — Is he poor? — He is not poor; he is richer than you. — Will you lend me a crown? — I will lend you two of them. — Has your boy come to mine? — He has come to him. — When? — This morning. — At what time? — Early. — Has he come earlier than I? — At what o'clock did you come? — I came at half past five. — He has come earlier than you. — Where did your brother go to? — He went to the ball. — When did he go thither? — He went thither the day before yesterday. — Has the ball taken place? — It has taken place. — Has it taken place late? — It has taken place early. — At what o'clock? — At midnight. — Does your brother learn to write? — He does learn it. — Does he already know how to read? — He does not know how yet. — Have you ever learnt German? — I learnt it formerly, but I do not know it. — Has your father ever learnt French? — He has never learnt it. — Does he learn it at present? — He does learn it. — Do you know the Englishman whom I know? — I do not know the one whom you know; but I know another. — Does your friend know the same nobleman whom I know? — He does not know the same; but he knows others. — Have you known the same men whom I have known. — I have not known the same; but I have known others. — Have you ever had your coat mended? — I have sometimes

had it mended. — Hast thou already had thy boots mended? — I have not yet had them mended. — Has your cousin sometimes had his stockings mended? — He has several times had them mended. — Hast thou had thy hat or thy shoe mended? — I have neither had the one nor the other mended. — Have you had my cravats or my shirts washed? — I have neither had the one nor the other washed. — What stockings have you had washed? — I have had the thread stockings washed. — Has your father had a table made? — He has had one made. — Have you had anything made? — I have had nothing made.

Lesson XLIX. — PENSUM UNDEQUINQUAGESIMUM.

OF PARTICIPLES.

A. Of the four participles of the Latin verb, the present active and the future passive are formed from the first root of the verb, and the future active and perfect passive from the third. (Cf. Lesson XXVIII. *B.* 8, 9, and *D.* 1, 2.) The terminations of these participles for the respective conjugations are: —

PRES. ACT. 1. *ans*, 2. *ens*, 3. *ens* (*ĕns*), 4. *ĕns.*
FUT. ACT. 1. *ātūrus*, 2. *ĭtūrus*, 3. *tūrus*, 4. *ītūrus.*
PERF. PASS. 1. *ātus*, 2. *ĭtus*, 3. *tus*,* 4. *ītus.*
FUT. PASS. 1. *andus*, 2. *endus*, 3. *endus* (*ĕndus*), 4. *ĕndus.*

B. The following paradigms exhibit the participles of the several conjugations in regular order: —

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRES.	ămans, *loving.*	PERF.	ămātus, a, um, *loved.*
FUT.	ămātūrus, a, um, *about to love.*	FUT.	ămandus, a, um, *to be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRES.	mŏnens, *reminding.*	PERF.	mŏnĭtus, a, um, *reminded.*
FUT.	mŏnĭtūrus, a, um, *about to remind.*	FUT.	mŏnendus, a, um, *to be reminded.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRES.	lĕgens, *reading.*	PERF.	lectus, a, um, *read.*
FUT.	lectūrus, a, um, *about to read.*	FUT.	lĕgendus, a, um, *to be read.*

---

* On the irregularities of the third root of the second and third conjugations, see Lesson XLVI. *A.* Rem. 1 – 6.

PRES.	căpĭens, *taking.*	PERF.	captus, a, um, *taken.*
FUT.	captūrus, a, um, *about to take.*	FUT.	căpiendus, a, um, *to be taken.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRES.	audĭens, *hearing.*	PERF.	audītus, a, um, *heard.*
FUT.	audītūrus, a, um, *about to hear.*	FUT.	audiendus, a, um, *to be heard.*

C. Deponent verbs generally have all the participles. Of these the future in *dus* is passive, like that of other verbs, but the perfect participle in *tus* has commonly an active sense. E. g.

PRES.	hortans, vĕrens, sĕquens, blandiens, *exhorting, fearing, following, flattering.*
PERF.	hortātus, verĭtus, secūtus, blandītus, *having exhorted, feared, followed, flattered.*
FUT. ACT.	hortatūrus, veritūrus, sectūrus, blandītūrus, *about to exhort, fear, follow, flatter.*
FUT. PASS.	hortandus, verendus, sequendus, blandiendus, *to be exhorted, feared, followed, flattered.*

REMARKS.

1. The present participle in *ns* is declined like an adjective of one termination (cf. page 21), and the participles in *us, a, um,* like *bonus.*

2. Participles sometimes drop the distinction of time and assume the character of adjectives or nouns. E. g. *amans,* loving (in love), or a lover; *doctus,* learned; *nātus,* a son. When employed as adjectives, they become susceptible of comparison. (Cf. Lesson XLI. *C.* and *F.*)

3. Neuter verbs generally have only the participles of the active voice. Of some, however, the future passive participle in *dum* is used impersonally.* Others again have also a perfect participle, which sometimes has a passive and sometimes an active sense.

4. The perfect participle of deponent verbs is generally active. The following sometimes occur also in the passive sense: *adeptus, comitātus, commentātus, complexus, confessus, contestātus* and *detestātus, populātus* and *depopulātus, dimensus* and *emensus, effātus, ementītus, emerĭtus, expertus* and *inexpertus, execrātus, interpretātus, meditātus, metātus, moderātus, opinātus, pactus, partītus, perfunctus, periclitātus, stipulātus, testātus.* E. g. *Depopulatus agrum,* Having devastated the field. *Depopulātum agrum,* The devastated field. *Partītus exercĭtum,* Having divided the army. *Partīto exercītu,* The army having been divided.

5. The following perfect participles, though from active verbs, are also employed in an active sense: *juratus,* having sworn; *pransus,*

* Compare page 118, note *.

having taken lunch; *coenātus*, having dined; *pōtus*, having drunk. To these add *ausus*, *gavīsus*, *solītus*, *fīsus*, *confīsus*; *exōsus*, *perōsus*, and *pertaesus*.

6. The English perfect participle active, of which Latin verbs generally are destitute, is commonly rendered either by a separate clause, or by the ablative of the passive participle. E. g. "When he had exterminated the kings," is either *Quum reges exterminasset*, or passive, *Regĭbus exterminātis*, The kings having been exterminated. The latter is called the *Ablative Absolute*, on which see Lesson LXXIII.

7. The genitive plural of participles in *rus* rarely occurs, except that of *futūrus*.

8. The present participle of the verb *sum* is wanting, the obsolete *ens* occurring only in the compounds *absens*, *praesens*, and *potens*. The present participle of *eo*, I go, is *iens*, gen. *euntis*.

CONJUGATIO PERIPHRASTICA.

D. The participles in *rus* and *dus*, with the auxiliary *sum*, give each of them rise to a new conjugation, called the *conjugatio periphrastica*. In this connection the participle in *rus* denotes an *intention*, and that in *dus*, *necessity* or *propriety*. (Cf. Lesson XXV. *C. D.*) E. g.

1. Amātūrus sum, *I am about to love* (*on the point of loving*).*

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres.	amatūrus sum	amatūrus sim
Imp.	amatūrus ĕram	amatūrus essem
Perf.	amatūrus fui	amatūrus fuĕrim
Plup.	amatūrus fuĕram	amatūrus fuissem.
Fut.	amatūrus ĕro.†	

Infinitive.

Pres. amatūrum esse. Perf. amatūrum fuisse.

2. Amandus sum, *I am to be loved*, or *must be loved*.‡

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres.	amandus sum	amandus sim
Imp.	amandus ĕram	amandus essem
Perf.	amandus fui	amandus fuĕrim
Plup.	amandus fuĕram	amandus fuissem.
Fut.	amandus ĕro	
Fut. Perf.	amandus fuĕro.	

Infinitive.

Pres. amandum esse. Perf. amandum fuisse.

---

* And so in the remaining tenses, Indic. *I was, have been, had been, shall be, about to love.* Subj. *that I may be, might be, may have been, might have been, about to love.*

† The Future Perfect *amatus fuĕro* does not occur.

‡ And so in the remaining tenses: — Ind. *I was to be loved, I shall have to be loved*, &c., always with the agent in the dative. E. g. *tibi, hominibus, nemini*, by you, by men, by no one. See Lesson XXV. *C. D.*

OF THE USE OF PARTICIPLES.

E. Participles as such do not express any absolute determination of time, and can only be said to be present, past, or future, with reference to the time of the action denoted by the verb of the sentence in which they stand. Hence the verb with which they are connected may itself be either present, past, or future.

Participles have the agreement of adjectives. The noun with which they are in concord may be either in the nominative, as the subject of the sentence, or in one of the oblique cases governed by another word.

Participles govern the same cases as their verbs. E. g.

Hîc adolescéntŭlus ést (érat, érit) jússis túis *obédiens*.	This youth is (was, will be) obedient to your commands.
Abitúrae congregántur (congregabántur, congregabúntur) in lóco cérto.	When about to leave (just before leaving) they collect (did collect, will collect) together in a particular place.
Caêsar hóstem *profligâtum* persequitur (persecûtus est, persequêtur).	Cæsar pursues (has pursued, will pursue) the routed enemy.
Caêsar póntem in Arári *faciéndum* cûrat (curâvit, curâbit).	Cæsar orders (did order, will order) a bridge to be constructed over the Arar.
Léx est récta rátio, *ímperans* honésta, *próhibens* contrária.	The law is plain reason, commanding what is just, and prohibiting the contrary.
Jácet córpus *dormiéntis*, ut *mórtui*.	The body of one sleeping (asleep) is like that of a dead man.
Proditiônis *insimulâtus*, ad ómnia crímina respóndit.	Accused of treason, he replied to all the charges brought against him.
Brundúsium vénimus, *úsi* túā felicitâte navigándi	Having had your own good luck on our voyage, we arrived at Brundusium.
Mágna pârs hóminum est, quae *navigatûra* de tempestâte nôn cógitat.	There are many men, who never think of the weather, when they are about to sail.
Magna pars peccatôrum tóllitur, si *peccatúris* testis assístat.	A great many offences are prevented, if (where) there is a witness near those (who are) about committing them.
Équidem beátos púto, quíbus Deôrum múnere dátum est, aut fácere *scribénda*, aut scríbere *loquénda*.	I consider those happy, to whom it is vouchsafed either to achieve things destined to be recorded, or to record events destined to be repeated.

F. Participles are frequently employed instead of subordinate clauses introduced by a relative pronoun, or by one of the conjunctions *while, when, if, because, although,* &c. E. g.

Plăto *scrĭbens* mórtuus est.	Plato died *while* (in the act of) writing.
Dionýsius, Syracúsis *expúlsus*, Corinthi púeros docébat.	Dionysius, *after* having been expelled from Syracuse, was engaged in teaching at Corinth.
Tibérius, *trajectûrus* Rhênum, commeâtum ómnem transmísit.	Tiberius, when about crossing the Rhine, sent over all his supplies.
Sunt divítiae cértae, in quăcúnque sórtis humánae levitâte *permansúrae*.	There are certain riches, *which will remain* in every vicissitude of human fortune.
Pisístratus primus Homéri líbros, *confúsos* ántea, sic disposuísse dícitur, ut nunc habêmus.	Pisistratus is said to have first arranged the poems of Homer, *which were confused* before, in the order in which we have them now.
Níhil affírmo, *dúbitans* plerúmque et mihi ípse *díffidens*.	I do not positively affirm anything, *since* I am myself uncertain and distrustful of myself.
Ut óculus, sic ánimus, sê *non vídens*, ália cérnit.	*Although* the mind, like the eye, *does not see* itself, it yet perceives other things.
Sócratis mórti illacrimâre sóleo, Platônem *légens*.	I always weep over the death of Socrates, *as often as* (*whenever*) I read Plato.
Epicûrus *nôn erubéscens* voluptátes perséquitur ómnes nominâtim.	Epicurus enumerates the entire catalogue of pleasures *without blushing*.*

Remarks.

1. Participles employed adjectively modify merely the noun, and not the entire sentence. E. g. *Terra sitiens*, The thirsting earth. *Bene tolerata paupertas*, Poverty well borne. *Metus magni mali impendentis*, The fear of a great impending evil. *Poenae meritae remisso*, The remission of a merited punishment.

2. The perfect and future passive participles often supply the place of a verbal substantive. E. g. *Hac litterae recitātae*, The reading of this letter. *Ab urbe condĭtā*, Since the founding of the city. *Post Christum nātum*, After the birth of Christ. *Propter Africam delētam*, On account of the destruction of Africa *Consilium urbis delendae*, The design for the destruction of the city.

---

* So also *non loquens*, without speaking, &c. But the English *without* (with verbs) is also expressed by the ablative of the perfect participle; as, *non expectato auxilio*, without expecting any help, &c.

3. After verbs of *seeing*, *hearing*, or *representing*, the present participle may stand, as in English, instead of the infinitive. E. g. *Socratem audio dicentem*, I hear Socrates say. *Catonem vīdi in bibliothēcā sedentem*, I saw Cato sitting in the library. *Xenophon facit Socratem disputantem*, Xenophon represents Socrates as maintaining.

4. After *habeo*, *teneo*, *possideo*, and similar verbs, and also after *volo*, *nolo*, *cupio*, *facio*, *oportet*, *do*, *reddo*, and *curo*, the perfect participle is used to designate a past event of which the result or consequences are still remaining. E. g. *Cognĭtum habeo*, I (have learnt and still) know. *Clausum teneo*, I keep shut. *Me excusātum volo*, I wish myself excused. *Perfidiam perspectam habebat*, He perceived the perfidy. *Exercĭtum coactum habēbat*, He kept the army subjected. *Missos faciant honores*, Let them resign their claim to places of trust or honor. *Inventum tibi curābo*, I 'll see him found for you.

5. The participle in *rus* is used by the later writers of the language (instead of the supine in *um*), after verbs of motion, to denote the purpose. E. g. *Catilīna ad exercitum proficiscitur*, *signa* illatūrus *urbi*, Catiline goes to the army in order to invade the city. (Cf. Lesson XXX. *D. Obs.*) The present participle is sometimes put in the same sense; as, *Canes alium* rogantes *regem misēre ad Jovem*, The dogs sent to Jupiter to ask for another king.

6. An intended effect or purpose is also indicated by the future participle in *dus*, after *curāre* (to order or get anything done), and also after *dăre*, *tradĕre*, *mittĕre*, *concedĕre*, *permittĕre*, *accipĕre*, and *suscipĕre*, *locāre*, *conducĕre*, and similar verbs. E. g. *Conon muros dirūtos Athenārum* reficiendos *curāvit*, Conon ordered the demolished walls of Athens to be repaired. *Vita data est utenda*, Life is given us to be enjoyed. *Fabius saucios mīlites* curandos *dividit patribus*, Fabius distributes the wounded soldiers to be provided for by the senators. *Aedem Castŏris P. Junius habuit tuendam*, P. Junius had the temple of Castor to guard. *Patriam vel* diripiendam *vel* inflammandam *relīquĭmus*, We have left our country either to be plundered or destroyed by fire.

Exercise 96.

Are you about to love? — I am about to love. — Are they going to read (*lecturus*)? — They are not going to read; they are going to write (*scripturus*). — Are we going to learn (*disciturus*) Latin? — We are going to learn it. — Were you about to read the book which I have lent you? — I was about to read it. — Were they about opening (*apertūrus*) the window? — They were on the point of opening it. — Is he about to sell (going to sell, *venditurus*) his books? — He is not going to sell them. — Am I about going (*iturus*) to the theatre? — You are not going. — Was he going to give (*daturus*) you money? — He was about to give me some. — Was the physician about to come (*venturus*)? — He was on the point of coming. — Must you be loved (*amandus*)? — I must be loved. — By whom (*cui*) is your little boy to be loved? — He must be loved by his parents and teachers. — Must the letter be read (*legendus*)? — It must be read. — By whom?

— It must be read by his friends and neighbors. — Must the fire be lighted? — It is not to be lighted (*accendendus*); it is to be extinguished. — Must you set out on a journey*? — I must set out. — When was he obliged to set out? — He was obliged to set out this morning. — Must you go (*eundum*) into the garden? — I am not obliged to go there. — Must we breakfast (*jentandum*) now? — We are not to breakfast yet. — What is to be done by us? — We must speak Latin, and write letters to our friends.

Exercise 97.

Have you seen any one writing? — I have seen my father writing and reading by the fire. — Did they hear us speaking (*loquentes*)? — They did not hear us. — Where have you seen our friend? — I have seen him standing (*stantem*) by the window. — Where was your little brother last evening? — He was in his room, reading (*legens*) the book which you gave him. — Is our servant in the field? — No, he is in the garden cutting (*secans*) trees. — Does he keep the window open (*apertam*)? — No, he keeps it shut. — Do you wish to be excused? — I do wish to be excused. — Will you resign your claim (*missos facere*) to posts of honor? — I cannot resign it. — Do you not perceive the treachery (*perfidiam*)? — I do perceive it. — Did he give you the letter to read (to be read = *legendus*)? — He did give it (to me). — To whom did you give the shirts to be washed? — I have given them to my servant. — Did they lend us the books to be torn (*discindendus*)? — No; on the contrary, they have lent them to us to be read and remembered (*memoriā tenendos*). — Will you send me your gloves to mend (to be mended)? — I am unwilling to send them. — Has the tailor received coats to mend? — He has received coats and shirts to mend (*reficienda*). — Where have you left your hat to be repaired? — I have left it with (*apud*) the hatter. — Is the stranger coming to our house? — He is coming in order to bring you (*tibi allaturus*) the tobacco you have bought of him. — Did that happen (*evēnit*) before (*ante*) or after the building of the city? — It happened after (*post*). — Did Socrates live (*vixitne Socrates*) after the birth of Christ? — No, he lived before it. — Was your brother rewarded? — No; on the contrary, he suffered (*affectus est*) a merited punishment. — Do you see the sailors coming? — I do not see them coming, but going away (*abeuntes*). — Where did you find your gloves? — I found them lying on the table. — Did you find your neighbor sitting by the fire? — No, I found him walking (*ambulantem*) in his garden.

---

* *Proficiscendumne tibi est?* And so the rest, according to Lesson XXV. *D.*

Lesson L. — PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM.

OF THE IMPERFECT TENSE.

A. The imperfect tense represents an action or state as incomplete, and going on at some past time. As,

Amābam,	I was loving (was engaged in loving). I loved, did love.*
Scribēbam,	I was writing (was occupied with writing). I wrote, did write.
Amābar,	I was (being) loved. I was the object of continued love.
Litterae scribēbantur,	A letter was being written. Some one was engaged in writing a letter.

B. The imperfect tense always involves a reference (either direct or indirect) to the time of another past action or event, which was either simultaneous with or antecedent to it. Hence, in narration, it frequently exchanges with the perfect indefinite, which, as the leading tense, then indicates the principal event, while the imperfect serves to point out the accessory circumstances connected with it. In its grammatical construction, however, the imperfect may either stand as the leading verb of an independent sentence, or subordinate in clauses introduced by a conjunction or a relative. It is thus used, —

I. With direct reference to another past action or event simultaneous with it. E. g.

Quúm Caêsar in Gálliam *vênit*, altérius factiônis príncipes *érant* Aédui, altérius Sequáni.	When Cæsar arrived in Gaul, the Ædui *were* the leaders of the one party, and the Sequani of the other.
Quâ tempestâte Carthaginiénses pleraêque Áfricae *imperitábant* Cyrenénses quôque mágni atque opulénti *fuêre*.	At the time when the Carthaginians *were ruling* nearly all Africa, the Cyrenians were also a great and opulent people.
Cimon celériter ad principâtum *pervénit*. *Habēbat*† enim sátis eloquéntiae, súmmam liberalitâtem, mágnam prudéntiam.	Cimon rapidly advanced to the highest office of the state. For *he had* sufficient eloquence, the highest degree of liberality, and great sagacity.

* The Latin imperfect always implies duration or continuance of action (in the indicative at least), and has consequently the sense of the English *I was loving*. Sometimes, however, it is convenient to render it like the perfect indefinite: *I loved, did love.*

† The imperfect here denotes a *permanent* quality or characteristic, in opposition to the momentary event indicated by the perfect *pervenit*.

Aéqui sê in óppida *recepérunt* murísque sê *tenébant.*

The Æqui retreated into their towns, and kept themselves within their walls.

Caêsar Alésiam circumvallâre *instítuit. Érat* óppidum in cólle súmmo, cújus rádices dúo duâbus ex pártibus flúmina *subluébant.* Ante íd óppidum planities *patêbat;* réliquis ex ómnibus pártibus cólles óppidum *cingebant.**

Cæsar began to invest Alesia. The town was situate on the top of a hill, whose base was washed on two sides by two rivers. In front of this town a plain extended; on all the remaining sides the town was surrounded by hills.

II. To denote frequently repeated past action, as exhibited either in individual habits, or in manners, customs, and usages. E. g.

L. Cássius idéntidem in caúsis quaérere *solébat*, cui bóno fuísset.

L. Cassius, in hearing causes, was accustomed to inquire frequently for whose advantage it had been.

Dicébat mélius, quam scrípsit, Horténsius.

Hortensius was wont to speak better than he wrote.

Majóres nóstri libértis nôn múlto sécus ác sérvis *imperábant.*

Our ancestors were accustomed to command their freedmen very nearly like slaves.

Ánseres Rómae públice *alebántur* in Capitólio.

It was customary at Rome to support geese at public expense in the Capitol.

Sócrates *dicébat* (= dícere *solébat*), ómnes in éo, quód scírent, sátis ésse eloquéntes.

Socrates was accustomed to say, that all men were eloquent enough in what they knew.

III. To denote an event, in which the narrator participated as an eyewitness. E. g.

Úno die séx proéliis fáctis .... ad duôrum míllium número ex Pompejánis cecidísse *reperiebâmus.*†

Six battles having been fought in one day, we found that nearly two thousand of Pompey's party had been killed.

Eôdem fére témpore póns in Ibéro própe effectus *nuntiabâtur*, et in Sícori vádum *reperiebâtur.*

About the same time it was reported (to us) that a bridge over the Ebro was nearly completed, and a ford over the Segre found.

REMARKS.

1. The imperfect sometimes expresses merely a *conatus*, i. e. an attempt, effort, or intention. E. g. *Consŭles* sedābant *tumultus, sedan-*

* The imperfect (*erat, subluebant*, &c.) of this example denotes *permanent situation*, in opposition to the comparatively momentary event indicated by the perfect *instituit* So the *tenebant* of the preceding example.

† The language of Cæsar, who was himself engaged in the events described.

do interdum movēbant, The consuls were attempting to quell the insurrection, but in doing so they sometimes only excited it. *Cato pro lege, quae* abrogābātur, *ita disseruit*, Cato spoke in favor of the law, which it was attempted to abolish, in the following manner.

2. The imperfect is sometimes used to represent an action or condition as past, though still existing at the time of the narrator. E. g. *Manus etiam data est elephantis, quia propter magnitudĭnem corpŏris difficĭles adĭtus* habēbant *ad cibos*, Elephants were furnished with a trunk, because, owing to the hugeness of their structure, they had (at the time they were thus furnished) a difficult access to their food.

3. In epistolary correspondence, the Romans frequently employ the imperfect or the perfect where in English we put the present. E. g. *Haec* scribēbam *mediā nocte*, I wrote (= I write) this at midnight. *Novi nihil nunc* erat *apud nos. Quae ad eam diem, quum haec* scribēbam, *audiverāmus, inanis rumor* videbatur,— There is at present nothing new with us. What we had (have) heard up to the day I wrote (write), appeared (appears) to be an empty rumor.

4. Instead of the imperfect indicative, the historians frequently use the *present infinitive*, in order to impart animation to the narrative. E. g. *Neque post id locorum Jugurthae dies aut nox ulla quieta fuere; neque loco neque mortali cuiquam aut tempori satis* credĕre; *cives, hostes juxta* metuĕre; circumspectare *omnia et omni metu* pavescĕre; *alio atque alio loco saepe contra decus regium noctu* requiescĕre, &c. Subsequently to that time Jugurtha had not a single quiet day or night; nor did he exactly trust any place or occasion, or any of his fellow-men: he dreaded citizens and enemies alike; he suspected everything, and trembled under the influence of every species of apprehension, &c. This is called the *Infinītivus Historĭcus*.

5. The above remarks concerning the use of the imperfect apply to the indicative alone. On the sense of the imperfect subjunctive, see *D.* and *E.* of this Lesson.

FORMATION OF THE IMPERFECT TENSES ACTIVE.

C. The imperfect indicative active is formed from the root of the indicative present (*am, mon, leg, aud*), by adding the terminations, 1. *ābam*, 2. *ēbam*, 3. *ēbam* (*ĭēbam*), 4. *ĭēbam;* and the imperfect subjunctive from the present infinitive, by adding *m*. E. g.

1. { IND. amābam, lavābam, apportābam, dābam.
   { SUBJ. amārem, lavārem, apportārem, dārem.
2. { IND. mŏnēbam, habēbam, studēbam, egēbam.
   { SUBJ. monērem, habērem, studērem, egērem.
3. { IND. legēbam, scribēbam, mittēbam, faciēbam.
   { SUBJ. legĕrem, scribĕrem, mittĕrem, facĕrem.
4. { IND. audiēbam, sciēbam, sitiēbam, esuriēbam.
   { SUBJ. audirem, scirem, sitirem, esurirem.

INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT ACTIVE.

D. The inflection of the imperfect active is exhibited by the following paradigms: —

FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Amābam, *I was loving.*		Amārem, *that I might, could, would, should love.*	
SING.	ămābăm	SING.	ămārĕm
	ămābās		ămārēs
	ămābăt,		ămārĕt,
PLUR.	ămābāmŭs	PLUR.	ămārēmŭs
	ămābātĭs		ămārētĭs
	ămābant.		ămārĕnt.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Mŏnēbam, *I was reminding.*		Mŏnērem, *that I might, could, would, should remind.*	
SING.	mŏnēbăm	SING.	mŏnērĕm
	mŏnēbās		mŏnērēs
	mŏnēbăt,		mŏnērĕt,
PLUR.	mŏnēbāmŭs	PLUR.	mŏnērēmŭs
	mŏnēbātĭs		mŏnērētĭs
	mŏnēbant.		mŏnērent.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
(1.) Lĕgēbam, *I was reading.*		Lĕgĕrem, *that I might, could, would, should read.*	
SING.	lĕgēbăm	SING.	lĕgĕrem
	lĕgēbās		lĕgĕrēs
	lĕgēbăt,		lĕgĕrĕt,
PLUR.	lĕgēbāmŭs	PLUR.	lĕgĕrēmŭs
	lĕgēbātĭs		lĕgĕrētĭs
	lĕgēbant.		lĕgĕrent.
(2.) Făcĭēbam, *I was doing.*		Făcĕrem, *that I might, could, would, should do.*	
SING.	făcĭēbăm	SING.	făcĕrĕm
	făcĭēbās		făcĕrēs
	făcĭēbăt,		făcĕrĕt,
PLUR.	făcĭēbāmŭs	PLUR.	făcĕrēmŭs
	făcĭēbātĭs		făcĕrētĭs
	făcĭēbant.		făcĕrent.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Audīēbam, *I was hearing.*	Audīrem, *that I might, could, would, should hear.*
SING.	audīēbăm	audīrēm
	audīēbās	audīrēs
	audīēbăt,	audīrēt,
PLUR.	audīēbāmŭs	audīrēmŭs
	audīēbātĭs	audīrētĭs
	audīēbant.	audīrent.

So conjugate, — 1. *Apportābam*, I was bringing; *curābam*, I was ordering; *dăbam*, I was giving; *lavābam*, I was washing; *secābam*, I was cutting. 2. *Audēbam*, I was daring; *egēbam*, I was needing; *habēbam*, I was having; *jubēbam*, I was commanding; *vidēbam*, I was seeing. 3. *Arcessēbam*, I was calling (fetching); *convalescēbam*, I was getting better; *dĭligēbam*, I was cherishing; *frangēbam*, I was breaking; *mittēbam*, I was sending; *ponēbam*, I was placing; *scribēbam*, I was writing; — *capĭēbam*, I was taking; *cupĭēbam*, I was desiring; *fugiēbam*, I was fleeing. 4. *Aperĭēbam*, I was opening; *esurĭēbam*, I was desirous of eating; *salĭēbam*, I was salting; *venĭēbam*, I was coming, &c.

E. The following are more or less irregular in the formation of the imperfect: —

1. Ĕram, *I was.* — Essem, *that I might be.*

IND. S. ĕrăm, ĕrās, ĕrăt; P. ĕrāmŭs, ĕrātĭs, ĕrant.
SUBJ. S. essem, essēs, essĕt; P. essēmŭs, essētĭs, essent.

2. Potĕram, *I was able.* — Pŏssem, *that I might be able.*

IND. S. pŏtĕrăm, pŏtĕrās, pŏtĕrăt; P. pŏtĕrāmŭs, pŏtĕrātĭs, pŏtĕrant.
SUBJ. S. possĕm, possēs, possĕt; P. possēmŭs, possētĭs, possent.

So the remaining compounds of *sum*, viz.: *adĕram* — *adessem* and *interĕram* — *interessem*, I was present; *prodĕram* — *prodessem* (from *prōsum*), I was conducing; *praeĕrat* — *praeessem*, I was presiding over; *superĕram* — *superessem*, I was left, &c.

3. Ibam, *I was going.* — Irem, *that I might go.*

IND. S. ībăm, ībās, ībăt; P. ībāmŭs, ībātĭs, ībant.
SUBJ. S. īrĕm, īrēs, īrĕt; P. īrēmŭs, īrētĭs, īrent.

So all the compounds of *eo*, viz.: *adĭbam* — *adĭrem*, I was approaching; *antēĭbam* — *antĕīrem*, I was going before; *inĭbam* — *inĭrem*, I was going in; *praeterĭbam* — *praeterĭrem*, I was going by; *subĭbam* — *subĭrem*, I was undergoing; *transĭbam* — *transĭrem*, I was going beyond. The compound *ambio* has *ambĭbam* or *ambiēbam*.

4. Vŏlēbam, *I was willing.* — Vellem, *that I might be willing.*

IND S. vŏlēbăm, vŏlēbās, vŏlēbăt; P. vŏlēbāmŭs, vŏlēbātĭs, vŏlēbant.

IND. S. vellĕm, vellĕs, vellĕt; P. vellēmŭs, vellētĭs, vellent.

So the compounds of *volo: malēbam — mallem*, I was preferring, and *nōlēbam — nollem*, I was unwilling.

5. Fĕrēbam, *I was bearing.* — Ferrem, *that I might bear.*

IND. S. fĕrēbăm, fĕrēbās, fĕrēbăt; P. fĕrēbāmŭs, fĕrēbātĭs, fĕrēbant.

SUBJ. S. ferrĕm, ferrēs, ferrĕt; P. ferrēmŭs, ferrētis, ferrent.

In like manner the compounds of *fĕro: afferēbăm — afferrĕm*, I was bringing; *auferēbăm — auferrĕm*, I was carrying off, &c.

6. Fīēbam, *I was becoming.* — Fīĕrem, *that I might become.*

IND. S. fīēbăm, fīēbās, fīēbăt; P. fīēbāmŭs, fīēbātĭs, fīēbant.

SUBJ. S. fīĕrĕm, fīĕrēs, fīĕrĕt; P. fīĕrēmŭs, fīĕrētĭs, fīĕrent.

So also the compounds of *fio*, viz.: *calefīēbam — calefīĕrem*, I was (being) warmed; *frigefīēbam — frigefīĕrem*, I was made cold; *labefīēbam — labefīĕrem*, I was shaken, &c. (Compare Lesson XXXIII. *F.* Remark.)

7. Edēbam, *I was eating.* — Edĕrem, *that I might eat.*

IND. S. ĕdēbam, ĕdēbās, ĕdēbat; P. ĕdēbāmŭs, ĕdēbātĭs, ĕdēbant.

SUBJ. S. ēdĕrĕm or *essem*, ēdĕrēs or *esses*, ēdĕrĕt or *esset*; P. ēdĕrēmŭs or *essēmŭs*, ēdĕrētĭs or *essētĭs*, ēdĕrent or *essent*.

8. The imperfect of *queo*, I can, and *nequeo*, I cannot, resembles that of a compound of *eo*. Thus, *quībam — quīrem; nequībam — nequīrem*. Of *āio*, I say, the indicative only occurs, *āiēbam, as, at*, &c. *Inquam*, I say, has only *inquiēbam* (*inquībam*) and *inquiēbant*.

9. The preteritives *ōdi*, I hate; *memĭni*, I remember; *nōvi*, I know (am acquainted with); and *consuēvi*, I am accustomed, having a present signification in the perfect, employ the pluperfect in the sense of the imperfect. Thus,

Oderam — odissem,* *I was hating.*
Memĭnĕram — meminissem, *I was remembering.*
Novĕram — novissem, *I knew* (*was acquainted with*).
Consuēvĕram — consuēvissem, *I was accustomed.*

Was I loving?	Egóne amâbam?
You were not loving.	Nôn amábas.
What did he bring us?	Quíd nóbis apportâbat?

* The pluperfect is inflected like the imperfect of *sum*. Thus IND. *oderam, ās, at; āmus, ātis, ant.* SUBJ. *odissem, ēs, et; ēmus, ētis, ent.* So the rest.

He was bringing us wine, bread, and meat.	Apportâbat nôbis vînum, pânem, et cárnem.
Were ye opening the window?	Aperiebatísne fenéstram?
We were opening it.	Aperiebâmus.
Were they sending us anything?	Númquid nôbis mittébant?
They were sending (you) nothing (whatever).	(Vôbis) níhil quídquam mittébant.
When, while (conjunction).	*Quum, cum* (c. Ind. and Subj.).
Do you listen when (while) I speak?	Auscultâsne, quúm égo lóquor?
Does he stay at home when his father goes out?	Tenétne se dómi, quúm páter éjus in públicum prôdit?
He does stay at home.	Ténet sê vêro dómi.
Did you write when (while) I was reading?	Scripsistîne (éo témpore), quúm égo legêbam?
I was writing when you were reading (when you read).	Égo véro scribêbam, quúm tû legísti (légeres).

F. Obs. The conjunction *quum* or *cum*, denoting a relation of time (in the sense *eo tempore, quum*, or *tum, quum*), is commonly followed by the indicative; but when the verb is in the imperfect or pluperfect, it may also stand in the subjunctive.

Did he stay at home when you went out?	Tenuítne sê dómi, quúm tû in públicum prodíbas (prodíres*)?
He did remain at home.	Tenêbat sê dómi.
Did they study when they were at Leipsic?	Dederúntne óperam lítteris, quúm Lípsiae† dégerent (degébant)?
They did study.	Dedérunt.
What was he doing when you returned home?	Quíd faciébat, quúm dómum revertísti?
He was playing.	Ludébat.
Were you at Berlin when I was there?	Erâsne Berolíni eôdem témpore, quum et égo íbi éram (éssem)?
I was not there then.	Égo íbi éo témpore nôn fúi.
Was our friend sleepy when he came home?	Cupidúsne sómni érat amícus nóster, quúm domum vênit (venîret)?
He was sleepy.	(Sómni cúpidus) nôn érat.
What did your brother intend to do?	Quíd fácere frâter túus cogitâbat?
He was intending to go into the country.	Rûs íre cogitâbat.

---

* But the imperfect subjunctive thus employed does not express *duration* or *continuance* of an action or state (as does the indicative), but a mere statement of what has occurred (like the perfect indefinite). Compare *B.* Rem. 5, and also *E.*

† On the genitives *Lipsiae, Berolini, Lutetiae*, &c., see Lesson LVI. *B.*

Were they hearing what we said?	Núm éa, quae díximus, audiébant?
They were not hearing (them).	Nôn audiébant.
Where were those men going whom we saw yesterday?	Quô íbant víriílli, quôs héri vídimus?
They were going into the garden.	Íbant in hórtos.
Was he accustomed to write better than he spoke? (Cf. *B.* II.)	Scribebátne mélius quám locûtus est?
He did not write as well.	Scribêbat nôn aéque béne.
What was Socrates wont to say?	Quíd dícere solêbat Sócrates?
He was wont to say that we should know ourselves.	Dicébat, nôs debêre nôsmet ípsos cognóscere.
Did our ancestors speak Latin?	Núm majóres nostri Latíne loquebántur (lóqui solébant)?
No, they spoke English and German.	Nôn véro; Anglice et Germánice loquebántur.
Did you come in order to see?	Venistîne, ut vidéres?

G. Obs. When the perfect indefinite is followed by a clause introduced by the conjunction *ut*, or by a relative, the verb of that clause stands in the imperfect subjunctive.*

I did come in order to see.	Égo véro véni, ut vidérem.
Had he anything to eat?	Habuítne, quod éderet (ésset)?
He had nothing either to eat or to drink?	Nôn habuit, quód éderet aut bíberet.
The boy fell from the roof, so as to break his leg.	Púer de técto décidit, ut crûs frúngeret.†

Exercise 98.

Was he reading? — He was reading. — At what time? — He was reading this morning, between (*inter*) seven and eight o'clock. — Were you writing when I came home? — I was writing a letter to my brother. — Was he studying when I went out? — He was not studying when you went out, but when you were at the theatre. — Were you working while I was playing? — No, I was playing while you were working. — When was he writing the letter? — He was (engaged in) writing it at midnight. — Was he getting better when you saw him? — He was not getting (any) better. — Where were you, when I was calling the physician? — I was in my garden. — Were you opening the window when I was passing (*praeteribam*)? — I was opening it. — Were the children breaking our glasses? — They were not breaking them. — What did you do when I was going home? — I was reading the book which our friend has lent me. — What did your brother say when you entered his room? — He said nothing. —

* Not by the *perfect* subjunctive, which is generally used only with reference to an action just completed (with the perfect *definite*).

† The perfect *fregerit* would convert this into a statement of what has just occurred: — "The boy *has* (just now) *fallen* from the roof, so that he *has broken* his leg."

Were you present at the ball? — I was not present. — Was the boy diligent? — He was both diligent and well behaved. — Was he able to walk out this morning? — He was not able. — Were you at home when I received my money? — I was not at home. — Did he desire to see his father? — He was desiring to see him very much (*valde*). — Was the coffee (being) warmed? — It was not being warmed. — Was he willing to learn Latin? — He was unwilling to do so. — Who was eating? — Our neighbor was eating and drinking. — Did he come to see you? — He came in order to see me, and to give me a new book. — Had you anything to write to your friend, when you were in the country? — I had many things to write to him. — Have you nothing to eat this morning? — I have nothing. — Were they accustomed to write as well as they spoke? — They were accustomed to write better. — Did you speak French when you were in Paris (*Lutetiae*)? — I spoke French and Latin.

Lesson LI. — PENSUM UNUM ET QUINQUAGESIMUM.

OF THE IMPERFECT PASSIVE AND DEPONENT.

A. The imperfect tense of the passive voice is formed from the active, by changing *m* into *r*. E. g.

1. { IND. amābar, lavābar, apportābar, dŭbar.
   { SUBJ. amārer, lavārer, apportārer, dărer.
2. { IND. monēbar, habēbar, jubēbar, delēbar.
   { SUBJ. monērer, habērer, jubērer, delērer.
3. { IND. legēbar, scribēbar, mittēbar, capĭēbar.
   { SUBJ. legĕrer, scribĕrer, mittĕrer, capĕrer.
4. { IND. audiēbar, aperiēbar, erudiēbar, puniēbar.
   { SUBJ. audīrer, aperīrer, erudīrer, punirer.

B. The inflection of the imperfect passive is exhibited by the following paradigms: —

FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Amābar, *I was loved.*	Amārer, *that I might be loved.*
SING. ămābăr	SING. ămārĕr
ămābārĭs *or* -rĕ	ămārērĕ *or* -rĭs *
ămābātŭr,	ămārētŭr,

* Compare page 162, note *.

PLUR. ămābāmŭr	PLUR. ămārēmŭr
ămābāmĭnĭ	ămārēmĭnĭ
ămābantŭr.	ămārentur.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Monēbar, *I was reminded.*	Monērer, *that I might be reminded.*
SING. mŏnēbăr	SING. mŏnērĕr
mŏnēbārĭs *or* -rĕ	mŏnērērĕ *or* -rĭs
mŏnēbātŭr,	mŏnērētŭr,
PLUR. mŏnēbāmŭr	PLUR. mŏnērēmŭr
mŏnēbāmĭnĭ	mŏnērēmĭnĭ
mŏnēbantŭr.	mŏnērentŭr.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
(1.) Legēbar, *I was read.*	Legĕrer, *that I might be read.*
SING. lĕgēbăr	SING. lĕgĕrĕr
lĕgēbārĭs *or* -rĕ	lĕgĕrērĕ *or* -rĭs
lĕgēbātŭr,	lĕgĕrētŭr,
PLUR. lĕgēbāmŭr	PLUR. lĕgĕrēmŭr
lĕgēbāmĭnĭ	lĕgĕrēmĭnĭ
lĕgēbantŭr.	lĕgĕrentŭr.
(2.) Capĭēbar, *I was taken.*	Capĕrer, *that I might be taken.*
SING. căpĭēbăr	SING. căpĕrĕr
căpĭēbārĭs *or* -rĕ	căpĕrērĕ *or* -rĭs
căpĭēbātŭr,	capĕrētŭr,
PLUR. căpĭēbāmŭr	PLUR. căpĕrēmŭr
căpĭēbāmĭnĭ	căpĕrēmĭnĭ
căpĭēbantŭr.	căpĕrentŭr.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Audīēbar, *I was heard.*	Audīrer, *that I might be heard.*
SING. audīēbăr	SING. audīrĕr
audīēbārĭs *or* -rĕ	audīrērĕ *or* -rĭs
audīēbātŭr,	audīrētŭr,
PLUR. audīēbāmŭr	PLUR. audīrēmŭr
audīēbāmĭnĭ	audīrēmĭnĭ
audīēbantŭr.	audīrentŭr.

So conjugate, — 1. *Apportābar*, I was brought; *dābar*, I was given; *lavābar*, I was washed; *secābar*, I was cut. 2. *Habēbar*, I was held (considered); *delēbar*, I was destroyed; *jubēbar*, I was commanded; *vidēbar*, I was seen (I seemed). 3. *Arcessēbar*, I was called; *diligē-*

bar, I was cherished; *frangēbar*, I was broken; *mittēbar*, I was sent; *ponēbar*, I was put; *scribēbar*, I was written. 4. *Aperĭēbar*, I was opened; *erudīēbar*, I was instructed; *punīēbar*, I was punished, &c.

REMARK. — Of the irregular verbs given on pp. 270 and 271, *sum*, *possum*, *volo*, and their compounds, have no passive voice. Of *eo*, the third person singular *ītur*, *ītur* occurs impersonally.* *Fĕro* and its compounds have *fĕrēbar* — *ferrer* regularly. The compounds of *facio*, which change the radical *a* into *i*, have a regular imperfect; as, *interficīēbar* — *interficĕrer*, while those which retain *a* generally take *fĭēbam* — *fĭĕrem*; as, *calefĭēbam* — *calefĭĕrem*. *Edo* has *edēbar* — *edĕrer* regularly, except in the third person singular subjunctive, where *essētur* may stand for *edĕrētur*.

Was *I* (being loved)?	Egóne amâbar?
You were not loved, but your brother.	Tû nôn amabâris, sed frâter túus.
Were you and he loved?	Án tû átque ílle amabámini?
We were not loved.	Nôn amabâmur.
Were they despised?	Écquidílli despicátui habebántur?
They were despised.	Sáne quídem, habebántur.
Was the book (being) read?	Legebatúrne líber?
It was read.	Sicést; legebâtur.
Did they give you the book to be read?	Dederúntne tíbi líbrum, ut legerêtur?
No, they gave it to me to be torn.	Ímmo véro míhi éum dedérunt, ut lacerarêtur.
Was the bread brought to be eaten?	Apportatúsneést pânis, ut ederêtur (essêtur)?
Did ye speak in order to be heard?	Estísne locúti, ut audirémini?
No, we spoke in order to be understood.	Nôn véro; locúti súmus, ut intelligerêmur.
Were they (being) killed?	Núm ílli interficiebántur?
They were (being) killed.	Nôn interficiebántur.
Was the coffee (being) warmed?	Calefiebátne coffĕa?
It was done.	Fáctumést véro.

IMPERFECT OF DEPONENT VERBS.

C. The imperfect of deponent verbs follows the analogy of the imperfect passive. Thus: —

	INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.
1st CONJ.	Arbitrābar — arbitrārer, *I was thinking.*
	Comitābar — comitārer, *I was escorting.*
	Dominābar — dominārer, *I was ruling.*
	Hortābar — hortārer, *I was exhorting.*
	Morābar — morārer, *I was staying.*

* But the transitive compounds *adeo*, *anteo*, *ineo*, *praetereo*, *subeo*, and *transeo*, have a regular passive voice; as, *adībar* — *adīrer*, &c.

2d Conj. Fatēbar — fatērer, *I was confessing.*
Merēbar — merērer, *I was earning.*
Miserēbar — miserērer, *I was pitying.*
Tuēbar — tuērer, *I was defending.*
Verēbar — verērer, *I was fearing.*

3d Conj. Fungēbar — fungĕrer, *I was performing.*
Labēbar — labĕrer, *I was falling.*
Loquēbar — loquĕrer, *I was speaking.*
Obliviscēbar — obliviscĕrer, *I was forgetting.*
Sequēbar — sequĕrer, *I was following.*

4th Conj. Blandīēbar — blandīrer, *I was flattering.*
Experīēbar — experīrer, *I was experiencing.*
Largīēbar — largīrer, *I was lavishing.*
Mentīēbar — mentīrer, *I was lying.*
Partīēbar — partīrer, *I was dividing.*

Remark. — All these are inflected precisely like the examples furnished under *B*. The following phrases will illustrate them still further.

Whom were you exhorting?	Quém hortabâris?
I was exhorting my son.	Ego méum fílium hortâbar.
Was he escorting his friend?	Núm ílle amícum súum comitabâtur?
He did not escort him.	Éum nôn comitabâtur.
Where were ye staying?	Úbi morabámini?
We were staying in Paris.	Morabâmur Lutétiae.
Were you earning (gaining) any good?	Merebarísne quídquam bóni?
No, I was acquiring less favor than hatred.	Ímmo véro mínus ego favôris quám ódii merêbar.
Were we defending your brother?	Écquid nôs frâtrem túum tuebâmur?
Ye were defending him really.	Vôs éum tuebámini profécto.
When did they speak to the tailor?	Quô témpore cum sartôre colloquebántur?
They spoke to him last evening.	Loquebántur cum éo héri vésperi.
Did ye follow any one?	Núm quém (áliquem) sequebámini?
We did not follow any one.	Núllum (néminem) sequebâmur.
Were you flattering any one?	Écquid álicui (cuíquam) blandiebâris?
I was flattering no one.	Blandiêbar némini (núlli).
Were those men lying?	Núm víri ílli mentiebántur?
Not at all, they were not lying.	Nôn véro; mínime mentiebántur.
Did he come in order to talk with us?	Núm ílle vênit, út nobíscum loquerêtur?
No, he rather came to flatter us.	Ímmo véro vênit, ut nóbis blandirêtur.
Did he say when he would come?	Dixítne, quô témpore veníret?
He did say so.	Díxit véro.

At first, in the beginning. *Afterwards, then.*	*Primum ; primo, a primo, in primo.* *Deinde, post, postea.*
Hereupon, upon this.	Deinde, dein ; exinde, exin (*adv.*).
Did he say yes or no ?	Útrum díxit *étiam* an *nôn* ?
At first he said yes, afterwards no.	A prímo díxit étiam, post nôn.
At first he worked, but afterwards he played.	Primum laborâvit, deínde aûtem lûsit.
He came afterwards.	Vênit (advênit) póstea.
Upon this (then) he said.	Deínde (exínde) dixit.
Here is your book, and there your paper.	Hic ést líber túus, íllic chárta túa.
Now you must work.	Núnc ést tíbi laborándum.
To-day I do not go out.	Hódie égo in públicum nôn pródeo.
Yesterday my father departed.	Héri páter méus profectus est.
As soon as (conj.).	*Simul ac* (*atque*), *simul ut.* *Ubi, quum primum.* (With the Perf. Indic.)
I am accustomed to drink as soon as I have eaten.	Égo, símul atque édi, bíbere sóleo.
As soon as I have taken off my shoes, I take off my stockings.	Símul út mê excalceávi, tibiália détraho pédibus.
As soon as he heard this, he departed.	Quúm primum haêc audívit, profêctus est.
What do you usually do after supper ?	Quid post cíbum vespertinum fácere sóles ?
Afterwards I sleep.	Deínde (póstea) dórmio.
To sleep.	*Dormĭo, īre, īvi (ĭi), ītum.*
To live ; to be alive.	Vivo, ĕre, xi, ctum. In vītā esse. Vītā frŭor (frŭi, fruĭtus *or* fructus sum).
Is your father yet alive ?	Vivítne páter túus etiámnunc ? Éstne páter túus in vítā etiámnunc ?
He is yet (still) alive.	Est in vítā etiámnunc. Vítā frúitur etiámnunc.
He is no longer alive.	In vítā ést nôn jám. Vítā frúitur nôn ámplius.
Is our cousin still sleeping (yet asleep) ?	Dormítne nóster consobrínus etiámnunc ?
He does still sleep.	Dórmit véro etiámnunc.
To give away.	*Abaliĕno, āre, āvi, ātum.* *Dono* (dat.) *dăre* (*alicui aliquid*).
To cut off.	Ampŭto, āre, āvi, ātum. Abscīdo, ĕre, īdi, īsum. *Also*, praecidĕre, desecāre, &c.

To cut off one's head.	Alicui căput amputāre. Căput abscidĕre cervicibus alicūjus.
To cut one's throat.	Jugulāre alĭquem. Jugŭlum alicui praecidĕre.
To cut off one's ears.	Abscidĕre (praecidĕre) alicui aures.
To cut one's (own) nails.	Resecāre (-sĕcui, -sectum) ungues.
What (injury) have they done to him?	Quid injúriae éi intulérunt?
They have cut off his ears.	Abscidérunt éi aures.
Have they cropped the dog's ears?	Praeciderúntne aures cáni?
They have cropped them.	Praecidérunt.
They have cut off his head.	Amputavérunt éi căput.
They have cut his throat.	Praecidérunt éi júgulum.
Were you cutting your nails?	Resecabâsne tíbi úngues?
I was not cutting them.	Nôn resecâbam.
Has he given away anything?	Núm quíd abalienâvit? Núm aliquid dóno dédit?
He has not given away anything.	Níhil abalienâvit. Dóno dédit níhil.
He has given away his coat.	Abalienâvit (dóno dédit) súam tógam.
To arrive.	Advĕnĭo, īre, ēni, entum.
To go away, to go off (from a place).	Abĕo, īre, īvi (ĭi), ĭtum. Discēdo, ĕre, essi, essum. (AB ALIQUO, AB *or* EX ALIQUO LOCO.)
At length, at last.	Tandem, denĭque, postrēmo (*adv.*).
Without (prep.).	*Sine* (prep. cum abl.).
Without money, books, friends.	Sine pecúniā, líbris, amícis.
Without any danger.	Sine úllo perículo.
Without any doubt.	Sine úlla dubitatiône.
Without speaking.	Nihil dicens, tacens. Verbum non faciens.
Without saying a word.	Ne ûnum quídem vérbum fáciens.
Without having said a word.	Vérbo omníno núllo fácto.
He went away without saying a word.	Ábiit vérbum omníno núllum fáciens (vérbo núllo fácto).
Has he arrived at last?	Advenítne tándem?
He has arrived.	Advênit véro.
He has not yet arrived.	Nóndum advênit.
Are they coming at last?	Tandémne véniunt?
They are coming.	Fáctum est.
Loud (adv.).	*Clārē* (adv.), *clārā vōce.*
Does your master speak loud?	Magistérne túus cláre lóquitur?

He does speak loud.	Lóquitur véro cláre.
You must read louder.	Legéndum ést tíbi clárius (vôce clariôre).
In order to learn Latin, one must speak loud.	Sí quís Latíne edíscere vult, necesse est clárâ vôce loquâtur.

Exercise 99.

Did you intend to learn English? — I did intend to learn it, but I could not find a good master. — Did your brother intend to buy a carriage? — He was intending to buy one, but he had no more money. — Why did you work? — I worked in order to learn Latin. — Why did you love that man? — I loved him because he loved me. — Have you already seen the son of the captain? — I have already seen him. — Did he speak English? — No, he spoke Latin and Greek. — Where were you at that time? — I was in Italy. — Whom was the master exhorting? — He was exhorting his scholars. — Were they not considered (*habebantur*) diligent? — No, they were considered lazy and naughty. — Were you ordered (*juberi*) to go into the country. — I was not ordered to go there. — When was the letter (being) sent? — It was sent yesterday. — Was the window (being) opened when we were passing? — It was (being) opened. — Was the master heard when he spoke? — He was heard, when he spoke loud. — Why was the boy punished? — He was punished because he was negligent and bad. — Were you able to defend (*tuéri*) your friends? — I was not able to defend them. — Were they accustomed to flatter you? — They were accustomed to flatter me. — Did you come in order to flatter me? — No, I came in order to talk to you. — Is your friend's brother still alive? — He is still alive. — Are your parents still alive? — They are no longer alive. — Was your brother still alive, when you were in Germany? — He was no longer alive. — Were you yet asleep (sleeping), when I came this morning? — I was asleep no longer. — Was your master accustomed to speak loud? — He was. — Are you accustomed to speak loud, when you study Latin? — I am not accustomed (to do so). — Has your cousin at last arrived? — He has arrived at last. — Are you at last learning French? — I am learning it at last. — What do you do after breakfast? — As soon as I have breakfasted, I begin to write my letters. — I take off my clothes as soon as I have taken off my hat. — Do you drink as soon as you have eaten? — I do. — What did they do after supper? — They slept afterwards.

Lesson LII. — PENSUM ALTERUM ET QUINQUAGESIMUM.

OF THE USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

A. The infinitive may be regarded as a verbal substantive of the neuter gender singular number, and may as such stand either as the *subject* of a finite verb in the nominative, or as its *object* in the accusative.

REMARK. — The infinitive differs from regular verbal substantives, *a*) by admitting after it the case of the finite verb, and *b*) by indicating, at the same time, the completion or non-completion of the action denoted by the verb, i. e. by representing it as present, past, or future.

I. The infinitive is in the nominative, when it stands as the subject of an intransitive predicate. E. g.

Béne *sentîre rectêque fácere* sátis ést ad béne beatêque vivéndum.	Good sentiments and correct conduct suffice to constitute a well-regulated and a happy life.
Hóc exitiósius érat quám Vespasiânum *sprevísse*.	This was more pernicious than to have despised Vespasian.
Apud Pérsas súmma laûs est *púlchre venári*.	Among the Persians, to excel in hunting is a matter of the highest praise.
Invidêre (= invidia) nôn cádit in sapiéntem.	Envy is below the character of a philosopher.
Ignóscere amíco humânum est.	To pardon one's friend is human.
Níhil est áliud, *béne et beáte vívere*, nísi *honéste et récte vívere*.	To live well and happily is tantamount to living honorably and correctly.

II. The infinitive stands as the object accusative after transitive or auxiliary verbs, and sometimes after prepositions. E. g.

Víncere scis, Hánnibal, *victóriâ úti* néscis.	You know how to conquer, Hannibal, but not how to use your victory.
Cúpio tê cónsulem *vidêre*.	I desire to see you consul.
Múltum ínterest ínter *dáre* et *accípere*.	There is a great difference between giving and receiving.
Quód crímen dícis, praeter *amâsse*, *méum*?	What charge have you to make, besides my having loved?
A Graécis Gálli úrbes moénibus *cíngere didicérunt*.	The Gauls learnt the art of surrounding their cities with walls from the Greeks.

Sólent díu *cogitâre* ómnes, qui mágna negótia *vólunt ágere.*	All who wish to accomplish great objects, are accustomed to deliberate long.
Súos quísque *débet tuéri.*	Every one is bound to defend his own (friends, &c.).
Sallústius *státuit* rês géstas pópuli Románi *perscríbere.*	Sallust resolved to write the exploits (history) of the Roman people.
Pompéium et *hortári* et *orâre* et *monêre* . . . . nôn *desístimus.*	We do not cease to exhort and to beseech and to admonish Pompey.
Amícos néque ármis *cógere*, néque aúro *parâre quéas;* offício et fide pariúntur.	You can neither make friends by force of arms, nor procure them with gold; they are made by an obliging disposition and by fidelity.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The verbs most commonly followed by the simple infinitive are those signifying, —

a.) WILLINGNESS OR UNWILLINGNESS, DESIRE, and the like; as, *volo, nolo, malo, cupio, studeo, opto,* &c.

b.) ABILITY OR INABILITY, KNOWLEDGE OR IGNORANCE; as, *possum, queo, nequeo; scio, nescio; valeo;* to which add *disco* and *debeo.*

c.) COURAGE OR FEAR; as, *audeo; dubito, metuo, paveo, timeo, vereor.*

d.) HABIT OR CUSTOM; as, *assuesco, consuesco, insuesco, soleo.*

e.) TO BEGIN, CONTINUE, CEASE, OR REFRAIN; as *coepi, incipio; pergo, persevĕro; desino, desisto, intermitto, praetermitto; recuso,* &c.

f.) PURPOSE OR ENDEAVOR; as, *curo, cogito, decerno, constituo, instituo, statuo, paro; aggredior, conor, contendo, maturo, nitor, tendo, tento,* &c.

g.) Passive verbs signifying TO BE SAID, REPORTED, CONSIDERED, BELIEVED, &c.; as, *audior, credor, dicor, existimor, feror, negor, nuntior, perhĭbeor, putor, trador,* &c.; also *cogor, jubeor, videor.*

REMARK. — Many of the verbs here enumerated are also followed by the subjunctive, with one of the conjunctions *ut, ne, quo, quomĭnus,* &c. With some of them the latter construction is even the most common. (Cf. Lesson LIV.)

2. The infinitive is sometimes put after certain nouns, adjectives, and verbs, instead of an oblique case of the gerund. This construction occurs, —

a.) After nouns like *tempus, consilium, studium, animus, ars,* &c. (Cf. page 116.) E. g. *Tempus est majora* conari (= *conandi*), It is time to make greater attempts. *Consilium erat hiemando* continuare

(= *continuandi*) *bellum*, The design was to continue the war by going into winter quarters. *Fuerat animus Cheruscis* juvare (= *juvandi*) *Cattos*, The Cherusci had the intention of aiding the Catti.

b.) After the adjectives *parātus*, *insuētus*, *contentus*, and some others.* E. g. *Parātus audire*, Prepared to hear. *Vinci insuetus*, Unaccustomed to be conquered. *Contentus retinēre*, Content to retain.

c.) After the verbs *habēre*, *dăre*, and *ministrāre*, in expressions like *Nihil* habeo *ad te* scribĕre, I have nothing to write to you. *Ut* bibĕre *sibi jubēret* dari, That (something) should be given them to drink. *Ut Jŏvi* bibere *ministraret*, That he might give Jove to drink.

3. After the auxiliary verbs *volo*, *malo*, *nolo*, *cupio*, *incipio*, and others enumerated under *Obs.* 1, the noun or adjective of the predicate is in the nominative, when the quality denoted by it is regarded as already existing in the subject; but when the quality is not present, or missing, the infinitive following these verbs has a subject of its own in the accusative,† and the noun or adjective is likewise in the accusative. E. g. *Volo et esse et haberi gratus*, It is my wish both to be grateful and to be considered so. *Vos liberi esse non curatis?* Do you not care to be free? *Judĭcem me esse*, *non doctorem*, *volo*, I wish myself to be a judge, and not a teacher. *Ego me Phidiam esse mallem*, *quam vel optimum fabrum tignarium*, I would rather be a Phidias, than the best joiner in the world. *Timoleon maluit se diligi*, *quam metui*, Timoleon wanted himself to be loved rather than feared. *Gratum se videri studet*, He strives to have the appearance of being grateful.

4. In historical narration, the infinitive is sometimes used instead of the imperfect indicative. (Cf. Lesson L. *B.*, Rem. 4.)

The coin.	*Nummus*, *i*, m.
The copper coin.	*Nummus cŭprĕus*, *i*, m.
The silver coin.	Nummus argentĕus, i, *m.*
The gold coin.	(Nummus) aurĕus *seu* aurĕŏlus, i, *m.*
The as (a copper coin).	As, *gen.* assis, *m.*
The sesterce (silver).	Sestertĭus, i, *m.*
The denarius (silver).	Denārĭus, i, *m.*
The aureus (gold).	Aurĕus, i, *m.*
The obole (Greek coin).	Obŏlus, i, *m.*
The drachma "	Drachma, ae, *f.*
The mina "	Mĭna, ae, *f.*
The talent‡ "	Talentum, i, *n.*
Roman, Greek, English money.	Pecūnĭa Romānōrum, Graecōrum, Anglōrum signo signāta.

* Chiefly in imitation of the Greeks; as, *Dignus eltgi*, Worthy of being chosen. *Peritus obsequi*, Skilled in the art of yielding. *Utilis aspirare et adesse*, Useful to join and assist.

† Compare Lesson L. *A.*

‡ The *obolus* — *talentum* are Greek money, and the *as* — *aureus* Roman proper. On the full enumeration and value of these, see the Table of Coins in the Lexicon.

To contain, consist of.	Contĭneo, ēre, nŭi, tentum (ALIQUID). Efficĭor, i, -fectus sum (EX RE).
To be worth, to have the value of.	Vălĕo, ēre, ŭi, —— (ALICUA RE).* Valōrem habēre (ALICUJUS REI).
To estimate, reckon.	Aestĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum.
An as is estimated the fourth part of a sesterce.	As quárta pars sestértii aestimâtur.
The denarius contains four sestertii or sixteen asses.	Denárius quáttuor sestértios vel sédecim ásses cóntinet.
The aureus consists of twenty-five denarii, or one hundred sesterces.	Aúreus (númmus) effícitur ex quínque et vigínti denáriis vel céntum sestértiis.
A drachma has the value of six oboles.	Una dráchma valôrem hábet sex obolôrum.
A hundred drachmas make a mina.	Céntum dráchmae mínam ûnam effíciunt.
A talent contains sixty minas.	Taléntum válet sexagínta mínis.
How many groshes are there in a crown?	Ex quót gróssis effícitur thalêrus?
Twenty-four.	Ex quáttuor et vigínti.
The grosh (modern).	Grossus, i, *m.*
To receive — received.	*Accipĕre — accēpi, acceptum.*
How much money have you received?	Quántam pecúniam accepisti?
I have received thirty talents of gold.	Accépi trigínta talénta aúri.
We have received a hundred sestertii.	Nôs céntum sestértios accépimus.
Have you received letters?	Écquid epístolas accepísti?
I have received some.	Accépi véro nonnúllas.
To promise.	*Promitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum.* *Polliceor, ēri, cĭtus sum.* (ALICUI ALIQUID *or* INFIN.)
Have I promised you anything?	Promisíne tíbi áliquid (quídquam)?
You have promised me nothing.	Tû míhi níhil réi promisísti (pollícitus és).
Do you promise to come to me?	Pollicerísne tê ad mê ventûrum?
I do promise it.	Sáne quídem, pollíceor.
Can he give us what he has promised?	Potéstne nóbis dáre quod promísit?
He can give you all that he has promised you.	Pótest vóbis dáre omnia, quae promísit.
To call.	Vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum (ALIQUEM). Arcesso, ĕre, īvi, itum (ALIQUEM).

* Verbs of valuing are followed by the Ablative.

To wear out.	Dētĕro, ĕre, trīvi, trītum (ALIQUID). Usū conterĕre, trīvi, trītum.
To spell.	Ordināre syllăbas litterārum.
How? In what way or manner?	*Quōmŏdo, quō pactō, quemadmŏdum, quī.**
Thus.	*Sic, ĭtă* (adv.).
In this manner.	Hōc mŏdo, ad hunc modum, hōc pacto.
Well.	Bĕne, rectē (*adv.*).
Badly.	Mălē, nēquiter (*adv.*).
So so, indifferently.	Sic sătis, mediocriter, utcunque.
Does he already know how to spell?	Scítne (didicítne) jám syllabas litterârum ordinâre?
He does know how.	Scít véro. Dídicit.
How (in what manner) did you learn Latin?	Quemádmodum didicísti línguam Latínam?
I have learnt it so.	Dídici éam hôc pácto.
How did I write my letters?	Quómodo scrípsi égo epístolas méas?
You have written them so so.	Scripsísti éas sic sátis.
Has she washed the shirt well?	Lávitne illa indúsium béne?
She has washed it not badly.	Lâvit id nôn mále.
Whom do you call?	Quém vócas (cítas)?
I am calling my little brother.	Fratérculum méum vóco (cíto).
How (who) are you called?	Quómodo (quís) vocâris?
I am called a learner.	Vócor discípulus. Aúdio discípulus.
Has he worn out his coat?	Detrivítne súam tógam?
To lie, to be placed.	*Jăceo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum.* *Posĭtum* or *sĭtum esse.* (IN *or* SUPER ALIQUA RE).
To lay place, put.	*Pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum.* *Imponĕre, reponĕre.* † *Collŏco, āre, āvi, ātum.* (ALIQUID IN *or* SUPER RE.)
To dry (*neuter*).	Siccesco, ĕre, ——, ——.
To dry, make dry.	Sicco, āre, āvi, ātum.
To put out to dry.	Expōnĕre aliquid in sole siccandi causā (ut siccescat).
Where did you put the book?	Ŭbi (quô lóco) líbrum imposuísti?
I have placed it upon the table.	Impósui éum mensae (in mensam). ‡
Where have they put my gloves?	Ŭbi posuérunt méa digitábula?

* An old ablative for *quō*.

† And various other compounds; as, *adponĕre*, to place near; *deponĕre*, to put down; *disponĕre*, to place apart; *exponĕre*, to spread out; *reponĕre*, *supponĕre*, to place under.

‡ The construction of *imponĕre* is ALICUI REI, IN REM, or IN RE.

They have placed them (in order) upon the chair.	Collocavérunt éa in séllā.
Where lies the book?	Úbi est pósitus líber?
It lies upon the table.	Pósitus est in (super) ménsā.
It has lain upon the table.	Pósitus érat in (super) ménsā.
Have you put wood upon the hearth?	Reposuistine lígnum súper fóco?
I have put a little upon it.	Repósui véro aliquántulum.
Do you put out your coat to dry?	Exponísne túam tógam in sôle, ut siccéscat?
I do put it out.	Ítaést, expóno.
Have they put their stockings to dry?	Écquid in sôle exposuérunt tibiália súa, ut siccéscĕrent?
They have not.	Nôn exposuérunt.

Exercise 100.

Hast thou promised anything? — I have promised nothing. — Do you give me what you have promised me? — I do give it to you. — Have you received much money? — I have received but little. — How much have you received of it? — I have received but one crown. — When have you received your letter? — I have received it to-day. — Hast thou received anything? — I have received nothing. — What have we received? — We have received long letters. — Do you promise me to come to the ball? — I do promise you to come to it. — Does your ball take place to-night? — It does take place. — How much money have you given to my son? — I have given him fifteen crowns. — Have you not promised him more? — I have given him what I have promised him. — Have our enemies received their money? — They have not received it. — Have you Roman money? — I have some. — What kind of money (*quid nummôrum*) have you? — I have asses, sesterces, denarii, and aurei. — How many asses are there in a sesterce? — There are four. — What is the value of an aureus? — An aureus is worth a hundred sesterces. — Have you any German money? — I have crowns, florins, kreuzers, groshes, and deniers. — How many groshes are there in a florin? — A florin contains sixteen groshes, or sixty kreuzers. — Have you any oboles? — I have a few of them. — How many oboles are there in a drachma? — A drachma contains six oboles. — The silver mina (*mina argenti*) of the Greeks had the same value as the Roman denarius. — How many minas are there in a talent? — The talent contains sixty minas. — Will you lend your coat to me? — I will lend it to you; but it is worn out. — Are your shoes worn out? — They are not worn out. — Will you lend them to my brother? — I will lend them to him. — To whom have you lent your hat? — I have not lent it; I have given it to somebody. — To whom have you given it? — I have given it to a pauper.

Exercise 101.

Does your little brother already know how to spell? — He does know. — Does he spell well? — He does spell well. — How has your

little boy spelt? — He has spelt so so. — How have your children written their letters? — They have written them badly. — Do you know Spanish? — I do know it. — Does your cousin speak Italian? — He speaks it well. — How do your friends speak? — They do not speak badly (*non male*). — Do they listen to what you tell them? — They do listen to it. — How hast thou learnt English? — I have learnt it in this manner. — Have you called me? — I have not called you, but your brother. — Is he come? — Not yet. — Where have you wet your clothes? — I have wet them in the country. — Will you put them to dry? — I will put them to dry. — Where have you put my hat? — I have put it upon the table. — Hast thou seen my book? — I have seen it. — Where is it? — It lies upon your brother's trunk. — Does my handkerchief lie upon the chair? — It does lie upon it. — When have you been in the country? — I was there the day before yesterday. — Have you found your father there? — I have found him there. — What has he said? — He has said nothing. — What have you been doing in the country? — I have been doing nothing there.

Lesson LIII. — PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM TERTIUM.

OF THE ACCUSATIVUS CUM INFINITIVO.

A. The infinitive may have a subject of its own in the accusative, but is then rendered into English by a separate clause introduced by the conjunction "that." E. g.

Órpheum poêtam dócet Aristóteles núnquam *fuísse.*	Aristotle informs us, *that* the poet Orpheus never *existed.*
An nesciébam vítae *brévem ésse cúrsum*, glóriae *sempitérnum?*	Or was I not aware, *that* the career of life *is* short, and that of glory eternal?
Spéro *nóstram amicítiam* nôn *egére* téstibus.	I hope, *that* our friendship *does* not *stand in need of* any witnesses.
Egóne *mê audívisse* áliquid ét *didícisse* nôn gaúdeam?	May I not rejoice, *that I have heard and learnt* something?

B. The *accusativus cum infinitivo* may, like the simple infinitive, stand either as the subject of a finite verb in the nominative, or as its object in the accusative.

I. The accusative with the infinitive stands as the *subject* of a sentence, when the predicate is an impersonal verb, or the copula *est, fuit,* &c. with a noun or adjective. E. g.

Lêgem brévem ésse opórtet, quô facílius ab imperítis teneâtur.	A law should be brief, so that it may be more easily remembered by the uneducated.
Ómnibus bónis *éxpedit sálvam ésse rempúblicam.*	It is for the advantage of all good citizens, that the republic should be safe.
Fácinus ést, *vincíri cîvem Românum;* scélus, *verberári;* prope parricídium, *necári.*	It is audacity to have a Roman citizen bound;* it is a crime to have him beaten; it is almost parricide to have him killed.
Témpus ést, *nôs* de íllā perpétuā jám, nôn de hâc exíguā vítā, *cogitâre.*	It is time that we should already think of that perpetual life, and not of this brief one.
Áliud ést *iracúndum ésse*, áliud *irâtum.*	It is one thing to be irascible, and another to be angry.
Necésse ést *légem habéri* in rêbus óptimis.	The law must be reckoned among our best possessions.
Victórem párcere víctis aêquum ést.	It is just that the conqueror should spare the conquered.
Cónstat profécto ad salûtem cívium *invéntas ésse léges.*	It is manifest, that the laws were invented solely for the safety of the citizens.

Remarks.

1. The accusative, with the infinitive thus used as the subject of a sentence, is equivalent to a noun in the nominative case, and may sometimes be converted into one. E. g. *Salvam esse rempublicam = salus reipublicae. Legem brevem esse oportet = legum brevitas necessaria est*, &c.

2. The predicates most frequently employed in this construction are: — *apertum, consentaneum, aequum, justum, verisimile*, &c. *est*, it is manifest, proper, fair, just, probable (i. e. that such a thing should happen or be done); — *tempus, mos, facĭnus, fas*, &c. *est*, it is time, customary, a crime, right, &c.; — the impersonal verbs *apparet*, it is apparent; *constat*, it is agreed; *licet*, it is lawful; *oportet*, it behooves; *opus est*, there is need; *necesse est*, it is necessary; — or the third person singular of passive verbs, as *intelligĭtur*, it is understood; *perspicĭtur*, it is perceived, &c.

II. The *accusativus cum infinitīvo* stands as the *object-accusative* after the following classes of verbs: —

1. As the object of a sensation, perception, or emotion, after verbs signifying *to see, hear, feel, perceive, understand, think,*

---

* Literally, "That a Roman citizen should be bound," &c. But in this construction it is often preferable to use the active infinitive in English: *to bind a Roman*, &c.

know, believe, hope, and the like,* and also those denoting *joy, sorrow, shame, anxiety,* and *wonder.* E. g.

Vídes nôs, sí íta sít, *privári* spê beatiôris vítae.	You see that, if that is so, we are deprived of the hope of a better life.
Sénsit ánimus *sê* súā ví, nôn aliénā, *movéri.*	The mind feels that it is moved by its own energy, and not by an extraneous one.
Pompéios desedísse térrae mótū *audívimus.*	We have heard that Pompeii was destroyed by an earthquake.
Éum *tê ésse fínge*, qui égo súm.	Imagine yourself to be the person, which I am.
Égo *íllum periísse dúco*, cui périit púdor.	I consider him lost, whose shame is gone.
Spérant, sê máximum frúctum *ésse captúros.*	They hope that they will get the greatest advantage.
Cónscius mihi *éram, níhil* a mê *commíssum ésse*, quód bóni cujúsquam offénderet ánimum.	I was conscious that nothing had been done by me to offend the mind of any honorable man.
Méum fáctum probári abs tê *triúmpho gaúdio.*	I triumph with joy that my deed is approved by you.
Dóleo, nôn *mê* túis lítteris *certiôrem fieri.*	I am sorry that I am not informed by your letter.
Mínime *mirâmur, tê* túis praecláris opéribus *laetári.*	We do not at all wonder that you exult in your distinguished deeds.

2. As the object of a volition, after verbs signifying *to wish, desire, resolve, permit, command, compel, prohibit,* or *prevent.* E. g.

Tíbi favêmus, *tê* túā *frui* virtúte *cupímus.*	We favor you, and desire you to enjoy your virtue.
Útrum córporis, án tíbi *málles víres* ingénii *dári* ?	Which would you prefer (to be given you), strength of body or of intellect ?
Rém ad árma *dedúci studêbat.*	It was his endeavor that the matter should be decided by force.
Postulábimus nóbis *íllud concédi.*	We will demand that that should be conceded to us.
Júbet nôs Pýthius Apóllo *nóscere* nôsmet ípsos.	Pythian Apollo commands us to know ourselves.
Germáni *vînum* ad sê omníno *importári* nôn *sínunt.*	The Germans do not allow, on any account, the importation of wine among them.
Aristóteles *vérsum* in oratiône *vétat ésse, númerum júbet.*	Aristotle prohibits the use of verse in a discourse, but commands the rhythm.

* As, for example, *audio, video, sentio, animadverto, cognosco, intelligo, percipio, disco, scio, duco, statuo, memini, recordor, obliviscor,* and in general all the *verba sensuum et affectuum.*

3. After *verba declarandi*, or those signifying *to say, write, report, confess, deny, pretend, promise, prove, convince*, &c.* E. g.

Thales Milesius *áquam díxit esse* inítium rêrum.	Thales, the Milesian, said that water was the first principle of things.
Heródotus *scribit* Croesi *fílium*, cum ésset ínfans, *locûtum* (sc. *ésse*).	Herodotus writes that the son of Crœsus spoke when he was an infant.
Solon *sê fúrere simulâvit.*	Solon pretended to be a madman.
Confíteor, mê abs tê *cupísse* laudári.	I confess that I desired to be praised by you.
Dicaeárchus vúlt *efficere, ánimos ésse* mortáles.	Dicæarchus wants to make out that souls are mortal.
Pollicêtur Piso, *sése* ad Caésarem *itúrum* (sc. *esse*).	Piso promises that he will go to Cæsar.
Mágnum sólem ésse philósophus *probâbit*, quántus sit, mathemáticus.	The philosopher will prove that the sun is large, but the mathematician (will show) how large it is.
Isócratem Plato .... *laudári fécit* a Sócrate.	Plato represents Isocrates as commended by Socrates.

C. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may stand as the *appositum* of a noun, adjective, or demonstrative pronoun. E. g.

Haêc benígnitas étiam réi públicae est útilis, *rédimi* e servitúdine *cáptos, locupletári tenuióres.*	This is also a bounty of advantage to the commonwealth: to redeem captives from servitude, and to enrich the poorer classes.
In cognitiône et sciéntiā *excéllere, púlchrum* putâmus.	We consider it honorable to excel in knowledge and learning.
Íllud sóleo mirári, nôn *me* tóties *accípere* túas lítteras, quóties a frâtre méo afferántur.	I am accustomed to wonder at it (at this), that I should not hear as often from you, as I do from my brother.
Id injustíssimum ípsum est, justítiae mercêdem *quaérere.*	It is the highest degree of injustice to make a trade of justice.

D. In impassioned exclamations and interrogations the accusative with the infinitive sometimes stands independently as the object of the emotion or passion expressed by it. E. g.

Mêne incepto *desístere* víctum ?	Shall *I*, vanquished, desist from my purpose ?

* The principal verbs of this class are *dico, trado, prodo, scribo, refero, nuntio, confirmo, nego, ostendo, demonstro, perhibeo, polliceor, promitto, spondeo*, &c. To these add *facère*, "to represent," and *efficere*, "to make out *or* prove."

Mê nôn cum bónis *esse?*	*I* not among the good and patriotic!
Tûne hóc, Átti, *dícere*, táli prúdéntiā praéditum?	*You* say this, Attius, a man of prudence like your own!
O spectáculum míserum atque acérbum! Ludíbrio *esse* urbis *glóriam* et pópuli Románi *nômen!*	O wretched and mortifying sight! The glory of the city, the name of the Roman people, an object of derision!

REMARKS.

1. After verbs of seeing and hearing, the present participle* or *ut* ("how"), with the subjunctive, is sometimes put instead of an infinitive, and the verbs of joy, sorrow, &c. are also followed by the subjunctive, with QUOD ("that" *or* "because").†

2. After verbs of seeing and hearing, the present infinitive may frequently be rendered into English by the present participle. E. g. *Mugire* (= *mugientem*) *videbis sub pedibus terram*, You will perceive the earth quaking beneath your feet. *Majores natu audivi dicere* (= *dicentes*), I have heard those older than myself say. *Incustodītam lente videt ire* (= *euntem*) *juvencam*, He sees the untended heifer walking slowly.

3. After one of the past tenses, the accusative with the *present* infinitive is equivalent to the English *imperfect*, and the accusative with the *perfect* infinitive to the English *pluperfect*. E. g. *Vīdi te scrībere*, I saw that you were writing. *Vīdi te scripsisse*, I saw that you had written. *Dixit Cajum laudāri*, He said that Cajus was (then) praised. *Dixit Cajum laudātum esse*, He said that Cajus had been praised.

4. The verb *memĭni*, "I remember," is commonly followed by the present infinitive, even when the act denoted by the latter is already completed. E. g. *Memini Pamphilum mihi narrare*, I remember Pamphilus telling me (that Pamphilus told me). *Memĭni Catōnem mecum disserrĕre*, I remember Cato discussing the question with me (to have discussed, &c.). — But also by the perfect: *Meministis me ita distribuisse initio causam*, You remember that in the beginning I have made this distribution of my argument.

5. After the expressions *satis mihi est, satis habeo, contentus sum*, and also after *me juvat, me pudet, melius erit, volo caveo*, &c., the perfect infinitive is put to denote the result and estimate of a completed action, where the English idiom more commonly has the present. E. g. *Contenti simus, id unum dixisse*, Let us be content to have said (to say) this one thing. *Melius erit quiesse*, It will be better to have rested (= to rest). *Sunt qui nolint tetigisse*, There are those who are unwilling to have touched (= to touch). *Commisisse cavet*, He bewares to commit, &c.

6. The present infinitive is sometimes put instead of the future. E. g. *Nervii, quae imperarentur, facere*‡ *dixerunt*, The Nervii said, that

* See Lesson XLIX. *F.* Rem. 3.
† Cf. Lesson LIV. *H.*
‡ Instead of *se facturos* (*esse*).

they would do whatever they were commanded. *Cato affirmat, se vivo Pontinium non triumphare,** Cato affirms that, while he is alive, Pontinius shall not triumph.

7. The infinitive passive of neuter verbs may stand impersonally without a subject, precisely like the third person singular passive of that class of verbs. E. g. *His* persuadēri *non potĕrat*, They could not be persuaded. *Quum posses jam suspicari, tibi* esse successum, When you might already suspect that you had been supplanted.

8. When, instead of the future infinitive, the formula *futurum esse, ut*, or *fore, ut*† is employed, the perfect and imperfect subjunctive following the *ut* represent the future action as incomplete or going on, while the perfect and pluperfect represent it as completed. E. g. *Credo fore, ut scribas*, I think that you will write. *Credēbam fore, ut scribĕres*, I thought that you would be writing. *Credo fore, ut scripsĕris*, I think you will have written. *Credebam fore, ut scripsisses*, I thought you would have written.

9. The majority of the *verba sentiendi et declarandi* (cf. *B.* II. 1 and 3), which in the active voice are followed by the *accusativus cum infinitivo*, are in the passive voice followed by the infinitive alone, with the subject accusative in the nominative. But when they are employed impersonally, the subject accusative remains as in the active. E. g. Active: *Dīco te esse patrem patriae.* Passive: (*Tu*) *dicĕris esse pater patriae.* Pass. Impers: *Dīcĭtur, te esse patrem patriae* (It is said, that you are the father of your country). Pass. Personal: *Numa Pythagŏrae audĭtor fuisse creditur* (Numa is supposed to have been a hearer of Pythagoras). Impers.: *Creditur,‡ Pythagorae auditōrem fuisse Numam* (It is supposed that, &c.).

10. When the infinitive, preceded by a subject-accusative, is followed by another accusative of the object, it is liable to give rise to an ambiguity, which may be avoided by converting the infinitive active into the passive. Thus the oracular *Aio, te Romānos vincĕre posse* (I say, that you can conquer the Romans, *or* that they can conquer you), loses its ambiguity in *Aio, te a Romanis vinci posse*, or *Aio, Romanos a te vinci posse.*

11. The infinitive *esse* is frequently left unexpressed, especially in the compound infinitives *amatum, amatūrum*, and *amandum esse.* (Cf. Lesson XLVIII. *A.* and *B.*) E. g. *Lycurgus auctorem* (sc. esse) *legum Apollinem Delphicum fingit*, Lycurgus makes Delphic Apollo the inventor of laws.

12. The pronominal subject accusatives *me, te, se, eum, nos, vos, eos*, and the indefinite *aliquem*, are frequently omitted when they can be readily understood from the context. E. g. *Ea, quae dicam, non de memetipso, sed de oratore* dicĕre (= *me* dicĕre) *putētis*, I wish you to

---

* *Non triumphaturum.*

† Compare Lesson XLVIII. *B.* Rem. 1.

‡ The verbs of this class thus used impersonally are comparatively few. The most conspicuous of them are *nuntiātur, traditur, creditur, intelligitur; dicitur, narrātur, fertur, proditur, memoratur, cernitur, vidētur.*

think, that what I have to say I do not say with reference to myself, but with reference to the orator. *Subduc cibum unum diem athletae, ferre* non posse (= *se* non posse) *clamābit*, Deprive an athlete of his usual food for a single day, and he will declare that he cannot endure it. *Negāto sane, si voles, pecuniam* accepisse (= *te* accepisse), Deny then, if you will, that you have received money. *Hos clam Xerxi remīsit, simulans ex vinculis publicis* effugisse (= *eos* effugisse), These he sent back to Xerxes, under the pretence that they had escaped from prison.

Exercise 102.

Is it just that I should write (for me to write)? — It is just. — It is not proper that you do this. — It is manifest that he has written the letter. — Is it probable (*verisimile*) that he has sent us the book? — It is not probable. — Is it time that we should leave (*abīre*)? — It is not yet time to leave; it is time to breakfast. — Is it right for me to go to the ball? — It is not right. — Was it a crime to have a Roman citizen bound? — It was a most audacious (*audacissimum*) crime. — Is it apparent that he was wrong (*errāvisse*)? — It is not apparent. — It is agreed (*constat*) that you have been wrong, and I right. — Did it behoove you to work? — It did not behoove me to work, but it behooved you to write. — Is it necessary for us to learn Latin? — It is necessary. — Is it lawful for us to go the theatre? — It is not lawful. — Is it understood that he has arrived (*advenisse*)? — It is understood that he arrived the day before yesterday. — It is understood that he will arrive (*adventurum esse*) to-morrow. — Is it necessary for me to write? — It is necessary, but your letter should be brief.

Exercise 103.

Do you see that I am writing? — I do see (it). — Did he see that we were coming? — He did not see it. — Did they hear that I was reading (me reading)? — They did not hear you. — Does he hear that I have written to you? — He does hear (it). — Do you wonder that I should exult in your deeds? — I do not wonder at all. — Does he feel that he is mortal (*mortālis*)? — He does feel it. — Does he hope that you will come? — He hopes that I will remain at home. — Do you believe that he will read your book? — I do not believe that he will read it. — Do you know that that is so (*rem ita se habēre*)? — I do not know it positively (*non certe*), but I believe it to be so. — Are you glad that he has recovered his health? — I am very glad (of it). — I am sorry that he is ill. — Does he desire you to send him the book? — He does not desire me to send the book, but the paper. — Do you wish me to go off (*abīre*) into the country? — No, I wish you to remain in the city (*in urbe*). — Does he command us to write? — He does not command us to write, but to read the books which he has lent us. — Does he forbid you (*vetātne te*) to go to the theatre? — He does not forbid me. — Do you command me to know myself? — I do command (you). — Did he say that he was ill? — He said that he was thirsty. — Do they write that we have arrived? — They do not write (it). — Do you deny (*negâsne*) that I am right? — I do not wish

to deny it. — Do you confess that you were wrong? — I deny that I was wrong. — Did he pretend to be asleep (*se dormire*)? — He did pretend (it). — Did he promise to come (*se venturum*)? — He could not promise (it).

Lesson LIV. — PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM QUARTUM.

VERBS WITH THE INFINITIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.

A. Many Latin verbs admit of a double construction, being sometimes followed by the *accusativus cum infinitivo*, and sometimes by the subjunctive, with one of the conjunctions *ut* (*uti*), *ne*, or *quod*, &c. With some of these the subjunctive is the rule and the infinitive the exception; with others the reverse is true. The construction of these verbs is elucidated in the following rules: —

B. Of the verbs signifying willingness, desire, or permission, *vŏlo*, *nōlo*, *mālo*, *patĭor*, and *sĭno* are commonly followed by the accusative with the infinitive, and sometimes only by *ut*; but *opto*, *concēdo*, and *permitto* may have either the infinitive or *ut*. Verbs of demanding or compelling (*posco*, *postŭlo*, *flagĭto*, and *cōgo*) are more frequently construed with *ut*. E. g.

Vólo, *úti* mihi *respóndeas* (*instead of* Vólo te míhi respondêre).	I wish you to reply to me.
Ópto, tê hóc fácere, *or ut* hóc *fácias*.	I desire you to do this.
Augústus dóminum *sê appellári* ne a líberis quídem *pássus est*.	Augustus did not suffer it, even from his children, to be called master.
Tribúni plêbis *póstulant*, *ut* sacrosáncti *habeántur*.	The tribunes demand the privilege of being regarded sacrosanct.
Senâtus P. Léntulum, *ut se abdicâret* praetúrā, *coêgit*.	The senate compelled Publius Lentulus to resign his prætorship.

Remark. — *Volo ut* and *malo ut* may thus be employed instead of the infinitive; but *nōlo ut* is never said. The verb *recusāre*, to refuse, (the opposite of *concedo*,) may have either the infinitive or *ne*.

C. Verbs denoting a *resolve* or *endeavor* to accomplish or prevent anything, are followed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, when a new subject is introduced; but when the subject remains the same, they generally have the infinitive, and sometimes only *ut* or *ne*.

Verbs of this class are *statuo, constituo, decerno, tento, paro, meditor, curo, nitor, contendo,* and the expressions *consilium capio, in animum dūco* or *animum indūco.* But *operam do,* I endeavor; *id (hoc, illud) ago,* I aim at, strive; *nihil antiquius habeo* (or *dūco*), *quam,* I have (consider) nothing more important than; and *vidĕo,* in the sense of *curo,* have commonly *ut* only. E. g.

Stătuit ad tē lītteras dāre (or *ut* lītteras ad tē *dĕt*).	He resolves to write to you.
Stătuit, ut fīlius ējus tĭbi *respŏndeat.*	He resolves that his son shall reply to you.
Quī sapiēntes appellāri vŏlunt, *indūcant ănimum* divĭtias, honōres, ŏpes *contēmnere.*	Let those who wish to be called philosophers make up their minds to despise wealth, honors, and influence.
Ŏpera dānda est, ut vĕrbis *utāmur* quām usitatissimis et quām māxime āptis.	It should be our study to employ the most familiar and (at the same time) the most suitable terms.
Ōmne ănimal sē ipsum dĭligit, ac sīmul ŭt ortum est, *ĭd ăgit, ut* sē *conservet.*	Every animal loves itself, and as soon as it is born aims at the preservation of itself.
Id *studuīsti,* īsti fōrmae *ut* mōres consīmiles *fŏrent.*	It has been your endeavor, that your character should be like your appearance.
Vidēndum est ĭgitur, *ut* ēā liberalitāte *utāmur,* quae prōsit amīcis, nŏceat nēmini.	We must see to it, that the liberality we indulge in be such, as will be a benefit to our friends and an injury to no one.

D. Verbs of *requesting, exhorting, persuading,* and *commanding* generally have the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne;* but sometimes also the infinitive.

The most common of these verbs are *rogo, oro, precor, peto; monĕo, admonĕo, commonĕo, hortor, adhortor, cohortor, exhortor; suadeo, persuadeo, impello, perpello, excito, incito, impero.* So also *nuntio, dico, scribo,* when they imply an order or command. E. g.

Tē et *ōro* et *hortor ut* dĭligens *sis.*	I beseech and exhort you to be diligent.
Tē īllud *admŏneo, ut* quotīdie *meditēre,* resistendum ĕsse irācundiae.	I advise you to consider every day that passion must be resisted.
Mŏneo obtestŏrque, uti hōs, quī tĭbi gĕnere propinqui sūnt, cāros *hăbeas.*	I remind and conjure you to cherish those who are akin to you by birth.
Senātus *imperāvit* decēmviris, *ut* lĭbros Sibyllīnos *inspĭcerent.*	The senate ordered the committee of ten to inspect the Sibylline records.
Caēsar Dolabĕllae *dixit, ut* ad mē	Cæsar told Dolabella to write to

scríberet, ut in Itáliam quám primum *venírem.*
Themístocles *persuásit* pópulo, *ut* pecúniâ públicâ clássis céntum návium *aedificarêtur.*

me (requesting me) to come to Italy as soon as possible.
Themistocles prevailed upon the people to construct a fleet of a hundred ships at the expense of the public treasury.

REMARKS.

1. With the verbs of this class, the longer construction with *ut* is preferred by the prosaists of the best period, but later writers have more frequently the briefer infinitive.

2. *Monĕo*, *admonĕo*, and *persuadĕo*, when they signify "to remind or to persuade that something *is so*" (and not "that something *should be done*") have the Acc. cum Inf.

3. The verbs of *commanding* (i. e. *imperāre*, *mandāre*, *praescrībĕre*, *edicĕre*, *decernĕre*, &c.) that anything *should be done*, have generally *ut* according to the rule. The only exceptions are *jubĕo* and *vĕto*, which are commonly followed by the *accusative with the infinitive* (either active or passive). E. g. *Jubeo te scrībere*, I command you to write. *Vetat eum abīre*, He tells him not to leave. *Librum lĕgi jussit*, He ordered the book to be read (i. e. that it should be read). *Vetuit castra munīri*, He prohibited that the camp should be fortified.*

E. Verbs signifying *to effect*, *cause*, or *bring about*, are regularly followed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne.*

Such are *facio*, *efficio*, *perficio*, *evinco*, *pervinco*, *impetro*, *assequor*, and *consequor*. E. g.

Fácito ut scíam.
Sol *éfficit, ut* ómnia *flóreant.*

Epaminóndas *perfēcit ut* auxílio sociórum Lacedaemónii *privaréntur.*
A sólo *impetrat, ut* aliénas árbores *álat.*
Quâ in rē níhil áliud *assequêris*, nísi *út* ab ómnibus audácia túa cognoscâtur.

Let me know.
The sun causes all things to flourish.
Epaminondas caused the Lacedæmonians to be deprived of the aid of the allies.
He prevails upon the soil to grow exotic trees.
By which you will gain nothing else, except that your audacity will be known by all.

REMARKS.

1. The expression *facere ut* is sometimes a mere circumlocution for the same tense of the verb following it. E. g. *Fēcit, ut dimitteret milĭtes*, instead of *dimīsit milĭtes*, He dismissed his men.

2. *Fac*, in the sense of "imagine" or "suppose," and *efficĕre*, "to

* Yet *jubeo ut hoc facias* (or without the *ut*: —*jubeo tibi hoc facias*) and *veto ne hoc facias* likewise occur in harmony with the general rule.

make out" or "to prove," have the Acc. cum Inf.* But *efficĭtur*, "it follows," has sometimes *ut*; as, *Ex quo efficitur, ut*, From which it follows that, &c. *Facĕre*, "to represent," is usually connected with the present participle or the infinitive passive.†

F. Among the verbs regularly followed by the subjunctive with *ut*, are a number of impersonal expressions. They are,—

1. Those signifying "it remains," "it follows"; as, *restat, relinquĭtur, superest, reliquum (proxĭmum, prope, extrēmum, futūrum) est*, and *sequitur*. To these may be added *accēdit ut*,* "add to this, that."

2. Those signifying "it happens," "it comes to pass"; as, *accĭdit, incĭdit, fit, fieri non potest, evĕnit, usu vĕnit, occurrit, contingit, est*, "it is the case," and *esto*, "grant it, that."

Rĕstat, ut his respóndeam.	It remains now for me to reply to these.
Si haec enuntiátio nôn vêra est, *sĕquitur, ut* fálsa sit.	If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.
Relínquitur, ut, si víncimur in Hispániâ, quiescâmus.	If we are vanquished in Spain, the only thing left us is to keep quiet.
Fórte *evênit, ut* in Privernáte essêmus.	It so happened that we were on the Privernan estate.
Fieri nôn pótest, *ut* quis Rómae sit, quum est Athénis.	It is not possible for any one to be at Rome when he is at Athens.
Quándo *fúit, ut*, quod lícet, nôn líceret?	When was it the case, that that which is lawful was unlawful?

REMARKS.

1. Like *reliquum est, ut*, we sometimes find other expressions with *ut*. Such are *novum est, rarum, naturale, mīrum, singulare, usitatum, necesse est, ut; verisimile, verum, falsum est, ut; aequum, rectum, utile est, ut*. But the majority of these are more commonly construèd with the infinitive. (Cf. Lesson LIII. *B.* I.)

2. *Mos* or *moris est*, and *consuetudo est*, "it is customary," "it usually happens," are often followed by *ut*, like *accidit*, &c.

3. *Contingit* not unfrequently occurs with the infinitive, sometimes even with the dative of the predicate. E. g. *Mihi fratrique meo* destinari praetoribus *contĭgit*, I and my brother happened to be chosen prætors.

G. Verbs denoting *willingness, unwillingness*, or *permission*, and also those of *asking, demanding, advising*, and *reminding*, are sometimes followed by the subjunctive WITHOUT *ut* or *ne*.

Such are *volo, nolo, malo, permitto, licet; oro, precor, quaeso, rogo, peto, postulo; suadeo, censeo, moneo, admoneo, hortor*. To these add *curo, decerno, jubeo, mando;* the imperatives *fac*, "see that," and *cave*, "beware," and the impersonal *oportet* and *necesse est*.

* Compare page 290. † Compare page 290, note.

Vélim fíeri *pósset*, ut, &c.	I wish it were possible that, &c.
Málo, te sápiens hóstis *métuat*, quám stúlti cíves *laúdent*.	I prefer an intelligent enemy fearing you to stupid citizens praising you.
Síne, tê *exórem*, mi páter.	Allow me to entreat you, my father.
A tê péto, mê abséntem *díligas* átque *defêndas*.	I ask of you to love and to defend me in my absence.
Póstulo, Áppi, étiam átque étiam *consíderes*.	I beseech you, Appius, to consider again and again.
Suádeo vídeas, tánquam sí túa rês agâtur.	I advise you to look, as if your own interests were at stake.
Hérus mê *jússit* Pámphylum hódie *observârem*.	My master commanded to watch Pamphylus to-day.
Fác scíam (= fácito *ut* scíam).	Pray let me know (inform me).
Cáve crédas.	Do not believe.
Frémant ómnes *lícet*	Every one is allowed to murmur.
Philosóphiae *sérvias oportet*, ut tíbi contíngat vêra libértas.	You should serve philosophy in order to acquire true liberty.
Vírtus voluptâtis áditus *interclûdat necésse est*.	Virtue necessarily prevents the access of pleasure.

H. Verbs signifying *joy, sorrow, surprise*, or *wonder* are followed either by the accusative with the infinitive, or by *quod* ("that" *or* "because") with the indicative or subjunctive.

Such verbs are *gaudeo, delector, doleo, succenseo, angor, poenĭtet; mīror, admīror, glorior, gratŭlor, gratĭas ago, queror, indignor*, &c. E. g.

Gaúdeo, quód tê interpellávi.	I am glad that I have interrupted you.
Dolêbam, quód consórtem gloriósi labôris amíseram.	I was sorry to have lost the sharer of the glorious enterprise.
Mirári sê aiêbat, *quód* nôn ríderet harúspex.	He was accustomed to express his surprise, that the soothsayer did not laugh.
Tíbi *ágo grátias, quód* mê ómni moléstiā *líberas*.	I thank you for liberating me from inconvenience of every kind.
Grátulor tíbi, *quód* ex provínciā sálvum tê ad túos *recepísti*.	I congratulate you for having safely returned from the province to your friends.
Quéreris super hôc étiam, *quód* expectâta tíbi nôn míttam cármina.	You also complain of this, that I do not send you the expected poems.

Remarks.

1. *Quod* is chiefly employed in connection with past tenses. *Quod* with the indicative denotes a *fact*, and with the subjunctive a *supposition* or the *opinion of another*.

2. *Quod* is also frequently employed instead of the Acc. cum Inf. after substantives, and after expressions like "it is pleasant" or "unpleasant," "it pleases" or "displeases," *magnum est, accēdit* (= "add to this"), &c. It is thus frequently preceded by one of the pronouns *hoc, id, illud*, and is often equivalent to the English "the fact or circumstance that." E. g. *Augēbat iras*, quod *soli Judaei non cessissent*, The *fact* (or *circumstance*) *that* the Jews alone had not surrendered, augmented the indignation. *Inter causas malorum nostrorum est*, quod *vivĭmus ad exempla*, Among the causes of our miseries is *the fact that* we are living after the examples of others. *Quod victor victis pepercit, magnum est*, That the conqueror spared the conquered is great. *In Caesare mitis est clemensque natura.* Accēdit, quod *mirifice ingeniis excellentibus delectatur*, Cæsar is of a gentle and mild nature. Add to this, that (in addition to this) he takes the greatest delight in intellectual pre-eminence.

3. *Quod* is always put, instead of the Acc. cum Inf. or *ut*, in *explanatory* or *periphrastic clauses*, which (generally) refer to an oblique case of the demonstratives *hoc, id, illud*, or *istud*. E. g. Hoc uno *praestamus vel maxime feris*, quod *colloquĭmur inter nos*, *et* quod *exprimĕre dicendo sensa possŭmus*, We excel the brutes chiefly in this, that we converse with each other, and are able to express our sensations in language. *Phocion non* in eo *solum offenderat*, quod *patriae male consulĕrat, sed etiam* quod *amicitiae fidem non praestĭterat*, Phocion had not only given offence by the fact that he had mismanaged the interests of his country, but also because he had exhibited a want of faith in friendship.

4. *Quod* stands also in expressions like *adde, quod*, or *adde huc, quod* (add to this that, besides), and after *facere* in connection with an adverb like *bene, male*, &c. E. g. *Bene facis*, quod *me mones*, You do well to remind me. *Humaniter fecit*, quod *ad me venit*, He acted humanely by coming to me.

5. *Quod* stands with several different senses in constructions like the following: —

a.) At the beginning of a sentence, in the sense of "as to," "with respect to." E. g. Quod scribis *te velle scīre, qui sit reipublicae status, summa dissentio est*, As regards your expressing a desire to know the state of the republic, (I have to report) the greatest dissension. Quod *mihi de nostro statu* gratulāris, *minime miramur te tuo opere laetāri*, As to your congratulating me on my present condition, I am not at all surprised that you rejoice in your own work.

b.) In the sense of "as far as." E. g. *Tu*, quod *potĕris, ut adhuc fecisti, nos consiliis juvābis*, Do you assist us, *as far as* you can, and as you have done heretofore, with your advice and influence. *Epicurus se unus*, quod *sciam, sapientem profiteri est ausus*, Epicurus is the only one, *as far as* I know, who has dared to profess himself a sage.

c.) Instead of *ex quo* or *quum*, "since." E. g. *Tertius dies est*, quod *audīvi*, &c., It is now three days *since* I have heard, &c. To these may be added *tantum quod*, "scarcely." E. g. Tantum quod *ex Arpinati venĕram, quum mihi litterae a te reddĭtae sunt*, I had but just returned from Arpinum, when a letter from you was handed to me.

Exercise 104.

Do you wish me to go to the theatre with you? — I do not wish you, but your brother, to go with me. — Do you desire me to write to your father? — I do wish that you would write to him. — Do you allow (*sinisne*) me to go to the ball? — I do not allow you to go there. — Does he suffer (*patĭtur*) letters to be written by us? — He does not suffer it. — Did they compel you to resign your office (*munĕre*)? — They were not able to compel me (*me cogĕre*). — Did he urge (*flagitavitne*) you to go out with him? — He did urge me. — Does he refuse to come to us? — He does refuse. — Have you determined to learn Latin? — I have not determined (to do so). — Has he resolved (*decrevitne*) to study French? — He has resolved (to do so). — What is he aiming at (*Quid ăgit*)? — He is exerting himself (*Id ăgit ut*) to commit this book to memory. — Do you endeavor (*studĕsne*) to become diligent? — I do strive to be diligent and good. — Must we see to it, that we love our neighbor? — We must see to it by all means (*quam maxime*).

Exercise 105.

Do you ask me to remain at home? — No; on the contrary, I beseech and exhort you to go out. — Did he exhort you to go into the country? — No, he exhorted me to write a letter. — Do you advise me to resist passion (*ut iracundiae resistam*). — I do advise you. — I remind and conjure you to cherish those who love you. — Did he remind you that that was so (*rem ita se habuisse*)? — He reminded and persuaded me (*mihi*) that that was really (*re vera*) so. — Did they order any one to be killed? — They ordered the soldier to be killed. — Does he prohibit (*vetatne*) the reading of the book? — He does, on the contrary, order it to be read. — Did your father write you to come home? — He, on the contrary, wrote me to remain in the country. — Did you tell your servant to bring you the book? — I did tell him. — Does your master command you to attend to your studies? — He does command me. — Did you persuade him to read my book? — I could not persuade him. — Can it be that I am wrong? — It is not possible that you are wrong. — When was it the case that I was wrong? — Allow me to entreat you to write. — Pray let me know when you are coming. — Do not believe that he is your friend. — Are you glad that I have written to your friend? — I am delighted (*delector*) that you have done it. — Are you sorry that you have lost your book? — I am very sorry that I have lost it. — Is he surprised that I did not bring the doctor? — He is surprised that he does not come. — Do you thank me for having liberated you from trouble (*molestiā*)? — I do thank you with all my heart (*toto pectore*). — Do you congratulate me for having recovered? — I do congratulate you. — Why does his master complain? — He complains of this, that he is negligent and idle.

Lesson LV. — PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM QUINTUM.

OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A. Impersonal verbs are those which are used in the third person singular only, and without reference to any definite subject. They are in English commonly introduced by the pronoun *it*. E. g. *Tonat*, it thunders; *pluit*, it rains; *oportet*, it behooves.

REMARKS.

1. Impersonal verbs thus occur in all the conjugations, and in all the moods and tenses of complete verbs. E. g. 1. *Constat*, it is manifest; 2. *nocet*, it is hurtful; 3. *accĭdit*, it happens; 4. *convĕnit*, it is agreed upon. — *Constāre*, to be manifest; *tonŭit*, it thundered; *nocĕat*, let it be hurtful, &c.

2. The majority of the impersonal verbs of the Latin language are also used personally, but generally with a modified or different signification. Many again admit a subject of the neuter gender, such as an infinitive (either with or without a subject accusative) or a clause used substantively, and sometimes a pronoun of the neuter gender. (Cf. Lesson LII. *A.* 1; LIII. *B.*)

3. Impersonal verbs generally want the imperative, except *licet*, which has *licĕto* (let it be lawful). The rest employ the present subjunctive imperatively; as, *Tonet*, Let it thunder! *Pudeat te*, Be ashamed of yourself!

4. The majority want also the participles, gerunds, and gerundives. The only exceptions are the following, of which some, however, have acquired the force of adjectives: — *decens*, becoming; *libens*, willing; *licens*, free, bold; *poenĭtens*, penitent; — *licitūrus*, *poenitūrus*, *pudĭtūrus*, about to be lawful, to repent, to be ashamed; — *pigendus*, *pudendus*, *poenitendus*, to be regretted, ashamed of, repented of. To these add the gerunds *poenitendi*, *pudendo*, *ad pigendum*.

B. Impersonal verbs may be divided into several classes. They are: —

I. Those serving to designate the ordinary phenomena of nature, or the state of the weather. As, —

PRESENT.	PERFECT.*	INFINITIVE.	
Dīlūcŭlat,	dīlūcŭlāvit,	dīlūcŭlāre,	*it dawns.*
Fulgŭrat,	fulgŭrāvit,	fulgŭrāre,	*it lightens.*
Fulmĭnat,	fulmĭnāvit,	fulmĭnāre,	*it thunders.*
Gĕlat,	gĕlāvit,	gĕlāre,	*it freezes.*
Grandĭnat,	grandĭnāvit,	grandĭnāre,	*it hails.*

* Of some of these verbs the second root is not used.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.	INFINITIVE.	
Lapĭdat,	lapĭdāvit, / lapĭdātum est,	lapĭdāre,	*it rains stones.*
Lucescit, / Luciscit, / Illucescit,	luxit, / illuxit,	lucescĕre, / luciscĕre, / illucescĕre,	*it grows light.*
Ningit,	ninxit,	ningĕre,	*it snows.*
Noctescit,	———,	noctescĕre,	*it grows dark.*
Plŭit,	plūvit, / plūit,	pluĕre,	*it rains.*
Regĕlat,	regĕlāvit,	regelāre,	*it thaws.*
Rōrat,	rōrāvit,	rōrāre,	*it dews, dew falls.*
Tŏnat,	tŏnŭit,	tonāre,	*it thunders.*
Vesperascit, / Advesperascit,	vesperāvit, / advesperāvit,	vesperāre, / advesperāre,	*it becomes evening.*

REMARK. — These verbs sometimes (though rarely) occur in connection with a *personal* subject. E. g. *Jupiter tonat et fulgurat. Dies* or *coelum vesperascit. Lapides pluunt. Lapidibus pluit. Sanguinem pluit*, &c. But this use is chiefly confined to the third person, and rather the exception than the rule. It is consequently unnecessary to supply a personal subject (e. g. *Jupiter*, *Coelum*, &c.) to account for the ordinary construction of these verbs.

II. The following verbs, denoting *an affection of the mind, an obligation,* or *permission:* —

PRESENT.	PERFECT.	INFINITIVE.	
Mĭsĕret (me),	mĭsĕrŭit (*rarely*), / mĭsĕrĭtum est, / mĭsertum est,	mĭsĕrēre,	*it moves me to pity, I have pity.*
Pĭget (me),	pĭgŭit *or*, / pĭgĭtum est,	pĭgēre,	*it chagrins, irks.*
Poenĭtet (me),	poenĭtŭit,	poenĭtēre,	*it repents me, I repent.*
Pŭdet (me),	pŭdŭit, *or* / pudĭtum est,	pŭdēre,	*it shames me, I am ashamed.*
Taedet (me),	taedŭit (*rarely*), / pertaesum est,	taedēre,	*it wearies, disgusts.*
Oportet (me),	oportŭit,	oportēre,	*it behooves.*
Lĭbet (lŭbet),	lĭbŭit, *or* / lĭbĭtum est,	lĭbēre,	*it pleases.*
Lĭcet (mihi),	lĭcŭit, *or* / lĭcĭtum est,	lĭcēre,	*it is lawful, allowed.*
Dĕcet (me),	dĕcŭit,	dĕcēre,	*it becomes.*
Dēdĕcet (me),	dēdĕcŭit,	dēdĕcēre,	*it misbecomes.*
Lĭquet (mihi),	lĭcŭit,	lĭquēre,	*it is manifest.*

REMARKS.

1. The subject of the emotion denoted by some of the foregoing verbs is put in the accusative; as, *Miseret me, te, illum*, It moves me,

you, him, to pity (i. e. I pity, you pity, &c.). *Pudet nos, vos, illos*, We, you, they are ashamed. So also *oportet me, te, illum; decet* (*dedecet*) *nos, vos*, &c. But *libet* and *licet* are followed by the dative (*mihi, tibi*, &c.).

2. The verbs *libet, licet, decet, dedecet*, and *liquet* sometimes occur in the third person plural, and assume a personal subject.

III. The third person singular of a number of complete verbs, which is frequently employed impersonally, but in a sense more or less different from the ordinary signification of these verbs. Thus: —

PRESENT.	PERFECT.	INFINITIVE.	
Accĭdit,	accĭdit,	accĭdĕre,	*it happens, occurs, comes to pass.*
Contingit,	contĭgit,	contingĕre,	
Evĕnit,	evēnit,	evĕnīre,	
Fit,	factum est,	fĭĕri,	
Attĭnet,	attĭnŭit,	attĭnēre,	*it belongs to, pertains.*
Pertĭnet,	pertĭnŭit,	pertĭnēre,	
Accēdit,	accessit,	accēdĕre,	*there is to be added.*
Condūcit,	conduxit,	condūcĕre,	*it conduces.*
Constat,	constĭtit,	constāre,	*it is evident.*
Convĕnit,	convēnit,	convĕnīre,	*it is agreed on.*
Dēbet,	dēbŭit,	dēbēre,	*it ought.*
Displĭcet,	displĭcŭit, displĭcĭtum est,	displĭcēre,	*it displeases.*
Dŏlet,	dŏlŭit,	dŏlēre,	*it pains (grieves).*
Est (= licet),	fŭit,	esse,	*it is lawful, one may.*
Expĕdit,	expĕdivit,	expĕdire,	*it is expedient, advantageous.*
Prōdest,	prōfŭit,	prōdesse,	
Fallit (me),	fĕfellit (me),	fallĕre,	*it escapes my notice.*
Fŭgit (me),	fŭgit (me),	fŭgĕre,	
Praetĕrit (me),	praetĕrĭit (me),	praetĕrīre,	
Incĭpit,	incēpit,	incĭpĕre,	*it begins.*
Interest,	interfŭit,	interesse,	*it concerns.*
Rĕfert,	rētŭlit,	rĕferre,	
Jŭvat,	jūvit,	jŭvāre,	*it delights.*
Delectat,	delectāvit,	delectāre,	
Nŏcet,	nŏcŭit,	nŏcēre,	*it hurts.*
Obest,	obfŭit,	obesse,	
Pătet,	pătŭit,	pătēre,	*it is clear.*
Plăcet,	plăcŭit, plăcĭtum est,	plăcēre,	*it pleases.*
Praestat,	praestĭtit,	praestāre,	*it is preferable, better.*
Restat,	restĭtit,	restāre,	*it remains.*
Sŏlet,	sŏlĭtum est,	sŏlēre,	*it is usual.*
Assŏlet,	assŏlĭtum est,	assŏlēre,	
Stat,	stĕtit,	stāre,	*it is resolved.*
Succurrit,	succurrit,	succurrĕre,	*it suggests itself.*

Present.	Perfect.	Infinitive.	
Sufficit,	suffēcit,	sufficĕre,	*it suffices.*
Suppĕtit,	suppĕtīvit,	suppĕtĕre,	*there is on hand (left).*
Văcat,	văcāvit,	văcāre,	*there is leisure; it pleases.*

Remark. — The subject of these verbs thus used impersonally can only be an infinitive (either with or without a subject accusative) or an entire clause, but sometimes also the nominative of a neuter pronoun. (Cf. Lessons LII., LIII., LIV.)

IV. The third person singular passive, especially of *intransitive* verbs denoting motion, and which otherwise do not admit of the passive voice. E. g.

Currĭtur, *there is running.*
Ītur, *there is going.*
Adĭtur, *there is approaching.*
Ventum est, *some one has come.*
Clamātur, *there is calling.*
Favētur, *there is favoring.*
Flētur, *there is weeping.*
Ridētur, *there is laughing.*
Bibĭtur, *there is drinking.*
Dicĭtur, *it is said.*
Tradĭtur, *it is related.*
Scribĭtur, *it is written.*
Pugnātur, *there is fighting.*
Peccātur, *there is sinning.*
Persuadētur, *there is persuading.*
Certātur, *it is contended.*
Sentĭtur, *it is perceived.*

Remarks.

1. The agent, by which the activity denoted by these verbs is exercised, is either left indefinite, or expressed by the ablative with *a* or *ab* (e. g. *ab aliquo, a me, te, nobis, ab hominibus*, &c.). It is most frequently to be inferred from the context. Thus: *Ubi eo ventum est* (sc. *ab iis*), When they had come there. *His persuaderi non poterat* (sc. *ab aliquo*), They could not be persuaded (by any one). *Curritur ad praetorium* (sc. *a militibus*), There is a rush towards the general's tent (on the part of the soldiers). *Pugnātur omnĭbus locis*, There is a general battle.

2. Among the verbs employed impersonally we must include the neuter of the future passive participle with *est, erat, fuit, erit*, &c.; as, *amandum est*, there must be loving (some one must love, it is necessary to love); *scribendum fuit*, it was necessary to write; *currendum erit*, it will be necessary to run. That this construction requires the dative of the agent (e. g. *alicui, mihi, tibi, hominibus*, &c.) is already known from Lesson XXV.

Does it thunder?
It does thunder and lighten.
Does it not hail?
It does hail.
Does it rain?
It does not rain; it snows.
Did it rain or snow?
It rained very hard.
Is it growing light or dark?
Tonátne?
Íta ést, tónat átque fúlgurat.
Nónne grándinat?
Grándinat véro.
Núm plúit?
Nôn plúit; ningit.
Útrum plûvit án nínxit?
Plûvit vehemènter.
Lucescítne an advesperáscit?

It is growing dark.	Vesperáscit.
Is it hailing out of doors?	Écquid fóris grándinat?
It is hailing hard.	Sicést, válde grándinat.
Did it freeze last night?	Gelavítne nócte próximā?
It did not freeze.	Nôn gelâvit.
Is it foggy?	Éstne coêlum nebulôsum?
It is (foggy).	Est (nebulôsum).
Does the sun shine?	Lucétne sôl?
It does shine.	Lûcet.
We have (enjoy) sunshine.	Útimur sôlis lúmine.
The sun does not shine.	Sôl nôn lûcet. / Sôlis lúmine nôn útimur.
The sun is in (is blinding) my eyes.	Sōl míhi óculos nócet. / Lûmen sôlis míhi oculôrum áciem praestríngit.

The weather.	*Tempestas, ātis*, f.; *coelum, i*, n.
Good, fine, bad, very bad weather.	Tempestas bŏna, serēna, măla, deterrĭma.
The face, countenance.	Facies, ei, *f.*; ōs, ōris, *m.*; vultus, ūs, *m.*
The eyes; the eyesight.	Ocŭli, ōrum, *m.*; acies (ei, *f.*) oculōrum.
The thunder.	Tonĭtrus, ūs, *m.*
The thunderbolt.	Fulmen, ĭnis, *n.*
The snow.	Nix, *gen.* nĭvis, *f.*, *or pl.* nĭves.
The hail.	Grando, ĭnis, *f.*
The fog, mist.	Nebŭla, ae, *f.*
The rain.	Plŭvia, ae, *f.*; imber, ris, *m.*, *or pl.* imbres.
The sunshine.	Lūmen sōlis, *or simply* sōl, sōl calĭdus.
The parasol.	Umbella, ae, *f.*
Foggy.	Nebulōsus, a, um.
Hard, violently.	Valde, vehementer (*adv.*).
To have (use, enjoy).	Ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum (ALIQUA RE, ALIQUO).
To shine.	Lūcĕo, ēre, luxi, ——.
To shine brightly.	Fulgĕo, ēre, fulsi, ——. / Splendĕo, ēre, ŭi, ——.
The wind.	Ventus, i, *m.*
To blow.	Flō, āre, āvi, ātum.
To cease (rest).	Quiesco, ēre, ēvi, ētum.
To rise.	Orĭor, īri, ortus sum.
Windy.	Ventōsus, a, um.
Stormy.	Nimbōsus, a, um; procellōsus, a, um.
Srong, vehement.	Vĕhĕmens, tis, *adj.*
Is it windy? Does the wind blow?	Éstne tempéstas ventôsa? / Flátne véntus?

It is windy. The wind does blow.	Ést tempéstas ventôsa. Flát véro véntus.
Has the wind risen?	Ortúsne ést véntus?
No, it has ceased.	Ímmo véro quiêvit.
It is not stormy.	Coêlum nôn ést procellôsum.
It is very windy.	Tempéstas válde ventôsa ést. Válde flát véntus.
The spring.	Vēr, *gen.* vēris, *n.*
The autumn.	Auctumnus, i, *m.*
In the spring, summer, autumn, winter.	Vēre, aestāte, auctumno, hiĕme.
To travel.	*Ĭter*, or *itĭnĕra facĕre; peregrināri* (abroad).
To ride in a carriage.	Vĕhor, vĕhi, vectus sum. Invĕhi (CURRU, IN RHEDA).
To ride on horseback.	Vĕhi (invĕhi) equo. Equĭto, āre, āvi, ātum.
To ride up, away, around.	Advĕhi, abvĕhi, circumvĕhi.
To go (come, travel) on foot.	Pedĭbus *or* pĕdĕs* ire (vĕnire, ĭter facĕre).
To travel (make a tour) on foot.	Iter pedestre facĕre *or* confĭcĕre.
To like, take pleasure in.	*Delector, āri, ātus sum* (ALIQUID FACĔRE).
Do you like riding in a carriage?	Delectarisne ín vĕhi cúrru (in rhédā)?
No, I prefer riding on horseback.	Nôn véro; équo vĕhi málo.
Where did our friend ride to (on horseback)?	Quô equitâvit amĭcus nóster?
He has ridden into the forest.	Equitâvit in sĭlvam.
It is good (pleasant), bad (unpleasant) to do anything.	*Jucundum, injucundum est aliquid facĕre.*
Is it pleasant to go on foot.	Éstne jucúndum íre pédĭbus (pédes)?
It is very pleasant.	Ést profécto perjucúndum.
Did he go on foot or in a carriage?	Útrum ívit pédĭbus án curru vectus est?
No, he went on horseback.	Ímmo véctus ést équo.

EXERCISE 106.

Are you going out to-day? — I never go out when it is raining. — Did it rain yesterday? — It did not rain. — Has it snowed? — It has snowed. — Why do you not go to the market? — I do not go there, because it snows. — Do you wish (to have) an umbrella? — If (*si*)

* Pedĕs, -ĭtis, *m.*, one who goes on foot.

you have one. — Will you lend me an umbrella? — I am not unwilling to lend you one. — What sort of weather is it? — It thunders and lightens. — Does the sun shine? — The sun does not shine; it is foggy. — Do you hear the thunder? — I do not hear it. — How long (*quain diu*) did you hear the thunder? — I heard it until (*usque ad*) four o'clock in the morning. — Is it fine weather now? — It is not; the wind blows hard, and it thunders much. — Does it rain? — It does rain very fast. — Do you not go into the country? — How (*quo modo*) can I go into the country? do you not see how (*quam vehementer*) it lightens? — Does it snow? — It does not snow, but it hails. — Did it hail yesterday? — It did not hail, but it thundered very much. — Have you a parasol? — I have one. — Will you lend it to me? — I will lend it to you. — Have we sunshine? — We have; the sun is in my eyes. — Is it fine weather? — It is very bad weather; it is dark. — We have no sunshine. — How is the weather to-day? — The weather is very bad. — Is it windy? — It is very windy. — Was it stormy yesterday? — It was stormy. — Why did you not go into the country? — I did not go because it was stormy. — Do you go to the market this morning? — I intend to go there, if it is not (*si non est*) stormy. — Do you intend to breakfast with me this morning? — I intend breakfasting with you, if (*si*) I am hungry.

Exercise 107.

Does the Pole intend to drink some of this wine? — He does intend to drink some of it, if he is thirsty. — Do you like to go on foot when you are travelling (*iter faciens*)? — I do not like to travel on foot. — Did you travel to Italy (*in Italiam*) on foot? — I did not go on foot, because the roads (*viae*) were too bad (*nimis lutulentae*). — Do you like to ride in a carriage? — I like to ride on horseback. — Has your cousin ever gone on horseback? — He has never gone on horseback. — Did you ride on horseback the day before yesterday? — I rode on horseback to-day. — Does your brother ride on horseback as often as you? — He rides oftener than I. — Hast thou sometimes ridden on horseback? — I have never ridden on horseback. — Will you go (in a carriage) into the country to-day? — I will ride thither. — Do you like travelling? — I do not like (it). — Does your father like travelling in the winter? — He does not like travelling (to travel) in the winter; he likes travelling in the spring and summer. — Is it good travelling (pleasant to travel) in the spring? — It is good travelling in the spring and autumn, but it is bad travelling in the winter and in the summer. — Have you sometimes travelled in the winter? — I have often travelled both in the winter and in the summer. — Does your brother travel often? — He travels no longer; but he formerly (*quondam*) travelled much. — When do you like to ride on horseback? — I like riding on horseback in the morning, after breakfast. — Is it good travelling in the country? — It is good travelling there. — Whither are they running (*Quorsum curritur*)? — They are running to the forum. — Have they (has any one) come (*ventumne est*) into the house? — They have not yet come. — Was there laughing

(*ridebaturne*) in the theatre? — There was laughing and shouting (*clamabātur*) there. — Is it said that he has arrived (*eum advenisse*)? — No, it is said that has remained in the country. — Is it pleasant to go on foot to-day? — It is not pleasant. — When did the wind rise? — It rose at four o'clock this morning.

Lesson LVI. — PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM SEXTUM.

CONSTRUCTION OF NAMES OF PLACES.

A. In answer to the question *Whither?* the name of the place is put in the Accusative with *in* or *ad;* but before the proper names of cities, these prepositions are commonly omitted. E. g.

In hórtos, in theátrum, ad lócum públicum, ad urbem íre.	To go into the garden, into the theatre, to the public square, towards the city.
In Itáliam, in Germániam, in Américam, Lésbum proficísci.	To set out for Italy, for Germany, for America, for Lesbus.
Rôman, Lutétiam, Londínum, Cartháginem, Athénas conténdere.	To be on one's way to Rome, to Paris, London, Carthage, Athens.

B. Rule. — In answer to the question *Where?* the name of the place is put in the Ablative with *in;* but if the place is a city, the name, when of the first or second declension and singular number, stands in the Genitive; and when of the third declension or plural number, in the Ablative without a preposition. E. g.

In hórtis, in theátro, in lóco públicо, in úrbe ésse.	To be in the garden, in the theatre, in the public square, in the city.
In Itáliā, in Germánia, in Áfricā demorári.	To stay in Italy, in Germany, in Africa.
Rómae, Lutétiae, Londíni, Berolíni, Lésbi vívĕre.	To live at Rome, in Paris, London, Berlin, on Lesbus.
Athénis, Syracúsis, Carthágine, Neápoli nâtum ésse.	To be born at Athens, in Syracuse, Carthage, Naples.

C. In answer to the question *Whence?* the name of the place is put in the Ablative with *ex* or *ab*, but before the proper names of cities the preposition is commonly omitted. E. g.

Ex hórtis, ex theátro, a lóco públicо, ab úrbe venire.	To come out of the garden, out of the theatre, from the public square, from the city.
Ex Itáliā, ex Ásiā, ab África fúgere.	To flee out of Italy, out of Asia, from Africa.
Rómā, Lutétiā, Athénis, Carthágine expúlsum ésse.	To be banished from Rome, Paris, Athens, Carthage.

REMARKS.

1. The names of cities sometimes occur with the prepositions *in*, *ex*, or *ab*, and the names of countries without them.* E. g. *Ab Epheso in Syriam profectus*, Having started from Ephesus for Syria. *Ab Epidauro Piraeum advectus*, Conveyed from Epidaurus into the Piræus. But this is an exception to the general rule.

2. The preposition *ad* may stand before names of cities only in the sense of "towards" or "in the vicinity of." E. g. *Iter dirigĕre* ad *Mutĭnam*, To direct one's course towards Modena. *Tres viae sunt* ad *Mutĭnam*, There are three roads to Modena. *Pugna* ad *Trebĭam*, The battle of (= near) Trevi. *Istos libros lēgit* ad *Misēnum*, He read these books near Misenum.

3. The names of countries rarely occur in the genitive, instead of in the ablative with *in*. E. g. *Graeciae*, *Lucāniae* = in Graeciā, in Lucaniā. *Romae Numidiaeque* = et Romae et in Numidiā.

4. If the name of the city has an *adjective* or an *appositum* connected with it, then the Romans put

a.) In answer to the question *Whither?* and *Whence?* the accusative and ablative with and without the usual prepositions. E. g. *Doctas Athenas* or *ad doctas Athenas*, To learned Athens. (*In*) *Carthagĭnem Novam*, To New Carthage. *Ipsā Samo*, From Samos itself. *De vitifĕrā Viennā*, From vine-bearing Vienne.

b.) In answer to the question *Where?* the ablative with *in*, where the genitive would otherwise be required, and the ablative without *in* in all other cases. E. g. In *ipsā Alexandriā*, In Alexandria itself. In *Albā Helviā*.† But without *in*: — *Athenis tuis*, In your Athens. *Carthagĭne Novā*, in New Carthage.

c.) When one of the words *oppidum*, *urbs*, *locus*, &c. stands in apposition with the proper name of the town, it is commonly preceded by the preposition; but in answer to the question *Where?* these

---

* The *in*, however, is regularly omitted in connections like the following: — *Terrā marique*, "by land and by sea," and before *loco* and *locis*, when these words occur in the sense of "state" or "situation"; as, *hoc loco*, *multis locis*, *meliore loco*, &c. So likewise before *toto* or *totā*, "the entire or whole"; as *totā urbe*, *toto mari*, *totis campis*, and never *in tota*, &c. *Hoc libro*, *primo libro*, &c. are said when the entire book is meant; but *in hoc* (*primo*, &c.) *libro*, when a particular passage is referred to.

† And never *Albae Helviae*; rather without *in*, simply *Albā Helviā* like the *Albā Longā* of Virg. Aen. VI. v. 766. Hence also *In Novo Eborāco*, or simply *Novo Eborāco*, and not *Novi Eborāci*, New York, which is as unusual as the *Teani Apŭli* of Cic. pro Cluent. 9.

words are always in the Ablative. E. g. *Tarquinios*, in urbem *Etruriae florentissimam*, To Tarquinii, the most flourishing city of Etruria. *Neapŏli*, in *celeberrĭmo oppido*, At Naples, a most celebrated town. But *Antiochiae nātus est*, celebri *quondam* urbe *et copiosā*, He was born at Antioch, a city formerly celebrated and wealthy.

d.) If the word *urbs* or *oppidum* precedes the name of the city, the preposition is always put, and the proper name stands as *appositum* in the same case. E. g. *Ad urbem Romam ex oppido Thermis, in urbe Romā* (not *Romae*), *in oppido Adrumēto* (not *Adrumēti*).

5. The poets frequently answer the inquiry *Whither?* by the simple accusative, where in prose a preposition is required. E. g. *Italiam Lavīnaque vēnit lĭtŏra* (sc. *in*), He came to Italy and the Lavinian coast. *Speluncam eandem* (sc. *in*) *deveniunt*, They come into the same cave. *Verba refers aures* (= ad aures) *non pervenientia nostras*, You utter words which do not reach our ears.

So likewise the question *Where?* by the ablative without *in*. E. g. *Silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent*, The foul bodies lie scattered through the woods, and in the fields and on the ways. This poetical license is imitated by the prose writers of the silver age, who frequently omit the *in*; as, *medio agro*, *Gabinā viā*, *regione* for *in regione*, &c.

6. The construction of the names of cities is adopted,—

a.) By the names of the smaller islands, of which some have cities of the same name. E. g. *Rhodi*, *Cypri*, *Corcyrae*, in Rhodes, Cyprus, Corcyra. *Rhodum*, *Cyprum*, *Corcyram*, to Rhodes, Cyprus, Corcyra. Thus also, *Chersonesum redīre*, To return into the Chersonesus. *Chersonesi habitāre*, To live in the Chersonesus. To these add *Delos*, *Samos*, *Lesbos*, and *Ithaca*. But the larger islands (e. g. *Britannia*, *Creta*, *Euboea*, *Sardinia*, and *Sicilia*) are commonly construed like names of countries.

b.) By *domus* and *rūs*, on the construction of which see page 132 and page 157.

c.) By the words *hŭmus*, *bellum* and *militĭa*, which, in answer to the question *Where?* stand in the genitive. Thus, *hŭmi*, on the ground.* But *belli* and *militiae* (in war, in the field) occur thus only in connection with *dŏmi*; e. g. *belli domique*, in war and at home; *domi militiaeque*, at home and in the field; *nec belli nec domi*, neither in the field nor at home. To these add *vicinĭae* for *in viciniā*, in the neighborhood; *foras* and *foris*, out of doors; the last of which, however, have assumed the character of adverbs.

Almost, nearly.	*Fĕrē, fĕrmē; prŏpe, prŏpĕmŏdum.* (Adverbs.)
About.	*Circŭter, circa; fermē.*
Scarcely, hardly.	*Vix, paene.* (Adverbs.)

* But in connection with a verb of motion, *in hŭmum*, never *hŭmum*, but rather *humi* instead of *in humum*. *Humo* occurs in the sense of *from* the ground. So also *in bellum*, *ex bello*.

How old are you (What is your age)?	Quótum ánnum ágis ? Quót ánnos hábes ?
I am ten years old.	Décimum ánnum ágo. Décem ánnos hábeo.
How old is your brother?	Quótum ánnum ágit fratérculus túus ?
He is six years old.	Séxtum ánnum ágit. Ánnos séx hábet.
He is scarcely two years old.	Vix dúo annôrum nâtus est.
To be born.	Nascor, i, nātus sum.
The year.	Annus, i, *m.*
Older, younger.	Major nātu,* minor nātu.
The oldest, youngest.	Maxĭmus, minĭmus nātu.
Are you older than your sister?	Ésne májor nátu quám soror túa (sorôre túā) ?
Yes, I am much older.	Súm véro múlto májor nátu.
How old are you?	Quót ánnos nâtus és ? (Cf. Less. LVII. *A.* Rem. 2.)
I am almost twenty years old.	Viginti fere annos nâtus sum.
How old is your sister?	Quótum ánnum hábet sóror túa ?
She is about twelve years old.	Duódecim círciter ánnos hábet (nâtus est).
She is scarcely eight years old.	Vix ócto ánnos hábet. Ócto paéne ánnos nâta ést.
Of what age would you take me to be?	Quíd aetâtis tíbi vídeor ?
You seem to be about thirty.	Vidêris ésse annôrum círciter trigínta.
To seem, appear.	Vidĕor, ēri, vīsus sum.
The age (of life).	Aetas, ātis, *f.*
I am *over* twenty years old (*older* than twenty years).	Májor (quam) vigínti ánnos nātus sum. Májor (quam) annorum† viginti sum.
He is *under* thirty-three years old (*younger* than thirty-three years).	Mínor (quam) três et trigínta ánnos nâtus ést. Mínor (quam) annôrum tríum et trigínta ést.
To understand, comprehend, seize.	*Accipio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum.* *Intelligo, ĕre, lexi, lectum.* *Comprehendo, ĕre, di, sum.* *Căpio, ĕre, cēpi, captum.*‡

* Lit. "greater by or with respect to birth." So also *grandior*, either with or without *natu*.

† This is literally *I am older than a man of twenty years.* Instead of the genitive, the ablative may also be put, with or without *quam*. E. g. *Major* (or *minor*) *quam decem annis*, Over (or under) ten years of age. *Major tribus annis*, Over three years old.

‡ *Accipere* is "to hear and understand," more or less perfectly; *intelligere*

Do you understand me (i. e. what I say)?	Núm intelligis, quid dícam? (Lesson XXX. *C.* 2.)
I do not understand you.	Nôn intélligo (comprehéndo), quid dícas.
Have you understood the man?	Intellexistîne, id quod díxit hómo?
Yes, I have understood him.	Sáne quídem, intellexi.
Do you comprehend that man (i. e. his motives, &c.)?	Intelligísne ístum hóminem?
I comprehend him but little.	Párum (mínus) intélligo.
I hear you, but I do not understand you.	Accípio quídem éa quae dícis, sed minus comprehéndo.
The noise.	Strepĭtus, ūs, *m.*
The wind.	Ventus, i, *m.*
To bark.	Latro, āre, āvi, ātum.
The barking.	Latrātus, us, *m.*; gannitio, ōnis, *f.*
To hear, perceive.	Audīre, percĭpere, excipĕre auribus (ALIQUID).
Do you perceive the noise of the wind?	Percipísne ventôrum strépitum?
I do perceive it.	Égo véro percípio.
Have you heard the barking of the dogs?	Audivistîne latrâtum cánum?
I have heard it.	Audívi.
Have they heard what we have said?	Núm excepérunt, quae nôs díximus?
They have not heard them.	Nôn excepérunt.
Do you seize my opinion?	Capísne méam sententiam?
I do seize it.	Cápio véro.
Whose dog is this?	Cújus ést cánis hícce?
It is the Englishman's.	Cánis ést Ángli.
To read.	Lĕgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum.
To read through.	Perlĕgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum.
To remain, stay.	Mănĕo, ēre, nsi, nsum. Permăneo, ēre, nsi, nsum.
To stay, abide.	Mŏror, āri, ātus sum. Dēmorāri, commorāri.
To take.	Sūmo, ĕre, mpsi, mptum.* Căpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, captum. Accípio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum.
To beat, inflict blows upon.	Verbĕro, āre, āvi, ātum. Percŭtio, ĕre, cussi, cussum.
To strike.	Fĕrio, īre, ——, ——.
To lose.	Amitto, ĕre, amisi, amissum. Perdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum.

and *comprehendere*, "to understand or comprehend" anything said or done; *capere*, "to seize, take, comprehend clearly." All these have ALIQUID.—*Intelligere* ALIQUEM is to comprehend one's character, motives, style, meaning, &c., generally.

* *Sūmere* = "to take up" anything from its place of rest; *capĕre*, "to lay hold of, grasp, seize"; *accipĕre*, "to take" something offered.

To lose at play.	Perdĕre aliquid ālĕā.*
To know (anything).	Scĭo, īre, īvi, ītum. Didĭci (= *I know, have learnt*).
To take away.	Aufĕro, erre, abstŭli, ablātum. Dēmo, ĕre, mpsi, mptum. Tollo, ĕre, sustŭli, sublātum.

D. Obs. Auferre aliquid in general is "to carry away or off," either in a good or bad sense.† With *alicui* or *ab aliquo* it signifies "to take away from," or "to deprive of." *Demĕre aliquid alicui* or *de* (*ex*, *ab*) *aliquā re* = "to take away or to abstract from." *Tollĕre aliquid* or *aliquem*, "to remove out of the way," and sometimes secondarily "to destroy."

Has this man carried away anything?	Núm hómo íste quídquam ábstulit?
He has not carried away anything at all.	Nôn véro; níhil quídquam ábstŭlit.
Have I taken away anything from you?	Abstulíne tíbi aliquid?
You have taken away my book.	Abstulísti véro míhi líbrum.
Has he taken away some of our bread?	Dempsítne (ille) áliquid de pâne nóstrā?
He has not taken any of it.	Níhil démpsit.
What has the servant taken away?	Quíd súστŭlit sérvus?
He has taken away the wine from the table.	Vínum de ménsā súστŭlit.
Did you order the table to be cleared off?	Jussístine ménsam tólli?
I have not yet done it.	Nôndum jússi.
Will you take away these books?	Écquid vis tóllere hôs líbros?
I will.	Nôn vólo.
Has he read through the book which you lent him?	Perlegítne librum, quem éi commodâsti?
Did he stay at his home, or at his father's?	Suaêne dómi morâtus est, an in patérnā?
He remained at his father's.	Permánsit in patérnā.
Did they take what you gave them?	Núm accepérunt, quod éis dedísti?
They were unwilling to take it.	Accípere noluérunt.
Who has beaten our dog?	Quis cánem nóstrum verberâvit (percússit)?
No one has beaten him.	Némo éum verberâvit.
Have you lost anything?	Númquid amisístis?
We have lost nothing.	Níhil amísimus.

* *Aleā*, lit. in the game of dice; here, by any game of chance generally.

† Also with persons; as, *Aufer te hinc*, Get yourself gone! *Aufer te domum*, Be off home!

How much money did he lose at play?	Quántum pecúniae amícus túus áleā pérdidit?
He has lost a large amount.	Pérdidit pecúniam grándem.
Is he not unhappy?	Nónne est infélix?
He is quite unhappy.	Est ádmodum infélix.
Do you know Latin?	*Scísne (didicístine) sermônem Latînum?*
I do not know it yet.	*Nôndum dídĭci.*
Do you know as much as this man?	Ésne tû aeque dóctus atque hícce hómo?
I do not know as much.	Nôn aéque dóctus súm.
Did you know that?	Fuítne hóc tíbi nôtum?
I did not know it.	Nôn fúit.
How many books has your cousin already read?	Quam múltos líbros consobrínus túus jam perlêgit?
He has already read five of them, and at present he is reading the sixth.	Perlêgit jám quínque, et nunc séxtum légit.
Where did our friends remain?	Úbi amíci nóstri commoráti súnt?
They have remained at home.	Commoráti súnt dómi.
They have kept themselves at home.	Tenuérunt sê dómi.
Will (does it please) your father give me anything to do?	Placétne pátri túo mandâre mĭhi áliquid faciéndum?
He desires to give you something to do.	Cúpit véro tíbi quíddam faciéndum mandâre.

Exercise 108.

Will you lend my brother a book? — I have lent him one already. — Will you lend him one more? — I will lend him two more. — Have you given anything to the poor? — I have given them money. — How much money has my cousin given you? — He has given me only a little; he has given me only two crowns. — How old is your brother? — He is twenty years old. — Are you as old as he? — I am not so old. — How old are you? — I am hardly eighteen years old. — How old art thou? — I am about twelve years old. — Am I younger than you? — I do not know. — How old is our neighbor? — He is not quite thirty years old. — Are our friends as young as we (*ejusdem aetātis nobiscum*)? — They are older than we. — How old are they? — The one (*alter*) is nineteen, and the other (*alter*) twenty years old. — Is your father as old as mine? — He is older than yours. — Have you read my book? — I have not quite read it yet. — Has your friend finished his book? — He has almost finished it. — Do you understand me? — I do understand you. — Does the Englishman understand us? — He does understand us. — Do you understand what we are telling you? — We do understand it. — Dost thou understand German? — I do not understand it yet, but I am learning it. — Do we understand the English? — We do not understand them. — Do the Germans un-

derstand us? — They do understand us. — Do we understand them? — We hardly understand them. — Do you hear any noise? — I hear nothing. — Have you heard the roaring of the wind? — I have heard it. — What do you hear? — I hear the barking of the dogs. — Whose dog is this? — It is the dog of the Scotchman.

EXERCISE 109.

Where is your brother? — He is at London. — Was he not at Berlin? — No, he was at Carthage. — Have you ever been at Syracuse? — I have never been at Syracuse, but at Rome. — Is our friend at New York? — No, he is at Athens. — Do you intend to set out for Italy? — I intend to set out for Rome and Athens. — Where is your son studying? — He is studying at Paris. — Has he returned (*Revertûne*) from Asia? — He has not yet returned. — Where did he come from? — He came from Paris to London. — And I came from Germany to America. — Have you lost your stick? — I have not lost it. — Has your servant lost my note? — He has lost it. — Where have you remained? — I have remained at home. — Has your father lost (at play) as much money as I? — He has lost more of it than you. — How much have I lost? — You have hardly lost a crown. — Where has thy brother remained? — He has remained at home. — Have your friends remained in the country? — They have remained there. — Do you know as much as the English physician? — I do not know as much as he. — Does the French physician know as much as you? — He knows more than I. — Does any one know more than the French physicians? — No one knows more than they. — Have your brothers read my books? — They have not quite read them. — How many of them have they read? — They have hardly read two of them. Has the son of my gardener taken anything from you? — He has taken my books from me. — What hast thou taken from him? — I have taken nothing from him. — Has he taken money from you? — He has taken some from me. — How much money has he taken from you? — He has taken from me almost two crowns.

Lesson LVII. — PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

OF THE CONSTRUCTION OF TIME.

A. In answer to the question *How long?* the noun denoting the duration of time is put in the Accusative, sometimes with the preposition *per*, "through." E. g.

Ûnum tántum *díem* vívĕre.	To live for one day only.
Dúas hebdómades, três ménses in úrbe demorári.	To stay in the city for two weeks, three months.
Três hóras, séx ménses, per triénnium cum áliquo habitâre.	To live with any one three hours, six months, for three (entire) years.
Nóctes diêsque alicui assidêre.	To sit by one's side night and day.
Ánnum jám *tértium et vicésimum* régnat.	He is already reigning the twentieth year.
Múlta saécula víguit Pythagoreôrum nômen.	The name of the Pythagoreans was in vogue for many centuries.
Úrbs Véji *décem aestátes himêsque contínuas* circumséssa est.	The city of Veji was besieged for ten successive summers and winters.

REMARKS.

1. Duration of time is sometimes also expressed by the Ablative. E. g. *Triginta annis vixisse*, To have lived for thirty years. *Quattuordecim annis exilium tolerāre*, To suffer exile for fourteen years. But this is rather an exception peculiar to writers of the silver age.

2. The question *How old?* is commonly answered by *nātus*, "born," with the accusative of the time elapsed since the birth of the individual in question. E. g. *Unum tantum mensem nātus est*, He is but one month old. *Decem annos nātus sum*, I am ten years old. On these expressions, compare page 311.

B. In answer to the question *When?* the point or period of time is expressed by the Ablative, *without* the preposition *in*. E. g.

Hôc díe, hôc ánno, hâc hórā, hâc hebdómade.	This day, this year, this hour, this week.
Vêre, aestâte, auctúmno, híeme.	In the spring, summer, autumn, winter.
Díe, nócte, vésperi (véspere).	By day, at night, in the evening.
Anno post Chrístum nâtum *milésimo octingésimo quadragésimo séptimo.*	In the year one thousand eight hundred and forty-seven after the birth of Christ.
Pýrrhi tempóribus jám Apóllo vérsus fácere desíerat.	In the times of Pyrrhus, Apollo had already ceased to make verses.
Timóleon proélia máxima *natáli díe súo* fêcit ómnia.	Timoleon won all his greatest victories on his birthday.

REMARKS.

1. *In* before the ablatives *anno, die, horā*, &c. rarely occurs. *In tempŏre* can only be said when *tempus* has the sense of "emergency"; as, *hoc in tempŏre*, in this emergency; *in tāli tempŏre*, under such circumstances. The English "betimes" ("in time," "in season") is in Latin either *tempŏre* or *in tempŏre*. In this sense the adverbial

tempori and *temperi* are also used, from which the comparative *temperius*, more seasonably, earlier.

2. The English "by day," "in the night," may also be expressed by *interdiu* and *noctu*, especially in connections like *die ac noctu* or *die noctūque*, by day and by night; *nocte et interdiu*, by night and by day.

3. Substantives which do not of themselves denote any division of time, but are still used to express that relation, are put in the ablative partly with *in*, but frequently without it. So *initio* and *principio*, in the beginning; (*in*) *comitiis*, at the time of the election; (*in*) *tumultu*, in an insurrection; (*in*) *bello*,* in the war; *ejus adventu* or *discessu*, at the time of his arrival or departure. So also *ludis* (without *in*) for *tempore ludorum*, at the time of the public games; and *Saturnālibus*, *gladiatōribus*, *Latīnis* (sc. *ludis*), at the time of the Saturnalian, gladiatorial, and Latin exhibitions.

C. The time *within which* anything is done is expressed by the Ablative, generally without *in*, and sometimes by the Accusative with *intra*. E. g.

Úrbes Áfricae *ánnis* prope *quinquagínta* núllum Românum exércitum víderant.	The cities of Africa had not seen a Roman army in nearly fifty years.
Quáttuor tragoédias *séxdecim diêbus* absolvísti.	You have finished four tragedies in sixteen days.
Frétum Eurípi sépties *die* recíprocat.	He makes the sound of Eurīpus ebb seven times a day.
In† *hórā* saépe ducéntos vérsus dictâbat.	He frequently dictated two hundred verses in an hour.
Intra décimum díem, quam (= postquam) vénerat.	Within ten days after his arrival.

D. The question *How long ago?* is answered by the Accusative or Ablative, with *abhinc*, "before this time," and sometimes by the Accusative with *ante* and the pronoun *hic*. E. g.

Ábhinc díes três. / Ábhinc tríbus diêbus. / *Ante hôs* três díes.	Three days ago. (Three days before this. *These* three days *ago*.)
Ábhinc ánnos séx	Six years ago.
Ábhinc vigínti hóras.	Twenty hours ago.
Ante hôs séx ménses.	These six months ago.

* But when *bello* has an adjective, or a noun in the genitive, connected with it, the *in* is never put. E. g. *bello Punico secundo*, in the second Punic war; *bello Latinōrum*, in the war of the Latins. So *Senensi proelio*, *pugnā Cannensi*, without *in*. Thus also *in pueritiā*, in boyhood, but *pueritiā extremā*, towards the end of boyhood; *ineunte adolescentiā*, at the beginning of youth.

† The preposition *in* is sometimes put in answer to the question *How much* or *how often in a given time?* But even in this instance the ablative may stand without it.

REMARK. — The question *How long ago?* is sometimes also answered by the simple ablative; e. g. *paucis his diebus*, a few days ago, within a few days before this time.

E. In answer to the questions *How long before?* and *How long after?* the time is expressed either by the Accusative or Ablative, with *ante*, "before," and *post*, "after." E. g.

Ante séx ménses. } Six months before (any given event).
Séx ménsibus ánte. }
Post quínque diébus. } Five days after (that event).
Quínque diébus post. }

NOTE. — The words *ante* and *post* are usually put *before* the Accusative and *after* the Ablative. But they may also stand *between* the numeral and noun. The numeral may be either a cardinal or an ordinal. Thus the English "Three days before," and "Ten years after," may be expressed as follows: —

ACCUSATIVE.	ABLATIVE.
Ante três díes.	Tribus diêbus ánte.
Ante tértuum díem.	Tértio díē ánte.
Três ante díes.	Tribus ante diêbus.
Tértium ante díem.	Tértio ante díē.
Post décem ánnos.	Décem ánnis post.
Post décimum ánnum.	Décimo ánno post.
Décem post ánnos.	Décem post ánnis.
Décimum post ánnum.	Décimo post ánno.

Fábius *tértio ánno ante* cónsul fúerat.	Fabius had been consul three years before.
M. Vólscius Fíctor *ante aliquot ánnos* tribûnus plêbis fúerat.	A few years before that time Marcus Volscius Fictor had been tribune of the people.
Néque íta múlto post Seleûcus a Ptolemaéo dólo interféctus ést.	But a short time after that, Seleucus was treacherously killed by Ptolemæus.
Homêrus *ánnis múltis* fúit *ante* Rómulum.*	Homer lived many years before Romulus.
Cónsul fáctus est *ánnis post* Rômam cónditam *trecéntis duodenonagínta.*	He was made consul three hundred and eighty years after the founding of Rome.

REMARKS.

1. *Post* and *ante* are usually put *after* their ablatives, or *between* them, as above. Sometimes, however, they occupy the first place;

* This and the next following examples show that *ante* and *post* may (as prepositions) be followed by an accusative, indicative of the time before or after which the event has taken place. When this is the case, the preposition usually comes *after* the words *diebus*, *annis*, &c.

as, *ante annis octo, post paucis diebus.* So also *post aliquanto*, some time afterwards; *post non multo*, shortly after; *post paulo*, a little while after that; *ante paulo*, a little while before; instead of the more common *aliquanto post*, &c.

2. The word *ante* may also stand in the sense *abhinc*, "ago," "before the present time" (cf. *D.*), but not vice versa.

3. *Ante* and *post*, followed by *quam* with a verb, give rise to the same variety of expression. E. g. *Anno ipso, antequam* natus est Ennius, An entire year before Ennius was born. *Numa rex* annis *permultis* ante *fuit*, quam *Pythagoras*, Numa was king many years before the time of Pythagoras. *Non multo* post, quam *tu a me discessisti*, Shortly after you left me. *Nono anno* postquam *in Hispaniam venerat*, Nine years after his arrival in Spain. *Cimon* post annum quintum, quam *expulsus erat, in patriam revocatus est*, Cimon was recalled into his country five years after he had been expelled from it.*

4. After the ablative of time, and also after *pridie* and *postridie*, the words *ante* and *post* are sometimes omitted, especially before *quam*. Thus: *Quemadmŏdum* tertio anno *rapuĕre* (sc. *ante*), As they had plundered three years before. *Anno trecentesimo altĕro*, quam (= postquam) *condĭta erat Roma*, Three hundred and two years after the founding of Rome. *Pridie* quam (= antequam) *occiderētur*, The day before he was killed. *Postridie ad me venit*, quam (= postquam) *expectāram*, He came to me the day after I had expected him.†

5. The point of time at which anything *begins* is expressed by the ablative, with *ab* or *ex*. Thus: *ab urbe condĭtā*, from the foundation of the city; *ab adolescentiā*, from youth up; *ex eo tempŏre*, from (since) that time; *ex Metello consŭle* (= *ex consulātu Metelli*), since the time of Metellus's consulship.

6. Relations of time are also expressed by *ad* or *usque ad*, "until"; *in* (cum Acc.), "till"; *de*, "at," or "during"; and *sub*, which cum. Acc. = "towards," or "about," but cum. Abl. "at," "by," "during." E. g. *Ab horā octavā* usque ad *vesperam collocūti sumus*, We conversed from the eighth hour until evening. *De nocte surgĕre*, To rise during the night. *De multā nocte vigilāre*, To watch late at night. *Sub lūcem*, Towards daylight. *Sub luce*, By daylight. *Sub exitu anni*, At the close of the year. *Sub tempus edendi*, Towards (near) dinner-time.

To bite, to wound by biting.	*Mordĕo, ēre, mŏmordi, morsum.* / *Morsu vulnĕrāre* (ALIQUEM).
Why? on what account?	*Cur? quamobrem? quapropter? quā de causā?*

* Thus the English "Two hours before (or after) he had died," may in Latin be expressed as follows: *Duabus horis* antequam (postquam) *decessĕrat* = *Ante* (post) *duas horas*, quam *decessĕrat* = *Altĕrā hōrā* antequam (postquam) *decessĕrat* = Ante (post) *altĕram hōram*, quam *decesserat*.

† Instead of *quam, ex quo* and *quum*, "since," may also be used, with *post* omitted; e. g. *Triduo*, quum *has dabam litteras*, Three days after writing this. So also the mere ablative of the relative; e. g. *Octo diebus*, quibus *has litteras dabam*, Eight days after the date of this.

What is the reason that?	Quid est, cur? (*cum. subj.*) Quid (causae) est, quod?
Why not?	Cur non? quin?
Because.	*Quŏd, quĭa* (cum ind. and subj.). *Quī, quippe qui* (cum subj.).
For the reason — that (= *because*).	*Ob eam causam* or *propterĕa — quod.* *Ideo, idcirco, propterea — quia.*
Why do you beat the dog?	Quaprópter cánem vérbĕras?
I beat him because he has bitten me.	Ego éum vérbero, quod me momórdit. Ego éum concútio, quíppe qui mê mórsu vulneráverit.
Why do you not call for the doctor?	Cúr nôn (quin) médicum arcéssis?
I do not call for him, because I do not need him.	Éum nôn arcesso propterea, quía éjus nôn indígeo.
Why do they not read my book?	Cúr nôn líbrum méum légunt?
They do not read it, because they cannot comprehend it.	Nôn legunt, quíppe qui eum intellígere nôn péssint. Éum ob hóc nôn légunt, quía intellígere nôn péssunt.
Do you know the man who has lent me his cane?	Novístine hóminem, qui mihi báculum súum commodâvit?
I do know him.	Nóvi, véro.
Do you breakfast before you go out?	Sumísne jentáculum priúsquam in públicum ródis?
Does the tailor show you the coat which he is mending?	Ostendítne tibi sártor tógam, quam réficit?
He does show it.	Sáne quídem, osténdit.
Do you see the man who is in the garden?	Núm vides hóminem, qui est in hórtulo?
I do not see him.	Éum nôn vídeo.
To wait, remain.	*Oppĕrĭor, īri, pertus* or *pertus sum.* *Mănĕo, ēre, nsi, nsum.* *Expecto, āre, āvi, ātum.* *Praestŏlor, āri, ātus sum.*
To wait for any one.	Opperīri *or* manēre aliquem. Praestolāri alicui.
To expect any one *or* anything.	Expectāre aliquem *or* alíquid.
To wait for anything.	Opperīri aliquid.
Are you waiting for your letters?	Opperirísne epístolas túas?
I am waiting for them.	Ego véro (éas) oppérior.
Is he waiting for his brother?	Manétne (opperitúrne) súam frûtrem?
Is the servant waiting for his master?	Núm sérvus héro súo praestolâtur?
He is not waiting for him.	(Éi) nôn praestolâtur.

Do you expect your friends?	Ecquid amícos túos expéctas?
I do not expect them.	(Eos) nôn expécto.
What are they expecting?	Quid expéctant?
They are expecting the money which you owe them.	Quám íis débes pecúniam expéctant.
To owe.	Debeo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum (ALICUI ALIQUID).
Do you owe any one anything?	Debêsne álicui áliquid?
I owe not a penny to any one.	Ego númmum débeo némini.
How much do you owe me?	Quántam mihi débes pecúniam?
I owe you a hundred crowns.	Débeo tíbi céntum thaléros.
Do I owe as much as you?	Debeône tántam pecúniam quántam tú?
You owe more money than I do.	Majôrem tû débes pecúniam quám égo.
Did they owe us anything?	Núm nóbis quídquam debuérunt?
They owed us nothing.	Nóbis níhil debuérunt.
I am indebted to you for many things.	Débeo tíbi múlta.
The master.	Hĕrus, i, *m.*
The shilling.	*Shillingus, i, *m.*
The pound.	Libra (ae, *f.*) pondo; *or simply* pondo (*indecl.*).
Five pounds of gold.	Auri quinque pondo.
To return, come back.	*Redĕo*, īre, ĭi (*ivi*), ĭtum. *Revertor*, i, *rsus sum.** (ALIQUO, AD ALIQUEM).
From (any place).	*De*, *a* (*ab*), *ex* (Prep. cum Abl.).
Hence, from there.	Inde, illinc istinc (*adv*). De (a, ex) eō (illō) locō.
At what o'clock do you usually return from the market?	Quâ hórā de fóro revérti sóles?
I am accustomed to return thence at twelve.	Sóleo revérti íllinc hórā duodécimā.
Has he come back from home?	Rediítne (revertítne) dómo? †
He has not yet come back from there.	Nôndum inde revértit.
Does the servant return early thence?	Revertitúrne sérvus íllinc béne mâne?
He is wont to return thence at ten o'clock in the morning.	Revérti índe sólet hórā décimā mâne.
Did they return before noon?	Reverterúntne ánte meridiem?
They did return at eleven o'clock.	Revertérunt véro hórā undécimā.
At nine in the morning.	Nōnā mānĕ (*sc.* hōrā).

* This verb is generally *revertor* in the present; but in the perfect *reverti* (from the active *reverto*), more frequently than *reversus sum*.

† See Lesson LVI. *C.*

At eight in the evening.	Octāvā vespĕri (*sc.* hōrā).
Towards five o'clock in the morning (evening).	Sub hōram quintam māne (vespĕri).
Towards noon, evening.	Sub merĭdiem, sub vespĕram.
How long?	*Quam dĭu?*
Long, for a great while	*Dĭu* (Adv.); *longum tempus; perdiu* (= very long).
Longer.	Longĭus, diutĭus.
Longer than a year.	Plūs (amplĭus) anno; anno longĭus; amplĭus annum.
During, for (throughout).	*Per; inter; super* (Prep. cum Acc.); *in* (cum Abl.).
During the summer.	Per aestātem.
For an entire year.	Per annum intĕgrum.
During (within) the few days.	In diēbus paucis.
During dinner-time (while at dinner).	Inter (super) coenam.
During play-time (while playing).	Inter ludendum.
For the space of two, three, four days.	Biduum, triduum, quatriduum (*Acc.*)
(For) three entire days.	Universum (totum) triduum (*Acc.*).
For three months.	Trēs menses.
During twenty days.	Dies viginti.
For many years.	Multos annos.
Now for the third year (already three years).	Tertium jam annum.
(Within) these twenty years.	His annis viginti.
Within the next three years.	Proximo triennio.
A minute.	*Hōrae sexagesima (*sc.* pars); momentum, i, *n*.
A day.	Dies, *m.* & *f.* (Lesson VIII. *B.*)
A year.	Annus, i, *m.*
A month.	Mensis, is, *m.*
The summer.	Aestas, ātis, *f.*
The winter.	Hiems, emis, *f.*
The age.	Aetas, ātis, *f.*
The century.	Saecŭlum, i, *n.*
Whole, entire.	Tŏtus, a, um; intĕger, gra, grum; universus, a, um.
How long did you speak with the man?	Quám dĭu cum hómine collocûtus és?
I spoke with him three hours.	Collocûtus súm cum éo três hóras.
How long did your brother remain in the country?	Quám dĭu frâter túus rûre permánsit?
He stayed there the entire summer.	Permánsit ibi (per) aestâtem íntegram.

Did you stay long in the city?	Moratúsne es díu in úrbe?
I stayed there for a great while.	Morâtus sum ibi lóngum témpus.
How long do you wish to stay with us?	Quám diu commorári vis nobíscum?
I desire to remain with you an hour, a month, a year.	Cúpio vobíscum commorári ûnam hôram, ûnum ménsem, ánnum.

Exercise 110.

Why do you love that man? — I love him because he is good. — Why does your neighbor beat his dog? — Because it has bitten his little boy. — Why does our father love me? — He loves you because you are good. — Do your friends love us? — They love us because we are good. — Why do you bring me wine? — I bring you some because you are thirsty. — Why does the hatter drink? — He drinks because he is thirsty. — Do you see the sailor who is in the ship? — I do not see the one who is in the ship, but the one who is in the square. — Do you read the books which my father has given you? — I do read them. — Do you know the Italians whom we know? — We do not know those whom you know, but we know others. — Do you buy the horse which we have seen? — I do not buy that which we have seen, but another. — Do you seek what you have lost? — I do seek it. — Do you find the man whom you have looked for? — I do not find him. — Does the butcher kill the ox which he has bought in the market? — He does kill it. — Do our cooks kill the chickens which they have bought? — They do kill them. — Does the hatter mend the hat which I have sent him? — He does mend it. — Does the shoemaker mend the boots which you have sent him? — He does not mend them, because they are worn out. — Does your coat lie upon the chair? — It does lie upon it. — Does it lie upon the chair upon which I placed it? — No, it lies upon another. — Where is my hat? — It is in the room in which you have been. — Do you wait for any one? — I wait for no one. — Do you wait for the man whom I have seen this morning? — I do wait for him. — Art thou waiting for thy book? — I am waiting for it. — Do you expect your father this evening? — I do expect him. — At what o'clock has he gone to the theatre? — He has gone thither at seven o'clock. — At what o'clock does he return from there? — He returns from there at eleven o'clock. — Has your bailiff returned from the market? — He has not yet returned from it. — At what o'clock has your brother returned from the country? — He has returned from there at ten o'clock in the evening.

Exercise 111.

At what o'clock hast thou come back from thy friend? — I have come back from him at eleven o'clock in the morning. — Hast thou remained long with him? — I have remained with him about an hour. — How long do you intend to remain at the ball? — I intend to remain there a few minutes. — How long has the Englishman remained with you? — He has remained with me for two hours. — Do you intend to remain long in the country? — I intend to remain there dur-

ing the summer. — How long have your brothers remained in town (*in urbe*) ? — They have remained there during the winter. — How much do I owe you ? — You do not owe me much. — How much do you owe your tailor ? — I only owe him fifty crowns. — How much dost thou owe thy shoemaker ? — I owe him already seventy crowns. — Do I owe you anything ? — You owe me nothing. — How much does the Frenchman owe you ? — He owes me more than you. — Do the English owe you as much as the Spaniards ? — Not quite so much. — Do I owe you as much as my brother ? — You owe me more than he. — Do our friends owe you as much as we ? — You owe me less than they. — Why do you give money to the merchant ? — I give him some because he has sold me handkerchiefs. — Why do you not drink ? — I do not drink because I am not thirsty ? — Why do you pick up this ribbon ? — I pick it up because I want it. — Why do you lend this man money ? — I lent him some because he is in want of some. — Why does your brother study ? — He studies because he desires to learn Latin. — Are you thirsty ? — I am not thirsty, because (*quippe qui*) I have drunk. — Has your cousin already drunk ? — Not yet ; he is not yet thirsty. — Does the servant show you the room which he is sweeping ? — He does not show me that which he is sweeping now, but that which he swept yesterday. — Do you breakfast before you go out ? — I go out before I breakfast. — What does your brother do before he writes his letters ? — He buys paper, ink (*atramentum*), and pens, before he writes them.

Lesson LVIII. — PENSUM DUODESEXAGESIMUM.

SYNTAX OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

A. The accusative serves to designate the direct object of transitive verbs, active or deponent, and stands in answer to the question *Whom ?* or *What ?* (Cf. Lesson XXIV. *G.*) E. g.

Fílius pátrem *ámat.*	The son loves the father.
Déus múndum *aedificâvit.*	God created the world.
Miltíades Athénas totámque Graéciam *liberâvit.*	Miltiades liberated Athens and entire Greece.
Glória virtûtem *tánquam úmbra séquitur.*	Glory follows valor like a shade.

REMARKS.

1. When the verb is changed into the passive voice, the object-accusative becomes the subject of the verb. E. g. *Pater a filio amâ-*

tur. — *Mundus a Deo aedificâtur.* — *Athenae totáque Graecia a Miltiade liberátae sunt.* This conversion into the passive voice may always take place without any material alteration of the sense.

2. In addition to the accusative of the immediate object, many active verbs admit of another noun in the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative. These verbs are then said to govern two cases. E. g. *Pater filio* (*dat.*) *librum dedit.* — *Me* civitātis morum *piget taedetque*, I am weary of, and disgusted with, the morals of the city. *Democrītus* oculis (*abl.*) *se privavit*, Democritus deprived himself of his eyes. Cf. Lessons LXI., LXVII., LXXI.

3. The object of an active verb is frequently an infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, or a clause introduced by a relative or one of the conjunctions *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, &c. (Cf. Lessons LII., LIII., LIV.) E. g. *Ennius deos esse censet*, Ennius is of opinion that the gods exist. *Ante senectūtem curāvi, ut bene vivĕrem*, Before old age, my aim was to lead a good life.

4. The accusative after transitive verbs is sometimes entirely suppressed. This is the case, —

a.) When the object is designedly left indefinite, in order to render the act alone conspicuous. E. g. *Ego semper* amāvi, *et si quid faciam nunc quoque quaeris*, amo, I have always loved, and if you inquire what I am doing now, my answer is, "I love." *Non sine summo dolore* scribo, I write with the deepest sorrow. *Tarquinius Delphos* mittĕre *statuit*, Tarquin resolves to send to Delphi.

b.) When it has already been expressed, and can easily be understood from the context. E. g. *Complexus Coriolanus suos dimīsit*, sc. *eos*, Coriolanus, having embraced his family, dismissed them. *Et scribo aliquid et lego; sed cum* lego, *ex comparatiōne sentio, quam male* scrībam, I write and read something at the same time; but when I read, I perceive from the comparison how badly I write. So frequently the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *eum*, *nos*, &c.

c.) In certain technical expressions, such as *movēre*, sc. *castra*, to decamp; *appellĕre*, *conscendĕre*, *solvĕre*, sc. *navem*, to land, embark, set sail; *ducĕre*, sc. *exercĭtum*, to march (an army); *merēre*, sc. *stipendia*, to serve as a soldier; *obīre*, sc. *diem suprēmum*, to die; *agĕre*, sc. *vĭtam*, to live. In the same manner the object-infinitive is often omitted; as, *In Pompejānum statim cogito*, sc. *proficisci*, I contemplate going to my estate near Pompeii immediately. *Ut solet*, sc. *fĭĕri*, As it commonly happens.

5. The verb itself is sometimes omitted. This occurs, —

a.) In expressions like *Quid multa?* (See page 154.) *Quid? quod* .... for *quid dicam de eo, quod*, What shall I say to the fact that. *Quae cum dixisset Cotta, finem*, sc. *fecit*, When Cotta had said this, he concluded his speech. *Sus Minervam*, sc. *docet*, The dunce instructs the sage.

b.) After the formulas *nihil aliud* (*amplius* or *minus*) *quam*, "only," "nothing more or less than," "nothing but," where one of the tenses

of *facere* may be supplied. *Nihil aliud* (sc. *fēcit*) *quam bellum comparavit*, His only thought was the preparation of a war. *Illā nocte* nihil aliud (sc. factum est) *quam vigilātum in urbe*, That night there was nothing but watching in the city (i. e. every one kept awake).

c.) In a sentence left unfinished by *aposiopesis.** E. g. *Quos ego* .... Whom I will ....

6. A transitive verb with its object may frequently be converted into a single verb denoting the same thing. E. g. *opus facĕre* = *operāri; auxilium ferre* = *auxiliāri; lachrĭmas fundĕre* = *lachrimāri; navem agĕre* = *navigāre*, &c.

7. The accusative sometimes depends upon a verbal noun or adjective, as the case governed by the verbs from which they are derived. Such are, —

a.) A few verbal nouns in *tio;* as, *domum itio* or *redĭtio*, a going or returning home. *Quid tibi hanc* curatio est *rem?* What is this business to you? But this usage is confined to Plautus.

b.) Verbal adjectives in *bundus*. E. g. *Populabundus agros ad oppĭdum pervenit*, Pillaging the fields, he came into the vicinity of the city. *Mirabundi velut somnii vanam speciem*, As if wondering at the fleeting visions of a dream. Sometimes also those in *lus;* as, *Facta consultaque ejus aemŭlus erat.*

c.) The verbals *ōsus*, *exōsus*, and *perōsus*, "hating," "detesting," and *pertaesus*, "weary of," "disgusted with." E. g. *Quum* exosus arma *in otio agĕret*, When, from a dislike for war, he lived in retirement. *Pertaesus ignaviam suam*, Weary of his own want of energy.

B. A number of neuter verbs are sometimes followed by an object-accusative derived from the same root, and of a signification similar to their own.

Such are *cursum currĕre*, *dolōrem dolēre*, *furōrem furĕre*, *gaudium gaudēre*, *jusjurandum jurāre*, *insaniam insanīre*, *pugnam* (or *proelium*) *pugnāre*, *risum ridēre*, *somnĭum somniāre*, *sapōrem sapĕre*, *vītam vivĕre*. In all these instances, however, the object-accusative has generally an adjective connected with it, or is otherwise modified. E. g.

Mīrum somniávi *sómnium*.	I had a singular dream.
Jurávi *veríssimum pulcherrimúmque jusjurándum*.	I have sworn most conscientiously and honorably.
Síccius Dentátus triumphávit cum imperatóribus súis *triúmphos nóvem*.	Siccius Dentatus, with his generals, was honored with nine triumphs.

Remark. — Instead of a noun of the same root with the verb, one of kindred signification merely is often put. E. g. *Proelia pugnāre*, to

* A rhetorical figure employed in abrupt transitions, as in the example given. The more frequent grammatical omissions of verbs or objects (in all the preceding instances) are called *ellipsis*.

fight battles; *alĕam ludĕre*, to play at dice; *saltāre Turnum* or *Cyclopa*, to dance the Turnus or the Cyclops; *Bacchanālia vivĕre*, to lead a Bacchanalian life; *Olympia vincĕre* or *coronāri*, to conquer, to be crowned at the Olympic games; *judicium vincĕre*, to gain one's case.

C. Many verbs, though commonly neuter, are sometimes employed transitively in a different sense, and then admit an object in the accusative. Such are, —

1. A number of verbs expressive of emotions, as of joy, sorrow, fear, shame. E. g. *dolēre*, *erubescĕre*, *flēre*, *gaudēre*, *gemĕre*, *horrēre*, *lamentāre*, *lacrimāre*, *lugēre*, *moerēre*, *plorāre*, *quĕri*, &c., which, when followed by ALIQUEM or ALIQUID, then signify "to be grieved or to rejoice *at*," "to lament or weep *over*." Thus: *Flēre necem filii*, To weep over the death of a son. *Doleo casum luctumque tuum*, I am pained by your calamity and sorrow.

2. Certain verbs of sensation, such as *olēre*, *redolēre*, *sapĕre*, and *resipĕre*, when they signify "to smell of," "to taste after." E. g. *Olet unguenta*, He smells of ointment. *Piscis ipsum mare sapit*, The fish tastes as salt as the sea itself. *Redolet antiquitatem.* — So also *anhelāre crudelitatem*, to breathe cruelty; *sitīre sanguĭnem*, to thirst after blood; *sonāre quiddam peregrīnum*, to emit a strange sound.

3. A variety of others, of which the following are the most common: — *ambulāre*, to walk, *act.* to walk upon; *dormire*, to sleep, *act.* to spend in sleep; *fastidire*, to be haughty, *act.* to disdain; *festināre* and *properāre*, to make haste, *act.* to hasten or accelerate; *ludĕre*, to play (sport), *act.* to play a game, or to act; *manēre*, to remain, *act.* to wait for; *navigāre*, to sail, *act.* to navigate; *ridēre*, to laugh, *act.* to deride; *vigilāre*, to watch, *act.* to spend in watching; *vivĕre*, to live, *act.* to live = to spend.

4. The poets also say *pallĕre*, *pavēre*, *tremĕre*, *trepidāre* ALIQUID, instead of *timēre* ALIQUID, "to dread anything"; and *ardēre*, *calēre*, *tepēre*, *pertre*, *deperire* ALIQUAM, instead of *amāre* ALIQUAM, "to be in love with one."

REMARK. — Many neuter verbs admit of the accusative of a pronoun or adjective (of the neuter gender), without ever occurring with that of a substantive. E. g. *Hoc laetor*, I am rejoiced at it. *Id tibi succenseo*, I am displeased with you on this account. *Hoc labōro, id operam do*, It is my endeavor or aim. *Hoc non dubito*, I have no doubt about it. *Illud tibi non assentior*, On this point I do not agree with you. *Unum omnes student*, They all are aiming at one thing. On these accusatives, compare Lesson LIX. *D.* Remark 2.

To live, reside (in any place).	*Habĭtāre* or *Domicĭlium habēre* (ALIQUO LOCO).
To inhabit.	Incŏlo, ĕre, ŭi, cultum (ALIQUAM TERRAM, URBEM).
To live on or near (a street, river).	Accŏlĕre (vĭam, flūmen).

Where do you live?	Úbi hábĭtas?
I live in the Via Sacra, number fifty.	Domicílium hábeo in Vĭā Sácrā, número quinquagésimo.
What country did your father live in?	Quám térram páter túus incŏlŭit?
He lived between the Rhine and the Alps.	Incŏluit inter Rhênum Alpêsque.
What street do you live on?	Quám víam áccŏlis?
I live on Frederick Street, number one hundred and twenty-five.	Áccŏlo víam Fredericânam, número centésimo vicésimo quinto.
To live with or at the house of any one.	*Apud aliquem (in dŏmo alicūjus) habitāre.*
To stay (as guest) with any one.	In alicūjus dŏmo (apud alĭquem) deversāri.
Did you ever live in the country?	Habitavistîne únquam rúri?
No, I always lived in the city.	Ímmo véro sémper in úrbe habitávi.
Do you live with your cousin?	Habitásne apud consobrînum (túum)?
I do not live with him, but with my father.	Apud pátrem, nôn apud íllum hábito.
Does your friend still live where I have lived?	Habitátne amîcus túus étiam núnc eôdem lóci, ubi égo habitávi?
He lives no longer where you have lived; he lives now on the great square.	Quo loco tû habitavísti, nôn ámplius hábitat; áccolit véro hôc témpore cámpum mágnum.
The street.	Vĭa, ae, *f.*; vīcus,* i, *m.*
The number.	Nŭmĕrŭs, i, *m.*
How long? Up to what time?	*Quam dĭu? Quō usque?*
Till, until (Prep.).	*Ad, usque ad* (cum Acc.). *In, usque in* "
Until noon, evening, morning.	Usque ad meridiem, vespĕram, māne (tempus matutīnum).
Till to-morrow.	Usque ad diem crastĭnum; in crastĭnum.
Till the day after to-morrow.	Usque ad diem perendĭnum.
Until late at night.	Ad multam noctem.
Till daylight.	Ad lūcem.
Until this day.	Usque ad hunc diem.
Till the next day.	Usque ad diem postĕrum (sequentem).
Until this moment.	Usque ad momentum praesens.
Until now, hitherto.	Adhuc, adhuc usque.
Up to that time.	Ad id tempus; ad id locōrum.

* *Vicus* is a street lined with houses.

Up to a certain time.	Ad tempus quoddam.
To this place, hither, thus far, as far as here.	*Hūcusque, hactĕnus* (Adv.); *ad hunc usque locum.*
To that place, as far as there, so far, thither.	Eo usque, istuc (illuc) usque; ad illum usque locum.
The week.	*Hebdŏmas, ădis, *f.*, *or* hebdŏmăda, ae, *f.*
Sunday.	*Dies sōlis; dies dominĭcus.
Monday.	*Dies lūnae.
Tuesday.	*Dies Martis.
Wednesday.	*Dies Mercūrii.
Thursday.	*Dies Jŏvis.
Friday.	*Dies Venĕris.
Saturday.	*Dies Saturni.
Does your friend still live with you?	Núm amícus túus apud tê étiam núnc (hódie étiam) hábitat?
No, he lives with me no longer.	Nôn véro; apud mê nôn ámplius hábitat.
How long (till when) did he live with you?	Quô úsque apud tê (dómi túae) habitâvit?
He lived with me no longer than a year.	Habitâvit apud mê nôn ámplius ánnum.
How long were you at the ball?	Quám díu interfuísti saltatióni?
(I was there) until midnight.	Ad médiam nóctem. (Cf. Lesson XXXV. *B.*)
How long did you stay with my father?	Quám díu (quô úsque) apud pátrem méum morâtus és?
I stayed with him till eleven at night.	Commorâtus sum apud éum úsque ad undécimam nóctis.
Till, until (conj.).	*Dum, usque dum; dōnec; quoad* (cum Ind. & Subj.)
Until I return.	Dúm (dônec) rédeo *or* rédeam.
Until I bring you the book.	Dúm (quóad) tíbi librum áffero *or* áfferam.
Until my brother returns.	Dúm (dônec) frâter revértitur.
To be willing, to wish — been willing, wished.	Velle — vŏlŭi, ——.
To wish, desire — wished, desired.	Cupĕre — cupīvi, cupītum. / Optāre — āvi, ātum.
To be able, can — been able, could.	Posse — pŏtŭi, ——. / Quīre — īvi, ĭtum.
Has he been willing to go for the physician?	Voluítne arcéssere médicum?
He has not been willing to go for him.	Arcéssere éum nóluit.
Did he wish to go out this morning?	Cupivítne hódie mâne in públicum prodíre?
He did not wish (to go out).	Nôn cupívit.

Have they been willing to do this?	Núm hóc fácere voluérunt?
They have not been willing.	Nôn voluérunt (noluérunt).
Could the book be found?	Potuítne liber invenírí?
It could (be found).	Véro, pótuit.
It could not be found.	Reperíri nôn pótuit.
One, people, they, any one (the French *on*).	*Quis, aliquis; homines.*

D. Obs. General assertions, in which in English we employ the indefinite *one, people, they, some one*, &c., may in Latin be expressed in several ways: —

1. By the Passive Voice, either personally or impersonally; as, *Dicitur esse ventūrus*, or *Dicitur eum esse ventūrum*, They say that he will come, It is said that he will come.

2. By the third person plural of the active voice; as, *Dicunt eum esse mortuum*, They (people) say that he is dead.

3. By the first person plural; as, *Si cogitamus*, If we reflect (if one reflects).

4. By the second person singular; as, *Pulchrum est dicere, quod scias*, It is handsome to say what *one* knows (what you know).

5. By *quis* or *aliquis*; as, *Si quis dicat*, If any one should say.

6. By the impersonal *licet*; as, *Licet videre*, One can see (we may see).

7. By the neuter of the participle in *dus*; as, *In villam revertendum est*, It is necessary to return to the villa.

Have they brought my shoes?	Calceíne méi apportáti sunt?
They have not yet brought them.	Nôndum apportáti sunt.
What have they said?	Quid dixérunt?
They have said nothing.	Níhil dixérunt.
What have they done?	Quid fáctum est?
They have done nothing.	Níhil fáctum est.
What news do they bring? (What is there new?)	Quid nóvi affértur? / Quīd tándem nóvi?
They say nothing new. (There is nothing new.)	Níhil nóvi affertur. / Níhil nóvi est.
Is there anything new?	Núm quídnam nóvi?
Have you anything new?	Habêsne áliquid nóvi?
I have something new.	Hábeo véro quíddam nóvi.
I have nothing new to write you.	Nóvi, quód ad tê scríbĕrem, níhil érat.
New.	*Nŏvus, a, um; rĕcens, tis.*
My new garment.	Véstis méa rĕcens *or* nóva.*
His new clothes.	Vestīmenta sŭa (ejus) recentía (nŏva).

* *Recens*, not yet worn out, and *nova*, just made, or after the latest fashion.

My new friend.	Amīcus mĕus nŏvus.
The new soldiers.	Milĭtes nŏvi.
The new law.	Lex rĕcens ac nŏva.
The brush.	Pēnĭcillus *or* pēnĭcŭlus, i, *m.*
To brush.	*Penĭcillo extergēre* or *detergēre* (*-tersi, -tersum*).
Have you brushed my new coat?	Extersistīne (penicíllo) tógam méam nóvam?
No, I have not yet brushed it.	Nôn; égo éam nôndum extérsi.
Will you not brush your hat?	Nónne píleum túum penículo detérgĕre vis?
I have no time to brush it.	Déest mihi tempus ad éum detergéndum.

Exercise 112.

Where do you live? — I live in the large street (*in platéā*). — Where does your father live? — He lives at his friend's house. — Where do your brothers live? — They live in the large street, number one hundred and twenty. — Dost thou live at thy cousin's? — I do live at his house. — Do you still live where you did live? — I live there still. — Does your friend still live where he did live? — He no longer lives where he did live. — Where does he live at present? — He lives in William Street (*in viā Wilhelmiānā*), number one hundred and fifteen. — Where is your brother? — He is in the garden. — Where is your cousin gone to? — He is gone into the garden. — Did you go to the play yesterday? — I did go thither. — Have you seen my friend? — I have seen him. — When did you see him? — I saw him this morning. — Where has he gone to? — I do not know. — Has the servant brushed my clothes? — He has brushed them. — Has he swept my room? — He has swept it. — How long did he remain here? — Till noon. — How long have you been writing? — I have been writing until midnight. — How long did I work? — You worked until four o'clock in the morning. — How long did my brother remain with you? — He remained with me until evening. — How long hast thou been working? — I have been working till now. — Hast thou still long to write? — I have to write till the day after to-morrow. — Has the physician still long to work? — He has to work till to-morrow. — Must I remain long here? — You must remain here till Sunday. — Must my brother remain long with you? — He must remain with us till Monday? — How long must I work? — You must work till the day after to-morrow. — Have you still long to speak? — I have still an hour to speak. — Did you speak long? — I spoke till the next day. — Have you remained long in my room? — I have remained in it till this moment. — Have you still long to live in this house? — I have still long to live in it. — How long have you still to live in it? — Till Sunday. — How many triumphs did Dentatus celebrate? — He celebrated nine. — What sort of a life does your father live (*vivĕre*)? — He lives a retired (*otiōsus*) and a tranquil (*tranquillus*) one. — Who was wont to dance the Turnus? — The Romans were wont to dance it.

EXERCISE 113.

Does your friend still live with you? — He lives with me no longer. — How long has he lived with you? — He has lived with me only a year. — How long did you remain at the ball? — I remained there till midnight. — How long have you remained in the carriage? — I have remained an hour in it. — Have you remained in the garden till now? — I have remained there till now. — Has the captain come as far as here? — He has come as far as here. — How far has the merchant come? — He has come as far as the end of the road. — Has the Turk come as far as the end of the forest? — He has come as far as there. — What do you do in the morning? — I read. — And what do you do then? — I breakfast and work. — Do you breakfast before you read? — No, Sir, I read before I breakfast. — Dost thou play instead of working? — I work instead of playing. — Does thy brother go to the play instead of going into the garden? — He does not go to the play. — What do you do in the evening? — I work. — What hast thou done this evening? — I have brushed your clothes, and have gone to the theatre. — Didst thou remain long at the theatre? — I remained there but a few minutes. — Are you willing to wait here? — How long must I wait? — You must wait till my father returns. — Has anybody come? — Somebody has come. — What have they wanted? — They have wanted to speak to you. — Have they not been willing to wait? — They have not been willing to wait. — What do you say to that man? — I tell him to wait. — Have you waited for me long? — I have waited for you an hour. — Have you been able to read my letter? — I have been able to read it. — Have you understood it? — I have understood it. — Have you shown it to any one? — I have shown it to no one. — Have they brought my clothes? — They have not brought them yet. — Have they swept my room and brushed my clothes? — They have not done it yet.

Lesson LIX. — PENSUM UNDESEXAGESIMUM.

ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS. — *Continued.*

A. Many neuter verbs, especially those denoting motion, become transitive by composition with one of the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *praeter*, *sub*, *subter*, *super*, *supra*, or *trans*, and take an object in the accusative.

Such are *īre*, *meāre*, *cedĕre*, *gradi*, *vadĕre*, *currĕre*, *ambulāre*, *volāre*, *fluĕre*, *labi*, *scandĕre*, *salire*, *vagāri*, *venīre*, &c. So also *loqui*,

latrāre, *vigilāre*, and a few denoting rest or situation; as, *jacēre*, *stāre*, *sedēre*, &c. The following may serve as specimens: —

ACTIVE.		NEUTER.	
adire,	*to approach*,	*from* īre,	*to go.*
alloqui,	*to address*,	" loqui,	*to speak.*
antegredi,	*to precede*,	" gradi,	*to walk.*
circumsedēre,	*to surround*,	" sedēre,	*to sit.*
increpāre,	*to chide*,	" crepāre,	*to clatter.*
irrīdēre,	*to deride*,	" rīdēre,	*to laugh.*
interjacēre,	*to be situate between*,	" jacēre,	*to lie.*
obīre,	*to undergo*,	" īre,	*to go.*
obsidēre,	*to besiege*,	" sedēre,	*to sit.*
percurrĕre,	*to run (pass) through*,	" currĕre,	*to run.*
praefluĕre,	*to flow before*,	" fluĕre,	*to flow.*
praetervolāre,	*to hurry by*,	" volāre,	*to fly.*
subīre,	*to undergo*,	" īre,	*to go.*
subterlabi,	*to glide under*,	" labi,	*to glide.*
supereminēre,	*to overtop*,	" eminēre,	*to project.*
suprascandĕre,	*to climb over*,	" scandĕre,	*to climb.*
transcendĕre,	*to cross*,	" "	"
transvolāre,	*to fly (pass) over*,	" volāre,	*to fly.*

EXAMPLES.

Tē núnc *álloquor*, Africâne.	I address *you* now, Africanus.
Cáto *allatrâre* Scipiônis *magnitúdinem* sólitus érat.	Cato had been in the habit of detracting from Scipio's greatness.
Saguntum Carthaginiénses *circúmsedent.*	The Carthaginians are besieging Saguntum.
Ámnis *mare influxit.*	The river emptied into the sea.
Euphrátes *Babylóniam médiam pérmeat.*	The Euphrates flows through the heart of Babylonia.
Pópulus sólet nonnúmquam *dignos praeterire.*	The people sometimes slight the meritorious.
Qui vénit hic flúctus, *fluctus* (Acc. pl.) *superéminet ómnes.*	The wave, which now approaches, overtops all others.
Núm túum nômen vel *Caúcasum transcéndere* pótuit, vel Gangem *transnatâre?*	Has your name passed beyond the Caucasus, or swum beyond the Ganges?

REMARKS.

1. Of the verbs above enumerated, those compounded with *circum*, *per*, *praeter*, *trans*, and *super* alone are regularly transitive, and occur also in the passive. The rest are only so when used in a secondary or figurative sense. E. g. *Circumsedēmur*, We are besieged. *Tamĕsis* transīri *potest*, The Thames can be passed. *Fossa transilītur*, The ditch is leaped over. *Societas inītur*, A society is formed. *Mors pro patriā obītur*, Death is suffered for the fatherland.

2. Those compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *prae*, *sub*, *super*, and *supra* may stand as transitive verbs, but they remain more com-

monly neuter, and are followed either by the dative (according to page 157, *G.*) or by the accusative, with the *preposition repeated.** E. g. *In spem libertatis ingredior*, I indulge the hope of liberty. *Ad me adire quosdam memini*, I remember certain persons coming to me. *Aqua subit in coelum*, The water rises into the atmosphere.

3. To the neuter verbs, which sometimes become transitive, must be added those compounded with the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *cum*, *e*, and *ex*. E. g. *Colloquium abnuĕre*, to decline an interview; *societatem cōire*, to enter into association with; *edormīre crapŭlam*, to sleep off the effects of drinking; *egredi veritātem*, to go beyond the limits of the truth; *convenīre aliquem*, to meet any one (speak with one); *altitudĭnem excedĕre*, to exceed a certain height, &c.

4. *Transitive* verbs, compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *circum*, *praeter*, and *trans*, are sometimes followed by *two* accusatives, of which one depends upon the verb and the other on the preposition. E. g. *Corcyram pedĭtum mille secum advexērunt*, They brought along with them a thousand infantry to Corcyra. *Allobroges omnia sua praesidia circumduxit*, He led all his forces around the Allobroges. *Argesilaus Hellespontum copias trajēcit*, Agesilaus sent his troops across the Hellespont.

B. The impersonal verbs *poenĭtet*, *pĭget*, *pŭdet*, *taedet*, *mĭsĕret*, and *verĭtum est* are followed by the accusative of the person affected by the emotions denoted by them. E. g.

Poénĭtet mê (tê, éum).	I am (you are, he is) sorry.†
Píget mê (tê, éum).	I am (you are, he is) chagrined.
Púdet nôs (vôs, éos).	We (ye, they) are ashamed.
Taêdet nôs (vôs, éos).	We (you, they) are disgusted.
Míseret mê (tê, éum).	I (you) pity, he pities.
Vérĭtum est mê.	I have been afraid.

Remark. — The object of the emotion denoted by these verbs stands in the genitive. E. g. *Sapientiam nunquam* sui *poenitet.* — *Me* tui *pudet.* — *Te* aliōrum *miseret.* (See Lesson LXVII. *C.*)

C. The impersonal verbs *jŭvat*, *delectat*, *fallit*, *fŭgit*, *praeterit*, *dĕcet*, *lătet*, and *oportet* are likewise followed by the accusative of the person. E. g.

Júvat *or* deléctat mê, tê, nôs.	It delights me, you, us (I am delighted, &c.).

* The preposition, however, is also frequently a different one; as, *in aedes accedĕre*, *ad urbem subīre*, *ad aures praecedĕre*. Hence many of these verbs are susceptible of several different constructions; as, *subīre jugum*, to submit to the yoke; *subīre montem* or *ad montem*, to come up (to) the mountain; *subīre in coelum*, to rise up into the atmosphere; *subīre muro* or *murum*, to come up close to the wall.

† This may literally be rendered by *It moves me to regret, chagrin, shame, disgust, pity, fear.*

Fállit, fúgit, praéterit mê.	It escapes my memory or notice, I do not know.
Mê nôn fúgit, praéterit.	I know very well.
Néminem véstrum praéterit.	Every one of you is aware.
Tê hilári ánimo esse, válde *mê júvat.*	I am delighted that you are in good spirits.
Nôs, nísi *mê fállit*, jacébimus.	Unless I am mistaken, we shall fail.
Nôn *mê fúgit*, vétera exémpla pro fíctis fábulis jam habéri.	I know very well, that the examples of antiquity are now regarded as fictions.
Nôn *mê praéterit*, usum ésse óptimum dicéndi magístrum.	I am aware, that practice is the best teacher of oratory.
Quós nôn *véritum est* in voluptâte súmmum bónum pónĕre.	Who were not afraid to assert pleasure to be the highest good

Remarks.

1. The impersonal verbs of this class differ from those of *B* by sometimes admitting a subject nominative, although never a personal one. E. g. Candida pax *homines*, trux *decet* ira *feras*, Gentle peace becomes men, ruthless ferocity wild beasts.

2. *Decet*, "it becomes," with its compounds, *condecet*, *dedecet*, *indecet*, and *oportet*, never occur with the accusative alone, but always with an infinitive or with the Acc. cum Inf., and *oportet* sometimes with the subjunctive. E. g. *Decet verecundum esse adolescentem*, It is proper for a young man to be respectful. *Oratorem simulāre non dedecet*, It is not improper for an orator to dissemble. *Eum oportet amnem quaerere sibi*, He must seek a river. *Me ipsum* ames oportet, *non mea*, You must love me, and not my possessions. *Suis te* oportet *illecebris ipsa virtus* trahat *ad verum decus*, Virtue herself must attract you with her own charms to real honor.

3. *Decet* and *latet* are sometimes construed with the dative, but only by the older writers. Thus, *Ita nobis decet*, Thus it becomes us. *Latet mihi*, I am ignorant of the fact.

D. After verbs, participles, and adjectives, the accusative is sometimes put instead of the ablative, to mark the relation expressed by the English *in*, *as to*, *with respect to*. E. g.

Équus mícat aúribus et *trémit ártus.*	The horse moves its ears and trembles in its limbs.
Pontíficem *praéire* jússit *verba*.	He ordered the pontifex to say the words before him.*
Ingénium plácidā *mollímur* ab árte.	Our mind is rendered pliable and soft by placid art.†
Vírgo *infícitur téneras* rubôre *génas.*	The maiden's tender cheeks are suffused with blushes.‡

* Lit. *to go before* (or *first*) *as to the words* to be pronounced.
† Lit. *We are rendered pliable as to our minds.*
‡ Lit. *The maiden is suffused as to her cheeks.*

Advérsum fémur trágulā gráviter *ictus* cécidit.	He fell, heavily wounded in the front of his thigh by a javelin.
Tácitā cúrā *ánimum incénsus.*	His mind inflamed with silent anxiety.
Núdae bráchia ac lacértos.	Bare as to their arms and shoulders.

Remarks.

1. This construction is of Greek origin, and occurs chiefly in poetry. It is called *synecdoche.*

2. Among the accusatives thus representing other cases, and rendered by *in, for, of, as to, with respect to,* are included, —

a.) The following, which frequently occur in prose even: *magnam partem,* in a great measure, mostly; *maximam partem,* for the most part; *partim* (= *partem*), in part, partly; *vicem* (= *vice*), instead of; *id genus* (for *ejus generis*), of that kind; *omne genus* (for *omnis generis*), of every kind; *summum,* at the utmost; *minimum,* at least; *cetera,* in other respects; *reliqua,* as for the rest.

b.) The neuter accusatives *hoc, id, illud, quid, quod, aliquid, nihil,* and *nonnihil,* in expressions like *hoc, id, illud aetatis* (= *hujus, ejus, illius aetatis*), of this, that age; *id temporis* or *id locorum* (for *eo tempore*), at that time; *id auctoritātis* (for *eā auctoritate*), of that authority. So, *Valde* id (= in eo) *laborandum est,* We must seriously aim at this. *Nihil ego te accusavi,* I have accused you in no respect. *Quod* (= *cujus*) *nos poenitēret,* Of which it might repent us. *A me consilium petis,* quid (= cujus) *tibi auctor sim,* You ask my advice as to what plan I would recommend to you. *Thebani* nihil *moti sunt, quanquam* nonnihil *succensebant Romanis,* The Thebans were moved *in no respect,* although they were *somewhat* displeased with the Romans.

To steal (pilfer, abstract from).	*Fūror, āri, ātus sum* (Dep.). *Clĕpo, ĕre, clepsi, cleptum.* *Surrīpio, ĕre, ripŭi, eptum.* (ALICUI ALIQUID or ALIQUID AB ALIQUO).
To commit a theft.	Furtum facĕre (alicujus rei; alicui = *on any one*).

E. Obs. Furāri is to steal deliberately and maliciously; *clepĕre,* to take away clandestinely and meanly, to filch; *surripĕre,* to take away secretly, or to abstract.

Has any one committed a theft on any one?	Númquis fúrtum fēcit álicui?
No one has stolen anything from any one.	Némo cuíquam fúrtum fēcit áliquod.
What have they stolen from us?	Quíd a nóbis furáti súnt?
They have stolen our hay.	Furáti súnt a nóbis foēnum.
Has any one stolen your hat?	Écquid tíbi píleum clépsit áliquis?
Some one has stolen it.	Clépsit éum véro áliquis.
What have they stolen from you?	Quíd ést tíbi surréptum?
They have stolen nothing from me.	Surréptum ést mihi níhil.

All.	*Omnis, e; cunctus, a, um; universus, a, um.*

F. Obs. Omnis signifies "all," "the whole of," and sometimes "every." *Cunctus* generally appears only in connection with a collective noun, or in the plural, in the sense "all together," or as many as there are of a certain class or number. *Universus* (= *unus* and *versus*) is "all collectively," "the whole," "entire."

All his money.	Ómnis éjus (súa) pecúnia.
All this wine.	Ómne hócce vínum.
All these children.	Ómnes hi líberi.
All these good children.	Ómnes hi líberi bóni.
The entire people.	Cúnctus pópulus.
All the citizens (as a body).	Cúncti cíves.
The whole of the (the entire) family.	Família univérsa.
For three entire days.	Tríduum univérsum.
All as a mass, without exception.	Ómnes univérsi.
All men.	Ómnes hómines; univérsi (hóminnes).
Everything which; all that.	Ómne quód (quodcúnque); ómnia quae (quaecúnque).
All the good wine.	Ómne vínum bónum.
All the good water.	Ómnis áqua bóna.
All the good children.	Líberi bóni ómnes (cúncti, univérsi).
To dye, color.	*Tingo, ĕre, nxi, nctum.* / *Colōre inficĕre (fēci, fectum).*
To color, paint.	Cōlōro, āre, āvi, ātum.
To get anything dyed.	Aliquid colōre alĭquo inficiendum curāre. / Aliquid colōre aliquo tingi jubēre.
Black — white.	Āter, atra, atrum — albus, a, um. / Níger, ra, rum — candĭdus, a, um.
Green — red.	Virĭdis, e — rūber, rubra, rubrum.
Yellow — gray.	Flāvus, a, um — cānus, a, um.
Brown — blue.	Fuscus, a, um — caerŭlĕus, a, um.
To dye anything black, white, green, &c.	Aliquid colōre atro, albo, virĭdi, &c. inficĕre.
What color do you wish to dye your coat?	Quŏ colōre tógam túam inficere vis?
I wish to dye it black.	Cúpio éum inficere colōre átro.
Do you dye your cloth green?	Tingísne pánnum túum colōre víridi?
No; I am dying it red.	Nôn véro; tíngo éum colōre rúbro.
Did he get his hat dyed blue?	Curavítne píleum súum caerúleo colōre inficiendum?
No; he has got it dyed white.	Ímmo véro éum colōre álbo tíngi jússit.

The color.	Cŏlor, ōris, *m.*
The dyer.	Tinctor, ōris, *m.*
The word.	Verbum, i, *n.*; vocabŭlum, i, *n.*
The speech.	Sermo, ōnis, *m.*
How is this word written?	Quómodo scríbitur hócce vocábulum?
It is written thus.	Scríbitur hôc pácto.
How is his name written?	Quómodo scríbitur nomen éjus?
It is written with a *z*.	Scríbitur lítterā *z*.
Germany.	Germānĭa; Alemannĭa, ae, *f.*
Holland.	Terra (ae, *f.*) Batāvōrum. *Hollandĭa, ae, *f.*
England.	*Anglĭa, ae, *f.*; Britannia, ae, *f.*
Spain.	Hispānĭa, ae, *f.*
Italy.	Itălĭa, ae, *f.*
France.	*Francogallĭa, ae, *f.*
America.	*Amĕrĭca, ae, *f.*
The Old World.	*Orbis antĭquus.
The New World.	*Orbis nŏvus.
The world.	Mundus, i, *m.*
The country, land.	Terra, ae, *f.*
The globe.	Orbis, is, *m.*; orbis terrārum.
The United States of America.	Civitātes Amerĭcae foederātae.
Switzerland.	Helvetĭa, ae, *f.*
Prussia.	*Borussĭa, ae, *f.*
Turkey.	*Turcĭa, ae, *f.*
Russia.	*Russĭa, ae, *f.*; Ruthēnia, ae, *f.*
London.	Londīnum, i, *n.*
Paris.	Lutētĭa, ae, *f.* (Parisii).
New York.	*Nŏvum Eborācum, i, *n.*
Rome.	Rōma, ae, *f.*
As far as my brother's.	Úsque in dómum méi frâtris.
As far as England, Switzerland, America.	Úsque in Ángliam, Helvétiam, Américam.
As far as London, Paris, New York.	Úsque* Londînum, Lutétiam, Eboracum Novum.
As far as the vicinity of Rome.	Úsque ad Rômam.
To travel; to make (undertake) a journey.	*Ĭter făcĕre — fēci, factum.* *Peregrinatiōnes suscipĕre — suscēpi, susceptum.*
To be on a journey, to be abroad.	Peregrinor, āri, ātus sum. Peregrinātum abesse — abfŭi.
To set out; to travel towards a place.	Proficiscor, i, fectus sum. Tendo, ĕre, tĕtendi, tensum. Contendĕre (ALIQUO).

* The *ad* of *usque ad* is commonly omitted before the names of towns, unless it is intended to express mere approximation.

When do you intend to start for England?	Quô témpore in Ángliam proficísci cógitas?
I intend to start next summer.	Aestâte próximâ proficísci cógito.
In what country is he abroad?	Quâ in térrâ peregrinâtur?
He is travelling in Holland.	Peregrinâtur in térrâ Batavôrum.
How far did he travel?	Quô úsque fêcit íter?
He has travelled across the Atlantic as far as America.	Íter per máre Atlánticum fêcit úsque in Américam.
Whither are you bound?	Quô téndis?
I am travelling to my brother, to Italy, to London.	Téndo ad frâtrem, in Itáliam, Londînum.

Exercise 114.

Have they stolen anything from you (has anything been stolen from you)? — They have stolen all the good wine from me. — Have they stolen anything from your father? — They have stolen all his good books from him. — Dost thou steal anything? — I steal nothing. — Hast thou ever stolen anything? — I have never stolen anything. — Have they stolen your apples from you? — They have stolen them from me. — What have they stolen from me? — They have stolen from you all the good books. — When did they steal the carriage from you? — They stole it from me the day before yesterday. — Have they ever stolen anything from us? — They have never stolen anything from us. — Has the carpenter drunk all the wine? — He has drunk it. — Has your little boy torn all his books? — He has torn them all. — Why has he torn them? — Because he does not wish to study. — How much have you lost (at play)? — I have lost all my money — Do you know where my father is? — I do not know. — Have you not seen my book? — I have not seen it. — Do you know how this word is written? — It is written thus. — Do you dye anything? — I dye my hat. — What color do you dye it? — I dye it black. — What color do you dye your clothes? — We dye them yellow. — Are you sorry? — I am not sorry. — Is he chagrined? — He is very much (*valde*) chagrined. — Are they not ashamed? — They are ashamed and disgusted. — Are you delighted that your brother has come? — I am very much delighted. — Do you know that your book has been stolen? — It has not escaped my notice that it has been stolen. — Are you addressing me? — I am not addressing you, but the stranger (who is) standing by your side.

Exercise 115.

Do you get your trunk dyed? — I get it dyed. — What color do you get it dyed? — I get it dyed green. — What color dost thou get thy thread stockings dyed? — I get them dyed white. — Does your cousin get his handkerchief dyed? — He does get it dyed. — Does he get it dyed red? — He gets it dyed gray. — What color have your friends got their coats dyed? — They have got them dyed green. — What color have the Italians had their carriages dyed? — They have had them dyed blue. — What hat has the nobleman? — He has two hats, a white one and a black one. — Have I a hat? — You have sev-

eral. — Has your dyer already dyed your cravat? — He has dyed it. — What color has he dyed it? — He has dyed it yellow. — Do you travel sometimes? — I travel often. — Where do you intend to go to this summer? — I intend to go to Germany — Do you not go to Italy? — I do go thither. — Hast thou sometimes travelled? — I have never travelled. — Have your friends the intention to go to Holland? — They have the intention to go thither. — When do they intend to depart? — They intend to depart the day after to-morrow. — Has your brother already gone to Spain? — He has not yet gone thither. — Have you travelled in Spain? — I have travelled there. — When do you depart? — I depart to-morrow. — At what o'clock? — At five o'clock in the morning. — Have you worn out all your boots? — I have worn them all out. — What have the Turks done? — They have burnt all our good ships. — Have you finished all your letters? — I have finished them all. — How far have you travelled? — I have travelled as far as Germany. — Has he travelled as far as Italy? — He has travelled as far as America. — How far have the Spaniards gone? — They have gone as far as London. — How far has this poor man come? — He has come as far as here. — Has he come as far as your house? — He has come as far as my father's.

Lesson LX. — PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM.

VERBS FOLLOWED BY TWO ACCUSATIVES.

A. The verb *docēre*, "to teach," with its compounds *edocēre* and *dēdocēre*, and *celāre*, "to conceal," admit of two accusatives, one designating the person and the other the thing taught or concealed. E. g.

Quis *músicam* dócuit *Epaminondam?*	Who taught Epaminondas music?
Catilina *juventútem*, quam illéxerat *mala facínŏra* edocēbat.	Catiline was instructing the young men, whom he seduced, in pernicious crimes.
Demócritus *Polyaênum geométriam* vóluit dedocêre.	Democritus wanted to make Polyænus unlearn geometry.
Nôn *tê* celávi *sermônem* Áppii.	I have not concealed from you the language of Appius.
Antígonus *íter ómnes* célat.	Antigonus concealed his route from every one.

REMARKS.

1. These verbs occur frequently with one accusative only, and *docēre* sometimes without any case, like the English "to teach," "to

instruct." Thus: *docēre edocēre, celāre aliquem, aliquid* or *aliquem aliquid; — dedocēre aliquem*, or *aliquem aliquid.*

2. When *docēre* and *edocēre* signify "to inform," the thing is expressed by the ablative with *de*. E. g. *De itinere hostium senātum edocet*, He informed the senate of the enemy's route. *Sulla de his rebus docētur*, Sulla is informed of these things. So also *celāre aliquem de re.*

3. An infinitive may take the place of the accusative of the thing. E. g. *Dionysius* tondēre *filias suas docuit*, Dionysius taught his daughters to shave.

4. When the construction becomes passive, the accusative of the person is changed into the nominative, and that of the thing either remains or is changed into the ablative, with or without *de*. E. g. *Omnes militiae artes edoctus*, Schooled in all the arts of war. *Et Graecis doctus litteris et Latīnis*, Learned both in Greek and Latin literature. *Per legatos cuncta edoctus*, Informed of everything by his agents. *Hoc, id, illud celābar*, I was kept ignorant of that. *Non est profecto de illo veneno celāta mater*, The mother was surely not kept ignorant of that poison.

5. Other verbs signifying "to instruct" (such as *erudio, instruo, instituo*, and *informo*) do not admit an accusative of the thing, but have either the ablative or *in*. E. g. *His in rebus jam te usus ipse erudīvit*, In these things experience itself has already taught you. *Iphicrates exercītum* omni disciplinā militāri *erudīvit*, Iphicrates instructed the army in every military discipline.

B. Verbs signifying to inquire, to ask, or demand, likewise admit of two accusatives: one of the person, and the other of the thing.

Such verbs are *rogo, oro, exoro; posco, reposco, flagĭto; interrogo, exquīro, consŭlo, percontor*, &c. E. g.

Méo jûre *tê hóc benefícium* rógo.	I ask you for this favor, as one to which I am entitled.
Núnquam *déos divítias* rogávi.	I have never asked the gods for riches.
Oratiónes mê dúas póstŭlas.	You are demanding two orations of me.
Pâcem tê ómnes póscimus.	We all ask (sue) you for peace.
Caêsar *Aéduos fruméntum* quotídie flagĭtâbat.	Cæsar was dunning the Æbui every day for supplies of corn.
Íbo et cónsŭlam *hanc rem amícos.*	I will go and consult my friends about this thing.
Súnt, *quae tê* vólŭmus percontári.	There are matters, about which we wish to question (examine) you.

REMARKS.

1. Verbs of asking or demanding sometimes have also *aliquid ab aliquo*, and those of asking or inquiring *aliquem de aliquā re*. E. g.

Quid *acta tua vita*, quid *studia*, quid *artes* a te *flagĭtent*, *tu vidēbis*, See yourself, what your past life, your studies and science demand of you. *Visne*, *ut* te eisdem de rebus *Latīne interrogem*? Do you wish me to ask you about the same things in Latin? So also *te oro*, *te rogo*, *ut*, &c.

2. After *peto*, I ask (beseech), and *quaero*, I ask or inquire, the double accusative never occurs, but the construction of those verbs is *petĕre aliquid ab aliquo*, or *petĕre ab aliquo*, *ut* or *ne*, and *quaerĕre aliquid ab* (*de*, *ex*) *aliquo*. E. g. *Quod ne facias peto a te*, Which I beseech you not to do. *Eadem secreto* ab aliis *quaerit*, He makes the same inquiry secretly of others.

C. Verbs signifying to name or call, to esteem, consider, learn or find, to make, render, constitute, choose, and the like, are followed by two accusatives, of which one constitutes the object and the other a part of the predicate.

Such are *dico*, *voco*, *appello*, *nomĭno*, *nuncupo*, I call, name, nominate; — *duco*, *habeo*, *judĭco*, *existĭmo*, *puto*, *arbĭtror*, I hold, esteem, consider, think; — *intellĭgo*, *agnosco*, *reperio*, *invenio*, I perceive, learn, find; — *facio*, *reddo*, *creo*, *dēlĭgo*, *designo*, *declaro*, I make, render, create, choose, designate, declare; — *me praebeo*, *me exhĭbeo*, *me praesto*, I show or prove myself, and others of similar import. E. g.

Īram béne Énnius *initĭum* insániae *dixit*.	Ennius has correctly called anger the beginning of madness.
Quâs stéllas Graéci *cométas*, nóstri *crinítas vócant*.	The stars which the Greeks call comets, are called long-hairs among us.
Octávium súi *Caésarem* salutábant.	His adherents hailed Octavius as emperor.
Epaminóndas philosóphiae *praeceptôrem* hábuit *Lysim*.	Epaminondas had Lysis as an instructor in philosophy.
Fúlmen sinístrum auspícium óptimum habêmus.	We consider thunder from the left as the most auspicious omen.
Sócrates totius múndi *sê íncolam* et *cîvem* arbitrabâtur.	Socrates considered himself an inhabitant and citizen of the entire world.
L. Muraênam cónsulem renuntiávi.	I announced Lucius Muraena as consul.
Ancum Márcium rêgem pópulus creâvit.	The people created Ancus Marcius king.
Cicerónem univérsa cívitas *cónsulem* declarâvit.	The entire state declared Cicero consul.
Caêsar *Cavárium rêgem* constitúerat.	Caesar had appointed Cavarius king.
Pompéius *sê auctôrem* méae salûtis exhíbuit.	Pompey has shown himself the author of my safety.

Remarks.

1. In the passive construction of these verbs, the accusatives are both converted into nominatives, of which one stands as the subject, and the other as part of the predicate. E. g. Ira *bene ab Ennio* initium *insaniae dictum est.* — Octavius *a suis* Caesar *salutabātur.* — Ancus Marcius rex *a populo creatus est*, &c. (Cf. Lesson XXXIV. *C.*)

2. An adjective or participle may supply the place of the second accusative. E. g. *Bene de me merĭtis* grātum me *praebeo*, I show myself grateful to those who have done me favors. *Scythārum gens* antiquissima *semper habĭta est*, The Scythian nation has always been considered the most ancient. So also the common expression *aliquem certiōrem facĕre*, to inform any one (of anything, *alicujus rei* or *de aliquā re*), in the passive *certior factus sum*, I am informed; and *reddĕre aliquem irātum, placĭdum, meliōrem*, to make any one angry, calm, better, &c.

3. Instead of a second accusative, the verbs *habēre* and *putāre*, "to consider," frequently have *pro* with an ablative, or *loco*, *numĕro* or *in numero* with the genitive. E. g. *Aliquem* pro amīco, pro hoste *habēre*, To regard any one as a friend, as an enemy. *Aliquid* pro certo, pro nihĭlo *putāre* or *habēre*, To consider anything as certain, as of no account. *Aliquem* in numero *deorum habēre*, To consider one a divinity. *Aliquid beneficii* loco *numerāre*, To regard anything as a kindness. So also *ad*, "as": *Trecentos armātos* ad *custodiam corpŏris habuit*, He had a body-guard of three hundred men.

4. The accusatives are sometimes connected by *esse*. E. g. *Patriae sanctiora jūra quam hospĭtii* esse *duxit*, He considered the rights of his country more sacred than those of hospitality.

D. THE ACCUSATIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

I. In exclamations the accusative is put after the interjections *o, heu, eheu, ecce, en, hem, pro, bĕne*, and frequently also without them. E. g.

Heu (*eheu*) *mê míserum!* or *Mê míserum!*	Alas! Wo is me!
O hóminem fortunātum!	O fortunate man!
Pópŭlum véro *praeclārum!*	O people truly great and noble!
Écce mê! En míserum hóminem!	Here I am! Behold an unhappy man!
Pro deōrum atque hóminum *fĭdem!*	For heaven and mercy's sake!
Hem Dâvum tĭbi!	There's Davus now for you!
Et *béne nôs! béne tê!*	And our health! your health!*

Remarks.

1. All these interjections may likewise be followed by the vocative.

* An expression used in drinking. Ovid. Fast. 2. 637.

Vae and *hei* are commonly put with the dative. E. g. *Vae mihi miſero!* Ah! wretched me! *Hei mihi!* Wo is me!

2. *En* and *ecce* are more frequently put with the nominative. E. g. *Ecce homo!* Behold the man! *Ecce tuae litterae!* Here is your letter! *En ego!* Here I am! But in comedy usually *ecce me, eccum* (= *ecce eum*), *eccos, eccillum, eccillam, eccistam.* (Cf. page 37, Rem. 2.)

II. The prepositions *ad, apud, ante, adversus* and *adversum, cis* and *citra, circa* and *circum, circĭter, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, supra, trans, versus*, and *ultra*, are invariably followed by the accusative; *in* and *sub* only in answer to the question *Whither?*

REMARKS.

1. These prepositions generally precede words governed by them, except *versus*, which is commonly put after. E. g. *Brundusium versus*, Towards Brundusium. *Ad oceanum versus*, Towards the ocean.

2. *Super* and *subter* commonly take likewise the accusative, but sometimes also the ablative. (Cf. Lesson LXXII. *D.* Rem.) *Clam*, "without the knowledge of," has commonly the ablative, but sometimes also the accusative or genitive. E. g. *Clam vobis. Clam patrem atque omnes. Clam patris.*

Up, above; in the upper part, on the top (Rest).	*Supra; sŭper* (adv.). / *In summo,* in superiōri parte.*
Up, upwards (Motion).	*Sursum* (adv.); *ad summum.*
Below, down, in the lower part (Rest).	*Infra, subter* (adv.). / *In īmo, in inferiōri parte.*
Down, downwards (Motion).	*Deorsum* (adv.); *ad īmum.*
From above down.	*Dēsŭper, superne* (adv.). / *De superiōri lŏco.*
From top to bottom.	A summo ad īmum.
From the foot (bottom) to the top.	Ab īmo ad summum.
On the top of the hill.	In súmmo cólle. / In superióri párte cóllis.
In the lower part (basement) of the house.	In ímā dōmo. / In inferióri párte dómūs.
At the foot of the mountaín.	Sub radícibus móntis.
To the top of the hill.	Ad summum collem. / In superiôrem partem collis.
Into the lower part of the house.	Ad ímam dómum. / In inferiôrem pártem dómūs.
To be up, below.	Supra (in súmmo) ésse. / Infra (in ímo) ésse.

* Generally *summo, a, o*, in agreement with the noun; as, *in summo monte, in summā arbŏre.* So also *imus, a, um.* (Cf. page 176.)

To go upwards, downward.	Súrsum, deórsum íre.
To come from above.	Désŭper, supérne venīre.
To go up, to ascend.	*Ascendo,* ĕre, di, sum.* *Escendo, ĕre, di, sum.* (MONTEM, IN, AD LOCUM).
To come down, to descend.	*Descendĕre (ab, de, ex loco — in, ad locum).*
To ascend (go up) a mountain.	Ascéndĕre móntem.
To mount a horse, to embark in a ship.	Ascéndĕre in équum, in nâvim.
To ascend (rise) to dignity, to honors.	Ascéndere gradum dignitâtis, ad honóres.
To get into a carriage, upon the mast.	Escéndĕre vehículum, in mâlum.
To descend from a more elevated region into the plains.	Ex superióribus lócis in planítiem descéndere.
To ascend, descend a river.	Advérso flúmine, secundo flúmine vehi.
Where is your father going to?	Quô téndit páter túus?
He is ascending the mountain.	Ascéndit (in) móntem.
Has the boy ascended the tree?	Escendítne púer (in) árborem?
He has ascended it.	Escéndit véro.
Does he not wish to come down?	Nónne descéndere cúpit? Nónne deórsum venīre vult?
Yes, he does wish it.	Íta ést, cúpit.
Are you on the top of the house?	Ésne in súmmā dómo?
No, I am in the basement.	Ímmo véro in ímā súm.
On this side (Rest).	*Citra* (Prep. et Adv.).
To this side (Motion).	*Cis, citra* (Prep. cum Acc.).
On that side, beyond (Rest).	*Trans, ultra* (Prep. et Adv.).
To that side, beyond (Motion).	*Trans, ultra* (Prep. cum Acc.).
To live (to be situate) on this, on the other side of the Rhine.	Cis, trans Rhênum incólĕre (sítum esse).†
To come to this side of the river.	Cis (citra) flûmen venīre.
To go to that side (beyond, across) the hill.	Trans (ultra) cóllem abíre.
Is he on this side or on that?	Útrum ést cítra án últra?
He is beyond.	Últra est.
Hither, in this direction.	Hūc; horsum (*adv.*). In hunc lŏcum.
Thither, in that direction.	Illuc; illorsum, istorsum (*adv.*).

* Compounded of *ad* + *scando* (I climb). So *escendo* = *ex* + *scando*; *descendo* = *de* + *scando*. The first and second of these verbs may be used either transitively with the accusative, or intransitively with the preposition *in*, *ad*, &c. The last of them (*descendere*) is always neuter.

† This is sometimes expressed by a compound of *cis*; as *cisalpīnus*, *cisrhenānus*, *cismontānus*, living or situate on this side of the Alps, Rhine, mountain. And again *transalpīnus*, *transmarīnus*, &c.

The hill, the mountain.	Collis, is, *m.*; mons, tis, *m.*
The river, stream.	Amnis, is, *m.*; flūmen, ĭnis, *n.* Flŭvĭus, i, *m.*
The present, gift.	Dōnum, i, *n.*; mŭnus, ĕris, *n.*
The new-year's present.	Mūnuscŭlum, i, *n.* Strēna, ae, *f.*
To make one a present of anything (To present one with anything).	*Dăre alicui aliquid dōno (munĕri).** *Aliquem aliquā rē donāre.* *Alicui aliquid donāre.*
To receive something as a present from any one.	Dōno (munĕri) accipĕre aliquid ab aliquo.
To give back again, to return, restore.	Reddo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum. Restĭtŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum. (ALICUI ALIQUID).
Did he return you your book again?	Reddidítne (restituítne) tíbi líbrum túum?
He has returned it.	Réddidit véro. Restítuit.
From whom did your brother receive a new-year's present this year?	A quo accêpit hôcce ánno frâter túus strênam?
He received one from his father.	Accêpit ûnam a pátre.
Did he ever make you a present?	Dedítne tíbi únquam áliquid dóno? Donavítne te únquam áliquā rê?
He has already made many presents.	Dédit míhi jám multa múneri. Donâvit míhi vero jám múlta.
Will you return (restore) me my little presents?	Núm vis míhi munúscula méa restitúere?
I am not willing.	Nôn vólo. Nólo.
Have you already commenced your letter?	Fecistíne jam inítium epístolae scribéndae?
I have not yet begun it.	Nóndum féci.
Must our presents be returned?	Númquid múnĕra nóstra restituénda súnt?
They are not to be returned.	Restituénda nôn súnt.
Must I ascend the hill?	Éstne míhi cóllis ascendéndus?
It must be ascended.	Est véro ascendéndus.
Whence? Where from? Out of (an enclosed place).	*Unde? Ex (a) quō lŏco?* *Ex, e* (Prep. cum Abl.).
Where do you come from?	Únde vénis?
I come from the garden.	Vénio ex hórtulo.
Where did your brother come from this evening?	Únde (ex quô lóco) vênit frâter túus hódie vésperi?
He came from the theatre.	Vênit a theátro.
Where are those men coming from?	Únde hóminesílli véniunt?

* On this second dative ("for or as a present"), compare Lesson LXIII. *B.*

They have descended from the mountain.	Descendérunt de mónte.
To be worth.	*Vălĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum* (ALIQUO PRETIO). *Alicūjus prĕtĭi esse.*
To be worth so much, how (as) much, more, less.	*Tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris* (sc. *pretii*), *valēre.**
To be worth ten sesterces, two hundred pounds of gold.	Decem sestertiis, ducentis† pondo auri valēre.
To be worth much, very much, most, little, least, nothing.	Magno, permagno, plurĭmo, parvo, minĭmo, nihĭlo (*sc.* pretio) valēre.
How much may that horse be worth?	Quánti circiter prétii íste équus est? Quanti fortásse válet íste équus?
It is worth about a hundred crowns.	Céntum círciter thalêrum est. Válet fortásse céntum thaléris.
This is worth more, less than that one.	Híc plûris, minôris válet quam ílle.
The one is not worth so much as the other.	Ílle (álter) nôn *tánti* válet, *quánti* álter.
How much is this thing worth?	Quánti prétii haêc rês ést? Quánti haêc rês válet?
This is not worth much.	Haêc rês párvi prétii est. Haêc rês párvo válet.
That is worth nothing.	Hóc nullĭus prétii est. Hóc níhĭlo válet.
You are not worth it.	Tánti nôn és.
To be better or *worth more* (*To excel*).	*Meliōrem* or *praeferendum esse.* *Praestāre, antecellere* (ALICUI).
Am I not as good as my brother?	Nónne égo tánti sum, quánti frâter méus?
You are better (worth more) than he.	Ímmo véro mélior (plûris) és.
I am not as good as you.	Tánti nôn súm égo, quánti tû.
This is preferable (better).	Hóc praêstat (preferéndum ést).
He excels all his fellow-students.	Commilitónĭbus suis ómnibus antecéllit.

EXERCISE 116.

Do you call me? — I do call you. — Where are you? — I am on the mountain; are you coming up? — I am not coming up. — Where are you? — I am at the foot of the mountain; will you come down? — I cannot come down. — Why can you not come down? — Because

---

* And so also *tantŭdem*, just so much; *quantīvis* and *quantĭcunque*, whatever. But never *magni*, *parvi*, &c. (Cf. Lesson LXVII. *A.*)

† And so always the ablative, when the value is definitely given by a substantive, or by *magno*, *permagno*, &c. (Cf. Lesson LXXI. *A.*)

I have sore feet. — Where does your cousin live? — He lives on this side of the river. — Where is the mountain? — It is on that side of the river. — Where stands the house of our friend? — It stands on that side of the mountain. — Is the garden of your friend on this or that side of the wood? — It is on that side. — Is our storehouse not on that side of the road? — It is on this side. — Where have you been this morning? — I have been on the great mountain. — How many times have you gone up the mountain? — I have gone up three times. — Is our father below or above? — He is above. — Have the neighbor's boys given you your books back again? — They have given them to me back again. — When did they give them back again to you? — They gave them back again to me yesterday. — To whom have you given your stick? — I have given it to the nobleman. — To whom have the noblemen given their gloves? — They have given them to Englishmen. — To which Englishmen have they given them? — To those whom you have seen this morning at my house. — To which people do you give money? — I give some to those to whom you give some. — Do you give any one money? — I give some to those who want any. — Who has taught you music? — No one; I have never learned music. — Did your brother conceal his purpose (*consilium*) from you? — He did not conceal it from me. — Did he ask you for anything? — He asked me for some money. — What did the stranger question you about? — He questioned me about the way. — Whom did you have for a master? — I had an Englishman and a German for masters (*praeceptōres*).

Exercise 117.

Have you received presents? — I have received some. — What presents have you received? — I have received fine presents. — Has your little brother received a present? — He has received several. — From whom has he received any? — He has received some from my father and from yours. — Do you come out of the garden? — I do not come out of the garden, but out of the house. — Where are you going to? — I am going into the garden. — Whence comes the Irishman? — He comes from the garden. — Does he come from the same garden from which you come? — He does not come from the same. — From which garden does he come? — He comes from that of our old friend. — Whence comes your boy? — He comes from the play. — How much is that carriage worth? — It is worth five hundred crowns. — Is this book worth as much as that? — It is worth more. — How much is my horse worth? — It is worth as much as that of your friend. — Are your horses worth as much as those of the French? — They are not worth so much. — How much is that knife worth? — It is worth nothing. — Is your servant as good as mine? — He is better than yours. — Are you as good as your brother? — He is better than I. — Art thou as good as thy cousin? — I am as good as he. — Are we as good as our neighbors? — We are better than they? — Is your umbrella as good as mine? — It is not worth so much. — Why is it not worth so much as mine? — Because it is not so fine (*non aeque ele-*

gans) as yours. — Do you wish to sell your horse? — I do wish to sell it. — How much is it worth? — It is worth two hundred florins. — Do you wish to buy it? — I have bought one already. — Does your father intend to buy a horse? — He does intend to buy one, but not yours.

Lesson LXI. — PENSUM UNUM ET SEXAGESIMUM.

SYNTAX OF THE DATIVE.

A. The dative is the case of the remote object, and serves to designate that *for* or *with respect to* which, or the person *for whose benefit* or *detriment** the agent acts, or that with reference to which it is possessed of certain attributes. Hence the predicate, with which the dative is connected, may be either a transitive verb, a neuter verb, an adjective, or an adverb.

B. The dative after transitive verbs denotes the person or object, with reference to which an action is performed, and stands in answer to the question *To whom?* or *For whom?* E. g.

Páter *fílio* líbrum *dédit.*	The father gave his son a book.
Dáte pânem *paupéribus.*	Give bread to the poor.
Pisístratus *sibi, nôn pátriae* Megarénses *vicit.*	Pisistratus conquered the Megarenses for his own benefit, and not for that of his country.
Tû túas inimicítias ut *reipúblicae donáres* tê vicísti.	By sacrificing your personal enmities to the common weal, you have won a conquest over yourself.
Hanníbalis bélla gésta múlti *memóriae prodidérunt.*	Many have left us records of the wars of Hannibal.
Zaleúcus et Charóndas léges *civitátibus súis conscripsérunt.*	Zaleucus and Charondas wrote laws for the benefit of their states.
Quántum *consuetúdini famaêque dándum sit*, id cúrent vívi.	As to the extent of the concessions we are expected to make to custom and to fame, let that be determined by the living.

REMARKS.

1. The accusative is often omitted, or its place supplied by an entire clause. E. g. *Tibi aras, tibi occas, tibi sĕris, tibi eidem mĕtis,*

* In this sense it is commonly called the *Dativus commŏdi* vel *incommŏdi.*

You plough, harrow, and sow for yourself, and for your benefit you also reap. *Promitto* tibi, *tegŭlam illum in Italiā nullam relictūrum*, I assure you he will not leave a tile on a roof in Italy.

2. When the verb becomes passive, the dative remains as before. E. g. *Liber* filio *a patre dătus*, A book given by a father to his son. *Dator pānis* pauperĭbus, Let bread be given to the poor. *Megarenses a Pisistrato* ipsi, *non* patriae *victi sunt*.

C. The dative after neuter verbs represents the person with reference to whom, or for whose benefit, anything is done or exists. E. g.

Mihi quídem *esúrio*, nôn tíbi.	I am hungry on my own account, and not on yours.
Nôn sôlum *nóbis* dívites *ésse* vólumus, sed *líberis*, *propínquis*, *amícis*, maximêque *reipúblicae*.	We desire to be rich, not only for our own benefit, but for that of our children, relations, and friends, and especially for that of the republic.
Cívitas Romána párum ôlim *vacâbat liberálibus disciplínis*.	The Roman nation formerly had but little leisure for the liberal arts and sciences.
Plúres in Ásiā múlieres *síngulis víris* sólent *núbere*.	In Asia several women are accustomed to get married to one husband.
Néque *Caésari* sôlum sed étiam *amícis* éjus *ómnibus supplicábo*.*	Nor will I supplicate Cæsar alone, but all his friends besides.

Remarks.

1. The pronominal datives *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *nobis*, and *vobis* often imply merely a remote interest or curiosity on the part of the speaker. E. g. *Quid* mihi *Celsus agit?* What, pray, is Celsus after? *Quid* tibi vis, *insāne?* What do you want, insensate man? *Quid* sibi *velit*, *non intelligo*, I do not understand what he is after. *Quid ait tandem* nobis *Sannio?* What has Sannio to say for himself?

2. After the verbs *esse*, *fore*, *suppetĕre*, *deesse*, and *defit*, the dative denotes the person *in possession* or *in want of* the object designated by the nominative. E. g. *Sunt* mihi *libri*, I have books. *Est* homĭni *cum Deo similitudo*, Man has a resemblance to the Deity. *An nescis*, *longas* regibus *esse manus*? Or are you not aware, that kings have long hands? *Si cauda* mihi *foret*, If I had a tail. *Si vīta* (mihi) *suppĕtet*, If I have life left (if life remains). *Lac* mihi *nŏvum non aestate*, *non frigŏre defit*, I have no lack of fresh milk either in summer or in winter. Cui *res non suppĕtat*, (ei) *verba non desint*, (The orator) who has a poor subject, should have words at his command.

---

* The verb *supplicāre* = *supplex esse*. The *nubĕre* of the preceding example properly signifies "to put on the veil," and with *alicui viro*, "to put on the marriage-veil *for* a man," i. e. to marry him.

DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

D. The dative stands after adjectives and adverbs as the end or object for or against which the quality denoted by them is represented as existing in the subject. E. g.

Cúnctis ésto benígnus, *núllis* blándus, *paúcis* familiâris, *ómnibus* aêquus.	You should be kind to every one, a flatterer of no one, intimate with few, just towards all men.
Públius dictátor léges *secundíssĭmas plebi, adversas nobilitáti* túlit.	Publius, the dictator, promulgated laws in favor of the people and opposed to the nobility.

The adjectives thus followed by the dative are quite numerous. They are those signifying,—

1. LIKE or UNLIKE, SIMILAR or DISSIMILAR: — *par, impar, dispar, aequālis; simĭlis, assimĭlis, consimĭlis, dissimĭlis, absimĭlis, discŏlor.* E. g. *Canis* lupo *simĭlis est*, The dog resembles the wolf. *Proxĭmo rĕgi dissimilis*, Unlike the preceding king. *Ennio aequalis fuit Livius*, Livy was contemporary with Ennius.*

2. USEFUL or INJURIOUS: — *ūtĭlis, bŏnus, saluber, salutāris, fructuōsus; inutĭlis, noxĭus, funestus, pestĭfer, damnōsus, perniciōsus*, &c. E. g. *Salubrĭor meliorque inŏpi, quam potenti*, More salutary, and better for poor than for rich men. *Ratio pestifĕra* multis, *admodum* paucis *salutāris est*, Reason is destructive to many, and advantageous to few. *Universae Graeciae ūtĭlis*,† Useful to entire Greece.

3. PLEASANT or UNPLEASANT: — *grātus, acceptus, dulcis, jucundus, laetus, suavis; ingrātus, injucundus, molestus, grăvis, acerbus, tristis*, &c. E. g. *Scientiae suavitate nihil est* hominĭbus *jucundius*, Nothing is more agreeable to men than the sweetness of knowledge. *Romŭlus multitudini* gratior *fuit, quam patrĭbus*, Romulus was more acceptable to the masses than to the senate. *Verebāris, ne mihi gravis esses*, You were afraid of becoming troublesome to me.

4. INCLINED, FRIENDLY, DEAR, and their opposites AVERSE, HOSTILE: — *amīcus, benevŏlus, carus, familiāris, aequus, fĭdus, fidēlis, propensus, propĭtĭus, secundus; adversus, aliēnus, inimīcus, contrārĭus, infensus*, &c. E. g. *Non fortūnae, sed hominibus amīcus*, Friendly (= a friend) ‡ to men and not to fortune. *Uni aequus virtūti atque*

---

* The adjectives *similis, dissimilis, par*, and *impar* are also followed by the genitive, especially when they denote similarity of character or intellect. E. g. *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri similis*, like me, you, &c., or my, your, &c. equal. *Dispar sui*, unlike itself. *Cujus paucos* pares *haec civitas tulit*, Like whom this state has produced but few. — *Aequalis*, in the sense of "contemporary," is more commonly followed by the genitive; as, *ejus aequalis*. Also substantively with an adjective; as, *meus aequalis*.

† But also *utilis* or *inutilis ad aliquid*. E. g. *Homo* ad nullam rem *utilis*, a man fit for nothing.

‡ *Amicus, inimicus*, and *familiāris* are properly adjectives, and stand as such

ejus amīcis, Friendly to virtue alone, and to its friends. *Antonius Galliam* sibi infestam inimicamque *cognōvit*, Antonius learnt that Gaul was hostile to him. *Illi causae maxime est aliēnum*,* It is entirely irrelevant to that case.

5. NEAR or ADJOINING: — *vīcīnus, finĭtĭmus, confīnis, conterminus, proplor, proxĭmus*. E. g. *Proxĭmus sum egomet mihi*, I am my nearest neighbor. *Aethiopĭa Aegypto est conterminа*, Æthiopia is conterminous with Egypt. *Mala sunt vicīna*† *bonis*, Adversity is next door neighbor to prosperity.

6. BELONGING TO ONE'S SELF or TO ANOTHER: — *affīnis, cognātus, propinquus, proprius, peculiāris, commūnis, sacer; aliēnus, contrārius*, &c. E. g. Nobis propria *est mentis agitatio atque sollertia*, There is peculiar to us a certain agitation and sagacity of mind. Omni aetati *mors est commūnis*, Death is common to every age. Huic *affīnes*‡ scelĕri *fuērunt*, They were accomplices of this crime.

7. KNOWN or UNKNOWN: — *nōtus, certus, ignōtus, obscūrus, incertus, dubĭus, insolĭtus*, &c. E. g. *Magis* historĭcis *quam* vulgo *nōtus*, Known rather to the historians than to the vulgar. *Certius tibi est quam mihi*, It is a matter of greater certainty to you than to me. *Novum et* morĭbus *vetĕrum insolĭtum*, New and unknown (unusual) to the manners of the ancients.

8. FIT or UNFIT, SUITABLE or UNSUITABLE: — *aptus, idoneus, accommodātus, commŏdus, necessārius, parātus, promptus, proclīvis*; — *convenĭens, congruens, consentāneus, decōrus, honestus; turpis, foedus, indecōrus, absŏnus, absurdus*. E. g *Aptum esse consentanĕumque* tempori et personae, To be fit and suitable for the occasion and person. Tibi *erunt parāta verba*, You will have words ready for you. Castris *idōneus locus*, A suitable site for a camp. *Congruens* et *conveniens decretis ejus*, Consistent with his avowed principles. *Ratiōni consentaneus*, In harmony with reason. *Absonum fidei*, At variance with credibility.§

9. EASY or DIFFICULT: — *facĭlis, expedītus, commŏdus; difficĭlis,*

---

in every degree of comparison; as, *Amīctor libertāti quam suae dominationi.* — *Homo mihi amicissĭmus, mihi familiarissĭmus.* But they frequently occur as substantives with a genitive or an adjective. E. g. *Amīcus patris.* — *Noster amīcus.* So also the superlative *amicissĭmus* or *familiarissĭmus meus*, A very great or most intimate friend of mine. *Inimicissĭmus tuus.* Your mortal foe. *Amicissĭmus nostrorum hominum*, A warm friend of our men (our party).

* The construction of *aliēnus* is either *alicui rei, alicujus rei, re* or *a re.* Thus, *alienum nostrā amicitiā, a dignitate meā*, incompatible with our friendship, with my dignity. Several of these adjectives take also *erga, ad* or *in*; as, *benevŏlus, benignus* erga *aliquem*; — *propensus* ad *or* in *aliquem.*

† *Vicīnus* and *vicīna* are also used substantively, and then followed by the genitive or adjective; as, *vicīnus ejus, meus.*

‡ But *affīnis* in this sense also has the genitive; as, *affīnis hujus suspiciōnis, affīnis rei capitālis.* So also *proprium oratōris*, peculiar to the orator; and *mea, tua propria*, peculiar to me, to you.

§ But also *ad natūram aptus* or *accommodātus; ad causam idōneus; parātus ad usum; promptus ad mortem, ad aliquem morbum proclivis*; — *conveniens, congruens, consentaneus cum re; absŏnus, absurdus a re.*

ardŭus, invius. E. g. *Juvĕnis caecus,* contumeliae *opportūnus, facĭlis* injuriae, A blind youth, exposed to contumelies and to injuries. *Id si* tibi *erit commodum,* If that will be convenient to you. *Invia* virtūti *nulla est via,* No way is impassable to virtue.

10. VERBALS in *bĭlis,* and COMPOUNDS like *obnoxius, obvius, supplex, superstes,* &c. E. g. *Mors* mihi *non est terribĭlis,* Death is not terrible to me. E. g. *Obvium esse alicui,* To meet any one. *Supplĭcem esse alicui,* To be a suppliant to (to supplicate) any one. *Superstĭtem esse alicui,* To survive any one.*

To affirm, contend.	Affirmo, āre, āvi, ātum. / Contendo, ĕre, di, tum. (CUM ACC. ET INFIN.)
To deny.	Nĕgo, āre, āvi, ātum.
What do you say?	Quĭd áis?
I say that you have my book.	Áio, tê tenêre méum líbrum.†
I say that I have not it.	Négo, mê tenêre líbrum túum.
I assure you, that I have it not.	Égo tíbi affírmo, mê éum nôn tenêre.
Have you not had it?	Nónne éum tenuísti?
I have had it, but I have it no longer.	Ténui véro, sed (éum) téneo nôn ámplius.
Do you contend that you have been correct?	Contendísne, tê vére locûtum (esse)?
I say that I have not been correct.	Négo, mê vére locûtum.
I affirm that you have been wrong.	Affírmo, tê erravísse.
No more, no longer.	*Non jam* (or *jam non*). *Non amplius.*
Do you still love your brother?	Diligísne frâtrem étiam núnc?
I love him no longer.	Díligo éum nôn ámplius.
Where have you put the pen?	Ubi pénnam posuísti?
I have laid it upon the table.	Impósui éam ménsae (in ménsā).
Does it lie upon the table?	Sitáneést super ménsā? / Inpositáne est ménsae?
It does lie upon it.	Síta est. Impósita est.
Is he still lying upon the ground?	Jacétne húmi étiam núnc?
He is lying there no longer.	Íbi nón jám jácet. / Jácet ibi nôn amplius.
Some, a little.	*Aliquantŭlum, paulŭlum, pauxillum.*
Could you give me a little water?	Possísne míhi dáre aliquántulum áquae?
I can give you some.	Égo tibi aliquántulum dáre póssum.
It is necessary, I must.	*Necesse est, me oportet,* &c. (Cf. Lesson XXXIV. *D.*)

* Also *supplex* and *superstes alicujus,* which among the later writers is even more common than the dative.

† Compare page 290.

It was necessary, I was obliged.	*Necesse fuit, me oportuit*, &c.
Is it necessary (for some one) to go to the market?	Eundúmne est in fórum? Necesséne est ire in fórum?
It is necessary (for some one) to go there.	Eúndum ést véro. Necésse est.
What must one do in order to learn Latin?	Quid nôs faciâmus necésse ést, ut línguam Latínam ediscâmus?
One must be very diligent.	Opórtet nôs símus imprímis diligéntes. Ópus est múltâ indústriâ et diligéntiâ.
What must he do?	Quíd éum fácĕre opórtet?
He must go for a book.	Necésse ést líbrum appórtet. Ópus ést éum apportâre líbrum.
What must I do?	Quíd fácere míhi ópus ést? Quíd opórtet fáciam?
You must sit still.	Ópus ést, út sédeas quiêtus. Necésse est tíbi sedêre quiéte.
To sit.	Sedĕo, ēre, sēdi, sessum.
Still, quiet.	Quiētus, a, um.
Silent, still.	Tacĭtus, a, um; sĭlens, tis
The livelihood, subsistence, competency.	*Victus*, ūs, m.; *copia victūs; id, quod suppeditat ad victum cultumque.*
To have enough to live on, to have a competency.	Habēre ad sumptum. Habēre unde aliquis vivat. Non laborāre de victu cultūque.
Not to have enough to live on.	Deest alicui in sumptum. Vix habēre unde aliquis vivat.
Have you a (comfortable) subsistence?	Habêsne ad súmptum? Habêsne unde commóde vívas?
I have a comfortable one.	Ego de víctu cultúque nôn labóro.
I have not a competency	Déest mihi in súmptum.
I have scarcely anything to live upon.	Víx hábeo unde vívam.
To live.	Vīvo, ĕre, vixi, victum.
The expense.	Sumptŭs, ūs, *m.*
Beef.	Bubŭla,* ae, *f.*
Mutton.	Vervecina, ae, *f.*
Veal.	Vitŭlina, ae, *f.*
Pork.	Porcina, ae, *f.*
Ham.	Perna, ae, *f.*
A piece of ham, &c.	Frustum pernae, &c.

* With *bubŭla — porcina*, the word *cāro*, flesh, meat, is understood, and sometimes expressed.

What must I buy?	Quid mihi eméndum est? Quíd ópus est, ut émam?
You must buy some beef.	Eménda ést tibi búbula. Ópus est, ut émas búbulam
What must (should) I do?	Quid mê fácere opórtet? Quid opórtet fáciam?
You must (ought) to work.	Opórtet tê operári. Opórtet tû operêre.*
What ought we to have done?	Quíd nôs fácere opórtuit? Quíd nos fecĕrêmus opórtuit?†
We ought to have attended to our studies.	Opórtuit nôs óperam dáre stúdiis.
What do you wish?	Quid vis? Quid cúpis?
I want some money.	Ópus ést mihi pecúniā. Égeo pecúniā
Do you want much?	Éstne tibi ópus magnā.
I do want a large amount.	Ópus ést mihi véro cópiā magnā.
How much do you want (need)?	Quantā éges? Quántā ést tibi ópus?
I only want a crown.	Ópus est mihi non nísi ûnus thalêrus. Úno tántum thaléro égeo.
Is that all you want?	Nôn est tibi ópus nísi hóc?
That is all I want.	Nôn ést mihi ópus nísi hóc.
Do you not want more (money)?	Nôn est tibi ópus majôre (pecúniā)?
I do not need any more.	Majôre nôn indígeo.
What does he (want) need?	Quíd (quā rē) índiget?
He needs a new coat.	Tóga nóvā índiget.
Have you what you want?	Habêsne quód tibi ópus sit?
I have what I want.	Hábeo véro, quód mihi ópus est?
Have they what they want?	Habéntne quód ís ópus ést?
They have so.	Hábent véro.
Have you been obliged to work much to learn Latin?	Fuítne tibi mágni labôris,‡ sermônem Latînum edíscerĕ?
I have been obliged to work very hard.	Fúit prórsus permágni labôris.

Exercise 118.

Were you yesterday at the physician's? — I was at his house. — What does he say? — He says that he cannot come. — Why does he not send his son? — His son does not go out. — Why does he not go out? — Because he is ill. — Hast thou had my purse? — I tell you that I have not had it. — Hast thou seen it? — I have seen it. — Where is it? — It lies upon the chair. — Have you had my knife? — I tell you that I have had it. — Where have you placed it? — I have placed it upon the table. — Will you look for it? — I have already

---

* See page 162, note. † See page 273, *G.*

‡ Lit. "Was it a matter of great labor?" &c. On this genitive compare Lesson LXVIII. *B.*

looked for it. — Have you found it? — I have not found it. — Have you looked for my gloves? — I have looked for them, but I have not found them. — Has your servant my hat? — He has had it, but he has it no longer. — Has he brushed it? — He has brushed it. — Are my books upon your table? — They are (lie) upon it. — Have you any wine? — I have but little, but I will give you what I have. — Will you give me some water? — I will give you some. — Have you much wine? — I have much. — Will you give me some? — I will give you some. — How much do I owe you? — You owe me nothing. — You are too kind. — Must I go for some wine? — You must go for some. — Shall I go to the ball? — You must go thither. — When must I go thither? — You must go thither this evening? — Must I go for the carpenter? — You must go for him. — Is it necessary to go to the market? — It is necessary to go thither — What must one do in order to learn Russian? — One must study much (*opus est multâ diligentiâ*). — Must one study much to learn German? — One must study much. — What shall I do? — You must buy a good book. — What is he to do? — He must sit still. — What are we to do? — You must work. — Must you work much, in order to learn the Arabic? — I must work much to learn it. — Does your brother not work? — He does not want to work. — Has he wherewithal to live? — He has. — Why must I go to the market? — You must go thither to buy some beef. — Why must I work? — You must work in order to get a competency. — What do you want, Sir? — I want some cloth. — How much is that hat worth? — It is worth three crowns. — Do you want any stockings? — I want some. — How much are those stockings worth? — They are worth twelve kreutzers. — Is that all you want? — That is all. — Do you not want shoes? — I do not want any — Dost thou want much money? — I want much. — How much must thou have? — I must have six crowns. — How much does your brother want? — He wants but six groshes. — Does he not want more? — He does not want more. — Does your cousin want more? — He does not want so much as I. — What do you want? — I want money and boots. — Have you now what you want? — I have what I want. — Has your brother what he wants? — He has what he wants.

Lesson LXII. — PENSUM ALTERUM ET SEXAGESIMUM.

DATIVE AFTER VERBS. — *Continued.*

A. The dative also follows intransitive verbs signifying to benefit, favor, please, trust, and their opposites, and those signifying to command, obey, serve, or resist, to approach, menace, and to be angry.

Such are *prosum, auxilior, adminicŭlor, opitŭlor, patrocĭnor, subvenio, succurro, medeor; noceo, obsum, officio, incommodo, insulto, insidĭor.* — *Faveo, gratificor, indulgĕo, ignosco, studĕo, parco, adŭlor, blandĭor, lenocĭnor, palpo, assentĭor, assentor, respondĕo; adversor, refragor, obsto, renĭtor, repugno, resisto, invideo, aemulor, obtrecto, convicĭor, maledico. Placĕo, arridĕo, displicĕo.* — *Domĭnor, impĕro; parĕo, cēdo, ausculto, obedĭo, obsequor, obtempĕro, morigeror* (= morem gero), *audiens sum, servio, inservio, ministro, famŭlor, ancillor, praestolor.* — *Credo, fīdo, confīdo, diffīdo.* — *Imminĕo, propinquo, appropinquo, impendeo, occurro.* — *Minor, comminor, irascor, stomachor, succenseo.* The impersonal verbs *conducit, contingit, expedit, licet, placet,* &c. Examples: —

Ipsi pātriae condūcit, pios cives habēre in parentes.
It is advantageous to the state itself, to have its citizens respectful towards their parents.

Nihil *Numantīnis* vires corporis *auxiliātae* sunt.
Their physical strength was of no service to the Numantians.

Non licet sui commodi causā *nocēre alteri.*
It is not lawful to injure another for the sake of personal advantage.

Efficit hoc philosophia: *medētur ānimis.*
Philosophy produces this effect: it cures the mind.

Germāni ab parvulis *labōri* ac *durĭtiae stŭdent.*
The Germans apply themselves to toil and hardships from their infancy.

Trebātium objurgāvi, quod parum *valetūdini parcĕret.*
I chided Trebatius for sparing his health too little.

Alii *Sullānis,* alii *Cinnānis pārtibus favēbant.*
Some favored Sulla's party, others that of Cinna.

Nimium *illi,* Menedeme, *indulges*
You indulge him too much, Menedemus.

Probus *invidet nemini.*
The honest man envies no one.

Aliōrum *laŭdi* atque *glōriae* maxime *invidēri* solet.
The reputation and glory of others are generally the object of envy.

Nemo altērius, qui *suae confīdit,* virtūti invidet.
No one envies the excellence of another, who has any confidence in his own.

Mundus *Deo pāret,* et *huic obēdiunt* maria terraeque.
The world is subject to God, and to him the seas and lands render obedience.

Sto expectans, si quid *mihi imperent.*
I stand waiting to see whether they have any commands for me.

Omnino *irāsci amīcis* non temere soleo.
I am not accustomed to be rashly angry with my friends.

Remarks.

1. Some of these verbs sometimes occur with a transitive force. E. g. *Imperāre alicui aliquid,* To demand anything of any one; *credĕre alicui aliquid,* to entrust anything to any one; *mināri* or *commi-*

nāri alicui aliquid, to menace any one with anything. But most of them are always neuter, and only admit of an impersonal construction in the passive. E. g. *Mihi parcĭtur, invidētur, obtrectātur*, I am spared, envied, traduced. *Tibi incommodātur, maledĭcĭtur*, You are incommoded, reviled.

2. *Juběo* is an exception to verbs of commanding, and occurs only with the Acc. cum Inf. (Lesson LIII. *B.* II. 2.) So *juvo* and *adjuvo*, "I aid, assist," always have *aliquem*, and not *alicui*, like *auxilior*, &c.

3. *Benedĭcere*, "to bless," generally has *alicui* (like maledicere), but sometimes *aliquem*. So *medicāri alicui* (like *medēri*), to heal, cure, but *medicari aliquid*, to prepare chemically. The construction of *invidēre* (to envy) is generally *alicui* or *alicui rei*, but may also be *alicui rem* or *aliquem aliquā re* (one on account of anything). E. g. *Honorem tibi invidet*, He envies you your honor.

4. A number of other verbs sometimes take the accusative or ablative instead of the dative. E. g. *Obtrectāre* (to produce) *alicui, alicui rei* or *rem. Auscultāre* (to listen to) and *praestolāri* (to wait for) *alicui* or *aliquem. Domināri* (to rule over) *alicui, in aliquem* or *in civitate. Fĭdĕre* and *confĭdĕre* (to trust, confide) *alicui, alicui rei* or *aliquā re. Cēdo tibi, concēdo tibi*, "I yield, concede to you," are followed by an accusative or ablative of the thing; as, *cēdo tibi locum, cedo tibi agri possessione*; and *concēdo tibi libertātem, loco, de victoriā*, I concede to you your liberty, my place, the victory. *Res mihi convĕnit*, the thing suits or becomes me; but impersonally *convĕnit mihi tecum de aliquā re*, I agree with you about something.

5. Several verbs have either the accusative or dative, but with a difference of signification. E. g. *Caveo te*, I beware of you; *caveo tibi*, I am security for you; *caveo a te*, I take (require) security from you. *Consulo te*, I consult you, and *consulo tibi*, I provide for you. *Cupio* or *volo te*, I desire you, and *cupio* or *volo tibi* (or *tuā causā*), I wish for you (on your account). *Prospicio* and *provideo te*, I see you before, but *tibi*, I provide for you. *Tempero* and *moderor aliquid*, I arrange in proper order, and *mihi* or *rei*, I moderate.

B. Among the verbs followed by the dative are included those compounded with the adverbs *satis, bene*, and *male*, and with the prepositions *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub*, and *super*. (Cf. Lesson XXXII. *G.*) Some of these verbs are transitive, and have also an accusative of the direct object; others are intransitive, and have the dative only. The following lists exhibit the most important of them: —

1. Transitive compounds, with the dative of the remote object.

Addo, *I add to.*
Affĕro, *I bring to.*
Affĭgo, *I attach to.*
Adhĭbeo, *I employ towards.*
Adjĭcio, *I add to.*
Adjungo, *I join to.*
Admoveo, *I bring near to.*
Alligo, *I tie to.*

Applĭco, *I attach to.*
Circumjĭcio, *I cast around.*
Compăro, *I provide for.*
Compōno, *I put together.*
Confĕro, *I unite to.*
Conjungo, *I link to.*
Immisceo, *I mix with.*
Impōno, *I place upon.*
Imprĭmo, *I print upon.*
Inclūdo, *I include.*
Incīdo, *I cut into.*
Infero, *I carry into.*
Ingĕro, *I put or pour into.*
Injĭceo, *I throw into.*
Insĕro, *I implant.*
Inūro, *I brand, imprint upon.*
Interjĭcio, *I cast among.*
Interpōno, *I interpose.*
Objĭcio, *I throw before (to).*
Offundo, *I pour out to.*
Oppōno, *I place against.*
Posthăbeo, *I esteem less than.*
Postpōno, *I value less than.*
Praefĕro, *I bear before; I prefer.*
Praefĭcio, *I set over.*
Praepōno, *I place before.*
Suppōno, *I place beneath.*
Substerno, *I spread under.*

2. Intransitive compounds, with the dative only.

Accēdo, *I draw near to.*
Acquiesco, *I acquiesce in.*
Adhaereo, *I adhere to.*
Allūdo, *I allude to.*
Annŭo, *I assent to.*
Arrēpo, *I creep to.*
Assideo, *I sit near to.*
Aspiro, *I breathe upon.*
Antecello, *I excel, surpass.*
Collūdo, *I play with.*
Congrŭo, *I agree with.*
Consentio, *I accord with.*
Consōno, *I harmonize with.*
Excello, *I excel.*
Incīdo, *I fall upon (into).*
Incumbo, Incŭbo, } *I lie (sit) upon.*
Indormio, *I nod over.*
Inhaero, *I inhere in.*
Inhio, *I gape at.*
Immorior, *I die in (upon).*
Immoror, *I linger in.*
Innascor, *I am born in.*
Insisto, *I tread upon.*
Interjăceo, *I am situate between.*
Intervĕnio, *I fall in with.*
Obrēpo, *I steal upon.*
Obstrĕpo, *I make a noise at.*
Obversor, *I move before.*
Praemĭnĕo, *I surpass.*
Praestĭdĕo, *I preside over.*
Praevălĕo, *I am stronger than.*
Succumbo, *I yield to.*
Supersto, *I stand upon.*
Supervivo, *I survive.*

3. To these add the compounds of *sum*: — *adesse*, to be present; *inesse*, to be in; *interesse*, to be among; *praesse*, to be before (at the head of); *subesse*, to be beneath; *superesse*, to remain over (left).

4. The compounds of *satis*, *bene*, and *male* are *satisdare*, *satisfacere* (*alicui*), to give one bail or satisfaction; *maledicĕre*, *benedicĕre* (*alicui*), to praise or bless, to revile, asperse one; *malefacere* (*alicui*), to injure one.

EXAMPLES.

Natūra *sénsibus* ratiōnem *adjunxit.* — Nature has given us reason in addition to our senses.

Sthénius ést ís, qui *nóbis assidet.* — He who is sitting by our side is Sthenius.

Quís pótest iníquos *aéquis*, ímpios *religiósis anteférre?* — Who can prefer the unjust to the just, the impious to the religious?

Natûra vĭ ratiônis hóminem *concíliat hómini.*	Nature conciliates man to man by force of reason.
Párva *mágnis* saépe rectíssime *conferúntur.*	Small things are often correctly compared with great things.
Mágnus térror *incidit* Pompéii *exercítui.*	Great terror befell the army of Pompey.
Cuî sermóni nôs *intervénĭmus?*	What conversation did we fall in with?
Nôn cítius *adolescéntiae* senéctus, quám *puerítiae* adolescéntia *obrêpit.*	Old age steals no faster upon youth than youth does upon boyhood.
Hánnibal *Alexándro Mágno* nôn *postponéndus est.*	Hannibal cannot be put below Alexander the Great.
Déus ánimum *praefĕcit córpori.*	The Deity has put the mind over the body.
Júdicis ést, *innocéntiae subvenire.*	It is the duty of a judge to help (protect) innocence.
Néque *dĕésse*, néque *superésse reipúblicae* vólo.	I desire neither to be remiss towards the republic, nor to be above it.
Cuî Géllius *benedíxit* únquam *bóno?*	What patriotic man did Gellius ever speak well of?
Satisfácĕre ómnibus nôn póssum.	I am not able to satisfy every one.
Tû vérbis sólves núnquam, quód *mi* (= *míhi*) *malefecĕris.*	You will never compensate with words the injuries you have done me.

Remarks.

1. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, especially those with *ad*, *con*, and *in*, are also followed by the case of the preposition, which is frequently repeated. E. g. *Studium adhibēre* ad *disciplīnas*, To apply one's self to the study of the sciences. *Consilia sua* mecum *communicāvit*, He communicated his designs to me. In *omnium* animis *dei notionem impressit ipsa natūra*, Nature herself has imprinted the idea of a divinity upon the minds of all.

2. Verbs compounded with the prepositions *ab*, *de*, or *ex*, are commonly followed by the ablative, but sometimes by the dative. E. g. *Alicui libertātem abjudicāre*, to take away one's liberty; *alicui imperium abrogāre*, to deprive one of his command. *Alicui aliquid derogāre*, *detrahĕre*, to derogate, to detract from. *Alicui virgĭnem despondēre*, to betroth a maiden to any one. *Eripere alicui aliquid*, to snatch away anything from any one. (Cf. Lesson LXXII. *E.*)

3. Many neuter verbs of motion, compounded with prepositions, acquire an active sense, and admit an object in the accusative. (Cf. Lesson LIX *A.* Rem. 1.)

To ask, demand (anything of any one).

- *Posco, ĕre, poposci, ——.*
- *Postŭlo āre, āvi, ātum.*
- *Pĕto, ĕre, īvi, ītum.*

(ALIQUID AB ALIQUO.)

To ask, request (as a favor).	Rŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum. Öro, āre, āvi, ātum. (ALIQUEM ALIQUID.)*
To ask (or demand) money of any one.	Pecúniam ab áliquo pétere (póscere, postulâre).
To ask (entreat) any one for money.	Áliquem pecúniam rogâre, orâre.
To beg money of any one	Áliquem pecúniam mendicâre.
To ask any to come (to write, to hear, &c.).	Pétĕre ab áliquo, *ut* véniat, *ut* scríbat, *ut* aúdiat. (Cf. page 295.)
To entreat any one by letter to come.	Pétere précibus per lítteras ab áliquo, *ut* véniat.
To request, beseech any one to come.	Rogâre, orâre áliquem, ut véniat.
I request you most earnestly to do so.	Id ut fácias, tê étiam átque étiam rógo.
I ask and beseech you most earnestly to help him.	Étiam atque étiam tê rógo atque óro, út éum júves.
What do you ask (want) of me?	Quíd a mê póstulas (pétis)? Quíd mê fácere vis?
I do not ask (you for) anything.	Níhil póstulo.
Nor do I ask you for anything.	Néque égo abs tê quídquam póstulo (péto).
Did he ask (beg) you for (some) money?	Rogavítne tê pecúniam?
He did ask (me for some).	Rogâvit.
Did he beg some bread of us?	Mendicavítne pânem a nóbis?
He begged and entreated us for a little bread.	Nos aliquántulum pânis étiam atque etiam rogâvit atque orâvit.
Do you ask (beg) him for some money?	Rogâsne éum pecúniam?
I ask (beg) him for some.	Rógo éum aliquántulum.
Do you ask me for anything?	Petísne áliquid a mê? Rogâsne me áliquid?
I ask you for my book.	Péto a tê librum. Rógo tê líbrum.
Do they ask us for the hat?	Núm píleum a nóbis póstulant?
They do not ask us for it.	Nôn póstulant.
To speak of any one or *anything.*	*De aliquo* seu *aliquā rē lŏqui, colloqui.*
Do they speak of this man.	Loquuntúrne hôc de víro?
They are speaking of him.	Loquúntur (de éo).
They do not speak of him.	(De éo) nôn loquúntur.
Do ye speak of my book?	Lóquiminine de líbro méo?
We do speak (of it).	Sic ést. Lóquimur.
Do people speak of it?	Écquid de éo hómines loquúntur?

* On the government of these verbs see Lesson LX. *B.*

They speak much of it. — Loquúntur de éo múltum.
What do you say to it? — Quid tú de éo cénses (júdicas)?
I say that it is a good book. — Ego éum líbrum bónum ésse cénseo (júdico).

To judge, think (say). — Judíco, āre, āvi, ātum. / Censeo, ēre, ŭi, ——. (ALIQUID DE ALIQUO.)

Is it your opinion that he was right? — Censêsne, éum vére locûtum (ésse)?
No, I think he was wrong. — Ímmo véro éum erravísse cénseo.

Content, satisfied. — *Contentus, a, um.*

To be contented (satisfied) with anything. — Aliquā rē contentum esse. / In aliquā rē acquiescĕre (-ēvi, ētum).

To be content with any one. — Aliquem probāre, approbāre.

Are you satisfied with your new umbrella? — Ésne umbrâculo túo nóvo conténtus?
I am contented with it. — Súm éo conténtus.
I am not (at all) satisfied with it. — Haûd súm éo conténtus.
Of what do they speak? — Quâ de rē loquúntur?
They speak of peace, of war, of your book. — Loquúntur de pâce, de bélio, de líbro túo.
With what are you contented? — Quâ rē és contentus? / Quâ in rē acquiéscis?
I am contented with my new coat. — Conténtus sum tógā méā nóvā.
Are you satisfied with your master? — Écquid magístrum túum próbas?
I am quite satisfied with him. — Próbo véro éum válde.
Are ye satisfied with him? — Satín' vóbis probâtur? / Núm vóbis satísfacit?
Are you satisfied with this man? — Satisfacítne tíbi hícce hómo?
I am satisfied. — Sic ést; míhi satísfacit.

To study — studied. — *Studēre, studŭi,* ——. / *Opĕram dăre* (ALICUI REI).

To correct — corrected. — Emendāre — āvi, ātum (ALIQUID). / Corrigĕre — rexi, rectum.

To ask, interrogate. — Interrŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum (ALIQUEM ALIQUID, DE ALIQUA RE).

To inquire (carefully and minutely). — Sciscitor, āri, ātus sum. / Percunctor, āri, ātus sum.

Have you asked him about the play? — Núm éum de spectáculo interrogávisti?
I have not asked him. — Éum nôn interrogávi.
Did he inquire who I am? — Sciscitatúsne est, quis sim?
Do you inquire after the price of this book? — Percunctarísne de prétio líbri?

Does your brother study literature?	Dát frâter túus óperam lítteris? / Sequitúrne frâter túus stúdium litterârum?
He does study it.	Óperam dát. Séquitur.
Do you study to become a doctor?	Núm óperam dâs fíeri médicus?
To pay.	*Solvo, ĕre, i, sŏlūtum.* / *Numĕro, āre, āvi, ātum.*
To pay any one (in general).	Alíquem solvĕre, alícui satisfacĕre.
To pay for anything.	Solvĕre (aliquid) pro aliquā rē.
To pay any one for anything.	Solvĕre alícui pretium rei.
To pay money to creditors.	Sólvĕre pecúnias creditóribus.
To pay a debt.	Aès aliênum (pecúniam débĭtam) sólvere vel dissólvere.
To be able to pay, solvent.	Esse solvéndo (*Dat.*), ad solvendum.
I have paid him.	Ego éum sólvi (éi satisféci).
They have not yet paid for the book.	Pro líbro nôndum solvérunt.
How much have you paid for your horse?	Quántam pecúniam pro équo solvísti?
I have paid two hundred crowns for it.	(Sólvi pro éo) ducéntos thaléros.
Did he pay the tailor for the coat?	Númquid sartóri prétium véstis sólvit?
He has not paid him (for it).	(Éi) nôn sólvit.
Do you pay the shoemaker for the shoes?	Solvísne sutóri prétium calceôrum?
I do pay him.	Ego véro sólvo.
What did they pay you for the knives?	Quíd tíbi pro cúltris solvérunt?
They paid me a large sum for them.	Solvérunt mihi (pro íis) pecúniam grándem.
They have nothing for them.	Níhil pro íis solvérunt.
Have you paid for your book?	Solvistíne pro líbro túo?
I have paid (for it).	Sólvi.
I have not yet paid for it.	Ego pro éo nóndum sólvi.
Can you pay what you owe?	Potésne sólvere, quod débes (*or* débitum, débita)?
I cannot pay what I owe.	Sólvere débĭta haûd possum.
Did we pay our debts?	Solvimúsne aês aliênum (débita nóstra)?
We have paid them entirely.	Id (éa) pláne (omníno) dissólvimus.
Entirely, wholly.	*Prorsus, omnīno, plāne* (adv.).
Entirely or for the most part.	Omnino aut magnā ex parte.

The uncle.	Patrŭus, i. *m.*; avuncŭlus, i, *m.*
The wages, fee.	Merces, ēdis, *f.*; prĕtium opĕrae, i, *n.*
The honorarium; salary.	*Honorārium, i, *n.*; salārium, i, *n.*
The lesson (to be learnt).	Pensum, i, *n.*; discenda, *n. pl.*
The exercise, task (to be written).	Pensum imperātum, i, *n.*; exercitium, i, *n.*
The exercise, practice, e.g. in writing, speaking, &c.	Exercitātio (ōnis, *f.*) scribendi, dicendi, &c.
To do (write) one's exercises.	Pensum imperātum absolvĕre (absolvi, absolūtum).
The lecture or lesson (given by the teacher).	Schŏla, ae, *f.*
To deliver a lecture on any subject.	Schŏlam habēre de aliquā rē.
To be present at the lectures of any one.	Schŏlis alicūjus interesse.
To attend or frequent lectures.	Doctŏres auditionêsque obīre (-ivi, itum).
The teacher, preceptor.	Doctor, praeceptor, ōris, *m.*; magister, ri, *m.*
The scholar, pupil.	Discīpŭlus, alumnus, i, *m.*
The gentlemen, lord, sir.	Dominus, i, *m.*; vir amplissimus, illustrissimus, &c. (*in addresses*, &c.)
Have you (written) your exercises?	Absolvistĭne túa pénsa imperāta?
I have not yet done them.	(Ea) nôndum absŏlvi.
To receive a present from any one.	Accipĕre aliquid ab aliquo in mūnĕre. / Dōnum ab aliquo accipĕre.

Exercise 119.

Have we what we want? — We have not what we want. — What do we want? — We want a fine house, a large garden, a beautiful carriage, pretty horses, several servants, and much money. — Is that all we want? — That is all we want. — What must I do? — You must write a letter. — To whom must I write? — You must write to your friend. — Shall I go to the market? — You may go there. — Will you tell your father that I am waiting for him here? — I will tell him so. — What will you tell your father? — I will tell him that you are waiting for him here. — What wilt thou say to my servant? — I will say to him that you have finished your letter. — Have you paid (for) your table? — I have paid (for) it. — Has your uncle paid for the book? — He has paid for it. — Have I paid the tailor for the clothes? — You have paid him for them. — Hast thou paid the merchant for the horse? — I have not yet paid him for it. — Have we paid for our gloves? — We have paid for them. — Has your cousin already paid for his boots? — He has not yet paid for them. — Does my brother pay you what he owes you? — He does pay it me. — Do you pay what you owe? — I do pay what I owe. — Have you paid

(with the dative) the baker? — I have paid him. — Has your uncle paid the butcher for the meat? — He has paid him for it. — Have you paid your servant his wages? — I have paid them to him. — Has your master paid you your wages? — He has paid them to me. — When did he pay them to you? — He paid them to me the day before yesterday. — What do you ask this man for? — I ask him for my book. — What does this boy beg of me? — He begs of you some money. — Do you ask me for anything? — I ask you for a crown. — Do you ask me for the bread? — I ask you for it. — Do the poor beg money of you? — They beg some of me. — Which man do you ask for money? — I ask him for some whom you ask for some.

EXERCISE 120.

Whom have you asked for some sugar? — I have asked the merchant for some. — Of whom have the poor begged some money? — They have begged some of the noblemen. — Of which noblemen have they begged some? — They have begged some of those whom you know. — Whom do you pay for the meat? — I pay the butchers for it. — Whom does your brother pay for his boots? — He pays the shoemaker for them. — Whom have we paid for the bread? — We have paid our baker for it. — Of whom have they spoken? — They have spoken of our friend. — Do men speak of my book? — They do speak of it. — Of what do we speak? — We speak of war (*de bello*). — Do you not speak of peace? — We do not speak of it. — Are you content with your scholars? — I am content with them. — How old are you? — I am not quite ten years old. — Does your brother know Latin? — He does not know it. — Why does he not know it? — Because he has not learned it. — Why has he not learned it? — Because he has not had time. — Is your father at home? — No, he is gone to England. — Do you intend going to Italy this summer? — I do intend going thither. — Have you the intention of staying there long? — I have the intention of staying there during the summer. — How long does your brother remain at home? — Till twelve o'clock. — Have you had your gloves dyed? — I have had them dyed. — What have you had them dyed? — I have had them dyed brown. — Will you tell your father that I have been here? — I will tell him so. — Will you not wait until he comes back again? — I cannot wait.

Lesson LXIII. — PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM TERTIUM.

DATIVE AFTER THE PARTICIPLE IN "DUS."

A. After the participle in *dus* the agent is commonly expressed by the dative.* E. g.

* Compare Lesson XXV. *D.*

Legéndus míhi saépius *ést* Cáto májor.	I must read Cato the elder oftener.
Níhil *est hómini* tam *timéndum*, quam invídia.	Nothing is to be feared by men so much as envy.
Nôn *paránda nóbis* sôlum, sed *fruénda* étiam sapiéntia *est.*	Wisdom should not only be acquired by us, but also enjoyed.
Récto tíbi invictôque moriéndum ést.	You must die firm and unconquered.
Ut *tíbi ambulándum* et *ungéndum*, sic *míhi dormiéndum est.*	As you must walk and anoint yourself, so I must sleep.

Remarks.

1. Instead of the dative, the ablative with *a* or *ab* sometimes occurs, as after passive verbs. E. g. *Eros* a te *colendus est*, Eros must be worshipped by you. *Non majōres nostros* venerandos a nōbis *putātis?* Do you not think that our ancestors are to be venerated by us?

2. The dative is frequently omitted, and the agent left indefinite. E. g. *Graecis utendum erit lītteris*, It will be necessary to use Greek letters. *Consensio omnĭum gentĭum lex natūrae putanda est*, The consent of all the races of men is to be considered the law of nature. *Orandum est* (sc. *nōbis*),* *ut sit mens sana in corpore sāno*, We should pray for a healthy mind in a healthy body.

3. Passive verbs sometimes have the dative of the agent instead of the usual ablative with *a* or *ab*. E. g. *Audītus est* nobis (= a nobis) *Laeliae saepe sermo*, We have often heard the conversation of Lælius. Mihi (= a me) *consilium captum jam diu est*, The plan has been formed long ago by me. *Barbarus hīc ego sum, quia non intelligĭtur* ulli (= ab ullo), I am a barbarian here, since I am not understood by any one.

Verbs followed by two datives.

B. The verbs *sum*, *forem*, *fīo*, *do*, *venĭo*, and a number of others, are sometimes followed by two datives, of which one designates the person and the other the end or object.

Such are *do*, *accipio*, *habeo*, *relinquo*, *delĭgo*, *mitto*, *eo*, *venio*, and others of similar import. Also *duco*, *largior*, *tribuo*, and *verto*. E. g.

Hóc *ést míhi cúrae.*	I take care of this (It is my care, I attend to it).
Est tíbi honóri.	It is an honor to you.
Nobis ést *voluptáti.*	It is a pleasure to us.
Est argumḗnto.†	It serves as an argument.
Ámpla dómus *dedécori domino* saépe *fít.*	An ample mansion often becomes a dishonor to its master.

* The dative thus suppressed is generally *mihi*, *tibi*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *hominibus*, &c., and easily supplied from the context.

† See Remark 1.

Áttalus régnum súum *Románis dóno dédit.*
Attalus gave his kingdom to the Romans as a present.

Caêsar quínque cohórtes *cástris praesídio* relínquit.
Cæsar leaves five cohorts as a guard for the camp.

Pausánias vênit *Átticis auxílio.*
Pausanias came to the assistance of the Athenians.

Vírtus sôla néque *dátur dóno*, néque *accípitur.*
Virtue alone can neither be offered nor received as a gift.

Nímia fidúcia *calamitáti* sólet *esse.*
Too much confidence is wont to be a source of calamity.

Incúmbite, ut et *vóbis honóri*, et *amícis utilitáti* et *reipúblicae emoluménto esse* possítis.
Exert yourselves, so that you may be able to become an honor to yourselves, useful to your friends, and a source of profit to the commonwealth.

Remarks.

1. The dative of the person is frequently left indefinite, and that of the end or object alone expressed. E. g. *Hoc est honori, laudi,* This is an honor, laudable. *Vitam rusticam tu* probro *et* crimíni *putas esse,* You consider rural life a reproach and crime (sc. to any one). So several of the above examples.

2. Datives of this description are very frequent. The most common are *dare aliquid muněri, dono, praemio ; — relinquĕre aliquid custodiae, praesidio ; — aliquid est* or *putātur vitio, crimĭni, probro, opprobrio, laudi, salūti, utilitāti, emolumento ; — aliquid est curae, cordi, derisui, usui.* So also *canĕre receptŭi,* to sound the retreat; *opponĕre pignŏri,* to pledge or pawn. In this connection the verb *sum* frequently has the sense of the English *it affords, serves, brings,* &c.

3. Instead of the dative of the end or object, the nominative or accusative may also be put, and sometimes the preposition *ad* or *in.* E. g. *Hoc argumentum, indicium est,* This is proof, an indication (evidence). *Dedit mihi aliquid donum* (for *dono*). *Exercitum* ad *praesidium* (for *praesidio*) *reliquit. Dare aliquid* in *dotem,* To give anything as a dowry. So also *pro argumento est.*

C. After expressions like *mihi est nōmen* or *cognōmen,* the name of the individual is either in the nominative or dative, but sometimes in the genitive. E. g.

Ést mihi nômen Bálbus, Bálbo,* or Balbi.
My name is Balbus.

Nómina his *Lacumo* atque *Aruns* fuérunt.
The names of these (sons) were Lacumo and Aruns.

Cui póstea *Appio Claúdio* fúit nômen.
Whose name was afterwards Appius Claudius.

---

* The dative stands by *attraction* in the same sense as the pronoun *mihi* (*cui, altĕri,* &c.).

Quôrum *álteri Capitóni* fúit cognômen.	One of whom was surnamed Capito.
Nômen *Mercúrii* míhi est.	My name is Mercury.

REMARK. — After the expressions *dare*, *addere*, *indĕre*, *dĭcĕre*, *pōnĕre*, *impōnĕre* or *tribuĕre alicui nomen* or *cognōmen*, the name is commonly in the dative, but may also stand in the accusative. E. g. *Dare alicui cognomen* tardo *ac* pingui, To surname (nickname) one "the slow and the dull." *Cui* Ascanium *parentes dixēre nomen*, Whom the parents called Ascanius. And in the passive: — *Quibus nōmen* histrionibus *indĭtum est*, Who have received the name of histrions. *Cui cognomen* superbo *ex morĭbus dătum*, Who was surnamed "the proud," from his manners.

D. The verbs *aspergo* and *inspergo*, *circumdo* and *circumfundo*, *dono* and *impertĭo*, *indŭo* and *exŭo*, are construed either with the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing (*alicui aliquid*), or with the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing (*aliquem aliquā rē*). E. g.

Aspérgit *áram sánguine* (or *árae sánguinem*).	He besprinkles (stains) the altar with blood.
Déus *ánimum* circúmdedit *córpore* (or *córpus ánimo* circúmdedit).	The Deity surrounded the soul with a body.
Dóno *tíbi pecúniam* (or *tê pecúniā*).	I make you a present of money.
Teréntia *impértit tíbi múltam salûtem*.	Terentia sends you greeting.
Plúrimā salûte Parmenônem impértit Gnátho.	Gnatho presents his best compliments to Parmeno.
Índuit (éxuit) *sibi véstem*.	He puts on (takes off) his dress.
Caêsar *hóstes ómnes ármis* éxŭit.	Cæsar deprived all his enemies of their arms.

REMARKS.

1. So also *interclūdĕre alicui aliquid* or *aliquem aliquā re* and *ab aliquā re*, to cut one off from anything; and *interdīcĕre alicui aliquid* or *alicui* (but not *aliquem*) *aliquā re*. E. g. *Intercludit hostĭbus fugam, milĭtes intĭnĕre* or *ab exercĭtu*, He prevents the enemy's escape, prevents the march of the soldiers, cuts them off from the army. *Vitellius* accusatori aquā atque igne *interdixit*, Vitellius forbade the accuser the use of water and fire (i. e. exiled him).

2. In the passive the dative or ablative remain, and the accusative becomes the nominative. E. g. *Ara aspergĭtur sanguĭne* or *sanguis arae aspergĭtur*. — *Duabus quasi a natūrā indūti sumus personis*, We are by nature furnished as it were with two persons. *Doctrīnis aetas puerĭlis impertīri debet*, The age of boyhood ought to be furnished with instruction. *Interdicāmur aquā et igni*, Let us be prohibited from the use of water and fire.

DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

E. The dative is also put after certain particles. Such are: —

1. Adverbs, especially those derived from adjectives which govern the dative. As *propĭus, proxime, comĭnus, obvĭam, praesto; convenienter, congruenter, constanter, amīce*, &c. E. g. *Propĭus Tiberi, quam Thermopylis*, Nearer to the Tiber than to Thermopylæ. *Quam proxĭme hostĭum castris*, As close to the enemy's camp as possible. *Obvĭam ire alicui*, To go to meet any one. *Convenienter natūrae vīvĕre*, To live agreeably to nature. *Bene mihi, bene vobis, bene omnĭbus*, Health to me, to you, to all (in drinking).

2. The interjections *vae* and *hei*, and others. E. g. *Vae victis est! — Hei misĕro mihi! — Ecce tibi!* * *— Hem tibi talentum auri!* There is a talent of gold for you!

To eat, to take food. { *Ēdo, ĕre, ēdi, ēsum.* / *Cĭbum sūmĕre* (*capĕre, capessĕre*), *manducāre.*

PRES. IND. SING. ĕdo, ĕdis or ēs, ĕdit or êst; †
PLUR. ĕdĭmus, ĕdĭtis or êstis, ĕdunt.

PRES. SUBJ. SING. ĕdam or ĕdim, ĕdas or ĕdis, ĕdat or ĕdit;
PLUR. ĕdāmus or ĕdimus, ĕdātis or ĕditis, ĕdant or ĕdint.

To eat or to consume anything as food (*trans.*).	Ederе, manducāre aliquid.
To taste (anything as food or drink).	Gusto, āre, āvi, ātum (ALIQUID).
To feed or live upon.	Vescor, i, —— (CARNE, LACTE, &c.).
The breakfast.	Jentācŭlum, i, *n.*
The lunch.	Prandĭum, i, *n.*
The dinner.	Coena, ae, *f.*
The supper.	Cĭbus vespertīnus, i, *m.*
To breakfast.	Jento, āre, āvi, ātum.
To eat a lunch.	Prandĕo, ēre, prandi, pransum.
To dine.	Coeno, āre, āvi, ātum.
To sup.	Cĭbum vespertīnum sūmere.
At what time do you dine?	Quŏtā (*sc.* hŏrā) coénas?
I dine at five.	{ Quintā coéno. / Hŏrā quintā coéno.
Have you already dined?	Ecquid jám coenavísti?
I have dined long ago.	Coenávi profécto jám dûdum.

---

* See page 344.

† Several other syncopated forms of this verb resemble those of *esse*, but have *e* long by nature. E. g. *edere* or *êsse; editur* or *estur; ēdĕrem* or *essem* (Imperf. Subj.); *ēdis, ēdīte* or *ês, êste* (Imperat.), &c. The tenses derived from the second and third roots are regular.

I have dined earlier than you.	Égo matúrius coenávi quám tû.
Will you take a lunch with me?	Vísne prándium súmere apud mê (mêcum)?
I cannot; I have already eaten my lunch.	Nôn póssum; jám díu prándi.
Do you sup late?	Sumísne cíbum vespertínum séro?
I sup later than you.	Égo cíbum vespertínum súmo sérius quám tû.
Before me, you, him, us, &c.	*Ante mê, tê, éum, nôs, &c.*
After me, you, him, us, &c.	*Post mê, tê, éum, nôs, &c.*
Did you breakfast before your brother or after him?	Útrum jentavísti ante an post frátrem túum?
I breakfasted after him.	Post éum jentávi.
Do you wish to taste our wine?	Núm vis vínum nóstrum gustâre?
I do not wish to taste it.	Gustâre nôn cúpio.
On what do they live?	Quô cíbo vescúntur?
They live upon bread and milk.	Vescuntur pâne átque lácte.
To try, to make an attempt.	*Tento, āre, āvi, ātum.* / *Experior, īri, pertus sum.*
To try, endeavor (to do anything).	Conor, āri, ātus sum (ALIQUID FACERE).
Will you try (see) what you can do?	Vísne tentâre (experíri), quíd pósis?
To try the fortunes of war.	Fortūnam belli tentāre *seu* experīri.
Does your brother try to write a letter?	Tentátne frâter túus epístolam scríbere (*or* ut epístolam scribat)?
He is trying.	Téntat véro.
Are ye endeavoring to see?	Númquid spectâre conámini?
We are not endeavoring.	Nôn conâmur.
Will you try to do this?	Vísne tentáre hóc fácere (út hóc fácias)?
I have already tried (endeavored) to do it.	Id fácere jám tentávi (conâtus sum).
You must try to do it better.	Tentándum est, ut rém mélius fácias.
Have you tried (i. e. tasted) this wine?	Gustavistíne ístud vínum?
I have tasted it.	Gustávi.
Whom are you looking for?	Quém quaêris?
I am looking for one of my brothers.	Únum ex méis frátribus (quaéro).
An uncle of mine.	*Únus ex (de) méis pátruis.*
A neighbor of ours.	*Únus ex (de) nóstris vicínis.*
A relation of yours.	Únus ex (de) túis cognátis.
(Some) one of his cousins.	Áliquis ex (de) éjus consobrínis.
(Some) one of their friends.	Áliquis ex (de) eórum amícis.
A certain friend of ours.	Quídam ex nóstris amícis.

To inquire or look after some one.	Quaero, ĕre, quaesīvi, quaesītum aliquem.
To inquire after something.	Quaerĕre *seu* exquīrĕre aliquid (de aliquā rē).
Do they inquire after any one?	Quaerúntne áliquem?
They are inquiring after one of our relations.	Quaérunt véro ûnum ex cognátis nóstris.
Whom are ye looking for?	Quém quaérĭtis?
We are looking for one of your friends.	Quaérimus áliquem (quéndam) de familiáribus túis.
Are you looking for anything?	Quaerísne áliquid?
I am inquiring for the way.	Quaéro (exquíro, rógo) víam (íter).
Does he try to see me?	Tentátne mĕ vidēre? Ecquid mĕ visĕre téntat?
He is trying to see you.	Sáne, te vidēre (visĕre) téntat.
The parents.	Parentes, um, *m. pl.*
The acquaintance.	Nōtus, i, *m.*; amīcus, i, *m.*
A piece of bread.	Segméntum (frústum) pānis.
A glass of water.	Scýphus áquae.
A sheet of paper.	Plăgŭla (ae, *f.*) chártae.
The piece, fragment, bit.	Fragmentum, i, *n.* (broken off). Segmentum, i, *n.* (cut off). Frustum, i, *n.* (bit).
The small piece, bit.	Frustŭlum, i, *n.**
The little book.	Libellus, i, *m.*
The little house.	Domuncŭla, aedicŭla, ae, *f.*
The little heart.	Corcŭlum, i, *n.*
The little picture.	Imagiuncŭla, ae, *f.*
The little child, the baby.	Infantŭlus, i, *n.*
The little boy.	Puercŭlus, pupŭlus, i, *m.*
The suckling.	(Infans) lactens, tis, *m.*
The favorite, darling.	Delicĭae, ārum, *pl. f.*; amōres, um,† *pl. m.*
The apprentice.	Tīro, ōnis, *m.*; discípulus (artifícis), i, *m.*

Exercise 121.

Have you already dined? — Not yet. — At what o'clock do you dine? — I dine at six o'clock. — At whose house (*apud quem*) do you dine? — I dine at the house of a friend of mine. — With whom did you dine yesterday? — I dined with a relation of mine. — What have you eaten? — We have eaten good bread, beef, apples, and cakes. — What have you drunk? — We have drunk good wine, good beer, and good cider. — Where does your uncle dine to-day? — He dines with us. — At what o'clock does your father eat supper? — He eats supper at nine o'clock. — Do you eat supper earlier than he? — I eat

* On these diminutives compare page 89.
† On these *pluralia tantum* see page 70.

supper later than he. — At what o'clock do you breakfast? — I breakfast at ten o'clock. — At what o'clock did you eat supper yesterday? — We ate supper late. — What did you eat? — We ate only a little meat and a small piece of bread. — When did your brother sup? — He supped after my father. — Where are you going to? — I am going to a relation of mine, in order to breakfast with him. — Do you dine early? — We dine late. — Art thou willing to hold my gloves? — I am willing to hold them. — Who has held your hat? — My servant has held it. — Will you try to speak? — I will try. — Has your little brother ever tried to do exercises? — He has tried. — Have you ever tried to make a hat? — I have never tried to make one. — Have we tasted that beer? — We have not tasted it yet. — Which wine do you wish to taste? — I wish to taste that which you have tasted. — Have the Poles tasted that brandy? — They have tasted it. — Have they drunk much of it? — They have not drunk much of it. — Will you taste this tobacco? — I have tasted it already. — How do you find it? — I find it good. — Why do you not taste that cider? — Because I am not thirsty. — What is your name? — My name is Charles (*Carŏlus*). — What is the name of your father? — His name is William (*Wilhelmus*). — Is his name not Frederic (*Frederĭcus*)? — No, it is James (*Jacŏbus*). — Is this an honor to you? — No, it is a disgrace.

Exercise 122.

Whom are you looking for? — I am looking for the man who has sold a horse to me. — Is your relation looking for any one? — He is looking for an acquaintance of his. — Are we looking for any one? — We are looking for a neighbor of ours. — Whom dost thou look for? — I look for a friend of ours. — Are you looking for a servant of mine? — No, I am looking for one of mine. — Have you tried to speak to your uncle? — I have tried to speak to him. — Have you tried to see my father? — I have tried to see him. — Have you been able to see him? — I have not been able to see him. — After whom do you inquire? — I inquire after your father. — After whom dost thou inquire? — I inquire after the tailor. — Does this man inquire after any one? — He inquires after you. — Do they inquire after you? — They do inquire after me. — Do they inquire after me? — They do not inquire after you, but after a friend of yours. — Do you inquire after the physician? — I do inquire after him. — What do you ask me for? — I ask you for some meat. — What does your little brother ask me for? — He asks you for some wine and some water. — Do you ask me for a sheet of paper? — I do ask you for one. — How many sheets of paper does your friend ask for? — He asks for two. — Dost thou ask me for the little book? — I do ask you for it. — What has your cousin asked for? — He has asked for a few apples and a small piece of bread. — Has he not breakfasted yet? — He has breakfasted, but he is still hungry. — What does your uncle ask for? — He asks for a glass of wine. — What does the Pole ask for? — He asks for a small glass (*scyphŭlus*) of brandy. — Has he not already drunk? — He has already drunk, but he is still thirsty.

Lesson LXIV. — PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM QUARTUM.

SYNTAX OF THE GENITIVE.

A. A noun determining another noun is put in the genitive, in answer to the question *Whose? Of whom? Of what?* E. g.

Dómus *Caésaris*. Árbores *silvârum*. *Belli* calámitas. Flúmina *néctaris*.	The house of Cæsar. The trees of the forests. The calamity of war. Rivers of nectar.
Ámor *virtûtis*. Lectio *librôrum*. Desidérium *ótii*. Spês *salûtis*.	The love of virtue. The reading of books. The desire of ease. The hope of safety.
Cústos *virtûtum ómnium* verecúndia ést.	Reverence is the guardian of every virtue.
Singulôrum facultátes et cópiae divítiae súnt *civitâtis*.	The property and resources of individuals constitute the wealth of the state.
Núma *divíni* aúctor *jûris* fúit, Sérvius cónditor *ómnis* in civitâte *discríminis ordĭnúmque*.	Numa was the institutor of divine law, Servius the founder of all the distinctions and orders in the state.
Vita *mórtuum* in memóriā *vivôrum* est pósita.	The life of the dead depends upon the memory of the living.

Remarks.

1. The genitive serves to express a variety of relations, such as origin or source, cause and effect, quantity, quality, measure, time, character, the whole of a given mass or number, the object of an activity, the material of which anything is made, &c.

2. The genitive thus depending on a noun may represent either the subject or the object of the activity or state implied in this relation, and is hence called either *subjective* or *objective*. Thus *pater amat* gives rise to the subjective *amor patris*, the father's love (towards the son); but (*pater*) *amat filium*, to the objective *amor filii*, the (father's) love of (i. e. towards) his son. So also *homĭnum facta*, the deeds of men, and *lux solis*, the light of the sun (subjective); but *remedium dolōris*, the remedy *against* pain; *taedium labōris*, disgust *for* labor.* Sometimes, though rarely, both these genitives occur in the same construction; as, *Caesāris translātio pecuniārum*, Cæsar's transfer of the funds. *Attici mĕmor officii*, Mindful of the favor of Atticus. *Multa* Theophrasti oratiōnis *ornamenta*, Many of the ornaments of Theo-

* The relation expressed by the subjective genitive is in English indicated by the possessive case, or by "of"; that of the objective by "of," "for," "towards," "against," and similar prepositions.

phrastus's style. *Inexplebĭlis* honōrum Marii *fames*, Marius's insatiable desire of honors.

3. Sometimes the context alone can determine whether a genitive is subjective or objective. Thus *metus regis* may be either the fear entertained by the king, or the fear of the king entertained by some one else. To prevent ambiguity, the Romans commonly put, instead of the objective genitive, the accusative or ablative, with one of the prepositions *in* or *erga*, towards; *in* or *adversus*, against; *cum*, with; *ab* or *ex*, from, on the part of, &c. E. g. *Amor meus* erga *or* in *te*, My affection for (towards) you. *Metus* ab *hoste*, Fear from the enemy. *Odĭum* in *or* adversus *aliquem*, Hatred against any one. *Amicĭtia* cum *aliquo*, Friendship for any one. *Cura* de *republĭcā*, Anxiety for the commonwealth.

4. The objective genitive is sometimes a personal pronoun. E. g. *Accusator mei*, My accuser. *Commendatio tui*, The recommendation of you. *Ratio sui*, Regard for one's self. *Misericordia vestri*, Compassion on you. *Cura nostri*, Care for ourselves. But the subjective genitive is commonly represented by the possessive pronoun; as, *liber meus, tuus, noster*,* &c.

5. The genitive is sometimes put instead of an appositum. So frequently after *vox*, *nomen*, *verbum*, and *vocabulum*; as, *Haec vox voluptātis*, This word "pleasure." *Appellatio domini, patris*, The appellation "master," "father." *Ex amōre nomen amicĭtiae ductum est*, The name of friendship is derived from love. *Triste est nomen ipsum carendi*, The very name of "want" is painful. Thus also *Arbor fici*, The fig-tree. *Promontorium Misēni*, The promontory Misenum.

6. An adjective sometimes supplies the place of the genitive. E. g. *Aliēna* (= *aliōrum*) *vita*, The life of others. *Venus Praxitelia* (= *Praxitĕlis*), The Venus of Praxiteles. *Hercules Xenophontĕus* (= *Xenophontis*), The Hercules delineated by Xenophon. *Vis hiemālis* (= *hiĕmis*), The severity of winter. *Hostĭlis* (= *hostis*) *libĭdo*, The wantonness of the enemy.

7. The dative sometimes expresses a relation similar to that of the genitive, and stands in place of it. E. g. *Castris praefectus*, The commander of the camp. *Munīmentum libertāti*, A bulwark of (to) liberty. *Legātus fratri*, The lieutenant of his brother. *Caput Latio*, the capital of Latium. *Ego* huic causae *patronus exstiti*, I have come out as the defender of this cause. *Naturā tu* illi *pater es, consiliis ego*, You are his father by nature, and I by advice.

8. The noun on which the genitive depends is sometimes omitted. This takes place, —

---

* Yet this rule is sometimes reversed, the possessive pronoun being put instead of the genitive, and the latter for the former. E. g. *Origo sui* (= *sua*), His origin. *Conspectus* vestri (= vester) *venerabilis*, Your venerable aspect. And on the other hand, *invidĭa, fiducia tua* (for *tui*), Envy towards, confidence in you. *Injūriae meae* (for *mei*), Injuries done to me. So always *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā causā* (never *mei causā*, like *hominis causā*), For my (your, &c.) sake, on my account.

a.) When it has already been expressed, and can easily be supplied from the context. E. g. *Julius quaestor Albucii fuerat, ut tu Verris*, Julius had been quæstor to Albucius, as you to Verres. *Animi lineamenta sunt pulchriora, quam corpŏris*, The features of the mind are fairer than *those* of the body. *In portum, qui Menelai vocātur*, Into the port which is called the port of Menelaus.

b.) When it is one of the words *aedes, homo, civis, servus, libertus, uxor, filius, filia, discipŭlus, sententia*, or the ablative *causā*. E. g. *Ad Vestae, Jovis Statōris* (sc. *aedem*), To the temple of Vesta, of Jupiter Stator. *Verania Pisōnis* (sc. *uxor*), Verania, the wife of Piso. *Hasdrŭbal Gisgōnis* (sc. *filius*). *Caecilia Metelli* (sc. *filia*). *Hujus video Byrrhiam* (sc. *servum*). *Flaccus Claudi* (sc. *libertus*). *Vitandae suspiciōnis* (sc. *causā*), For the sake of avoiding suspicion. *Contra Philōnis* (sc. *sententiam*), Against the opinion of Philo.

THE GENITIVE OF QUALITY AND MEASURE.

B. In connection with an adjective or numeral, the genitive frequently expresses the relations of property, quality, character, age, time, measure, or number. E. g.

Vír et *consĭlii mágni* et *virtūtis*.	A man of great judgment and virtue.
Óppidum *máximae auctoritātis*.	A town of distinguished authority.
Púer *décem annōrum*.	A boy of ten years.
Fóssa *quíndecim pédum*.	A ditch of fifteen feet.
Clássis *septuagínta návium*.	A fleet of seventy ships.
Claúdius érat *somni brevíssimi*, sc. homo.	Claudius was a man of very little sleep.
De linguā Latínā *sécuri* es *ánimi*.	You are unconcerned about the Latin language.
Júvenis evâsit vére *indŏlis régiae*.	He turned out really a youth of royal disposition.
Classis *mille* et *ducentārum návium longārum* fúit.	The fleet consisted of a thousand and two hundred galleys.

REMARKS.

1. The quality may also be expressed by the ablative with *praedĭtus, instructus*, or *ornātus* understood, and the extent of time or space by the accusative, with *nātus, lātus*, or *longus* expressed. E. g. *Vir summo ingenĭo* (sc. *praedĭtus*), A man of (endowed with) the highest genius. *Fossa quindĕcim pedes lata*, A ditch fifteen feet wide. *Puer decem annos nātus*, A boy twelve years of age.

2. The accusatives *sĕcus, gĕnus, pondo*, and *lĭbram* (or *pl. libras*), occur instead of the genitive in expressions like *liberi virile secus*, Male children. *Aliquid id genus* (= *ejus generis*), Something of that kind. *Aves omne genus* (= *omnis generis*), Birds of every species. *Corona aurĕa libram pondo*, A golden crown of a pound in weight.

Willingly (gladly, with fondness).	*Cŭpĭdē, lĭbenter, lĭbenti anĭmo.* / *Lŭbens, tis; non invītus, a, um.*
More willingly (eagerly, gladly).	Libentĭus, pŏtĭus; libentiōri anĭmo.
Very (or most) willingly, &c.	Libentissĭmē, libentissĭmo anĭmo.
Unwillingly, with reluctance.	Invīto anĭmo, grăvāte. / Invītus, a, um.
To do anything willingly (to like to do it).	Fácĕre áliquid libénter, libénti ánimo, lúbens, &c.
To like, take pleasure in anything.	Delector, āri, ātus sum. / Gaudĕo, ēre, gavīsus sum. (ALIQUA RE.)
To love, to be fond of anything.	Amāre aliquid. / Appetĕre (-ivi, ītum) aliquid.
I like to see (look on).	Deléctor spectâre. / Júvat* mê spectâre.
I like to have (possess).	Deléctor (mê júvat) habêre (possidêre).
I like to study (am fond of my studies).	Gaúdeo stúdiis litterârum. / Ego lítteris studêre deléctor.
I like to eat, drink.	Júvat mê édere, bíbere. / Deléctor édere, bíbere.
I like to be called diligent.	Amo vocári díligens.
Do you like (are you fond of) wine?	Delectarísne bíbere vînum? / Appetísne vînum?
I do like it. I am very fond of it.	Deléctor véro. Máxime áppeto.
Is he fond of fish?	Juvátne éum comédere písces? / Appetítne písces?
He is fond of them.	Júvat. Appetit.
Do you like a large hat?	Núm píleo ámplo delectâris (gaúdes)?
No, I like a small (a tight) one.	Immo véro árcto gaúdeo (deléctor).
Do you like to hear my brother?	Écquid frâtrem méum aúdis libénti ánimo?
I do like to hear him.	Aúdio éum nôn invítus.
I do not like to hear him.	Ego éum invíto ánimo aúdio.
I am extremely fond of hearing him.	Aúdio éum libentíssime.
I am extremely anxious to see him.	Flágro cupiditâte éjus vidéndi.
Do they like to do it?	Faciúntne id (hoc) libénter?
They do not dislike to do it.	Id nôn invíti fáciunt.
Chicken.	(Cāro) gallīnācĕa.
Fowl.	Altĭles, *f. pl.* or altĭlĭa, *n. pl.*

* An impersonal verb: "It pleases, delights me." Perfect: *Jŭvit mĕ, tŭ, ĭum*, &c.

Fish.	Pisces, ium (*pl. of* piscis, is, *m.*).
Pike.	Esōces, *pl. of* esox, ōcis, *m.*
Salmon.	Salmōnes, *pl. of* salmo, ōnis, *m.*
Trout.	*Truttae, *pl. of* trutta, ae, *f.*
Do you like (are you fond of) chicken, fowl, pike?	Delectarísne comédere gallináceam, altília, esóces?
I like all these things very wéll.	Éa ómnia máxime áppeto.
I do not like them.	Comédere nôn deléctor. / Ómnia haêc nôn cómedo nísi invítus.
By heart; from memory.	*Memŏrĭter* (Adv.); *ex memoriā.*
To learn by heart, to commit to memory.	*Edisco, ĕre, edĭdĭci, ——.* / *Memoriae mandāre*, or *committĕre* (ALIQUID).
To commit verbally, in part.	Ediscĕre aliquid ad verbum, per partes.
To know by heart.	Memoriā tenēre, in memoriā habēre (ALIQUID).
Have you learnt your exercises by heart?	Edidicistísne pénsa imperâta?
We have learnt them.	Edidícimus profécto.
We have faithfully committed them to memory.	Memóriae éa fidéliter mandávimus (commísimus).
Do you know them by heart?	Tenêsne éa memóriā?
I do not know them.	Nôn téneo.
Do your scholars like to learn by heart?	Écquid discípuli túi memóriae committere delectántur?
They do not like it.	Nôn delectántur.
Does he learn his lesson by heart?	Ediscítne pénsum súum?
He does commit it word for word.	Ediscit véro ad vérbum.
How often? How many times?	*Quăm saepe? Quŏtĭēs? Quŏtĭens?*
Six times a day, a month, a year.	*Sexiēs in die, in mense, in anno.*
Once, twice, three, four, five times a week. (Cf. page 317, note †.)	Sĕmĕl, bis, tĕr, quăter, quinquies in hebdomăde.
How many times do you eat a day?	Quótĭes in díe cíbum súmere sóles?
I eat three times a day.	Ego tér in díe cíbum cúpere sóleo.
Does he eat as often as I?	Edítne (êstne) tám saepe quam ego?
He eats oftener; he eats five times a day.	Saépius édit quám tû; cíbum sûmit quínquies in díe.
What time (of the day) do you go out?	Quô témpore in públicum próditis?

We go out early in the morning.	Prodîmus in públicum primâ lûce mâne.
If (conjunction).	Si (cum Indic. & Subj.).
I intend to pay what I owe you, if I receive my money.	Ego quód tíbi débeo sólvere cógito, *si* pecúniam méam accípio.
Do you intend to buy wood?	Cogitâsne émere lígnum?
I do intend to buy some, if they pay me what they owe me.	Cógito véro aliquántum émere, *si* míhi pecúnias débitas sólvunt.
Do you reply, if (when) you are asked (questioned).	Respondêsne, si (cum) interrogâris?
I do reply.	Respóndeo.
The weather (= *sky, state of the weather*).	*Tempestas, ātis*, f.; *coelum, i*, n.; *coeli stătus, ūs*, m.
Good, clear, favorable weather.	Tempestas bŏna, serēna, opportūna.
Bad, windy, unfavorable weather.	Tempestas măla, ventōsa, adversa.
Warm, cold, very cold weather.	Tempestas calĭda, frĭgĭda, perfrĭgĭda.
Severe, stormy, cloudy weather.	Tempestas vĕhĕmens, turbulenta, nebŭlōsa.
Dark, moist, dirty, rainy weather.	Tempestas turbĭda, humĭda, spurca, pluviōsa.
Steady, excellent weather.	Tempestas certa, egregia.
A dry state of the atmosphere.	Sicca coeli qualĭtas; siccĭtas, ātis, *f.*
A fine, clear, serene sky (weather).	Sūdum coelum; coelum serēnum.
Changeable, inconstant weather.	Varĭum coelum; varietas coeli.
What sort of weather is it? How is the weather?	Quâlis tempéstas est? Quae est coéli quálitas?
It is fine weather at present.	Tempéstas núnc est bóna (serêna).
What sort of weather was it yesterday?	Quâlis érat tempéstas hestérna (héri)?
The weather was bad yesterday.	Málus érat coéli státus héri.
How is the weather to-day?	Quâlis est coéli státus hodiérnus?
It is fine, clear weather to-day.	Sūdum (serênum) hódie est coêlum.
It is neither very cold nor very warm to-day.	Tempéstas hodiérna néque perfrígida néque praecálida ést.
Is the weather damp (moist)?	Éstne coéli státus úvidus?
The weather is too dry.	Nímia ést síccitas. / Coéli quálitas nímis sícca est.
Dark, obscure.	Tenebrĭcōsus, a, um. / Coecus, a, um. / Caliginōsus, a, um.

Obscure, dusky, gloomy.	Obscūrus, a, um. Subobscūrus, a, um.
Clear, light.	Clārus, a, um. Illustris, is, e.
Dry.	Siccus, a, um.
Is it gloomy in your room?	Éstne cubículum túum obscûrum?
It is somewhat gloomy in it.	Est véro subobscûrum.
No, it is quite light in it.	Immo véro ádmodum est clârum (illústre).
Is the night a dark one?	Éstne nox caliginôsa?
Is it moonlight?	Éstne lûmen lûnae? Lucétne lûna?
It is.	Est. Lûcet véro.
There is no moonlight to-night.	Nox est illûnis. Lûna silet.
We have too much sun.	Nimis est sôlis.
We have no rain.	Térra est expers imbrium.
To perceive (to notice, mark, see).	(*Ocŭlis*) *percĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum.* *Cerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum.* *Notāre. Vidēre. Observāre.*
Have you perceived any one?	Ecquem (num quém) notavísti?
I have perceived no one.	Núllum (néminem) notávi.
Do you perceive the soldiers who are going into the storehouse?	Cernísne mílites íllos hórreum introeúntes (qui in horreum íněunt)?
I perceive those who are going in.	Cérno véro eos, qui íntro éunt.
I see the child which plays (played).	Ego infántulum ludéntem vídeo.
I see the man who has my money.	Vídeo hóminem, qui pecúniam méam ténet.
I perceive him, who is coming.	Ego éum, qui vénit, percípio.
I see also him, who owes me money.	Vídeo et éum (éum quóque), qui mihi pecúniam débet.
The soldier.	Miles, ĭtis, *m.*
Also (likewise).	Quŏque (*put after the emphatic word*), et, etiam.

Exercise 123.

Do you perceive the man who is coming? — I do not perceive him. — What do you perceive? — I perceive a great mountain and a small house. — Do you not perceive the wood? — I perceive it also. — Do you perceive the men who are going into the garden? — I do not perceive those who are going into the garden, but those who are going to the market. — Do you see the man to whom I have lent money? — I do not see the one to whom you have lent, but the one who has lent you some. — Have you perceived the house of my parents? — I have perceived it. — Do you like a large hat? — I do not like a large hat, but a large umbrella. — What do you like to do? — I like to write. — Do you like to see those little boys? — I do like to see them.

— Do you like beer? — I like it. — Does your brother like cider? — He does not like it. — What do the soldiers like? — They like wine and water. — Dost thou like wine or water? — I like both. — Do these children like to study? — They like to study and to play. — Do you like to read and to write? — I like to read and to write. — How many times do you eat a day? — Four times. — How often do your children drink a day? — They drink several times a day. — Do you drink as often as they? — I drink oftener. — How many times a year does your cousin go to the ball? — He goes thither twice a year. — Do you go thither as often as he? — I never go thither. — Does your cook often go to the market? — He goes thither every morning. — Do you often go to my uncle's? — I go to him six times a year. — Do you like fowl? — I do like fowl, but I do not like fish. — What do you like? — I like a piece of bread and a glass of wine. — What fish does your brother like? — He likes pike. — Do you learn by heart? — I do not like learning by heart. — Do your pupils like to learn by heart? — They like to study, but they do not like learning by heart. — How many exercises do they do a day? — They only do two, but they do them well. — Do you like coffee or tea? — I like both. — Do you read the letter which I have written to you? — I do read it. — Do you understand it? — I do understand it. — Do you understand the man who speaks to you? — I do not understand him? — Why do you not understand him? — I do not understand him because he speaks too badly. — Have you received a letter? — I have received one. — Will you answer it? — I am going to answer it (*Rescriptūrus sum*).

Exercise 124.

Do you intend going to the theatre this evening? — I do intend going thither, if you go. — Has your father the intention to buy that horse? — He has the intention to buy it, if he receives his money. — Has your cousin the intention to go to England. — He has the intention to go thither, if they pay him what they owe him. — Do you intend going to the ball? — I do intend going thither, if my friend goes. — Does your brother intend to study German? — He does intend to study it, if he finds a good master. — How is the weather to-day? — It is very fine weather. — Was it fine weather yesterday? — It was bad weather yesterday. — How was the weather this morning? — It was bad weather, but now it is fine weather. — Is it warm? — It is very warm. — Is it not cold? — It is not cold. — Is it warm or cold? — It is neither warm nor cold. — Did you go to the country the day before yesterday? — I did not go thither. — Why did you not go thither? — I did not go thither, because it was bad weather. — Do you intend going into the country to-morrow? — I do intend going thither, if the weather is fine. — Is it light in your room? — It is not light in it. — Do you wish to work in mine? — I do wish to work in it. — Is it light there? — It is very light there. — Can you work in your small room. — I cannot work there. — Why can you not work there? — I cannot work there because it is too dark. — Where is it too dark? — In my small room. — Is it light in that hole? — It is

dark there. — Is it dry in the street? — It is damp there. — Is the weather damp? — The weather is not damp. — Is the weather dry? — It is too dry. — Is it moonlight? — It is not moonlight; it is very damp. — Why is the weather dry? — Because we have too much sun and no rain. — When do you go into the country? — I intend going thither to-morrow, if the weather is fine, and if we have no rain. — Of what does your uncle speak? — He speaks of the fine weather. — Do you speak of the rain? — We do speak of it. — Of what do those men speak? — They speak of fair and bad weather. — Do they not speak of the wind? — They do also speak of it. — Dost thou speak of my uncle? — I do not speak of him. — Of whom dost thou speak? — I speak of thee and thy parents. — Do you inquire after any one? — I inquire after your uncle; is he at home? — No, he is at his best friend's.

Lesson LXV. — PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM QUINTUM.

THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE.

A. Nouns denoting a measure or weight, and adjectives or pronouns of the neuter gender denoting a part, are followed by the genitive of the whole.

The principal words of this class are: —

1. Substantives denoting, — *a.*) Definite measure; as, *medĭmnum, modĭus, concha; amphora, congĭus; sextarĭus, hemĭna; jugĕrum* (of land); *punctum, vestigium* (of time). *b.*) Definite weight; as, *as, libra, pondo, uncĭa, mĭna, talentum.* *c.*) Quantity or number in general; as, *mensura, modus, vis, copia, multĭtudo, acervus, numĕrus, grex, globus*, &c., and negatively *nihil.*

2. The nominative and accusative of the neuter adjectives* *tantum, quantum, aliquantum, multum, plus, amplius, plurĭmum, parum, mĭnus, minĭmum, nimĭum, dimidium, relĭquum, allud.*

3. The nominative and accusative of the neuter pronouns *hoc, id, illud, ĭdem, quod, quid*, with their compounds *aliquid, quidquam, quiddam, quidquid*, &c.

4. The adverbs *sat, satis, abunde, affātim, părum, partim*, and *nĭmis.*

EXAMPLES.

Conon *pecúniae quinquagínta talénta* cívibus súis donâvit.	Conon made his fellow-citizens a present of fifty talents.
Caêsar pópulo praeter *fruménti*	In addition to ten measures of corn

* Which in this construction are, however, always employed substantively.

dénos móllos ac *tótidem ólei líbras*, trecénos quóque núммos virítim divísit.	and as many libras of oil, Cæsar also divided among the people three hundred sesterces to each.
In *júgere Leontíni ágri medímnum* fére *trítici* sériturr.	At Leontini nearly a medimnum of wheat is usually sown on an acre of land.
Flúmĭna jám *láctis*, jám *flúmina néctaris* íbant.	Now streams of milk, now streams of nectar flowed.
Justítia *níhil* éxpetit *prétii*.	Justice seeks no reward.
Úndique ad ínferos *tantúndem víae* ést.	The distance to the other world is the same from every place.
Románi ab sôle orto in *múltum diéi* stetêre in ácie.	The Romans stood in battle array from sunrise till late in the day.
Gálli *hóc* síbi *solátii* proponébant.	The Gauls proposed this consolation to themselves.
Id tántum *hóstium*, quód ex advérso érat, conspéxit.	He saw only so much of the enemy as was in front of him.
Tíbi *ídem consílii* dô, quód mihîmet ípsi.	I give you the same advice as I do to myself.
Quíd caúsae ést, cúr philósophos nôn légant?	What is the reason why they do not read the philosophers?

Remarks.

1. After the neuter pronouns and adjectives *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *aliquid*, *quid?* *quantum*, &c. the genitive is sometimes again a neuter adjective used substantively; as, *aliquid boni*, *quiddam mali*, *quid novi?* &c. This construction is, however, confined to adjectives of the second declension. Those of the third, and comparatives in *us*, generally remain adjectives in agreement with the pronoun; as, *aliquid turpe*, *memorabile*;* *melĭus aliquid*; *quid gravĭus?*

2. The genitives *gentĭum*, *terrārum*, *loci*, and *locorum* after the adverbs *ubi*, *ubique*, *ubicunque*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *unde*, *hic*, *huc*, *eo*, *eodem*, *quo*, *quocunque*, *quoquo*, *aliquo*, and *longe* serve to add emphasis to the expression. E. g. *Ubi gentĭum?* *Ubi terrārum?* Where in the world? *Aliquo terrārum*, Somewhere, in some place or another. *Quo loci* for *quo loco*; *eōdem loci* for *eōdem loco*. To these add the expressions of time, *ad id locōrum*, up to that time; *adhuc locōrum*, up to this time; *interĕa loci*, meanwhile; *postĕa loci*, afterwards.

3. The adverbs *huc*, *eo*, and *quo*, in the sense of "degree" or "extent," are also put with a genitive. E. g. *Huc arrogantiae*, To this degree of arrogance. *Eo insolentiae*, To that extent of insolence. *Quo amentiae?* To what degree (extent) of folly?

4. Other adverbs construed with the genitive are *pridie* and *postridie*, and, among the later writers, *tum* or *tunc*. E. g. *Pridie ejus*

* But in connection with one of the second declension, sometimes also the genitive; as, *aliquid novi ac memorabilis*; *quidquam, non dico civilis, sed humani*. So, on the other hand, adjectives of the second declension are often in agreement with the pronoun; as, *aliquid bonum, novum*, equally correct.

diēi, on the day before (that); *postridie ejus diei*, on the following day;* *tum* (*tunc*) *tempŏris*, at that time, then.

5. Neuter adjectives in general, both singular and plural, are often employed substantively with a genitive by the poets and the prose-writers of a later date.† E. g. *Ad summum montis*, To the top of the mountain. *Reliquum noctis*, The rest of the night. *Medium* and *serum diēi*, The middle of, late in, the day. *In medio aedĭum*, In the midst of the house. *Extrēmo aestātis*, In the latter part of the summer. *Summa* (= *summae partes*) *pectŏris*, The upper parts of the chest. *Cujusque artis difficilima*, The most difficult parts of every art. *In occultis reconditisque templi*, In the secret recesses of the temple. *Subĭta belli*, The surprises of war. *Incerta casuum*, The uncertainties of chance. *Infrequentissĭma urbis*, The most unfrequented parts of the city.

6. When the adverbs of quantity *sat*, *satis*, *abunde*, *affātim*, *părum*, *partim*, and *nĭmis* are followed by the genitive, they may be regarded as substantives of the neuter gender. E. g. *Satis honorum, satis superque vitae erat*, There were honors enough, there was life enough, and even more than enough. *Potentiae gloriaeque abunde*, An abundance of power and glory. *Affatim est hominum*, There is a sufficiency of men. *Lepŏris părum*, But little wit. *Nĭmis insidiārum*, Too many stratagems. *Eōrum* partim *in pompā*, partim *in acie illustres esse voluērunt*, Some of them wished to distinguish themselves by their display, and others on the battle-field.

7. The demonstratives *id* and *tantum* are sometimes omitted when *quod* or *quantum* follows. E. g. *Medĭco* mercēdis quantum‡ *poscet, promitti jubēto*, Let the doctor be promised as large a fee as he demands. *Romānus exercĭtus*, quod *inter Palatīnum Capitolinumque collem* campi§ *est, complēverat*, The Roman army had filled the space included between the Palatine and Capitoline hills.

8. The genitive also occurs before the preposition *tĕnus*, "up to," and sometimes after interjections. E. g. *Pectŏris tenus*, Up to the chest. *O mihi nuntii beati!* O blessed harbinger to me! *Foedĕris* heu *tacĭti!* Alas for the tacit alliance!

GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

B. Partitives, including nouns, adjectives, pronouns, numerals, and adverbs, denoting a number, division, or part of a plurality, are followed by the genitive plural of the whole.

The partitives susceptible of this construction are,—

---

* But more frequently with the accusative: as, *pridie* or *postridie eum diem*.

† By Cicero and Cæsar rarely except in the plural. By Livy and Tacitus frequently in both numbers.

‡ *Tantum mercēdis, quantum*.

§ For *id campi, quod*.

1. Substantives denoting a certain number of countable objects, such as *centuria*, *legio*, *cohors*, *manipulus*; also *pars*, *decima* or *decuma*, *nihil*, &c.

2. The pronouns *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, *uterque alteruter*, *alius*, *solus*, *nullus*, *nemo*, *ille*, *hic*, *quis*, *qui*, and their compounds *quicunque*, *quisquis*, *aliquis*, &c. So also *multi*, *plurimi*, *plerique*, *pauci*, *quot*, *quotcunque*, *quotus*, *quotus quisque*, *aliquot*, *tot*, *ceteri*, and *reliqui*.

3. Comparatives and superlatives, inclusive of a few adjectives of superlative signification, like *unus* (the only one), *medius*, *princeps*.

4. Numerals, both cardinal and ordinal. Examples of all these are: —

Sérvius Túllius *équitum duódecim* scripsit *centúrias*.	Servius Tullius enrolled twelve squadrons of horse.
Nihil ómnium rérum mélius, quám ómnis múndus administrátur.	Of all things nothing is better regulated than the entire universe.
Piscium féminae majóres quám máres sunt.	Female fishes are larger than the males.
Promulgavêre lêgem, ut *cónsulum álter* ex plêbe crearêtur.	They promulgated a law, that one of the consuls should be chosen from among the people.
Animáliumália ratiônis expértia súnt, *ália* ratiône uténtia.	Some animals are destitute of reason, and others endowed with it.
Utérque nóstrum ad súum stúdium libéllos evolvêbat.	Both of us were unfolding manuscripts for our respective studies.
Cum *núllo hóstium* únquam congréssus ést.	He never fought with any of his enemies.
Némo mortálium ómnibus hóris sápit.	No man is wise at all times.
Múltae, *céterae istárum árbórum*.	Many, the rest of these trees.
Par *cuílibet superiórum regum*.	Equal to any one of the preceding kings.
Quótus quísque philosophórum?	How many among the philosophers?
Néque *stultórum quísquam* beâtus, néque *sapiéntium* nôn beâtus.	Not a single fool was ever a happy man, nor a wise man not happy.
Prior hórum in proélio cécidit.	The former of these fell on the battle-field.
Májor Nerônum. *Senióres* Pátrum.	The elder of the Neros. The senior senators.
Gallórum ómnium fortíssimi súnt Bélgae.	The bravest of all the Gauls are the Belgae.
Aristides *únus ómnium* justíssimus fuísse tráditur.	Aristides is said to have been the most just of all (his contemporaries).
Quórum quáttuor cónsules, *dúo* dictátor ac magister équitum fuérunt.	Of whom four were consuls, and two dictator and lieutenant-dictator.

Remarks.

1. The genitive singular of a collective may take the place of the genitive plural. E. g. *Cetĕri nostri ordĭnis*, The rest of our order. *Prīmus Romāni generis*, The first of the Roman nation. *Tōtius injustĭtiae nulla*, Of all the instances of injustice, none, &c.

2. Poets (and sometimes other writers) extend this construction to adjectives of the positive degree, and to substantives denoting a part of a genus. E. g. *Nigrae lanārum*, Black wool. *Vetĕres Romanorum ducum*, The older Roman generals. *Degenĕres canum*, Dogs of degenerate breed. *Pennatōrum animalĭum būbo et ŭtus*, Of the winged animals the owl and the horn-owl. — So also the perfect participle: *Delecti equĭtum*, The select of the horsemen. *Expediti milĭtum*, The light-armed portion of the army. — To these add *omnes* and *cuncti*, when they are used in the sense of *singŭli*. E. g. *Omnes Tarquinii generis*, Every one of the family of Tarquin. *Cunctae provinciārum*, All of the provinces.

3. The partitive (pronoun or adjective) commonly takes the gender of its genitive (as in all the above examples), but sometimes also that of another noun expressed or implied in its connection. E. g. *Indus omnĭum flumĭnum maxĭmus*, The Indus the largest of all rivers. *Hordĕum frugum omnĭum molissimum* est*, Barley is the softest of all grain. (*Ego*), *qui* plurĭma *mala* omnĭum Graecōrum *in domum tuam intŭli*, I who of all the Greeks have done your house the greatest injury.

4. An adverb may take the place of the partitive. E. g. *Caesar* omnĭum *fere* oratōrum *Latīne loquĭtur* elegantissime, Cæsar speaks the most elegant Latin of nearly all the orators. *Gallus* maxime omnĭum nobilium *Graecis litteris studŭit*, Of all the Roman nobles Gallus paid most attention to the literature of Greece.

5. The noun denoting the whole is sometimes put in the same case with the partitive. E. g. Duae filiae (= *duarum filiārum*) *harum*, altĕra *occīsa*, altera *capta est*, Of their two daughters, the one was killed and the other taken prisoner. This is done chiefly by poets and historians.

6. Instead of the genitive, the prepositions *ex*, *de*, *inter*, *in*, and *ante* are sometimes used, especially after superlatives, numerals, and *unus*. E. g. *Acerrĭmus* ex *omnĭbus nostris sensĭbus*, The acutest of all our senses. *Unus* ex (*or* de) *multis*, One out of many. *Acerrĭmus* inter *recusantes*, The most violent among those refusing. *Sapientissĭmus* in *septem*, The wisest among the seven (sages of Greece). Ex *quibus* (sc. *filiis*) *reliquit duos*, Of which (i. e. number of sons) she has left two.

7. When the partitive denotes the *entire number* referred to, it stands in the same case with its noun. E. g. (Nos) trecenti *conjurāvĭmus*, Three hundred of us have conspired. *Numerāte*, quot ipsi *sītis*,

* Superlatives thus frequently prefer the gender of the noun in agreement with them.

Count how many there are of you in all. Nostri (*poss. pron.*) septuaginta *cecidērunt*, Our men, seventy in number, fell. *Neque hi admŏdum sunt* multi, Nor does the (entire) number of these amount to many. (Cf. Lesson XVIII. *G.*)

8. When the pronouns and adjectives above enumerated as partitives do not denote parts of a whole, they stand adjectively in agreement with their nouns.* E. g. *Alter consul, doctissĭmus Romānus, multi, pauci, aliquot homĭnes, tot annos, quot habet*, &c. In this respect the English is generally a safe guide.

To speak of anything to any one.	*De aliquā rē lŏqui (sermōnem habēre, verba facĕre) cum aliquo (ad aliquem).*
Do you see the man, of whom I have spoken to you?	Vidêsne hóminem, *de quô* égo têcum locûtus sum?
I do not see the paper, of which you speak.	Égo chártam, *de quâ* lóquĕris, nôn vídeo.
I have purchased the horse, of which you have spoken to me.	Égo équum, *de quô* mêcum sermônem habuísti, pecúniā comparávi.
Has your father the books, of which I am speaking?	Habetne páter túus líbros, *de quibus* lóquor?
I see the boy whose brother has killed my dog?	Vidêsne púĕrum, *cújus* frâter cánem méum necâvit?
I see the child, whose father set out yesterday.	Vídeo infántem, cújus páter héri proféctus est.
I see the man, whose dog you have killed.	Vídeo hóminem, cújus cánem necavísti.
Do you see the people, whose horse I have bought?	Vidêsne hómines, *quôrum* équum égo émi.
I have seen the merchants, whose shop you have taken.	Vídi mercatóres, *quôrum* tabérnam conduxísti.
To take (hire, rent).	*Condūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum.*
To burn down (to be destroyed by fire).	*Deflagro, āre, āvi, ātum. Igni absumĕre. Flammā delēri.*
Do you wish to take (rent) my house?	Vîsne méas aédes condúcĕre?
I do not wish to take it.	Nólo éas condúcĕre.
Do you see the man, whose house (home) is burnt down?	Vidêsne hóminem, cújus domus deflagrâvit (igni absúmpta *or* delêta est)?
I do see him.	Vídeo.
I have had a talk with the man, whose library has been burned.	Égo cum hómine, cújus bibliothêca flámmis delêta est, collóquium hábui.
Have you read the book, which I have lent you.	Legístine líbrum, quém tíbi commodávi?

* Except *uterque*, which is always *horum, illorum, quorum uterque*. But also *quod utrumque exemplum*, both of which examples.

I have read it.	Fáctum est.
Have you the paper which you want (need)?	Habêsne chártam, quae tíbi ópus est?
I have that which I want (need).	Hábeo quae míhi ópus est.
I have what I want (need).	Hábeo quód míhi ópus est.
Which book have you?	Quém líbrum hábes?
I have that which I want.	Éam, quae míhi ópus est.
Which nails has the man?	Quôs clávos hómo hábet?
He has those which he needs.	Éos, quíbus índiget (quí éi ópus sunt).
Which gloves has he?	Quae digitábŭla hábet?
He has those of his brother.	Digitábŭla frâtris hábet.
I see the children to whom you gave apples.	Video liberos, quíbus mâla dedísti.
Of which men do you speak.	De quíbus homínibus lóquĕris?
I speak of those whose children have been assiduous.	Lóquor de ís, quôrum líbĕri diligéntes fuérunt.
Towards (to).	*Versus* (prep.).
Towards the south.	Ad merídiem vérsus.
Towards Italy.	In Itáliam vérsus.
Towards Dresden, Rome.	Drésdam, Rômam vérsus.*
The way to Berlin.	Vía (íter) Berolínum (vérsus).
The way from Berlin to Dresden.	Vía (íter) a Berolíno Drésdam versus (*or* ad Dresdam).
To take the way (to direct one's course towards).	*Íter álĭquo movēre* (*mōvi, mōtum*). *Cúrsum súum álĭquo dirigĕre* (*rexi, rectum*).
To enter upon (to take) a way (road).	*Viam* or *iter inīre* or *ingrĕdi.*
Which way has he taken?	Quórsum íter môvit (cúrsum súum diréxit).
He has taken the way to Leipsic.	Íter môvit Lípsiam vérsus. Cúrsum súum Lípsiam diréxit.
Which way will you take?	Quórsum íter movêre vis? Quám viam inîre vis?
I will take (enter upon) this way.	Ego hánc inîre (íngredi) cogíto.
And I that one.	Et égo íllam.
So that.	*Ut* (conj. with the subj.).
I have lost my money, so that I cannot pay you.	Pecúniam méam pérdidi, ut tíbi sólvere non póssim (nôn quéam).
He is sick, so that he cannot go out.	Aegrôtus est, ut in públicum prodíre nôn póssit.
He was also eloquent, so that no one excelled him in eloquence.	Fúit et disértus, ut némo éi pâr ésset eloquéntiā.
So (to such an extent or degree) — that.	*Ita* (*sic, tam, ĕo, adĕo, usque ĕo*) — *ut* (with the subj.).

* Compare Lesson LVI. *B.* and *C.*

He loved him so much, that he was commonly regarded as his son.	Éum *sîc* diligêbat, *ut* is éjus vúlgo haberêtur fílius.
Was he so stupid as to consider that life?	*Adeóne* érat stúltus, *ut* íllam vítam ésse arbitrarêtur?
For (conjunct.).	*Nam; enim* (with the indic.).
I cannot pay you; for I have no money.	Égo tíbi débitum sólvere néqueo. *Nam* pecúniâ cáreo.
He cannot come to your house; for he has no time.	Dómum túam venire nôn pótest. Nam ótium éi déest.
Advice is difficult, I see; for I am alone.	Vídeo difficile ésse consílium. Súm *enim** sólus.
Or (disjunctive conj.).	*Aut, vĕl, -vĕ.*
Either — or.	*Aut — aut.* *Vĕl — vĕl.* *Sive — sive.*

C. Obs. The disjunctive *aut* implies essential difference, and a mutual exclusion of things. *Vel* and the enclitic *ve*, a mere verbal difference. E. g.

Am I slave to you, or you to me?	Tíbi égo, *aut* tû míhi sérvus súm?
Enough of our affairs, or (and) even too much.	De nóstris rêbus sátis, *vel* étiam nímium múlta.
I maintain that things which can be seen or touched are real.	Ésse éa díco, quae cérni tangíve póssunt.
Either no one was ever a wise man, or if any one, Cato was.	*Aut* némo, *aut*, si quisquam, Cáto sápiens fúit.
Every body is either water, or air, or fire, or earth, or some mixture of these, or a part of them.	Ómne córpus *aut* áqua, *aut* áër, *aut* ignis, *aut* térraést, *aut* áliquid, quód ést concrêtum ex his, *aut* ex áliquâ párte eôrum.
The poets were recognized or received by the Romans at a comparatively late period.†	Sérius a Románis poétae *vel* cógniti *vel* recépti sunt.
The laws of the Cretans, which either Jove or Minos established, inured their youth to hardships.	Crêtum léges, quas *sive* Júpiter, *sive* Mínos sánxit,‡ labóribus erúdiunt juventûtem.

---

* *Enim* rarely stands in the first of the clause; *nam*, on the other hand, always.

† I. e. It was comparatively late before the Romans *either* recognized (knew) *or* received poets among them. Here *vel* is used, because the notion of recognizing and receiving do not exclude or contradict each other.

‡ *Sive — sive* express complete indifference, and are hence often rendered by *whether — or*. "Whether Jove or Minos, no matter which of the two," or "Either Jove or Minos, as you may choose to have it."

Exercise 125.

Did your cousin learn German? — He was taken ill, so that he could not learn it. — Has your brother learnt it? — He had not a good master, so that he could not learn it. — Do you go to the ball this evening? — I have sore feet, so that I cannot go to it. — Did you understand that Englishman? — I do not know English, so that I could not understand him. — Have you bought that horse? — I had no money, so that I could not buy it. — Do you go into the country on foot? — I have no carriage, so that I must go thither on foot. — Have you seen the man from whom I received a present? — I have not seen him. — Have you seen the fine horse of which I spoke to you? — I have seen it. — Has your uncle seen the books of which you spoke to him? — He has seen them. — Hast thou seen the man whose children have been punished? — I have not seen him. — To whom were you speaking when you were in the theatre? — I was speaking to the man whose brother has killed my fine dog. — Have you seen the little boy whose father has become a lawyer? — I have seen him. — Whom have you seen at the ball? — I have seen the people there whose horses and those whose carriage you bought. — Whom do you see now? — I see the man whose servant has broken my looking-glass. — Have you heard the man whose friend has lent me money? — I have not heard him. — Whom have you heard? — I have heard the French captain whose son is my friend. — Hast thou brushed the coat of which I spoke to you? — I have not yet brushed it. — Have you received the money which you were wanting? — I have received it. — Have I the paper of which I have need? — You have it. — Has your brother the books which he was wanting? — He has them. — Have you spoken to the merchants whose shop we have taken? — We have spoken to them. — Have you spoken to the physician whose son has studied German? — I have spoken to him. — Hast thou seen the poor people whose houses have been burnt? — I have seen them. — Have you read the books which we lent to you? — We have read them. — What do you say of them? — We say that they are very fine. — Have your children what they want? — They have what they want.

Exercise 126.

Of which man do you speak? — I speak of the one whose brother has turned soldier. — Of which children did you speak? — I spoke of those whose parents are learned. — Which book have you read? — I have read that of which I spoke to you yesterday. — Which paper has your cousin? — He has that of which he has need — Which fishes has he eaten? — He has eaten those which you do not like. — Of which books are you in want? — I am in want of those of which you have spoken to me. — Are you not in want of those which I am reading? — I am not in want of them. — Is any one in want of the coats of which my tailor has spoken to me? — No one is in want of them. — Do you see the children to whom I have given cakes? — I do not see them. — To which children must one give cakes? — One must give

some to those who learn well, and who are obedient and good. — To whom do you give to eat and to drink? — To those who are hungry and thirsty. — Which way has he taken? — He has taken the way to Vienna (*Vindobonam*). — Where did you reside when I was at Berlin? — I resided at Munich (*Monaci*). — Where was your father when you were at Bâle (*Basiliae*)? — He was at Strasburg (*Argentorati*). — Were you in Spain when I was there? — I was not there at that time; I was in Italy. — At what time did you breakfast when you were in Germany? — I breakfasted when my father breakfasted. — Can the physician come to-day? — He cannot come, for he is himself sick. — Is it true that every man is either good or bad? — It is true. — This lesson must either be written or learnt by heart. — We should never praise those who are (either, *vel*) bad or idle. — Did he come to your house last evening? — He had the headache, so that he could not come.

Lesson LXVI. — PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM SEXTUM.

OF THE GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

A. Many adjectives, especially those signifying an affection or activity of the mind, such as desire or disgust, knowledge or ignorance, and many of those denoting likeness, equality, community, property, plenty, and their opposites, are followed by the genitive of the object. E. g.

Graécŭli súnt *contentiônis cupidióres*, quam *veritâtis*.	The paltry imitators of the Greeks are fonder of contention than of the truth.
Graecârum litterârum Cáto *perstudiôsus* fúit.	Cato was very much devoted to the study of Greek literature.
Cónscia méns *récti* fámae mendácia rídet.	A mind conscious of rectitude laughs at the false reports of fame.
Cáto et *reipúblicae peritus* et *jûris consúltus* fúit.	Cato was experienced in public affairs and learned in the law.
Ómnes *immémŏrem benfícii* odérunt.	Every one hates the man who is forgetful of benefits received.
Cýri et *Alexándri símilis* ésse vóluit.	He wished to be like Cyrus and Alexander.
Víri própria est máxime fortitúdo.	Courage is pre-eminently characteristic of man.
Memória *communis* est *multârum ártium*.	Memory is common to many arts.

Gálli súnt hómines *insuéti labóris*.	The Gauls are men unaccustomed to labor.
Útinam tê, frâter, nôn sôlum *vítae*, sed étiam *dignitâtis méae superstitem* reliquíssem!	Would that I had left you, my brother, a survivor not only of my life, but also of my rank!
Referta quóndam Itália *Pythagoreórum* fúit.	Italy was formerly full of Pythagoreans.
Ínops senâtus *auxílii humáni* ad déos pópulum ac vôta vértit.	Destitute of human help, the senate directed the people and its prayers to the gods.

The adjectives thus followed by the genitive are those signifying, —

1. DESIRE OR DISGUST: — *avĭdus*, *cupĭdus*, *studiōsus*, *fastidiōsus*. So also *aemŭlus*, *amīcus*, *inimīcus*, *invĭdus*, which sometimes, however, have the dative.* E. g. *Cupĭdus*, *avĭdus contentiōnis*, Fond of contention. *Amīcus*, *inimīcus veritātis*, Friendly, hostile towards the truth. *Aemŭlus*, *invĭdus laudis*, Emulous, envious of praise. *Litterārum Latinārum fastidiōsus*, Averse to Latin literature.

2. KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, OR IGNORANCE: — *conscĭus*, *gnārus*, *certus*, *consultus*, *perītus*, *mĕmor*, *provĭdus*, *prudens*; — *insciŭs*, *nescĭus*, *ignārus*, *imperītus*, *imprudens*, *rūdis*, *immĕmor*. E. g. *Ejus rei conscĭus*, *gnārus*, *certĭor*, Conscious of, acquainted with, informed of, that thing. *Consilii certior factus*, Informed of the design. *Jūris consultus*, *prudens* or *perītus*, Learned, skilled, experienced in the law. *Mĕmor*, *immĕmor beneficii*, Mindful, forgetful of kindness. *Imprudens legis*, Ignorant of the law. *Imperītus belli*, Unskilled in warfare. *Rudis artĭum*, Ignorant of the arts.†

3. LIKENESS OR UNLIKENESS of mind, disposition, or character‡: — *simĭlis*, *consimĭlis*, *dissimĭlis*, *aequalis*, *par*, *dispar*; *proprius*, *publĭcus*, *sacer*, *affīnis*, *commūnis*, *socĭus*, *vicīnus*, *alienus*, *insuētus*; to which add *superstes* and *supplex*. (All these also with the dative.) — E. g. *Simĭlis homĭnis*, Like man (in character). *Dissimilis Alexandri*, Unlike Alexander. *Par*, *dispar alicūjus*, Equal, unequal to any one. *Aequalis tempŏrum illorum*, Contemporary with those times. *Proprium Romani generis*, Peculiar to the Roman nation. *Insŭla eorum dcōrum sacra*, An island sacred to those gods. *Commūnis utriusque nostrum*, Common to both of us. *Affīnis alicūjus culpae*, An accomplice to some crime. *Alienum suae dignitātis*, Foreign to his dignity. *Superstes aliōrum*, Surviving others. *Supplex Dei*, Supplicating God.

4. PLENTY OR WANT: — *plēnus*, *refertus*, *fertĭlis*, *inops*, *inānis*, *jejū-*

---

* Compare page 351.

† *Perītus consultus* and *rūdis* also occur with the ablative. E. g. *Omni genĕre litterārum perītus*, Familiar with every kind of literature. *Jureperītus* or *consultus* instead of *juris perītus*, &c. The adjective *conscius* may have either the genitive or dative of the thing, but the person is always in the dative. E. g. *conscius facinŏris* or *facinŏri*, privy to a crime; but ALICUI *conscium esse facinŏris*, to be in the secret of a crime with any one. SIBI *conscium esse alicūjus rei*, to be conscious of anything.

‡ Compare page 351.

nus; compos, particeps, expers, exheres; potens, impotens, consors, princeps, many of which are also construed with the ablative.* E. g. *Plēnus metus*, Full of fear. *Referta negotiatōrum*, Full of merchants. *Fertĭlis frūgum hominumque*, Abounding in produce and in men. *Inops auxilii*, Destitute of help. *Virtūtis, mentis compos*, Possessed of virtue, master of one's intellect. *Ratiōnis particeps, expers*, A partaker of reason, destitute of it. *Patĕrnōrum bonōrum exheres*, Disinherited of one's patrimony. *Sui potens*, Master of one's self. *Consors imperii*, Sharing command. *Eloquentiae princeps*, The first in eloquence.

REMARKS.

1. Poets, and their imitators in prose, extend this construction to many other adjectives, especially to those denoting an affection of the mind. E. g. *Ambiguus consilii, auxius* futūri, *benignus* vīni, *certus* scelĕris, *dubius* viae, *impiger* militiae, *integer* vitae, *interrĭtus* leti, *incautus* futūri, *incertus* sententiae, *laetus* labōris, *modĭcus* voluptātum, *pervicax* irae, *piger* periculi, *secūrus* futūri, *segnis* occasiōnum, *socors* futūri, *timĭdus* lūcis, &c., in all of which the genitive stands instead of the more usual ablative or accusative, with *de, in*, or *ad*. So after adjectives generally, the genitive is sometimes employed (by the same class of authors) instead of the ablative, to express the relation "with respect to," "in regard to," "in"; as, *Diversus morum*, Different in respect to manners. *Integer vitae*, Irreproachable in life.

2. The genitive *anĭmi* frequently serves as a sort of complement to adjectives of every kind, especially in the prose of a later date. E. g. *aeger, anxĭus anĭmi*, sick, anxious in mind; *atrox, caecus anĭmi*, of a ferocious, blind mind; *confusus, incertus anĭmi*, &c.

3. Some of the adjectives enumerated under this rule occur also with prepositions. E. g. *Prudens, rudis* in *jure civĭli*. — *Rudis* ad *pedestria bella*. — *Mihi* in *publĭcā re socius, in privātis omnĭbus* conscius *esse soles*.

GENITIVE AFTER PARTICIPLES IN "NS."

B. Participles in *ns* sometimes assume the character of adjectives, and then take the genitive instead of the case of their verbs.

The participles most frequently thus employed are *amans, appĕtens, colens, fugiens, intelligens, metuens, negligens, observans, retĭnens, tolĕrans, patĭens* and *impatĭens, tempĕrans* and *intempĕrans*, &c.

Examples are: *Amans patriae*, Attached to one's country. *Amantissĭmus fratris*, Most affectionate towards his brother. *Religiōnis colens, neglĭgens, contemnens*, An observer, neglecter, contemner of religion. *Patiens* or *impatiens inedĭae, frigŏris*, Capable or incapable

* *Potens, impotens, consors*, and *princeps* never occur with the ablative; *compos, particeps, expers, exheres*, rarely. Of the rest (*refertus, plenus*, &c.), some have the ablative even more frequently than the genitive. E. g. *Insŭla referta divitiis*, an island abounding in wealth.

of enduring hunger, cold. *Appetens laudis*, Eager for praise. *Sui despiciens*, Despising one's self. *Deōrum metuens*, Fearing the gods. *Sitiens virtūtis*, Thirsting after virtue. *Imminentium intelligens*, Aware of coming events. *Omnium rērum abundans*, Abounding in all things. *Insolens belli*, Unaccustomed to warfare.

Quis fámulus *amántior dómini*, quam cánis?	Is there any servant more attached to his master than the dog?
Súmus natúrā *appetentíssimi honestâtis.*	We are by nature covetous of honor.
Virtûtem ob éam rém laudárunt, quod *efficiens* ésset *voluptâtis.*	They lauded virtue merely because they considered it productive of pleasure.
Éques Românus est, *súi negótii* béne *gérens.*	He is a Roman knight, who manages his business well.

REMARKS.

1. Participles in *ns*, when used as such, are followed by the case of the verb to which they belong.* E. g. *patiens frigus, labōrem*, (actually) enduring cold, hardship; but *patiens frigŏris, labōris*, capable of enduring cold, hardship. (As participles proper, they denote a transient condition with reference to some particular time; as adjectives, a permanent capacity or quality.)

2. Verbals in *ax* likewise govern the genitive. E. g. Capax *imperii*, Capable of command. *Justĭtiae* tenax, Tenacious of justice. *Terra* ferax *arbŏrum*, A land abounding in trees. *Tempus* edax *rerum*, Time, the destroyer of things. *Vir cibi vinique capacissĭmus*, A man capable of holding a large quantity of food and wine. So also a few participles in *tus*, as *completus, consultus;* but these have already been included among the adjectives of *A*.

To run.	*Curro, ĕre, cŭcurri, cursum.* *Cursu tendĕre* (ALIQUO).
To run up (to), down, out, through, forth, &c.	Accurrĕre, dēcurrĕre, excurrĕre, percurrĕre, prōcurrĕre, &c.
To run away (flee).	Aufūgio, ĕre, fūgi, ——. Profūgio, ĕre, fūgi, ——.
Behind.	Post, pōne (*Prep. cum Acc.*).
Behind the door.	Post (pōne) fŏres.
Behind the stove.	Post (pōne) fornācem.
Behind the ear.	Post (secundum) † aurem.
Behind one's back.	Post tergum, post, &c.
To stand behind the door.	Pone fores assistĕre.
To run behind the house.	Post aedes currĕre.
Where is he running to?	Quŏ cúrrit? Quórsum cúrsu téndit?
He is running behind the stove.	(Téndit, cúrrit) post (pone) fornâcem.

* Cf. Lesson LXIX. *E.*

† *Secundum* = "close behind," "next to."

Where did they run to?	Quórsum cucurrérunt (cúrsu contendérunt)?
They ran behind the house into the woods.	Cucurrérunt pone aédes in sílvam.
Did they run away behind (towards) the trees?	Núm pone versus árbores aufugiébant?
They did not run away.	Nôn aufugiébant.
Where was he sitting?	Úbi sedêbat (considêbat)?
He was sitting behind the stove.	Sedêbat post (ad) fornâcem.
The stove.	Fornax, ācis, *f.*; camīnus, i, *m.*
The fireplace.	Fŏcus, i, *m.*
The oven.	Furnus, i, *m.*
The blow, knock.	Ictus, ūs, *m.*; verber, ĕris, *n.*; plāga, ae, *f.*
The push; the kick.	Pulsus, ūs, *m.*; ictus calcis *seu* pĕdis.
The stab.	Ictus, ūs, *m.*; plāga, ae, *f.*
The sting.	Punctum, i, *n.*
The blow with a stick.	Ictus bacŭli *or* fustis.
The stab with a knife.	Ictus cultri (cultelli).
The fisticuff.	Pugni ictus; cŏlăphus, i, *m.*
The sword stab.	Ictus gladii *or* ensis.
The sword.	Gladĭus, i, *m.*; ensis, is, *m.*
The broadsword, spade.	Spātha, ae, *f.*
The sabre.	Acinăces, is, *m.*
The point of a sword.	Mucro, ōnis, *m.*
To draw the sword.	Ensem (e vagīnā) edūcĕre. Gladium stringĕre (strinxi, strictum).
To sheath (put up) the sword.	Gladĭum (ensem) in vagīnam recondĕre (-condĭdi, condĭtum).
To be begirt with a sword, spade, sabre, &c.	Gladĭo, ense, spāthā, acinăce succinctum esse.
To push (any one with anything).	Offendo, ĕre, di, sum. Fŏdĭo, ĕre, fōdi, fossum. (ALIQUEM ALIQUA RE.)
To push, shove (any one out of doors, &c.).	Trūdo, ĕre, si, sum. Prōtrūdĕre (ALIQUEM FORAS, &c.).
To strike.	Fĕrĭo, īre, ——, ——. Percŭtĭo, ĕre, ussi, ussum. Pulso, āre, āvi, ātum.
To beat.	Caedo, ĕre, cecīdi, caesum. Verbĕro, āre, āvi, ātum.
To give one a beating.	Alĭquem verberāre, pulsāre, *or* verbĕrĭbus caedĕre.
To castigate, punish one with a lashing.	Alĭquem verbĕrĭbus castigāre. Verbĕrĭbus in alĭquem animadvertĕre (-ti, -sum).

To give one a blow, inflict a blow upon one.	Plāgam alicui inferre *or* infligere (-xi, ctum).
To give one a blow with the fist.	Alicui pugnum *or* colaphum, impingĕre (-pēgi, pactum).
To strike one into the face.	Alicui alapam ducĕre.
To strike one with fisticuffs.	Aliquem pugnis caedĕre (colaphis pulsāre).
To beat one with a stick.	Aliquem fusti verberāre.
To beat one with lashes (whip one).	Aliquem verberĭbus pulsāre (percutĕre).
To beat one to death.	Aliquem usque ad mortem mulcāre.
To be beaten, punished with a beating.	Vapŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum.* / Tergo plector. / Pulsāri et verberāri.
To wound one with a sword-cut.	Gladĭo aliquem caesim vulnerāre.
To wound one with a sword-stab.	Gladĭo aliquem punctim vulnerāre. / Gladii ictu aliquem vulnerāre.
To stab one.	Ictum alĭcūjus corpŏri infigĕre (-fixi, -fixum).
To stab one to one's heart.	Alĭcūjus pectus ictu confodĕre).
To give one a kick.	Pĕdis verbĕre aliquem ferīre. / Calce aliquem percutĕre (castigāre).
Did you give this man a blow?	Inflixistīne (intulistīne) hómini ísti plâgam?
I did give him one.	Sáne quídem; égo éi ûnam inflíxi (íntŭli).
Did that boy strike his fellow with the flat of the hand?	Duxitne púer ílle condiscípulo súo álăpam?
No, he struck him with the fist.	Nôn véro; impêgit éi cŏlăphum.
He gave each of them ten fisticuffs.	Impêgit éis dénos cŏlăphos.
Did they punish *him* with stripes?	Eúmne verbĕrĭbus castigábant? / In eúmne animadvertébant verbĕribus?
He did punish him (It is he that was punished).	Éum. In éum.
What was beaten?	Quís vapulâvit (verberâtus est)?
The soldier was beaten with a stick.	Verberâtus est míles fústi.
Was he beaten hard?	Pulsatúsne est acérbe?
Yes, he was beaten to death.	Verberâtus est véro úsque ad mórtem.
Were you wounded with the point of the sword?	Vulnerabarísne gládio púnctim?
No; I was wounded with the edge.	Nón véro; vulnerâbar caêsim.

* On *vapŭlo*, see Lesson XXXIII. *A.* Rem. 3.

Did they kick him?	Percusserúntne éum cálce (pédis verbéribus)?
They did not kick him.	Nôn percussérunt.
The (military) officer.	Praefectus militāris.
The firelock.	*Tēlum (i, *n.*) ignĭfĕrum.
The gun.	*Sclopētum, i, *n.*
The rifle.	*Bombarda, ae, *f.*
The cannon.	*Tormentum (i, *n.*) bellĭcum.
The pistol.	*Sclopētum minōris modi. / *Sclopētus mĭnor.
The powder.	*Pulvis (-ĕris, *m.*) pўrĭus.
The ball, bullet.	*Glans, -dis, *f.*
The cannon-ball.	*Glŏbus (i, *m.*) tormentis missus.
The shot; the report of a firelock.	Ictus, ūs, *m.*; frŭgor (ōris, *m.*) tēli ignĭfĕri.
The shot of a gun, pistol, cannon, &c.	Ictus sclopēti, sclopēti minōrĭs, tormenti, &c.
The thunder-clap.	Fulmĭnis ictus, *or simply* fulmen, ĭnis, *n.*
To load a gun.	Pulvĕrem cum glande in sclopētum indĕre (dĭdi, dĭtum).
To load a cannon.	Pulvĕrum cum glŏbo in tormentum indĕre.
To shoot, fire (with fire-arms).	*Emittĕre ictum tēlo ignifĕro.* / *Sonum edĕre (insonāre) tēlo ignifĕro.*
To shoot with a gun.	Glandes e sclopēto mittĕre. / Plumbum mittere.
To shoot with a pistol (for pleasure).	Sonum edĕre (insonāre) sclopēto minoris modi.
To fire with cannons.	Tēla tormentis mittĕre.
To shoot or discharge arrows.	Sagittas mittĕre.
To shoot at (some one or something).	*Peto, ĕre, īvi, ĭtum* (ALIQUEM *seu* ALIQUID TELO).
To fire at some one or something.	*Tēlo ignĭfĕro petĕre alĭquem seu alĭquid.*
To hurl a number of weapons (missiles) at one.	Tēla conjecĕre (-jēci, -jectum) in alĭquem.
Are you firing at any one?	Petísne áliquem télo ignífero?
I am firing at a bird.	Véro, vólucrem péto.
How many times did he fire at that bird?	Quóties íllum vólucrem sclopéto petívit?
He fired at it several times.	Petívit éum plúribus tempóribus.
How many times did the boy fire?	Quóties sónum púer édidit télo ignífero?

He has fired twice with a pistol.	Sónum bís édidit sclopéto minôris modi.
He has fired five times with a gun.	Sónum édidit (insónuit) quínquies sclopéto.
Did you shoot with a gun?	Mittebâsne glándes e sclopéto?
No, I fired with a cannon.	Ímmo véro têla mittêbam torménto.
Did you ever shoot with arrows?	Misistîne únquam sagíttas?
I have shot with them several times.	Mísi véro divérsis tempóribus.
They have discharged all their missiles on him.	Têla in éum ómnia conjecérunt.
Do you hear the report of a gun?	Audîsne fragōrem sclopéti?
No; but I hear the report of a cannon.	Nôn véro; aúdio aûtem fragōrem torménti béllici.
Did ye hear the report of thunder?	Audivistísne fragôrem fúlmĭnis?
It is so; we heard a thunder-clap.	Íta est; fúlmen (fúlminis íctum) audívimus.
What are they doing?	Quíd águnt?
They are bombarding the city with cannons.	Úrbem torméntis béllicis vérberant.
Why are you pushing him?	Cúr éum offéndis (fódis)?
I push him because he has pushed me.	Égo éum ob éam rém offendo (fódio), quód mê offendit (fŏdit).
Did you push him out of doors?	Trudistîne éum fóras?
I did not push him out.	(Éum) nôn protrúsi.

Exercise 127.

Do you intend buying a carriage? — I cannot buy one, for I have not yet received my money. — Must I go to the theatre? — You must not go thither, for it is very bad weather. — Why do you not go to my brother? — I cannot go to him, for I cannot yet pay him what I owe him. — Why does this officer give this man a stab with his sword? — He gives him a stab with his sword, because the man has given him a blow with the fist. — Which of these two pupils begins to speak? — The one who is studious begins to speak. — What does the other do, who is not so? — He also begins to speak, but he is neither able to write nor to read. — Does he not listen to what you tell him? — He does not listen to it, if I do not give him a beating. — What does he do when you speak to him? — He sits behind the oven without saying a word. — Where does that dog run to? — It runs behind the house. — What did it do when you gave it a beating? — It barked, and ran behind the oven. — Why does your uncle kick that poor (*miser*) dog? — Because it has bitten his little boy. — Why has your servant run away? — I gave him a beating, so that he has run away. — Why do those children not work? — Their master has given them blows with the fist, so that they will not work. — Why has he given them blows with the fist? — Because they have been disobedient. —

Have you fired a gun? — I have fired three times. — At whom did you fire? — I fired at a bird which sat on a tree. — Have you fired a gun at that man? — I have fired a pistol at him. — Why have you fired a pistol at him? — Because he gave me a stab with his sword. — Are you fond of contention? — I am not fond of it. — I am very much devoted to the study of Latin literature. — Why does your brother not work? — Because he is not accustomed (*insuetus*) to labor. — Do you wish to be like that man? — I do not wish to be like him. — Was Cyrus the equal (*par*) of Alexander? — He was not his equal. — Is your father skilled in the law (*jūris perītus*)? — He is not skilled in it. — Is the city full of (*referta*) strangers? — It is full of them. — Who was the first in eloquence among the Romans (*quis Romanorum*)? — Cicero was the first. — Are you attached to your country? — I am very much attached to it. — Can you endure hunger and cold? — I cannot endure (them). — Is he eager for praise? — He is excessively eager (*appententissimus*) for it. — What does it behoove us to be? — It behooves us to be thirsting after knowledge (*intelligentia*) and virtue.

Lesson LXVII. — PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

OF THE GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

A. After verbs of valuing or esteeming, and also after those of buying and selling, hiring and letting, the indefinite price or value is expressed by the genitive.

Such verbs are *aestĭmo*, *facĭo*, *pendo*, *dūco*, *pŭto*, *habĕo*; *aestĭmor*, *fio*, *pendor*, and *sum*; — *emo*, *mercor*, *vendo*, *venĕo*, *licĕo*, *taxo*; *stāre*, *constāre*, &c.

The genitives representing the indefinite price or value are, — *a*) Substantives like *nihĭli*, "(for) nothing"; *flocci*, *nauci*, *pĭli*, *pensi*, *teruncii*, *assis*, "for a trifle," "a mere song." *b*) The neuter adjectives *magni*, highly; *permagni*, very highly; *plūris*, more highly; *plurīmi*, very highly, or the most; *parvi*, but little (of little account); *minōris*, less; *minĭmi*, very little *or* least; and so *tanti*, *tantīdem*, *quanti*, *quantīvis*, *quanticunque*, so much, just so much, as much, &c. Sometimes with *prĕtii* expressed. Examples are: —

Cómmii rēgis auctóritas *mágni habebâtur*.	The authority of King Commius was held in high esteem.
Núlla vis aúri et argénti *plûris*, quam vírtus *aestimánda* ést.	No amount of gold or silver should be estimated higher than virtue.
Súmmum bónum *plúrimi aestimándum est*.	We must (should) attach the highest value to the summum bonum.

Právi hómines súa *párvi péndere*, aliêna cúpĕre sólent.	Bad men are accustomed to undervalue their own possessions and to covet those of others.
Nóli spectâre, *quánti* hómo *sit; párvi* énim *prétii ést*, qui jam *níhili sit.*	Never mind how much the man is worth, for he is worth but little who is already worthless.
Émit Cánius hórtos *tánti, quánti* Pýthius vóluit.	Canius has bought the garden for the price which Pythius demanded.
Véndo méum fruméntum non *plûris*, quam cétĕri.	I sell my grain no higher than others.
Tánti quódque málum *est, quánti* íllud taxávimus.	Every misfortune is of as much account as we have rated that.
Núlla péstis humáno géněri *plûris stétit*, quám íra.	No pest has cost the human family more than resentment.
De Drúsi hórtis *quánti licuísse* tû scríbis.	With reference to Drusus's garden you write, how much it was offered for.
Égo a méis mê amári et *mágni péndi* póstŭlo.	I want myself to be loved and esteemed by my friends.

REMARKS.

1. The *definite* value or price after the above verbs is expressed by a substantive in the ablative; as, *aestimāre aliquid pecuniā, tribus denāriis; vendere aliquid quinquaginta talentis*, &c. (Cf. Lesson LXXI. *A.*)

2. To the genitives of the price or value add *hūjus, boni*, and *aequi bonique* in expressions like *Rem* hujus *non facio*, I do not care *that* * for it. *Rem* boni *facio*, or *rem* aequi bonique *facio* (or *consŭlo*), I consider it just and proper, I acquiesce in it (let it be so).

3. The verbs *coeno* and *habĭto* likewise occur with the genitive of the price. E. g. *Quanti habĭtas?* What do you pay for your lodgings? *Tantine coenas, quanti habĭtas?* Do you pay as much for your dinner as you do for your lodgings?

4. *Aestimāre* also admits the ablatives *magno, pernagno, plurĭmo, parvo, minĭmo*, and *nihĭlo*; and after the verbs of *buying* and *selling*, these six ablatives are *always* put instead of their respective genitives. *Pro nihĭlo* may stand instead of *nihĭli* after *putāre, ducĕre*, and *esse*. E. g. *Aliquid* magni or magno (nihili, nihĭlo *or* nihil) *aestimāre*; — *emere* or *vendĕre aliquid* magno, parvo, plurĭmo, minĭmo (pretio); — *aliquid* pro nihĭlo *ducĕre, putāre*, to consider anything of no account.

5. The price or value may also be expressed by an adverb; as *cāre, bĕne, māle, grātis*, &c. E. g. *Hoc mihi* gratis (= nihilo) *constat*, This costs me nothing. *Aves pingues* care *venĕunt*, Fat birds fetch a high price.

B. Verbs of reminding, remembering, and forgetting

* I. e. A straw, rush. This was accompanied by a gesture on the stage.

are followed by the genitive of the person, and by the genitive or accusative of the object, remembered or forgotten.

Such verbs are *monĕo, admŏnĕo, commonĕo, commonefacĭo, alĭquem;** — *memĭni, reminiscor, recordor, obliviscor.*

Médicus rêgem módo *mâtris sororúmque*, módo *tántae victóriae appropinquántis admonêre* nôn déstitit.	The physician did not cease to remind the king, now of his mother and sisters, now of the magnitude of the approaching victory.
Mílites hortâtus ést, ut *reminiscerêntur prístĭnae virtûtis súae*, nêve *muliĕrum liberúmque oblivisceréntur.*	He exhorted his soldiers to remember their prowess exhibited on former occasions, nor to forget their wives and children.
Grammáticos *offĭcii súi commonêmus.*	We remind the philologians of their duty.
Discípŭlos *íd ûnum móneo*, ut praeceptóres súos nôn mínus, quam ípsa stúdia ámeut.	I remind learners of one thing only, which is, that they should love their teachers as they do their studies.
Somno ánimus *mémĭnit praeterĭtórum*, praeséntia cernit, futûra praévidet.	In sleep the mind recalls the past, beholds things present, and foresees the future.
Vivórum mémini, nec támen *Epicúri* lícet *oblivísci.*	I mention living authorities; nevertheless, Epicurus must not be forgotten.
Bóni súnt cíves, qui pátriae *benefícia meminérunt.*	They are good citizens, who are mindful of the benefits of their country.
Hómines ínterdum *rês praeclarissimas obliviscúntur.*	Men sometimes forget the most remarkable things.
Núnquam líberos méos adspício, quin Plancii *mérĭtum* in mê *recórder.*	I never look at my children but what I call to mind my obligations to Plancus.

Remarks.

1. Neuter pronouns and adjectives (e. g. *hoc, id, illud, quod, quid, quae, multa*, &c.) are invariably in the accusative after all the above verbs. E. g. Id *unum te admonĕo*, I remind you of this one thing. *Multa admonēmur*, We are reminded of many things. But the accusative of substantives occurs only after verbs of reminding or forgetting; as, *benefĭcia, mandāta tua memĭni* or *oblītus sum.*

2. *Memĭni* (in the sense of "I think of," or "I make mention"), *recordor*, and *moneo*, with its compounds, also take the ablative with *de*. E. g. *De homĭne importunissĭmo ne* meminisse *quidem volo*, I do not even wish to mention the importunate man. *De Herōde et de*

* Verbs of reminding have thus also an accusative of the person reminded. (Lesson LX. *C.*)

Mettio meminĕro, I will bear in mind Herod and Mettius. *Velim scīre, quid* de te *recordēre*, I should like to know what you recollect with reference to yourself. *Terentiam monēātis de testamento*, Remind Terentia of the will.

3. The accusative of the *person* (reminded of, remembered or forgotten) rarely occurs, except after *memīni*, when used in the sense of "I still remember or recollect" (a person seen or known before). E. g. *Antipătер*, quem *tu probe meministi*, Antipater, of whom you have an honorable recollection. *Cinnam memini, vidi Sullam*, I remember Cinna, I have seen Sulla. But *memento mei, nostri*, Remember me, us.

4. In this construction is included the expression *vĕnit mihi in mentem* (*aliquid* or *alicūjus rēi*), "something occurs to me." Thus, *Vĕnit mihi* Platōnis *in mentem*. — *Tibi* tuārum virtūtum *venĭat in mentem*. But also, Res *mihi in mentem venīebat*. — Omnia *mihi in mentem venērunt*.

C. The impersonal verbs *poenĭtet, pĭget, pŭdet, taedet, misĕret, verĭtum est, misĕrētur*, and *miserescit* are followed by the genitive of the object by which the emotion is excited, and by the accusative of the person affected.* E. g.

Sapiéntiam† núnquam *súi poénĭtet.*	Wisdom never repents of itself.
Mê civitātis *mórum píget taedétque.*	I am wearied and disgusted with the morals of the state.
Sunt hómines, *quôs líbídinis infamiaêque súae* néque *púdeat*, néque *taédeat.*	There are men who are neither ashamed nor disgusted by their own licentiousness and disgrace.
Núnquam *Átticum suscépti negótii pertaêsum ést.*	Atticus never grows weary of an undertaking once begun.
Misĕret tê aliórum, túi nec *míseret*, nec *púdet.*	You pity others, but for yourself you have neither compassion nor shame.
Cave *tê frâtrum*, pro frâtris salûte *obsecrántium, misereâtur.*	Beware of being moved to pity by the brothers beseeching you for the safety of their brother.
Ínopis núnc *tê miseréscat mêi.*	Let my poverty now move you to pity.
Nihílne *tê pópuli verêtur*, qui vociferâre in viâ?	Are you not afraid of the people, for vociferating in the street?

REMARKS.

1. The personal verbs *miserĕor* and *miseresco*, "I pity," adopt the construction of *misĕret;* but *miserāri* and *commiserāri* are followed by the accusative. E. g. *Nihil nostri miserēre?* Have you no compassion

* Compare page 334.

† Wisdom is here personified.

for us? *Miserescĭte reĭis*, Pity the king. *Commiserātus est* fortūnam *Graeciae*, He commiserated the fate of Greece.

2. The accusative of neuter pronouns may stand instead of the genitive. E. g. *Sapientis est proprĭum, nihil*, quod (= cujus) poenitēre *possit, facere*, It is characteristic of a wise man to do nothing which he may have to repent of.

3. The object of the emotion may also be an infinitive, or a clause introduced by *quod*. E. g. *Me non pŭdet* fatēri *nescire, quod nesciam*, I am not ashamed to confess, that I am ignorant of what I do not know. *Quintum poenĭtet*, quod *animum tuum offendĭt*, Quintus is sorry that he has offended you. *Non poenĭtet me vixisse*, I do not regret having lived.

4. The genitive after *pŭdet* sometimes signifies "*before* any one," and the accusative (*me, te*, &c.) is often omitted. E. g. *Me* tui, *mi pŭter, pudet*, I am ashamed before you, my father. *Pudet deōrum hominumque*, It is a shame in the eyes of gods and men. *Nonne te hujus templi, non urbis, non vitae, non lūcis pudet?* Are you not ashamed *before* this temple? &c.

5. These impersonal verbs sometimes (though rarely) occur personally (i. e. in the plural, and with a subject nominative). E. g. *Non te haec* (nom.) *pudent?*

To forget.	*Obliviscor, i, oblītus sum* (ALICUJUS, ALICUJUS REI or ALIQUID).
You forget — he forgets.	Oblivisceris — oblivisciter.
Ye forget — they forget.	Oblivisciminī — obliviscuntur.
Is he forgetting me, thee, us, them?	Ecquid méi, túi, nostri, illôrum oblivíscitur?
He is not forgetting thee, me, us, them.	Túi, méi, nóstri, illôrum nôn oblivíscitur.
Are you forgetting anything?	Obliviscerísne áliquid (alicújus rei)?
I am forgetting my pen, my paper, my book.	Oblivíscor véro méam pénnam, chártam, librum (*or* méae pennae, chartae, líbri).
Has he forgotten to bring you the book?	Oblītúsne ést tíbi líbrum apportâre?
He has forgotten to bring it to me.	Véro; éum míhi apportâre oblītus ést.
Have you forgotten that he has arrived?	Oblitúsne és, éum advenísse?
I have not forgotten it.	Nôn oblītus súm.
Can you forget that day?	Potésne oblivísci diéi illíus?
I can never forget it.	Ego éjus núnquam oblivísci pósum.
Must the offences be forgotten?	Obliviscendúmne est offensârum?
They are to be forgotten entirely.	Obliviscéndum est prórsus.
Has he forgotten what I have told him?	Oblitúsne ést, quód (quae) éi díxi?

He has by no means forgotten it.	Nôn véro; mínime oblítus est.
You have forgotten to write to me.	Lítteras ad mê dáre oblítus és.
You are forgetting to speak to him.	Cólloqui cum éo oblivísceris.
To belong to (*any one*).	*Est alĭquid alicūjus.* *Est meus, tuus, ejus,* &c.
Does this horse belong to your brother?	Éstne híc équus frâtris túi?
It does belong to him.	Ést éjus.
To whom does that table belong?	Cújuséstílla ménsa?
It belongs to us, to you, to them.	Nostra, vestra, illôrum (ménsa) est.
To whom do these gloves belong?	Cújus sunt haec digitábula?
They belong to me, to you, to him.	Méa, túa, éjus (illius) súnt.
They belong to the captains.	Centuriônum (digitábula) súnt.
Whose book is this?	Cújus est híc líber?
It is mine.	Méus ést.
Whose shoes are these?	Cújus súnt hí cálcei?
They are ours.	Nóstri súnt.
To fit (*suit, become*).	*Aptum* (*am, um*) *esse.* *Bĕne convenire* (*-vēni, -ventum*). (ALICUI, ALICUI REI, AD ALIQUID.)
These shoes fit very well.	Hí cálcei ad pédes (pédibus) ádmodum ápti súnt (ad péles óptime convéniunt).
Do these boots fit those men?	Aptaêne súnt illis víris ístae cáligae?
They do not fit them.	Nôn áptae súnt. Íis nôn béne convéniunt.
Does this garment fit me?	Vestísne haec mĭhi ápta est (béne cónvenit)?
It fits (suits) you very well.	Tíbi ut quae optíssima est. Tíbi quám óptime cónvenit.
How does this hat sit?	Quómodo híc píleus sédet?
It sits very well.	Ádmodum béne sédet.
It becomes you very well.	Tê quám óptime décet.
See, whether this dress becomes me.	Contémpla, satín' haec mê véstis déceat.
To suit, please (any one).	Convenire alicui. Placēre (-cui, -cĭtum) alicui. Probāri alicui.
Does that cloth suit (please) your brother?	Convenítne (placétne) frátri túo íste pánnus?
It does suit him.	Plácet. Probâtur.
Do these boots suit (please) your friends?	Écquid hae cáligae amícis túis plácent (convéniunt)?

They do suit them. — Plácent. Probántur.

They do not suit them. — (Ís) mínus plácent. / Nôn probántur (ís).

Does it suit you to do this? — Convenítne tíbi hóc fácere?

It does suit me to do it. — Íd fácere míhi cónvenit.

To become (morally). / *It becomes, is morally proper.* — *Dĕcet, decuit, decēre* (Impers.). (ALIQUEM FACERE ALIQUID). Est alicujus, est meum, tuum, &c. (ALIQUID FACERE).

Does it become you to do this? — Decétne tê hóc fácere? / Tuúmne ést hóc ágere?

It does not become me to do it. — Íd fácere mê nôn décet (mê dédecet).

Did it become him to write? — Eúmne scríbere decêbat (décuit)? / Ejúsne érat scríbere?

It did become him. — Decêbat. Érat éjus.

Does it become you to go on foot? — Decétne tê (tuúmne est) íre pédibus?

It does not become me. — Mê nôn décet. Méum nôn ést.

It does not become an orator to be angry. — Oratôrem irásci mínime décet.

It is proper, just. — *Par est, justum est* (ALIQUEM FACERE ALIQUID).

Is it proper for him to say so? — Éstne pâr (jústum), éum hóc dícere?

It is proper, just. — Pâr est. Jústum est.

It is not proper. — Pâr nôn est. Néfas est.

To please, to be one's pleasure (It pleases). — *Lĭbet, libĭtum est, libēre. / Collibet, collibitum est,* &c. */ Plăcet, placuit, placēre.* (ALICUI FACĔRE ALIQUID.)

Does it please your brother to accompany us? — Libétne (collibétne) frátri túo séqui (comitári) nôs?

Does it suit your brother to go along with us? — Convenítne frátri túo nobíscum únā símul íre?

It does not please him to go with you. — Éi nôn plácet (líbet) vobíscum únā íre.

It does not suit him to go with you. — Símul (únā) vobíscum íre éi nôn cónvenit.

Did it please him to write to you? — Collibitúmne (placitúmne) ést éi litteras dáre ad tê?

It did please him. — Collíbitum est.

What is your pleasure? — Quid tíbi cóllibet?

What do you wish? — Quid vís (ímperas)?

I wish you to bring me the book? — Vólo, tê míhi apportâre líbrum.

Do you want anything? — Núm quíd vis? Núm quid ímperas?

Do you want anything else?	Núm quíd céterum vis?
As you please.	Ut plácet. Ut júbes.
But concerning the republic, it does not please me to write any more.	Sed de repúblicâ nôn míhi líbet plûra scríbere.
To please (to like).	*Plăceo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum.* *Prŏbor, āri, ātus sum.* *Arrīdĕo, ēre, īsi, īsum* (ALICUI).
Does this book please you (do you like this book)?	Probatúrne (placétne) tíbi hícce líber?
I like it very much.	Pérplacet. Válde míhi probâtur.
I dislike it extremely (it displeases me very much).	Veheménter míhi dísplicet. Ab éo abhórreo.
Do you dislike these books?	Núm líbriílli tíbi dísplicent?
They do not displease me (I do not dislike them).	Míhi nôn dísplicent (nôn improbántur).
I do not like them very well.	Mínus míhi probántur. Mínus míhi arrídent.
How do you like it here (i. e. this place)?	Quómodo híc lócus tíbi plácet (probâtur)?
I like it very well.	Híc lócus míhi arrídet (míhi válde plácet, probâtur).
I like this place extremely.	Híc lócus míhi praeter ómnes arrídet.
It is my delight.	Est in delíciis méis.
To displease (to dislike).	Displíceo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum. Improbor, āri, ātus sum.
Ready money, cash.	*Pecunia praesens* seu *numerāta.*
To pay down (cash).	*Sólvere pecúniam praesentem* (*numerâtam*).
To buy anything for cash.	Émĕre aliquid pecúniā numerátā (die oculátā).
To sell anything for cash.	Véndere aliquid pecúniā praesenti (díe oculáta).
On credit.	Pecúniā nôn praesénti *seu* numerátā. Díe caécā.
To buy, sell anything on credit.	Émere, véndere aliquid pecúniā nôn praesénti *seu* díe caécā.
Do you wish to buy on credit?	Visne émere pecúniā nôn praesénti (die caécā)?
No, I wish to buy for cash.	Ímmo véro pecúniā numerátā émere cúpio.
I prefer to buy for cash.	Díe oculátā émere málo.
Does it suit you to sell me on credit?	Convenítne tíbi véndere míhi pecúniā nôn praesénti (díe caécā)?
It does not suit me.	Nôn cónvenit.
To succeed, prosper, turn out well (of things).	*Cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum.* *Procēdĕre. Succēdĕre.*

To succeed (in an attempt, of persons).	*Procēdit, -cessit, -cedĕre.* *Contingit, contĭgit, contingĕre.* (MIHI, UT .... SUBJ.)
The thing succeeds well, is very successful.	Ea rês cêdit (procêdit, succêdit) béne, prósperе, felíciter, faúste.
My undertaking succeeded, was successful.	Incéptum míhi béne céssit, procéssit, succéssit.
My designs were not succeeding very well.	Consília míhi mínus (párum) cedébant (procēdébant succēdébant).
Do you succeed in learning Latin?	Procedítne tibi, ut línguam Latínam díscas? Procedísne in línguā Latínā?
I do succeed (in it).	Procêdit véro felíciter. Procēdo véro prósperе.
I do not succeed in learning it.	Míhi nôn contíngit, ut éam edíscam. Párum (minus) procédo.
Did those men succeed in selling their horses?	Contigítne víris íllis, ut équos súos vénderent?
They did not succeed.	Nôn cóntigit.
If my attempts should succeed.	Si incéptis succéderet.* Si incépta míhi succéderent.
He succeeded in liberating his country from slavery.	Huíc cóntigit, ut pátriam ex servitûte in libertâtem vindicâret.
There is. There are.	*Est. Sunt.*
He is here, present, at hand.	*Ádest. Ad mánum est.*
There are here, present, at hand.	*Ádsunt. Ad mánum sunt.*
Is there any wine?	Éstne (adéstne) vînum?
There is some.	Est. Ádest. Ad mánum est aliquántulum.
There is none.	Nôn est. Núllum ádest.
Are there any apples?	Adsúntne mâla?
There are some.	Sunt (ádsunt) áliquot.
There are none.	Nôn sunt. Núlla ádsunt.
Are there any men (here)?	Adsúntne hómines?
There are some.	Ádsunt nonnúlli.
Is any one present?	Adéstne áliquis (quísquam)?
There is no one.	Némo ádest.
Was there any one here?	Adfuítne áliquis?
There was some one here.	Ádfuit véro nôn némo.
Were there many there?	Aderántne múlti (hómines)?
There were a great many there.	Áderant permúlti. Áderat vis (cópia, multitúdo) mágna.
Are there men who will not study?	Súntne hómines, qui lítteris studêre nólunt (nólint)?

* On the personal and impersonal use of these verbs, compare Lesson LV. *B.* III.

There are many who will neither work nor study.	Permúlti súnt, qui nêve laborâre nêve lítteris studére vólunt (vélint).
There are those whom it delights to cultivate the arts and sciences.	Súnt quos ártes studiáque cólere júvat.
There are many who are fond of being engaged in the liberal arts and sciences.	Múlti súnt, qui in ártibus ingénuis versári delectántur.
To keep, retain.	*Tĕnĕo, ĕre, ŭi, ntum.* *Retĭnĕo, ĕre, ŭi, ntum.*
To clean, cleanse.	*Mundo, āre, āvi, ātum.* *Mundum facĕre, emundāre.*
Directly, immediately.	*Stătim, e vestĭgio, actūtum.*
This instant.	E vestigio, hōc in vestigio tempŏris, confestim.
Clean.	Mundus, a, um.
The inkstand.	*Atramentārium, i, *n.*
Instantly, in a moment, suddenly.	Puncto (momento) tempŏris; extemplo.
Will you keep the horse?	Visne retinêre équum?
I will (keep it)	Vólo.
I do not desire to keep it.	Retinêre éum nôn cúpio.
You must not keep my money.	Pecúnia méa tíbi nôn retinénda est. Pecúniam méam tenêre tê nôn opórtet.
Will you clean my inkstand?	Visne mihi emundâre atramentárium?
I will clean it.	Fácere nôn nólo.

Exercise 128.

Have you brought me the book which you promised me? — I have forgotten it. — Has your uncle brought you the handkerchiefs which he promised you? — He has forgotten to bring me them. — Have you already written to your friend? — I have not yet had time to write to him. — Have you forgotten to write to your parents? — I have not forgotten to write to them. — To whom does this house belong? — It belongs to the English captain whose son has written a letter to us. — Does this money belong to thee? — It does belong to me. — From whom hast thou received it? — I have received it from the men whose children you have seen. — To whom do those woods belong? — They belong to the king. — Whose horses are those? — They are ours. — Have you told your brother that I am waiting for him here? — I have forgotten to tell him so. — Is that your son? — He is not mine; he is my friend's. — Where is yours? — He is at Dresden. — Does this cloth suit you? — It does not suit me; have you no other? — I have some other, but it is dearer than this. — Will you show it to me? — I will show it to you. — Do these boots suit your uncle? — They do not suit him, because they are too dear (*nimis carus*). — Are these

the boots of which you have spoken to us? — They are the same. — Does it suit you to go with us? — It does not suit me. — Does it become you to go to the market? — It does become me to go thither. — Did you go on foot into the country? — It does not become me to go on foot, so that I went thither in a carriage.

Exercise 129.

What is your pleasure, Sir? — I am inquiring after your father. — Is he at home? — No, Sir, he is gone out. — What is your pleasure? — I tell you that he is gone out. — Will you wait till he comes back again? — I have no time to wait. — Does this merchant sell on credit? — He does sell on credit. — Does it suit you to buy for cash? — It does not suit me. — Where have you bought these pretty knives? — I have bought them at the merchant's whose shop you saw yesterday. — Has he sold them to you on credit? — He has sold them to me for cash. — Do you often buy for cash? — Not so often as you. — Have you forgotten anything here? — I have forgotten nothing. — Does it suit you to learn this by heart? — I have not a good memory, so that it does not suit me to learn by heart. — Have you succeeded in writing a letter? — I have succeeded in it. — Have those merchants succeeded in selling their horses? — They have not succeeded therein. — Have you tried to clean my inkstand? — I have tried, but have not succeeded in it. — Do your children succeed in learning the English? — They do succeed in it. — Is there any wine in this cask? — There is some in it. — Is there any brandy in this glass? — There is none in it. — Is wine or water in it? — There is (*inest*) neither wine nor water in it. — What is there in it? — There is vinegar in it. — Are there any men in your room? — There are some there. — Is there any one in the storehouse? — There is no one there. — Were there many people in the theatre? — There were many there. — Are there many children that will not play? — There are many that will not study, but few that will not play. — Hast thou cleaned my trunk? — I have tried to do it, but I have not succeeded. — Do you intend buying an umbrella? — I intend buying one, if the merchant sells it me on credit. — Do you intend keeping mine? — I intend giving it back again to you, if I buy one.

Lesson LXVIII. — PENSUM DUODESEPTUAGESIMUM.

GENITIVE AFTER VERBS. — *Continued.*

A. After verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, acquitting, and the like, the name of the crime is put in the genitive.

Such verbs are *arguĕre, coarguĕre, insimŭlāre, increpāre, increpŭāre, urgēre*, to charge (accuse); — *accusāre, incusāre, agĕre, deferre; arcessĕre, postulāre*, to accuse, arraign; summon; — *interrogāre*, to call to an account; — *se alligāre, se adstringĕre*, to become guilty of; — *tenēri, obstringi, obligāri*, to be guilty of; — *convincĕre, captāre*, to convict; — *judicāre, damnāre, condemnāre*, to condemn; — *absolvĕre, solvĕre, liberāre, purgāre*, to acquit, absolve. E. g.

Cícero Vérrem *avarítiae nímiae coárgŭit.*	Cicero charged Verres with excessive avarice.
Cannénsem quísquam exércitum *fúgae* aut *pavóris insimulâre* pótest?	Can any one accuse the army, which fought at Canna, of flight or cowardice?
Gálba étiam *saevítiae* pópŭlum *increpŭit* edícto.	Galba, in an edict, reproved the people for cruelty even.
Miltíades *accusâtus est proditiónis.*	Miltiades was accused of treason.
Qui áltĕrum *incûsat próbri*, éum ípsum sĕ intuéri opórtet.	He who charges another with dishonor should look into his own breast.
Caêsar Dolabéllam *repetundârum* * *postŭlâvit.*	Cæsar arraigned Dolabella on the charge of extortion.
Fúrti se *obligâvit.*	He was guilty of theft.
Themístocles ábsens *proditiónis est damnātus.*	Themistocles, in his absence, was condemned for treason.
Júdex éum *injuriârum absŏlvit.*	The judge acquitted him of the charge of personal injury.
Senâtus néc *liberâvit éjus cúlpae* rêgem, néque *árgŭit.*	The senate neither absolved the king from that charge, nor accused him of it.

Remarks.

1. The genitive of the crime may be explained by *crimĭne* or *nomĭne*† understood. These ablatives are sometimes actually put. E. g. *Ne absens* invidiae crimĭne *accusarētur.* — Nomĭne scelĕris conjurationisque *damnati sunt.*

2. Genitives of the crime are *peccāti, maleficii, scelĕris, caedis, furti, veneficii, parricidii, peculātūs, falsi, injuriārum, repetundārum, proditiōnis, majestātis; — probri, avaritiae, audaciae, temeritātis, ignaviae, impietātis*, and others.

3. Instead of the genitive, the ablative with *de* or *in* is sometimes put. E. g. De pecuniis repetundis *accusatus est.* — *Roscium* de luxuriā *purgāvit.* — In crimĭne *incendii convicti sunt.* — In manifesto peccāto *tenebātur.* So also: *Inter sicarios damnātus est*, He was condemned as an assassin.

4. The punishment or fine to which any one is condemned, is likewise expressed by the genitive; more rarely by the ablative.‡ Thus

* Sc. *pecuniārum*, of money to be reclaimed, i. e. extorted.
† On the charge or accusation of, under the title of.
‡ But always the ablative when a *definite* sum is named. E. g. *Quindecim millĭbus gravis aeris est damnātus.*

mortis, capĭtis, multae, pecūniae, quadrupli, octupli, or *morte, capĭte, multā, pecuniā damnāri.* Sometimes also by *ad* or *in;* as, *ad poenam, ad bestĭas, ad metalla, in metallum, in expensas damnāri.* E. g. *Miltiades* capĭtis *absolūtus,** pecuniā *multatus est.* — Tertiā parte *agri damnati sunt.* — *Multos* ad metalla, aut ad bestias *damnāvit.* The poets put also the dative; as, *morti damnātus.*

5. The construction of the above verbs extends to several adjectives; as *reus, compertus, noxĭus, innoxĭus, insons, manifestus,* &c. E. g. *Reus est injuriārum,* He is accused of trespass. *Manifestus rērum capitalĭum,* Clearly convicted of a capital offence. *Noxĭus conjuratiōnis,* Guilty of conspiracy. *Sacrilegii compertus,* Found guilty of sacrilege.

B. After *esse* and *fĭĕri* the genitive often stands elliptically, *res, negotĭum, mŭnus, officĭum, proprĭum,* or some other word signifying *part, business, duty, office, property,* &c., being understood. E. g.

Néque hóc *tánti labôris est, quánti* vidêtur (sc. *esse*).	Nor is this *a matter* of as much difficulty as it seems to be.
Est júdicis, nôn quid ípse vélit, sed quíd léx et relígio côgat, cogitâre.	It is *the business* (*duty*) of a judge to consider, not that which he himself may desire, but what the law and religion enforce.
Est adolescéntis, majóres nátu veréri.	It *belongs to* a young man to respect those older than himself.
Hóc *doctôris intelligéntis est,* vidêre, quô férat natûra súa quémque.	It is *the part* of an intelligent instructor, to examine the natural aptitude of every one.
Túrdi ingénii est, rívŭlos consectâri, fóntes rêrum nôn vidêre.	It is *the sign* (*characteristic*) of a dull head, to follow the course of things, and not to see their causes.
Cujúsvis homĭnis est errâre; *nullius,* nísi *insipiéntis,* in errôre perseverâre.	Every man *is liable* to err, but none but a fool will persevere in error.
Ars *eârum rérum est,* quae sciúntur.	Science *relates to* those things which are the objects of cognition.
Petulántia magis *est adolescéntium,* quam *sénum.*	Petulance is characteristic rather of young than of old men.
Ómnia, quae *mulĭeris fuérunt, víri fiunt.*	Everything, which *belonged to* the woman, becomes the property of the husband.
Thébae *pópŭli Románi* jûre bélli *fáctae súnt.*	Thebes became the property of the Romans by right of war.

* "Released from capital punishment." Thus also *capĭtis accusāre* or *arcessĕre,* to arraign one on a capital charge; *capĭtis* or *capĭte anquirere, damnāre, condemnāre,* to doom or condemn one to death. A similar idiom is *voti* or *votōrum damnāri,* to have one's wish fulfilled or granted (*lit.* to be condemned to redeem one's vow).

Jám mê *Pompēii* tōtum *ésse* scīs.	You know that I am already entirely for Pompey.
Família pecuniáque *agnatōrum gentiliúmque ésto.*	The slaves and money shall become the property of the relations and members of the *gens*.

REMARKS.

1. The ellipsis of *negotium*, &c., which is commonly assumed to explain this construction, is sometimes expressed. E. g. *Non hōrum tempŏrum* negotium *est.* — *Sapientis est* proprium.* — *Id judĭcis, vĭri, praeceptōris* mūnus *est.* — Officium *lĭbĕri esse hominis puto.* In all of which examples the omission of these words would leave the sense unaltered.

2. The genitive of the personal pronoun is never put, but instead of it the neuter of the corresponding possessive. Hence *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum est*, and not *mei, tui*, &c. *est.* E. g. *Non est mentīri* meum, Lying is not my business (not characteristic of me). *Est* tuum, *vidēre, quid agātur*, It is your part (it belongs to you) to see what is at stake. *Fuit* meum *jam pridem patriam lugēre*, It was long ago my lot to mourn over my country.†

3. This rule extends also to verbs of *esteeming, believing*, and to passives of *appearing, seeming*, &c., generally with *esse* understood. E. g. *Tutelae nostrae duxīmus*, sc. *esse*, We considered it a matter subject to our intervention. *Duri hominis vidētur*, sc. *esse*, It seems to betray a cruel man. *Tempŏri cēdĕre, semper* sapientis *est habĭtum*, To yield to circumstances has always been considered characteristic of a prudent man.

4. When the genitive has a gerundive connected with it, *esse* stands in the sense of "to contribute or conduce to." E. g. *Regĭum imperĭum initio* conservandae libertātis *atque* augendae rei publicae *fuit*, At first the royal government contributed to the preservation of liberty, and to the advancement of the common weal.

5. In this construction are included the expressions *moris est* (= *est in more, est in more posĭtum*), or *consuetudĭnis est*, It is a characteristic feature of the manners and customs (e. g. of the Greeks, &c.); *est opĕrae* (= *est opĕrae prĕtium*), it is worth while, &c.; instead of which *mos est, consuetudo est* (e. g. *Gallorum, Graecōrum*), may also be employed.

C. The impersonal verbs *interest* and *rēfert* are followed by the genitive of the person interested or concerned, but where a personal pronoun is required, by the possessives *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, and *cūjā.*‡ E. g.

---

* Compare page 352, note ‡.

† So also other adjectives in place of the genitive. E. g. *Hoc patrium* (= *patris*) *est.* — *Et agĕre et pāti fortĭa* Romanum *est*, &c.

‡ With these ablatives *causā* or *rĕ* may be supplied. According to some grammarians, these pronouns are neut. acc. pl. with *commŏda* understood. The quantity of the final *a*, however, and the testimony of Priscian, decide in favor of the ablative.

Mágni *ínterest Cicerônis*, vél *méā* pótius, vel mehércle *utriúsque*.	It is a matter of great importance * to Cicero, or rather to me, or, by Hercules, to both of us.
Quís ést hódie, *cújus íntersit*, istam lêgem manêre?	Who is there to-day (= now) that is at all concerned in the permanence of this law?
Véstra, júdices, hóc máxime *ínterest*.	This is a matter of the highest importance to you, judges.
Nôn adscrípsi, quód *túā* níhil *referêbat*.	I have not added what does not concern you.
Humanitātis plúrimum *réfert*.	It is a matter of the highest moment to humanity.

Remarks.

1. The *degree* of importance is expressed either by genitives like *magni, permagni, parvi, plūris, tanti,* and *quanti*, &c., or by adverbs or neuter accusatives used adverbially; as, *multum, plus, magis, maxĭme, parum, paulum, mĭnus, minĭme, valde, magnōpĕre, nihil*, &c. The genitive of the person is often omitted. E. g. Magni refert, *hic quod velit*, It is a question of great consequence what this man wants. *Quod* permagni interest, *pro necessario habētur*, That which is of great importance is often deemed a matter of necessity. *Hoc non* plūris rĕfert, *quam si imbrem in cribrum geras*, This is of no more consequence than if you were to pour water into a sieve.

2. The *matter* or *thing* of consequence or importance is expressed, *a*) by the infinitive (with or without a subject accusative); *b*) by a clause introduced by *ut* (*uti*), *ne*, or an interrogative (*qui, qualis, quam*, &c.); and *c*) sometimes by the neuter pronouns *hoc illud*, &c.; but never by a substantive. E. g. *Interest omnĭum recte* facere, It concerns all to do right. *Quid nostrā refert*, victum esse *Antonĭum?* What do we care for the defeat of Antonius? *Reipublĭcae interest*, uti *salvus esset*, It is important to the commonwealth that he should be safe. *Non refert*, quam multos *libros, sed* quam bonos *habĕas*, It matters not how many books you have, but how good they are.

3. In the sense of "it profits, it conduces to," these verbs also take the dative or the accusative with *ad*. E. g. Cui rei *id te assimulāre retŭlit?* What advantage was it to you to pretend that? *Magni* ad honōrem nostrum *interest*, It contributes greatly to oŭr honor.

To cast, throw.	*Jăcĭo, ĕre, jēci, jactum.* *Jacto, āre, āvi, ātum.* *Mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum.*
To cast or throw at, upon, in, forth, &c.	Adjĭcĕre, conjĭcĕre, injĭcĕre, projĭcĕre, &c.
To throw stones at some one.	Lapĭdes mittĕre *or* conjĭcĕre in aliquem. Petĕre alĭquem lapidĭbus.

* *Interest* = "it concerns, it imports, it is of importance to." *Rĕfert* = "it concerns, serves, profits, is the interest of."

To cast an eye upon some one or something.	Oculos in aliquem *or* aliquid conjicĕre.
To cast one into prison (chains).	Aliquem in carcĕrem conjicĕre. Dăre aliquem in vincŭla.
To throw the blame upon some one.	Culpam in aliquem conjicĕre *or* conferre.
To throw (prostrate) one's self at the feet of some one.	Projicĕre (sternĕre)* se ad pŏdes alicŭjus.
Have you thrown a stone into the river?	Injecistîne lápidem in flûmen?
I have thrown one in.	Injéci véro ûnum áliquem.
Does he throw the blame upon me?	Núm cúlpam in mê cónjicit (cónfert)?
He does not throw it upon you.	Nôn in tê cónjicit (cónfert).
Did you cast an eye upon that book?	Conjecistîne óculos íllum in líbrum?
I did (cast an eye upon it).	Conjéci profécto.
Was he casting a glance at the paper?	Adjiciebátne óculos ad chártam (*or* chártas)?
He was not.	Nôn adjiciébat.
Were they throwing stones at you?	Númquid lápides in tê jactábant (conjiciébant)?
They were not.	Nôn jactábant.
Did he throw himself at the feet of the king?	Projecítne (prostravítne), sê ad pédes rêgis?
He did not prostrate himself.	Sê nôn prostrâvit.
Was he thrown into prison?	Conjectúsne est in cárcĕrem? Datúsne est in víncŭla?
He was.	Factum est.
Where does the stone lie now?	Úbi núnc jácet lápis?
It lies in the river.	In flúmine.
Where did the book lie?	Úbi jácuit líber?
It was lying on the table.	Jacĕbat super ménsam (in ménsā).
To draw, pull.	*Trăho, ĕre, xi, ctum.* *Dūco, ĕre, xi, ctum.*
To drag; to seize (hurry off).	*Trăho, ĕre, xi, ctum.* *Răpio, ĕre, pŭi, ptum.*
To draw the wagon.	Currum trăhĕre (*or when slowly or gently*, dūcĕre).
To draw the sword.	Gladium (e vaginā) edūcĕre *or* distringĕre.
To drag one into the street.	Extrăhĕre aliquem in publicum.
To drag one into servitude.	Abstrăhĕre aliquem in servitūdinem.
To drag one to punishment, to death.	Răpĕre aliquem ad supplicium, ad mortem.
To hurry one off into prison, chains.	Abrĭpĕre aliquem in carcĕrem, in vincŭla.

* *Sterno, ĕre, strāvi, strātum.*

Where did they drag him to?	Quô éum rapuérunt?
They dragged (hurried) him into prison.	Abripuérunt éum in cárcĕrem (in víncula).
Did they not drag (hurry) him into slavery?	Nónne éum in servitúdinem abstraxérunt?
They did.	Fáctum ést véro.
Does the *horse* draw the carriage?	Equúsne tráhit (dûcit) cúrrum?
The horse does it.	Équus.
The pain (of body or mind).	Dŏlor, ōris, *m.*
The evil, ill.	Mălum, i, *n.*
The trouble, inconvenience.	Molestia, ae, *f.*
The injury (injustice).	Injūria, ae, *f.*
The detriment, loss.	Detrimentum, damnum, i, *n.*
The loss.	Jactūra, ae, *f.*
To pain (bodily or mentally — of things).	*Dŏlet, dŏlŭit, dŏlēre* (MIHI ALIQUID).
To cause pain, to hurt (of things).	*Dŏlōrĕm făcĕre* or *efficĕre alĭcui* (bodily). *Dŏlōrem afferre alĭcui* (mentally).
To pain, hurt one (of persons).	Alĭcui dolōrem făcĕre *or* efficĕre (*mentally and physically*). Aegre făcĕre alĭcui (*mentally*).
To injure (hurt) one.	Injūriam alĭcui inferre.
To offer violence to one.	Nŏcĕo, ēre, cŭi, cĭtum (ALICUI). Violāre aliquem. Alĭcui vîm afferre.
To offer violence to one's self.	Vîm (mănus) sĭbi inferre.
To molest any one.	Alĭcui molestĭam exhibēre.
To injure one's interest, (cause injury or loss).	Damnum (detrimentum) alĭcui inferre (afferre).
To be a loss or injury to one.	Damno *or* detrimento (*dat.*) esse alĭcui.
To suffer or sustain loss by anything.	Damnum (jactūram) făcĕre aliquā rē.
Does this pain you?	Dolétne tíbi hóc?
It does pain me.	Dólet míhi profécto.
That pains (grieves) me very much.	Íd míhi mágnum dolôrem áffert. Dólet mihi magnópere.
Does anything pain you?	Facítne (efficítne) tíbi aliquid dolôrem?
My finger pains me.	Dolôrem míhi éfficit dígitus.
It pains me, when I am whipped.	Míhi dólet, quum égo vápŭlo.
My feet and head pain me.	Dólent míhi pédes átque cáput.
Have you hurt any one?	Núm cuiquam áliquid dolôres fecísti (effecísti)?
I have hurt no one.	Égo dolôrem féci némini.

Has he hurt your feelings? { Aegrêne tíbi fêcit? / Attulítne tíbi dolôrem?

He has not only hurt my feelings, but my person even. Is míhi nôn sólum dolôrem, sed vím étiam áttŭlit.

Has any one injured you? Númquis tíbi nócŭit (injúriam íntulit)?

No one (has injured me). Némo.

Were they molesting any one? Éccui moléstias exhibébant?

They were molesting no one Némini (núlli).

Was that a loss to you? Fuítne tíbi íllud dámno (detriménto)?

Yes, I sustained a heavy loss by it. Égo véro dámnum éo féci mágnum.

Have I ever done you any harm (injury)? Egóne tíbi únquam quídquam injúriae íntuli?

No, on the contrary, you have done me good. Ímmo véro míhi benefícia tribuísti.

No, on the contrary — *Immo, immo vēro, immo potĭus, immo enĭm vēro.*

To do one good, to show one kindness. { *Benefĭcĭa alĭcui dăre* or *tribuĕre* (*-bŭi, būtum*). / *Benefĭcĭis aliquem afficĕre* or *ornāre.*

To overload me with benefits or kindness. Benefĭcĭis alíquem cumulāre.

To show one civilities, attentions. { Offĭcĭa alĭcui tríbuĕre. / Offĭcĭa in alíquem conferre.

On the contrary, you have shown me nothing but civilities. Ímmo énim véro míhi nôn nísi offícia tribuísti.

You have on the contrary overloaded me with many and great benefits. Ímmo pótius mê múltis et mágnis benefĭciis cumulâsti.

It is a pity. Doléndum ést.

His death is to be lamented. Mórs éjus dolénda ést.

It is a pity, that he is not alive. Doléndum ést, quód nôn in vítā est.

It is a pity, they did not come sooner. Doléndum ést, quód nôn matúrius venérunt.

To be useful (to any one). { *Ūtĭlem* (*e*) *esse* (ALICUI). / *Usŭī esse* (ALICUI).

To be wholesome, good for one's health, to do one good. { *Prōdest, prōfŭit, prōdesse.* / *Condūcit, conduxit, condūcĕre.* / *Salutārem* (*salūti*) *esse.* (All with ALICUI.)

Does this do you good? { Conducítne tíbi hóc? / Estne tíbi hóc salúti?

It does do me good. Condûcit. Salúti ést profécto.

This is excellent for me (does me much good). Hóc míhi máxime condûcit.

What is the servant doing with his broom? Quíd scópis súis fácit (incéptat) sérvus?

He sweeps the room with it.	Púrgat (iis) cubículum.
What do you wish to make out of this wood?	Quíd hôc ex ligno fácere vis?
I wish to make nothing at all out of it.	Égo ex éo níhil quídquam fácĕre cúpio.
Have they done anything with him?	Númquid de éo (éi) fecérunt?
They have done nothing.	Níhil fecérunt.
To pass by or *before* (*any one* or *any place*).	*Praeterīre, transīre* (ALIQUEM, ALIQUEM LOCUM).
To walk by *or* before.	Praetergrĕdior, di, gressus sum.
To ride by *or* before.	Praetervĕhor, i, vectus sum (ALIQUEM, ALIQUEM LOCUM).
When did you pass by my house.	Quándo dómum méam praeterívisti?
I passed it on the day before yesterday.	Praeterívi éam núdius tértius.
What place were they passing?	Quém lócum praeteríbant?
They were passing by the public square of the city.	Praeteríbant (transíbant) lócum úrbis públicum.
Was it my brother whom you passed?	Fratrémne méum praeteríbas?
It was your brother.	Véro, frâtrem túum.
Who is passing by us?	Quís nôs praéterit?
Our tailor with his son is passing us.	Sártor nóster cum fílio nôs praetéreunt.
Who is driving by the theatre?	Quís theátrum praetervéhitur?
(It is) the doctor.	Médicus.
To throw away.	*Abjĭcĭo, ĕre, jēci, jectum.*
To lavish, squander.	*Effundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum.* / *Dilapĭdo, āre, āvi, ātum.*
Did they throw away anything?	Abjiciebántne áliquid?
They threw away all their arms and weapons.	Abjiciébant véro árma atque têla súa ómnia.
How much money has he squandered?	Quántam pecúniam dilapidâvit ílle?
He has squandered his entire fortune.	Facultátes súas ómnes profúdit.
I have thrown away (lost) an entire hour.	Pérdidi tótam hôram.

EXERCISE 130.

How many times have you shot at that bird? — I have shot at it twice. — Have you killed it? — I have killed it at the second shot. — Have you killed that bird at the first shot? — I have killed it at the fourth. — Do you shoot at the birds which you (see) upon the houses, or at those which you see in the gardens? — I shoot neither at those which I (see) upon the houses, nor at those which I see in the gardens, but at those which I perceive upon the trees. — How many

times have the enemies fired at us? — They have fired at us several times. — Have they killed any one? — They have killed no one. — Have you a wish to shoot at that bird? — I have a desire to shoot at it. — Why do you not shoot at those birds? — I cannot, for I have no powder. — How many birds have you shot at? — I have shot at all that I have perceived, but I have killed none, for my powder was not good. — Have you cast an eye upon that man? — I have cast an eye upon him. — Has your uncle seen you? — I have passed by the side of him, and he has not seen me, for he has sore eyes. — Has that man hurt you? — No, sir, he has not hurt me. — What must one do in order to be loved? — One must do good to those that have done us harm. — Have we ever done you harm? — No, you have on the contrary done us good. — Do you do harm to any one? — I do no one any harm. — Why have you hurt these children? — I have not hurt them. — Have I hurt you? — You have not hurt me, but your children (have). — What have they done to you? — They dragged me into your garden in order to beat me. — Have they beaten you? — They have not beaten me, for I ran away. — Is it your brother who has hurt my son? — No, sir, it is not my brother, for he has never hurt any one. — Have you drunk of that wine? — I have drunk of it, and it has done me good. — What have you done with my book? — I have placed it on the table. — Where does it lie now? — It lies upon the table. — Where are my gloves? — They are lying upon the chair. — Where is my stick? — It has been thrown into the river. — Who has thrown it into it? — Was he accused of any crime? He was not accused of a crime, but of avarice. — Are they guilty (*obligantne se*) of treason? — They are guilty of treason and impiety. — Did the judge absolve them from guilt (*culpae*)? — He did not absolve them. — Did the book become yours (*tuus*)? — No, it became (*factus est*) the property of my brother. — Is it important to you, that I should write (*me littĕras dare*) to your friend? — It is a matter of the highest importance to humanity, that you should write to him. — Who is liable (*cujus*) *est* to err? — Every man is liable to err. — Is it my duty to do what is right? — It is the duty of every man to do what is right.

Lesson LXIX. — PENSUM UNDESEPTUAGESIMUM.

SYNTAX OF THE ABLATIVE.

A. The ablative serves to express a variety of relations, of which the most important are those of CAUSE, CONDITION, MODALITY, QUALITY, PLACE, TIME, DIFFERENCE, and NUMBER. All these relations are in English indicated by means of prepositions, such as

by, with, from, of, on account of, with respect to. The Ablative of Time has already been considered in Lesson LVII., that of Place in Lesson LVI., and the Ablative after Comparatives in Lesson XLIII., q. v.

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

B. After verbs passive and neuter, and sometimes also after transitive verbs and adjectives, the ablative serves to indicate the cause, occasion, ground, or reason of the action or state expressed by them.* E. g.

Mári súpero inferôque Itália ínsulae módo *cíngitur.*	Italy is bounded by the upper and the lower sea, like an island.
Quaê dómus tam stábilis est, quae nôn *ódiis atque dissídiis* fúnditus póssit *evérti?*	What house is there so firm, that could not be destroyed to its very foundation by hatred and dissension?
Etesiârum *flátū* nímii *temperántur* calóres.	The spells of excessive heat are moderated by the Etesian winds.
Darius *senectúte* díem *óbiit* suprêmum.	Darius died from the effects of old age.
Delícto dolêre, correctiône gaudêre nôs opórtet.	We should be sorry, for the fault and rejoice at its correction.
Concórdiā rês párvae *créscunt, discórdiā* máximae *dilabúntur.*	By concord small things increase and prosper, but by discord the greatest are reduced to ruin.
Múltis in rêbus *negligéntiā*† *plécimur.*	We suffer punishment for negligence in many things.
Miltíades *aêger* érat *vulnéribus,* quae, &c.	Miltiades was sick from the wounds, which, &c.
Minturnénses Márium *fêssum inédiā fluctibúsque* recreárunt.	The Minturnenses reinvigorated Marius, who had been exhausted by fasting and the effects of the sea.
Si *frúctibus* et *emoluméntis*‡ amicítias *colêmus.*	If we will cultivate friendship on account of its advantages and emoluments, &c.
In cúlpā súnt, qui offícia désĕrunt *mollítiā* ánimi.	They are culpable, who neglect their duties from want of firmness.
Divérsis duôbus vítiis, avarítiā et luxúriā, cívitas Romāna *laborâbat.*§	The Roman state suffered from two opposite vices, from avarice and luxury.

---

* These relations are in English expressed by the prepositions *by, from, of, on account of, for.*

† = *propter negligentiam.*

‡ = *propter fructus et emolumenta,* or *fructŭum et emolumentōrum gratiā.* See note 5.

§ Compare note 2.

REMARKS.

1. After passive verbs, the impersonal cause alone stands in the ablative without a preposition, and the personal agent requires the preposition *a* or *ab*. (Cf. page 165.)

2. The adjectives and neuter verbs, thus followed by the ablative of the cause, are generally resolvable into a passive verb akin to them in sense. E. g. *Fessus longā standi morā*, Weary (i. e. having been *made* weary) from long standing. *Interiit fame* = *consumptus est fame*, He died of hunger. *Gaudeo tuo honōre* = *delector tuo honōre*, I rejoice in your honor. *Expectatio rumore crēvit* = *aucta est rumōre*, The expectation increased with the report.

3. In many of the above-mentioned cases the cause or occasion may also be expressed by prepositions; as by *ob*, *propter*, and *per* with the accusative, or by *ab*, *de*, *ex*, and *prae* with the ablative. E. g. *Ob merĭta sua carus*, Beloved on account of his merit. *Propter metum*, *prae lacrĭmis non scribĕre possum*, I am unable to write from fear, on account of the tears I shed. *Per valetudĭnem id bellum exsequi nequīverat*, He had been unable to finish that war, on account of his health.* *Ex intestinis*, *ex pedibus laborare*, To suffer from the diarrhœa, from the gout.

4. The accusative *vicem*, "on account of," often occurs in connection with a genitive, or the possessives *meam*, *tuam*, &c., instead of the ablative *vice*. E. g. *Tuam vicem doleo*, I am grieved on your account. *Maestus non* suam vicem, *sed propter ipsum periclitantĭum fratrum* (sc. *vicem*), Sad not on his own account, but on account of his brothers in danger on his account.

5. After *transitive* verbs the cause, ground, or reason is sometimes expressed by the ablative alone,† but more commonly by *propter* with the accusative, or by *causā*, *gratiā*, *ergō*, or *nomĭne*, with the genitive. E. g. *Multi ex urbe* amicitiae causā (= *propter amicitiam*) *Caesărem secūti erant*, Many from the city had followed Cæsar out of friendship. *Coronā aureā donatus est* virtūtis ergō benevolentiaeque, He was presented with a crown of gold on account of his valor and benevolence.

6. When the cause is an intention or purpose, it is expressed by *hac mente*, *hoc consilio*, *ut* . . . ., and the motive by *amōre*, *irā*, *odio*, *laetĭtiā*, &c., in connection with some participles like *ductus*, *adductus*, *incensus*, *incitatus*, *mōtus*, &c. E. g. *irā incensus*, from feelings of revenge; *inopiā adductus*, induced by want; *coactus metu*, driven by fear. *Classem* ea mente *comparāvit*, ut *Italiam peteret*, He raised a fleet with the intention of invading Italy.

THE ABLATIVE OF THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT.

C. After verbs of every kind, the ablative serves to indicate the *means* or *instrument* by or with which anything is effected or realized.

* *Per* and *propter* may also have an accusative of the person. E. g. *Si per me licuisset*, If I had given permission. *Propter quos vivit*, Through whom he lives. But the mere ablative of the person never occurs in any of these relations.

† As in the two examples preceding the last under the rule, page 418.

The corresponding English prepositions are *with, by, by means of, through*. E. g.

Lycúrgus léges súas *auctoritâte* Apóllinis Délphici *confirmâvit*.	Lycurgus established his laws by the authority of Delphic Apollo.
Córnĭbus taúri, ápri *déntĭbus*, *mórsu* leónes sê *tutántur*.	Bulls defend themselves with their horns, boars with their tusks, lions with their jaws.
Benevoléntiam cívium *blandítiis* collígere túrpe est.	It is disgraceful to solicit the favor of the people by means of flattery.
Natûram *expéllas fúrcā*, tamen úsque recúrret.	You may drive out nature with a pitchfork, yet it will incessantly return again.
Británni interióres *lácte* et *cárne vívunt*.	The Britons of the interior live on milk and flesh.
Hannibal Sagúntum *vî expugnâvit*.	Hannibal took Saguntum by force.
Injúria *fit* duóbus módis, aut *vî*, aut *fraûde*.	Injustice is done in two ways, either by violence or fraud.

Remarks.

1. The ablative is rarely employed, when the means or instrument has reference to a *person*, but generally either *per* with the accusative, or the periphrasis *alicujus operā*, *beneficio*, *consilio*, *culpā*, &c. E. g. Per te *salvus sum*, I am safe through your instrumentality. *Detrimenta* per homines eloquentissimos *importāta*, Evils introduced by the most eloquent men. *Quorum* operā (= per quos) *plebem concitātam existimābant*, By whom they supposed the people to have been roused. *Equĭtem Romanum* beneficio tuo *conservāvi*, I have saved a Roman knight through your kindness. *Cujus* indicio (= per quos) haec *cognovĕrant*, Through whom they had become informed of this.

2. *Per* with the accusative is often put instead of the ablative of the means, especially when reference is had to external circumstances. E. g. Per vim *ei bona eripuit*, He robbed him of his property by main force (by forcible measures). Per litteras *aliquem certiorem facĕre*, To inform any one by letter. Per simulationem *amicitiae me perdidĕrunt*, They have ruined me under the pretence of friendship. But the material instrument is always expressed by the ablative. E. g. *Vulnerāre aliquem gladio, cultro, sagittis*, To wound any one with the sword, with a knife, with arrows.

To spend, consume (time in anything).	*Ago, ĕre, ēgi, actum.* *Consūmo, ĕre, mpsi, mptum.* *Contĕro, ĕre, trīvi, trītum.* (TEMPUS (in) ALIQUĀ RĒ).
To devote time to anything.	Tempus pōnĕre in aliquā rē.
To spend imperceptibly, to beguile time with anything.	Fallo, ĕre, fĕfelli, falsum (TEMPUS ALIQUĀ RĒ).
What do you spend your time in?	Quâ in rê témpus consûmis (cónteris)?

I spend my time in studying (in studies).	Témpus in stúdiis litterârum cóntero (consúmo).
How has he spent his life?	Quómodo vîtam (aetâtem) súam consúmpsit?
He has spent his life in perpetual travelling.	Aetâtem súam in perpétuâ peregrinatiône consúmpsit.
He has spent his life uselessly in idleness and feasting.	Vîtam in ótio et convíviis absúmpsit.
He was in the habit of spending entire days by the fireside.	Tótos díes júxta fócum átque ígnem agêbat (= ágĕre solêbat).
He was in the habit of wearing out entire nights in reading and writing.	Tótas nóctes legéndo et scribéndo conterêbat (= contérĕre solêbat).
Is he spending a pleasant life?	Agítne vîtam jucúnde (hílăre)?
On the contrary, he is having a hard life of it.	Ímmo pótius párce ac dúriter ágit vîtam.
How did he spend the night?	Quómodo contrívit (consúmpsit) nóctem?
He was beguiling the hours with pleasant conversation.	Hóras fallêbat jucúndis sermónibus.
He has spent the livelong night in banqueting.	Feféllit spatiôsam nóctem convíviis.
Where did he spend his vacation?	Úbi (quô lóco) férias súas exigêbat?
He spent them in the country, in the city, at home.	Exigêbat éas rúri, in úrbe, dómi.
Does it behoove us to spend this day pleasantly?	Oportétne nôs húnc díem hílăre consumâmus?
By all means.	Máxime opórtet.
The vacation.	Ferîae, ārum, *f.*
Travelling.	Peregrinātio, ōnis, *f.*
The banquet.	Convívium, i, *n.*
To miss anything.	*Amittĕre rem aliquam.* *Deerrāre aliquā re.*
To miss (not find) any one.	*Alĭquem non invenīre.* *Ab alĭquo deerrare* or *aberrāre* (on the road).
To miss one's aim.	Propŏsĭtum non assĕqui (-cūtus sum). Fine excĭdĕre (-cĭdi, ——).
To miss one's turn.	Ordĭnem non servāre. Súis partĭbus deesse.
Has the blow missed?	Deeravítne íctus?
It has missed.	Fáctum est.
Are you missing your way?	Deerrâsne itínere?
I am not missing it.	Nôn deérro.
I have missed (not found) him.	Éum nôn invéni.
You have missed your turn.	Ordĭnem non servâsti. Defuisti túis pártibus.
He has missed his aim.	Fine éxcĭdit.

The turn (part, rôle).	Ordo, ĭnis, *m.*; partes, ĭum, *f. pl.*; vĭcis, *gen. f.*
In turn, in order.	Ex ordĭne, ordĭne, per ordĭnem.
It is my, thy, his, our, &c. turn.	Órdo mê, tê, éum, nôs vócat. Méae, túae, éjus, nóstrae pártes súnt.
To take one's turn.	Ex ordĭne (per ordĭnem) aliquid agĕre.
To fail, neglect (to do anything).	*Praetermitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum.* *Nĕgligo, ĕre, lexi, lectum.* (ALIQUID FACERE).
The merchant has failed to send me the money due (me).	Mercâtor mĭhi pecúniam débĭtam míttere praetermísit.
You have failed to come to me this morning.	Venire ad mê hódie mâne neglexisti.
You have neglected to perform your duties and obligations.	Offícia túa et múnera obíre praetermisísti.
Am I neglecting any one?	Núm égo quénquam négligo?
To hear anything of (concerning) any one.	*Alĭquid de aliquo audīre, accĭpĕre.*
To hear anything from any one	*Alĭquid ab (ex) alĭquo audīre, accipĕre, cognoscĕre (-nōvi, nĭtum).*
To receive news from (concerning) any one.	Nuntium accĭpĕre ab (de) aliquo.
Have you heard from your friend?	Accepistíne núntium ab amíco túo?
I have heard.	Accépi.
Have you heard (learnt) anything new?	Núm quídquam nóvi cognovísti?
I have heard nothing at all.	Níhil quídquam audívi (accépi).
Of whom have you heard (news)?	De quô cognovísti (núntium accepísti)?
I have heard from my father.	Núntium accépi a pátre.
I hear (learn) that your brother has arrived.	Accípio (aúdio, dísco), túum frâtrem advenísse.
To assure (one of anything).	*Confirmo, āre, āvi, ātum.* *Affirmāre* (ALICUI, ALIQUID).
To persuade.	*Persuādĕo, ēre, si, sum* (ALICUI DE ALIQUA RE).
I assure you sacredly of this.	Hóc tíbi sáncte affírmo.
I wish you to be persuaded of this.	Hâc de rê tíbi persuadéri vélim.
I assure you (be assured).	Persuádeas tíbi vólo (vélim). Persuâsum tíbi sit.
I assure you of my assistance (in your plans).	Persuádeas tíbi vélim, mê túis consíliis non defutûrum.
Did he assure you of his assistance?	Voluítne tíbi persuadéri, sê túis consíliis nôn defutûrum?
To happen, occur, take place (generally).	*Fĭo, fĭĕri, factus sum.* *Evĕnio, īre, vēni, ventum.*

To happen to one (to meet with).	Accído, ĕre, cĭdi, ——. Contingo, ĕre, tĭgi, tactum. (MIHI, TIBI, SIBI — ALICUI.)
A most serious calamity has happened.	Fácta ést (áccidit) calámitas gravíssima. Rês péssimae accidérunt.
He has met with a great misfortune.	Áccidit éi málum péssimum. Mágnam in calamitátem íncidit.
I have met with a most serious injustice.	Fácta ést míhi injúria gravíssima.
I have (meet with) the good fortune.	Contíngit míhi felícitas.
The good fortune; happiness.	Fortūna secunda; casus secundus; felicĭtas, ātis, *f.*
The bad fortune, misfortune; calamity.	Fortūna adversa; mălum, i, *n.*; calamĭtas, ātis, *f.*
To meet (any one by chance).	*Occurro, ĕre, ri, sum.* *Obviam venīre* (ALICUI).
Did you meet with any one?	Occurrístine álicui? Venístine álicui óbviam?
I have met with your brother.	Óbviam véni frâtri túo.
I met a large number of men.	Óbviam veniêbam multitúdini hóminum.
To be, to exist, to be found.	Esse, inveníri, reperíri.
There, in that place.	Ibi, illic; ibīdem (*adv.*).
Not even.	Nĕ — quĭdem.
Not even a book.	Nê líber quídem.
Not even one (not a single one).	Nê ûnus quídem.
Not even once.	Nê sémel quídem.
Not even the people.	Nê pópulus quídem.
The village.	Vicus, pāgus, i, *m.*
Are there many horses in this village?	Súntne (inveniuntúrne) múlti équi hôc in víco? Estne (invenitúrne) cópia equôrum hôc in víco?
There are a good many (here).	Inveniúntur (súnt) véro múlti (permúlti).
There is not a single good horse (to be found) there.	Nê ûnum quídem équum bónum íbidem invénias.
Is there much wine this year?	Éstne hôc ánno cópia víni?
There is an abundance of it.	Ést éjus véro cópia mágna.
There are no apples this year.	Póma hôc ánno núlla sunt (reperiúntur).
Are there many learned men in France?	Inveniuntúrne múlti dócti in Francogállia?
There are a great many there.	Inveniúntur (reperiúntur) íbi permúlti.
To be of use (good, useful).	*Utĭlem* or *bŏnum esse* (alicui rei, ad rem) *usŭi esse ad rem.*

Of what use is that?	Cuī úsŭi est hóc?
It is good to eat.	Úsŭi est ad vescéndum.
It is useful against bodily pain.	Útile ést contra dolóres córporis.
It is of no use (worth nothing).	Níhili est. Nullius prétii est.
This is of no use (entirely useless).	Hóc núlli úsui ést (pláne inútile est).
What is this man good for?	Quám ad rém útilis (idóneus) est hícce?
He is not fit for anything.	Útilis (idóneus) ést ad núllam rém.
He is a good-for-nothing fellow.	Hómo ést nequíssimus. / Hómo níhili est.
Are there any faults in his little book?	Reperiuntúrne vítia in éjus libéllo?
There are none in it.	Reperiúntur núlla.
Is the stuff, which you have bought, good?	Estne téxtum, quód emísti, bónum?
No, it is good for nothing.	Nōn véro; inútile est (nullius prétii est).
The fault, defect.	Vitĭum, i, *n.*
The material, stuff.	Textum, i, *n.*; pannus, i, *m.*

Exercise 131.

I do not see my gloves; where are they? — They are lying in the river. — Who has thrown them into it? — Your servant, because they were no longer good for anything. — What have you done with your money? — I have bought a house with it. — What has the joiner done with that wood? — He has made a table and two chairs of it. — What has the tailor done with the cloth which you gave him? — He has made clothes of it for (Dative) your children and mine. — What has the baker done with the flour which you sold him? — He has made bread of it for you and me. — Have the horses been found? — They have been found. — Where have they been found? — They have been found behind the wood, on this side of the river. — Have you been seen by anybody? — I have been seen by nobody. — Have you passed by anybody? — I passed by the side of you, and you did not see me. — Has any one passed by the side of you? — No one has passed by the side of me. — By what is the field surrounded (*cingĭtur*)? — It is surrounded by trees. — Of what disease (*morbus*) did he die (*mortuus est*)? — He did not die of any disease, but from old age. — Have they been punished for negligence? — They have been punished. — Is your brother sick from the wounds he has received? — No, he is sick from the headache. — Do you cut your meat with a knife? — I cut it with a knife and fork. — Were you injured by violence or by fraud? — I was injured both by violence and by fraud.

Exercise 132.

Do you expect any one? — I do expect my cousin, the officer. — Have you not seen him? — I have seen him this morning; he has passed before my house. — What does this young man wait for? —

He waits for money. — Art thou waiting for anything? — I am waiting for my book. — Is this young man waiting for his money? — He is waiting for it. — Has the king passed (in the carriage) here? — He has not passed here, but before the theatre. — Has he not passed before the new fountain? — He has passed there; but I have not seen him. — What do you spend your time in? — I spend my time in studying. — What does your brother spend his time in? — He spends his time in reading and playing. — Does this man spend his time in working? — He is a good-for-nothing fellow; he spends his time in drinking and playing. — What did you spend your time in, when you were at Berlin? — When I was at Berlin, I spent my time in studying, and riding on horseback. — What do your children spend their time in? — They spend their time in learning. — Can you pay me what you owe me? — I cannot pay it to you, for our bailiff has failed to bring me my money. — Why have you breakfasted without me? — You failed to come at nine o'clock, so that we have breakfasted without you. — Has the merchant brought you the stuff which you bought at his house? — He has failed to bring it to me. — Has he sold it to you on credit? — He has sold it to me, on the contrary, for cash. — Do you know those men? — I do not know them; but I think that they are good-for-nothing fellows, for they spend their time in playing. — Why did you fail to come to my father this morning? — The tailor did not bring me the coat which he promised me, so that I could not go to him.

Lesson LXX. — PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM.

THE ABLATIVE OF MODE OR MANNER.

A. A substantive, denoting the *mode* or *manner* in which anything is done, is put in the ablative with *cum;* but when it has an adjective or adjective pronoun connected with it, the preposition may be omitted. E. g.

Lítterae *cum cúrā diligentiâque* scríptae.	A letter written with care and diligence.
Cum dignitāte pótius cádere, quam *cum ignomíniā* servire nôs opórtet.	We should rather fall with honor, than serve with dishonor.
Cum írā níhil récte fíeri pótest.	Nothing can be done properly with anger.
Cum clamôre in fórum cúrritur.	There is a rush towards the forum with clamors.
Cum siléntio audíti súnt.	They were heard in silence.
Ípse *mágnā cum cúrā et diligéntiā* scripsit.	He himself has written with great care and diligence.

Id *aéquo ánimo* nôn féret cívitas.	The state will not submit to that patiently.
Sídĕra cúrsus súos conficiunt *máximā celeritâte.*	The stars perform their revolutions with the utmost celerity.
Cum máximā offensiône Pátrum consulátū ábiit.	He resigned his consulship to the great dissatisfaction of the senate.
Déos sémper *púrā, íntegrā, incorruptā* et *ménte* et *vóce* venerêmur.	Let us always venerate the gods with pure, entire, uncorrupted heart and voice.

REMARKS.

1. The ablative of manner has adverbial force, and may often be resolved into an adverb. E. g. *cum curā*, i. e. *diligenter: cum silentio*, i. e. *tacite, clam; cum fidĕ*, i. e. *fideliter; cum voluptāte*, i. e. *libenter; cum bonā gratiā*, i. e. *benigne*, &c.

2. In certain expressions the ablative of nouns appears also without *cum*, even though no adjective is added. E. g. *Aliquid* sponte, voluntāte, jure, injuriā *facĕre*, To do anything of one's own accord, willingly, justly, unjustly. *Aliquid recte et* ordĭne, modo et ratione, ratione et ordĭne *facĕre*, To do anything properly, and in order, &c. *Lege agere*, To proceed according to the law. *Silentio praeterire*, To pass over in silence. And so always without "cum": — *hoc modo, quo modo, eodem animo, eādem ratione*, &c.

3. *Cum* with the ablative also denotes that which is *simultaneous* or *concomitant*. E. g. *Cum occasu solis copias educĕre*, To lead out one's forces at sunset. *Cum nuntio exīre*, To go out as soon as the message arrived. *Cum exercĭtu, cum copiis, cum militibus*, &c. *iter facere*, To march with one's army, forces, soldiers, &c. *Romam cum febri veni*, I came to Rome with a fever. But also *without* "cum"; as, *Egressus omnibus copiis*, Having marched forth with all the forces. *Ingenti exercĭtu ab urbe profectus*, Having left the city with a large army. *Duumvir* decem navĭbus *vēnit*, The duumvir came with ten ships, &c. *Castra* clamore *invadunt*, They invade the camp with a clamor.*

B. After nouns, adjectives, and verbs, the ablative often expresses the relations indicated by the English *with respect to, by, in*, or *in point of*. E. g.

Natiône Medus est.	With respect to his nationality he is a Mede.
Hamĭlcar *cognómĭne Bárcas.*	Hamilcar surnamed Barcas.
Dómo Carthaginiénses sunt.	They are Carthaginians (inhabitants of Carthage).
Pauci (*céntum, mille*) *número* homĭnes.	But few (a hundred, thousand) men in number.

* The participles *junctus* and *conjunctus* sometimes thus appear *without* "cum." E. g. *Bellum* miserrimā fugā *junctum*, A war attended with a most wretched flight. *Nefaria libido* dedecŏre, scelĕre *conjuncta*, Nefarious licentiousness connected with dishonor, with crime, &c.

Grándis nátu, aetâte provéctus* est.	He is of full age, advanced in life.
Quiéti, alácres ánimo súmus.†	We are calm, cheerful in mind (= of a calm, cheerful mind).
Mémbris ómnibus cáptus ac *débĭlis* est.	He is nerveless and feeble in every limb.
Scélĕre pâr est *îlli, indústriā inférior.*	He is equal to him in crime, inferior to him in industry.
Agesilâus fúit *claûdus* áltero péde	Agesilaus was lame in one of his feet.
Sócrates lónge *lepôre* et *humanitâte* ómnibus *praéstitit.*	Socrates was far superior to every one in point of wit and humanity.
Péricles et Themístocles *grándes* érant *vérbis, crébri sententiis, comprehensióne* rêrum *bréves.*	Pericles and Themistocles were grand in the use of words, abounding in apothegms, and brief in the comprehension of things.
Nôn sôlum *commóveor ánimo*, sed étiam *tóto córpŏre perhorrésco.*	I am not only troubled in mind, but I shiver with horror in every limb.

REMARKS.

1. This ablative serves to restrict, limit, or define more particularly the words with which it is connected, and occurs in a great variety of expressions. E. g. *meā sententiā, meā opiniōne, meo judicio*, in my opinion or judgment; *re*, in reality, in fact; *nomĭne*, in (or by) name; *genĕre*, by birth; *domo*, by residence; *eloquentiā*, in eloquence, &c.

2. Instead of this ablative of limitation or more particular definition, the poets and their imitators sometimes employ the accusative. E. g. *Fractus* membra (= membris) *labore*, Disabled in his limbs from labor. Humeros (= *humeris*) *oleo perfusis*, Anointed as to his shoulders with oil. *Vite* caput (= *capĭte*) *tegitur*, He is covered as to his head with vine-leaves. *Tremit* artus (= *artĭbus*), He trembles in his limbs. Os humerosque *deo similis*, In countenance and shoulders like a divinity ‡ So also in ordinary prose even, *id tempŏris* for *eo tempŏre; id aetātis* for *eā aetate; cetera* and *reliqua* for *cetĕris* and *reliquis rebus*, &c. On this accusative compare Lesson XLVIII. *D.*

THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

C. A noun and an adjective denoting a quality, character, or condition are put in the ablative with

---

* So also *major, minor nātu;* and *maximus, minimus nātu.*

† This differs very little from the genitive or ablative of quality: — *quiĕti, alacris animi* sumus; *quiēto, alacri animo* sumus.

‡ So passive verbs of *clothing* and *divesting* frequently have an accusative of the thing put on or taken off, instead of the more regular ablative. E. g. *Induor vestem* (= *veste*), I am (being) clothed in a garment. *Indŭitur fŏciem vultumque Dianae*, He puts on the form and countenance of Diana. *Inutile ferrum cingitur*, He begirds himself with the useless sword. *Pŭeri laevo* suspensi loculos tabulamque *lacerto*, Boys with their little box of counters and their writing-tablet suspended from their left shoulder.

some tense of *esse*, *existĕre*, or *invenīri*, expressed or understood. E. g.

Agesilâus *statúrā fúit húmĭli* et *córpŏre exíguo.*	Agesilaus was of low stature and of a small body.
Rês *est insígni infámiā.*	It is an affair of signal disgrace.
Murêna *mediócri ingénio*, sed *mágno stúdio* rêrum vétĕrum, múltae indústriae et mágni labôris *fúit.*	Murena was a man of but moderate talent, but of great zeal for antiquities, of much industry and great perseverance.
Theophrástus aúctor est, ébur fóssile *cándido* et *nígro colôre inveníri.*	Theophrastus informs us, that fossil ivory is found of a white and black color.
In recentiôre Académiā *éxstitit divínā quâdam celeritâte* ingénii Carnéades.	In the later academy Carneades shone as a man of almost a divine quickness of intellect.
Mágno timôre sum: sed béne sperâmus.	I am in great fear, but we hope for the best.

So also without *esse*:—

Fúit quidam, *súmmo ingénio* vir, Zéno.*	There was a certain Zeno, a man of the highest order of intellect.
Pompéium, *praestantíssimā virtúte* vírum (*acc.*).	Pompey, a man of the most distinguished virtue.
Est spelúnca quaêdam, *infinítā altitúdine.*	There is a certain cave of immense dimensions.
Difficili tránsĭtu flûmen, *ripísque praerúptis.*	A river, difficult to cross, and of rugged banks.

REMARKS.

1. The ablative of quality may be explained by *instructus*, *praedĭtus*, *ornātus*, "furnished, endowed, adorned with." (Cf. Lessons LXXI. *B.* and LXXII. *B.*)

2. This ablative differs upon the whole but little from the genitive of quality,† except that the latter expresses rather natural than acquired qualities, while the former is applied to both. The genitive of quality, moreover, seldom occurs in the plural, and comprises also determinations of measure which are never indicated by the ablative. Sometimes the genitive and ablative both occur in the same construction, as in the example, *Murēna mediocri ingenio*, &c.

How long?	*Quam longum (tempus)?*‡ *Quām dĭu? Quām dūdum?*
Long, a long time.	Dĭu, longum tempus.
Very long.	Perdĭu, longissime.
For a long time, a great while (past).	Jam dĭu, jam prīdem.

* These examples may be explained by a relative with *est*, *fuit*, &c., or by the hypothecial *ens* ("being"). E. g. *Zeno*, qui vir erat *summo ingenio. Spelunca*, ens *or* quae est *infinitā altitudine*, &c.

† Compare Lesson LVII. *A.*

‡ See Lesson LVII. *A.*

For some time (past).	Jam dūdum.
Longer (than, I, you, we, &c.).	Longĭus, dĭutĭus (quam égo, tû, nôs).
How long is it since?	*Quám lóngum ést, ex quô?* *Quám díu ést, quúm* (or *ex quô*, sc. *témpore*)*?*
It is (already) long since.	*Jám lóngum ést, ex quô.* *Jám díu ést, quúm* (*ex quô*).
It is now some time since.	Jám dûdum ést, ex quô (*or* quum).
It is not long since.	Nôn lóngum (haûd díu, haûd dûdum) ést, ex quô.
Is it long since you have breakfasted?	Estne jam lóngum, ex quô jentavísti? Estne jam díu, quum jentavísti?
It is not long since I have breakfasted.	Haûd lóngum est, ex quô (quúm) jentâvi.
It is some time since I have breakfasted.	Jám dûdum ést, ex quô (quúm) jentávi.
It is a great while since I breakfasted.	Jám pérdiu ést, ex quô témpore jentávi.
It is an hour since I have breakfasted.	Tóta jám hôra est, ex quô jentávi.
I breakfasted an hour ago.	Jentáculum súmpsi abhinc hôram (únā hórā ábhinc).
Two hours ago (within two hours).	*Ábhinc dúas hóras.* *Duâbus hóris ábhinc*
Three years ago (within three years).	*Abhinc três ánnos.* *Tribus ánnis ábhinc.**
An hour and a half ago.	Ábhinc sesquihôram. Sesquihórā ábhinc.
Two hours and a half ago.	Dúas abhinc hóras et dimídĭam. Duâbus hóris ábhinc et dimídiā.
Is it long since you saw him?	Estne témpus lóngum, ex quô éum vidísti? Estne jám díu, cum éum nôn vídes?
It is a great while.	Témpus jám ést lóngum. Jám pérdiu est.
How long is it since you saw him?	Quámdiu ést, ex quô éum vidísti? Quám longum est témpus, cum eum non vidísti?
I saw him a year ago (within a year).	Égo éum vídi ábhinc ánnum (únō ánnō abhinc).
Is it long since you are living in this country?	Éstne jám lóngum témpus, ex quô hâc in térra dégis?
Have you lived long in this country?	Degísne jám díu hâc in térrā?

* See Lesson LVII. *D.*

I have lived here for three years.	Ánnus jám ést tértius, ex quô (quúm) hîc dégo.
I have lived at Rome these three years.	Três ánni súnt, ex quô Rómae hábito. Tértius jám ánnus ést, ex quô (quúm) Rómae hábito.
He has lived in America these twenty years.	Vigínti ánni sunt, ex quô in Américā íncolit. Vicésimus jám ánnus est, cum in Américā íncolit.
How long is it since he was here?	Quám díu est, ex quo témpore áderat?
He was here a fortnight ago.	Áderat (ádfuit) hâc regiône ábhinc quíndecim díes.
It is but a year since you were in these parts.	Nôn ámplius ánno est (ánnus tántum est), ex quô hâc regiône áderas.
It is more than a year since.	*Ámplius jam ánno (ánnum) est, ex quô* or *quúm.*
It is scarcely six months since.	Víx séx ménses súnt, ex quô *or* quúm (cum).
It is nearly three years since.	Três própe ánni súnt, ex quô *or* quum. Tértius própe ánnus ést, ex quô *or* cum.
It is now almost a year since.	Jám fére ánnus ést, ex quô *or* cum.
Almost, nearly.	Prope, fĕre, paene (*adv.*).
Scarcely.	Vix (*adv.*).
A few hours ago.	Ábhinc áliquot hóras. Áliquot hóris ábhinc.
Half an hour ago.	Ábhinc semihôram. Dimídiā hórā ábhinc.
A quarter of an hour ago.	Ábhinc quadrántem hórae. Quadránte hórae ábhinc.
I have been living in this region these ten years.	Décem jám ánni súnt, ex quô hâc regiône hábito.
How long have you had the horse?	Quámdiu (quám lóngum témpus) équum habuísti?
I have had it nearly these five years.	Quíntus paéne ánnus ést, ex quô éum hábeo.
It is now a year since I have seen him.	Ûnus, jam est ánnus, cum éum nôn vídi.
It is more than a year since you have seen your brother.	Ámplius ánno (ánnum) est, ex quô frâtrem túum nôn vidísti.
How often have you heard him?	Quám saépe éum audivísti?
I have heard him more than twenty times.	Ego éum saépius quam vícies audívi.
I have seen them more than a hundred times.	Vídi éum saépius quam cénties.

How long? since what time?	*Ex quô témpore? Ex quô? Quam diu?*
Since childhood.	A puerítiā, a púero.
Since the memory of man.	Post hóminum memóriam.
From time indefinite.	Infinīto ex témpore.
How long has he been dead?	Ex quô témpore (quám díu) mórtuus est?
He has been dead this great while.	Mórtuus ést jám díu (jám prídem).
He has been dead (for) these ten years.	Mórtuus ést jám décem ánnos (decénnium).
These three days (for three days).	Três díes.
This month (for a month).	Ûnum ménsem.
These two years.	Dúos ánnos, biénnium.
How long is it since you are here?	Quám lóngum témpus ést, cúm hîc ádes?
It is three days since I am here.	Tértius jám dies ést, cum ádsum. Três díes ádsum.
I am here since yesterday.	Ádsum ex hestérno díe.
How long is it since he is at home?	Ex quô témpore dómi est?
Since this morning.	Ex mâne hodiérno.
This long time.	Ex lóngo témpore (longíssimo).
It is already a month since he is here.	Ûnus jám est ménsis, cum hîc ést (ádest).
To cost.	*Stō, stāre, stĕti, stătum.* *Consto, āre, stĭti, stātum.* (ALICUI ALIQUĀ RĒ.)
How much does this book cost you?	Quánti* hîc líber tîbi stát?
It costs me three dollars and a half.	Stát mîhi tríbus thaléris et dimídio.
It costs me five shillings and a quarter.	Cónstitit mîhi quínque shillíngis et quadránte.
Did it cost you any more than mine?	Stetítne tîbi plûris, quám méus?
It cost me as much as yours did you.	Cónstitit mîhi tánti, quánti tîbi túus.
It cost me a high price, not much, nothing.	Cónstitit mîhi mágno, párvo, níhilo (sc. prétio).†
To purchase, buy.	*Ĕmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum.* *Coëmĕre* (several things together). *Compăro, āre, āvi, ātum.*
What have you purchased to-day?	Quíd emísti (comparâsti) hódie?

* On this genitive of the price, see Lesson LXVII. *A.*
† On the ablative of the price, see Lesson LXXI. *A.*

I have purchased three pairs of shoes and two pairs of boots.	Ego tria paria calceorum et duo paria caligarum coëmi (comparavi).
Did you purchase anything yesterday?	Comparavistine aliquid hesterno die?
I brought three quires of paper and a picture.	Ego tres scapos chartae cum tabula picta coëmi (comparavi).
The pound (weight).	Libra, ae, *f.*; libra pondo, *or simply* pondo (*indecl.*).
The half-pound.	Selibra, ae, *f.*; selibra pondo.
The dozen.	Duodecim (*as numeral*).
The foot (measure).	Pes, *gen.* pedis, *m.*
The inch.	Digitus, i, *m.*
The quire (of paper).	Scapus, i, *m.* (chartae).
The regiment (of soldiers).	*Legio, onis, *f.* (*of foot*). *Turma, ae, *f.* (*of horse*).
The ring.	Anulus, i, *m.*
The picture.	Tabula picta, ae, *f.*; imago (-inis) picta; pictura, ae, *f.*
The small picture.	Tabella picta, ae, *f.*
The pair.	Par, *gen.* paris, *n.* Bini, ae, a.
A pair of doves.	Par columbarum.
A pair of gloves.	Par digitabulorum. Bina digitabula.
Two pairs of gloves.	Duo paria digitabulorum.
A noble pair of brothers.	Par nobile fratrum.
A pair of oxen, horses.	Jugum boum, equorum.
A pound of sugar.	(Libra) pondo sacchari.
Five pounds of sugar.	Quinque pondo sacchari.
A bowl consisting of five pounds of gold.	Patera ex quinque auri pondo.
How many pounds of meat did you buy?	Quam multa comparasti pondo carnis?
I have bought (purchased) ten pounds of meat, five pounds of tobacco, and twenty quires of paper.	Ego carnis pondo decem, tabaci pondo quinque, chartae scapos viginti comparavi.
I have bought two dozen pens.	Ego bis duodenas pennas coëmi.
I gave them each a dozen books.	Dedi eis duodenos libros.

Exercise 133.

Have you ever been in this village? — I have been there several times. — Are there good horses in it? — There is not a single one in it. — Have you ever been in that country? — I have been there once. — Are there many learned men there? — There are many there, but they spend their time in reading? — Are there many studious children in that village? — There are some, but there are also others who will not study. — Are the peasants of this village able to read

and write? — Some are able to read, others to write and not to read, and many both to read and to write; there are a few who are neither able to read nor to write. — Have you done the exercises? — We have done them. — Are there any faults in them? — There are no faults in them, for we have been very assiduous. — Has your friend many children? — He has only one, but he is a good-for-nothing fellow, for he will not study. — In what does he spend his time? — He spends his time in playing and running. — Why does his father not punish him? — He has not the courage to punish him. — What have you done with the stuff which you bought? — I have thrown it away, for it was good for nothing. — How has your son written his letter? — He has written it with great care and diligence. — He has written it with extreme negligence (*negligentissime*). — Have you heard your little brother spell? — I have heard him patiently and in silence. — Is your friend an Englishman? — No, he is a Frenchman by birth. — Are you an American by birth? — No, I am a German. — Are they Romans? — No, they are Russians. — How many are there of them? — They are a hundred in number. — Are they equal to us in industry? — They are not our equals. — Do they not excel us in humanity? — They do not excel us. — We are not inferior to them in diligence. — Is our friend a man of much talent (*ingenio*)? — He is a man of high talent and of the most distinguished virtue. — They are men of low stature, of small talent, and of no virtue.

Exercise 134.

Have you been long in Paris? — These four years. — Has your brother been long in London? — He has been there these ten years. — Is it long since you dined? — It is long since I dined, but not long since I supped. — How long is it since you supped? — It is two hours and a half. — Is it long since you received a letter from your father? — It is not long since I received one. — How long is it since you received a letter from your friend who is in Germany? — It is three months since I received one. — Is it long since you spoke to the man whose son has lent you money? — It is not long since I spoke to him. — Is it long since you saw your parents? — It is a great while since I saw them. — Has the son of my friend been living long in your house? — He has been living there a fortnight. — How long have you had these books? — I have had them these three months. — How long is it since your cousin set out? — It is more than a month since he set out. — What is become of the man who spoke English so well? — I do not know what is become of him, for it is a great while since I saw him. — Is it long since you heard of the officer who gave your friend a stab with his sword? — It is more than a year since I heard of him. — How long have you been learning German? — I have been learning it only these three months. — Are you already able to speak it? — You see that I am beginning to speak it. — Have the children of the French noblemen been learning it long? — They have been learning it these five years, and they do not yet begin to speak. — Why can they not speak it? — They cannot speak it, be-

cause they are learning it badly (*male*). — How long is it since these children drank? — They drank a quarter of an hour ago. — How long has your friend been in Spain? — He has been there this month. — When did you meet my brother? — I met him a fortnight (*quattuordecim dies*) ago. — Are there many soldiers in your country? — There is a regiment of three thousand men there. — How long have I kept your cousin's money? — You have kept it almost a year.

Lesson LXXI. — PENSUM UNUM ET SEPTUAGESIMUM.

THE ABLATIVE AFTER VERBS.

A. After verbs of buying, selling, valuing, estimating, and the like, the noun denoting the price or value is put in the ablative. E. g.

Spém *praétio* nôn *émo*.	I do not purchase hope with money.
Vigínti talántis ûnam oratiônem Isócrates *véndidit*.	Isocrates sold one of his orations for twenty talents.
Lis éjus *aestimâtur céntum talántis*.	His fine was estimated at a hundred talents.
Quinta cívium clássis *úndĕcim millíbus* assium *censebâtur*.	The fifth class of citizens was rated at eleven thousand asses each.
Scrúpŭlum aúri *valĕbat sestértiis vicénis*.	A scruple of gold was worth twenty sesterces.
Múlto sánguine et *vulnéribus* Poénis victória *stĕtit*.	The victory cost the Carthaginians much blood and many wounds.
Quód nôn ópus ést, *asse* cârum est.	What one does not need is (too) dear for a penny.
Mágnos hómines *virtûte metîmur*, non *fortúnā*.	We measure great men by their moral worth, and not by their fortune.
Haêc *rê*, nôn *vérbis ponderántur*.	These things are judged of from the reality, and not from words.
Quód réctum est, nec *magnitúdine aestimâtur*, nec *número*, nec *témpore*.	That which is morally right is estimated neither by size, nor by number, nor by time.

Remarks.

1. Verbs of buying and selling are also followed by the ablatives *magno*, *permagno*, *plurĭmo*, *parvo*, *minĭmo* (sc. *pretio*), but other verbs of this class more commonly take the genitives *magni*, *permagni*, &c. (Cf. Lesson LXVII. *A*.)

2. The ablative of price occurs in connection with many other verbs, besides those of buying and selling. E. g. *Triginta milĭbus* (*sestertium*),

habĭtat, He pays thirty thousand sesterces for a house (lodgings). *Docet talento*, He charges a talent for his instruction. *Vix drachmis est obsonātus decem*, He purchased provisions for scarcely ten drachmas. *Parvo aere merĕo*, I serve for small pay. *Lavor quadrante*, I am washed (I bathe) for a quadrans. So *est* in the sense of "it is worth"; as, *Sal in Italiā* est *sextante*, In Italy salt is worth (sells for) a sextans.

B. Verbs of plenty or want, and corresponding transitive verbs, signifying to fill, endue, enrich, or to deprive, and the like, are followed by the ablative.

Verbs of plenty and want are *abundo*, *affluo*, *circumfluo*, *floreo*, *redundo*, *scateo*, *vigeo*; *careo*, *egeo*, *indigeo*, *vaco*, &c.

Verbs of filling, enduing, depriving, &c. are *compleo*, *expleo* and *impleo*, *cumŭlo*, *imbŭo*, *refercio*, *satio* and *exsatio*, *satūro*, *stipo* and *constipo*; *afficio*, *dono*, *remuneror*, *locupleto*, *orno*, *augeo*; — *privo*, *spolio*, *orbo*, *fraudo* and *defraudo*, *nudo*, *exŭo*, &c. E. g.

Abundárunt sémper *aúro* régna Ásiae.	The kingdoms of Asia always abounded in gold.
Antiochia *eruditíssimis homínibus*, *liberalissimísque studiis affluêbat.*	The city of Antioch abounded in learned men and liberal pursuits of the highest order.
Régno carêbat Tarquínius, quum régno ésset expulsus.	Tarquin was without royal authority when he had been expelled from his realm.
Múlier *abúndat audáciā*, *consílio* et *ratióne deficitur.*	Woman has an abundance of audacity, but is deficient in deliberation and method.
Vacâre cúlpā mágnum est soládium.	To be free from guilt is a great consolation.
Déus *bónis ómnibus** *explêvit* múndum.	God has filled the world with good things of every kind.
Témplum Junónis *egrégiis pictúris locupletâre* voluérunt.	They wanted to enrich the temple of Juno with choice paintings.
Natûra Germániam *decorâvit* altissimórum hóminum *exercítibus.*	Nature has adorned Germania with armies of the tallest men.
Demócritus dícitur *óculis* se *privâsse.*	Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes.
Consílio et *auctoritâte* nón módo nón *orbári*, sed étiam *augéri* senéctus sólet.	Old age is commonly not only not deprived of counsel and authority, but even advanced in it.

REMARKS.

1. The verbs *egeo*, *indigeo*, *compleo*, and *impleo* sometimes take the genitive instead of the ablative. E. g. *Aliquem* temeritatis *implēre*, To

* After verbs of filling, and others of this class, the ablative may also be put as the means or instrument. Cf. Lesson LXIX. C.

fill any one with temerity. *Complētus jam* mercatōrum *carcer est*, The prison is already full of merchants.*

2. To this construction belong *afficĕre* and *remunerāri*, in expressions like *afficĕre aliquem beneficio, honore, praemĭo*, to bestow a kindness, an honor, a reward upon any one; *afficĕre aliquem ignominiā, injuriā, poenā, morte*, to inflict a dishonor, an injury, punishment, death upon any one; *remunerāri aliquem praemio*, to requite any one with a reward.

3. To this rule may also be referred the adjectives *orbus*, helpless, bereaved; *vacuus*, empty; and *refertus*, full, replete. E. g. *Orbus lĭbĕris*, Bereaved of children. *Māre portŭbus orbum*, A sea without ports. *Vacŭae vites fructu*, Vines without fruit. *Insŭla referta divitiis*, An island full of riches.†

4. *Opus est*, "there is need," is either used impersonally with the ablative, or personally (as *opus est, opus sunt*) with the nominative. The person is then always in the dative. E. g. *Opus est mihi libris.* — *Multa tibi opus sunt.* — *Dux nobis et auctor opus est.* — *Auctoritāte tuā nobis opus est, et consilio.* — The thing needed is sometimes also expressed by the genitive, by an infinitive or supine in *u*, or by the ablative of a perfect participle. E. g. *Tempŏris opus est*, There is need of time. *Quid opus est plūra* (sc. proferre)? What need is there of saying more? *Nunc opus est* te *animo* valēre, Now you must be strong in mind. *Longius, quam quod* scitu *opus est*, Farther than is necessary to know. *Hoc* facto, maturato *opus est*, This must be done, hastened. To these add *Mihi opus est*, ut *lavem*, It is necessary that I should wash.‡

5. The construction of *usus est*, "it is necessary," is the same as that of *opus est*. E. g. *Nunc* manĭbus rapĭdis *usus est.* — *An cuiquam* est usus *homini, se* ut *cruciet?* Does any man need tormenting himself?

C. Verbs signifying to remove, to expel, to deter, to free, and others denoting separation, difference, or distance, are frequently followed by the ablative, without the prepositions *ab, de*, or *ex*.

The principal verbs of this class are *pello, depello* and *expello, ejicio, abterreo* and *deterreo, moveo, amoveo, demoveo, removeo: abeo, exeo, cedo, decedo, discedo, desisto, evado, abstineo; libero, expedio, solvo, exsolvo, exonero*, and *levo*: — *alieno* and *abalieno, distingo, discerno, secerno, differo, discrepo, dissideo, disto, abhorreo*, &c. E. g.

Censóres ómnes, quôs (*de*) *senātu movérunt.*	All the censors, whom they have removed from the senate.
Ne opifĭces quídem sê (*ab*) *ārtibus súis removérunt.*	Not even the artisans withdrew from their trades.

* On *egeo* and *indigeo* compare page 113.

† But also *mare vacuum* ab *hostibus.* — *Referta Gallia negociatōrum*, according to Lesson LXVI. *A*.

‡ Compare pages 183 and 288.

Apud Germános quemcúnque mortálium *arcêre* (*a*) *técto* néfas habêtur.	Among the Germans it was considered wrong to drive away any human being from a roof.
Pópulus Atheniénsis Phociônem *pátriâ pépŭlit.*	The Athenian people expelled Phocion from his country.
Úsu úrbis *prohibêre* peregrínos inhumânum est.	It is inhuman to prevent strangers from the use of the city.
Brûtus civitâtem *dominátu régio liberâvit.*	Brutus delivered the country from royal domination.
Pétiit Fláccus, ut *légibus solverêtur.*	Flaccus petitioned to be released from the laws.
Exónera civitâtem *váno* fórsitan *métu.*	Release the state from perhaps a groundless apprehension.
Levâmur superstitiône, liberâmur mórtis *métu.*	We are relieved from superstition, we are delivered from the fear of death.
Sôl ex aéquo *métā distâbat utrâque.*	The sun was equally distant from the east and west.

REMARKS.

1. The verbs *exsolvĕre*, *exonerāre*, and *levāre* are always followed by the ablative, while *liberāre*, *expedire*, *solvĕre*, and the adjective *liber*, may have either *aliquā re* or *ab aliquā re*.

2. The verbs *alienāre*, *abalienāre*, *distinguĕre*, &c. commonly have *ab*, and the ablative only among the poets. But *differre*, *discrepāre*, &c., and the adjective *diversus*, sometimes have the dative instead of *ab*.

3. The verb *separāre* commonly takes *ab*. The construction of *prohibēre* and *defendĕre* is *aliquem re*, *ab re* or *ab aliquo*. That of *interdicĕre*, *alicui aliquā re*, as in the formula *alicui aquā et igni interdicĕre*, to banish one.

4. In imitation of the Greeks, the poets sometimes put the genitive instead of the ablative after verbs and adjectives of separation. E. g. *Me omnium jam labōrum lĕvas*, You release me now from all my labors. *Liber labōrum*, Free from labors. *Purus scelĕris*, Pure from guilt.

The host, inn-keeper.	Hospes, ĭtis, *m.*; caupo, ōnis, *m.*
The property, fortune.	Facultātes, *f. pl.*; bŏna, ōrum, *n.*; rēs familiāris.
The patrimony.	Patrimōnium, i, *n.*
The entire, whole: all.	Tōtus, a, um. Integer, gra, grum. Omnis, is, e.
To spend, expend.	Expendo, ĕre, di, sum.
To draw and spend (out of the public treasury).	Ērŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum. Deprōmo, ĕre, mpsi, mptum.
To squander.	Diffundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum. Dilapĭdo, āre, āvi, ātum.
To spend, consume (in eating, &c.).	Comĕdo, ĕre, ēdi, ēsum. Consūmo, ĕre, mpsi, mptum. Conficĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum.

How much have you spent today?	Quántam pecúniam hódie expendísti?
I have spent only ten dollars.	Décem tántum thaléros expéndi.
Have I spent more money than you?	Egóne majôrem pecúniam expéndi quam tû?
You have, on the contrary, spent less than I.	Ímmo pótius minôrem, quám égo, expendísti.
How much am I to pay? (What expense have I made?)	Quántum (pécuniae) comédi? / Quíd súmptūs féci? / Quántum tíbi débeo?
You have spent nearly a hundred dollars.	Ad céntum thaléros consumpsísti.
How much has he spent at the inn?	Quíd pecúniae confêcit (quid sumptus fêcit) apud hóspitem?
He has spent nearly all the money he has.	Pecúnias súas fére ómnes consúmpsit et confêcit.
Has he much property (large means)?	Tenétne facultátes mágnas?
He has nothing more, for he has squandered his entire patrimony.	Nôn ámplius; nám patrimónium súum íntegrum dilapidâvit.
Did he squander what he had?	Profudítne súum?
He has squandered both his own and other people's money.	Profûdit véro et súum et aliêna.
Just now.	*Módo, commódum; proxime* (adv.); *recens, tis*, adj.
The infant just born.	Ínfans módo nâtus (récens a nátu).
The stranger just arrived.	Récens ádvĕna.
The men, who have just arrived.	Hómines, quí módo (próxime) advenérunt.
He just now writes.	Módo scríbit.
Have you just come?	Ádvenis módo?
He has just written.	Scrípsit módo.
I have just now seen your brother.	Égo frâtrem túum módo vidêbam.
What countryman are you?	*Cújas (cujâtis) és?*
I am an American, an Englishman, a Russian.	Americânus, Ánglus, Rússus sum.
Where do you come from?	Únde vénis?
I am from London, Rome, Leipsic, Paris.	Vénio Londíno, Rómā, Lípsiā, Lutétiā Parisiórum. (Cf. Lesson LVI. *C.*)
I am a Londoner, Roman, from Leipsic, a Parisian.	Dómo Londinénsis, Románus, Lipsiénsis, Parisiénsis súm. (Cf. page 195.)
From Sparta.	Spartānus, i, *m.* (a, ae, *f.*).
From Athens.	Atheniensis, is, *m.* & *f.*
From Venice.	Venētus, i, *m.*
From Dresden.	*Dresdensis, is, *m.* & *f.*
From Berlin.	*Berolinensis, is, *m.* & *f.*

From Vienna.	*Vindobonensis, is, *m.* & *f.*
From New York.	*Neo-Eboracensis, is, *m.* & *f.*
From Cambridge.	*Cantabrigiensis, is, *m.* & *f.*
Are you from Athens?	Núm dómo Atheniénsis és?
No, I am from Venice (a Venetian).	Nôn véro; égo Venêtus súm.
To serve (any one).	Servio, īre, īvi (ĭi), ītum (ALICUI).
To wait upon, attend on one.	Ministrāre alicui. Apparēre alicui (*officially*).
To attend one professionally.	Opĕram dăre (adesse) alĭcui.
To be in one's service.	In famulātu esse apud alĭquem. In ministĕrĭo alicūjus esse. Servīre apud alĭquem.
Was he in your service?	Erátne in ministério túo (in famulátu apud tê)?
He was in my service twenty years.	Érat apud mê in famulátu vigínti ánnos.
Does he serve (attend on you) well (promptly)?	Ministrátne tĭbi béne (paráte)?
He does serve me very well.	Minístrat mĭhi véro ádmodum béne (paráte).
Did the doctor attend you to-day?	Dedítne tĭbi óperam hódie médicus?
No, he has neglected to attend me to-day.	Non; óperam mĭhi dáre hódie praetermîsit.
To spoil, damage, corrupt.	Perdo, ĕro, dĭdi, dĭtum. Corrumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum. Vitĭo, āre, āvi, ātum.
To soil.	Inquĭno, āre, āvi, ātum.
He has soiled his handkerchief.	Muccínium súum inquinávit.
Has any one spoiled your hat?	Écquis (númquis) pĭleum túum pérdidit?
No one (has spoiled it).	Némo.
Is your dress spoiled?	Vestísne túa vitiâta ést?
My dress is not spoiled, but my book is.	Nôn véstis méa, sed líber vitiâtus est.
Is the sugar spoiled (damaged)?	Éstne sáccharum vitiâtum (corrúptum)?
It is — It is not.	Est profécto. — Nôn est.
To dress, clothe.	Vestes parāre alicui. Vestio, īre, īvi, ītum.
To dress, fit, become (any one)	Convenīre (alĭcui). Decēre (aliquem). Dignum esse (aliquo).
Most beautifully, charmingly.	Pulcherrime, optĭme.
Admirably.	Mirifice.
This coat fits you very well.	Haêc tóga tĭbi óptime cónvenit.
How does this hat fit (become) me?	Quómodo mĭhi sédet (cónvenit) hícce pĭleus?
It fits you charmingly, admirably.	Sédet tĭbi pulchérrime, mirífice.

It does not become you very well.	Tíbi mínus cónvĕnit.
It misbecomes you.	Tê nôn est dígnus. Tê dédĕcet.
That garment becomes him admirably.	Véstisílla éum décet mirífice (éo digníssima est).
Does the father clothe his children?	Vestítne páter líberos súos? Parátne páter véstes líberis?
He does clothe them.	Véstit. Párat.
Does your father clothe you?	Patérne tíbi véstes nóvas párat?
He does.	Páter.
God himself is said to clothe the needy.	Déus ípse egénos vestíre dícitur.
How was the boy clothed?	Quemádmodum érat púer vestítus?
He was dressed in green.	Indûtus érat véste víridi.
The girl was dressed in blue.	Puélla indûta érat véste caerúleā.
To be dressed in.	Indūtum (am, um) esse (veste alíquā).
How large, of what size?	Quam magnus, a, um? Quantus, a, um?
How high?	Quam altus (celsus), a, um? Cūjus magnitūdĭnis?
How deep?	Quam altus, a, um? Quam profundus, a, um? Cūjus profunditātis?
How high is his house?	Cújus altitúdĭnis est éjus dómus?
It is about thirty feet high.	Álta ést círciter *trigínta pédes* (acc.). Est pédum círciter trigínta. (Cf. Lesson LXIV. *B.*)

D. Obs. In answer to the questions, *How far? How long (high, deep, wide, thick)?* the noun denoting the extent of space is generally put in the accusative without a preposition, but sometimes in the ablative.*

How deep is the well?	Quám áltus (profúndus) púteus ést?
It is twenty feet deep.	Altus (profúndus) ést vigínti pédes.
He had two ditches made, fifteen feet deep. Behind these he constructed a rampart of twelve feet.	Dúas fóssas *quíndĕcim pédes* látas perdúxit. Post éas vállum duódecim pédum exstrúxit.
We have not gone a foot beyond.	*Pédem* nôn egréssi súmus.
The plain of Marathon is about ten thousand paces (ten miles) from Athens.	Cámpus Márathon ab Athénis círciter *mília* pássŭum *décem* ábest.
The army was about a three days' journey from the river Tenais.	Exércĭtus trídui *itínĕre* ábfŭit ab ámne Ténăi.
He encamped three miles from the city.	*Tría mília* pássuum ab úrbe cástra pósuit.

* This construction is consequently the same as that of Time, in answer to *How long?* on which compare Lesson LVII. *A.*

He established himself about six miles from Cæsar's camp.	*Mílibus* pássuum *sex* a Caésăris cástris consêdit.
True.	*Vērus, a, um.*
True virtue, friendship, religion.	Vêra vírtus, amicítia, religio.
A true and sincere (genuine) friend.	Vêrus et sincêrus amícus.
A true scholar.	Vír vére dóctus.
Is it true?	Verúmne est? Éstne vêrum?
It is true. It is so.	Vêrum est. Rês íta (sic) sê hábet.
Is it not so?	Nónne? Áin' tû?
I do not deny it. I grant it.	Nôn négo. Concédo.
Is it true that his house has been burnt?	Verúmne ést, dómum éjus deflagrâtam ésse?
Is it true that he has lost his house by fire?	Éstne vêrum, éum dómum súam ví flammârum amisísse?
It is really so.	Rês prórsus íta sê hábet.
It is not true. It is false.	Nôn vêrum est. / Fálsum est.
Is it not true that you are squandering your patrimony?	Nónne vêrum est, tê patrimónium dilapidâre?
I do not deny that it is so.	Rém íta sê habêre nôn négo. (Lesson LIII. *B.* 3.)
As sure as I live, I know it to be so.	Íta vívam, ut scío, rém sic sê habêre.
As sure as I live, I do not know whether it is so.	Nê vívam, si scío, án vêrum sít (íta sê hábeat).
The philosopher.	Philŏsŏphus, i, *m.*
The key.	Clāvis, is, *f.*
The lock (bolt).	Claustrum, i, *n.*
The door.	Ostĭum, i. *n.*
The locksmith.	Făber (ri, *m.*) claustrārĭus.
The saddle.	Sella equāria, ae, *f.* / *Ephippium, i, *n.*
The saddler.	Ephippiōrum artĭfex (ĭcis, *m.*).
Has he a comfortable income?	Habétne, únde cómmode vívat?
He has. He has not.	Hábet. Nôn hábet.
How large is his income?	Quántus est éi réditus pecúniae?
He has an annual income of a thousand aurei.	Annŭa hábet mílle aureórum.
He has fifty crowns per month to live upon.	Réditum ménstruum hábet quinquagínta thalêrum.
May I offer you (do you choose) some of this (dish)?	Vísne (optâsne) aliquántulum de hôc (cíbo)?
I should like some of it.	Ópto véro aliquántulum.
I do not like it.	Míhi nôn líbet.
It does not agree with me.	Míhi nôn pródest.
That will not do for me.	Hóc míhi nôn úsui est.
The income (of money, &c.).	Redĭtus, ūs, *m.* (redĭtus pecūniae).
The annual income (pension, &c.).	Annŭum, i, *n.*, or *pl.* annua, ōrum.

Annual.	Annuus, a, um.
Monthly.	Menstrŭus, a, um.
To board (with any one).	Ālor, ăli, altus* sum (ab aliquo). Alicujus victu ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum.
Did you board with him?	Alebarísne ab illo? Usúisne és éjus víctu?
I did board with him.	Alêbar. Ûsus sum.

EXERCISE 135.

Who is the man who has just spoken to you? — He is a learned man. — What has the shoemaker just brought? — He has brought the boots and shoes which he has made us. — Who are the men that have just arrived? — They are philosophers. — Of what country are they? — They are from London. — Who is the man who has just started? — He is an Englishman who has squandered away all his fortune in France. — What countryman are you? — I am a Spaniard, and my friend is an Italian. — Wilt thou go for the locksmith? — Why must I go for the locksmith? — He must make me a key, for I have lost the one belonging to my room. — Where did your uncle dine yesterday? — He dined at the inn-keeper's. — How much did he spend? — He spent three florins. — How much has he a month to live upon? — He has two hundred florins a month to live upon. — Must I go for the saddler? — You must go for him, for he must mend the saddle. — Have you seen any one at the market? — I have seen a good many people there. — How were they dressed? — Some were dressed in blue, some in green, some in yellow, and several in red. — How much (*quanti*) did you buy your horse for? — I bought it for twenty pounds of gold. — Did he sell his house for a high price (*magno*)? — He sold it for a very high price (*permagno*); he sold it for ten thousand talents. — Did your books cost you as much as mine? — They cost me just as much (*tantidem*); they cost me a thousand aurei. — How much do your lodgings cost you? — They cost me ten dollars (crowns) per month. — How much do you pay for instruction (*quanti docēris*)? — I pay fifty crowns for it. — How much is corn worth in this region (*regio*)? — A medimnus of corn is worth only half a dollar in this region.

EXERCISE 136.

Who are those men? — The one who is dressed in gray is my neighbor, and the one with the black coat the physician, whose son has given my neighbor a blow with a stick. — Who is the man with the green coat? — He is one of my relations. — Are you from Berlin? — No, I am from Dresden. — How much money have your children spent to-day? — They have spent but little; they have spent but one florin. — Does that man serve you well? — He does serve me well; but he spends too much. — Are you willing to take this servant? — I am willing to take him if he will serve me. — Can I

* From *alo, ĕre, alŭi, altum* or *altum*, to nourish, support.

take this servant? — You can take him, for he has served me very well. — How long is it since he (first) served you? — It is but two months since. — Has he served you long? — He has served me (for) six years. — How much did you give him a year? — I gave him a hundred crowns. — Did he board with you? — He did board with me. — What did you give him to eat? — I gave him whatever I ate. Were you pleased with him? — I was much pleased with him. — Is he free from (*vacatne*) guilt? — He is entirely (*prorsus*) free from it. — Does this country abound in gold? — It does not abound (in it). Has he filled his glass with wine? — He has filled it with pure wine (*mērum*). — Does he adorn his house with pictures? — He is adorning it. — Will you release us from fear (*metu*)? — I cannot release you (from it). — Were they expelled (*expulsus*) from their country? — They were not expelled.

Lesson LXXII. — PENSUM ALTERUM ET SEPTUAGESIMUM.

ABLATIVE AFTER VERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

A. The deponent verbs *ūtor*, *frŭor*, *fungor*, *poltor*, *vescor*, *dignor*, *laetor*, *glorĭor*, *nītor*, and the compounds *abūtor*, *perfrŭor*, *defungor*, and *perfungor* are generally followed by the ablative. E. g.

Nâvis óptime cúrsum cónficit éa, quae *scientíssimo gubernatôre ūtĭtur*.
That ship makes the best passage which has the most skilful helmsman.

Íd ést cujúsque próprium, *quô* quísque *frŭĭtur* átque *ūtitur*.
The property of every one is that which he enjoys and uses.

Qui adipísci vêram glóriam volet, justítiae *fungâtur offíciis*.
Let him, who desires to acquire real distinction, attend to the requirements of justice.

Defúncti béllo Púnico, Románi árma Macedóniae intulérunt.
Released from the Punic war, the Romans directed their arms against Macedonia.

Éadem perícŭla, *quíbus* nos *perfúncti súmus*.
The same dangers which we have undergone.

Impediméntis castrísque nóstri *potíti sunt*.
Our soldiers made themselves masters of the baggage and the camp.

Helvétiis persuâsit, perfácile esse, totíus Gálliae *império potíri*.
He persuaded the Helvetii, that it was very easy to get possession of entire Gaul.

Númidae plerúmque *lácte* et *ferínā cárne vescebántur*.
The Numidians subsisted principally upon milk and the flesh of wild beasts.

Ómne, *quô vescúntur* hómines, pénus est.	Everything, which men live upon, is food (provisions).
Haûd équidem *tâli* mê *dígnor honôre.*	I do not consider myself worthy of such an honor.
Núllā rê tám *laetâri* sóleo, quam meôrum officiôrum *conscientiā.*	There is nothing in which I am wont to take so much delight, as in the consciousness of my duties.
Núllā rê núi décet sapiéntem, nísi *virtûte* animique *conscientiā.*	The philosopher ought to rely on nothing, except on virtue and the consciousness of intellect.

REMARKS.

1. The verbs *ūtor*, *frŭor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor* sometimes also occur with the accusative. E. g. Rem *medici utuntur.* — Argentum *abūtor.* — *Frui* ingenium. — Militāre munus *fungens.* — *Potīri* administrationem *regni.* — Absinthium *vescuntur.*

2. *Potior* also governs the genitive; as, *potīri rērum*, *imperii*, *dominatiōnis*, to obtain the chief command. The construction of *glorior* is either RE, DE RE, or IN RE; that of *nītor* and *innītor*, RE, IN RE, AD or IN REM. E. g. In virtūte *jure gloriāmur*, We justly seek our honor in virtue. *Pompeii* in vītā *nitebātur salus civitatis*, The salvation of the state depended upon the life of Pompey. Ad immortalitatem *gloriae nītĭtur*, He is striving after an immortality of glory.

3. *Fīdo* and *confīdo* either take the ablative, like *nītor*, or the dative. E. g. *Nemo alterĭus*, *qui* suae *confīdit*, virtūti *invidet*, No one envies the virtue of another, who has any confidence in his own. *Nemo potest fortūnae* stabilitate *confidĕre*, No one can rely upon the stability of fortune. — *Stāre*, "to abide by," has either the ablative or *in*; as, *Stant sententiā*, They abide by their opinion. *Stāre in fide*, To remain true, faithful.

B. The preceding rule includes the adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *frētus*, *alienus*, *praedĭtus*, and *contentus*, which are likewise followed by the ablative. E. g.

Nâtus sûm ad agéndum sémper áliquid *dignum víro.*	I am born for the constant performance of something worthy of the character of man.
Excelléntium cívium vírtus *imitatiône*, nôn *invidiā dígna* ést.	The virtue of eminent citizens deserves imitation, and not envy.
Quam múlti *lûce indígni* súnt, et tàmen díes óritur.	How many are unworthy of the light of day, and yet it rises!
Haêc ad tê scrípsi libérius, *frêtus conscientiā* officii méi.	I have written you this somewhat frankly, relying on my consciousness of duty.
Dîi súnt benéfici, néque hoc *alienum* dúcunt *majestâte súā.*	The gods are beneficent, nor do they consider this attribute at variance with their majesty.
Epicûrus confírmat, déos *membris humánis* ésse *praédĭtos.*	Epicurus asserts, that the gods are possessed of human limbs.

Mens est *praédĭta mótu sempĭtérno.*	The mind is endued with eternal motion.
Párvo est natûra *conténta.*	Nature is content with little.
Quod cuíque témpŏris ad vivéndum dátur, *eo* débet ésse *conténtus.*	Every one ought to be contented with the space of time given him to live in.

REMARKS.

1. *Aliēnus*, in the sense of "averse *or* hostile to," has commonly either *ab* or the dative; but in the sense of "unsuitable, incompatible," it has either the ablative or *ab*, and sometimes the genitive. E. g. *Homo aliēnus a litteris*, A man averse (or a stranger) to letters. *Ambitioni aliēnus*, Averse to ambition. *Aliēnum a vitā meā*, Foreign to (inconsistent with) my life. *Aliārum rērum aliēna*, Not reconcilable with other things, unexampled.

2. *Dignus* sometimes (though rarely) occurs with the genitive. When connected with a verb, it takes either the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *qui*. E. g. *Dignus salūtis.* — *Dignus, qui impĕret*, Worthy to command. *Horatius fere solus legi dignus*, Horace almost the only one worth reading. So also *contentus scripsisse*, satisfied to have written.

C. The participles *nātus, prognātus, genĭtus, sătus, edĭtus,* and *ortus* are sometimes followed by the ablative without the preposition *ex* or *a*.

Such ablatives are generally *lŏco, generĕ, stirpe, familiā, parentĭbus,* frequently in connection with an adjective.

Vir *súmmo lóco nâtus.*	A man of high rank by birth.
Vírgines *hónesto órtae lóco.*	Maidens of respectable descent.
Adolescéntes *amplíssimā famílĭā náti.*	Young men of illustrious descent.
Archias *nâtus* est *lóco nóbili.*	Archias was of noble origin.
Húnc *Fáuno* et *nýmphā génĭtum* accépimus.	The tradition is, that he was engendered by Faunus and a nymph.
Non *sánguĭne humáno*, sed *stírpe divinā sátus.*	Not begotten of human blood, but of divine pedigree.
Quâlis tíbi ílle vidêtur, *Tántalo prognâtus, Pelŏpe nâtus?*	What sort of a man do you consider that descendant of Tantalus, the son of Pelops?

REMARK. — When connected with an adjective, this ablative may be regarded as that of *quality*, and always stands without a preposition. But when no adjective is added, the prepositions *ex* or *a* are frequently employed. E. g. *Natus* ex Penelopā. — *Belgae* ab *Germanis orti*, &c.

THE ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

D. The ablative is also governed by the prepositions *a, ab (abs), absque, clam, coram, cum, de, e, ex, in, prae, pro, sine, sub, subter,* and *tĕnus*. (Cf. Lesson XCIV.)

REMARK. — *In* and *sub* take the ablative only in answer to the question *Where?* *Super* only when it stands for *de*, "with respect to," "with reference to." *Subter* is more commonly construed with the accusative.

E. Verbs compounded with the prepositions *a*, *de*, or *ex* are followed by the ablative in a local sense, sometimes with the preposition repeated.* E. g.

Tû *eâ* mê *abésse úrbe* mirâris, in quâ súmmum sit ódium hóminum?	Do you wonder at my being absent from a city, in which the hatred of men is carried to the utmost extremes?
Decédĕre provínciâ praêtor jussus ést.	The prætor was ordered to leave the province.
Ad éos, qui *vîtâ excessérunt*, revertâmur.	Let us now return to those who are already dead.
Amicítia *núllo lóco exclúdĭtur*.	Friendship is excluded from no place.
Némĭnem *a congréssu méo* jánĭtor méus *abstérrŭit*.	My porter never deterred any one from meeting me.
Ut *ex his regiónibus* Barbarôrum praesídia *depélleret*.	That he might expel the troops of the Barbarians from these regions.
Rês *e memóriâ*, *de mánĭbus elabúntur*.	Things slip out of our memory, away from our hands.

REMARK. — The majority of these convey the idea of separation, and are consequently already included in Lesson LXXI. *C.*

F. Verbs of placing, putting, standing, sitting, and some others, are commonly followed by the ablative with *in*, but verbs of motion in general by the accusative with *in*.

Such verbs are *pōno*, *lŏco*, *collŏco*, *statŭo*, *constitŭo*, *consīdo*, *habeo*, *duco*, *numĕro*, *defīgo*, *mergo*, *incīdo*, *insculpo*, *inscrībo*, &c. Verbs of motion: *eo*, *venio*, *advenio*, *advento*, and many others. E. g.

Pláto ratiônem *in cápĭte*, vélut *in árce* pósuit; íram *in péctŏre* locâvit.	Plato has put the reason in the head, as in a citadel, and passion in the heart.
Cónon núnquam *in hórtis súis* custôdem impósuit.	Conon never set a watch over his garden.
Stéllas *in* deôrum *número* reposuérunt.	They put the stars among the number of the gods.
Dólor *in máximis mális* dúcĭtur.	Pain is considered one of the greatest of evils.
Áves quaêdam sê *in mári* mérgunt.	Some birds dive into the sea.
Legáti *in vúltu* rêgis defixérunt ócŭlos.	The ambassadors fixed their eyes upon the countenance of the king.

* This preposition, however, is not always the same, but one of kindred signification, as in Example 6.

Decémviri léges *in duódecim tábŭlis* scripsérunt.	The decemviri wrote the laws upon twelve tables.
In Itáliam, in província advênit.	He arrived in Italy, in the province.
Proféctus ést Rômam, Délphos.*	He has gone to Rome, to Delphi.

REMARK. — *Impōnĕre, insculpĕre, inscrībĕre, inserĕre*, are also followed by the dative (*aliquid alicui rei*, according to Lesson LXII. *B.*), and most of the above verbs frequently have *in rem* or *re* simply, instead of the *in re* of the rule. E. g. *imponere aliquid in rem; insculpĕre aliquid aliquā re*, &c.

To pity, commiserate.	*Mĭsĕror, āri, ātus sum.* *Commĭsĕrāri* (ALIQUEM, ALIQUID). *Mē mĭsĕrĕt* (*mĭsĕrŭit, miserĭtum est*) ALICUJUS.†
To lament, mourn or weep over.	*Dēplōro, āre, āvi, ātum.* *Dēflĕo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.* (ALIQUEM, ALIQUID.)
With all one's heart.	Ex anĭmo, tōto pectŏre (anĭmo).
Do you pity me, him, us, them?	Commiserarísne mê, íllum, nôs, éos? Miserétne te méi, illíus, nostri, eôrum?
I do pity thee (him, you, them) with all my heart.	Égo véro tê (íllum, vôs, éos) ex ánimo commíseror. Mê véro túi (illíus, véstri, eôrum) míseret tóto péctore.
Do ye commiserate this man?	Miseramínne húnc hóminem?
We commiserate him very much.	Commiserâmur éum vehémenter.
I have pitied your misfortunes.	Mê misérítum ést tuârum fortunârum.
I have lamented over lost hope.	Deplorávi spem pérditam.
I have wept over his untimely death.	Deflévi mórtem éjus praematûram.
To confide or *trust in* (or *rely on* any one or thing).	*Fīdo, ĕre, fisus sum.* *Confidĕre* (ALICUI, ALICUI REI). *Frētum* (*am*) *esse* (ALIQUO, ALIQUA RE).
To trust with, intrust, commit (anything to any one).	*Crĕdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum.* *Concrĕdĕre, committĕre, mandāre.* (ALICUI ALIQUID.)
To confide (commit) anything to the care of any one).	Comíttĕre (permíttĕre) áliquid fídĕi alicújus. Trádĕre áliquid in alicújus fídem.
To intrust one's plans, one's secrets, to one.	Consília, occúlta súa álicui crédĕre.
To commit (unbosom) one's self to one.	Sê (ánimum súum) álicui crédĕre.

* On these accusatives with and without *in*, compare Lesson LVI. *A.*
† On the government of this verb, see Lesson LXVII. *C.*

To intrust one's self to the protection of one.	In alicújus fídem sê trádere, permíttere.
To give one's self up to one.	Sê dáre (dédĕre) álicui.
To give one's self up entirely to one.	Tótum sê dédere álicui.
Did he intrust you with anything?	Credidítne (commisítne) tíbi áliquid?
He intrusted his money to me.	Crédidit (commísit) míhi pecúnias súas.
He has deposited his money with me (for safe-keeping).	Pecúnias súas apud mê depósuit. / Pecúnias súas míhi mandâvit (demandâvit).
What have you intrusted (committed) to his protection?	Quíd in éjus fídem tradidísti?
I have intrusted my only son to his protection.	Fídĕi éjus fílium méum únicum commísi.
I have intrusted all my sons to the care of one master.	Égo fílios méos ómnes unius magístri cúrae demandávi.
He trusted him with all his plans and secrets.	Credébat éi consília átque occúlta súa ómnia.
He has unbosomed himself to me.	Sê (ánimum súum) míhi crédidit.
He has surrendered himself entirely to me.	Tótum sê míhi dédidit.
Do you confide in me, him, us, them?	Confidísne míhi, éi, nóbis, íllis?
Do you rely on me, him, us, them?	Fretúsne és mê, éo, nóbis, íllis?
I do trust, rely on.	Confído. Frĕtus sum.
The plan.	Consĭlium, i, *n.*
The secret.	Res secrēta, occulta, arcāna, *f. sing.*
Secrets.	Occulta, arcāna, secrēta, ōrum, *n. pl.*
The mystery.	Mystērium, i, *n.*
To keep anything secret.	Aliquid tăcĭtum (occultum) tĕnēre, *or* hăbēre.
To keep still (silent) about anything.	Rĕticĕo, ēre, cŭi (ALIQUID, DE ALIQUA RE).
To conceal (anything from any one).	Cēlo, āre, āvi, ātum (ALIQUEM ALIQUID,* DE ALIQUA RE).
To publish, divulge.	Pălăm făcĕre aliquid.
Did he conceal the mystery from you?	Celavítne tê mystérium?
No, on the contrary, he communicated it to me.	Ímmo pótius íd mêcum communicâvit.
Did you keep the matter secret?	Tenuistíne rém occúltam? / Reticuistíne rém (de rĕ)?
No, I imprudently divulged it.	Nôn véro; rém pálam fēci égo inconsiderâtus.
To offer.	*Offĕro, ferre, obtŭli, oblātum.* / *Deferre* (ALICUI ALIQUID).

* Cf. Lesson LX. *A.*

To offer (promise) one's services to one.	Álicui ópĕram súam offérre *or* pollicéri.
To offer one's self to one.	Sê (semetípsum) álicui offérre.
Did he offer you his services (assistance)?	Obtulítne (pollicitúsne ést) tíbi óperam súam?
He has offered himself to me.	Ís semetípsum míhi óbtulit.
I offer and promise you all in my power.	Quídquid póssum, tíbi pollíceor ac défero.
The gods have offered (granted) you all you desired.	Díi tíbi omnia optâta detulérunt.
He offered him all his influence for the accomplishment of this end.	Ómnem éi súam auctoritâtem ad hôc negótium conficiéndum dĕtŭlit.
Did he offer (proffer) us his help in the matter?	Núm óperam súam ad rém proféssus ést?
He has offered us his services of his own accord.	Óperam súam nóbis últro óbtulit (pollícitus est).
Voluntarily, of one's own accord.	*Ultro* (adv.), *suā* (*tuā*, &c.) *sponte*, *sponte et ultro.*
Unwillingly.	Invītus, a, um.
Did he leave unwillingly?	Discessítne invítus?
No, he left of his own accord.	Nôn véro; súā spónte et últro discéssit.
The Roman citizen.	Cīvis Romānus.
The American citizen.	Cīvis Americānus.
The citizen (inhabitant) of London, Paris, New York.	Incŏla (ae, *m.*) Londīni, Lutētiae, Eborāci Nŏvi.
The Hamburg merchant.	Mercātor Hamburgensis.
The Strasburg beer.	Cervisia Argentoratensis.
The student of Leipsic, Paris, Cambridge.	Cīvis academĭae Lipsiensis, Parisiensis, Cantabrigiensis.
The inhabitant of a city.	Oppidānus, i, *m.*
The inhabitant of the country.	Rustĭcus, rusticānus, i, *m.*
To take care of, to be careful of anything.	*Curāre* or *sibi curae* (dat.) *habēre aliquid.* *Ratiōnem alicūjus rĕi habēre.* *Respĭcĕre* (*spexi*, *spectum*) *aliquid.*
Does he take care of his clothes?	Curátne véstem súam? Habétne sibi cúrae véstem?
He does take care of them.	Cûrat. Hábet.
Do you take care of your hat?	Habêsne tíbi cûrae píleum?
I do not.	Nôn hábeo.
Do ye take care of your health?	Curatísne valetúdinem? Habetísne ratiônem valetúdinis?
We do take care of our health and property both.	Hebêmus véro ratiônem et valetúdĭnis et réi familiāris.
Did he regard his own interest?	Núm cómmoda súa ipsíus respiciébat?

He regarded his own advantage less than that of others.	Súa ipsíus cómmoda mínus, quam aliêna respiciêbat.
To take care of, provide for, attend to.	*Curāre* (ALIQUEM ALIQUID). *Providēre* or *consŭlĕre* (*ŭi, tum*) (ALICUI).
Will you take care of my horse?	Vísne méum équum curâre? Vísne méo équo providêre?
I will (am not unwilling).	Vólo. Providêre éi nôn nólo.
He is providing for his life and health in the best possible manner.	Vítae súae salutíque quam óptime cónsŭlit et próvídet.

Exercise 137.

How long has your brother been absent from the city? — He has been absent these twelve months. — Has he been ordered to leave his country (*patriā*)? — He has been ordered. — Are there many philosophers in your country? — There are as many there as in yours. — How does this hat fit me? — It fits you very well. — How does this hat fit your brother? — It fits him admirably. — Is your brother as tall as you? — He is taller than I, but I am older than he. — How high is this man? — He is five feet four inches high. — How high is the house of our landlord? — It is sixty feet high. — Is your well deep? — Yes, sir, for it is fifty feet deep. — How long have those men been in your father's service? — They have been in his service already more than three years? — Has your cousin been long at Paris? — He has been there nearly six years. — Who has spoiled my knife? — Nobody has spoiled it, for it was spoiled when we were in want of it. — Is it true that your uncle has arrived? — I assure you that he has arrived. — Is it true that he has assured you of his assistance? — I assure you that it is true. — Is it true that the six thousand men, whom we were expecting, have arrived? — I have heard so. — Will you dine with us? — I cannot dine with you, for I have just eaten. — Do you throw away your hat? — I do not throw it away, for it fits me admirably. — Does your friend sell his coat? — He does not sell it, for it fits him most beautifully. — There are many learned men in Berlin, are there not (*nonne*)? asked Cuvier a man from Berlin. Not as many as when you were there, answered the man from Berlin.

Exercise 138.

Why do you pity that man? — I pity him, because he has trusted a merchant of Hamburg with his money, and the man will not return it to him. — Do you trust this citizen with anything? — I do not trust him with anything. — Has he already kept anything from you? — I have never trusted him with anything, so that he has never kept anything from me. — Will you trust my father with your money? — I will trust him with it. — What secret has my son intrusted you with? — I cannot intrust you with that with which he has intrusted me, for he has desired me to keep it secret. — Whom do you intrust with your secrets? — I intrust nobody with them, so that nobody

knows them. — Has your brother been rewarded? — He has, on the contrary, been punished; but I beg you to keep it secret, for no one knows it. — What has happened to him? — I will tell you what has happened to him, if you promise me to keep it secret. — Do you promise me to keep it secret? — I promise you, for I pity him with all my heart. — Do you consider (*ducísne*) that at variance (*aliënum*) with your dignity (*dignitas*)? — I do not consider (it so). — Does he attend to (*fungiturne*) the duties of justice? — He does attend to them. — Have you experienced (*perfunctus*) the same dangers which I have experienced? — I have not experienced the same. — What do they live upon? — They live upon fish and milk. — Who has taken possession (*poteri*) of the baggage? — The soldiers have made themselves masters of it. — What do you rejoice in (*laetari*)? — I rejoice in the consciousness of virtue. — Is his virtue worthy of imitation? — It is not worthy of it.

Lesson LXXIII. — PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM TERTIUM.

OF THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

A. A noun and a participle in the ablative are often put independently of the rest of the proposition in which they occur, and serve as an abridged form of a clause introduced by the conjunctions *quum, dum, si, quod, quamquam, quamvis*, &c. Thus, *Sole oriente* (= *quum sol orĭtur*), The sun rising, i. e. when the sun rises. *Servio Tullio regnante* (= *dum Servius Tullius regnābat*), Servius Tullius reigning, i. e. while he was reigning, during his reign.* *Sole orto* (= *quum sol ortus esset*), The sun having risen, i. e. *when* (*after*) it had risen. *Cyro mortuo* (= *quum Cyrus mortuus esset*), Cyrus being dead, i. e. *when* he was dead, *after* his death. This construction is called the *Ablative Absolute*. It most commonly designates the time or concomitant of an action or event, but frequently also a CAUSE, REASON, CONDITION, or CONCESSION.

B. When the ablative absolute indicates the *Time* of an action or event, it is rendered into English by *when, while, during, after.* E. g.

Crástino díe, *oriénte sôle*, redíto in púgnam.	To-morrow, when the sun rises, return to the encounter.

---

* In this construction the present participle always refers to the time of the action denoted by the verb of the sentence, which may be either present, past, or future. The perfect participle indicates an action or event anterior to that expressed by the verb. (Compare Lesson XLIX. *E.*)

Jóve tonánte, cum pópulo agi nôn est fâs.	When Jove thunders, it is not right to address the people.
Quaéritur, útrum múndus *térrā stánte* circúmĕat, an *múndo stánte* térra vertâtur.	The question is, whether the heavens revolve while the earth stands still, or whether the earth turns and the heavens stand still.
Sólon et Pisístrătus *Sérvio Túllio regnánte* viguérunt.	Solon and Pisistratus flourished during the reign of Servius Tullius.
Vidêmus áquam spumâre, *ígni subjécto*.	We observe that water foams whenever fire is put under it.
Diône interfécto, Dionýsius rúrsus Syracusârum potitus est.	After the murder of Dion, Dionysius again took possession of Syracuse.
Régĭbus exáctis, cónsŭles creáti súnt.	After the expulsion of the kings, consuls were created.

Remarks.

1. The noun entering into the construction of the ablative absolute always denotes a different person or object from those contained in the sentence; but pronouns sometimes constitute an exception to this rule. E. g. *Ego percussōrem meum securum ambulāre patĭar* me sollicĭto? Shall I allow my murderer to walk secure, while I am anxious? *Galliam Italiamque tentari* se absente *nolēbat*, He was not willing that Italy should be invaded in his absence. Inviso *sĕmel* princĭpe *seu bene seu male facta* (sc. *eum*) *premunt*, When a prince is once hated, then all his actions, whether good or bad, are construed against him.

2. The participle of the ablative absolute is generally either the present or the perfect. Instances of the future active are less frequent, and the future passive rarely occurs. E. g. *Rex apum nisi* migratūro agmĭne *foras non procēdit*, The king of the bees never comes out, unless the hive is about to migrate. Itūro *in Armeniam* majore filio, The elder son being about to go into Armenia. *Tanquam non* transitūris *in Asiam* Romanis, As if the Romans were not on the point of passing into Asia. *Quis est, qui*, nullis officii praeceptis tradendis, *philosophum se audeat dicere?* Will any one dare to call himself a philosopher, without having moral precepts to impart?

3. The perfect passive participle of the ablative absolute may frequently be rendered by the perfect active participle, which, in Latin, does not exist except in deponent verbs. E. g. *Pompeius*, captis Hierosolymis, *victor ex illo fano nihil tetĭgit*, Pompey, *having taken* Jerusalem (lit. Jerusalem *having been taken*), did not touch anything out of that temple.*

---

* The ablative absolute, in instances like this, manifestly arises from the want of a perfect active participle in Latin. The construction of deponent participles, on the other hand, is precisely like the English. E. g. *Hostes, hanc* adepti *victoriam* (= *hâc victoriâ adeptâ*), *in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant*, The enemy, *after* having won this victory, was confident of remaining victorious perpetually. (Compare Lesson XLIX. *A.* Rem. 4.)

4. When the perfect participle of deponent verbs is used in a passive sense,* it may stand in the ablative absolute, like that of transitive verbs. So likewise when the deponent is a neuter verb. E. g. *Partītis copiis*, The forces having been divided. *Periculo perfuncto*, The danger being overcome. *Adeptā libertāte*, Liberty having been obtained. *Profecto ex Italiā Valerio*, Valerius having left Italy. *Sole orto*, The sun having risen, &c.

C. When the ablative absolute denotes a *cause, condition,* or *concession,* it is rendered by the English *since, because, in consequence of, if, although.* E. g.

Ártes ínnumerábiles repértae súnt, *docénte natúrā.*	The arts are innumerable, since nature teaches them.
Ánxur brévi recéptum est, *negléctis* die festo *custódiis* úrbis.	Anxur was retaken in a short time, the watch of the city having been neglected on the day of a festival.
Flamínium Caélius *religiône neglectā* cecidísse apud Trasimênum scribit.	Cælius writes that Flaminius fell near Trasimenum in consequence of having neglected † the usual religious rites.
Natúrā reluctánte, írritus lábor ést.	Effort is fruitless, if nature opposes.
Quae pótest ésse jucúnditas vítae, *sublátis amicítiis?*	What pleasure can life possess, if friendship is banished from it?
Quaênam sollicitúdo vexâret ímpios, *subláto suppliciórum métū?*	What anxiety would harass the wicked, if the fear of punishment were removed?
Pérdĭtis rêbus ómnĭbus, tâmen ípsa vírtus sê sustentâre pótest.	Though everything be lost, yet virtue is all-sufficient to sustain herself.
Propósĭtā invídĭā, poénā, mórte, qui níhilo sécius rempúblicam defêndit, is vír vére putándus ést.	He who, in spite of odium, punishment, or death before him, ‡ nevertheless defends the common interest, must be considered really a man.

Remark. — The ablative absolute thus employed is sometimes linked to the preceding clause by one of the conjunctions *ut, velut, tanquam, etsi, quamquam,* or *quamvis.* E. g. Velut Diis *quoque simul cum patriā* relictis, As if the gods had been relinquished together with their country. Tanquam *non* transĭtūris *in Asiam* Romānis, As if the Romans were not on the point of passing into Asia. Quamvis caplte *defectionis* sublāto, Although the chief of the revolt had been removed.

D. The ablative absolute frequently consists merely of a

---

* A list of such participles is given in Lesson XLIX. *A.* Rem. 4.

† I. e. *because* he had neglected.

‡ I. e. *although* hatred, punishment, or death be placed before him.

noun in apposition with another noun, or of a noun and an adjective, with the participle of *esse* understood.* E. g.

Natúrā dúce, errári núllo pácto pótest.	Where nature guides, it is impossible to err.
Béllum Gállicum *C. Caésare imperatóre* gestum ést.	The Gallic war was carried on *under* the command of Cæsar.
Nâtus ést Augústus *M. Tullio Cicerône* et *António consúlibus*.	Augustus was born during the consulship of M. Tullius Cicero and Antony.
Ascánius Creúsā mâtre, *Íllio incólŭmi*, nâtus ést.	Ascanius was born of Creusa, when Troy was still uninjured.
Románi, *Hannibăle vívo*, núnquam sê sine insídiis futúros existimábant.	The Romans thought that they never would be exempt from snares while Hannibal was alive.
Caésăre ignáro magíster équitum constitûtus ést.	He was made master of horse without the knowledge of Cæsar.
Lúpus *mágno consectántium tumúltū* evâsit.	The wolf escaped amid the great commotion of those in pursuit of him.
Secúndis rêbus súis vólet étiam móri.	He will even desire to die, though in prosperity.

Remarks.

1. The substantives, which most commonly thus take the place of the participle in the ablative absolute are:—*a*) Certain nouns denoting the action of a verb; as *adjūtor, adjutrix, auctor, comes, dux, interpres, judex, magister, magistrix, praeceptor, praeceptrix, testis*,† &c. *b*) The names of certain offices or dignities, such as *consul, imperātor, praetor, rex, domĭnus, magistrātus*, &c. E. g. *Eo adjutōre*, With his assistance. *Licinio quōdam auctōre*, At the instigation of a certain Licinius. *Se duce*, Under his own conduct. *Me rege*, With me for a king. *His magistratĭbus*, Under the administration of these consuls. So also, *Puĕro Cicerōne*, When Cicero was a boy. *Nobis puĕris*, When I was one.

2. Additional examples of adjectives are:— *Deo propitio*, If God is propitious. *Invitā Minervā*, Against the will of Minerva, i. e. with bad success. *Sereno coelo*, The sky being clear. *Iis invītis*, They being unwilling (i. e. against their will). *Tacĭtis nobis*, When (while) we are silent. *Illis consciis*, They being accessories,‡ &c.

3. This construction is sometimes represented by an adjective alone.

---

* Such a participle does not exist in Latin, but is usually supplied in English. E. g. *Naturā duce*, nature *being* our guide; *Caesāre imperatōre*, Cæsar *being* commander; *Illio incolŭmi*, Illium *being* yet safe, &c.

† Substantives of this class may frequently be resolved into a participle; as, *Eo adjutōre*, i. e. *adjuvante*. — *Naturā duce*, i. e. *ducente*. — *Fortunā comite*, i. e. *comitante*. — *Polybio judice*, i. e. *judicante*, &c.

‡ But sometimes these ablatives absolute may also be referred to the ablative of mode or manner. E. g. *Bono gubernatore*. The pilot being good, i. e. with a good pilot. *Probo navigio*, With a proper vessel (ship).

E. g. Serēno *per totum diem*, The sky being serene all day long. Tranquillo *pervectus Chalcĭdem*, Conveyed to Chalcis while the sea was calm.*

E. The ablative absolute is sometimes represented by the perfect participle alone, its subject being an entire clause. E. g.

Caêsar temeritâtem mĭlĭtum reprehéndit, *expósĭto quíd iníquĭtas lóci pósset.*	Cæsar, after having explained what the disadvantage of the ground might lead to, reprehended the rashness of his soldiers.
Alexánder, *audíto Darêum appropinquâre cum exércĭtu*, óbviam íre constítŭit.	Alexander, having heard that Darius was approaching with an army, resolved to meet him.
Excépto quod nón símul ésses, cétĕra laêtus.	Happy in every respect, except that you were not present.
Hánnibal, *cógnĭto insídias sĭbi parári*, fúgă salûtem quaesívit.	Hannibal, having learned that plots were on foot against him, sought his safety in flight.

Remarks.

1. The participles thus employed are but few. The principal one *audĭto, cognĭto, comperto, edicto, explorāto, desperāto, nuntiāto.* All these are passive, "it being heard, learned, found," &c.; but are generally rendered by the perfect active: "Cæsar *having* heard, learnt, found, given orders," &c.

2. An adjective sometimes supplies the place of this participle absolute. E. g. *Multi*, incerto (= quum incertum esset) *prae tenebris quid peterent aut vitārent, foede interiērunt*, Many, uncertain,† on account of the darkness of the night, what to seek or to avoid, perished disgracefully.

3. The participle absolute sometimes, though rarely, occurs without any subject whatever. E. g. *In cujus amnis transgressu*, multum certato, *pervīcit Bardanes*, In passing which river, Bardanes conquered after a severe engagement. *Quum*, nondum palam facto, *viri mortuique promiscue comploraréntur*, When, the matter being yet unpublished, the living and the dead were bewailed indiscriminately.‡

Every (one), each.	*Quisque, quaeque, quodque* or *quidque*, gen. *cujusque.*
Any (one) you please.	*Quīvis, quaevis, quodvis* or *quidvis*, gen. *cujusvis.* *Quīlĭbet, quaelĭbet, quodlibet* or *quidlĭbet*, gen. *cujuslibet.*

* These may be resolved into *Quum coelum serēnum, mare tranquillum fuisset.*

† Lit. "It being uncertain (a matter of uncertainty and doubt)."

‡ In these examples *multum certato* and *palam facto* stand impersonally.

Every one, everybody.	Unusquisque, *gen.* unīuscujusque. Singŭli (*each individually*). Nēmo (nullus) nôn, ūnus quīlĭbet. Omnes.
Every man.	Omnis homo, omnes.
Every child.	Omnis infans.
Everything.	Omnĭa, ĭum, *n. pl.*, nihil nôn.
Every month, year.	Singŭlis mensĭbus, annis. In singulos menses, annos. Quot mensĭbus, annis.
All the world.	Omnes homĭnes.
Every one knows.	Némo nôn scít. Ómnes sciunt.
Every one sees.	Némo nôn vídet. Némo est, quin (*but what*) vídeat.
It is in the mouth of every one (of all).	Hóc in ôre ómnium ést.
He knows (can do) everything.	Ílle ómnia pótest. Níhil nôn pótest.
I have seen everything.	Égo ómnia vídi. Níhil est, quod nôn víděrim.
Let every one keep what has fallen to his lot.	Quod cuíque óbtigit, id quísque ténĕat.
A man's mind is the man himself.	Méns cujúsque, is est quísque.
I give him any name I please.	Dô nômen quódlibet ílli.
At all times (at any time you please).	Quibúslibet tempóribus.
I myself, as well as any one of you.	Égo nôn mínus, quám vestrum quívis.
A pleasure tour to Corinth is not everybody's privilege.	Nôn cuívis hómini cóntingit, adíre Corínthum.
It belongs to a great judge to decide what every one should render to every one (i. e. to his neighbor).	Mágni est júdĭcis statúĕre, quid quémque cuíque praestâre débĕat.
He is fit for anything (everything).	Idóneus est árti cuílibet. Ómnium horârum hómo ést.
Every one, who; everything which (whoever, whatever; whosoever, whatsoever).	*Quisquis, quaequae, quodquod* or *quidquid*, gen. *cŭjuscūjus.* *Quĭcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque* or *quidcumque*, gen. *cŭjuscumque.* (Cf. Lesson XII. C.)
Whoever (whosoever) he is (may be).	Quísquis ílle ést. Quicúmque ís ést.*
Whoever you are (may be).	Quísquis és.
However that may be.	Quóquo módo rês sê hábet (hábeat).
Whatever there is of gain (= all the gain).	Quodcúmque lúcri ést.

* *Quisquis* and *quicumque* are generally put with the indicative in Latin.

Whatever benefit (= all the benefit).	Quídquid benefícii.
Whatsoever we (may) write (all that we write).	Ómnia, quaecúmque scríbimus.
In whatsoever place one may be.	Quocúmque* in lóco quísquis ést.
He can do whatsoever (anything) he pleases.	Quodcúmque vélit, lícet fácere.
The whole, entire.	*Intĕger, gra, grum.* *Tŏtus, a, um*, gen. *totius.* *Universus, a, um.*
The full (entire, complete).	Plēnus, a, um.
The entire (unbroken).	Solĭdus, a, um.
A whole (entire) year.	Ánnus íntĕger.
A whole number.	Númĕrus íntĕger (plênus).
A full (and entire) year.	Plênus ánnus atque íntĕger.
Full (complete) liberty, joy.	Libertas sólĭda; gaúdĭum sólĭdum.
The whole (entire) city.	Univérsa cívĭtas. Univérsĭtas úrbis.
The entire society.	Univérsa socíetas.
His entire property.	Facultátes súas (éjus) ómnes.
The whole of his patrimony.	Patrimónĭum súum (éjus) íntegrum.
The whole (of this) world.	Múndus híc tótus (ómnis).
The universe.	Univérsĭtas rêrum.
For three entire years.	Tótos três ánnos. Três ípsos ánnos. Tótum triénnium.
An entire boar, ox.	Sólĭdus áper, bôs.
The walk, promenade (act).	*Ambulātio, deambulātio, ōnis*, f.; *spatĭum, i*, n.
The short walk.	*Ambulatiuncŭla, ae*, f.
The walk, promenade (ground).	Ambulācrum, i, *n.*; spatium, ambulātio.
To take a walk.	Ambulatiônem confícere.
To be on the walk (promenade).	In ambulácro ésse.
The concert.	*Concentus, ūs, *m.* *Symphōnia, ae, *f.*
To go to the concert.	Concentum obíre (ĭvi, ĭtum).
To be (present) at a concert.	Concéntui (symphóniae) adésse.
To give a concert.	Concéntum édĕre (dĭdi, dĭtum).
The concert-room.	*Odēum, i, *n.*
Has he gone to the concert?	Obivítne concéntum?
Were there many at the concert?	Aderántne múlti (hómines) concéntui?
There was a large crowd there.	Áderat véro vis hóminum mágna.
Did you find many out walking?	Invenistíne múltos in ambulácro (ambulántes)?

* So also sometimes separately *cum quibus erat cumque; quā re cumque.*

I found but a few.	Invéni nôn nísi paúcos.
To cut, wound.	*Secāre, vulnerāre.*
To cut off.	*Abscīdo, ĕre, scīdi, scīsum.* *Ampŭto, āre, āvi, ātum.*
To cut into (make an incision).	Incīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum (ALIQUID).
Entirely.	Omnīno, prorsus, plāne.
He has cut off his finger.	Dígitum éjus amputâvit.
He has had his finger cut off (amputated).	Is dígitum súum amputándum curâvit.
Have you cut (wounded) his finger?	Écquid dígitum éjus vulnerâsti?
I have not cut (wounded) his finger, but his foot.	Égo nôn dígitum, sed pédem éjus vulnerávi.
He has cut my leg.	Crûs méum sécuit (incīdit).
Alone (all alone).	*Sōlus, a, um*, gen. *sōlīus.* *Ūnus, a, um*, gen. *ūnīus.* *Ūnus sōlus.*
To bring (carry) along.	(Sēcum) afferre, apportāre (ALIQUID ALICUI or AD ALIQUEM).
To bring (lead) along.	Sēcum dūcĕre (duxi, ductum). Sēcum addūcĕre, dedūcĕre. (ALIQUEM AD ALIQUEM.)
To bring along (by conveyance).	Advĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum (ALIQUID AD ALIQUEM).
Have you come quite alone?	Venistíne ûnus sôlus?
No, I have brought all my friends with me.	Nôn véro; amícos méos ómnes mêcum dedúxi.
He has brought all his men along.	Ómnes súos sêcum addúxit.
Does he bring anything new with him?	Affértne sêcum áliquid návi?
He brings nothing.	Níhil áffert.
They have brought us some grain along.	Fruméntum nóbis sêcum advexérunt.
Did you bring your brother along?	Duxístine têcum frâtrem?
I have brought him.	Dúxi.
To fall.	*Cado, ĕre, cĕcĭdi, cāsum.*
To fall gliding, to slip.	*Lābor, lābi, lapsus sum.*
To fall down, out, in.	Dēcĭdĕre, excĭdĕre, incĭdĕre (-cĭdi, -cāsum).
To slip down, out, in.	Dēlābi, ēlābi, illābi.
To let fall, drop (inadvertently) *anything out one's hands.*	*Excĭdit mĭhi aliquid mănu* or *de mănĭbus.* *Delābĭtur mihi aliquid de mănĭbus.*

To drop (from negligence).	Amittĕre alĭquid de mănu (*or* mănĭbus).
To drop (intentionally).	Dimittĕre alĭquid de mănĭbus.
Has he fallen?	Cecidítne? Lapsúsne est?
Yes, he has fallen into the well.	Incĭdit véro in púteum.
He has fallen from the horse.	Lápsus ést ex équo. / Ex équo décĭdit.
The fruit falls from the trees.	Pôma ex arbóribus cádunt, décidunt.
Has he dropped anything?	Amísitne áliquid de mánibus?
Yes, he has dropped his pen.	Dimísit véro pénnam de mánibus.
He has dropped his ring.	Éxcidit éi ánulus de mánu.
The ring dropped of its own accord from my finger.	Ánulus mĭhi súā spónte de dígito delápsus est.
You have dropped your gloves.	Excidérunt tĭbi de mánu digitábula.
She is dropping her handkerchief.	Muccínium éi de mánibus delábitur.
Near, close by.	*Ăpŭd, juxta, prope* (Prep. c. Acc.).
Near (not far from).	*Nōn longe, haud procŭl* (alĭquo lŏco, ab alĭquo lŏco).
Near me, you, him.	Juxta mê, tê, íllum.
Near the fire, by the fire.	Ad (apud, juxta) fócum. / Apud (prope) carbónes.
Near (not far from) his castle.	Non lónge (haud prócul) ab éjus castéllo.
Near that spot.	Prope íllum lócum. / Prope ab íllo lóco.
What are you doing by the fire?	Quíd ágis apud carbónes?
I am engaged in writing and thinking.	In scribéndo et cogitándo occupâtus sum.
Where do you live?	Úbi hábitas?
I live close by the castle.	Juxta (prope) castéllum hábito.
He lived not far from the king's residence.	Habitâbat non lónge a dómo régiā.
He fell not far from the river.	Cécidit haûd prócul (a) flúvio.
The groom.	Stabulārĭus, i, *m.*; agāso, ōnis, *m.*
Did you tell the groom to bring me the horse?	Dixístine stabulário, ut addúceret mĭhi équum?
I have told him.	Fáctumst (= fáctum est).
I have ordered him to do so.	Jússi éum fácere hóc.
To prevent, hinder.	*Impĕdĭo, īre, īvi (ĭi), ītum* (ALIQUEM (AB) ALIQUA RE). / *Retardo, āre, āvi, ātum* (ALIQUEM IN ALIQUA RE).
To hinder (prevent) any one from sleeping, writing.	Impedíre áliquem quóminus (*or* ne) dórmiat, scríbat. / Retardâre áliquem a dormiéndo, scribéndo (*or* ad dormiéndum, scribéndum).

Does he prevent you from reading?	Retardátne tê a legéndo (ad legéndum)? / Impedítne te, quóminus (*or* ne) légas?
He does prevent me.	Retárdat. Ímpedit.
Or did I prevent you from sleeping?	An égo tê ad dormiéndum retardávi? / An égo tê impedívi, quóminus dormíres?
You have not prevented me.	Mê nôn retardâsti (impedísti).
Was he hindering him from flight?	Impediebátne (retardabátne) éum a fúgā?
He was not.	Nôn impediêbat.

Exercise 139.

Whom do you pity? — I pity your friend. — Why do you pity him? — I pity him because he is ill. — Do the merchants of Berlin pity anybody? — They pity nobody. — Do you offer me anything? — I offer you a gold ring. — What has my father offered you? — He has offered me a fine book. — To whom do you offer those fine horses? — I offer them to the French officer. — Do you offer that fine carriage to my uncle? — I do offer it to him. — Dost thou offer thy pretty little dog to these good children? — I do offer it to them, for I love them with all my heart. — What have the citizens of Strasburg offered you? — They have offered me good beer and salt meat. — To whom do you offer money? — I offer some to those Parisian citizens, who have assured me of their assistance. — Will you take care of my clothes? — I will take care of them. — Wilt thou take care of my hat? — I will take care of it. — Are you taking care of the book which I lent you? — I am taking care of it. — Will this man take care of my horse? — He will take care of it. — Who will take care of my servant? — The landlord will take care of him. — Does your servant take care of your horses? — He does take care of them. — Is he taking care of your clothes? — He is taking care of them, for he brushes them every morning. — Have you ever drunk Strasburg beer? — I have never drunk any. — Is it long since you ate Leipsic bread? — It is almost three years since I ate any. — Does he think himself (*ducitne se*) out of danger (*sine periculo*)? — He never can consider himself out of danger while his enemy is alive (his enemy being alive). — Is the republic safe (*salvus*)? — How can it be safe under the administration of consuls like these (*his magistratibus*)?

Exercise 140.

Have you hurt my brother-in-law? — I have not hurt him; but he has cut my finger. — What has he cut your finger with? — With the knife which you had lent him. — Why have you given that boy a blow with your fist? — Because he hindered me from sleeping. — Has anybody hindered you from writing? — Nobody has hindered me from writing; but I have hindered somebody from hurting your

cousin. — Has your father arrived? — Everybody says that he has arrived; but I have not seen him yet. — Has the physician hurt your son? — He has hurt him, for he has cut his finger. — Have they cut off this man's leg? — They have cut it off entirely. — Are you pleased with your servant? — I am much pleased with him, for he is fit for anything. — What does he know? — He knows everything. — Can he ride on horseback? — He can. — Has your brother returned at last from Germany? — He has returned thence, and has brought you a fine horse. — Has he told his groom to bring it to me? — He has told him to bring it to you. — What do you think of that horse? — I think that it is a fine and good one, and (I) beg you to lead it into the stable. — In what did you spend your time yesterday? — I went to the public walk, and afterwards to the concert. — Were there many people in the public walk? — There were many people there. — When did your brother return home? — He returned at sunrise. — When was Augustus born? — He was born during the consulship of Cicero. — Do you desire to learn Latin? — I am not unwilling to learn, with you for a guide and instructor. — Having heard (*audĭto*) that our friend was about to arrive, I immediately resolved to go to meet him. — Why were these men punished? — They were punished on account of neglected duties (*officiis neglectis*).

Lesson LXXIV. — PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM QUARTUM.

OF THE PLUPERFECT TENSE.

A. The pluperfect tense serves to represent a past action as entirely completed with reference to another past action just commencing or going on. It sustains the same relation to the imperfect, as the perfect does to the present. E. g.

Irrŭĕrant Dănăi, et tĕctum ŏmne tenébant.	The Greeks had forced their way in, and were in possession of the entire house.
Pausănĭas eŏdem lŏco sepúltus ĕst, ŭbi vĭtam *posŭĕrat.*	Pausanias was buried in the very spot on which he had lost his life.
Quum dŏmum *intrâsset*, dixit amĭco suo.	When he had entered the house, he said to his friend.
Cum vĕr ĕsse *coepĕrat*, dăbat sē labóri ătque itinĕrĭbus.	After the commencement of spring he was wont to enter upon his labors and his journeys.

REMARK. — The Romans always observe the distinction indicated by the pluperfect, and put this tense even where the English idiom substitutes the perfect. E. g. "When he arrived (i. e. *had arrived*) in the city, he perceived," *Quum in urbem* advenisset, *animadvertit.* "When he saw (i. e *had seen*) the boy, he exclaimed," *Quum puĕrum* conspexisset, *exclamāvit.*

B. FORMATION OF THE PLUPERFECT TENSE.

1. The pluperfect active is formed from the perfect by changing the final *i* into, Indic. *ĕram*, Subj. *issem.* As,—

1. Amāvi — amāvĕram, amavissem, *I had loved.*
2. Monŭi — monuĕram, monŭissem, *I had reminded.*
3. Lēgi — lēgĕram, legissem, *I had read.*
4. Audīvi — audīvĕram, audīvissem, *I had heard.**

2. The pluperfect passive is formed from the perfect participle, by adding, Indic. *ĕram* or *fuĕram*, Subj. *essem* or *fuissem.* As, —

INDIC. Amātus, monĭtus, lectus, audītus ĕram *or* fuĕram, *I had been loved, reminded, read, heard.*

SUBJ. Amātus, monĭtus, lectus, audītus essem *or* fuissem, *that I might have been loved, reminded, read, heard.*

3. The pluperfect of deponent verbs is formed like that of the passive voice. As, —

INDIC. Hortātus, verĭtus, secūtus, blandītus ĕram *or* fuĕram, *I had exhorted, feared, followed, flattered.*

SUBJ. Hortātus, verĭtus, secūtus, blandītus essem *or* fuissem, *that I might have exhorted, feared, followed, flattered.*

INFLECTION OF THE PLUPERFECT ACTIVE.

C. The inflection of the pluperfect active is exhibited by the following paradigms: —

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Amāvĕram, *I had loved.*		Amāvissem, *that I might have loved.*	
SING.	ămāvĕrăm	SING.	ămāvissĕm
	ămāvĕrās		ămāvissēs
	ămāvĕrăt,		ămāvissĕt,
PLUR.	ămāvĕrāmŭs	PLUR.	ămāvissēmŭs
	ămāvĕrātĭs		ămāvissētĭs
	ămāvĕrant.		ămāvissent.

* SUBJ. *that I might have loved, reminded, read, heard.*

So conjugate *monŭĕram — monŭissem, lēgĕram — lēgissem, audīvĕram — audīvissem.* To these add *apportāvĕram*, I had brought; *laborāvĕram*, I had labored; *lāvĕram*, I had washed; *dĕdĕram*, I had given; *stĕtĕram*, I had stood; — *habuĕram*, I had had; *studuĕram*, I had studied; *jussĕram*, I had commanded; *secuĕram*, I had cut; *vidĕram*, I had seen; — *attŭlĕrum*, I had brought; *dilexĕram*, I had cherished; *mīsĕram*, I had sent; *arcessīvĕram*, I had called; *cupīvĕram*, I had desired; *quaesīvĕram*, I had sought; *ussĕram*, I had burned; — *aperuĕram*, I had opened; *īvĕram*, I had gone; *scīvĕram*, I had known; *sitīvĕram*, I had been thirsty; *vēnĕram*, I had come; — *voluĕram*, I had wished; *noluĕram*, I had been unwilling.

The verb *sum* has regularly *fuĕram — fuissem.* And so its compounds, *abfuĕram — abfuissem; adfuĕram — adfuissem; interfueram interfŭissem; profuĕram — profŭissem*, &c.

Remarks.

1. Verbs of the fourth conjugation (and generally those whose perfect ends in *īvi*) frequently reject the *v* before the final *ĕram* of the pluperfect indicative; as, *audiĕram, prodiĕram, quaesiĕram,** &c., and *īssem* is sometimes contracted into *îssem*; as, *audissem, prodissem, quaesissem*, for *audivissem*, &c. (Compare page 239, Remarks.)

2. *Odĕram*, I hated; *meminĕram*, I remembered; *novĕram*, I knew, was acquainted with; *consuēvĕram*, I was wont, have the force of the imperfect, as *odi, memĭni*, &c. that of the present.

Had I loved?	Egón' amávĕram?
By no means; you had not loved.	Mínime géntium; nôn amávĕras.
Had we given you a book?	Núm nôs tíbi líbrum dédĕrâmus?
You had not given me one.	Nôn dederâtis.
Had he stood by the fire?	Steterátne apud carbónes?
He did. He had stood there.	Fáctumst (= factum est). Stétĕrat.
Had you called the physician?	Arcessivĕrâsne médicum?
Yes, I had called him.	Sáne, éum arcessívĕram.
Had they seen *our* friend?	Nostrúmne amicum vídĕrant?
They had not seen ours, but their own?	Nôn nóstrum, sed suúmmet vídĕrant.
When I had found the letter.	Quum lítteras invenissem.
If we had studied our lesson, would you not have rewarded us?	Si pénso imperáto óperam dedissêmus, nónne nôs praémiis affecísses?
I should have done so.	Fáctum ésset.
What did he say when he entered your house?	Quíd díxit, quum dómum túam intrâsset (= intravísset)?
He wished me a good morning.	Mê sálvum ésse jússit.

* These, however, may be referred to the secondary form in *ti*, as *audīti, prodīti*, &c.

THE PLUPERFECT PASSIVE.

D. The Pluperfect Passive is thus inflected:—

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Amātus ĕram *or* fuĕram, *I had been loved.*	Amātus essem *or* fuissem, *that I might have been loved.*
SING.	amātus ĕram *or* fuĕrăm	amātus essĕm *or* fuissĕm
	amātus ĕrās *or* fuĕrās	amātus essēs *or* fuissēs
	amātus ĕrăt *or* fuĕrăt,	amātus essĕt *or* fuissĕt,
PLUR.	amātī ĕrāmŭs *or* fuĕrāmŭs	amāti essēmŭs *or* fuissēmŭs
	amāti ĕrātis *or* fuĕrātĭs	amāti essētis *or* fuissētĭs
	amāti ĕrant *or* fuĕrant.*	amāti essent *or* fuissent.

So conjugate *monĭtus, lectus, auditus ĕram* or *fuĕram*, I had been reminded, read, heard; SUBJ. *monĭtus, lectus, auditus essem* or *fuissem*, that I might have been reminded, read, heard. To these add *allātus, dātus, dilectus, habĭtus, jussus, missus, quaesītus, ustus ĕram* or *fuĕram*, I had been brought, given, cherished, considered, commanded, sent, sought, burned; and SUBJ. —— *essem* or *fuissem*, that I might have been brought, given, cherished, &c.

Had you been admonished?	Erâsne (fuĕrâsne) mónĭtus?
I had been admonished.	Fáctumst. Mónitus éram (fúeram).
Had the philosopher been heard?	Auditúsne érat sápiens?
He had not been heard.	Auditus nôn érat.
Had you been sent?	Núm vôs míssi erâtis (fuerâtis)?
We had not been sent.	Nôs nôn míssi erâmus (fuerâmus).
Had a ribbon been given you?	Datáne tibi fúĕrat taénia?
None had been given me.	Dáta nôn fúerat.
Had the letters been read?	Erántne epístolae léctae?
They had been read.	Fáctum est. Érant.
If the book had been read.	Si líber léctus ésset (fuísset).
When the letter had been delivered.	Quum lítterae trádĭtae éssent (fuíssent).
Would that we had been sent!	Útĭnam nôs míssi essēmus (fuissēmus)!
Because they had not been chosen.	Quód nôn delécti éssent (fuíssent).

PLUPERFECT OF DEPONENT VERBS.

E. The pluperfect of deponent verbs is inflected like that of the passive voice. Thus:—

* When the subject is feminine, then: *amāta ĕram* or *fuĕram*, Plur. *amātae erāmus* or *fuĕrāmus*; SUBJ. Sing. *amāta essem* or *fuissem*, Plur. *amātae essēmus* or *fuissēmus*. When it is neuter: *amātum ĕrat* or *fuĕrat*, Plur. *amāta erant* or *fuĕrant*; SUBJ. Sing. *amātum esset* or *fuisset*, Plur. *amāta essent* or *fuissent*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Hortātus ĕram *or* fuĕram, *I had exhorted.*	Hortātus essem *or* fuissem, *that I might have exhorted.*
SING. hortātus ĕrām *or* fuĕrām	SING. hortātus essĕm *or* fuissĕm
hortātus ĕrās *or* fuĕrās	hortātus essēs *or* fuissēs
hortātus ĕrāt *or* fuĕrat,	hortātus essĕt *or* fuisset,
PLUR. hortāti ĕrāmus *or* fuĕrāmŭs	PLUR. hortāti essēmus *or* fuissēmŭs
hortāti ĕrātis *or* fuĕrātĭs	hortāti essētĭs *or* fuissētĭs
hortāti ĕrant *or* fuĕrant.*	hortāti essent *or* fuissent.

So conjugate *verĭtus, secūtus, blandītus ĕram* or *fuĕram*, I had feared, followed, flattered; SUBJ. *verĭtus, secūtus, blandītus essem* or *fuissem*, that I might have feared, followed, flattered. To these add *arbitrātus, comitātus, morātus, locūtus, oblītus, profectus, largītus, expertus ĕram* or *fuĕram*, I had thought, escorted, delayed, spoken, forgotten, departed, squandered, experienced; and SUBJ. —— *essem* or *fuissem*, that I might have thought, &c.

Had you escorted any one?	Comitatúsne éras áliquem?
I had escorted no one.	Égo néminem comitâtus éram.
Had they not lavished their money?	Pecúnias súas nônne largíti érant?
It is, as you say.	Íta ést, ut dícis.
Had he flattered you?	Tibíne blanditus érat?
He had certainly not.	Nôn hércle véro.
Had we left when you arrived?	An tê adveniénte profécti erâmus?
It is clearly so.	Íta pláne.
Would you have remained at home if he had left?	Écquid tê dómi tenuísses, si profectus ésset ílle?
I should certainly have done so.	Íta enímvéro.
After having read the book (= *When I had read the book, The book having been read*).	*Qúum librum perlegíssem. Postquam (ut) librum perlégi. Líbro perlécto.*
After having cut the bread, (when he had cut, &c).	Quum pânem secuísset. Póstquam (úbi, ut) pânem sécuit. Pâne in frusta dissécto.
After having eaten (when we had eaten).	Cum manducavissêmus. Póstquam (úbi, ut, símul ac) manducávimus.
After (when) you had cut yourself (after having cut yourself).	Quum tê cúltro vulneravísses. Postquam (ubi, ut) tê cúltro vulneravísti. (Tû) cúltro vulnerâtus.
After dressing yourselves (when you had dressed yourselves).	Quum vóbis véstem induissêtis. Postquam (ubi, ut) vóbis véstem induístis. (Vôs) véste indúti.

* And when the subject is feminine: *amāta — amātae*; when neuter: *amātum — amāta*.

After withdrawing from the fire (when he had withdrawn, &c.).	Quum a fóco discessísset. Póstquam (úbi, út) a fóco discéssit.
After (when) thou hadst shaved.	Quum tíbi bárbam totondísses. Postquam (ubi, ut) bárbam totondísti. Barbā tuā tonsā.
After (when) he had warmed himself.	Quum córpus calefecísset (refovísset). Postquam (ubi) córpus calefēcit (refōvit). Córpore éjus calefácto (refóto).
When I had read the newspaper, I breakfasted.	Quum ácta pública legíssem (áctis públicis léctis), jentáculum súmpsi.
As soon as I had dressed myself, I went out.	Símul ac míhi véstem índui (= véste *or* véstem indûtus), in públicum prodívi.
When he had read the letter, he said.	Lítteris recitátis (léctis), díxit.
When he had cut the bread, he cut the meat.	Quum pânem secuísset, cárnem sécuit.
What did he do when he had eaten?	Quid êgit (fēcit) ílle, quum manducavísset?
He went to bed.	Ívit cúbitum.
Before I set out.	*Antequam* (*priúsquam*) *profiscar*; or simply *profectûrus.*

F. Obs. *Antequam* and *priusquam*, when they relate to a future action or event, are commonly followed by the present subjunctive.

Before I depart, I wish to see my children once more.	Priúsquam proficíscar, líberos méos íterum núnc vidēre cúpio.
The storm threatens, before it rises.	Tempestas minâtur, ántequam súrgat.
The newspaper.	Acta diurna *or* publĭca, *n. pl.*
The accident	Cāsus, us, *m.*
The death.	Mors, tis, *f.*
To go to sleep.	Cubĭtum ire.
To rise, get up.	(E lecto) surgo, ĕre, surrexi, surrectum.
To die.	Morĭor, īri, mortŭus sum. Diem suum (*or* suprēmum) obīre (*or simply* obīre).
To be afflicted or grieved at (anything).	Dolĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum (ALIQUA RE or QUOD). Aliquid est mihi dolōri.
Are you afflicted at the death of our friend?	Dolēsne amíci nóstri mórte?
I am very much afflicted at it.	Dóleo véro vehemḗnter. Ést míhi prórsus permágno dolóri.

At what is your father afflicted?	Quam ob rem vír óptimus, páter túus, in dolôre ést?
He is afflicted because he has lost his dearest friend.	Dolôre afféctus est, quod hóminem sui amicíssimum pérdidit.
To complain of some one or something.	Quĕror, i, questus sum. Conquĕri (ALIQUEM, DE ALIQUO, REM, DE RE, QUOD, &c.)
To wonder, to be astonished or surprised at.	*Mīror, āri, ātus sum.* *Demirāri* (ALIQUEM, REM, Acc. cum Inf. or QUOD).*
Whom do you complain of?	Quém (de quô) quérĕris?
I complain of my friend.	Ego amícum méum (de amíco méo) quéror).
Of what does your brother complain?	Quíd (quâ de rê) quérĭtur frâter túus?
He complains of your not sending the book.	Quérĭtur super hóc, quod nôn míttas líbrum.
They complained of their brother.	Frâtrem súum conquerebántur.
Let them not complain of having been deserted.	Ne querántur, sê relíctos ésse.
He complained of the injustice of his adversaries.	De injúriis adversariôrum quéstus est.
We have no right to complain of everything that afflicts us.	Nôn ómnia, quae dolêmus, eôdem jûre quéri póssŭmus.
At what are you surprised?	Quid mirâris?
I am surprised that you have arrived.	Míror tê advenísse (quod advenísti).
I wonder what may have been the cause.	Míror, quid caúsae fúĕrit.
I am surprised that you should have despised this.	Míror, tê haec sprevísse.
We wondered why you should prefer the Stoics to us.	Admiráti súmus, quid esset, cur nóbis Stóicos anteférres.
I was surprised that you should have written with your own hand.	Admirâtus (mirâtus) súm, quód túă mánū scripsísses.
Do you wonder at what I have done?	Demirarísne fáctum méum?
I do wonder at it.	Prórsus demíror.
Your fortune (lot) is to be pitied.	Fortûna túa querénda ést.
To be glad.	*Gaudeo, ēre, gavīsus sum.* *Laetor, āri, ātus sum.* (RE, DE RE, IN RE, Acc. cum Inf. or QUOD).
To be sorry.	*Dŏlēre* (RE, Acc. cum Inf. or QUOD). *Dŏlet, pĭget, poenĭtet, misĕret* (ME ALICUJUS REI, HOMINIS).†

* Compare Lesson LIV. *H.*

† On the construction of these verbs, see pages 289 and 298.

I am glad of it.	Gaúdeo hóc. Hóc est míhi jucúndum. Óptime ést.
I am sorry for it.	Moléstum ést. Mále dícis. Dóleo, quód íta est.
I am glad to see you.	Núnc tê conspício líbens.
I never was more rejoiced to see any one.	Níhil vídi quídquam laétius.
I am sorry for your misfortune.	Dóleo túum casum.
I am sorry for you.	Míseret mê tûi.
Are you sorry for this injustice?	Pígetne tê húius injúriae?
I am sorry for it.	Píget mê véro.
Were you grieved at the death of your friend?	Dolebâsne, cum amícum túum mórtuum conspícĕres?
I was grieved in my inmost soul.	Dolêbam ex íntimis sénsibus.
I am glad to hear that your father is well.	Patris tûi valetúdinem cognóscĕre gaúdeo. Gaúdeo, mê de valetúdine pátris tûi certiórem fíĕri.
To hear (learn, understand).	*Comperio, īre, pĕri, pertum.* *Cognoscĕre* (ALIQUID). *Certiórem fíĕri* (DE ALIQUĀ RE).
To pronounce.	*Enuncio, āre, āvi, ātum.* *Effĕro, ferre, extŭli, elātum.*
Can the boy pronounce these words?	Potéstne púer vérba haêc enunciâre (efférre)?
He cannot do it yet.	Nôndum pótest.
Did he pronounce the letters correctly?	Rectêne lítteras enunciâvit?
No, he pronounced them very badly.	Ímmo pérpĕram enunciâvit.
Could the Austrian pronounce my name?	Potuítne Austríăcus nômen méum efférre?
He could not.	Nôn pótuit.
There are several words which are pronounced alike in the same cases.	Plûra sunt vérba, quae simíliter iísdem cásibus efferúntur.

Dear.	Cārus, a, um.
Grateful, acceptable.	Grātus, acceptus, jucundus, a, um.
Sad, sorrowful.	Tristis, is, e; moestus, a, um.
Disagreeable.	Injucundus, ingrātus, a, um.
The prince.	Princeps, cĭpis, *m.*
The count.	Cŏmes, ĭtis, *m.*
The baron.	Bāro, ōnis, *m.*
The Saxon.	Saxo, ōnis, *m.*
The Prussian.	Borussus (Prussus), i, *m.*
The Austrian.	Austriăcus, i, *m.*
The Christian.	Christiānus, i, *m.*
The Jew.	Judaeus, i, *m.*

The negro, Moor.	Hŏmo nĭger, *gen.* nigri, *m.*; Aethĭops, ŏpis, *m.*
The Indian.	Indus, i, *m.*
The Aborigines.	Autochthŏnes, um, *pl. m.*

EXERCISE 141.

What did you do when you had finished your letter? — I went to my brother, who took me to the theatre, where I found one of my friends whom I had not seen for many years. — What did you do when you had breakfasted this morning? — When I had read the letter of the Polish count, I went out to see the theatre of the prince, which I had not seen before. — What did your father do after getting up this morning? — He breakfasted and went out. — What did your friend do after he had read the paper. — He went to the baron. — Did he cut the meat after he had cut the bread? — He cut the bread after he had cut the meat. — When do you set out? — I set out tomorrow; but before I leave, I wish to see my friends once more. — What did your children do when they had breakfasted? — They went out with their dear preceptor. — Where did your uncle go after he had dined? — He went nowhere; he stayed at home and wrote his letters. — What are you accustomed to dŏ when you have supped? — I usually go to bed. — At what o'clock did you rise this morning? — I rose at five o'clock. — What did your cousin do, when he (had) heard of the death of his friend? — He was much (*valde*) afflicted, and went to bed without saying a word (*non verbum faciens*). — Did you read before you breakfasted? — I read when I had breakfasted. — Did you go to bed when you had eaten supper? — When I had eaten supper, I wrote my letters, and then went to bed. — Are you afflicted at the death of your relation? — I am much afflicted at it. — When did your friend die? — He died last month. — Of what do you complain? — I complain of your boy. — Why do you complain of him? — Because he has killed the pretty dog, which I had received from one of my friends. — Of what has your uncle complained? — He has complained of what you have done. — Has he complained of the letter which I wrote to him? — He has complained of it.

Lesson LXXV. — PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM QUINTUM.

OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

A. When, in one and the same sentence, a subject of the third person becomes itself the object of the verb, or otherwise a member of the predicate, its person (whether singular or plural) is expressed by the personal reflexives *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, and its property by the possessive reflexive *suus*, *a*, *um*.

Ípse sê quísque dílĭgit, quód *per sê sibi quísque** cârus ést.	Every one cherishes himself, because every one is naturally dear to himself.
Themístocles domicílium Magnésiae *sibi* constítŭit.	Themistocles fixed his abode at Magnesia.
Justítia propter *sêse* colénda ést.	Justice should be cultivated on its own account.
Lénto grádū ad vindíctam *súi* divína procêdit íra.	Divine indignation advances slowly (with slow step) to its own defence.
Étiam *férae sibi* injécto terrôre mórtis horréscunt.	Wild beasts even shrink with horror when subjected to the fear of death.
Súum quísque ingénium nóscat.	Every one should make himself acquainted with his own abilities.
Vérres sôlus cum *súā* cohórte relínquitur.	Verres alone is left with his cohort.
Béllum est, *súa* vítia nôsse.†	It is proper to know one's own faults.
Béstiis *hómines* úti ad utilitâtem *súam* póssunt sine injúriā.	Men may use animals for their own convenience, without any injustice.

Remark. — The reflexives can thus be put only when the subject remains the same. If another sentence with a new subject, or a new subject representing one, is added, then the demonstrative *is* takes the place of *sui*, &c., and the genitives *ejus*, *eorum*, that of *suus*. E. g. *Tiberius Gracchus* ejusque *frāter occisi sunt*,‡ Tiberius Gracchus and his brother were killed. *Hannibal quamdiu in Italiā fuit*, *nemo* ei *in acie restĭtit*, *nemo adversus* eum *in campo castra posuit*, As long as Hannibal was in Italy, no one opposed him on the battle-ground, no one pitched a tent against him in the field. *Athenienses urbem* suam *aede Minervae ornavērunt*, eorumque *magnificentiam mirata est posteritas*, The Athenians adorned their city with the temple of Minerva, and posterity has admired their magnificence.

B. The reflexives *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, and *suus*, *a*, *um*, belong to an oblique case of the same sentence, when they determine the subject-nominative itself, or when from a difference of person or number, or from the sense of the predicate, they cannot be referred to the nominative.

Hannĭbălem súi cíves e civitâte ejecérunt.	Hannibal was banished by his own countrymen.
Caésărem súa natûra mitiôrem fácit.	His natural disposition makes Cæsar more humane.

---

* When *quisque* is thus connected with the reflexive, the latter commonly precedes; as, *se quisque*, *sibi quisque*, *suum cuique*, &c.

† I. e. *aliquem nósse*, "that one should know his own faults."

‡ This may be resolved into *Tiberius Gracchus occisus est*, ejusque frater *occisus est*. So also, *Antigonus et* hujus *filius Demetrius*, &c.

Súi cuíque móres fíngunt fortûnam.	Every man's lot in life is shaped by his own character.
Récte díci pótest sciéntiam *súam cujúsque ártis* ésse.	Every art may correctly be said to have a science of its own.
Consérva *túis súos*.	Preserve the lives and happiness of those dear to your friends.
Ápibus frúctum restítuo *súum*.	I return (restore) their produce to the bees.
Volaterrános in *súā* possessiône retinêbam.	I kept the Volaterrani in the possession of their own.
Rátio et orátio concíliat inter *sê hómines*.	Reason and language conciliate men among themselves.
Justítia *súum cuíque* tríbuit.	Justice gives (to) every one his own.
Cónsŭles *hóstem* in *súā* sêde in Álgĭdo invéniunt.	The consuls found the enemy in his own residence at Algidum.
Múlta súnt *cívibus* inter *sê* commúnia.	Citizens have many things in common with each other.
Quíd est áliud, *áliis súa* erípĕre, áliis dáre aliêna?	What else is giving to others what is not one's own, but robbing others of their own?

REMARK. — When a new sentence is added, or a word representing one, the demonstrative *is* becomes necessary, as in *A.* Rem. E. g. *Omitto* Isocratem *discipulosque* ejus,* I omit Isocrates and his disciples. Alexander *moriens anŭlum* suum *dedĕrat* Perdiccae; *ex quo omnes conjecerant*, eum *regnum* ei *commendasse*, *quoad liberi* ejus *in suam tutēlam pervenissent*, The dying Alexander had given his ring to Perdiccas, from which every one had conjectured that he had commended the government of his empire to his charge, until his children might become of age.

C. In dependent clauses, in which the language, thoughts, sentiments, or purpose of the leading subject are expressed, the reflexives *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, and *suus* refer to that subject, and not to the one contained in the dependent clause.

Such clauses are introduced by the Acc. cum Inf., by interrogatives, relatives, and conjunctions, especially by *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *qui*, *si*, &c. E. g.

Némo ést orâtor, *quî sê* Demosthenis símilem ésse nôlit.	No one is an orator who is unwilling to be like Demosthenes.
Homêrum Colophónii *cîvem ésse* dícunt *súum*, Smyrnaéi véro *súum ésse* confirmant.	The inhabitants of Colophon say, that Homer is their citizen, but those of Smyrna prove him to be theirs.
Méus mê orâvit *fílius*, *ut* túam sorórem póscerem uxórem *sibi*.	My son has charged me to demand your sister in marriage for him.
Paêtus ómnes líbros, *quôs* frâter *súus* reliquísset, mihi donâvit.	Pætus has made me a present of all the books which his brother had left him.

* This may be resolved into *Omitto Isocratem, discipulosque ejus omitto.*

Quíd ést amâre, nísi vélle bónis álíquem áffici quam máxĭmis, *etiámsi* ad *sê* níhil ex his rédĕat ?	What is love, but a desire that another might enjoy the highest possible good, even though no advantage to one's self should result from it ?

D. If in this construction the person of the speaker comes in collision with another subject nominative, the sense of the predicate must determine to which of the two the reflexive refers. E. g.

Agríppa Átticum orâbat, ut *sê sĭbi suísque** reservâret.	Agrippa besought Atticus to save himself for himself and his friends.
Scýthae petébant ab Alexándro, ut rêgis *súi* fíliam matrimónio *sĭbi*† júngeret.	The Scythians besought Alexander to unite himself in marriage to the daughter of their king.
Quód *sĭbi* Caêsar denuntiâret, *se* Aeduôrum injúrias nôn neglectûrum; némĭnem *sêcum* sine *súā*‡ pernície contendísse.	With respect to Cæsar's message to him, that he (i. e. Cæsar) would not overlook the injuries of the Aedui, (Ariovistus replied,) that no one had ever contended with him, except for his own destruction.

Remarks.

1. The reflexive is always put when a given person is to be contrasted with another, or its property with that of another (i. e. *himself, his own*, as opposed to *alius, aliĕnus*). It is thus often put, even where we might expect the weaker demonstrative *is, ejus*, —

a.) When the oblique case, to which it relates, can easily be inferred from what has gone before. E. g. *Ei sunt nāti filii gemĭni duo, ita formā simĭli pueri, uti mater* sua (*for* eōrum) *non internosse posset*, sc. *eos*, He had two twin boys, so like each other, that *their own* mother could not distinguish them. *Placetne a Carthaginiensĭbus captivos nostros, redditis* suis (sc. *iis*), *recuperāri ?* Is it your pleasure to recover our captives from the Carthaginians, after returning (to them) their own ?

b.) When the construction admits of it, and the connection requires a more emphatic indication of the subject. E. g. *Cimon incĭdit in eandem invidiam, quam pater suus* (= *ejus*), Cimon incurred the same odium which his father had incurred. *Non a te ēmit rex, sed prius quam tu* suum sibi *vendĕres, ipse possēdit*, The king has not purchased of you, but has himself possessed it, before you could sell his own to him.

---

* In this sentence *se*, *sibi*, and *suis* all refer to the new subject *Atticus*.

† Here *sui* belongs to *Scythae*, and *sibi* to *Alexandro*.

‡ *Sibi* and *secum* refer to the speaker Ariovistus (expressed in a preceding sentence), *se* to Cæsar, and *suā* to *nemĭnem*.

2. *Is* and *ejus*, on the other hand, are employed where no such opposition of persons or property is intended, but where the subject is merely pointed out (i. e. the English *him, his*). They are thus put,—

a.) With reference to an oblique case of the *same sentence*, sometimes merely to prevent ambiguity. E. g. *Pisōnem nostrum merito* ejus *amo plurĭmum*, I love Piso dearly, as he deserves. *Achaei Macedŏnum regem suspicātum habēbant pro* ejus *crudelitāte*, The Achæans suspected the king of the Macedonians on account of his cruelty. *Oratio principis per quaestōrem* ejus *audīta est*, The speech of the prince was heard by his quæstor.

b.) In *dependent* clauses, when a noun different from the subject is referred to; frequently also instead of the more emphatic *se*. E. g. *Judaei jussi a Caesăre, effigiem* ejus *in templo locāre, arma potius sumsēre*, When the Jews were commanded by Cæsar to place his image in their temple, they preferred to resort to arms. *A Curiōne mihi nuntiātum est*, eum *ad me venīre*,* A message was sent me by Curio, that he was coming to me.

3. Instead of *is* and *ejus* the intensive *ipse* and *ipsius* are often used, especially when it becomes necessary to distinguish subjects different from those represented by *is* or *sui*. E. g. *Aedui contendunt, ut* ipsis *summa imperii transdātur*, The Ædui beg that the chief command might be transferred to themselves. *Parvi de eo, quod* ipsis *supererat, aliis gratificāri volunt*, Children wish to gratify others with what they themselves do not want. *Caesar milĭtes suos incusāvit: cur de* suā *virtūte, aut de* ipsius *diligentiā desperārent*, Cæsar blamed his soldiers (by asking them), why they despaired of *their own* valor or *his* personal assiduity.

Far, distant.	*Longus, longinquus, ă, um* (adj.). *Longe, procul* (adv.).
A long way or journey.	Longa via; longum ĭter.
From afar.	Prŏcul, e longinquo, emĭnus (*adv.*).
How far?	Quam longe? Quousque?
To be far or *distant from any place.*	*Longe* or *prŏcul ab aliquo loco abesse.*
To be far apart.	Multum distāre.
To be equally far apart.	Parĭbus intervallis distāre.
To be equally far.	Tantundem viae esse.
To be farther.	Longius esse *or* abesse.
How far is it from here to the city?	Quám lónge ést hínc in úrbem?
It is very far.	Perlónge ést.
It is not far.	Nôn est lónge (lóngŭle).
It is ten miles.	Lónge est mília pássuum décem.
Is it far from here to Berlin?	Éstne lónge hínc Berolînum?
It is not far.	Haûd lónge ést.
How many miles is it?	Quót mília pássuum súnt?

* Instead of *Curio mihi nuntiāvit*, so *ad me venire*.

It is twenty miles.	Vigínti círciter mília pássuum sunt.
How many miles is it from Boston to New York?	Quót mília pássuum a Bostónia ábest Nóvum Eborâcum?
It is about two hundred and fifty miles.	Abest (dístat) mília pássuum círciter ducénta et quinquagínta.
It is nearly a hundred miles from Berlin to Vienna.	Vindobóna a Berolíno círciter mília pássuum céntum ábest.
How far did the boy go?	Quám lónge ívit púer?
He went three steps.	Ívit lónge três pássus.
He went about far and wide.	Perambulâvit lónge latêque.
He said, that he had been two hundred miles from the city.	Díxit, sê ab úrbe abfuísse mília passuum ducénta.
Did he advance too far?	Éstne progréssus nímis lónge (*or* lóngius)?
Not as far as you.	Nôn tám lónge, quám tû.
How far has your brother advanced in his studies?	Quoúsque frâter túus in doctrínā procéssit?
He has not advanced very far.	Haûd perlónge procéssit.
The distance.	Distantia, ae, *f.*; intervallum, i, *n.*
The mile.	Mille passuum (*pl.* milia passuum), miliārium, i, *n.*
The step, pace.	Passus, ūs, *m.*
To prefer, like better.	*Mālo, malle, malui* (cum Inf.). *Anteponĕre, anteferre, praeferre* (REM REI). *Aliquid libentius* (*potius*) *facĕre, quam.*
Do you like to write better than to speak?	Mavísne scríbere quam lóqui?
	Scribísne libéntius quam lóqueris?
I like to speak better than to write.	Málo (pótius) lóqui quam scríbere.
	Ego libéntius lóquor quam scríbo.
Does he like to play better than to study?	Ludítne libéntius quam óperam dát stúdiis?
	Mavúltne lúdere (pótius) quám óperam dáre stúdiis?
He likes to do both.	Utrúmque libénti ánimo fácere sólet.
Do you like bread better than cheese?	Mavísne édere pânem quam cáseum?
I like both, neither equally well.	Ego utrúmque, neútrum páriter ámo.
Do you like tea as well as coffee?	Bibísne thêam aéque libénter quam coffêam?
I like coffee better.	Málo coffêam.
He likes beer better than wine.	Cervísiam libéntius quam vînum bíbit.
I prefer beef to veal.	Ego búbulam vitulínae anteféro, antepóno, &c.
	Ego búbulam vitulínā potiórem hábeo.

I prefer reading to writing.	Praecópto légere pótius quam scríbere.
The calf.	Vitŭlus, i, *m.*; vitŭla, ae, *f.*
Quick, fast.	*Celerŭter, cĭto, festinanter* (adv.).
Slow, slowly.	*Tarde, lente* (adv.).
Do you learn as fast as I?	Discísne tam celériter, quám égo?
I learn faster than you.	Égo cítius (facílius) disco, quam tû.
He eats faster, slower than I.	Mandûcat cítius, léntius, quam égo.
I do not understand you, because you speak too fast.	Vérba túa nôn intélligo, proptérea, quód nimis celériter (celérius) lóquĕris.
He arrived sooner than was expected.	Advênit celérius opiniône.
Can you answer slowly?	Potésne respondêre lénte?
I can.	Péssum.
Does he sail as slowly as I?	Navigátne tám tárde quam égo?
He sails slower.	Tárdius návigat.
I trust that you will be strong soon.	Confído, cíto tê fírmum fóre.
Advance slowly!	Procêde lénte! / Festína lénte!
Cheap.	Adj. *Vĭlis, parvi prĕtii; non magno parābĭlis.* / Adv. *Parvo prĕtio, aere pauco; parvo sumptu.*
Dear.	Adj. *Cārus, a, um; magni prĕtii.* / Adv. *Cāre, magno* (*prĕtio*).
Does the merchant sell as dear as I?	Vendítne mercâtor tám cáre, quam égo?
He does not sell as dear.	Mínus cáre véndit.
He sells dearer than you.	Cárius véndit quám tû.
Did you buy the horse cheap?	Emístine équumv íli (párvo prétio)?
I have bought it quite cheap.	Égo éum aêre paúco émi.
He has bought the book at the lowest possible price.	Librum quám mínimo prétio êmit.
I have bought my hat cheaper than you yours.	Píleum méum égo minôris émi, quám túum tû.
This man sells everything so dear, that no one can buy anything of him.	Híc vír ómnia *tam* cáre véndĕre sólet, *ut* némo ab éo quídquam émere *póssit.**
I do not know what you wish to say.	Haûd scío (néscio), quíd tíbi vélis.
You speak so fast, that I cannot understand you.	*Tam* celériter lóqueris, *ut* intellígere non *péssim.*
I assure you that he wishes to speak with you.	Affírmo tíbi, éum têcum colloquéndi cúpidum ésse.

* *Ut* preceded by *tam, talis, tantus*, &c., requires the subjunctive. (Cf. Lesson LXXXVIII. A. I.)

Be so good as to speak a little slower.	Sis tam benígnus, ut aliquánto léntius loquâris.
Will you be kind enough to give me the book?	Visne ésse tam benígnus, ut mihi líbrum dês?

Exercise 142.

How far is it from Paris to London? — It is nearly a hundred miles from Paris to London. — Is it far from here to Hamburg? — It is far. — Is it far from here to Vienna? — It is almost a hundred and forty miles from here to Vienna. — Is it farther from Berlin to Dresden than from Leipzic to Berlin? — It is farther from Berlin to Dresden than from Leipzic to Berlin. — How far is it from Paris to Berlin? — It is almost a hundred and thirty miles from here to Berlin. — Do you intend to go to Berlin soon? — I do intend to go thither soon. — Why do you wish to go this time? — In order to buy good books and a good horse there; and to see my good friends. — Is it long since you were there? — It is nearly two years since I was there. — Do you not go to Vienna this year? — I do not go thither, for it is too far from here to Vienna. — Is it long since you saw your Hamburg friend? — I saw him but a fortnight ago. — Do your scholars like to learn by heart? — They do not like to learn by heart; they like reading and writing better than learning by heart. — Do you like beer better than cider? — I like cider better than beer. — Does your brother like to play? — He likes to study better than to play. — Do you like meat better than bread? — I like the latter better than the former. — Do you like to drink better than to eat? — I like to eat better than to drink; but my uncle likes to drink better than to eat. — Does your brother-in-law like meat better than fish? — He likes fish better than meat. — Do you like to write better than to speak? — I like to do both. — Do you like fowl better than fish? — Do you like good honey better than sugar? — I like neither.

Exercise 143.

Does your father like coffee better than tea? — He likes neither. — What do you drink in the morning? — I drink a glass of water with a little sugar; my father drinks good coffee, my younger brother good tea, and my brother-in-law a glass of good wine. — Can you understand me? — No, sir, for you speak too fast. — Will you be kind enough not to speak so fast? — I will not speak so fast if you will listen to me. — Can you understand what my brother tells you? — He speaks so fast that I cannot understand him. — Can your pupils understand you? — They understand me when I speak slowly; for in order to be understood one must speak slowly. — Why do you not buy anything of that merchant? — I had a mind to buy several dozen of handkerchiefs, some cravats, and a white hat of him; but he sells so dear, that I cannot buy anything of him. — Will you take me to another? — I will take you to the son of the one whom you bought of last year. — Does he sell as dear as this (one)? — He sells cheaper. — Do you like going to the theatre better than going to the concert?

— I do like going to the concert as well as going to the theatre; but I do not like going to the public walk, for there are too many people there. — Do your children like learning Italian better than Spanish? — They do not like to learn either; they only like to learn German. — Do they like to speak better than to write? — They like to do neither. — Do you like mutton? — I like beef better than mutton. — Do your children like cake better than bread? — They like both. — Has he read all the books which he bought? — He bought so many of them, that he cannot read them all. — Do you wish to write some letters? — I have written so many of them, that I cannot write any more.

Lesson LXXVI. — PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM SEXTUM.

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

A. Reflexive verbs are those of which the action terminates in the agent himself.

Verbs of a reflexive sense in Latin are, —

1. Transitive and neuter verbs in connection with the accusative or dative of the reflexive pronouns *me, te, se, nos, vos, se, mihi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis, sibi.* E. g. *Se amare*, to love one's self; *sibi nocēre*, to hurt one's self; *sese fugae mandare*, to betake one's self to flight, &c.

2. A number of passive and deponent verbs, which exhibit more or less of a reflexive sense. E. g. *crucior*, I am tormented, I torment myself; *proficiscor*, I get myself under way; *laetor*, I rejoice; *vehor*, I ride, &c.

3. The impersonal verbs *me taedet, piget, pudet, poenitet, miserĕt*, It moves me to disgust, chagrin, shame, regret, pity, &c.

B. The following passive and deponent verbs may be regarded as reflexive: —

Crucior, *I torment myself (I am tormented).*
Delector, *I am delighted.*
Fallor, *I deceive myself (I am deceived).*
Fĕror, *I am impelled.*
Grăvor, *I hesitate.*
Inclīnor, *I am inclined.*
Lavor, *I wash myself, I bathe.*
Laetor, *I rejoice.*
Movĕor, Commovĕor, } *I am moved, excited.*
Mūtor, *I change, am changed.*
Pascor, *I support myself by, I feed upon.*

Proficiscor, *I get myself under way.*
Věhor, *I am conveyed, I ride.*
Vescor, *I live upon, eat.*

To disguise one's self.	*Aliēnam formam capĕre.* *Larvam sibi aptāre.* *Mentīri.*
To represent to one's self (to imagine, suppose).	Propōnĕre sibi (aliquid). Cogitatione sibi fingĕre. Animo concipĕre aliquid.
To rejoice.	Laetor, āri, ātus sum. Gaudeo, ēre, gavisus sum. (RE, DE RE, IN RE, QUOD).
To be ashamed.	Pŭdet (ēre, pudŭit) me, te, eum. (ALICUJUS REI).
To flatter any one.	Blandīri alicui; adulāri aliquem.
To flatter one's self.	Sibi ipsi blandīri. Spem habēre *or* in spe esse (cum ACC. et INF.).
To fear, to feel afraid of.	Tĭmeo, ēre, ŭi, ——. Metuo, ĕre, ŭi, ——. Vereor, ēri, verĭtus sum. (ALIQUEM, REM, NE, UT, &c.)
To look back or behind one's self.	Respĭcio, ĕre, spexi, spectum (AD ALIQUEM, REM).

Dost thou see thyself?	Vidêsne tê?
I do not see myself.	Ego mê nôn vídeo.
Have you cut yourselves?	Vulneravistísne vôs cúltro?
We have cut ourselves.	Véro, nôs vulnerávimus.
Do we flatter ourselves?	Númquid nóbis ípsi blandímur?
We do not.	Nôn blandímur.
Does he not disguise himself?	Nónne sibi lárvam áptat?
He does do it.	Fáctum est.
Of whom are you afraid?	Quém métuis (tímes)?
I am not afraid of any one.	Néminem métuo.
I am not afraid of him.	Ego éum nôn tímeo.
We must fear (reverence) the deity.	Déum nôs vereâmur opórtet.
I am afraid of hurting myself.	Tímeo, *ne* míhi *nóceam*.
He is afraid of cutting his finger.	Métuit, *ne* sibi dígitum *vúlneret*.
We were afraid that you would not come.	Metuímus, *ne non* (or *ut*) * veníres.
You were afraid that I would not write.	Timébas, *ut* scrîbĕrem.
We are not afraid.	Sine timôre súmus.

* After verbs of fearing, "that" or "lest" is expressed by *ne*, and "that not" by *ne non* or *ut*. The verb must be in the subjunctive. (See Lesson LXXXVIII. *A.* III.)

To pass away the time (in anything).	*Tempus (ōtium) trahĕre, consumĕre,* or *tĕrĕre* (ALIQUĀ RE).
To enjoy something, to amuse one's self with anything.	*Tempus* or *hōras fallĕre (fefelli, falsum) aliquā re.*
The pastime, diversion.	Lūdus, i, *m.*; oblectatio, ōnis, *f.*; oblectamentum, i, *n.*
In what do you amuse yourself?	Quâ rĕ tempus fállis? / Quâ rĕ taédium tempŏris mínŭis?
I amuse myself in reading, in conversation.	Hóras fállo legendo, sermónibus.
He diverts him with playing, with writing.	Tempus (ótium) fállit ludéndo, scribéndo.
They amused themselves in banqueting and feasting.	Ótium convíviis commissationibúsque inter sê terébant.
Each, each one; every, every one.	*Quisque, unusquisque; omnes, nemo non.*
Each one of you.	Quisque *or* unusquisque vestrum.
Each of you two.	Quisque *or* uterque vestrum.
Every one spends his time as he pleases.	Tempus súum quísque térit, ut sĭbi pláceat.
Every one amuses himself in the best way he can.	Ótium súum quísque fállit quam óptime pótest.
Everybody speaks of it.	Ómnes de rê loquúntur. / In ôre ómnium est.
Every one knows.	Némo est, qui nésciat.
Everybody thinks.	Némo ést; quin (= qui nôn) exístimet.
Every man is liable to err.	Némo nôn érrat. / Humânum est errâre.
I have nothing to amuse myself with.	Non hábeo, quô fállam tempus.
It is for amusement, for pastime.	Est ad tempus falléndum. / Est ánimi caúsā.
The taste.	*Gustus (gustātus), ūs,* m.; *sensus, ūs,* m.; *judicium, i,* n.
A man of taste, of none.	Homo elegans, inelegans.
To have taste.	Esse intelligentem; esse praedĭtum sapōre.
To have no taste.	Esse inelegantem, nōn sapŏre.
To mistake, to be mistaken.	Erro, āre, āvi, ātum. / Fallor, i, falsus sum.
To soil, stain.	Inquĭno, āre, āvi, ātum. / Macŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum.
To deceive, cheat.	Fallo, ĕre, fefelli, falsum. / Decipio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum.
To cheat, defraud any one of anything.	Fraudāre *or* defraudāre aliquem aliquā re *or* rem.

To believe.	*Crēdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum.* *Arbĭtror, āri, atus sum.* *Pŭto, āre, āvi, ātum.*
To believe anything *or* any one.	Alicui rei *or* alicui crēdĕre. Alicui *or* alicui rei fĭdem habēre *or* tribuĕre.
To believe in dreams.	Somniis credĕre *or* fidem tribuĕre.
To believe in ghosts.	Credĕre de umbris.
To believe one's eyes rather than one's ears.	Ocŭlis magis quam auribus credĕre.
To believe in God.	Deum esse credĕre; Deum putāre.
The God.	Dĕus, i, *m.*; nūmen, ĭnis, *n.*
To utter a falsehood, to lie.	Mentior, īri, ītus sum. Mendacium dicĕre.
The liar, the story-teller.	Mendax, ācis, *m.* & *f.*
Do you believe that man?	Credísne (tribuísne fidem) ílli hómini?
I do not believe him.	Nôn crédo. Fidem non tríbuo.
Do you believe what I am telling you?	Putâsne vêrum, quod tíbi díco?
I do believe it.	Púto.
Am I mistaken?	Egóne fállor?
You are not mistaken.	Nôn fálleris.
Did he cheat you out of anything?	Fraudavítne tê aliquā rê?
He has cheated me out of my pay.	Véro, mê honorário fraudâvit.
Do you believe that he has soiled your book?	Credísne éum líbrum túum inquinavísse?
I do not believe it.	Mínimi crédo.
Is he a man of taste?	Praeditúsne est sapôre?
He is not (a man of taste).	Nôn sápit. Hómo élegans nôn est.
Every man has his taste.	Súum cuíque judícium est. De gústibus nôn disputándum est.
My taste is (= I like) to study and to ride on horseback.	Ego óperam lítteris dáre atque equitâre deléctor.
To rejoice at anything.	*Gaudēre, laetāri aliquā re, de* or *in aliquā re.*
I rejoice at your happiness.	Gaúdeo túā felicitâte.
At what does your uncle rejoice?	Quâ rê pátruus túus laetâtur?
He is delighted and rejoiced at my recovery.	Gaûdet vehementérque laetâtur valetúdĭne méā confirmátā.
I am greatly rejoiced at your diligence and industry.	Mágnae laetítiae míhi est diligéntia túa et indústria.
To go to bed.	*Cubĭtum īre; dăre se somno; conferre se in lectum.*
To get up, rise.	(*E lecto*) *surgo, ĕre, surrexi, surrectum.*
The bed.	Lectus, lectŭlus, i, *m.*
Sunrise.	Ortus sōlis, sol oriens, prima lux.

Sunset.	Occasus sōlis, sol occídens.
Early (in the morning).	Bĕne māne, matutīne, matūre.
Late (at night).	Sero, tarde; multā nocte.
At midnight.	Mediā nocte.
At a quarter past eleven.	Círciter quadrántem hórae post undécimam.
Do you rise early?	Surgísne béne mâne? / Solêsne béne mâne e lécto súrgere?
I rise at sunrise.	Égo sôle oriénte súrgere sóleo. / E lécto súrgo cum ortu sôlis.
At what time do you go to bed?	Quâ hórā tê dâs sómno (tê in léctum cónfers)?
I usually go to bed at midnight.	Égo médiā nócte cúbitum íre sóleo.
He goes to bed at sunset.	Léctŭlum sê cónfert cum occásu sôlis.
At what time did you go to bed last night?	Quô témpore sómno tê dedísti héri vésperi?
I went to bed at ten.	In léctum me contŭli hórā décimā.
Did he rise earlier than you.	Surrexítne matúrius quam tû?
No, he rose later.	Ímmo véro tárdius surréxit.
The hair (of the head).	*Pilus*, *i*, m.; or pl. *pīli*; *crines*, pl.
To cut one's hair.	Pīlos recídere (cidi, cisum). / Pīlos tondēre (totondi, tonsum).
To pull out any one's hair.	Alicui pīlos evellĕre (velli, vulsum).
He is pulling out his hair.	Pílos sîbi evéllit.
He has cut his hair.	Pílos sîbi recídit (totóndit).
I have had my hair cut.	Égo míhi pílos recidéndos curávi. / Pili míhi tónsi sunt.
Nothing but.	*Nihil praeter* (cum Acc.). / *Non nisi.*
He drinks nothing but water.	Níhil praeter áquam bíbet (bíbere sólet).
He has nothing but enemies.	Néminem nísi sibi inimícum hábet. / Praeter inimícos hábet néminem.
I saw no one but him.	Praeter íllum vídi néminem.
To run away, flee.	Aufugío, ĕre, fugi. / Profugĕre (ALIQUO).
Are you afraid to remain?	Timêsne manêre?
I am not afraid.	Nôn tímeo.
Is he afraid to write to you?	Timétne (metuítne) lítteras dáre ad tê?
He is not afraid.	Nôn tímet.

EXERCISE 144.

Have you written long or short letters? — I have written (both) long and short ones. — Have you many apples? — I have so many of them that I do not know which to eat. — Do you wish to give anything to these children? — They have studied so badly, that I do not

wish to give them anything. — What dost thou rejoice at? — I rejoice at the good fortune that has happened to you. — What do your children rejoice at? — They rejoice at seeing you. — Do you rejoice at the happiness of my father? — I do rejoice at it. — Do you flatter my brother? — I do not flatter him. — Does this master flatter his pupils? — He does not flatter them. — Is he pleased with them? — He is much pleased (*contentus*) with them when they learn well; but he is not pleased with them when they do not learn well. — Do you flatter me? — I do not flatter you, for I love you. — Do you see yourself in that looking-glass? — I do see myself in it. — Why do you not remain near the fire? — Because I am afraid of burning myself. — Does this man make his fire? — Do you fear those ugly men? — I do not fear them, for they hurt nobody. — Why do those children run away? — They run away, because they are afraid of you. — Do you run away from your enemies? — I do not run away from them, for I do not fear them. — Can you write a Latin letter without an error? — I can write one. — Does any one correct your letters? — No one corrects them. — How many letters have you already written? — I have already written a dozen. — Have you hurt yourself? — I have not hurt myself. — Who has hurt himself? — My brother has hurt himself; for he has cut his finger. — Is he still ill? — He is better. — I rejoice to hear that he is no longer ill; for I love him, and I pitied him from my heart. — Why does your cousin pull out his hair? — Because he cannot pay what he owes. — Have you cut your hair? — I have not cut it myself, but I have had it cut.

Exercise 145.

In what do your children amuse themselves? — They amuse themselves in studying, writing, and playing. — In what do you amuse yourself? — I amuse myself in the best way I can, for I read good books, and I write to my friends. — Every man has his taste; what is yours? — I like to study, to read a good book, to go to the concert, and the public walk, and to ride on horseback. — Has that physician done any harm to your child? — He has cut his finger, but he has not done him any harm. — Why do you listen to that man? — I listen to him, but I do not believe him; for I know that he is a story-teller. — Why does your cousin not brush his hat? — He does not brush it, because he is afraid of soiling his fingers. — What does my neighbor tell you? — He tells me that you wish to buy his horse; but I know that he is mistaken, for you have no money to buy it. — What do they say at the market? — They say that the enemy is beaten. — Do you believe it? — I do believe it, because every one says so. — Do you go to bed early? — I go to bed late; for I cannot sleep, if I go to bed early. — At what o'clock did you go to bed yesterday? — Yesterday I went to bed at a quarter past eleven. — At what o'clock do your children go to bed? — They go to bed at sunset. — Do they rise early? — They rise at sunrise. — At what o'clock did you rise to-day? — To-day I rose late; for I went to bed late last evening. — Does your son rise late? — He must rise early, for he never goes to bed late. — What does he do when he gets up? — He studies and then breakfasts.

Lesson LXXVII. — PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

OF THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

A. Gender originally depends upon the signification of words, and is in so far called *natural gender* or *sex.*

1. In substantives denoting *living beings*, i. e. men or animals, the natural gender is either *masculine* or *feminine*, according to the sex. *Inanimate* objects do not properly admit of any distinction of sex, and are hence said to be of the *neuter gender.*

2. The Latin language, however, attributes life to *many inanimate objects*, and extends the distinction of sex to them, i. e. represents them likewise as *masculine* or *feminine.* E. g. *hic mons, haec arbor.*

3. When the gender of a substantive is not already determined by its signification, it is indicated by its form (or termination). This is called the *grammatical gender*, and is either *masculine, feminine*, or *neuter.* E. g. *hic liber, haec mensa, hoc umbracŭlum.*

NATURAL GENDER.

B. The natural gender of substantives denoting living beings (i. e. men or animals) coincides with the sex of the individual designated. Hence, names and appellations of male beings are masculine, and those of females feminine. E. g. *Caesar, Cleopatra, vir, mulier, păter, māter.*

REMARKS.

1. Patrials and gentiles of the plural number are considered masculine; as, *Romāni, Carthaginienses*, &c. So also *lemŭres*, ghosts, and *mānes*, departed spirits.

2. The names of women are feminine, even where the termination is neuter. E. g. *mea Glycerium, tua Phanium.*

3. The only exception to this law are certain secondary appellations of men, which retain their original grammatical gender as determined by their form. Such are: FEM. *copiae*, military forces; *deliciae*, favorite, darling; *opĕrae*, operatives; *vigĭliae, excubiae*, watch, sentinels. NEUT. *auxilia*, auxiliary troops; *servitia*, servants; *mancipĭum*, a slave; *acroāma*, a jester.*

C. The natural gender of living beings of the same species is indicated in three different ways: —

I. There is a separate word for each gender. E. g. *vir* —

* But *optio*, a lieutenant, is masculine, though derived from *optio*, f., choice.

mulĭer, pătер — māter, frāter — sŏror, patrŭus — amĭta, marĭtus — uxor, taurus — vacca. Instances of this kind are comparatively few.

II. The noun is of the same root, but has a separate termination for each gender. E. g. *fīlĭus — fīlĭa, amīcus — amīca, magister — magistra, servus — serva, praeceptor — praeceptrix, lŭpus — lŭpa.*

REMARK. — Substantives thus admitting of two terminations are called *mobilia*, and are most commonly of the first and second declensions (MASC. *er* or *us*, FEM. *a*). Mobilia of the third declension form their feminines in *a*, *trix*, *ina*, *issa*, and *is*; as, *caupo — caupōna*, innkeeper, hostess; *lĕno — lēna*, pander, procuress; *lĕo — lĕaena*, lion, lioness; *tibīcen — tibīcĭna*, flute-player (male and female); *cantor — cantrix*, singer; *rex — regīna*, king, queen; *gallus — gallina*, cock, hen; *Threx — Threïssa* (or *Thressa*), a Thracian (man and woman); *nĕpos — neptis*, grandson, granddaughter.

III. One and the same noun is indifferently applied to both sexes, without any change of termination, and the gender is determined by the context (i. e. by the adjective in agreement with it, &c.); as, *hic* or *haec cīvis*, this citizen (male or female); *hic* or *haec hēres*, this heir (man or woman). Nouns of this class are said to be of the *common gender* (or *communia*).* Such are

1. The following names of persons: —

Antistes, *priest* (or *-ess*).	Incŏla, *inhabitant.*
Artĭfex, *artist.*	Index, *informer.*
Auctor, *author.*	Judex, *judge.*
Augur, *augur.*	Martyr, *witness.*
Civis, *citizen.*	Miles, *soldier.*
Comes, *companion.*	Munĭceps, *burgess.*
Conjux, *spouse.*	Parens, *parent.*
Custos, *keeper.*	Praesul, *chief priest.*
Dux, *leader.*	Sacerdos, *priest* (or *-ess*).
Exul, *exile.*	Satelles, *attendant.*
Haeres, *heir.*	Testis, *witness.*
Hospes, *guest.*	Vates, *prophet* (or *-ess*).
Hostis, *enemy.*	Vindex, *avenger.*

Among these are included adjectives of one termination used substantively; as, *adolescens, affīnis, juvĕnis, patruēlis, princeps*, &c.

2. Many names of animals; as,

Anser, *goslin* or *goose.*	Cānis, *dog* or *bitch.*
Bōs, *ox* or *cow.*	Elephantus, *elephant.*

* Names of *inanimate* objects, which are sometimes of one gender and sometimes of another, are said to be of the *doubtful* gender; as, *finis*, m. & f.

Grūs, *crane.*	Perdix, *partridge.*
Lĕpus, *hare.*	Serpens, *snake.*
Līmax, *snail.*	Sūs, *swine.*
Mūs, *mouse.*	Thynnus, *tunny-fish.*
Ovis, *sheep* or *ram.*	Vespertīlio, *bat.*

REMARKS.

1. Some nouns of the common gender are *mobilia* at the same time. E. g. *antistes — antistīta, cliens — clienta, hospes — hospĭta.*

2. From the nouns of the common gender we must distinguish, —

a) Masculine appellations of entire classes of persons in the plural, including also the other sex. E. g. *hi lĭbĕri*, children; *fīlĭi*, sons and daughters; *frātres*, brothers and sisters; *rēges*, the royal family; *parentes*, parents.

b) *Epicoena*, or those which, though including both sexes, are always of the same grammatical gender (i. e. always either masculine or feminine). Such are: MASC. *corvus*, the raven; *milvus*, the kite; *passer*, the swallow; *turdus*, the thrush. FEM. *alauda*, the lark; *aquila*, the eagle; *felis*, the cat; *rana*, the frog; *vulpes*, the fox,* &c.

3. The *communia* and *mobilia* occur most frequently as masculine nouns; as, *hic amīcus, equus, canis, civis*, &c. Exceptions are *sus, grus, serpens, limax* and *perdix*, which are more commonly feminine.

4. Among the general names of animals, *animans*, in the sense of "rational animal," or "man," is masculine, and when applied to other animals, feminine or neuter. *Quadrŭpes* is generally feminine, sometimes neuter or masculine. *Ales* and *volucris*, "bird," is commonly feminine (always so in the plural); sometimes, however, masculine.

GENDER OF NAMES OF INANIMATE OBJECTS.

D. Besides the substantives which designate living beings, there are many others whose grammatical gender is likewise determined by their signification (cf. *A.* 2). Such are: —

I. MASCULINES. — The names of the winds and months, and generally also those of rivers and mountains, are masculine.† E. g.

Aquĭlo, Auster, Bŏrĕas, Etēsĭae, Nŏtus.	The north wind, south wind, northeast wind, the Etesian winds, south wind.
Januārĭus, Aprīlis, Julĭus, November.	January, April, July, November.
Euphrātes, Ister, Tamĕsis, Tigris.	The Euphrates, the Danube, the Thames, the Tigris.
Athos, Ĕryx, Hĕlĭcon, Pangaeus.	Mount Athos, Eryx, Helicon, Pangæus.

* When it becomes important to distinguish sex, it is customary to add *mas* or *masculus* and *femina*; as, *felis mas, vulpes masculus, porcus femina.*

† Because the generic terms *ventus, mensis, fluvius* (*amnis*), and *mons* are of that gender.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Of the names of rivers, *Albula*, *Allia*, *Duria*, *Matrŏna*, *Sagra*, *Sura*, *Styx*, and *Lethe* are feminine; *Elāver*, *Jader*, *Muthul*, and others of barbarous origin, neuter.

2. Of the names of mountains, *Aetna*, *Alpis*, *Calpe*, *Carambis*, *Cyllene*, *Ida*, *Oeta*, *Rhodŏpe*, are feminine; and *Pelion* and *Soracte*, neuter.

II. FEMININES. — The names of countries, islands, cities, trees and plants are generally feminine.* E. g.

Aegyptus, Gallia, Persis, Trōas.	Egypt, Gaul, Persia, Troas.
Dēlos, Rhŏdus, Salāmis, Sĭcĭlĭa.	The island of Delos, Rhodes, Salamis, Sicily.
Carthāgo, Corinthus, Pylos, Rōma, Troezen.	The city of Carthage, Corinth, Pylos, Rome, Trœzen.
Abĭes, pĭrus, quercus, papȳrus, rŏsa.	The fir-tree, pear-tree, the oak, the papyrus, the rose.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Of the names of countries and islands, *Pontus*, *Hellespontus*, *Bospŏrus*, *Isthmus*, and *Sason* (island) are masculine. Those in *um*, and plurals in *a*, are neuter; as, *Latium*, *Samnium*, *Bactra*, &c. So the islands *Dianium* and *Delta*.

2. Of the names of cities, those in *ūs*, *untis*, plurals in *i*, and some of those in *us*, *i*, in *o* and *on*, are masculine; as, *Selinus*, *Delphi*, *Canōpus*, *Croto*, *Marathon*, &c. Those in *um*, *on*, *e*, *ur*, and plurals in *a*, are neuter; as, *Tarentum*, *Illion*, *Praeneste*, *Tibur*, *Arbĕla*, &c. So are also a number of indeclinable barbarous names; as, *Gadir*, *Hispal*, *Nepet*, &c.

3. Of the names of trees and plants, *oleaster*, *pinaster*, *styrax*; *acanthus*, *asparagus*, *asphodĕlus*, *calamus*, *carduus*, *hellebŏrus*, *intŭbus*, *juncus*, *rhamnus*, and *scirpus* are masculine; *amarăcus*, *cytisus*, *lapathus*, *raphanus*, *rubus*, *spinus*, *larix*, *vepres*, and *sentis*, common. All of the second declension ending in *um*, and those of the third in *er*, are neuter; as, *balsămum*, *ligustrum*; *acer*, *papāver*, *piper*, *siser*, *tuber*, *robur*, &c.

III. NEUTERS. — The gender of all substantives denoting inanimate objects, and not included in Case I. or II. of this rule, is not determined by their *signification*, but by their *termination*. (Cf. Lesson LXXVIII. *A*.) Among these, however, there are several classes of words which are invariably NEUTER. Such are, —

1. All indeclinable nouns, whether singular or plural. E. g. *fas*, *nefas*, *nihil*, *cornu*, *gummi*, *Tempe*, *pondo*.† (Cf. page 61.)

2. All words and expressions used as substantives, without properly

* Because the generic terms *terra*, *insŭla*, *urbs*, *arbor*, are so.

† With the exception of indeclinable names of *persons*; as, *Adam*, *Ruth*, &c.

being such, and linked to an adjective or pronoun of the neuter gender. E. g. *A* longum; ultĭmum *vale; cras* hesternum; illud *nosce te ipsum; scire* tuum; *pater* est dissyllabum (*A* long; the last farewell; yesterday, which once was called "to-morrow"; the injunction, "Know thyself"; thy knowledge; the word "father" is a dissyllable).

To take a walk.	*Spătĭor, āri, ātus sum.* *Ambulāre, deambulāre.*
To go out to take a walk.	Ire *or* abire deambulātum.
To take any one a walking.	Aliquem deambulātum ducĕre.
To take a drive out of the city.	Vehicŭlo extra urbem vectāri.
To take a ride on horseback through the city, into the country.	Equo per urbem, rūs vectāri.
To take a pleasure excursion into the country.	Excurrĕre rūs animi causā.
Do you wish to take a walk with me?	Vîsne mêcum deambulâtum ire?
I am not willing to go with you.	Nólo têcum abire.
I would rather take a drive out of the city with you.	Ego têcum vehícŭlo extra úrbem vectári mâlim.
Where was your master accustomed to walk?	Quô lóco magíster túus spatiári solêbat?
He was accustomed to walk in the garden every morning before breakfast.	Quotídie mâne ante jentáculum in hórtulo deambulâre solêbat.
Do you often walk?	Ambulâsne saépe?
I take a walk every morning.	Ego véro quotídie mâne ambulâtum ábeo.
Do you take your children a walking?	Ducísne liberos túos ambulâtum?
I take them a walking every evening.	Dúco éos ambulâtum quotídie vésperi.
He takes a walk every day.	Núllo nôn die spatiâtur.
Is he taking a drive or a ride?	Útrum carpénto vectâtur an équo?
He is taking a drive.	Carpénto.
Where do you intend to go tomorrow morning?	Quo ire crâs mâne cógitas?
I intend to take an excursion into the country.	Excúrrere rûs cógito.
Do you wish to see your brother work?	Cupísne vidêre frátrem túum operári?
I do.	Cúpio.
When do you take a walk?	Quô témpore ábis ambulâtum?
I take a walk whenever I have nothing to do at home.	Ambulâtum ego ire sóleo, quandocúnque dómi níhil faciéndum invénio.
To teach.	*Dŏceo, ēre, ŭi, doctum* (ALIQUEM ALIQUID).

To instruct (any one in anything).	Erŭdĭo, īre, īvi, ītum. Institŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum. (ALIQUEM ALIQUA RE).*
To give one lessons (in an art).	Trādo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum (ALICUI ALIQUAM ARTEM).
To take lessons, to receive instruction (from any one).	Docēri, erudīri, institui (AB ALIQUO).
What does your master teach you?	Quíd tê magíster dócet?
He teaches me to read and to write.	Dócet mê légere et scríbere.
Did he teach you the Latin language?	Docuítne tê línguam Latínam?
He did teach me.	Dócuit.
Do you give lessons in dancing?	Tradísne tû ártem saltándi?
No, on the contrary, I give lessons in writing.	Ímmo pótius scríbéndi ártem trádo.
Who is instructing your little brother?	Quís fratérculum túum instítuit?
His master, the Englishman, is instructing him in the liberal arts.	Éjus magíster, Ánglus, éum ártibus liberálibus instítuit atque érudit.
He is taught grammar, the art of dancing.	Docêtur grammáticam, ártem saltándi.
Are you taking lessons in elocution?	Instituerísne árte dicéndi?
I am not taking any.	Non instítuor.
The instruction.	Institutio, ōnis, *f.*; disciplīna, ae, *f.*
The art, science.	Ars, *gen.* artis, *f.*
To dance.	Saltāre, saltatiōnem agĕre.
To reckon, cipher.	Ratiocināri; numĕros tractāre.
Ciphering (act of).	Ratiocinatio, ōnis, *f.*
Arithmetic.	Ars ratiocinandi, arithmetĭca, ae, *f.*
The Latin master.	Linguae Latīnae doctor *seu* magister.
The dancing-master.	Magister saltandi.
The clergyman.	Clerĭcus, ecclesiastĭcus, i, *m.*
The scholar, savant.	(Vir) eruditus, doctus.
To remember, recollect.	*Mĕmĭni, meminisse.* *Rĕcordor, āri, ātus sum.* *Reminiscor, i, ——.*
To remember, recollect (any one).	Meminisse alicūjus *or* aliquem.†
To remember or recollect anything.	Meminisse, recordāri *or* reminisci alicūjus rei *or* rem.‡

* On the government of these verbs, see Lesson LX. *A.*

† On the construction of these verbs, compare Lesson LXVII. *B.*

‡ *Meminisse* is "to have still in one's memory," *reminisci*, "to recollect upon reflection what had already been supplanted in the memory," *recordāri*, "to remember or think of with interest and sympathy."

To remember (recollect) anything very well.	Commeminisse alicujus rei. Bĕne, praeclāre meminisse alicūjus rei.
Something occurs to me, comes to my mind.	Vĕnit mihi in mentem alicūjus rei *or* res.
Do you still remember that man?	Meministîne íllum hóminem (illíus hóminis)?
I still remember him very well.	Mémini éum béne.
Does he recollect his promise?	Recordatúrne súa promíssa (suôrum promissôrum)?
He does not recollect them.	Éa (eôrum) nôn recordâtur (reminíscitur).
I remember my reading, seeing, hearing.	Mémini mê légere, vidêre, audíre.
I remember having suffered the same.	Recórdor mê éadem perpéssum.
I wish to know, whether you remember anything concerning yourself?	Velim scíre, écquid de tê recordêre?
Remember me.	Memíneris méi. Fácito, ut me memíneris.
Do you recollect that?	Reminiscerísne hóc?
I do not remember it.	Haud reminíscor.
I remember you.	Mémini tê *or* túi.
I remember them very well.	Praecláre éos mémini.
He recollects us.	Nóstri reminíscitur.
I have remembered him.	Recordâtus sum (mémini) éjus.
One must love and praise one's friend.	Amîcus súus cuíque amándus atque laudándus est.
Whom must we despise and punish?	Quém nôs dispiciâmus atque puniâmus opórtet?

Exercise 146.

Do you call me? — I do call you. — What is your pleasure? — You must rise, for it is already late. — What do you want me for? — I have lost all my money at play, and I come to beg you to lend me some. — What o'clock is it? — It is already a quarter past six, and you have slept long enough. — Is it long since you rose? — It is an hour and a half since I rose. — Do you often go a walking? — I go a walking when I have nothing to do at home. — Do you wish to take a walk? — I cannot take a walk, for I have too much to do. — Has your brother taken a ride on horseback? — He has taken an airing in a carriage. — Do your children often go a walking? — They go a walking every morning after breakfast. — Do you take a walk after dinner? — After dinner I drink tea, and then I take a walk. — Do you often take your children a walking? — I take them a walking every morning and every evening. — Can you go along with me? — I cannot go along with you, for I must take my little brother out a walking. — Where do you walk? — We walk in our uncle's garden

and fields. — Do you like walking? — I like walking better than eating and drinking. — Does your father like to take a ride on horseback? — He likes to take a ride in a carriage better than on horseback. — Must one love children who are not good? — One ought, on the contrary, to punish and despise them. — Who has taught you to read? — I have learnt it of (*ab* or *apud*) a French master. — Has he also taught you to write? — He has taught me to read and to write. — Who has taught your brother arithmetic? — A German master has taught it him. — Do you wish to take a walk with us? — I cannot go a walking, for I am waiting for my German master. — Does your brother wish to take a walk? — He cannot, for he is taking lessons in dancing.

EXERCISE 147.

Have you an English master? — We have one. — Does he also give you lessons in Italian? — He does not know Italian; but we have an Italian and Spanish master. — What has become of your old writing-master? — He has taken orders (has become a clergyman). — What has become of the learned man whom I saw at your house last winter? — He has set up for a merchant. — And what has become of his son? — He has turned a soldier. — Do you still recollect my old dancing-master? — I do still recollect him; what has become of him? — He is here, and you can see him if you like (*si placet, si commŏdum est*). Hast thou a German master? — I have a very good (one), for it is my father, who gives me lessons in German and in English. — Does your father also know Polish? — He does not know it yet, but he intends to learn it this summer. — Do you remember your promise? — I do remember it. — What did you promise me? — I promised to give you lessons in German; and I will do it. — Will you begin this morning? — I will begin this evening, if you please (*si tibi lĭbet* or *collĭbet*). — Do you recollect the man whose son taught us dancing? — I no longer recollect him. — Do you still recollect my brothers? — I do recollect them very well; for when I was studying at Berlin, I saw them every day. — Does your uncle still recollect me? — I assure you that he still recollects you. — Do you speak German better than my cousin? — I do not speak it as well as he, for he speaks it better than many Germans. — Which of your pupils speaks it the best? — The one that was walking with me yesterday speaks it the best of them all. — Is your uncle's house as high as ours? — Yours is higher than my uncle's, but my cousin's is the highest house that I have ever seen. — Has your friend as many books as I? — You have more of them than he; but my brother has more of them than both of you together. — Which of us has the most money? — You have the most, for I have but thirty crowns, my friend has but ten, and you have five hundred.

Lesson LXXVIII. — PENSUM DUODEOCTOGESIMUM.

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES AS DETERMINED BY THEIR TERMINATION AND DECLENSION.

A. FIRST DECLENSION. — Substantives of the first declension ending in *ă* or *ē* are feminine, and those in *ās* and *ēs* masculine.

E. g. *Aula*, a hall; *stella*, a star; *aloë*, aloes; *epitŏme*, an abridgment; *tiāras*, a turban; *dynastes*, a ruler.

EXCEPTIONS are *dama*, m. & f., a doe, deer; *talpa*, f. & m., a mole; *Hadrĭa*, m., the Adriatic Sea; and *planetae*, m. pl., the planets. *Pandectae*, plural, is feminine, but the singular, *pandectes*, is masculine. *Manna*, in the sense of "grain" or "crumb," is regularly feminine, but the *manna* of the Israelites indeclinable neuter.

B. SECOND DECLENSION. — Of the nouns of the second declension, those ending in *ŭs* (*ŏs*, *ōs*, *ūs*) and *ĕr* are masculine, and those in *ŭm* and *ŏn* * neuter.

E. g. *animus*, the mind; *scorpios*, a scorpion; *Athōs*, a mountain; *periplūs*, circumnavigation; *ager*, a field; — *antrum*, a cave; *colŏn*, the colon.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Feminine are *alvus*, *carbăsus*, *colus*, *domus*, *humus*, and *vannus*. So also the Greek *arctus*, *apostrophus*, *dialectus*, *diametrus*, *diphthongus*, *exŏdus*, *methŏdus* (and other compounds of *ἡ ὁδός*), *lecythus*, *miltus*, and *paragraphus*.

2. Common, but more frequently feminine, are *atŏmus*, an atom; *barbĭtus*, a lute; *ficus*, the fig; *grossus*, an unripe fig; *lōtus*, the lotus-flute; *phărus*, a lighthouse. Sometimes also *fasēlus*, a sort of boat, and *pampĭnus*, a vine-shoot. *Haec mālus* signifies the apple-tree, and *hic mālus*, the mast. *Hic epōdus* is a shorter verse; *haec epōdus*, an epode.

3. Neuters are *pelăgus*, the sea; *virus*, juice, poison; and *vulgus*, the vulgar.†

C. THIRD DECLENSION. — The third declension exhibits the greatest variety of terminations, and includes nouns of every gender.

I. Nouns of the third declension ending in *ŏ*, *ŏr*, *ōs*, *ĕr*, or *n* are MASCULINE.

---

* Those in *ŏs*, *ōs*, *ūs*, and *ŏn* are Greek nouns.

† But *vulgus* is sometimes also masculine.

E. g. *sermo*, speech; *honor*, honor; *flos*, a flower; *carcer*, a prison; *pecten*, a comb; *canon*, a rule, canon.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Feminines in *o* are, — *a*) *caro, echo; Argo*, and those in *do* and *go*, except *ordo, cardo, ligo, harpăgo*, and *margo; b*) abstract and collective terms in *io;* as, *actio, lectio, portio, legio*, &c. *Pondo*, a pound, is an indeclinable neuter.

2. Of those in *or, arbor* is feminine. *Cor, marmor*, and *aequor* are neuter. *Ador* is commonly indeclinable.

3. Of those in *os, cos* and *dos* are feminine; *ōs, ōris* and *ŏs, ossis* are neuter. So are also the Greek nouns *cetos, chaos, epos*, and *melos*.

4. Of those in *er, cadaver, iter, spinther, tūber, uber, ver*, and the plural *verbĕra* are neuter. *Linter* is more frequently feminine than masculine.

5. Of those in *n, aēdōn, halcyŏn, sindōn*, and *icōn* are feminine. *Gluten, inguen, unguen, sanguen, carmen*, and others in *men*, are neuter.

II. Nouns of the third declension ending in *ās, ēs, ĭs, aus, ўs, x*, and *s* preceded by a consonant, are FEMININE.

E. g. *pietas*, piety; *rupes, is*, a rock; *quies, ētis*, rest; *iris*, the rainbow; *laus*, praise; *chelys*, a cithern; *pax*, peace; *hiems*, winter; *pars*, part.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Of those in *as*, the name of the Roman pound, *as* (gen. *assis*) is masculine.* So are also Greek nouns in *as, antis;* as, *elephas*, &c. Neuter are *vas* (gen. *vasis*), *fas, nefas*, and Greek nouns in *as, ătis;* as, *erysipĕlas*, &c.

2. Nouns in *es, ĭtis*, and Greek nouns in *ēs, ētis*, are masculine; as, *limes, limĭtis*, a cross-road;† *lĕbes, lebētis*, a caldron. So are also *acinăces, cŏles, gausăpes, paries, pes*, and *praes* (surety). *Palumbes* is f. or m., and *ales*, m. or f. Neuters are *aes* and Greek nouns, as *cynosarges*.

3. Masculines in *is* are *amnis, assis, axis, caulis, collis, crinis, ensis, fustis, ignis, mensis, orbis, panis, piscis, sanguis, unguis, vomis*, and others. Common are *aquālis, clunis, corbis*, and (*pollen*) *pollĭnis*. More commonly masculine are *anguis, callis, canalis, canis, cinis, finis, funis, lapis, pedis, pulvis, scrobis* (*scrobs*), *tigris*, and *torquis;* more rarely *clunis, scobis* (*scobs*), and *volŭcris*.

4. Masculines in *x* are Greek nouns in *ax*, and many in *ex;* as, *thorax, judex, pontifex, rex*, &c. So also *calix, fornix, phoenix, saurix, varix; diox, esox, volvox, calyx, coccyx*, and *oryx*. Common are *imbrex, obex*, and *bombyx*. More frequently masculine are *grex, irpex, latex*, and *tradux*. More frequently feminine, *lodix, hystrix, perdix, natrix, sandyx*, and *calx* (the heel, and lime).

* Masculine are also all the parts of this weight; as, *sextans, quadrans, triens, quincunx, semis*, &c.

† But *merges, ĭtis*, "a sheaf," is feminine.

5. Of those ending in *s* preceded by a consonant, *dens*, *fons*, *mons*, *pons*, *chalybs*, and *hydrops* are masculine. So are the Greek names of animals; as, *gryps*, *epops*, &c. Common are *adeps*, *seps*, *lens*, *frons*, *forceps*, *scobs*, *stirps*, and *serpens*. Neuters are the philosophical terms *ens*, *accĭdens*, *antecēdens*, *consĕquens*, *anĭmans*.

III. Nouns of the third declension ending in *ă*, *ĕ*, *i*, *y*, or in *c*, *l*, *t*, *ăr*, *ŭr*, *ŭs*, are NEUTER.

E. g. *diadēma*, a crown; *sedīle*, a seat; *hydromĕli*, mead; *mixy*, mushroom; *lac*, milk; *mel*, honey; *caput*, the head; *par*, a pair; *fulgur*, lightning; *corpus*, a body.

EXCEPTIONS. — Masculine are *sōl*, *mugĭl*, *sāl*; *furfur*, *turtur*, *vultur*; *lĕpus*, *mūs*, *tripūs*, and other compounds of *πους*. Feminine are those in *us*, gen. *ūdis* or *ūtis*; as, *palus*, *ūdis*; *salus*, *ūtis*; to which add *tellus*, *ūris*; and *pecus*, *ŭdis*. The feminine of the common nouns *grus* and *sus* is the gender of the species.

D. FOURTH DECLENSION. — Nouns of the fourth declension ending in *ŭs* are masculine, those in *ū* neuter.

E. g. *fructus*, fruit; *cantus*, a song; *cornu*, a horn; *gĕlu*, ice.

EXCEPTIONS. — Feminine are *acus*, *manus*, *portĭcus*, *trĭbus*, and the plurals *Idus* and *Quinquātrus*. Common are *penus* and *specus*. The obsolete *genus* (for *genu*), *secus* (for *sexus*, m.), and *specus* occur as neuters only in the Nominative and Accusative.

E. FIFTH DECLENSION. — Substantives of the fifth declension are feminine.

E. g. *res*, a thing; *acies*, an edge; *spes*, hope; *fides*, faith.

EXCEPT *meridies*, which is masculine. On the gender of *dies*, m. & f., compare Lesson VIII. *B*.

To be cold, to feel cold.	*Frīgeo, ēre, frixi, ——.* *Algeo, ēre, alsi, ——.* *Frīgus patior.*
My feet, hands, are cold.	Frígeo pédĭbus, mánibus. Pédes, mánus mihi frígent.
To be warm, to feel warm, hot.	*Cāleo, ēre, ŭi, ——.* *Aestum sentio, aestuāre* (to be hot).
The cold.	Frīgus, ŏris, *n.*
The heat.	Aestus, ūs, *m.*

F. Obs. Calēre, "to be warm," is opposed to *frigēre*, "to be cold"; and *aestuāre*, "to feel warm, hot," to *algēre*, "to feel cold."

Are you cold?	Frigêsne (algêsne)?
I am very cold.	Véro, válde álgeo.
I am not at all cold.	Níhil frígŏris pátior.
Was your father cold?	Alsítne páter túus?

He was not cold.	Nôn álsit.
Is he warm?	Calétne (aestuátne)?
He is warm. (He feels warm, hot.)	Cálet. (Aéstŭat.)
Are they warm or cold?	Útrum aéstuant án frígent?
They are neither warm nor cold.	Néque aéstuant néque frígent
Who is (feels) cold?	Quís álget?
My brother is (feels) cold.	Frâter méus álget.
My hands are cold.	Mánus mĭhi frígent.
His ears are cold.	Aúres éi frígent.
My fingers are warm.	Dígiti mĭhi cálent. / Cáleo dígitis.
Your boy felt warm.	Púer túus aéstuâbat.
Who was cold (felt cold)?	Quís fríxit (álsit)?
The shoemaker was cold.	Sutor fríxit (álsit).
They instruct their youth in hunting, running, in suffering hunger, thirst, cold, and heat.	Erúdiunt juventûtem venándo, curréndo, esuriéndo, sitiéndo, algéndo, aestuándo.
To make use of, to use.	*Ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum* (RE).* / *Usitāri* (RE), *usurpāre* (REM).
Do you use my book?	Uterísne méo líbro?
I am using it.	Ûtor.
Has your father used it?	Usúsneést éo páter túus?
He has not used it.	Nôn ûsusést.
May I use your horse for riding into the city?	Licétne mĭhi équum túum usurpâre ad equitándum in úrbem?
You may use it.	Lícet.
Did he use your books for reading?	Usurpavítne túos líbros ad legéndum?
He did not use them.	Non usurpâvit.
He has frequently used my ink, pen, and paper for writing.	Atraménto, pénnā atque chártā méis ad scribéndum usitabâtur.
To approach, draw near.	*Prope accēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum* (REM, AD REM). / *Appropinquāre* (REI, AD REM).
To withdraw, or go away from.	*Discēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum* (RE, DE RE, EX LOCO). / *Abire* (AB ALIQUO, A RE, EX LOCO).
Do you come to the fire?	Accedísne ad fócum (ad carbónes)?
I do come to it.	Accédo.
He has approached the fire.	Appropinquâvit fóco (ad fócum).
They have withdrawn from the fire.	De fóco discessérunt.
Why does that man go away from the fire?	Quámobrem vír ílle a fóco discêdit (ábit)?
He goes away from it because he is not cold.	De fóco discêdit proptérea, quod nôn álget.

* On the government of *ūtor*, see Lesson LXXII. *A.*

What do you recollect?	Quid recordâris?
I recollect nothing.	Níhil recórdor.
For what? Whereto? For what purpose?	*Quo? Quorsum? (Ad) quid? Ad quamnam rem? Cuínam rei?*
What am I to do with so much money?	Quô míhi tántam pecúniam?
For what purpose do I engage in this discussion?	Quórsum ígitur haêc dísputo?
What do you want (need) money for?	Quíd (cuínam réi) tíbi ópus ést pecúniâ?
I want it for buying a carriage.	Ópus ést míhi ad eméndam rhêdam.
What do you wish wine for?	Ad quid vis vínum?
(I want some) to drink, to sell.	Ad bibéndum, ad vendéndum.
What does this horse serve you for?	Ad quíd (cuí úsui) est tíbi hícce équus?
I make use of it for riding.	Adhíbeo éum ad equitándum.
What use is it to philosophize about the matter?	Quíd ópus ést in hôc philosophári?
Many things are not applied to the use for which they were intended.	Múlta nôn ad éum ûsum adhibéntur, cuí destinâta sunt.
A quill does not subserve the purpose of a knife.	Cuí úsui cúlter, éi nôn est pénna.
To employ, use (for a certain purpose).	Adhíbeo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum (ALIQUID AD REM).
To ride out.	Avĕhi or ēvĕhi equo. Equo vectāri extra urbem.
To drive out.	Carpento (vehiculo) vectāri *or* gestāri. Excurrĕre.

EXERCISE 148.

Which is the nearest way (*via proxima* or *brevissima*) to go to your uncle's castle? — This way is shorter than the one we took yesterday; but my father knows one which is the nearest of all. — Do you use my carriage? — I do use it. — Has your father used my horse? — He has used it. — What does this horse serve you for? — It serves me to ride out upon. — Do you use the books which I lent you? — I do use them. — May I (*licéne mihi*) use your knife? — Thou mayest use it, but thou must not cut thyself. — May my brothers use your books? — They may use them, but they must not tear them. — May we use your stone table? — You may use it, but you must not spoil it. — For what purpose do your brothers want money? — They want some to live upon. — What does this knife serve us for? — It serves us to cut our bread, our meat, and our cheese with. — Is it cold to-day? — It is very cold. — Will you draw near the fire? — I cannot draw near it, for I am afraid of burning myself. — Why does your friend go away from the fire? — He goes away from it because he is afraid of burning himself. — Art thou coming near the fire? — I am

coming near it, because I am very cold. — Are thy hands cold? — My hands are not cold, but my feet are. — Do you go away from the fire? — I do go away from it. — Why do you go away from it? — Because I am not cold. — Are you cold or warm? — I am neither cold nor warm. — Why do your children approach the fire? — They approach it, because they are cold. — Is anybody cold? — Somebody is cold. — Who is cold? — The little boy, whose father has lent you a horse, is cold. — Why does he not warm himself? — Because his father has no money to buy wood. — Will you tell him to come to me to warm himself? — I will tell him so. — Do you remember anything? — I remember nothing. — What does your uncle recollect? He recollects your promise. — What have I promised him? — You have promised him to go to Germany with him next winter. — I intend to do so if it is not too cold. — Are your hands often cold? — My hands are scarcely ever (*nunquam fere*) cold, but my feet are often so. — Why do you withdraw from the fire? — I have been sitting near the fire this hour and a half, so that I am no longer cold. — Does your friend not like to sit near the fire? — He likes, on the contrary, much to sit near the fire, but only when he is cold. — May one approach your uncle? — One may approach him, for he excludes nobody (*januā neminem próhibet*).

Lesson LXXIX. — PENSUM UNDEOCTOGESIMUM.

DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

A. Many substantives of the Latin language are derived from the Greek. They consist partly of general terms (or common nouns), and partly of proper names of persons and places. These Greek nouns generally retain more or less of their original inflection, but are nevertheless referred to the first, second, and third declensions of Latin nouns.

B. First Declension. — Greek nouns of the first declension end in *ē* feminine, and in *ās*, *ēs* masculine. In the plural they are inflected like Latin nouns, but in the singular they deviate according to the following paradigms: —

Crambe, cabbage, *f.*; *Borĕas*, the north-wind, *m.*; *dynastes*, a ruler, *m.*

Nom	crambē	Borĕās	dynastēs
Gen.	crambēs	Borĕae	dynastae
Dat.	crambae	Borĕae	dynastae
Acc.	crambēn	Borĕăm *or* -ān	dynastēn
Voc.	crambē	Borĕā	dynastē
Abl.	crambē.	Borĕā.	dynastē.

Like *crambē*, decline *aloë*, aloes; *epitŏmē*, an abridgment; and the proper names *Circē*, *Danaë*, *Phoenicē*; — like *Boreas: tiāras*, a turban, and the proper names *Aenēas*, *Andreas*, *Midas*, *Perdiccas*; — like *dynastes: comētes*, the comet; *pyrītes*, a species of stone; *satrăpes*, a satrap; and the proper names *Anchises*, *Thersītes*, &c.

REMARKS.

1. The majority of these words are proper names. Many of them have a Greek and Latin termination at the same time. E. g. *musĭca* or *musice*, *Europa* or *Europe*, *Marsyas* or *Marsya*, *Sophistes* or *Sophista*.*

2. The genitive *ēs* (from the nom. *ē*) belongs especially to proper names; as, *Arachnēs*, *Penelopēs*. So also *musicēs*, *rhetoricēs*. But with common nouns the genitive in *ae* is more frequent.

3. The accusative of those in *as* is sometimes *ān* instead of the more common *am*: as, *Aenēān*, *Pythagŏrān*. So that of nouns in *e* and *es* is occasionally *am* instead of *en*; as, *Andromăcham*, *Anchisam*, &c.

4. The vocative of proper names and patronymics in *es* is sometimes (though rarely) *ā* instead of *ē*; as, *Anchisā*. Sometimes also the Latin termination *ă*; as, *Atridă*, *Polydectă*.

5. The ablative of words in *e* and *es* is sometimes *ā* instead of *ē*. E. g. *Semelā*, *Anchisā*.

6. Geographical names sometimes form their genitive plural in *ōn* (instead of *ārum*); as, *Adulītōn*. — Patronymics often have *um* instead of *ārum*; as, *Ausonĭdum*, *Dardanĭdum*.

7. Many nouns in *es*, especially those which were originally patronymics, pass over into the third declension; as, *Alcibiades*, *Euripĭdes*, *Miltiades* (gen. *is*), &c.

C. SECOND DECLENSION. — Greek nouns of the second declension end in *ŏs* or *ōs* masculine, and in *ŏn* neuter. They are thus declined: —

Scorpios, m., a scorpion; *Athōs*, m., Mount Athos; *symposĭon*, n., a banquet.

			SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM.	scorpĭos	Athōs	symposĭon	symposĭa
GEN.	scorpĭi	Athō	symposĭi	symposĭōn
DAT.	scorpĭo	Athō	symposĭo	symposĭis
ACC.	scorpĭon	Athōn *or* -ō	symposĭon	symposĭa
VOC.	scorpi	Athōs	symposĭon	symposĭa
ABL.	scorpĭo.	Athō.	symposio,	symposĭis.

So decline *barbĭtos*, a lute; *phasēlos*, the phasel (bean); and the proper names *Andros*, *Parŏs*, *Tilyŏs*; *Ceōs*, *Teōs*; *Ilĭon*, *Pelĭon*, &c.

* The older Roman authors, Cicero included, prefer the Latin form of the most current of these words. E. g. *grammatica*, *dialectica*, *rhetorica*; *Hecŭba*, *Sophista*, *Philoctēta*. Yet Cicero has also *Archias*, *Epaminondas*, *Pythagoras*, *Perses*, and *Scythes*. The Greek forms *Europe*, *Helene*, *Penelope*, rather belong to poetry.

REMARKS.

1. Many of the Greek nouns become Latinized, and assume the regular terminations *us* and *um*. E. g. *camīnus, cycnus; theatrum, antrum; Aeschylus, Cœlus, Homērus*, &c. The Greek *ros* is often changed into *er*; as, *Alexander, Menander, Teucer*, instead of *Alexandros*, &c.

2. Among the poets the accusative is often *on*, even in words which have assumed the Latin *us*; as, *Menelaon, Noton*, instead of *Menelaum*, &c.

3. The genitive plural of these nouns is generally the Greek *ōn*, which sometimes occurs even in those otherwise inflected like Latin words. E. g. *Epodōn, Georgĭcōn, Satyrĭcōn*, &c. The genitive singular sometimes ends in *u*, and the nominative plural in *oe*; as, *Menandrū* (= *Menandri*); *Canephŏroe* (= *Canephŏri*).

4. Greek nouns in *ōs* generally retain this *ōs*, but sometimes change it into *ŭs*; as, *Athōs, Androgeōs*, or *Androgĕŭs, Tyndarĕŭs* (gen. *i* and the remaining cases regular). Sometimes they pass over into the third declension; as, *Athōs, Androgeōs*, gen. *ōnis*.

5. Nouns, which in the original have *oos*, contracted *ōus*, have in Latin sometimes *ŏus* and sometimes *ūs*; as, *Alcinŏus, Panthūs, periplūs*. Hence the vocative *Panthū* of Virgil.

6. Nouns in *eus* are often inflected according to the second declension (as if they ended in the dissyllable *ĕus*); as, *Orpheus, i, o, um, eu, o*. But words of this class also belong to the third declension. (Cf. *D.*)

D. THIRD DECLENSION. — 1. Greek nouns of the third declension are all those ending in *ma, i, ān, īn, ōn, ēr, y, ȳn, yr, ys, eus, yx, ynx, ynx*, and plurals in *ē*.

E. g. *poëma*, a poem; *hydromĕli*, mead; *Paeān*, Apollo; *delphīn*, a dolphin; *agōn*, a contest; *cratēr*, a basin; *misȳ*, vitriol; *Phorcȳn; martyr*, a witness; *chlămys*, a cloak; *Orpheus; calyx*, a cup; *syrinx*, a reed; *lynx*, a lynx; *cetē*, pl., a sea-monster.

2. Greek nouns are also many of those ending in the Latin terminations *as, es, is, ōs, o*, and *ēn*.

E. g. *lampas*, a torch; *Demosthenes; basis*, a pedestal; *Minōs; rhinocerōs; echō; attagēn*, a woodcock.

3. The majority of these words follow the declension of those of Latin origin. E. g. *canōn, canŏnis; calyx, calȳcis; chlamys, chlamȳdis; poëma, poëmătis;* * *gigas, gigantis*, &c.

4. Many, however, retain their original terminations in some of the cases, especially among the poets. The following may serve as examples of their declension: —

* The dative and ablative plural of this word is more frequently *poëmatis* than *poëmatibus*.

Lampas, *f.*, *a torch; lamp.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	lampas	lampădes
Gen.	lampădis, lampădos	lampădum
Dat.	lampădi	lampadĭbus
Acc.	lampădem, lampăda	lampădes, lampădas
Voc.	lampas	lampădes
Abl.	lampăde,	lampadĭbus.

Heros, *m.*, *a hero.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	heros	herōes
Gen.	herōis	herōum
Dat.	herōi	herōĭbus
Acc.	herōem, herōa	herōes, herōas
Voc.	heros	herōes
Abl.	herōe,	herōĭbus.

Chĕlys, *f.*, *a cithern.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	chĕlys	chalўes
Gen.	chelўis, chelўos	chalўum
Dat.	chelўi	chalўbus
Acc.	chelym, chelyn	chalўes, chalўas
Voc.	chely	chalўes
Abl.	chelўe, chely,	chalўbus.

Poësis, *f.*, *poetry.*

	poësis
	poësis, poësĕos
	poësi
	poësim, poësin
	poësi
	poësi.

Aër, *m.*, *the air.*

aër
aëris
aëri
aëra
aër
aëre.

	Achilles, *m.*	Orphĕus, *m.*	Chremes, *m.*	Dido, *f.*
Nom.	Achilles	Orphĕus	Chremes	Dido
Gen.	Achillis, Achillĕos	Orphĕos, Orphĕi *or* i	Chremis, Chremētis	Didūs, Didōnis
Dat.	Achilli	Orphĕi *or* o	Chremi *or* ēti	Dido *or* ōni
Acc.	Achillem *or* ēn, Achillĕa	Orphĕa, Orphĕum	Chremem *or* ēn, Chemētem *or* ta	Dido, Didōnem
Voc.	Achilles *or* e	Orpheu	Chremes *or* ē	Dido
Abl.	Achille *or* i.	Orpheo.*	Chreme *or* ēte.	Dido *or* ōne.

Remarks.

1. The genitive in *os* belongs chiefly to roots in *d*, *y*, and *i*; as, *Pallădos*, *Tethўos*, *basĕos*, *mathesĕos*. But it occurs far less frequently than the Greek accusative, and rather in poetry than in prose. With roots in *o* the *os* of the genitive becomes *ūs*; as, *Echūs*, *Cliūs*, *Didūs*, *Sapphūs*, from *echo*, &c. A number of proper names in *es* form their genitive in *is* or *i*; as, *Demosthenis* or *i*, *Neoclis* or *i*, *Periclis* or *i*, from *Demosthenes*, &c. So also *Achilli*, *Ulyxi*.

2. The Greek accusative singular exhibits the terminations *a*, *in*, *yn*, *ĕn*, instead of the common Latin *em* or *im*.

a) The accusative in *a* occurs in the words *aër* — *aëra*, *aether* — *aethĕra*, and in proper names; as, *Pan* — *Pana*, &c. Some words have either *a* or *em*; as, *Babylona* or *Babylonem*.

b) The terminations *in*, *yn*, and *en* are often used by the poets, to

* Proper names in *eus* frequently pass over into the second declension.

avoid a hiatus; as, *basin*, *Halyn*, *Zeuxin*, instead of *basim*, *Halym*, &c. Some nouns in *is*, *ĭdos* have *im* or *ĭdem*, and feminines also *ĭda*: as, *Paris* — *Parim* or *Parĭdem*; *Doris* — *Dorim*, *Dorĭdem*, or *Dorĭda*.

c) The termination *ēn* belongs to nouns in *ēs*, as, *Aeschinēn*, *Achillēn*, *Demosthenēn*, most of which also admit the Latin *em*.

3. The vocative singular of nouns in *s* differs from the nominative as follows: — *a*) Those in *as*, *antis* have *ā*: as, *Pallā*, *Atlā*, *Calchā*, from *Pallas*, &c *b*) Those in *is* and *ys* have *i* and *y*, as, *Philli*, *Tiphy*, from *Phillis*, *Tiphys*. *c*) Those in *eus* have *eu*; as, *Orpheu*, from *Orpheus*. *d*) Those in *es* have *e*; as, *Achille*, *Socrate*, *Pylade*.

4. In the ablative singular roots in *i* generally have *i*; as, *basi*, *Neapoli*; those in *id* have *ide*, and sometimes *i*; as, *Adonĭde*, *Paride*; *Osiri*, from *Adonis*, *ĭdis*, &c.

5. The nominative plural of neuters in *os* is *ē*; as, *melos* — *melē*; *epos* — *epē*. To which add the indeclinable plural *Tempē*.

6. The genitive plural in *ōn* occurs only in names of nations and titles of books; as, *Chalybōn*, *metamorphoseōn libri*.

7. The termination *si* and *sin*, for the dative and ablative plural, rarely occurs, and only in the poets; as, *Charĭsin*, *Lemnĭăsi*, from the nominative *Charĭtes*, *Lemnĭădes*.

8. The accusative plural in *ăs* (instead of *ēs*) is often used in poetry, sometimes also in prose; as, *phalangas*, *Macedŏnas*, *Allobrŏgas*, &c.

To shave, shave off (any one's beard).	*Rādo, ĕre, si, sum.* *Tondĕo, ēre, totondi, tonsum.* (ALICUJUS BARBAM).*
To shave one's self.	Barbam rādĕre *or* tondēre; barbam pōnĕre.
To get shaved (by any one).	Rādi, tondēri (ab aliquo).
To get shaved commonly.	Tonsōri opĕram dăre.
To shave every day.	Facĭem quotidie rasitāre.
When is your father in the habit of shaving?	Quŏ témpore bárbam abrádere sólet páter túus?
He shaves every morning, as soon as he gets out of bed.	Bárbam pônit quotídie mâne, símul ac súrgit.
Do you get shaved by the barber?	Tonderísne a tonsôre?
No, I am in the habit of shaving myself.	Nôn véro; égo ípse bárbam tondêre consuévi.
The razor.	Novacŭla, ae, *f.*; culter tonsōrĭus.
The barber's shears.	Forfex, icis, *f.*
To dress, put on clothes.	*Induĕre se* or *aliquem vestĭbus.* *Induĕre sibi* or *alicui vestes.*
To undress, put off clothes.	Exuĕre sibi *or* alicui vestes.

* *Radĕre* or *abradĕre* is "to shave with the *novacŭla* or razor," or "to shave," in the modern sense; *tondĕre* is "to take off the beard with the *forfex* or shears."

To wake, wake up (any one).	Expergefacio, ĕre, fēci, factum. Excito, āre, āvi, ātum. (ALIQUEM E SOMNO).
To awake (out of sleep).	Expergefīo, fiĕri, factus sum. Expergiscor, i, experrectus sum. Somno solvor, solvi, solūtus sum.
Have you dressed yourself?	Induistîne tibi véstes (tê véstibus)?
I have not yet dressed myself.	Nôndum índui.
Who has dressed the child?	Quis infánti véstes índuit?
Its mother has dressed it.	Mâter éjus éi véstes induit.
When do you undress?	Quô témpore tíbi véstes éxuis?
I undress before I go to bed.	Véstes míhi éxuo, ante quam mê in léctum cónfĕro.
Have you waked up your brother this morning?	Expergefecistîne frâtrem túum hódie mâne?
I did not wake him up.	Éum nôn expergefēci.
At what time do you wake up in the morning?	Quô témpore mâne expergiscĕris?
I wake up at daybreak.	Égo primâ lûce expergíscor.
Did I wake up earlier than you this morning?	Experrectúsne sum égo hódie mâne matúrius quám tû?
You woke up later than I.	Ímmo véro tárdius experréctus és.
Were you waked at eight?	Expergefactúsne es hórā octávā?
I was.	Fáctum est.
I wake up at seven every morning.	Égo quotídie mâne sómno solvor hórā séptimā.
Do not wake me up so early!	Ne mê tám béne mâne éxcites e sómno!
Stop making a noise, lest you wake me out of sleep!	Desíste tumultuári, ne mê expergefácĕres!
To behave, conduct one's self.	*Gĕro, ĕre, gessi, gestum* (SE BENE, MALE, &c.).
To behave like, to show *or* prove one's self (a man, &c.).	Praebeo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum. Praesto, āre, stĭti, stĭtum. (SE VERUM, PROBUM, &c.)
Towards.	Erga, in, adversus. (*Prep. c. Acc.*)
How does he behave (conduct himself)?	Quómodo sê gérit? Quâlem sê praêbet?
He behaves well, respectably.	Béne, honéste sê gérit.
They behave badly, very badly, impudently.	Mále, pérperam, contumáciter sê gérunt.
Did the boy behave well towards his master?	Gessítne sê púer honéste érga praeceptôrem?
No, on the contrary, he behaved very badly.	Ímmo pótius pérperam sê géssit.
How did he behave to his fellow-scholars?	Quómodo sê gerêbat advérsus condiscípulos?
He did not behave any better.	Gerêbat sê nôn mélius.
He behaved too impudently.	Gerêbat sê contumácius.

He conducts himself like a citizen.	Sē pro cīve gérit.
He showed himself a man.	Praébuit sē vírum.
He has shown himself a scholar.	Praéstitit sē dóctum.
To come down, to descend.	*Descendĕre* (de *or* ex aliquo loco).
To ascend, mount, embark, &c.	*Ascendĕre* (locum, in *or* ad locum).
To alight, dismount from a horse.	Descendĕre ex equo. / Ex equo desilīre (-silŭi *or* silii, sultum).
To alight from a carriage.	Descendĕre ex curru. / Degrĕdi ad pĕdes.
To disembark.	Descendĕre *or* egrĕdi e nave.
To descend (sail down) the river.	Dēvĕhi nave per fluvium.
To come down the hill.	Descendĕre de colle.
To ascend the hill.	Ascendĕre collem, in collem.
To embark.	Ascendĕre navem, in navem.
To mount a horse.	Ascendĕre (in) equum.
To mount the rostrum.	Escendĕre in rostra.
The dream.	Somnium, i, *n.*
The beard.	Barba, ae, *f.*
A long, large beard.	Barba longa, promissa, magna.
A rough, grisly beard.	Barba horrída, hirsūta.
To have a strong beard.	Bĕne barbātum esse.
The garret.	Tabulātum suprēmum; coenaculum, i, *n.*
Where is your brother?	Úbiést frâter túus?
He is in the garret.	In coenáculo est.
Will you ask him to come down?	Visne éum rogâre, ut descéndat?
Who has ascended the walls?	Quis muros ascéndit?
The soldiers have ascended (scaled) them with ladders.	Mílites éos scális ascendérunt.
Did you ever go on board ship?	Ascendistíne únquam in navem?
I have never gone on board.	Núnquam ascéndi.
Do you not wish to get upon the horse?	Nónne in équum ascendĕre vis?
It is so.	Itaést.
You must ascend (rise) higher.	Tê ad majôra ascéndĕre opórtet.
He can rise to the highest honors of the state.	In súmmum lócum civitâtis ascéndere pótest.
Let us go down to our boats.	Descendâmus ad nóstras naviculas.
Did your cousin go down into the well?	Núm patruélis túus in púteum descéndit?
He did not do it.	Nôn fáctumést.
What time was your father in the habit of going down to the market?	Quô tempôre ad fórum descendêbat páter túus?
He usually went down there at eleven o'clock.	Descéndere solêbat hórā undécimā.

They dismounted.	Ex équis descendérunt.
The queen dismounted from her charger.	Ab équo regina desíluit.
From heaven descended the injunction, "Know thyself."	Ex coélo descéndit nósce tê ípsum.
To be worth while.	*Esse opĕrae pretĭum.* / *Est pretĭum.*
It is better.	*Mělius* or *sătius est, praestat.*
Is it worth while to do this?	Éstne ópĕrae prétium hóc fácere?
It is not worth while.	Nôn ést ópĕrae prétium.
Is it worth while to write to him?	Estne prétium dáre lítteras ad éum?
It is.	Est.
Is it better?	Éstne mélius? Satiúsne ést? Praestátne?
It is better.	Ést mélius, &c.
It is better to do this than that.	Mĕlius (sátius) ést fácere hóc, quam íllud.
It is better to stay here than to go a walking.	Praêstat hîc manêre, quam ambulâtum íre.

Exercise 149.

Have you shaved to-day? — I have shaved. — Has your brother shaved? — He has not shaved himself, but has got shaved. — Do you shave often? — I shave every morning, and sometimes also in the evening. — When do you shave in the evening? — When I do not dine at home. — How many times a day does your father shave? — He shaves only once a day, but my brother has such a strong beard, that he is obliged to shave twice a day. — Does your uncle shave often? — He shaves only every other day (*tertio quŏque die*) for his beard is not strong. — At what o'clock do you dress in the morning? — I dress as soon as I have breakfasted, and I breakfast every day at eight o'clock, or at a quarter past eight. — Does your neighbor dress before he breakfasts? — He breakfasts before he dresses. — At what o'clock in the evening dost thou undress? — I undress as soon as I return from the theatre. — Dost thou go to the theatre every evening? — I do not go every evening, for it is better to study than to go to the theatre. — At what o'clock dost thou undress when thou dost not go to the theatre? — I then undress as soon as I have supped, and go to bed at ten o'clock. — Have you already dressed the child? — I have not dressed it yet, for it is still asleep. — At what o'clock does it get up? — It gets up as soon as it is waked. — Do you rise as early as I? — I do not know at what o'clock you rise, but I rise as soon as I awake. — Will you tell my servant to wake me to-morrow at four o'clock? — I will tell him. — Why have you risen so early? — My children have made such a noise that they wakened me. — Have you slept well? — I have not slept well, for you made too much noise. — At what o'clock must I wake you? — To-morrow thou mayest wake me at six o'clock. — At what o'clock did the good captain awake? — He awoke at a quarter past five in the morning.

EXERCISE 150.

When did this man go down into the well? — He went down into it this morning. — Has he come up again? — He came up an hour ago. — Where is your brother? — He is in his room. — Will you tell him to come down? — I will tell him so; but he is not dressed yet. — Is your friend still on the mountain? — He has already come down. — Did you go down or up this river? — We went down it. — Has your brother dined already? — He dined as soon as he had alighted from his horse. — Is your uncle already asleep? — I believe that he is asleep, for he went to bed as soon as he had alighted. — Did my cousin speak to you before he started? — He spoke to me before he got into the coach. — Have you seen my brother? — I saw him before I went on board the ship. — How did my child behave? — He did behave very well. — How did my brother behave towards you? He behaved very well towards me, for he behaves well towards everybody. — Is it worth while to write to that man? — It is not worth while to write to him. — Is it worth while to alight in order to buy a cake? — It is not worth while, for it is not long since we ate. — Is it worth while to dismount from my horse in order to give something to that poor man? — Yes, for he seems to want it; but you can give him something without dismounting from your horse. — Is it better to go to the theatre than to study? — It is better to do the latter than the former. — Is it better to go to bed than to go a walking? — It is better to do the latter than the former. — Is it better to get into a coach than to go on board the ship? — It is not worth while to get into a coach or to go on board the ship when one has no wish to travel.

Lesson LXXX. — PENSUM OCTOGESIMUM.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

A. Adjectives are either primitive or derivative; as, *bŏnus*, *mălus*; *puerīlis*, *amabĭlis*. Derivatives are formed from verbs (*verbals*), from nouns (*denominatives*), from other adjectives, and sometimes from adverbs (*adverbials*) and prepositions (*prepositionals*). All these are subdivided into various classes, and characterized by peculiar terminations.

B. Adjectives derived from verbs end in *bundus*, *cundus*, *ĭdus*, *ŭus*, *ĭlis*, *bĭlis*, *ax*, and *ŭlus*.

1. Those in *bundus* are formed chiefly from verbs of the first conjugation, and generally agree in sense with the present participle. Sometimes, however, they convey the accessory notion of fulness or abundance. E. g. *errabundus*, *populabundus*, wandering, pillaging

(from *errare*, *populāri*). So also *hesitabundus*, *lacrimabundus*, *mirabundus*, full of hesitation, of tears, of wonder. A few verbs in *cundus* have a similar sense; as, *rubicundus*, ruddy; *iracundus*, given to anger; *verecundus*, bashful, respectful.

2. Those in *ĭdus* are generally from intransitive verbs, and simply express the quality implied in the verb. E. g. *calĭdus*, warm; *algĭdus*, cold; *rubĭdus*, red, reddish; *rapĭdus*, rapid (from *calēre*, *algēre*, *rubēre*, *rapĕre*). A few in *ŭus* have a similar signification; as, *assidŭus*, *congrŭus*, *nocĭus* (from *assidēre*, *congruĕre*, *nocēre*). But those in *ŭus* from transitive verbs have a passive sense; as, *conspicŭus*, visible; *individŭus*, indivisible.

3. Those in *ĭlis* and *bĭlis* have a passive sense, and denote possibility or capacity. E. g. *facĭlis*, easy (to be done); *fragĭlis*, fragile; *amabĭlis*, amiable; *delēbĭlis*, easy to destroy; *placabilis*, easily appeased. Some of them, however, are active; as, *horribĭlis*, *terribĭlis*, *fertĭlis*, &c.

4. Those in *ax* denote an inclination or propensity, frequently a vicious one. E. g. *edax* and *vorax*, voracious; *furax*, thievish; *audax*, audacious; *rapax*, rapacious (from *edĕre*, *vorāre*, &c.). The few in *ŭlus* are analogous; as, *bibŭlus*, given to drinking; *credŭlus*, credulous; *querŭlus*, querulous.

C. The substantives from which derivative adjectives are formed are either *common nouns* or *proper names* of men and places.

I. Adjectives derived from common nouns end in *ĕus*, *ĭcus*, *īlis*, *ācĕus* or *icĭus*, *ālis*, *ātĭlis*, *ĭus*, *īnus* (*ĭnus*), *ārĭus*, *ōsus* (*nōsus*), *lentus*, *īvus*, *ernus*, *urnus*, *itĭmus*, *ster*, *ātus*, *ītus*, and *ūtus*.

1. The termination *ĕus* designates the material of which anything consists or is made, and sometimes also resemblance. E. g. *aurĕus*, *ferrĕus*, *plumbĕus*, made of gold, iron, lead; *igneus*, *vitrĕus*, igneous, glassy. Some of this class end either in *neus* or *nus*; as, *eburnĕus* or *eburnus*, of ivory; *querneus* or *quernus*, of oak.

2. Those in *ĭcus* and *ĭlis* signify "belonging or relating to," the former in a general, the latter in a moral sense. E. g. *aulĭcus*, *bellĭcus*, *rustĭcus*, relating to the court, to war, to the country; *puerĭlis*, *senĭlis*, *virilis*, belonging (peculiar) to the age of boyhood, old age, manhood. Sometimes both from the same noun; as, *civĭcus* and *civĭlis*, *hostĭcus* or *hostĭlis*.

3. The terminations *acĕus* and *icĭus* sometimes denote the material, and sometimes descent. E. g. *chartacĕus*, *membranacĕus*, *cementicĭus*, made of paper, membrane, cement; *patrĭcius*, *tribunĭcius*, patrician, tribunitial.

4. Those in *ālis*, *āris*, and *ātĭlis* are formed not only from nouns in *a*, but also from those of other terminations. E. g. *ancorālis*, relating to an anchor; *convivālis*, convivial; *regālis*, royal, regal; *virginālis*,

virginal.* The termination *āris* is generally put when the letter *l* precedes; as, *consulāris, puellāris, vulgāris, Apollināris;* — *ātilis* conveys the sense of fitness; as, *aquātilis, volātilis.*

5. The termination *ĭus* belongs principally to substantives in *or;* as, *amatorĭus, censorĭus, imperatorĭus,* pertaining to love (or lovers), to the censor, to a commander. Sometimes also to other substantives; as, *regĭus, patrĭus,* royal, fatherly.

6. Adjectives in *īnus* are chiefly derived from names of animals, especially to denote the flesh of the same. E. g. *anatīnus, anserīnus, asinīnus, canīnus, equīnus, ferīnus, taurīnus,* of a duck, goose, ass, dog, horse, wild beast, bull.† Sometimes also from names of other beings; as, *masculīnus, femininus, divīnus, libertīnus.* Those in *īnus* are derived either from names of plants or minerals, or from words denoting time; as, *cedrīnus, fagīnus, adamantīnus,* of cedar, beech, adamant; *crastīnus, annotīnus, hornotīnus,* of to-morrow, of last year, of this year.

7. Those in *ārĭus* properly denote a trade or profession, sometimes also a more general relation. E. g. *carbonarĭus, coriarĭus, ostiarĭus, statuarĭus,* a collier, tanner, porter, statuary;‡ *aerarĭus, argentarĭus,* relating to copper, to silver (or money).

8. The terminations *ōsus* and *lentus* express fulness or abundance. E. g. *aerumnōsus, artificiōsus, tenebricōsus,* full of misfortune, of skill, of darkness; *corpulentus, fraudulentus, pulverulentus,* &c. Nouns of the fourth declension commonly have *uōsus;* as, *actuōsus,* full of action; *portuōsus, saltuōsus,* abounding in ports, in woods.

9. The terminations *īvus, ernus, urnus, ĭtĭmus,* and *ster* denote quality, manner, descent, time, place, &c. E. g. *furtīvus, aestīvus, nativus,* secret, of the summer, native; *externus, maternus, paternus,* external, maternal, paternal; *diurnus, nocturnus, hibernus, vernus,* of the day, night, winter, spring; — *legĭtĭmus, marĭtĭmus,* legitimate, maritime; — *campester,* of the plain; *pedester,* pedestrian.

10. An extensive class of adjectives, ending in *ātus* (sometimes *ĭtus* or *ūtus*), have the form and sense of the perfect participle, but are derived from nouns. E g. *barbātus, dentātus, galeātus, falcātus,* furnished with a beard, with teeth, with a helmet, with scythes; *aurītus,* provided with ears; *pellītus,* covered with skins; *cornūtus,* horned; *nasūtus,* having a large (or acute) nose.

II. The adjectives derived from proper names may be divided into those formed from, — *a*) names of individuals; *b*) names of cities; *c*) names of nations; *d*) names of countries.

1. Adjectives derived from names of men end in *iānus, ānus, ĕus,* and *īnus;* as, *Caesariānus, Catoniānus, Ciceroniānus; Cinnānus, Sullānus; Caesarĕus, Herculĕus; Jugurthīnus, Plautīnus,* &c. The last

* So also from proper names; as, *Augustālis, Flaviālis, Trajanālis,* &c.

† When these adjectives denote the flesh of animals, the feminine is used with *caro* understood; as, *anserīna, anatīna, ferīna, taurīna,* &c.

‡ In this sense they stand substantively; but as adjectives proper they signify "relating to charcoal, leather, a door or doors, statuary."

of these terminations belongs more especially to derivative family names; as, *Paulīnus*, *Rufīnus*, *Agrippīna*, *Plancīna*, &c.

To these add the adjectives in *ēus*, *īus*, *ĭcus*, and *ĭăcus*, derived from Greek names of men. E. g. *Achillēus*, *Sophoclēus*; *Antiochĭus*, *Aristotelius*; *Homerĭcus*, *Isocratĭcus*; *Archĭăcus*. Sometimes there are two of them (one in *ēus*, the other in *ĭcus*) from the same noun; as, *Philippēus* and *Philippĭcus*, *Pythagorēus* and *Pythagorĭcus*.

2. Adjectives derived from names of cities end in *ensis*, *īnus*, *as*, and *ānus*. E. g. *Cannae — Canensis*, *Antiochia — Antiochensis*; *Florentia — Florentīnus*, *Latium — Latīnus*; *Arpīnum — Arpīnas*, *Privernum — Privernas*; *Roma — Romānus*, *Sparta — Spartānus*. To these add those in *ĭus* and *aeus* derived from Greek names of cities; as, *Corinthus — Corinthĭus*, *Ephesus — Ephesĭus*; *Larissa — Larissaeus*, *Smyrna — Smyrnaeus*.

3. Primitive names of nations give rise to adjectives in *ĭcus* and *ĭus*. E. g. *Afer — Afrĭcus*, *Gallus — Gallĭcus*, *Scytha — Scythĭcus*; *Syrus — Syrĭus*, *Thrax — Thracĭus*, &c. Some of them are patrial substantives and adjectives at the same time; as, *Graecus*, *Etruscus*, *Sardus*.

4. The names of countries are generally themselves derivatives; as, *Gallia*, *Italia*, *Thracia* (from *Gallus*, *Italus*, *Thrax*). Some of these, however, give rise to adjectives in *ensis* and *ānus*; as, *Graeciensis*, *Hispaniensis*; *Africānus*, *Germanicānus*, &c. To these add two in *ĭăcus*: *Aegyptiăcus*, *Syriăcus*.

D. Derivatives from other adjectives end in *ŭlus*, *ŏlus*, *cŭlus*, *ellus*, and *ānĕus*.

1. All of these except those in *anĕus* are diminutives. E. g. *parvŭlus*, *primŭlus*; *paupercŭlus*, *levicŭlus*; *novellus*, *pulchellus*; some have even a double diminutive; as, *paucus — paulus* and *paulŭlus* (*pauxillus* and *pauxillŭlus*), *bonus — bellus*, *bellŭlus*.

2. Those in *ānĕus* are formed from adjectives in *us*, and denote similarity of quality. E. g. *rejectanĕus*, to be rejected; *collectaneus*, collected; *subitaneus*, sudden. And after the analogy of these, *consentaneus*, *praecidaneus*, *succidaneus*.

To hire, rent.	*Condūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum.* *Mercēde conducĕre* (ALIQUID AB ALIQUO).
To hire a house, a room.	Domicĭlium, conclāve (mercēde) condūcĕre.
To live in a hired house.	In condŭcto habitāre.
The rent.	Pretium conducti, pretium habitatiōnis.
To let, rent.	Locāre, elocāre (ALICUI ALIQUID).
To part with any one or any thing.	Demittĕre, missum facĕre, vendĕre aliquem *or* aliquid.
To get rid of any one.	Absolvĕre, dimittĕre aliquem.

To get rid of anything.	Extrūdĕre (trūsi, trūsum) aliquid; vendĕre.
To get rid of debts.	Debĭta dissolvĕre.
Have you already hired a room?	Conduxistîne jám conclâve?
Yes, I have hired one.	Véro, condúxi ûnum.
Does he live in a hired house?	Núm in condúcto hábitat?
He does not.	Nôn in condúcto hábitat.
Have they paid their rent?	Solverúntne prétium habitatiônis?
They have not yet paid it.	Nôndum solvérunt.
Have you a room to let?	Habêsne cubículum ad locándum?
I have none.	Nôn hábeo.
Do you intend to part with your horses?	Cogitâsne submovêre (véndere) équos?
I have already parted with them.	Égo éos jám prídem submóvi (véndidi).
He has parted with his carriage.	Piléntum súum dimisit (véndidit).
We have parted with our servant.	Sérvum nóstrum míssum fécimus.
Did you get rid of your damaged sugar?	Extrusistîne sáccharum túum depérditum?
I did get rid of it.	Extrúsi.
Did he get rid of his old horse?	Vendidítne équum súum vétulum?
He did not get rid of it.	Nôn véndidit.
To hope, expect.	*Sperāre, spem habēre, in spe esse.*
I hope.	Spéro, spês mê ténet.
As I hope.	Ut spéro, spéro.
To wait, tarry.	Exspectāre; spem pōnĕre (in aliquo *or* in aliquā re).
Do you expect (hope) to find him there?	Sperâsne, tê éum ĭbi invenīre (inventûrum ésse)?
I do expect it.	Spéro. Spês mê ténet.
I hope that my father will come.	Spéro, pátrem ésse ventûrum. Spéro, fóre, ut páter veniat.
Our brother will come, I hope.	Frâter, ut spéro, véniet. Frâter, spéro, véniet.
I hope that our friendship will last for ever.	Spéro, aetérnam inter nôs amicítiam fóre.
I hope that I may meet you.	Spéro, fóre, ut égo tíbi óbviam véniam. Spéro, mê tíbi óbviam venīre (ventûrum ésse).
Do you put your trust in God?	Ponísne spém in Déo?
I do.	Póno.
I hope no longer.	Spéro nôn ámplius.
You have no reason to hope.	Nôn ést, quód spéres.
To change.	*Muto, āre, āvi, ātum.*
To exchange, change.	*Commutāre, permutāre.*

To change, exchange one thing for another.	Mutāre *or* permutāre aliquid (cum) aliquā re. Commutāre aliquid cum aliquā re.
To exchange (mutually).	Res inter se mutāre *or* permutāre.
To change masters.	Dominos permutāre.
To exchange names.	Nomĭna inter se permutāre.
To change one's clothes, one's hat, &c.	Mutāre vestem, pileum, &c.
To change one's horse.	Mutāre equum. Altĕri equo injici.
To change (draught-) horses.	Jumenta mutāre.
To change money.	Pecuniam (nummum) permutāre.
To exchange letters, to correspond with any one.	*Littĕras dăre et accipĕre.* *Litterārum commercio ūti.* *Per litteras cum aliquo colloqui* or *agĕre.*
To put on one's hat.	Pileum impōnĕre capĭti. Caput tegĕre (texi, tectum) pileo.
To put on linen.	Induĕre sibi lintea (se linteis).
To put on a cravat.	Induĕre collum focāli. Circumligāre collum focāli.
The linen.	Lintea, *n. pl.*
The cravat, neckcloth.	Focāle, is, *n.*; pannus colāris.

Will you change your clothes?	Vísne mutâre véstem?
I do not wish to change them.	Nólo mutâre.
Has he changed his linen, hat, cravat?	Mutavítne súa líntea, píleum, focâle?
He has changed it.	Mutávit.
Must I change my shirt?	Oportétne me mutâre indúsium?
It is proper that you should do so.	Opórtet tû hóc fácias.
Have they exchanged anything?	Commutaverúntne áliquid?
They have exchanged wine for oil, and oil for wine.	Commutavérunt vínum pro óleo et óleum pro víno.
They have exchanged a correct state of the republic for a false one.	Commutavérunt státum reipúblicae ex véro in fálsum.
They are bartering away honor and religion for money.	Fídem et religiônem pecúniâ commútant.
Do you wish to change hats with me?	Vísne píleos mêcum permutâre?
I am not unwilling.	Nôn nólo.
They have exchanged gloves.	Digitábula inter sê permutavérunt.
Can you change me an aureus?	Potésne míhi permutâre aúreum?
I cannot.	Nôn pósSum.
I have exchanged a florin for sixty kreutzers.	Égo florênum sexaginta kreútzeris permutávi.
The color has changed from black to white.	E nígro color éjus mutâtus est in álbum.

Everything undergoes change.	Ómnia mutántur.
Has he changed his horse?	Mutavitne équum? / Injectúsne est álteri équo?
He has not changed it.	Nôn mutâvit.
Do you exchange letters (correspond) with your friend?	Agísne (colloquerísne) per lítteras cum amíco túo?
I do correspond with him.	Véro, ágo (cólloquor).
I correspond with all my friends.	Ego litterârum commercio cum amícis meís ómnibus ûtor.
To mix, mingle.	*Misceo, ēre, miscŭi, mistum* or *mixtum.* / *Insĕro, ĕre, ŭi, rtum.*
To mix *or* mingle among men.	Se immiscēre *or* inserĕre homínibus (*dat.*).
To mix, meddle with anything.	Se admiscēre *or* interponĕre alicui rei.
Not to meddle with, to refrain from anything.	Abesse *or* se abstinēre ab aliquâ re.
Does he meddle with your affairs?	Admiscétne sê negótiis túis?
He never meddles with other people's affairs.	Núnquam ílle sê negótiis aliénis admiscet (interpônit).
Have you mixed much among men?	Immiscuistîne tê múltum homínibus?
I have mixed much and often among them.	Íta ést, mê múltum ac saépe immíscui.
He mixes with the soldiers.	Miscet sê milítibus.
To recognize; to acknowledge.	*Recognosco, ĕre, nōvi, nĭtum.* / *Agnoscĕre* (ALIQUEM, REM).
Do you recognize this man?	Recognoscísne húnc hóminem?
It is so long since I saw him, that I do not recollect him.	Tám dîu est, ex quô éum nôn vídi, ut (éum) nôn recognóscam.
We ought to recognize God from his works.	Nôs Déum ex opéribus súis agnóscere opórtet.
I acknowledge my error.	Errórem méum agnósco.

Exercise 151.

Have you already hired a room? — I have already hired one. — Where have you hired it? — I have hired it in William Street, number one hundred and fifty-one. — At whose house have you hired it? — At the house of the man whose son has sold you a horse. — For whom has your father hired a room? — He has hired one for his son who has just arrived from Germany. — Did you at last get rid of that man? — I did get rid of him. — Why has your father parted with his horses? — Because he did not want them any more. — Have you discharged your servant? — I have discharged him, because he served me no more well. — Why have you parted with your carriage? — Because I do not travel any more. — Has your merchant succeeded

at last in getting rid of his damaged sugar? — He has succeeded in getting rid of it. — Has he sold it on credit? — He was able to sell it for cash, so that he did not sell it on credit. — Do you hope to arrive early in Paris? — I hope to arrive there at a quarter past eight, for my father is waiting for me this evening. — For what have you exchanged your carriage which you no longer made use of? — I have exchanged it for a fine Arabian horse. — Do you wish to exchange your book for mine? — I cannot, for I want it to study German with. Why do you take your hat off? — I take it off, because I see my old writing-master coming. — Do you put on another hat to go to the market? — I do not put on another to go to the market, but to go to the great concert.

EXERCISE 152.

Why does your father put on other clothes? — He is going to the king, so that he must put on others. — Have you put on another hat to go to the English captain? — I have put on another, but I have not put on another coat or other boots. — How many times a day dost thou put on other clothes? — I put on others to dine and to go to the theatre. — Do you often put on a clean shirt (change your shirt)? — I put on a clean one every morning. — When does your father put on a clean shirt? — He puts it on when he goes to the ball. — Does he put on a clean cravat (change his cravat) as often as you? — He puts one on oftener than I, for he does so six times a day. — Did you often take fresh horses when you went to Vienna? — I took fresh ones every three hours. — Will you change me this gold coin? — I am going to change it for you; what money (*Quid nummôrum*) do you wish for it? — I wish to have crowns, florins, and kreutzers. — Do you correspond with my friend? — I do correspond with him. — How long have you been corresponding with my brother? — I have been corresponding with him these six years almost. — Why do you mix among those people? — I mix among them in order to know what they say of me. — Have you recognized your father? — I had not seen him for such a long time, that I did not recognize him. — Do you still speak Latin? — It is so long since I spoke it, that I have nearly (*fere*) forgotten it all (*omnino*).

Lesson LXXXI. — PENSUM UNUM ET OCTOGESIMUM.

OF THE FUTURE TENSE.

A. The future tense represents an action or event that will take place hereafter. This action may be considered either as incomplete or going on at some time

to come (First or Simple Future), or as completed (Future Perfect). E. g.

Scrĭbam, *I shall write (shall be engaged in writing).*
Amābĭtur, *He will be loved (will be the object of love).*
Scripsĕro, *I shall have written.*
Amātus ĕrit, *He will have been loved.*

B. FORMATION OF THE FIRST FUTURE.

1. The first future active is formed from the present indicative by changing, 1. *o*, 2. *eo*, 3. *o* (*ĭo*), 4. *ĭo*, into, 1. *ābo*, 2. *ēbo*, 3. *am* (*ĭam*), 4. *ĭam*. As,

1. ămo — ămābo, *I shall or will love.*
2. mŏnĕo — mŏnēbo, *I shall or will remind.*
3. lĕgo — lĕgam, *I shall or will read.*
(3.) căpĭo — căpĭam, *I shall or will take.*
4. audĭo — audĭam, *I shall or will hear.*

2. The first future passive is formed from the active, by changing the final *m* into *r*. As,

1. amābo — amābor, *I shall or will be loved.*
2. mŏnēbo — monēbor, *I shall or will be reminded.*
3. lĕgam — lĕgar, *I shall or will be read.*
(3.) căpĭam — căpĭar, *I shall or will be taken.*
4. audĭam — audĭar, *I shall or will be heard.*

3. The future of deponent verbs follows the analogy of the passive. As,

1. hortor — hortābor, *I shall or will exhort.*
2. vĕrĕor — vĕrēbor, *I shall or will fear.*
3. lŏquor — lŏquar, *I shall or will speak.*
4. blandĭor — blandĭar, *I shall or will flatter.*

REMARK. — The subjunctive mood wants both the future tenses. On the manner of indicating future contingent action, see *F*.

INFLECTION OF THE FIRST FUTURE.

C. The following paradigms exhibit the inflection of the first future, active and passive.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
FIRST CONJUGATION.			
Amābo, *I shall or will love.*		Amābor, *I shall or will be loved.*	
SING.	ămābŏ	SING.	ămābŏr
	ămābĭs		ămābĕrĭs *or* -rĕ
	ămābĭt,		ămābĭtŭr,

	Active.	Passive.
Plur.	ămābīmŭs	ămābīmŭr
	ămābĭtĭs	ămābīmĭnĭ
	ămābunt.	ămābuntur.

Second Conjugation.

Mŏnēbo, *I shall or will remind.*		Mŏnēbŏr, *I shall or will be reminded.*
Sing.	mŏnēbŏ	mŏnēbŏr
	mŏnēbĭs	mŏnēbĕrĭs *or* -rĕ
	mŏnēbĭt,	mŏnēbĭtŭr,
Plur.	mŏnēbīmŭs	mŏnēbīmŭr
	mŏnēbĭtĭs	mŏnēbīmĭnĭ
	mŏnēbunt.	mŏnēbuntŭr.

Third Conjugation.

Lĕgăm, *I shall or will read.*		Lĕgăr, *I shall or will be read.*
Sing.	lĕgăm	lĕgăr
	lĕgēs	lĕgērĭs *or* -rĕ
	lĕgĕt,	lĕgētŭr,
Plur.	lĕgēmŭs	lĕgēmŭr
	lĕgētĭs	lĕgēmĭnĭ
	lĕgent.	lĕgentŭr.

Fourth Conjugation.

Audīăm, *I shall or will hear.*		Audīăr, *I shall or will be heard.*
Sing.	audīăm	audīăr
	audīēs	audīērĭs *or* -rĕ
	audīĕt,	audīētŭr,
Plur.	audīēmŭs	audīēmŭr
	audīētĭs	audīēmĭnĭ
	audient.	audientur.

So conjugate *apportābo*, I shall bring; *curābo*, I shall order; *dābo*, I shall give; *laudābo*, I shall praise; *lavābo*, I shall wash; *regnābo*, I shall rule; *secābo*, I shall cut; *stābo*, I shall stand; *vocābo*, I shall call; — *audēbo*, I shall dare; *docēbo*, I shall teach; *gaudēbo*, I shall rejoice; *habēbo*, I shall have; *jubēbo*, I shall command; *studēbo*, I shall study; *tenēbo*, I shall hold; — *ăgam*, I shall act (do); *facĭam*, I shall make (do); *mittam*, I shall send; *pōnam*, I shall place (put); *scrībam*, I shall write; *sumam*, I shall take; — *aperĭam*, I shall open; *finĭam*, I shall finish; *punĭam*, I shall punish; *reperĭam*, I shall find; *sentĭam*, I shall feel; *veniam*, I shall come; *inveniam*, I shall find, &c.

To the above add the impersonal futures: *constābit*, *fulgurābit*, *gelābit*, *grandinābit*, *juvābit*, *praestabit*, *restābit*; — *apparēbit*, *attinēbit*, *debēbit*, *dolēbit*, *nocēbit*, *pertinēbit*, *placēbit*, *solēbit*, — *accĭdet*, *incipiet*, *lucescet*, *ninget*, *pluet*, *referet*; — *convenĭet*, *expedĭet*, &c. (Cf. Lesson LV.)

FUTURE OF DEPONENT VERBS.

D. The future of deponent verbs is inflected like that of the passive voice. Thus: —

Hortābor, *I shall or will exhort.*		Lŏquar, *I shall or will speak.*	
Sing.	hortābŏr	Sing.	lŏquăr
	hortābĕrĭs *or* -rĕ		lŏquērĭs *or* -rĕ
	hortābĭtŭr,		lŏquētŭr,
Plur.	hortābĭmŭr	Plur.	lŏquēmŭr
	hortābĭmĭnī		lŏquēmĭnī
	hortābuntŭr.		lŏquentŭr.
Verēbor, *I shall or will fear.*		Blandĭar, *I shall or will flatter.*	
Sing.	verēbŏr	Sing.	blandĭăr
	verēbĕrĭs *or* -re		blandĭērĭs *or* -rĕ
	verēbĭtŭr,		blandĭētŭr,
Plur.	verēbĭmŭr	Plur.	blandĭēmŭr
	verēbĭmĭnī		blandĭēmĭnī
	verēbuntŭr.		blandĭentŭr.

So *arbitrābor*, I shall think; *comitābor*, I shall escort; *morābor*, I shall delay; — *merēbor*, I shall earn; *miserēbor*, I shall pity; *tuēbor*, I shall defend; — *lābar*, I shall glide (fall); *obliviscar*, I shall forget; *proficiscar*, I shall depart; *sequar*, I shall follow; — *experĭar*, I shall experience; *largĭar*, I shall lavish, &c.

FUTURE OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

E. The future of *sum* is irregular; *volo*, *fero*, *edo*, and *fio* follow the analogy of the third conjugation, *ĕo* and *quĕo* that of the fourth. E. g.

1. Ĕro, *I shall or will be.*

Sing. ĕro, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt; Plur. ĕrĭmus, ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrunt.

So *adĕro*, I shall be present; *potĕro*, (from *possum*), I shall be able, and all the remaining compounds of *sum*.

2. Vŏlam, *I shall wish or be willing.*

Sing. vŏlăm, vŏlēs, vŏlĕt; Plur. vŏlēmŭs, vŏlētĭs, vŏlent.

So *mālăm*, I shall prefer, and *nōlām*, I shall be unwilling.

3. Fĕram, *I shall bear (carry)*, ĕdam, *I shall eat*, and fĭam, *I shall become*, are regularly inflected like *lĕgam*. So also their compounds; as, *affĕram*, *comĕdam*, *calefĭam*, &c.

4. Ibo, *I shall or will go.*

Sing. ibo, ibis, ibit; Plur. ibĭmus, ibĭtĭs, ibunt.

So all its compounds; as, *adĭbo*, *inĭbo*, *praeteribo*, *subĭbo*, *transĭbo*, &c. And in the passive impersonally *ibĭtur*, *inĭbĭtur*, &c.

5. The future of *queo* and *nequeo* is defective, *quibo*, *quibunt*, and *nequibunt* being the only persons in use.

Shall you love?	Amabísne? Num amâbis?
I shall not love.	Nôn amábo.
Will he have money?	Habebítne pecúniam?
He will not have any.	Nôn habêbit.
Shall you command him to leave?	Jubebísne éum abíre?
I shall command him.	Jubébo.
Shall you send me the book?	Mittêsne míhi líbrum?
I shall send it.	Míttam.
Shall ye write letters?	Scribetísne epístolas?
We shall write some.	Véro, scribêmus nonnúllas.
Will they come *or* go away?	Útrumílli vénient an abíbunt?
They will come.	Vénient.
Will he be contented?	Erítne conténtus?
He will.	Érit.
They will not be contented.	Nôn érunt conténti.
Will it rain *or* snow to-day?	Pluétne hódie an ninget?
Shall you exhort him to speak?	Hortaberísne éum, ut vérba fáciat?
I shall exhort him.	Hortâbor.
Will he defend us?	Núm nôs tuébitur?
He will not defend us.	Nôs nôn tuébitur.
Will they forget their duty?	Obliviscentúrne offícia súa?
He will not forget them.	Nôn obliviscéntur.
Shall ye squander any money?	Númquid pecúniae largiémini?
We shall not squander any at all.	Núllam omníno largiêmur.
Will we be loved?	Amabimúrne? Nôsne amábimur?
You will not be loved.	Nôn amabímini.
Will our books be read?	Legentúrne líbri nóstri?
They will certainly be read.	Legéntur síne úllā dubitatiône.

FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.

F. Latin verbs have no special form for the future subjunctive. When, in dependent clauses, it becomes necessary to express future contingent action, the Romans proceed as follows: —

I. If the main clause contains a verb of the future tense, the present or imperfect subjunctive supplies the place of the first future subjunctive in the dependent clause. E. g.

Affírmo tíbi, si hóc benefíciam míhi *tríbuas*, *mê* magnópere *gavisûrum*.	If you will do me this favor, I assure you that I shall be greatly delighted.
Affirmâbam tíbi, si íllud benefícium míhi *tribúeres*, magnópere me gavisûrum.	I assured you that I should be greatly delighted, if you would do me that favor.
Affírmo tíbi, si hóc benefícium míhi *tribuâtur*, me magnópere gavisûrum.	I assure you, that, if this favor is done me, I shall be greatly delighted.

Éum, ni *páreat* pátri, *habitûrum* infortúnium *ésse* díxit.	He said that he (i. e. the son) would be unfortunate, unless he obeyed his father.
Ex his quídam dixísse dícitur, *fóre, ut* brévi a Gállis Róma *caperêtur.*	One of these is reported to have said, that Rome would in a short time be taken by the Gauls.
Tû si quíd fórte ad mê scripsĕris, *perfíciam, ne* tê frústra scripsísse *arbitrêre.*	If you perchance shall write me, I will see that you shall not think that you have written to no purpose.

II. When no verb of the future tense precedes, and the construction still requires a future subjunctive, the participle in *rus*, with *sim* or *essem*, is employed. E. g.

Nôn dúbito, *quîn reditûrus sit.*	I do not doubt but that he will return.
Nôn dubitâbam, *quîn reditûrus ésset.*	I did not doubt but that he would return.
His de rêbus, quid *actûrus sîs*, rescríbas míhi vélim.	I wish you to write to me, what you intend to do about these matters.
Nôn débes dubitâre, *quîn sîs futûrus*, qui ésse débes.	You should not doubt but that you will be what you ought to be.
Nôn dúbito, quîn *futûrum sit, ut laudêtur.*	I do not doubt but he will be praised.
Múlti non dubitábant, *quin futûrum ésset, ut* Caesar a Pompéjo *vincerêtur.*	Many were convinced (did not doubt) that Cæsar would be conquered by Pompey.
Nescio, num *futûrum sit*, ut crâs hôc ípso témpore jam redíerit.	I do not know whether he will have returned to-morrow at this time.

The dust; the mud; the smoke.	*Pulvis*, ĕris, m.; *lŭtum*, *i*, n.; *fūmus*, *i*, m.
Dusty.	Pulverulentus, a, um.
Muddy.	Lutōsus, lutulentus, a, um.
Smoky.	Fumōsus, a, um.
Is it dusty?	Ortúsne est púlvis?
It is dusty.	Órtus est.
It is very dusty.	Vis púlvĕris mágna est.
Is it muddy out of doors?	Écquid ést fóris lútum? / Súntne viae lutósae?
It is very muddy.	Súnt véro ádmodum lutósae. / Vis lúti permágna est.
Does it smoke?	Ortúsne ést fúmus? / Fumátne dómus?
It is quite smoky (it smokes much).	Órta ést vis fúmi mágna.
It is too smoky (it smokes too much).	Ést nímis fúmi.

To go in or into (any place).	*Intre, introīre, ingrĕdi* (*ingressus sum*) (IN, AD LOCUM, LOCUM).
To enter.	Intrāre, introīre (LOCUM).
To sit.	Sĕdeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum (IN RE, AD REM).
To sit down, to take a seat.	Assīdo, ĕre, sēdi, sessum. Consīdo, ĕre, sēdi, sessum. Resīdĕre, subsīdĕre. (IN SELLA, HUMI, &c.)
To sit down by the side of any one.	Assidĕre aliquem.
To be seated by the side of any one.	Assidēre alicui.
To sit still, keep one's seat.	Residēre, quiētum sedēre, non surgĕre (surrexi, surrectum).
To be over, left.	Restāre, relinqui, reliquum esse.
To have left.	Reliquum habēre.
It remains (*sc.* that I should do this).	Réstat, réliquum est, *ut* hoc fáciam.
To fill.	*Impleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.* *Complēre, explēre, replēre.* (ALIQUID ALIQUA RE.)

Shall you go in?	Ibísne íntro?
I shall not go in.	Nôn íbo.
I shall sit down upon this chair.	Égo hâc in séllā assídam.
Will you sit down by my side?	Vísne mê assídĕre?
Let me sit down upon the ground.	Considâmus húmo.
Will you please to sit down in the chair?	Placétne tíbi assídĕre in sellā?
No, I have no time to sit down.	Nôn, ótio ád assidendum cáreo.
Where is your scholar sitting?	Úbi sédet discípulus túus?
He is sitting over his books in school.	Assídet libris in schólā.
We sat down in the library.	In bibliothécā consédīmus.
Will you sit down by the fire?	Vísne assídere apud carbónes?
No, I am not cold.	Nólo; nam nôn álgeo.
Will your boy come into the house?	Veniétne púer túus íntro?
He will (shall) come in immediately.	Sáne, véniet íntro e vestígio.
Shall you go into the city with me?	Inibísne mêcum in úrbem?
I shall not go.	Nón iníbo.
How much money have you left?	Quanta tíbi pecunia réliqua est?
I have three florins left.	Reliqui sunt míhi três floréni.
I have but one florin left.	Únum tántum florênum réliquum hábeo.

If I pay him, I have but little left.	Si ílli débitum sólvam, réliquum nón habébo nísi párum.

G. Obs. The conjunction *si*, "if," and *nisi*, "if not," or "unless," is followed either by the indicative or subjunctive, according to the sense to be conveyed. (Cf. Lessons LXXXIV. and LXXXVI.)

If he comes, I shall speak to him.	Si véniet (vénit *or* véniat), cum éo cólloquar.
If the weather is fine to-morrow, I shall take a walk.	Si tempéstas crástina est (= érit) bóna, íbo ambulâtum.
I shall pay you, if I receive my money.	Sólvam tíbi débita, si pecúnias méas accípiam.
If he addresses (speaks to) me, I shall answer him.	Si mê alloquêtur, respondébo.
If you will promise me to keep it secret, I shall tell it to you.	Si míhi pollicébĕris rém tacêre, técum communicábo.
I have spent all my money, so that I have none left.	Pecúniam méam ómnem expéndi, ut núlla relinquâtur.
Do you fill your goblet with wine?	Implêsne póculum túum víno?
I do fill it with pure wine.	Ímpleo íd méro.
Did he fill his purse with money?	Explevítne marsúpium súum pecúniā?
He was not able to fill it.	Explêre nôn pótuit.
Shall you fill the bottle with wine?	Ecquid lagênam implêbis víno?
No, I shall fill it with pure water.	Ímmo pótius éam áquā púrā implébo.

Exercise 153.

Will your father go out to-day? — He will go out if it is fine weather. — Will your sister go out? — She will go out, if it is not windy. — Will you love my brother? — I shall love him with all my heart, if he is as good as you. — Will your parents go into the country to-morrow? — They will not go, for it is too dusty. — Shall we take a walk to-day? — We will not take a walk, for it is too muddy out of doors. — Do you see the castle of my relation behind yonder mountain? — I do see it. — Shall we go in? — We will go in, if you like. — Will you go into that room? — I shall not go into it, for it is smoky. — I wish you a good morning, madam. — Will you not come in? — Will you not sit down? — I will sit down upon that large chair. — Will you tell me what has become of your brother? — I will tell you. — Here is the chair upon which he sat often. — When did he die? — He died two years ago. — I am very much (*vehementer*) afflicted at it. — Hast thou spent all thy money? — I have not spent all. — How much hast thou left of it? — I have not much left of it; I have but one florin left. — How much money have thy sisters left? — They have but three crowns left. — Have you money enough

left to pay your tailor? — I have enough of it left to pay him; but if I pay him, I shall have but little left. — How much money will your brothers have left? — They will have a hundred crowns left. — Will you speak to my uncle if you see him? If I see him, I shall speak to him. — Will you take a walk to-morrow? — If it is fine weather, I shall take a walk; but if it is bad weather, I shall stay at home. — Will you pay your shoemaker? — I shall pay him, if I receive my money to-morrow. — Why do you wish to go? — If your father comes, I shall not go; but if he does not come, I must go. — Why do you not sit down? — If you will stay with me, I will sit down; but if you go, I shall go along with you. — Will you love my children? — If they are good and assiduous, I shall love them; but if they are idle and naughty, I shall despise and punish them. — Am I right in speaking thus? — You are not wrong.

Lesson LXXXII. — PENSUM ALTERUM ET OCTOGESIMUM.

OF THE FUTURE PERFECT.

A. I. The future perfect of the active voice is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *i* into *ĕro*. E. g.

1. amāvi — amāvĕro, *I shall have loved.*
2. monŭi — monuĕro, *I shall have reminded.*
3. lēgi — lēgĕro, *I shall have read.*
4. audīvi — audivĕro, *I shall have heard.*

II. The future perfect passive is compounded of the perfect participle and *ĕro*, "I shall be." E. g.

1. amātus ĕro *or* fuĕro, *I shall have been loved.*
2. monĭtus ĕro *or* fuĕro, *I shall have been reminded.*
3. lectus ĕro *or* fuĕro, *I shall have been read.*
4. auditus ĕro *or* fuĕro, *I shall have been heard.*

INFLECTION OF THE FUTURE PERFECT.

B. The inflection of the future perfect, active and passive, is exhibited by the following paradigms: —

	Active.	Passive.
	First Conjugation.	
	Amāvĕro, *I shall have loved.*	Amātus ĕro, *I shall have been loved.*
Sing.	amāvĕrŏ	Sing. amātus ĕro *or* fuĕro
	amāvĕrĭs	amātus ĕris *or* fuĕrĭs
	amāvĕrĭt,	amātus ĕrit *or* fuĕrit,

	Active.	Passive.
Plur.	amāvĕrĭmŭs	Plur. ămāti erĭmus *or* fuerĭmus
	amāvĕrĭtĭs *	amāti erĭtis *or* fuerĭtis
	amāvĕrint.	amāti ĕrunt *or* fuĕrint.

Second Conjugation.

Monuĕro, *I shall have reminded.* Monĭtus ĕro, *I shall have been reminded.*

Sing.	monŭĕrŏ	Sing.	monĭtus ĕro *or* fuĕro
	monŭĕrĭs		monĭtus ĕris *or* fuerĭs
	monŭĕrĭt,		monĭtus ĕrit *or* fuĕrit,
Plur.	monŭĕrĭmŭs	Plur.	monĭti erĭmus *or* fuerĭmus
	monŭĕrĭtĭs		monĭti erĭtis *or* fuerĭtis
	monŭĕrint.		monĭti ĕrunt *or* fuĕrint.

Third Conjugation.

Lēgĕro, *I shall have read.* Lectus ĕro, *I shall have been read.*

Sing.	lēgĕrŏ	Sing.	lectus ĕro *or* fuĕro
	lēgĕrĭs		lectus ĕrit *or* fuerĭs
	lēgĕrĭt,		lectus ĕrit *or* fuĕrit,
Plur.	lēgĕrĭmŭs	Plur.	lecti erĭmus *or* fuerĭmus
	lēgĕrĭtĭs		lecti erĭtis *or* fuerĭtis
	lēgĕrint.		lecti ĕrunt *or* fuĕrint.

Fourth Conjugation.

Audīvĕro, *I shall have heard.* Audītus ĕro, *I shall have been heard.*

Sing.	audīvĕrŏ	Sing.	audītus ĕro *or* fuĕro
	audīvĕrĭs		audītus ĕris *or* fuerĭs
	audīvĕrĭt,		audītus ĕrit *or* fuĕrit,
Plur.	audīvĕrĭmŭs	Plur.	audīti erĭmus *or* fuerĭmus
	audīvĕrĭtĭs		audīti erĭtis *or* fuerĭtis
	audīvĕrint.		audīti ĕrunt *or* fuĕrint.

So conjugate *apportāvĕro*, I shall have brought; *curāvĕro*, I shall have ordered; *laudāvĕro*, I shall have praised; *vocāvĕro*, I shall have called; *dĕdĕro*, I shall have given; *secuĕro*, I shall have cut; *stĕtĕro*, I shall have stood; — *docuĕro*, I shall have taught; *habuĕro*, I shall have had; *jussĕro*, I shall have commanded; *tenuĕro*, I shall have held; *ēgĕro*, I shall have acted; *fēcĕro*, I shall have done (made); *mīsĕro*, I shall have sent; *posuĕro*, I shall have put; *scripsĕro*, I shall have written; *sumpsĕro*, I shall have taken; — *finīvĕro*, I shall have finished; *punīvĕro*, I shall have punished; *sitīvĕro*, I shall have thirsted; *aperuĕro*, I shall have opened; *reperĕro*, I shall have found; *vēnĕro*, I shall have come, &c.

* The *i* of the *imus* and *itis* of this tense (as of the perfect subjunctive) is either long or short, perhaps more frequently long. The *is* of the second person singular is sometimes long.

To these add the irregular verbs *fŭĕro*, I shall have been; *potuĕro*, I shall have been able; *voluĕro* (*noluĕro*, *maluĕro*), I shall have been willing (unwilling, more willing); *tulĕro*, I shall have carried; *ivĕro* (*abivĕro*, *prodivĕro*, &c.), I shall have gone (gone away, gone out).

REMARK. — The future perfect active is liable to syncopation, like the perfect (cf. page 239). E. g. *amāro*, *delĕro*, *consuĕro*, instead of *amāvĕro*, *delēvĕro*, *consuēvĕro*. That of the fourth conjugation is frequently derived from the secondary perfect in *ii*; as, *audiĕro*, *finiĕro*, *puniĕro*, *prodiĕro*, &c.

Will you have loved?	Amaverísne?
I shall have loved.	Véro, amávero.
If you and I shall have loved.	Si égo et tû amaverímus.
Will you have reminded?	Núm vôs monueritis?
We will not have reminded.	Nôs nôn monuerímus.
Will they have read the book?	Legerintne librum?
He will have read it.	Légerint.
Shall we have heard?	Audiverimúsne?
You will not have heard.	Nôn audiveritis.
Shall I have been loved?	Egon' éro amâtus?
You will not have been loved.	Nôn éris amâtus.
Shall we have been punished?	Erimúsne puníti?
You will not have been punished.	Puníti nôn éritis.
Will the letters have been written?	Scriptaêne érunt epístolae?
They will not have been written.	Nôn érunt scríptae.

FUTURE PERFECT OF DEPONENT VERBS.

C. The future perfect of deponent verbs is the same as that of the passive voice. E. g.

Hortātus ĕro, *I shall have exhorted.*		Blandītus ĕro, *I shall have flattered.*	
SING.	hortātus ĕro *or* fuĕro	SING.	blandītus ĕro *or* fuĕro
	hortātus ĕris *or* fuerís		blandītus ĕris *or* fuĕrís
	hortātus ĕrit *or* fuĕrit,		blandītus ĕrit *or* fuĕrit,
PLUR.	hortāti erímus *or* fuerímus	PLUR.	blandīti erímus *or* fuerímus
	hortāti erítis *or* fueritis		blandīti erítis *or* fueritis
	hortāti ĕrunt *or* fuĕrint.		blandīti ĕrunt *or* fuĕrint.

So, 2. *verītus ĕro*, I shall have feared; 3. *locūtus ĕro*, I shall have spoken. To these add, according to the respective conjugations: *arbitrātus ĕro*, I shall have thought; *comitātus ĕro*, I shall have escorted; *morātus ĕro*, I shall have delayed; — *meritus ĕro*, I shall have earned; *miserītus ĕro*, I shall have pitied; *tuītus ĕro*, I shall have defended; *lapsus ĕro*, I shall have glided; *oblītus ĕro*, I shall have forgotten; *profectus ĕro*, I shall have departed; *secūtus ĕro*, I shall have followed; — *expertus ĕro*, I shall have experienced; *largītus ĕro*, I shall have lavished.

Will he have exhorted?	Erítne hortâtus?
He will not have exhorted.	Nôn érit hortâtus.
Will you have departed?	Erísne profĕctus?
Yes, I shall have departed.	Véro, profĕctus éro.
Shall we have flattered?	Núm nôs blandíti érimus?
You will not have flattered.	Blandíti nôn éritis.
Will they have forgotten their duties?	Oblítine érunt officiôrum suôrum?
They will not have forgotten them.	(Eôrum) nôn óbliti érunt.

ON THE USE OF THE FUTURE PERFECT.

D. The future perfect declares that an action or event will be completed at or before the time of another future action or event. Hence it can only be used in connection with another future verb, with an imperative, or with a verb involving the notion of futurity. E. g.

Si in ómnibus ínnocens *fúero*, quid míhi inimicítiae *nocebunt*?	If I am (shall have been) innocent in everything, what harm can enmity inflict on me?
De Carthágine veréri nôn ánte *désinam*, quam íllam excîsam *cognóvĕro*.	I shall not cease to be afraid of Carthage, until I shall have heard of its destruction.
Moráti mélius *érĭmus*, quum *didicerîmus*, quae natûra desíderet.	We shall be better men, when we shall have learnt what nature requires of us.
Respondéto ad éa, quae de tê ípso *rogâro*.	Reply to what I ask (shall have asked) with reference to yourself.
Dâ míhi hóc, jám tíbi máximam partem defensiônis *praecúleris*.	Grant me this one point, and you will have cut off the best part of your defence.
Égo de venditiône víllae méae níhil *cógito*, nísi quid, quod mágis mê deléctet, *invénero*.	I do not (shall not) think of the sale of my villa, unless I shall have found something that can afford me greater pleasure.

Remarks.

1. The distinction expressed by the future perfect is always observed in Latin, and is frequently put where the English idiom substitutes the first future, the present, or the perfect. E. g. *Ut sementem fecĕris, ita metes*, As you have (shall have) sown, so you will reap. *Si invēnĕro, tecum communicābo*, If I find it (shall have found it), I will communicate it to you. And so frequently in conditional clauses, where the result is dependent on the previous fulfilment of a condition; as, *si voluĕro, si potuĕro, si licuĕrit, si placuĕrit, si otium habuĕro*, where in English we commonly put the present or first future.

2. The future perfect is often elegantly put for the simple future,

in order to impart an air of rapidity or certainty to the event. E. g. *Ah, si pergis*, abiĕro, If you proceed, I am off. *Quid inventum sit, paulo post* vidĕro, I shall see presently what has been found. Respirāro, *si te vidĕro*, I shall breathe again, if I have seen you. *Pergrātum mihi* fecĕris, si *dedĕris operam, ut*, &c., You will oblige me very much, if you see to it that, &c. *Qui Antonium oppresserit, is hoc bellum teterrimum* confecĕrit, He who puts down (shall first have put down) Antonius, will put an end to this destructive war.*

SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FUTURE PERFECT.

E. The subjunctive of the future perfect, like that of the simple future, is wanting. (Cf. Lesson LXXXI. *F.*) Its place is supplied by the *perfect* and *pluperfect* subjunctive. E. g.

Affírmo tíbi, si hoc benefícium míhi *tribúĕris, mê* quamcúnque póssim grátiam tíbi *relatûrum.*	I assure you, that, if you shall have done me this favor, I shall render you all the thanks in my power.
Affirmâbat míhi, si íllud benefícium ípsi *tribuíssem, sê* quamcúnque pósset grátiam míhi *relatûrum.*	I assured you, that, if you should have done me that favor, I would render you all the thanks in my power.
Quís hóc nôn pérspicit, praecláre nobíscum *áctum úri*, si pópulus Românus istíus unius supplício *conténtus fúerit?*	Who does not see, that we shall fare nobly, if the Roman people shall have been contented by the punishment of this one individual.
De Rosciórum audáciā túm *mê dictûrum* pollícĭtus súm, quum Erúcii crímina *diluíssem.*	I have promised to discourse on the audacity of the Roscii, as soon as I shall have refuted the charges preferred against Erucius.
I shall have written my letters before you return.	Epístolas méas, ántequam redíbis, scrípsero.
When I shall have paid for my horse, I shall have but ten florins left.	Quum équi prétium persólvero, décem tántum florénos réliquos habébo.
What will you do when you shall have dined?	Quíd fácies, quum coenávĕris?
I shall go out.	In públicum prodíbo.
When I shall have spoken to your brother, I shall know what I have to do.	Quum ad frâtrem túum locûtus éro, tum scíam, quid mihi faciéndum sit.
Before (*sooner*).	*Priusquam, antequam, antea quam.*
Not until, not before.	*Non prius quam, non ante* (*antea*) *quam.*
Sooner (*rather*) *than.*	*Potius quam.*

* Thus frequently, when another clause already contains a future perfect, as in several of the examples given. — The future perfect *vidĕro* appears in the same sense in expressions like *mox, post, alias, alio loco vidĕro*, I shall see (or examine) presently, hereafter, elsewhere, in another place.

I shall not do it, before you tell me (shall have told me).	Íd nôn prius fáciam, quam jússĕris.*
I shall not see him, until I go (shall have gone) thither.	Éum non vidébo, ántequam ílluc íero.
Did you see him before he left?	Vidistíne éum, antequam discéssit?
I did see him.	Factum (est).
Outside of, out of, without.	*Extra* (Prep. cum Acc.).
Outside of the town, city.	Extra óppidum (úrbem).
The church stands outside the city.	Témplum extra úrbis múros sítum est.
I shall wait for you before the city gate.	Tê extra úrbis pórtam exspectábo.
The city gate.	Porta, ae, *f.* (*sc.* urbis, oppídi).
To go out.	Exíre, egrĕdi (e. g. per portam), fŏras íre.
To come out.	Exíre, egrĕdi, prodíre.
Seldom, rarely.	Rāro, nōn saepe; perrāro (*very rarely*).
To continue, proceed with.	Pergo, ĕre, perrexi, perrectum (IN RE, FACERE REM). Persĕqui, continuāre (REM).
Will you continue as you began?	Vísne pérgere, ut coepísti?
I will.	Vólo.
He continues (proceeds) with his speech, with his inquiry.	Perséquitur dicéndo, quaeréndo.
You must continue to speak loud.	Clárā vóce lóqui pérgas opórtet.
The appetite.	Cibi appetentia *or* cupidĭtas (ātis, *f.*).
A keen appetite.	Edacĭtas, ātis, *f.*
A want of appetite.	Fastidĭum, i, *n.*
To have an appetite.	Cĭbum appetĕre. Alicui cibi cupidĭtas est.
To have a good appetite.	Cĭbum libenter sumĕre, lĭbenter [coenāre.
To have no appetite.	Cĭbum fastidíre.
Have you an appetite?	Appetísne cíbum? Esne áppetens edúndi?
I have one.	Áppeto. Áppetens súm cíbi.
He had no appetite at all.	Cĭbum fastidívit.
The narrative, tale.	Narratio, ōnis, *f.*; expositio, ōnis, *f.*; fabella, ae, *f.*
The shore (coast).	Lĭtus, ŏris, *n.*
The bank, shore.	Rīpa, ae, *f.*
On the bank, shore.	Juxta rīpam, ad (apud, juxta) lĭtus.
Is he still sitting under the tree by the sea-shore?	Residétne étiam núnc sub árbore juxta lítus?
He is sitting there no longer.	Résidet íbi nôn ámplius.
The same.	*Ĭdem, ĕădem, ĭdem.*
The very same.	*Ĭdem ipse, is ipse, eadem ipsa*, &c.

* Compare Lesson LXXXIX. *A.* VII.

One and the same.	*Ūnus et īdem.*
The same thing, things.	Īdem ; eădem.
Of the same kind.	Ejusdem genĕris.
Of the same color.	Ejusdem colōris.
To be the same (to make no difference).	Nihil differre. / Nihil interesse.
It is all one (the same).	Níhil ínterest (díffert).
It is all one (makes no difference) to me.	Méā níhil ínterest, refert. (Cf. page 411, *C.*)
It makes no difference, whether you go or stay.	Nihil ínterest, *útrum* ábeas *an* morêris.
I am constantly obliged to hear the same thing.	Sémper ísta audíre éădem coáctus sum.
He is constantly driving at the same thing.	Úno ópere eándem incûdem díem noctémque túndit.
Such.	*Tālis, e ; hujusmŏdi, ejusmŏdi.*
Such a man, woman, child.	Tâlis homo, mulíer, infans, hŏmo hujusmŏdi, &c.
Such men deserve esteem.	Táles hómines (hómines ejúsmŏdi) observántiā dígni sunt.
There is — there are.	*Ibi (istic, illic) est — ibi sunt ; en, ecce* (cum Nom. or Acc.).
Here is — here are.	*Hīc est, adest — hīc sunt, adsunt ; en, ecce* (cum Nom. or Acc.).
Here I am !	Ádsum. Écce mê !
Here he is.	Éccum* ádest. Én hic ést ílle.
Here is your letter.	Écce túae lítterae.
Here they are.	Éccos ádsunt. Én hic suntílli.
Here is my book.	Én tíbi líber méus.
Therefore, for that reason, on that account.	Eo, eā re, ob eam rem, ob eam causam. / Ideo, idcirco, propterĕa.
For which reason, on which account.	Quocirca, quapropter.
For the reason, that ; because.	Eo, quod ; ideo, quod ; propterĕa, quod.
Why do you complain ?	Quíd est ígitur, cur queŭre ?
This is the reason why I complain.	Haêc ést caûsa, cur (propter quam) quéror.
You see the reason why he left.	Quámobrem abíerit, caûsam vídes.
Here is the reason why he has changed his opinion.	En caûsa, cur senténtiam mutâvit.
Therefore I say so.	Éā de caúsā hóc díco.
I have cause for laughing, weeping, &c.	*Est quod rídeam, fléam.* / *Est mihi caûsa ridéndi, flendi.*

* Compare pages 37, Rem. 2, and 344.

The father has no cause for weeping.	Nôn ést, quód páter fléat.
My sister's hands are cold.	Sóror méa álget mánibus. Frígent sorôris méae mánus.
His feet are cold.	Álget pédibus. Pédes éjus frígent.
To hunt.	Venāri, in venatiōne esse.
To go a hunting.	Venātum īre.
To send back.	Remitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum.
To read again.	Relĕgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum. Rursus, itĕrum legĕre.
Again (once more), a second time, anew.	Rursus (rursum), itĕrum, denŭo, de intĕgro.
The mistake, error.	Mendum, errātum, peccātum, vitium, i, *n.*
To make a mistake or mistakes (in anything).	Pecco, āre, āvi, ātum. Offendo, ĕre, di, sum. (IN ALIQUĀ RE.)
Full of errors.	Mendōsus, vitiōsus, a, um.
Free from errors.	Vitiis cărens, vitio pūrus, a, um.
To be free from mistakes or errors.	Vitiis carēre; sine vitiis esse.

Exercise 154.

When will you go to Italy? — I shall go as soon as I have learnt Italian. — When will your brothers go to Germany? — They will go thither as soon as they know German. — When will they learn it? — They will learn it when they have found a good master. — How much money shall we have left when we have paid for our horse? — When we have paid for it we shall have only a hundred crowns left. — Have you told my brother that I have been obliged to sell the carriage? — I have told him so. — Have you written to the same man to whom my father wrote? — I have not written to the same, but to another. — Have they already answered you? — Not yet, but I hope to receive a letter next week — Have you ever seen such a person? — I have never seen such a one. — Have you already seen our church? — I have not seen it yet. — Where does it stand? — It stands outside the town. — If you wish to see it, I will go with you in order to show it to you. — Who is there? — It is I. — Who are those men? They are foreigners who wish to speak to you. — Of what country are they? — They are Americans. — Where have you been since I saw you? — We sojourned long on the sea-shore, until a ship arrived, which brought us to France. — Will you continue your narrative? — Scarcely had we arrived in France when we were taken to the king, who received us very well (*nos benigne excēpit*), and sent us back to our country. — Whom are you looking for? — I am looking for my little brother. — If you wish to find him, you must go into the garden, for he is there. — The garden is large, and I shall not be able to find him, if you do not tell me in which part (*quā in parte*) of the garden he is. — He is sitting under the large tree under which we were sitting yesterday. — Now I shall find him.

Exercise 155.

Why do your children not live in France? — They wish to learn English, that is the reason why they live in England. — Why do you sit near the fire? — My hands and feet are cold, that is the reason why I sit near the fire. — What do the people live upon that live on the sea-shore? — They live upon fish alone. — Why will you not go a hunting any more? — I hunted yesterday the whole day, and I killed nothing but an ugly bird, that is the reason why I shall not go a hunting any more. — Why do you not eat? — I shall not eat before I have a good appetite. — Why does your brother eat so much? — He has a good appetite, that is the reason he eats so much. — If you have read the books which I lent you, why do you not return them to me? — I intend reading them once more, that is the reason why I have not yet returned them to you; but I shall return them to you as soon as I have read them a second time. — Why did you not bring me my clothes? — They were not made, therefore I did not bring them; but I bring them to you now; here they are. — You have learnt your lesson; why has your sister not learnt hers? — She has taken a walk with my mother, that is the reason why she has not learnt it; but she will learn it to-morrow. — When will you correct my exercises? — I will correct them when you bring me those of your sister. — Do you think you have made mistakes in them? — I do not know. — If you have made mistakes, you have not studied your lessons well; for the lessons must be learnt well, if you wish to have them free from errors. — It is all the same, if you do not correct them (for) me to-day, I shall not learn them before to-morrow (*ante diem crastĭnum non discam*). — You must make no mistakes in your exercises, for you have all you want to write them without any errors.

Lesson LXXXIII. — PENSUM OCTOGESIMUM TERTIUM.

OF THE CONSECUTIO TEMPORUM.

A. The tenses of the indicative mood may be connected with each other, according to the requirements of the speaker, and are subject to no limitation. E. g. *Ego, qui heri* ludēbam, *hodie* scrĭbo, *cras mane autem, quum litteras ad te* dēdĕro, *in urbem* proficiscar. But in dependent clauses, introduced by a conjunction or a pronoun, the tense of the subjunctive is always determined by that of the verb in the leading clause. This order or connection of tenses is called *consecutio tempŏrum*, and is subject to the following laws: —

I. The *Present*, the *Perfect Definite*, and the *Future Tenses* of the leading clause, are followed by the *Present* or *Perfect Subjunctive* in the dependent clause. E. g.

Vídeo (vídi, vidébo, vídĕro), *quíd ágas* or *quid égĕris*.	I see (have seen, shall see, shall have seen) what you are doing, *or* what you have done.
Dic míhi, *quid ágat* or *quid égĕrit*.	Tell me what he is doing, *or* what he has done.
Rógo (rogávi, rogábo, rogávero), *ut scríbas*.	I beg you (have begged, shall beg, shall have begged you) to write.
Hóc ídeo fácio (féci, fáciam, fécĕro), *ut intélligas*.	I do (have done, shall do, shall have done) this, in order that you may understand.
Némo íta caécus ést (fúit, érit, fúĕrit), *ut nón intélligat* or *intellexérit*.	No one is (has been, will be, will have been) so blind, as not to comprehend *or* to have comprehended.
Némo ést (fúit, érit, fúĕrit), *quí nón intélligat* or *intelléxerit*.	There is (has been, will be, will have been) no one, but what comprehends *or* has comprehended.
Némo ést, *quí nón intellectúrus sit*.	There is no one, but what will comprehend.

II. The *Imperfect*, the *Perfect Indefinite*, and the *Pluperfect* of the leading clause, are followed by the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive* in the dependent clause. E. g.

Vidébam (vídi, vídĕram), *quid ágeret* or *egísset*.	I was seeing (I saw, had seen), what he did, what he had done.
Rogábam (rogávi, rogávĕram), *ut scríbĕres*.	I begged (did beg, had begged) you to write.
Hóc ídeo faciébam (féci, fécĕram), *ut intellígeres*.	I was doing (I did, had done) this, that you might understand.
Némo íta caécus érat (fúit, fúerat), *ut nón intellígeret* or *intellexísset*.	No one was (had been) so blind, as not to comprehend *or* to have comprehended.
Némo érat (fúit, fúerat), *quí nón intellígeret* or *intellexísset*.	There was (had been) no one, but what comprehended *or* had comprehended.
Némo érat, *quí nón intellectúrus ésset*.	There was no one, but what would comprehend.

Note. — The dependent clauses in which this construction occurs are, — *a*) those containing an indirect question; *b*) those introduced by *ut* or *ne*; *c*) those introduced by a relative pronoun, or by one of the relative conjunctions *quo*, *quin*, *quomĭnus*, &c. The following examples will illustrate this still further: —

Quaéritur, Corínthiis béllum *indicámus*, *an nón*.	The question is, whether we shall declare war against the Corinthians, *or* not.

Quaesívi, *écquis esset ventûrus.*	I inquired, whether any one was about to come.
Difficile dictu ést, *útrum* hóstes mágis virtûtem éjus pugnántes timuérint, *an* mansuetúdinem victi *dilézerint.*	It is difficult to say, whether his enemies dreaded his valor more in battle, than they cherished his clemency after being conquered.
Tê hórtor, *ut* oratiónes méas studióse *légas.*	I exhort you to read my orations carefully.
Óbsecro vôs, *ut* diligénter *attendátis.*	I beseech you to attend diligently.
Míhi opus est, *ut lávem.*	It is necessary for me to wash.
Equidem véllem, *ut* aliquándo *rédires.*	I could wish, that you might return at last.
In éo érat, *ut* in múros *eváderet* míles.	The soldier was on the point of escaping within the walls.
Mê óbsecras, *ne oblivíscar* vigilâre.	You conjure me, not to forget to watch.
Timóleon orâvit ómnes, *ne* id *fácĕrent.*	Timoleon requested them all, not to do that.
Decrêvit senâtus, *ut* cónsul *vídĕret, ne* quid respública detrimênti *cáperet.*	The senate decreed, that the consul should see that the republic sustained no injury.
Ex his delécti Délphos deliberâtam míssi sunt, *qui consúlĕrent* Apóllinem.	A select number of these were sent to Delphi, for the purpose of consulting Apollo.
Stúlti súmus, *qui* Drûsum cum Clódio conférre *audeâmus.*	We are fools for venturing to compare Drusus with Clodius.
Tenéri nôn pótui, *quin declarârem.*	I could not be prevented from declaring.
Níhil ímpĕdit, *quo mínus* id, *quód* máxime *placeat,* fácere *possímus.*	Nothing prevents us from being able to do what we like best.

Remarks.

1. The tenses, which may thus enter into connection with each other, are called *similar* tenses. Similar are, — *a*) the *present*, the *perfect definite*, the *futures*, and the periphrastic tenses in *sim* and *fuĕrim*; *b*) the *imperfect*, the *perfect indefinite*, the *pluperfect*, and the periphrastic tenses in *essem* and *fuissem*. Tenses, of which one belongs to the first, and the other to the second of these classes, are called *dissimilar*; as, the *present* and the *imperfect*, &c.

2. When, in historical narration, the present tense is used instead of the perfect indefinite, it is sometimes followed by the present and sometimes by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. E. g. Scribit (= scripsit) *ad quosdam Melitenses, ut ea vasa* perquirant, He writes (wrote) to certain inhabitants of Malta, to inquire after those vases. *Nulli, quid scriptum* esset, enunciat (= enuntiàvit), He discloses (disclosed) to no one what had been written. *Ad propinquum suum* scribit (= scripsit), *ut iis, qui a Verre venissent,* respondēret, He writes to his relative to reply to those who had come from Verres.

3. The present indicative is followed by the imperfect subjunctive, when it is intended to convey the idea of duration in the past. E. g. *Hujus praecepti tanta vis, tanta sententia* est, ut *ea non homini cuipiam*, sed *Delphĭco deo* tribuerētur, The force and moral weight of this injunction *are* so great, that it *was* attributed not to any man, but to the Delphic deity. *Scītōte, oppidum* esse *in Sicilĭā nullum, quo in oppĭdo non isti delecta mulier ad libidinem* esset, Know, then, that there *is* not a town in Sicily in which this fellow *had not* an object of his lust.

4. The imperfect or pluperfect indicative may be followed by the perfect subjunctive, when the result of a past action is represented as extending into the present. E. g. Ardēbat *autem Hortensius cupiditāte dicendi sic, ut in nullo unquam flagrantius studium* vidĕrim, Hortensius was so fond of speaking, that (up to this time) I have never witnessed a more ardent passion in any one.

5. The perfect definite requires the imperfect subjunctive, whenever it is intended to represent the action as in operation, and not merely as a result. E. g. *Quoniam, quae subsidia novitātis* habēres, *et habēre* posses, exposui, *nunc de magnitudĭne petitiōnis dicam*, Having shown what resources you have, or can have, I will now speak of the importance of the demand. Adduxi *enim hominem, in quo satisfacere extĕris nationibus* possētis, I have produced a man, through whom you can satisfy the demands of foreign nations.

6. The imperfect and perfect indefinite are sometimes followed by the present subjunctive, to denote that the contents of the dependent clause are not limited to the time of the leading verb, but universally applicable. E. g. Nesciebat, *quid* sit *philosophia*, He did not know what philosophy is (i. e. was and still is). *Ad priores conditiones nihil* additum (est), *Africano praedicante, neque Romānis*, si vincantur, *animos minui, neque*, si vincant, *secundis rebus insolescere*, No additions were made to the former conditions, Africanus declaring, that the Romans neither lost their courage when conquered, nor ever grew insolent in their success when victorious.

7. When the verb of a subordinate clause depends upon an *infinitive*, its tense is determined as follows: —

a) The present infinitive is followed by the tense required by the verb, on which the infinitive depends. E. g. Incipīte *deinde* mirāri, *cur pauci jam vestram* suscipiant *causam*, Begin then to wonder why so few now defend your cause. *Ipse* metuĕre incipies, *ne innocenti periculum* facessĕris, You will yourself begin to be afraid of having accused an innocent man. *Praelixĕrat his, ut parāti* essent facĕre, *quod ipsum* vidissent, He had directed them beforehand to be ready to do whatever they might see himself do.

b) The perfect infinitive is commonly followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, but when it represents the perfect definite, sometimes also by the present or perfect. E. g. *Satis mihi multa verba* fecisse *videor, quare* esset *hoc bellum necessārium*, I think I have said enough to show why this war is necessary. *Nisi docet, ita se* possedisse, *ut nec vi, nec clam, nec precario* possĕderit, Unless he shows that

he has taken possession in such a manner, as to have employed neither force nor secrecy nor entreaty.

8. Dissimilar tenses sometimes occur in the same construction, with different shades of signification. E. g. *Summâ difficultate rei frumentarii* affecto *exercitu* . . . . *usque eo, ut complures dies milites frumento* caruerint, *et extremam famem* sustentârent, *nulla tamen vox est ab iis audîta*, Although the army labored under the greatest difficulty in procuring its necessary supplies, to such an extent, that for several days the soldiers *had no* corn and *were famishing*, yet not a word of discontent was heard from them.

To find one's self, to be (*well* or *ill*).	*Se habēre, valēre; agĕre.*
How do you do?	Quómŏdo tê hábes? / Quómŏdo váles?
I am very well.	Ego mê ádmŏdum béne hábeo.
How was your cousin?	Quómodo patruêlis tûus sê habêbat?
He was not very well.	Mále sê habêbat. / Párum valêbat.
Is your father well?	Habétne se páter túus béne?
No, he is in bad health.	Non; málă conditiône ést. / Condítio éjus mála ést.
How goes it with him, her?	Quíd ágitur cum éo, cum éâ?
It goes badly with him.	Mále ágitur cum éo.
All is well with me.	Béne ágitur mêcum.
To stay, sojourn (in any place, with any one).	Morāri, commorāri, deversāri, habitāre (ALIQUO LOCO, APUD ALIQUEM).
At present, now.	Nunc, in praesenti.
To censure, criticise, carp at (any one *or* anything).	Carpo, ĕre, carpsi, carptum (ALIQUEM). / Cavillāri aliquem *or* aliquid; — vellicāre aliquem.
To laugh at, deride, ridicule any one.	Illūdo, ĕre, lūsi, lūsum (REM, REI, ALIQUEM, IN ALIQUEM). / Deridēre aliquem; — aliquem ludibrio habēre.
Did you stay long in Vienna?	Moratúsne és díu Vindobónae?
No, I stayed there only three days.	Ímmo três tántum díes morâtus sum.
Where is your brother staying now?	Úbi in praesónti deversâtur frâter túus?
He is staying in London at present.	Deversâtur núnc Londíni.
How long did you remain with your uncle in New York?	Quám díu ápud pátruum túum Nóvo in Eboráco commorabâris?
I stayed with him for two years.	Commorâbar apud éum per biénnium.
Did he censure (carp at) any one?	Carpebátne áliquem?

He carped at no one.	Núllum carpêbat.
Why do you not deride this man a little?	Cur nôn ístum aliquantísper lûdis (illûdis)?
I have already laughed at him enough.	Éum jám lúsi jocóse sátis.
Are we derided by our accusers?	Illudimúrne ab accusatóribus?
We are not.	Nôn illúdimur.
Was he accustomed to make light of the precepts of his master?	Solebátne illúděre praecépta magistri?
He was not.	Fácere nôn solêbat.
You derided what I said.	Illúseras id, quod díxeram.
To gain, win.	*Lucrum* or *quaestum facĕre* (EX RE). *Lucrāri, lucrifacĕre* (REM). Consĕqui, nancisci (nactus sum) ALIQUID.
To earn, get.	Mereo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum (REM). Mereor, ēri, ĭtus sum.
To procure, get.	Parāre, comparāre (ALIQUID).
To earn one's bread, get one's living by.	Victum sibi parāre *or* quaeritāre (aliquā re faciendā).
How does he get his living?	Quâ rĕ sibi víctum párat?
He supports himself poorly by working.	Víctum sĭbi aégre quéritat laborándo.
They supported themselves by writing.	Víctum sĭbi scribéndo quaeritavérunt.
Has your brother earned anything?	Meruítne frâter túus áliquid?
He has earned a large sum of money.	Grándem pecúniam méruit.
He has won immortality.	Immortalitâtem méruit (méritus ést).
To spill, pour out.	*Effundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum.* *Profundĕre* (ALIQUID).
To stand, to be standing.	Sto, stāre, stĕti, stātum esse (ALIQUO).
Ready.	Parātus, promptus, a, um (ad rem, in rem, re).
To make ready, to prepare.	Părāre, praeparāre (ALIQUID).
To prepare one's self, get one's self ready.	Se parāre (rei, ad rem).
To keep one's self ready.	Se tenēre parātum (ad rem).
What did he spill?	Quid effûdit?
He spilt wine upon the table.	Vînum super ménsam effûdit.
His father was shedding tears.	Páter éjus láchrimas profundêbat.
Our servant is spilling water under the table.	Fámulus nóster áquas sub mensas profúndit.
The Ganges empties into the Eastern Ocean.	Gánges se in Eôum océanum effúndit.

Is there any wine on the table?	Éstne vínum super ménsam?
There is none.	Nôn ést.
Is he preparing to speak?	Parátne sê ad dicéndum?
He is preparing.	Párat.
They prepared themselves for battle and for death.	Paravérunt se proélio et mórti.
Is he preparing war against any one?	Parátne béllum álicui?
He is preparing to command all Russia.	Párat imperâre ómni Rússiae.
Are you getting ready to set out?	Parâsne proficísci?
I am preparing to go into the woods.	Égo in sílvam íre páro.
Is he ready to depart?	Estne parâtus ad proficiscéndum?
He is ready.	Parâtus est.
I am ready for every emergency, to undergo every danger.	Égo ad ómnem evéntum, ad ómnia perícula subeúnda parâtus sum.
To split, cleave.	*Findo, ĕre, fĭdi, fissum.* *Diffindĕre* (ALIQUID).
To pierce, transfix.	*Transfigo, ĕre, fixi, fixum.* *Transfŏdio, ĕre, fōdi, fossum* (ALIQUEM, REM).
To break any one's heart.	Pectus *or* animum alicujus vulnerāre, percutĕre.
To hang, suspend.	Suspendo, ĕre, di, sum (ALIQUID REI *or* DE RE).
To hang any one.	Affigĕre aliquem patibŭlo. Suspendĕre aliquem arbŏri infelĭci.
To hang one's self.	Se suspendĕre, induĕre se in laqueam.
To hang, to be suspended.	Pendeo, ēre, pependi, —— (AB, EX, IN, DE RE).
The thief.	Fūr, *gen.* fūris, *m.*
The robber, highwayman.	Praedo, ōnis, *m.*, latro, ōnis, *m.*
The patient.	Aeger, *gen.* aegri, *m.*, agrōtus, i, *m.*
Tolerably well.	Mediocríter, modíce, sic sátis.
It is rather late.	Séro, sérius ést.
He is rather severe.	Sevérior est.
She is rather tall.	Grandiúscula est.
It is rather far.	Longiúsculum est.
Was my hat hanging on the nail?	Pendebátne de clávo píleus méus?
It was hanging on it.	Sáne quídem, pendébat.
Who has hung the basket on the tree.	Quís córbem suspéndit árbŏri (de árbore)?
No one.	Némo.
The thief has been hanged.	Fûr est patíbulo affíxus (árbŏri infelíci suspénsus est).

I hang my coat on the nail.	Ego tógam méam clávo (de clavo) suspendo.
You are breaking this man's heart.	Péctus hujúsce vúlneras.
The basket.	Corbis, is, *f.* & *m.*; *dim.* corbŭla, ae, *f.*

EXERCISE 156.

How is your father? — Ho is only so so. — How is your patient? — He is a little better to-day than yesterday. — Is it long since you saw your brothers? — I saw them two days ago. — How were they? — They were very well. — How art thou? — I am tolerably well. — How long has your brother been learning German? — He has been learning it only three months. — Does he already speak it? — He already speaks, reads, and writes it better than your cousin, who has been learning it these five years. — Is it long since you heard of my uncle? — It is hardly three months since I heard of him. — Where was he staying then? — He was staying at Berlin, but now he is in London. — Do you like to speak to my uncle? — I do like very much to speak to him, but I do not like him to laugh at me. — Why does he laugh at you? — He laughs at me, because I speak badly. — Why has your brother no friends? — He has none, because he criticises everybody. — What do you get your livelihood by? — I get my livelihood by working. — Does your friend get his livelihood by writing? — He gets it by speaking and writing. — Do these gentlemen get their livelihood by working? — They do not get it by doing anything, for they are too idle to work. — Do you see what he has done? — I do see it. — Did he know that you had arrived? — He did not know it. — Have I advised you to write? — You have not asked me. — Is any one so blind, as not to understand that? — No one is so blind. — Did he exhort us to read his book? — He did exhort us to read it diligently. — Was he on the point of (*in eo, ut*) escaping? — He was not. — He could not be prevented from escaping (*evadĕre*). — Nothing could prevent him from escaping.

Lesson LXXXIV. — PENSUM OCTOGESIMUM QUARTUM.

OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

A. By the Indicative Mood the speaker asserts the action or state expressed by the verb as an absolute existence or a positive fact. Hence this mood is used, —

I. In leading and subordinate clauses, to denote that some-

thing really takes place, has taken place, or will take place hereafter. E. g.

Nihil *est* amabĭlius virtûte.	Nothing is worthier of esteem than virtue.
Ómnia *mutántur;* nĭhil *íntĕrit.*	Everything changes; nothing is lost.
Ut *vŏles* mê ésse, íta *éro.*	I shall be what you desire me to be.
Éas léges, quâs Caêsar *recŭâvit, pronuntiâvit, túlit,* nôs everténdas *putábĭmus?*	Shall we imagine, that the laws, which Cæsar has read, proclaimed, and enacted, are to be abolished?
Écce *bíbit* árcus; *pluet, crédo,* hódie.	Behold the rainbow drinks (draws up the water), I think it will rain to-day.
Quám nôn *est* fácĭlis vírtus!	How easy the practice of virtue is!
Ut saêpe súmma ingénia in occúlto *látent!*	How often the most distinguished talents lie buried in obscurity!

II. In direct questions, i. e. in those which require an immediate answer. E. g.

Cújus híc líber *est?* — Méus.	Whose book is this? — Mine.
Quis hómo *es?* — Égo *sum* Pámphilus.	Who are you? — I am Pamphilus.
Únde *dejéctus est* Cínna? — Ex úrbe.	From what place was Cinna expelled? — Out of the city.
Quis Aristĭdem nôn mórtuum *dŭligit?* — Némo.	Who does not love Aristides, though dead? — No one.

Remark. — In indirect questions, on the other hand, the verb is in the subjunctive. E. g. *Dic mihi, cujus hic liber* sit, Tell me whose book this is. *Nescio, quis homo* sis, I do not know who you are. (Cf. Lesson LXXXVII. *D.*)

III. In conditional clauses, when the case is asserted as a real, and not as a hypothetical or doubtful one. E. g.

Pôma ex arbóribus, *si* crûda *sunt,* vi *avelluntur; si* matûra et cócta, *décidunt.*	Unripe fruit is plucked from the trees by force; if ripe and mellow, it falls of its own accord.
Si quís oriénte Canículâ *nâtus est,* in mári non *moriêtur.*	If any one is born when the dog-star rises, he will not die at sea.
Ísta vérĭtas, *etiámsi* jucúnda nôn *est,* mihi támen grâta *est.*	This truth, although it is not a pleasant one, is nevertheless agreeable to me.
Qui *póssum* putâre mê restitûtum, *si distrahor* ab íis, per quôs restitûtus súm?	How can I consider myself restored, if I am distracted by those through whom I was restored?
Núllă ália in civitâte, *nísi* in quâ pópuli potéstas súmma *est,* úllum domicílium *hábet* líbertas.	Liberty can have no abode in any state, except where the power of the people is supreme.

Égo, *ni púgna restitúitur*, fortûnam cum ómnibus, infámiam sôlus *séntiam*.

Unless the contest is renewed, I shall feel our misfortune in common with all, and the disgrace alone.

REMARK. — When the condition expressed by *si* and *nisi* is not a real, but merely a hypothetical one, the verb is in the subjunctive, on which see Lesson LXXXVI.)

PECULIAR USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

B. The Romans sometimes use the indicative in constructions in which the English idiom requires the subjunctive.

I. With verbs and expressions denoting *ability, permission, duty, necessity*, and the like, the present indicative is commonly put instead of the imperfect subjunctive, and the imperfect, the perfect indefinite, and the pluperfect indicative instead of the pluperfect subjunctive.

Such verbs are *possum, licet, debeo, decet, oportet, necesse est; longum, aequum, par, consentanĕum, satis, satius, melius, optĭmum est, erat, fuit, fuĕrat*, and the like. So also the participle in *dus* with *sum, eram*, &c. In all these cases the present is rendered by the English *might, could, would*, or *should*, and the past tenses by *might, could, would*, or *should have*. E. g.

Póssum pérsequi múlta oblectaménta rêrum rusticârum, sed &c.

I *could* enumerate the many pleasures of agriculture, but, &c.

O quám *fácile érat* órbis impérium occupâre!

O how easy it *would have* been to obtain the command of the entire world!

Perturbatiónes animôrum *pótĕram* égo mórbos appellâre; sed nôn conveníret ad ómnia.

I *might have* called the disorders of the mind diseases, but the name would not have been applicable to all cases.

Oh, rêgem mê ésse *opórtuit*.

I *ought to have* been king.

Jéci fundaménta reipúblicae, sérius omníno, quám *décuit*.

I have laid the foundation of the republic, later doubtless, than I *should have* done.

Líbĕros túos institúere atque erudíre *debuísti*.

You *ought to have* instructed and educated your children.

Hóc fácere *debébas*.

You *should have* done this.

Lónge *utílius fúit*, angústias áditus occupâre.

It would have been far better to occupy the defile.

Haêc vía tíbi *érat ingrediénda*.

You should have entered upon this road.

Nôn Ásiae nômen *objiciéndum* Murénae *fúit*, ex quâ laûs famíliae constitûta ést.

Murena *ought not to have been* taunted with the name of Asia, from which the glory of his family is derived.

REMARKS.

1. In condititional sentences the historians sometimes likewise employ one of the past tenses of the indicative, instead of the more usual *pluperfect subjunctive*, to denote that something *would have taken place* under certain conditions. E. g. *Jam fames quam pestilentia tristior* erat (= fuisset), ni *annonae foret subventum*, The famine would have been a sadder calamity than the pestilence, unless additional supplies had been procured. *Temere* fēcerat (= fecisset) *Nerva*, si *adoptasset alium*, Nerva would have acted inconsiderately, if he had adopted another.

2. In like manner, the imperfect indicative sometimes (though less frequently) stands instead of the *imperfect* subjunctive, when the verb of the conditional clause is of the same tense. E. g. *Stultum* erat (= esset) *monēre*, *nisi* fieret, It would be folly to admonish, unless your advice were heeded. *Omnīno supervacua* erat (= esset) *doctrīna*, si *natūra sufficeret*.

II. In general relative expressions, i. e. in those introduced by *quisquis*, *quotquot*, *quicunque*, *quantuscunque*, *quantuluscunque*, *utut*, *utcunque*, and other compounds of *cunque*, the verb is more commonly in the indicative than in the subjunctive. E. g.

Quídquid íd ést.	Whatever that may be.
Quóquo módo rês sê *hábet;* or *Utcúnque* sê *hábet* rês.	However that may be.
Quicúnque is *est.*	Whoever he may be.
Quídquid habuit, quantumcúnque fúit, íllud totum hábuit ex disciplínā.	Whatever property or greatness he possessed, he owed it all to his discipline and skill.
Quem sórs diêrum *cúnque dábit*, lúcro appône.	Mark as clear gain, whatever day your destiny may grant you.
Quídquid íd ést, tímeo Dánaos et dôna feréntes.	Whatever that may be, I dread the Greeks, even when they offer presents.
Hómines benévolos, *qualescúnque súnt*, gráve ést ínsequi contuméliā.	It is hard to pursue benevolent men of any description with insults.
Utcúnque sése rês *hábet*, túa ést cúlpa.	However that may be, the fault is yours.

REMARK. — The words above enumerated are sometimes also followed by the subjunctive, especially among the later Roman authors. E. g. *Quibuscunque verbis uti* velis, Whatever words you may wish to employ. *In quacunque parte* sit *titubatum*, In whatever part there may have been a failure.

III. In clauses introduced by *sive — sive*, the verb is generally likewise in the indicative. E. g.

Sive tacêbis, síve lóquêris, mihi perínde ést.	Whether you are silent, or whether you speak, it is all the same to me.

Sive vêrum *est, sive* fálsum, míhi quídem íta renuntiâtum ést.	Whether it is true or false, it has been so reported to me.
Véniet témpus mórtis, et quídem celériter, et *síve retractâbis, sive properâbis.*	The time of death will come, and that quickly, whether you resist it or accelerate it.

REMARK. — Instances of the subjunctive also occur. E. g. *Nam* sive *illâ defensione uti* voluisses, sive *hâc, quâ utĕris, condemnĕris necesse est*, For, whether you had intended to use that defence or the one you are using now, you must be condemned.

To doubt, to be uncertain.	*Dubitāre, dubĭum* or *in dubio esse.*
To doubt, question anything.	Dubitāre de aliquā re *or* aliquid. / Rem in dubium vocāre.
I doubt whether.	Dubĭto, in dubio sum, *num* (with the subj.).
I doubt, whether . . . . or.	Dubĭto, *utrum* . . . . *an* (with the subj.).
I do not doubt, that (but that).	Nôn dubĭto, *quin* (with the subj.).
Do you doubt that?	Dubitâsne hóc? / Vocâsne rém in dúbium?
I do not doubt it.	Nôn dúbito. / Rém in dúbium nôn vóco.
It is not to be doubted.	Dubitári nôn pótest.
What do you doubt?	Quíd dúbitas?
I doubt what that man has told me.	In dúbium vóco id, quod ílle míhi narrâvit.
I doubt whether he has arrived.	Dúbito, num advénerit.
Who doubts that my father has left?	Quís dúbitat, *quin* páter méus profectus sít?
I do not doubt but that he will come.	Nôn dúbito, quín ventûrus sit. / Non dúbito, éum ventûrum esse.
He is sure that he will not come.	Nôn dúbitat, quín nôn ventûrus sit.
Who doubts that man is mortal?	Quís dúbitat, hóminem mortâlem ésse?
No one can question it.	Némo rém in dúbium vocâre possit.
It is doubtful whether the judges or the lawyers are to blame.	Dúbium ést, *útrum* júdices *an* jurisconsúlti vituperándi sint.
I am inclined to, perhaps, probably.	*Dubĭto an, haud scio an, nescio an* (with the subj.).
I *am inclined* to give him the first place.	*Dúbito an* húnc primum ómnium *pônam.*
A man of consummate wisdom, and *perhaps* the most distinguished of them all.	Vir sapientíssimus atque *haûd scio an* ómnium praestantíssimus.
It is perhaps enough.	*Haûd scio* (*néscio*) *an* sátis sít.
To agree or consent to a thing.	*Consentio, ire, sensi, sensum.* / *Convĕnit mihi* (CUM ALIQUO DE ALIQUA RE).

To disagree, differ.	Discrepāre, dissentīre.
We agree.	Cónvĕnit inter nôs. Nôs convénimus.
Peace has been agreed upon.	Páx cónvĕnit.
To admit, confess.	Fateor, ēri, fessus sum. Confitēri (ALIQUID ALICUI).
To concede, grant.	Concēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum (ALICUI ALIQUID).
To agree, or to compose a difference.	Compōnere. In gratiam redire. De controversiis transigĕre (ēgi, actum).
To become reconciled to one.	Cum aliquo in gratiam redire.
To consent (to do anything).	Consentīre, assentīri (FACERE, REM FIERI, UT FIAT).
Did you agree about the price?	Convenítne tíbi eum éo de prétio? Convenítne tíbi prétium?.
We did agree.	Convênit mihi cum éo. Convênit prétium.
What did you agree upon?	Quâ de rê consensístis inter vôs?
We were agreed upon the safety of the republic.	De reipúblicae salûte consénsimus.
Did you agree in praising him?	Vôs in íllo laudándo consensístis?
We did not agree.	Nôn consénsimus. Immo véro dissénsimus.
The age of Homer is not agreed upon.	Super Homéri aetâte nôn consentitur.
Do you consent to my doing that?	Consentísne, ut hóc fáciam?
I do consent.	Nôn disséntio.
Do you confess (admit) that to be a fault?	Faterísne íllud ésse vítium?
I admit it.	Fáteor.
Do you confess your error?	Confiterísne túum errôrem?
I do confess it.	Confíteor.
How much did you pay for that hat?	Quántam pecúniam ísto pro píleo solvísti?
I paid three dollars for it.	Três thaléros.
At what price did he buy the horse?	Quánti êmit ílle équum?
He bought it *for** five hundred dollars.	(Émit éum) quingéntis thaléris.
Did they compose their difference?	Transegerúntne de controvérsiis?
They have composed it.	Composuérunt et transegérunt.
They have become reconciled.	In grátiam inter sê rediérunt.
He has become reconciled to me.	In grátiam mêcum rédiit.

* "For" with the price is not expressed, according to Lesson LXXI. *A.*

To wear (clothes, a ring, &c.).	*Gĕro, ĕre, gessi, gestum.* *Gestāre* (VESTEM, ANULUM, &c.). *Indūtum esse veste*, &c.
To wear a coat, a cloak.	Amictum esse togā, pallio.
To wear a sword.	Cinctum esse gladio.
Did he wear black or white clothes?	Útrum véstem gerêbat nígram an cándidam?
He wore white ones.	Cándidam gerêbat.
Had he boots or shoes on?	Caligísne an cálceis indûtus érat?
He had shoes on.	Indûtus érat cálceis.
He habitually wore a gem on his finger.	Gestâbat gémmam dígito.
The custom, habit.	*Consuetudo, ĭnis*, f.; *mōs*, gen. *mōris*, m.
Against my custom.	Contra méam consuetúdĭnem.
It is against my custom.	Nôn est méae consuetúdinis.
It is customary.	Môs ést. Est môris (ut . . . .). Consuetúdo obtĭnet (faciendi aliquid).
As is customary.	Ut est môris (consuetúdĭnis), ut sólet.
According to custom.	Pro (ex) consuetúdĭne, ex môre.
To observe, take notice of, perceive something.	*Vidēre, cernĕre, animadvertĕre, observāre, perspicĕre* (ALIQUID).
Do you perceive that?	Perspicísne hóc?
I do perceive it.	Véro, perspício.
Did you take notice of that?	Observastîne (perspexistîne) hóc?
I did not observe it.	Nôn observávi (perspéxi).
Did you notice what he did?	Animadvertistîne, quod ílle fécĕrit?
I did notice it.	Animadvérti.
To expect, hope.	*Exspectāre, sperāre* (ALIQUID, ACC. cum INF.).
Do you expect to receive a letter from your uncle?	Exspectâsne lítteras a pátruo túo? Sperâsne fóre, ut lítteras a pátruo accípias?
I do expect it.	Exspécto (spéro).
Did we expect it?	Núm nôs exspectávimus?
We did not expect it.	Nôn exspectávimus (mínime sperávimus).
To procure, get.	*Parāre, comparāre* (SIBI, ALICUI ALIQUID).
To acquire (procure).	*Acquīro, ĕre, sīvi, sītum* (ALIQUID).
Can you get me some money?	Potésne mihi parâre pecúniam?
I cannot do it.	Fácere nôn póssum.
Has he been able to procure the necessaries of life?	Potuítne acquírĕre, quod ad vítae ûsum pertíneat?
He has been able.	Pótuit.
I cannot get anything to eat.	Égo, quód édam, comparâre néqueo.
He has acquired wealth, honor, and influence.	Divítias, honóres, auctoritatemque acquisívit.

Exercise 157.

What have you gained that money by? — I have gained it by working. — What have you done with your wine? — I have spilt it on the table. — Where is yours? — It is on the large table in my little room; but you must not drink any of it, for I must keep it for my father who is ill. — Are you ready to depart with me? — I am so. — Why are you laughing at that man? — I do not intend to laugh at him. — I beg of you not to do it, for you will break his heart if you laugh at him. — Why have they hanged that man? — They have hanged him, because he has killed somebody. — Have they hanged the man who stole a horse (from) your brother? — They have punished him, but they have not hanged him: they only hang highwaymen in our country. — Where have you found my coat? — I found it in the blue room; it was hanging on a nail. — Will you hang my hat on the tree? — I will hang it thereon? — Do you doubt what I am telling you? — I do not doubt it. — Do you doubt what that man has told you? — I do doubt it, for he has often told me what was not true. — Why have you not kept your promise? — I know no more what I promised you. — Did you not promise us to take us to the concert (on) Thursday? — I confess that I promised you; but the concert did not take place. — Does your brother confess his fault? — He does confess it. — What does your uncle say to that letter? — He says that it is written very well; but he admits that he has been wrong in sending it to the captain. — Do you confess your fault now? — I confess it to be a fault. — Have you at last bought the horse which you wished to buy? — How could I buy the horse, if I am unable to procure money? — Unless you pay me what you owe me, I shall not be able to go. — Ought I to have gone into the country yesterday? — You ought to have done it. — You ought to have educated and instructed your son. — This letter ought to have been written by you. — O how easy it would have been to learn your lesson! — It would have been far better to remain at home. — Do you know that man? — Whoever he may be, I do not wish to know him. — However that may be, you have not done your duty (*officium tuum non servavisti*). — Whether you go or stay, it is all the same to me. — I shall have to write, whether I am sick or well.

Lesson LXXXV. — PENSUM OCTOGESIMUM QUINTUM.

OF THE FORM OF SENTENCES.

A. In respect to their form, sentences are either *absolute* or *conditioned*, *positive*, *negative*, or *interrogative*. (Cf. Lessons LXXXIV. and LXXXVI.)

I. A positive or affirmative proposition asserts the existence of a state in a given subject as present, past, or future by means of a finite verb only. Its force may be augmented by an adverb.

Adverbs of this class are called *adverbia asserendi*. The principal are *nae*, surely; *sāne*, *profecto*, really; *utīque*, to be sure; *vēro*, in truth, truly; to which add the (generally) ironical *scilĭcet*, *videlĭcet*, *nimīrum*, *nempe*, and *quippe*, of course, certainly, forsooth. E. g.

Nae ílli vehemónter *érrant*, si íllam méam prístĭnam lenitātem perpétuam spérant futūram.	They are certainly very much mistaken, if they expect that former lenity of mine to be perpetual.
Térra *profécto* múndi párs *est*.	The earth is doubtless a part of the universe.
Éstne ípsus an nôn est? — Is est, *cérte* is *est*, is *est profécto*.	Is it he himself or not? — It is he, certainly it is, it is the very man.
Íllud *scire útique* cúpio.	I desire to know that at all events.
Égo *véro* cúpio, tê ad mê venīre.	I certainly wish you to come to me.
Égo istíus pécūdis consílio *scilĭcet* aut praesídio *úti volébam*?	Did I forsooth desire to use the advice or help of a beast like this?
Híc de nóstris vérbis érrat *videlĭcet*.	He is manifestly mistaken about our language.
Demósthenes apud álios lóqui *videlĭcet* didícerat, nôn múltum ípse sécum.	Demosthenes had learnt to speak with others, I suppose, not much by personal effort privately.
Nôn ómnia *nimīrum* eídem dĭi dedêre.	The gods have certainly not granted everything to one man.
Quôs égo órno? — *Nempe* éos, qui ípsi sínt ornaménta réi públicae.	Whom do I honor? Those certainly who are themselves the ornaments of the republic.
Sôl Demócrito mágnus vidētur, *quippe* hómini erudíto, in geometriâque perfécto.	The sun seems large to Democritus, he being a learned man and perfect in geometry.

II. A negative sentence asserts the non-existence of a state in the subject, and is thus directly opposed to an affirmative one.

Negative sentences are formed by means of the adverbs *non*, not; *haud*, not at all; *minime*, by no means; *ne*, lest, that not. Also by *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, *nunquam*, *nondum*, *nec*, *neque*, &c. To these add the negative verbs *nescio*, *nōlo*, *nĕgo*, and *vĕto*. E. g.

Nives in álto mári *nôn* cádunt.	Snow does not fall on the main sea.
Pausánias *haûd* íta mágnā mánu Graéciā fugâtus est.	Pausanias was put to flight by not so very large a Grecian band.
Potéstis effícere, ut mále móriar: *ne* móriar, nôn potéstis.	You can make me die a cruel death, but you cannot prevent my dying.
Íta súm afflíctus, ut *némo únquam*.	I am so distressed as no one ever was before.

Nōn únquam álias ánte tántus térror senâtum invâsit.
Never at any time before did such a terror invade the senate.

Némo vír mágnus sine áliquo afflátu divíno *únquam* fúit.
There never was a great man without a certain divine enthusiasm.

Epicûrus *négat*, úllum ésse témpus, quô sápiens nôn beâtus sit.
Epicurus denies that there is any time at which a wise man is not happy.

Flêtum duódĕcim tábŭlae in funéribus adhibéri *vetuérunt*.
The twelve tables prohibited the practice of wailing at funerals.

III. When two negations occur in the same sentence, the first or emphatic one generally destroys the second.

Such are *non nemo*, some one; *non nihil*, something; *non nunquam*, sometimes; *non nisi*, not except, i. e. only; *non ignoro*, I know very well; *non possum non loqui*, I cannot but speak. So also *nemo non*, every one; *nihil non*, everything; *nullus non*, each, every; *nunquam non*, always; *nusquam non*, everywhere. E. g.

Hóstis est in úrbe, in fóro; *nôn némo* étiam in íllo sacrário réi públicae, in ípsā, ínquam, cúriā *nôn némo* hóstis ést.
The enemy is in the city, in the forum; there is an enemy even in the sanctuary of the republic; in the senate-house itself, I say, there is an enemy.

Míhi líber ésse nôn vidêtur, quí *nôn* aliquándo *níhil* ágit.
He does not seem to me to be a free man, who is not sometimes disengaged from business.

Nōn súm *néscius*, quánto perículo vívam in tántā multitúdine improbórum.
I am not unaware of the great danger in which I live, in the midst of such a multitude of rascals.

Nōn íi *némini*, sed nôn sémper *úni* parêre voluérunt.
It was not their wish to obey no one, but not perpetually the same individual.

Quí mórtem in mális pônit, *nôn* pótest éam *nôn* timêre.
He who considers death an evil cannot avoid fearing it.

Némo pótest *nôn* beatíssimus esse, quí in sē úno súa pónit ómnia.
No one can avoid being the happiest man in the world, who makes everything depend upon himself alone.

Atheniénses Alcibíadem *níhil nôn* effícere pósse ducébant.
The Athenians thought that Alcibiades could do everything.

Nihil ágĕre ánimus *nôn* pótest.
The mind cannot be inactive.

Alexándro *nullius* púgnae *nôn* secúnda fortûna fúit.
Alexander had fortune in his favor in every battle fought by him.

Diútius *nescíre nôn* póssum.
I can be ignorant no longer.

Núsquam ésse *nôn* póssunt.
They cannot be nowhere (= they must be somewhere).

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

B. A sentence becomes interrogative, when the speaker asks another person for information, for instruction, or assent to his opinion. A sentence of this kind is complete only in connection with the answer.

I. If the inquiry is made merely for information, the emphatic word is put at the beginning, and the expected answer is "yes" or "no." If assent is required, then the answer to a positive inquiry is "no," and to a negative one "yes." E. g.

Scis Áppium censórem hic osténta fácere?	Do you know that Appius, the censor, is doing wonders here?
Nón pátrem égo tê nóminem, úbi tû túam mê appélles fíliam?	Shall I not call you father, when you call me your daughter?
En únquam cuíquam contumeliósius audístis fíctam injúriam, quám haêc-ést míhi?	Did ye ever hear of an injustice practised upon any one more insolently, than this is upon me?
Quid? Si tê rogávero áliquid, *nôn* respondêbis?	What? If I have asked you anything, will you not reply?
Infélix ést Fabrícius, quód rûs súum fódit? — *Nón.*	Is Fabricius unhappy, because he digs his farm? — No.
Nón vóbis vídeor cum áliquo declamatóre disputáre? — *Étiam.*	Do I not seem to you to be disputing with some declaimer? — Yes.

II. Questions requiring a more definite explanation or assent are introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs.

Such are *quis*, *qui*, who? *quid*, *quod*, what? *quantus*, how great? *quot*, how many? *quŏtus*, which, what (of a certain number)? *quālis*, what kind of? *quoties*, how many times? *quam*, *ut*, how? *quando*, when? *ubi*, where? *quo*, whither? *qua*, which way? *unde*, whence? To these add *cur*, why? *quāre*, wherefore? *qui*, or *quomŏdo*, how? *quin*, *quidni*, why not? &c. E. g.

Quis hómo ést? — Égo sum Púmphilus.	Who is the man? — I am Pamphilus.
Qui státus, *quod* discrímen, *quae* fúerit in rẽ públicã tempéstasílla, *quis* néscit?	Who does not know, what a state of things, what a danger, what a stormy time that was in the republic?
Heus, *écquis* in vílla est? *Écquis* hóc réclûdit?	Holla! Is there any one in the house? Is any one opening the door?
Quâlis est istórum oratio?	What is the character of the language used by these?
Quâlis oratóris et *quánti* hóminis in dicéndo pútas ésse, históriam scríbĕre?	What sort of an orator, and how great a man in the use of language, do you suppose it requires to write a history?
Únde iste ámor tam improvísus ac tam repentinus?	Whence this love of yours so unexpected and so sudden?
Cur Africânum doméstici paríetes nôn texérunt?	Why did his domestic walls not protect Africanus?
Déus fálli *qui* potest?	How can the Deity be deceived?
Quin, quod ést feréndum, férs?	Why do you not bear what has to be borne?
Quídni póssim?	Why should I not be able?

III. Questions in Latin are frequently modified by particles; such as *ne*, perhaps? then? *nonne*, not? is it not so? *num*, *numne*, then? *an*, or perhaps? *anne*, *annon*, or not?

To *nonne* and *annon* the expected answer is always "yes"; to *num* and *an*, commonly "no." The enclitic *ne* is always subjoined to the emphatic word. When this word is the verb of the sentence, the answer may be "yes" or "no"; when another word, it is commonly "no." E. g.

Pergísne éam ártem illúdere, in quâ excéllis ípse?	Do you persist in deriding the very art in which you yourself excel?
Úbi aut quâlis sit túa méns? *Potésne* dícere?	Where or what is the nature of your mind? Can you tell?
Quám rém ágis? — *Egóne?* Argéntum cúdo, quód tibi dém.	What are you driving at? — I? I am coining silver, to give to you.
Salísne est, nóbis vôs timéndos esse?	Is it not true, that you are to be feared by us?
Aín' tû? — *Mên'* rógas? — *Itáne* (*sc.* est)?	Do you really say so? — Do you ask *me?* — Is it so?
Quid nunc? Quî spê ant quô consílio hûc ímus? Quid coéptas, Thráso? — *Egóne?*	What now? With what expectation or for what purpose do we come hither? What are you after, Thraso? — I?
Nónne animadvértis?	Do ye not perceive?
Num quídnam, inquam, nóvi?	Is there anything new, I say?
Num negâre aúdes?	Do you dare to deny it?
Núnquid dúas habêtis pátrias?	Have you two native countries?
*Écquid** sentîtis, in quánto contémtu vivâtis?	Do you perceive in what contempt you live?
Quid? Déum ípsum *núnne* vidísti?	What? Hast thou beheld the Deity himself?
An quísquam pótest sine perturbatiône méntis irásci?	Can any one be angry without agitation of the mind?
An est úllum május málum turpitúdine?	Is there any greater evil than dishonor?
Ánne est íntus Pámphilus?	Pamphilus is not in the house, is he?
An nôn díxi ésse hóc futûrum?	Did I not say that this would be so?
An nôn est ómnis métus sérvitus?	Is not fear of every kind servitude?

IV. Questions, to which a mere "yes" or "no" is expected, may be answered, —

1. By the repetition of the emphatic word of the question, with or without the addition of an intensive word.

2. "Yes," by *sane*, *etiam*, *vērum*, *vēro*, *ita*, *ita est*, *ita enim vēro*.

3. "No," by *non*, *non vēro*, *minīme*, *minīme vēro*, *nihil mĭnus*. E. g.

Éstne pópulus Collatínus ín súā potestâte? — *Est.*	Is the people of Collatia master of itself? — It is.

* After *numquid* and *ecquid* the answer is generally "no"; after *ecquid*, sometimes "yes."

Dâsne hóc nóbis? — *Dô sâne.*	Do you concede this to us? — I do.
Tûne négas? — *Négo hércle véro.*	Do you deny it? — I verily deny it.
Virtútes nárro. — Méas? — *Túas.*	I report virtues. — Mine? — Yours.
Ábiit Clítipho. — Sôlus? — *Sôlus.*	Clitipho has left. — Alone? — Alone.
Nôn irâta és? — *Nôn sûm irâta.*	Are you not angry? — I am not angry.
Éstne frâter íntus? — *Nŏn ést.*	Is your brother in? — He is not.
Nôn exístimas, cádere in sapiéntem aegritúdinem? — *Prórsus nôn árbitror.*	You do not suppose that a philosopher can be affected by misfortune? — I do not think it possible.
Haeccíne túa dómus ést? — *Íta,* inquam.	Is *this* your house? — It is.
Fácies? — *Vĕrum.*	Shall you do it? — Yes.
Vísne sermóni réliquo dêmus óperam sedéntes? — *Sáne quídem.*	Is it your wish that we attend to the rest of the discussion sitting? — Certainly.
Cur nôn intróeo in nóstram dómum? — Quid dómun véstram? — *Íta enim véro.*	Why do I not go into *our* house? — What, into your house? — Ay, to be sure.
Dic mihi, cújum pécus? an Moelliboéi? — *Nôn,* vérum Aegônis.	Tell me, whose flock this is? that of Mœlibœus? — No, but of Ægon.
Nôn ópus est? — *Nôn hércle véro.*	It is *not* necessary? — No, by my troth, no.
An tû hóc nôn crédis? — *Mínime véro.*	Or do you not believe this? — By no means.
An Gállos existimâtis hîc versâri ánimo demísso átque húmili? — *Nihil véro mínus.*	Do you think the Gauls remain here humble and submissive? — Far from it.

Remarks.

1. *Recte* and *optĭme* are either "yes" or "no," according to the nature of the question. *Scilicet,* "doubtless," "to be sure," affirms ironically. E. g. *Satin' salve? dic mihi.* — *Recte,* Are you very well? tell me. — I am. *Quid est?* — *Nihil,* recte perge, What is it? — Nothing. *Thucydidem,* inquit, *imitāmur.* — *Optime,* We imitate Thucydides, he says. — Very well. *Ego tibi irascĕrer? tibi ego possem irasci?* — *Scilicet!* I angry with you? Could I be angry with you? — Forsooth!

2. *Imo* or *immo* always corrects the preceding question, and either raises doubt or opposes something else to it (sometimes the very opposite). Hence it is sometimes "yes," "to be sure," and sometimes "no," "O no." E. g. *Credisne?* — *Imo certe* (Ay, to be sure). — *Non patria praestat omnibus officiis?* — *Immo vero* (certainly). — *Tenaxne est?* — *Imo pertinax* (Nay, even pertinacious). — *Silebitne filius?*

Immo vero (on the contrary) *obsecrābit patrem, ne faciat. — Dic, me orare, ut veniat. — Ad te?* — Imo *ad Philumenam* (No, but to Philumena).

3. If the answer is given with a noun, adjective, or pronoun, its case must be the one required by the verb of the question. E. g. *Cujus liber est? — Caesaris. — Mene* vis? — Te. *Quanti emisti?* — Parvo.

DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

C. I. An interrogative sentence may be composed of two or more members, in such a manner that one excludes the other. Such questions are called *disjunctive* or *double*, and are of two kinds, viz.: —

1. The second member is simply the negation of the first. E. g. Is ambition a virtue, *or none* (i. e. or is it not a virtue)?

2. The second member contains another question opposed to the first. E. g. Has he conquered, *or you* (i. e. or have you conquered)? If, in the answer to a double question, one of the cases is affirmed, the other is denied, and *vice versa*. E. g. It is not a virtue. He has conquered, and *not* you.

II. The particles employed in such disjunctive questions are as follows: —

1. The first member is either introduced by *utrum*, *num*, — *ne*, or stands without any particle.

2. The "or" of the second member is generally *an*, but when the first member is without a particle, the enclitic *ne* may take the place of *an*. When the question contains more than two members, the formula is *utrum*, &c. . . . . *an* . . . . *an*, &c.

3. The "or not" of the second member is *annon* (or *an non*), and more rarely *necne*.

The use of these particles gives rise to five different formulas for disjunctive questions. They are as follows: —

utrum,	utrumne	——	an,	anne,	annon.
num,	numquid	——	an,	annon.	
— ne		——	an,	annon.	
——		——	an,	annon.	
——		——	— ne,	necne.	

EXAMPLES.

Num tábulas hábet, *ánnon?*	Has he the pictures, or not?
Utrum ánimos sociórum ab rê públicâ abalienábas, *án nôn?*	Did you alienate the minds of our allies from the republic, or not?
Ísne est, quém quaéro, *ánnon?*	Is it he whom I am looking for, or not?
Súnt haêc túa vérba, *nécne?*	Are these your words, or not?
Dicam huic, *an nón* dicam?	Shall I tell him, or shall I not tell?

Útrum ígitur hâs córporis, *an* Pythágorae tíbi mâlis víres ingénii dári ?	Which would you then rather have, physical strength like this, or the intellectual powers of Pythagoras ?
Útrum tándem perspicuísne dúbia aperiúntur, *an* dúbiis perspícua tolluntur ?	Are doubtful things elucidated by those that are clear, or are the clear corrected by the doubtful ?
Núnquid dúas habêtis pátrias, *an* éstílla pátria commûnis ?	Have you two countries, or is that your common country ?
Aristóteles ipsé*ne* érrat, *an* álios vúlt errâre ?	Is Aristotle himself mistaken, or does he wish others to be so ?
Récto itínere duxísti exércitum ad hóstes, *an* per anfráctus viârum ?	Did you march the army directly against the enemy, or by a circuitous route ?
Útrum hóc tû párum commemínisti, *an* égo nôn sátis intellexi, *an* mutâsti senténtiam ?	Do you not recollect this very well, or did I not sufficiently comprehend it, or have you changed your opinion ?
Romámne vénio, *an* hic máneo, *an* Arpínum fúgio ?	Shall I go to Rome, or remain here, or flee to Arpinum ?

Remarks.

1. *Utrum* indicates at the very outset that a second question is to follow. In *direct* double questions beginning with *num*, the first member is expected to be denied, and the second affirmed. (Cf. Lesson LXXXV. *B.* III.) In double questions otherwise introduced, either member may be affirmed or denied.

2. The *ne* of the second member is almost entirely confined to *indirect* questions. E. g. *Sine sciam, captiva materne in castris tuis sim*, I wish to know whether I am a captive or your mother in your camp. *Albus aterne fuĕris, ignorat*, He knows not whether you were white or black. On the use of these particles in indirect disjunctive questions generally, see Lesson LXXXVII. *D.*

3. When "or" introduces no second question, but only another word of the same question, it is expressed by *aut*. E. g. *Tibi ego* aut *tu mihi servus es? — Voluptas melioremne efficit* aut *laudabiliorem virum?*

4. If the second member of a double question is introduced by the English "and not," the Romans put simply *non*. E. g. *Ergo histrio hoc* vidēbit *in scenâ*, non vidēbit *vir sapiens in vitâ?* Will the actor see this on the stage, *and* the philosopher *not* in life? *Hujus vos animi* monumenta retinēbis, *corpŏris in Italiâ* nullum sepulcrum esse patiemini? Will you retain the monuments of his genius, and not suffer a sepulchre for his body in Italy?

The form, figure.	*Forma, figura, ae,* f. *Species, ei,* f.
The woman	Femĭna, ae, *f.*; mulier, ĕris, *f.*
The wife.	Conjux, ugis, *f.*; uxor, ōris, *f.*
The married woman.	Nupta, marĭta, ae, *f.*

The lady of the house, mistress.	Materfamilias, *f.*; hĕra, domĭna, ae, *f.*
The mother.	Māter, tris, *f.*
The daughter.	Filĭa, nāta, ae, *f.*
The girl.	Puella, ae, *f.*
The door.	Ostĭum, i, *n.*; janŭa, ae, *f.*
The bottle.	Lagēna, ae, *f.*
The phial.	Ampulla, ae, *f.*
The fork.	Furca, ae, *f.*
The spoon.	Cochlĕar, is, *n.*
The plate.	Catillus, i, *m.* (*pl.* catilla, *n.*); discus, i, *m.* (*large plate*).
The cup.	Pocillum ansātum (i, *n.*).
The saucer.	Scutella, ae, *f.*
The towel.	Mantēle, is, *n.*; mantēlium, i, *n.*
The napkin.	Mappa, mappŭla, ae, *f.*
The soup.	Juscŭlum, i, *n.*
The butter.	Butўrum, i, *n.*
The dessert.	Mensa secunda (ae, *f*); bellāria, ōrum, *n.*
To serve the dessert.	Mensam secundam apponĕre.
To eat (sip) soup.	Juscŭlum sorbēre (-bŭi).
To wipe.	Tergĕo, ēre, tersi, tersum. Extergēre (ALIQUAM REM).
To speak through the nose.	De nārĭbus lŏqui.
The nose.	Nāsus, i, *m.*; nāres, ium, *f. pl.* (*nostrils*).
The silk.	Bombyx, ўcis, *m.*; serĭca, ōrum, *n.*
Made of silk.	Serĭcus, bombycīnus, a, um.
The silk stuff.	Serĭca, bombycīna, ōrum, *n.*
The silk stocking, cravat, &c.	Tibiāle serĭcum, focāle bombycīnum.
My good linen.	Lintea mĕa bŏna (*pl.*).
His beautiful linen shirts.	Indusia ejus lintea pulchra.
The room (parlor).	Diaeta, ae, *f.*
The sleeping-room.	Cubicŭlum, i, *n.*
The closet, chamber.	Conclāve, is, *n.*
The wardrobe.	Conclāve vestiārĭum.
The dining-room.	Coenācŭlum, triclinĭum, i, *n.*
The front-room.	Cubicŭlum antĭcum.
The back-room.	Cubicŭlum postĭcum.
The study.	Musēum, i, *n.*; bibliothēca, ae, *f.*
To live in, occupy.	Habitāre (in) alĭquo lŏco. Tenēre lŏcum.
To live in the front (or first part of the house).	Primum lŏcum aedĭum tenēre.
The sister.	Sŏror, ōris, *f.*
The young lady (virgin).	Virgo, ĭnis, *f.*
The tongue.	Lingua, ae, *f.*
The language.	Lingua, ae, *f.*; sermo, ōnis, *m.*

The street.	Via, via publĭca (ae, *f.*); platēa, ae, *f.* (*wide street*).
The city, town.	Urbs, *gen.* urbis, *f.*; oppĭdum, i, *n.*; civĭtas, ātis, *f.* (*inhabitants*).
The hand.	Mānus, ūs, *f.*
The right hand.	Dextra, ae, *f.*
The left hand.	Sinistra, laeva, ae, *f.*
The nut.	Nux, *gen.* nūcis, *f.*
The father and his son or his daughter.	Pǎter et ējus fĭlius vel fĭlia.
The mother with her son or daughter.	Mâter cum ējus fĭlio seu fĭliā (nātā).
The child and its brother or its sister.	Infans ejúsque frâter sive sóror.
To take into one's hand.	In mănum sumĕre.
To hold in one's hand.	(In) mānū tenēre.
To write with one's own hand.	Mānū propriā scribĕre.
He thinks he will be praised.	Crédit, sê laudâtum íri.
I hope that I shall be loved.	Spéro, mê amâtum íri.

Exercise 158.

Are you not surprised at what my friend has done? — I am much surprised at it. — At what is your son surprised? — He is surprised at your courage. — Are you sorry for having written to my uncle? — I am, on the contrary, glad of it. — At what art thou afflicted? — I am not afflicted at the happiness of my enemy, but at the death of my friend. — How are your brothers? — They have been very well for these few days. — Are you glad of it? — I am glad to hear that they are well. — Are you a Saxon? — No, I am a Prussian. — Do the Prussians like to learn French? — They do like to learn it. — Do the Prussians speak German as well as the Saxons? — The Saxons and the Prussians speak German well; but the Austrians do not pronounce it very well. — Which day of the week do the Turks celebrate (*agĕre* or *festum habēre*)? — They celebrate Friday; but the Christians celebrate Sunday, the Jews Saturday, and the negroes their birthday (*natalis*, sc. *dies*). — Has your sister my gold ribbon? — She has it not. — Who has my large bottle? — Your sister has it. — Do you sometimes see your mother? — I see her often. — When did you see your sister? — I saw her three months and a half ago. — Who has my fine nuts? — Your good sister has them. — Has she also my silver forks? — She has them not. — Why does your brother complain? — He complains because his right hand aches. — Which bottle has your little sister broken? — She broke the one which my mother bought yesterday. — Have you eaten of my soup or of my mother's? — I have eaten neither of yours nor your mother's, but of that of my good sister. — Have you seen the woman that was with me this morning? — I have not seen her. — Has your mother hurt herself. — She has not hurt herself. — Have you a sore nose? — I have not a sore nose, but a sore hand. — Have you cut your finger? — No, my lady, I have

cut my hand. — Will you give me a pen? — I will give you one. — Will you (have) this (one) or that (one)? — I will (have) neither. — Which (one) do you wish to have? — I wish to have that which your sister has. — Can you write with this pen? — I can write with it. — Shall you remain at home, or ride out or drive out? — I shall remain at home. — Has he washed his hands or his feet? — He had done both. — Has he learnt his lesson or not? — He has learnt it. — He has not learnt it. — You certainly are mistaken, if you suppose that you will be praised, unless you are assiduous.

Lesson LXXXVI. — PENSUM OCTOGESIMUM SEXTUM.

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

A. By the subjunctive mood the speaker does not absolutely assert the existence of an action or state, but represents it as he conceives it, as dependent upon other circumstances, and as possible only in consequence of them. Hence this mood serves to express that which is contingent, conditional, or hypothetical; or, in general, that which *may, can, might, could, would,* or *should* be or be done.

The subjunctive is used more extensively in Latin than in English, and is often put where the latter idiom requires or prefers the indicative It most commonly occurs in *subjoined* or dependent clauses, as its name implies, but frequently also as the leading verb of an independent clause.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN HYPOTHETICAL PROPOSITIONS.

B. An hypothetical sentence is composed of two members, called the *protasis* and *apodosis*. The former contains the *condition*, and is commonly introduced by one of the conjunctions *si, nisi, etsi, etiamsi,* or *tametsi;* the latter denotes the *inference* or *conclusion*. The subjunctive may occur in both these members of an hypothetical proposition, and represents an action or state as the *possible* consequence of other circumstances; in other words, that something *would take place* or *would have taken place, if* or *unless* something else *were so* or *had been so*. In this use of the subjunctive (as *conditionalis*), the Latin language makes an important distinction between the present and the past tenses of that mood.

I. In the protasis of a hypothetical proposition, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive imply that the fact or reality *does*

not or *cannot* correspond with the supposition made, and in the apodosis that something *would be* or *would have been, if* the fact supposed *were* or *had been* a real one. E. g.

Si sémper óptima tenêre *possêmus*, haûd sáne consílio múltum *egerêmus*.	If we were always able to keep what is best, we surely would not stand in need of much deliberation.
Nôn *póssem* vívere, *nísi* in lítteris *vívĕrem*.	I could not live, unless I lived in letters.
Si Neptûnus, quod Théseo promísĕrat, *nôn fecísset*, Théseus fílio Hippólyto *nón orbâtus ésset*.	If Neptune had not done what he had promised Theseus, Theseus would not have lost his son Hippolytus.
Aûrum et argéntum, aês, férrum frústra natûra divína *genuísset*, *nísi* éadem *docuísset*, quemádmodum ad eôrum vénas pervenirêtur.	Divine Nature would have produced gold and silver, brass, iron, to no purpose, unless she at the same time had taught us how to get at their veins.
Nec tû, *si* Atheniénsis *ésses*, clârus únquam *fuísses*.	Nor would you ever have been a distinguished man, if you had been an Athenian.
Id, *nísi* hîc in túo régno *essêmus*, nôn *tulíssem*.	We would not have submitted to that, unless we were here in your kingdom.
Nôn, *si redísset* fílius, éi páter véniam *dáret*?	If the son had returned, would not his father give him leave?
Haêc, *si*, bís bína quót éssent, *didícisset*, cérte *nón díceret*.	If he knew how much twice two are, he would certainly not say this.

Remarks.

1. The protasis and apodosis both generally contain either the imperfect or the pluperfect subjunctive. The imperfect, however, frequently takes the place of the pluperfect in one of the clauses, as in several of the preceding examples. When thus used, it serves to transfer a past action, partly at least, into the present time. E. g. *Quod certe non* fecisset, si *suum numĕrum nautārum naves* habērent (= *habuissent*), Which he would certainly not have done, if the ships *had had* (lit. *were then possessed of*) their usual complement of men. And in the apodosis: *Cimbri* si *statim infesto agmine urbem* petissent, *grande discrimen* esset (= *fuisset*), If the Cimbri had at once invaded the city, there *would have been* a desperate struggle.

2. The mood of the verb in the apodosis is sometimes the indicative instead of the subjunctive. (Cf. Lesson LXXXIV. *A.* III.) E. g. *Quem hominem*, si *qui pudor in te* fuisset, *sine supplicio dimittere non* debuisti, If there had been any shame left in you, you ought not to have dismissed the man without punishment. Quodsi *Pompeius prīvātus* esset *hoc tempŏre*, *tamen* erat *mittendus*, Even if Pompey were at

this time a private man, it would still be necessary to send him. *Jamque castra exscindĕre* parabant (= *paravissent*), ni *Mucianus sextam legionem* opposuisset, And now they would have already begun to destroy the camp, unless Mucianus had opposed the sixth legion to them. *Praeclare* viceramus (= *vicissēmus*), nisi *Lepidus* recipisset *Antonium*, We would have won a signal victory, unless Lepidus has received Antony. This usage is confined chiefly to the pluperfect.

II. The present and perfect subjunctive in the protasis indicate that the reality either *does*, or at any rate *may*, *correspond* with the supposition made. The apodosis to such a clause then contains, either one of the same tenses of the subjunctive, or a tense of the indicative mood. E. g.

Memória *minúitur*, *nisi* éam *exérceas*, aut *si sis* natúrā túrdior.	Your memory grows weaker, unless you exercise it, or if you by nature are somewhat slow of comprehension.
Aequabilitâtem vítae servâre nôn *possis*, *si* aliôrum virtûtem ímitans *omíttas* túam.	You cannot preserve consistency of life, if while imitating the virtues of others you neglect your own.
Díes *defíciat*, *si velim* numerâre, quíbus bónis málе evénerit.	The day would fail me, if I wished to enumerate the good men that have suffered evil.
Si injúriae nôn *sínt*, haûd saépe auxílii *égeas*.	If there were no injuries (inflicted), you would not often stand in need of help.
Si exsístat hódie ab ínferis Lycúrgus, *gaúdeat* murôrum Spártae ruínis.	If Lycurgus were to-day to rise from the dead, he might rejoice in the ruins of the walls of Sparta.
Sim imprúdens, si plûs *póstúlem*, quam hómini a rêrum natúrā tríbui pótest.	I would be imprudent, if I demanded more than can be conceded to man from the nature of things.
Thucýdidis oratiónes égo laudâre sóleo; imitâre néque *póssim*, si *vélim*, nec *vélim* fortásse, *si póssim*.	I am accustomed to praise the orations of Thucydides, but imitate them I neither could, if I would, nor would I perhaps, if I could.
Si scíeris áspidem occúlte latêre úspiam, ímprobe *fécéris*, nísi *monúeris* álterum, ne assidĕat.	If (for example) you should know of an asp lying concealed anywhere, you would do wrong, if you did not caution another not to sit down there.
Némo de nóbis ûnus excéllat; *sin* quis *exstítĕrit*, álio in lóco et apud álios *sít*.	Let no one of our number excel alone; but if any one has won distinction, let him be among others and in another place.
Si a corónā *relíctus sim*, non *quéam* dícere.	If I am deserted by my audience, I cannot speak.

Remarks.

1. From the above examples it will be perceived, that in conditional clauses the present and perfect subjunctive may generally be rendered by the corresponding tenses of the indicative, from which they differ but little. Sometimes, however, it is better to translate them by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. In Latin, however, the distinctions, already laid down, respecting the different tenses of the subjunctive, are never disregarded, and the present tenses (i. e. the present and perfect) always imply the reality or possibility of the fact supposed, while the past tenses (i. e. the imperfect and pluperfect) represent it as wanting or impossible. E. g. *Haec* si *tēcum patria* loquātur, *nonne impetrare* debeat? If your country should thus talk to you (an event which the speaker considers *possible*), ought it not to obtain what it requires of you? But, Si *universa provincia loqui* posset, *hāc vōce* uterētur, If the entire province could speak (an event which the speaker deems *impossible*), it would use this language towards you. And so in every instance of the kind.

2. When the clause introduced by *nisi*, *nisi forte*, or *nisi vero* stands as a correction of what has gone before, its verb is commonly in the indicative. E. g. *Nemo fere saltat sobriŭs*, nisi forte insanit, No one scarcely ever dances when he is sober, unless perchance he is insane. *Erat autem nihil novi*, *quod scribĕrem*, nisi forte *hoc ad te* putas *pertinēre*, I have nothing new to write you, unless perhaps you consider this of importance to you. — On the Indicative after *si*, *nisi*, &c., generally, see Lesson LXXXIV. *A.* III.

If, (conj.). *If not, unless.*	*Si* (cum Ind. or Subj.). *Nisi*, *ni*: *si non.*
But if.	Sin, sin autem, si vero.
But if not.	Si non, si mĭnus, si aliter.
If indeed.	Si quidem.
If (unless) perchance.	Si (nisi) forte.
If any one.	Si quis (*or* aliquis).
If anything.	Si quid (aliquid).
If at any time.	Si quando (aliquando).
If I had money.	Si mihi ésset pecúnia. / Si pecúniam habêrem.
If I saw him.	Si éum vidêrem.
If I were not.	Nísi égo éssem.
If he should do this.	Si hóc (*or* hóc si) fáceret (făciat).
If any one should say this.	Si quís hoc dícat (díceret).
If perchance he were to lose his money.	Si pecúniam súam fórte pérdat (pérderet).
Were he at any time to beat his dog.	Si aliquándo cánem súam percútĕret (percútiat).
If you were rich.	Si tû dîves ésses.
If he is not ill, why does he send for the physician?	Si aêger nôn ést, quid caúsae ést, cur médicum accéssat?

Should you (= if you should) still receive my letter to-day, I beg you to call on me instantly.	Lítteras méas *si* hódie étiam *accípias*, a tê quaéso et péto, ut státim ad mê vénias.
Should he (= if he should) be hungry, something must be given him to eat.	*Si esúriat*, dándum est éi áliquid ad manducándum.
I should do it.	Fácĕrem.
He would have done it.	Fecísset.
We would go thither.	Nôs éo irêmus.
They would have gone thither.	Éo ivíssent.
They would have written to us.	Lítteras ad nôs dedíssent.
You would thank me once.	Grátias míhi aliquándo ágĕres (ágas).
I would buy this, if I had money.	Émĕrem hoc, si pecúnia míhi ésset. Si míhi ésset pecúnia, émĕrem hóc.
Had I money enough, I would pay for it.	Si pecúnia míhi sufficĕret, sólvĕrem pro hôc.
Had I money, I would give you some of it.	Si míhi ésset pecúnia, tíbi de éā dárem.
If I went thither, I should see him.	Si éo írem (éam), éum vidêrem (vídeam).
If I should give this to him, he would keep it.	Hóc, si éi dárem, tenêret.
If I should give that to him, he would not return it.	Ístud, si éi dárem, míhi nôn restituĕret.
If you had come a little sooner, you would have met my brother.	Si aliquántulo matúrius venísses, frâtrem méum convenísses.
If he knew what you have done, he would scold you.	Ílle si scíret fáctum túum, tíbi increpâret.
If there was any wood, he would make a fire.	Si lígnum adésset, ígnem accéndĕret.
If I had received my money, I would have bought a new pair of shoes.	Ego, si pecúniam míhi débitam accepíssem, nóvum calceórum pâr emíssem.
Would you learn Latin, if I learnt it?	Discerêsne sermônem Latínum, si ego díscĕrem?
I would learn it, if you learnt it.	Discĕrem, si tû discĕres.
Would you have learnt English, if I had learnt it?	Didicissêsne Ánglice, si égo didicíssem?
I would have learnt it, if you had learnt it.	Didicissem, si tû didicísses.
Would you go to Germany, if I should go there with you?	Facerêsne íter in Germániam, si égo têcum proficiscĕrer?
I should go there, if you would go with me.	Fácerem sáne, si tû mêcum proficiscerêris.
Would you have gone to Italy, if I had gone there?	Fecissêsne íter in Itáliam, si égo proféctus éssem?
I would have gone.	Véro, fecíssem.

Would you write a note, if I had written a letter?	Scriberêsne schédŭlam, si égo lĭtteras scripsissem?
I should write a book, if you had written a letter.	Scrĭbĕrem égo lĭbrum, si tû lĭtteras scripsísses.
Would you remain at home, if I went out?	Tenerêsne tê dómi, si égo in pŭblĭcum prodírem?
I should remain at home.	Sáne, tenêrem mê dómi.
The (pair of) spectacles.	*Perspicillum, i, *n.*
The old man.	Sĕnex, *gen.* sĕnis, *m.*
Optics.	Optĭcē, ēs, *f.*
The optician.	Optĭcēs gnārus.
The son-in-law.	Gĕner, ĕri, *m.*
The daughter-in-law.	Nūrus, ūs, *f.*
The step.	Grădus, ūs, *m.*; passus, ūs, *m.*
To make a step.	Grădum facĕre.
The progress.	Progressus, ūs, *m.*; progessio, ōnis, *f.*
To make progress (in anything).	*Procēdĕre. Progrĕdi. Proficĕre. Progressus facĕre.* (IN ALIQUA RE.)
To progress in virtue.	Progressiōnem facĕre ad virtūtem. / Procēdĕre et progrĕdi in virtūte.
To make great progress.	Multum proficĕre (in aliquā re).
To make but little progress.	Părum proficĕre.
Does he make progress in learning Latin?	Proficítne in línguā Latínā ediscéndā?
Really.	Vēre (*adv.*); rē verā, rē.
Once, at some future time.	Aliquando, olim (*adv.*).
I should like to know.	Scire vélim.
Would you have the goodness?	Velísne esse éā benignitâte (ut . . . .)?
Would you be so good?	Velísne esse tam benígnus (ut . . . .)?
Would you do me the favor?	Velísne míhi dáre (tribúere) hoc?
He might fall.	Cádat (cáděret). / Fíeri potest, ut cádat.
He might do it.	Fácere hóc póssit.
To ask any one about anything.	Interrogāre aliquem aliquid *or* de aliquā re.
To keep one's bed.	Lecto tenēri, lecto affixum esse.
Perhaps you are mistaken.	Nescio (dubito) an erres. / Fortasse erras.

EXERCISE 159.

Would you have money, if your father were here? — I should have some, if he were here. — Would you have been pleased, if I had had some books? — I should have been much pleased, if you had had some. — Would you have praised my little brother, if he had been good? — If he had been good, I should certainly not only have

praised, but also loved, honored, and rewarded him. — Should we be praised, if we did our exercises? — If you did them without a fault, you would be praised and rewarded. — Would my brother not have been punished, if he had done his exercises? — He would not have been punished, if he had done them. — Would your sister have been praised, if she had not been skilful? — She would certainly not have been praised, if she had not been very skilful, and if she had not worked from morning until evening. — Would you give me something, if I were very good? — If you were very good, and if you worked well, I would give you a fine book. — Would you have written to your sister, if I had gone to Dresden? — I would have written and sent her something handsome, if you had gone thither. — Would you speak, if I listened to you? — I would speak, if you listened to me, and if you would answer me. — Would you have spoken to my mother, if you had seen her? — I would have spoken to her, and have begged of her to send you a handsome gold watch if I had seen her. — If the men should come, you would be obliged to give them something to drink. — If he could do this, he would do that. — A peasant having seen that old men used spectacles to read, went to an optician and asked for a pair. The peasant then took a book, and having opened it, said the spectacles were not good. The optician put another pair of the best which he could find in his shop upon his nose; but the peasant being still unable to read, the merchant said to him: "My friend, perhaps you cannot read at all?" "If I could," said the peasant, "I should not want your spectacles." — I have always flattered myself, my dear brother, that you loved me as much as I love you; but I now see, that I have been mistaken. I should like to know why you went a walking without me? — I have heard, my dear sister, that you are angry with me, because I went a walking without you. — I assure you that, had I known that you were not ill, I should have come for you; but I inquired at your physician's about your health, and he told me that you had been keeping your bed the last eight days.

Lesson LXXXVII. — PENSUM OCTOGESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT PROPOSITIONS.

A. The present and perfect subjunctive are frequently used independently in a *potential* sense, and rendered by the English *may, can,* &c. In this construction the perfect is generally equivalent to the present. E. g.

Fórsitan *quaerâtis.*	You may perhaps inquire.
Quis *dubîtet?*	Who can doubt?

Vélim (*nôlim*, *mâlim*) sic exístimes.	I wish you to (I do not wish you to, I would rather you would) think so.
Némo ístud tíbi *concêdat*.	No one can concede this to you.
Fórsitan témere *fécerim*.	I may perhaps have acted rashly.
Hic *quaérat* quíspiam, cujúsnam caúsā tánta rêrum molítio fácta sit.	Here some one may inquire, on whose account so great exertions were made.
Íta facíllime sine invídiā laûdem *invénias* et amícos *páres*.	You may thus easily win glory without any envy, and gain friends.
Fáveas tû hósti? bonôrum spém virtutémque *debílites*? et te consulârem, aut senatôrem, aut dénique cívem *pútes*?	Can you favor the enemy? Can you deject the hope and courage of the patriotic? and still consider yourself a man of consular rank, or a senator, or even a citizen?
At nôn históriā *céssĕrim* Graécis, nec oppónĕre Thucýdidi Sallústium *véreor*.	But still I cannot surrender the palm in history to the Greeks, nor am I afraid to oppose Sallust to Thucydides.
Hóc sine dubitatiône *confirmávĕrim*, eloquéntiam rém ésse ómnium difficíllimam.	I can assert this without any hesitation, that eloquence is the most difficult of all things.

Remarks.

1. The use of the present subjunctive instead of the perfect is an energetic expression, by which an unfinished action is represented as already completed. It is confined chiefly to the active form of verbs, but sometimes also occurs in the passive. E. g. *Ne illi quidem se nobis merĭto praetulĕrint gloriatique sint*, Not even they can justly call themselves better than us, and glory in it.

2. The *imperfect* subjunctive is rarely used in this potential sense, except where the idea of unreality or impossibility is to be conveyed. Thus of wishes to which no fulfilment is (or can be) expected: *Vellem*, I could wish; *nollem*, I should be unwilling; *mallem*, I should rather wish. To these add the second and third persons singular of *dico*, *pŭto*, *crĕdo*, *video*, *cerno*, and *discerno*, which frequently occur in a potential sense, instead of the *pluperfect* subjunctive. E. g. *Reos dicĕres*, You would have called them guilty (i. e. if you had seen them). *Signum datum* crederes, *ut vasa colligĕrent*, You would have supposed that a signal had been given to collect vases. *Haud facile discernĕres*, You could not have easily distinguished. *Quis unquam crederet* (or *arbitrarētur*)? Who could ever have believed (*or* supposed)?

B. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used in independent clauses to express a wish, an asseveration, a request, command, or exhortation, and also a concession or permission. E. g.

With the subjunctive thus used, the English "not" is expressed by *ne*, and not by *non*. When a wish or request is conveyed, one of the verbs *velim*, *suadeo*, or *censeo* is often added.

Dĭi béne *vértant!*	May the gods grant success to it!
Dĭi *prohíbĕant* a nóbis ímpias méntes!	May the gods defend us against impious minds!
Váleant cíves méi, *váleant; sínt* incólúmes, *sínt* floréntes, *sint* beáti!	Farewell to my fellow-citizens, farewell! May they be safe, may they be prosperous, may they be happy!
Stét haêc úrbs praeclâra, mihíque pátria carissima!	Let this noble city remain unshaken, and my dearest fatherland!
Ne sálvus *sim*,* si áliter scríbo, ac séntio.	Let me perish, if I write differently from what I think.
Vélim míhi *ignóscas.*	I wish you to pardon (*or* excuse) me.
Quídquid véniat in méntem, *scríbas vélim.*	I want you to write whatever comes into your mind.
Éssĕdum áliquod *suádeo cápias.*	I advise you to take some travelling conveyance.
Trévíros *vítes, cénseo;* aúdio capitáles ésse.	I think you should avoid the Treviri; I hear that they are mortal against us.
Fácias. Relínquas. Ad nos *vénias.*	Do so. Relinquish. Come to see us.
Aúdiat, vídeat. Désinant.	Let him hear, let him see. Let them cease.
Hóc *ne fáceris. Níhil ignóvĕris.*	Do not do this. Do not pardon anything.
Misericórdiā *ne commôtus sis.*	Do not be moved by compassion.
Níhil incómmodo valetúdĭnis túae *fécĕris.*	Do not do anything to the detriment of your health.
Émas, nôn quód ópus ést, sed quód necésse ést.	Buy not what you want, but what is absolutely necessary.
Immitêmus nóstros Brútos, Camíllos, Décios; *amêmus* pátriam, *pareâmus* senátui, *consulâmus* bónis.†	Let us imitate our Brutuses, our Camilli, our Decii; let us cherish our country, obey the senate, and provide for the patriotic.
Meminérĭmus étiam advérsus ínfimos justítiam ésse servándam.	Let us remember, that the requirements of justice must be observed towards the humblest even.
Ne desperêmus; a légibus nôn *recedâmus.*	Let us not despair; let us not swerve from the laws.

REMARKS.

1. The subjunctive instead of the imperative is especially frequent in the third person; as, *dicat, faciat, scribant*, let him say, let him do,

* So also *moriar, inteream, peream*, Let me die, perish (if that is so).
† In exhortations the subjunctive is commonly in the *plural*.

let them write. The second person thus used is commonly connected with a negative, and the perfect is put in the sense of the present; as, *ne dixeris, ne hoc feceritis*, do not say, do (ye) not do this. The subjunctive implies *a gentleness* of command, which is sometimes increased by the addition of words like *quaeso, oro*, I beseech you; *dum*, now, pray; and *sis* (= *si vis*), please. E. g. *Quaeso, parcas mihi*, I beg you to spare me. *Taceas* (*tace*), *sis*, Please be silent.

2. In prescriptions which relate to the past, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are employed. E. g. *Pater ejus fortasse aliquando iniquior erat*; paterētur, His father was perhaps at times unjust; he was obliged to bear it. *Forsitan non nemo vir fortis dixerit*, restitisses, A brave man may say, perhaps, you ought to have resisted.

3. In exhortations *non* is sometimes used instead of *ne*. E. g. *Non* (for *ne*) *desperēmus*, Let us not despair.

C. The subjunctive is also used in doubtful questions, to which no positive answer is expected, and which imply the idea of the contrary.

These negative questions are commonly rendered by *can*, *shall*, *could*, &c. The subjunctive of this connection is called the *dubitative*.

Quíd *fáciam?* Quô *éam?*	What can I do? Where can I go?
Quíd *fácĕrem?* Quô *īrem?*	What could I do? Where could I go?
Quid *fáciam? róger*, anne *rógem?*	What shall I do? Shall I ask or be asked?
Quém tê *appéllem?*	What shall I call you?
Quíd *fáceret* áliud?	What else could he do?
Cur fortûnam *periclitarētur?*	Why should he try his fortune?
Nam, quém *férret*, si paréntem nôn férret súum?	Who could he bear, if he could not bear his own parent?
Cum tempestâte *púgnem* periculóse pótius, quam ílli *obtémperem* et *párēam?*	Shall I fight with the storm at my own peril, rather than yield to and obey it?
Apud exércitum míhi *fúeris*, ínquit, tót ánnos? fórum nôn *attígĕris? abfúeris* támdiu?	You have been with the army, said he, for so many years? You have not come in contact with the forum? You have been absent so long?

Remark. — In these questions the answer implied is commonly the opposite. E. g. *Quis possit*, Who can (could)? — No one. *Quis non possit?* Who could not? — Every one could. *Hoc non noceat?* This is not hurtful? — It is certainly so.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

D. When a question is stated indirectly, or merely quoted, its verb is in the subjunctive.

A clause containing an indirect question is generally dependent upon another verb. The verbs on which an indirect question may depend are not only those of asking, but many others, especially those requiring the accusative with the infinitive. (Cf. Lesson LIII.)

All the words and particles used in direct questions may also introduce an indirect one. They are *quis, quid; qui, quae, quod; quot, quantus, quam, ubi, unde, quare, cur, uter, quo, quomŏdo; utrum, an, — ne, num.* (Cf. Lesson LXXXV. *B.* II.)

When the question is double, it follows the construction of direct questions of the same class. (Cf. Lesson LXXXV.)

EXAMPLES.

Quaéritur, *quid faciendum sit.*	The question is, what is to be done.
Mórs ípsa *quid sit,* primum est vidéndum.	We must first see what death itself is.
Quâlis sit ánimus, ípse ánimus néscit.	The mind itself is ignorant of what mind is.
Dísce, *quid sít* vívĕre.	Learn what it is to live.
Quid quaêque nóx aut díes *férat,* incértum est.	It is uncertain what every night or day may bring.
Quaéritur, *cur* doctíssimi hómines de máximis rêbus *dissénti-ant.*	The question is, why the most learned differ on the most important points.
Difficile díctu est, *quaênam* caûsa *sit.*	It is difficult to say, what the reason is.
Nôn, *quantum* quísque *pósit,* sed *quánti* quísque *sit,* ponderándum est.	We are not to consider what any one can do, but what he is morally worth.
Nôn est, *cur* spês eôrum *infringâtur.*	There is no reason why their hope should be dejected.
Vídeâmus primum, deorúm*ne* providéntiâ múndus *regâtur.*	Let us see first, whether the world is governed by the providence of the gods.
Inter sê rogitábant, *num** quém plebéi cónsŭlis *poenitêret.*	They inquired of each other, whether any one was tired of the plebeian consul.
Antígonus nóndum statúerat, *conservâret* Eúmenem, *nec ne.*	Antigonus had not yet determined whether he would save Eumenes or not.
Delíbĕrat senâtus, captívos ab hóstibus *rédimat, an nôn.*	The senate is deliberating, whether to redeem the captives from the enemy, or not.
Ípse *quî sit, útrum sit, an nôn sit,* íd quóque néscit.	He himself does not know what he is, nor whether he is or is not.
Quód nescire málum est, agitêmus, *utrúmne* divítiis hómines, *an sint* virtûte beáti.	Let us discuss what it is a misfortune not to know: whether men are made happy by riches, or by virtue.

* The particle *num* in indirect questions does not imply a negative answer, as in direct questions.

REMARKS.

1. When the question is regarded as direct, the indicative is sometimes used, especially after imperatives like *dic*, *vide*. E. g. *Dic, quaeso*, num *te illa* terrent? Pray tell me, whether those things frighten you? *Quaerāmus*, ubi *maleficium* est (*for* sit), Let us inquire where the mischief is. But instances like these are comparatively rare.

2. The expressions *nescio quis*, *nescio quid*, in the sense of *aliquis* or *quidam*, *aliquid* or *quiddam*, are not linked to any particular mood of the verb. E. g. *Nescio quid* (=*paululum*) *turbatus esse mihi vidēris*, You seem to me to be somewhat agitated.

To propose.	*Anĭmum indūcĕre* (ut . . . .). *Cogitāre* (facĕre aliquid).
I have made up my mind to do this.	Stát mihi sententia (*or simply* stat mihi) fácere hóc.
I propose going on that journey.	Íter íllud fácere cógito.
I have made up my mind to leave here.	Stát mihi abíre hínc.
He proposes to write.	Ánĭmum indûcit scríbere *or* ut scríbat.
To endeavor, strive.	*Opĕram dăre* or *navāre*. *Nīti* or *enīti* (*nīsus sum*). *Laborāre, contendĕre*. (All with UT . . . .)
To make great effort.	Omnĭbus virĭbus contendere. Omnibus nervis connīti.
To make a fruitless effort.	Opĕram et olĕum perdere; frustra nīti.
I wish you would endeavor to do this.	Óperam dês vélim, ut hóc fácias.
I shall endeavor to accomplish it.	Id ut perfíciam, enítar et conténdam.
Take care of your health.	Da óperam, ut váleas.
I endeavor to succeed in it.	Rém éo perdúcere labóro. Ego, ut rém próspere ágam, conténdo.
To aspire after (anything).	*Nīti, annīti*, or *aspirāre* (AD REM). *Pĕtĕre* or *appĕtĕre* (REM).
To aspire after honors, riches, pleasure.	Petĕre honōres, divitias, voluptātem.
To aspire after praise, after one's money.	Ad laudem, ad alicujus pecuniam aspirāre.
The honor.	Honor, ōris, *m.*
Places of honor.	Honōres, munĕra honorifica.
For the sake of honor (honorary).	Honōris causā.
The riches.	Divitiae, ārum, *f.*

The title.	Appellatio, ōnis, *f.*; nōmen, ĭnis, *n.*; dignitas, ātis, *f.*
The reputation.	Existimatio, ōnis, *f.*; dignitas.
To be for (redound to) one's honor or reputation.	Honōri esse alicui.
To injure any one.	*Nocēre* (cŭi, cĭtum) alicui. *Damnum inferre alicui.*
To be an injury to any one.	Damno *seu* detrimento esse alicui.
To plunge, precipitate.	Praecipitāre, dejicĕre (ALIQUEM DE LOCO, IN LOCUM).
To throw any one into the sea.	Dejicĕre aliquem in mare.
To plunge any one into a pit, into destruction, into misery.	Praecipitāre aliquem in fovĕam, in exitium, in măla (miserĭas).
To tie, bind.	Ligāre; alligāre, deligāre, illigāre.
To tie a handkerchief around the neck.	Sudārium ligāre circum collum.
To tie the horse to the tree.	Equum ad arbŏrem alligāre.
To oblige (any one), *to lay one under obligations.*	*Alligāre* or *obligāre* (SIBI ALIQUEM). *Obstringo, ĕre, nxi, ctum.* *Devincio, īre, vinxi, vinctum.* (SIBI ALIQUEM ALIQUĀ RE.)
To oblige any one by kind offices.	Obligāre *or* obstringĕre aliquem officiis.
To oblige any one greatly.	Pergrātum *seu* gratissimum facĕre alicui.
To lay one under perpetual obligations.	Aliquem sibi in perpetuum devincīre.
To render a service to any one.	Grātum facĕre alicui; officia alicui praestāre.
The obligation (duty).	Officium, i, *n.*
The use.	Usus, ūs, *m.*
You would oblige me very much, if you would do me this favor.	Gratíssimum míhi fácies, hóc si benefícium míhi tríbuas.
If you would render me this service, you would lay me under lasting obligations.	Hóc si míhi offícium praéstes, mê tíbi in perpétuum devíncies.
Since you are happy, why, pray, do you complain?	Quóniam félix és, quíd, quaéso, quérĕris?
I should not have complained of what he has done, if he had injured me alone; but in doing it, he plunged many families into misery.	Nihil de éo, quód fécerit, conquéstus éssem, si míhi sóli nocuísset, sed hóc fáciens múltas famílias in mála praecipitávit.
What do you wish to say with this (= what do you mean)?	Quídnam hóc dícis? Quídnam hôc vis intélligi?
Since you have nothing to tell	Quóniam, quód éi núnties, nôn há-

him, why then do you wish to see him?	bes, cur tâmen éum convenire vis?
Who of them has made the best use of his money?	Quis eôrum pecúniâ súâ ûsus est sapientíssime.
I should do it, if it were possible.	Fácerem hóc, si fíeri posset.
Were I in your place.	Si túo lóco essem.
If I were in your place.	Si égo éssem, qui tû és.
Had he (= if he had) the treasures of Crœsus.	Croési divítiae si míhi éssent.
That man would be happier, if he left off gambling.	Felícior ésset ílle, si míssam fácĕret áleam.
He would have been happier, if he had left off gambling.	Felícior fuísset, si míssam fecísset áleam.
He would not have done it, had he (= if he had) foreseen the result.	Id nôn fecísset, si éxîtum praevidísset.
I should think myself ungrateful, did I not (= if I did not) consider you as my benefactor.	Ingrâtum mê putârem ésse, nísi tê míhi beneficiôrum auctórem judicârem.
The French would not have gained the battle, if they had not had superior forces.	Francogálli in proélio nôn vicíssent, ni hóstibus número superióres fuíssent.
I wish you would do this.	Vélim, ut hóc fácias.
I wish you would go there.	Vélim, ut ílluc éas.
I wish you had done it.	Véllem, ut illud fecísses.
I wish you had gone there.	Véllem, ut éo ivísses.
I should have wished to see him, had it been possible.	Convenîre éum voluíssem, si fíeri potuísset.
I should like to read, if I had only leisure.	Légĕrem égo libentíssime, si módo míhi ótium ésset.
If I could, I would do it.	Fácerem hóc, si póssem.
If she were amiable, he would marry her.	Íllam, si amábilis ésset, uxôrem sibi súmĕret.
You would have been a philosopher, if you had observed silence.	Si tacuísses, philósophus fuísses.
Polite.	Urbānus; modestus; benignus, a, um.
Impolite.	Inurbānus, a, um.
Deaf.	Surdus, a, um.
Timid, bashful.	Timĭdus, a, um.
Carefully.	Cum curā; accurāte, diligenter.
The occasion	Occasio, ōnis, *f.*; locus, i, *m.*
Opportunity.	Opportunitas, potestas, ātis, *f.*
I have occasion, the opportunity for doing anything.	Est mihi occasio, potestas faciendi aliquid.
The insensibility.	Inhumanitas, immanitas, ātis, *f.*
The supplication, request.	Preces, *pl.*; flagitātio, ōnis, *f.*
The career (in life).	Vitae curriculum.

To follow one's advice.	{ Sequi alicūjus consilium. { Alicūjus consilio temperāre.
To experience misery.	In miseriâ esse *or* versāri.

Exercise 160.

Well, does your sister make any progress? — She would make some, if she were as assiduous as you. — You flatter me. — Not at all; I assure you that I should be highly (*magnopere*) satisfied, if all my pupils worked like you. — Why do you not go out to-day? — I would go out if it were fine weather. — Shall I have the pleasure of seeing you to-morrow? — If you wish it, I will come. — Shall I still be here when you arrive? — Will you have occasion to go to town this evening? — I do not know, but I would go now if I had an opportunity. — You would not have so much pleasure, and you would not be so happy, if you had not friends and books. — Man would not experience so much misery in his career, and he would not be so unhappy, were he not so blind. — You would not have that insensibility towards the poor, and you would not be so deaf to their supplication, if you had been yourself in misery for some time. — You would not say that, if you knew me well. — Why has your sister not done her exercises? — She would have done them, if she had not been prevented. — If you worked more, and spoke oftener, you would speak better. — I assure you, sir, that I should learn better, if I had more time. — I do not complain of you, but of your sister. — You would have had no reason to complain of her, had she had time to do what you gave her to do. — What has my brother told you? — He has told me that he would be the happiest man in the world, if he knew the Latin language, the most beautiful of all languages. — I should like to know why I cannot speak as well as you. — I will tell you: you would speak quite as well as I, if you were not so bashful. But if you had studied your lessons more carefully, you would not be afraid to speak; for, in order to speak well, one must learn; and it is very natural, that (*necesse* or *par est, ut*) he who does not know well what he has learnt should be timid. — You would not be so timid as you are, if you were sure to make no mistakes. — There are some people who laugh when I speak. — Those are impolite people; you have only to laugh also, and they will no longer laugh at you. If you did as I (do), you would speak well. — You must study a little every day, and you will soon be no longer afraid to speak. — I will endeavor to follow your advice, for I have resolved to rise every morning at six o'clock, to study till ten o'clock, and go to bed early. — I wish your son would be more assiduous. — Let us be more diligent. — Let them listen to the advice of their friend, and not be deaf to the words of wisdom. — Let us imitate the best and wisest among men. — Do you know what that is? — I do not know what it is. — I do not know whether he will go out or remain at home. — Do you know whether he has finished his letter or not? — I do not know. — I beg you not to write. — Please be silent.

Lesson LXXXVIII.—PENSUM DUODENONAGESIMUM.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER CONJUNCTIONS.

A. Dependent clauses denoting an intention, purpose, object, or result are put in the subjunctive. These clauses are commonly introduced by the conjunctions *ut, ne, quo, quin,* and *quominus.* The tense of the subjunctive is determined by that of the leading verb, according to Lesson LXXXIII.

I. *Ut* or *uti,* "that," "in order that," "so that," indicates the purpose, object, consequence, or effect of another action. When it expresses a result, it is commonly preceded by one of the words *sīc, ita, tam, tālis, tantus, ejusmŏdi,* &c. E. g.

Lêgum idcírco sérvi súmus, *ut* líberi ésse *possímus.*	We are therefore the servants of the law, that we may be able to be free.
Ésse opórtet *ut vívas,* nôn vívĕre, *ut édas.*	You should eat to live, and not live to eat.
Románi éum ab arátro abduxérunt, *ut* dictâtor ésset.	The Romans called him from the plough, that he might be dictator.
Pýlades quum sis, díces tê ésse Oréstem, *ut moriâre* pro amíco?	Since you are a Pylades, will you say that you are Orestes, in order to die for your friend?
Si ómnia fêcit, *ut sanâret,* perêgit médicus pártes súas.	If the doctor has done everything (he could) to cure, he has performed his duty.
Cum António *sic* agēmus, *ut perspíciat,* tótum mê futûrum súum.	Let us treat with Antonius in such a manner, that he may see that I will be entirely in his favor.
Sicíliam Vérres *íta* vexâvit, ut éa restítui in prístinum státum núllo módo *pósit.*	Verres has harassed Sicily to such an extent, that it cannot by any means be restored to its former condition.
Ádeo aêqua postulâtis, *ut* últro vóbis *deferénda fúerint.*	Your demands are so reasonable, that it was necessary to accede to them voluntarily.
Pompéius *éâ* ést virtûte ac fortúnā, *ut* éa *potúerit* sémper, quae némo praeter íllum.	Pompey's valor and success is such, that he has always been able to accomplish what no one else could.
Tâlis ést órdo actiônum adhibéndus, *ut* in vítā ómnia *sínt* ápta inter se et conveniéntia.	We should observe such an order of our actions, that everything in life may be harmonious and consistent.

REMARKS.

1. The adverbs *ita, sic, tam* before the verbs and adjectives preceding *ut* are sometimes omitted, and the latter then is rendered by *so that*. (See examples on page 387.)

2. *Ut* is originally an adverb of manner and the correlative of *ita*, so — as. E. g. *Uti initium, sic finis est.* In this sense it is not followed by any particular mood, but has either the indicative or subjunctive, as the construction may require. When, in the sense of *as soon as*, it indicates a relation of time, it generally takes the indicative perfect. E. g. *Ut primum loqui posse coepi*, As soon as I could speak. — On *ut* with the sense of *would that* and *supposing that*, see Lesson LXXXIX.

II. *Ne* always implies a purpose or intended effect, and is equivalent to the English "lest," or "that not." E. g.

Cúra, *ne* dénŭo in mórbum *incĭdas.*	See that you do not fall sick again.
Effício, *ne* cui molésti *sint.*	I see to it, that they do not become troublesome to any one.
Ne íd fieri *pósset*, obsidiône fiêbat.	The possibility of that was prevented by the blockade.
Timóleon orâvit ómnes, *ne* id *fácĕrent.*	Timoleon begged them all not to do that.
Mê óbsecras, *ne oblivíscar* vigilâre.	You beseech me not to forget to watch.
Hortátur éos, *ne* ánimo defíciant.	He exhorts them not to lose their courage.
Quod potuísti prohíbêre, *ne fíeret.*	Which you could have prevented from being done.

REMARKS.

1. *Ut non* is used instead of *ne*, when no intended effect, but a mere consequence, is to be expressed (in the sense of *so that not*), and also when the negation does not relate to the entire sentence, but only to a particular word of it. E. g. *Tum forte aegrotabam*, ut *ad nuptias tuas venīre* non *possem*, I happened to be sick then, *so that* I could *not* come to your wedding. *Confer te ad Manlium*, ut *a me* non ejectus *ad alienos*, sed invitātus *ad tuos* isse *videāris*, Go to Manlius, so that you may not have the appearance of having been cast out among strangers by me, but of having gone invited to your friends.

2. As a continuation of *ut* and *ne* in negative sentences the particle *neve* is used, which after *ne* stands in the sense of *aut ne*, "or lest," "or that not," and after *ut* in the sense of *et ne*, "and that not." E. g. *Legem tulit*, ne *quis ante actarum rerum accusarētur* neve *multarētur*, He enacted a law, that no one should be accused of past offences, nor (or) punished for them.*

* Instead of *neve* preceded by *ut*, *neque* (or *nec*) is not unfrequently employed. E. g. *Persuadent*, ut *paterentur*, neo *ultima experiri vellent*, They exhort them to suffer it, *and not* to attempt to resort to extremes.

3. Instead of *ne*, the double conjunction *ut ne* is also used, especially in legal language. E. g. *Operam dant*, ut *judicia* ne *fiant*, They are endeavoring to prevent judgment. Ut *hic, qui intervĕnit*, ne *ignoret, quae res agatur*, That he who happens to come in may not be ignorant of what is going on.

III. After verbs denoting fear or apprehension, *ne* is equivalent to the English "that," or "lest," and *ut* or *ne non* to "that not." E. g.

Tímeo, *ne plúat.*	I am afraid that it will rain.
Tímeo, *ut plúat.* / Timeo, *ne nôn* plúat.*	I am afraid that it will not rain.
Véreor, *ut* ápte *dicam.*	I fear I do not speak correctly.
Véreor, *ut* matúre *vénias.*	I fear you will not come in proper time.
Métuo, *ne* frústra labôrem *suscéperis.*	I am afraid that you have worked in vain.
Timêbam, *ne evenírent* éa, quae accidérunt.	I was afraid that that would come to pass, which (actually) has occurred.
Veréndum est, *ne* brévi témpore fámes in úrbe *sit.*	It is to be feared that in a short time there will be a famine in the city.
Ómnes labóres tê excípere vídeo. Tímeo, *ut sustíneas.*	I perceive that you are undertaking the whole of the labor. I am afraid that you will not hold out.
Verêtur Hiémpsal, *ut* sátis fírmum *sit* (foêdus) et rátum.	Hiempsal was afraid that the compact would not be sufficiently firm and safe.
Verebámini, *ne nôn* id fácĕrem, quód recepíssem sémel.	Ye were afraid that I would not perform what I had undertaken.
Metuêbat scílicet, *ne indicárent, ne* dolôrem férre nôn *póssent.*	He was afraid perhaps they might declare, that they would be unable to endure the pain.
Pávor céperat mílites, *ne* mortíferum *esset* vúlnus Scipiônis.	The terror had invaded the soldiers, that Scipio's wound might be mortal.

Remarks

1. This construction includes also substantives denoting fear, apprehension, or danger (as the *pavor* of the last example). So also the causative verbs *terrēre*, *conterrēre*, and *deterrēre*. To these add *cavēre*, to beware, and *vidēre* and *observare*, in the sense of "to see, reflect, consider." E. g. Cavendum *est*, ne *assentatoribus patefaciāmus aures*, We should guard against opening our ears to flatterers. *Videndum est*, ne *quis nervus laedātur*, We must see, that no nerve is hurt.†

* *Ne non* in this construction is equivalent to *ut*.

† In this sense, *Vide ne* = "See whether not *or* that," and *Vide ne non* =

2. When verbs of fearing do not imply a wish (that something might or might not take place), but merely an emotion of the mind, they take the infinitive. E. g. *Vereor dicere*, I am afraid to speak. *Metuit tangi*, He is afraid of being touched.

IV. *Quo* generally occurs only in connection with a comparative, and is equivalent to *ut eo*, "that," "so that," "in order that." *Non quo*, followed by *sed*, is equivalent to *non quod*, "not that," "not as if." E. g.

Ager nôn sémel arâtur, sed novâtur et iterâtur, *quó melióres* fétus póssit et *grandióres* éděre.	The land is not ploughed once only, but a second and a third time, in order that it may produce better and larger crops.
Cohortârer vôs, *quô* ánimo *fortióre essêtis.*	I should exhort you to be more resolute in mind.
Lêgem brévem ésse oportet, *quô facílius* ab imperítis *teneâtur.*	A law should be brief, in order that it may be the more easily remembered by the simple.
Ad tê lítteras dédi, *nôn quô habêrem* magnópĕre, quod scríbĕrem, *sed ut* lóquĕrer têcum absens.	I have written to you, not that I had anything particular to communicate, but in order that in my absence I might converse with you.

REMARKS.

1. *Quo* with the subjunctive always denotes a purpose. In the sense of *et eo*, "and by this means," and in the formula *quo — eo* or *hoc* (with comparatives), it has the indicative. E. g. Quo *plûres erant*, (hoc) *major caedes fuit*, The larger their number, the greater the massacre.

2. Instead of *non quo* in the sense given above, it is more common to say *non quod*, *non eo quod*, *non ideo quod*, *non quia*, and negatively *non quin*. E. g. Non quod *sola ornent*, sed quod *excellant*, Not that they are the only ornaments, but because they excel as such. Non quin *pari virtûte* et *voluntâte alii fuĕrint*, sed, &c., Not as if others were not his peers in virtue and resolution, but, &c.

V. *Quin* (= *qui* + *non*) is used after negative propositions, or after general questions involving a negation, and may generally be resolved either into *qui non* or into *ut non*.

1. In the sense of *qui* (*quae*, *quod*) *non*, it occurs principally after expressions like *nemo* (*nullus*, *nihil*, *vix*, *aegre*) *est*, *reperitur*, *quin*, &c., and after general questions introduced by *quis* or *quid*. E. g. *Quis est*, quin *intelligat?* Who is there (*or* is there any one), that does not comprehend? *Nemo vēnit*, quin *videret*, No one came who did not see (without seeing).

"See whether *or* that *not*." E. g. *Vide ne hoc tibi obsit*, See whether this does not hurt you. *Vide ne non satis sit*, See whether this is enough.

2. In the sense of *ut non* it occurs after expressions like *facere non possum, quin; fĭĕri non potest, quin; nulla causa* or *nihil causae est, quin*, &c. E. g. *Facere non possum*, quin *mittam*, I cannot but send (cannot do otherwise than send). *Nulla causa est*, quin *hoc faciam*, There is no reason why I should not do this (I am authorized to do it).

3. It is moreover used, in the sense of the English *but that* or *that*, after verbs and expressions signifying doubt, distance, prevention, or omission, such as *non dubĭto, non est dubium, non ambigo, quin; non abest, nihil* (or *paucum, non procul, haud multum*) *abest, quin; non* (*vix, aegre*) *abstĭneo, quin; temperāre mihi* (or *tenēre me*) *non possum, quin; non impedĭo, non recuso, non* or *nihil praetermitto, quin*, &c. E. g. *Non dubĭto*, quin *profectus sit*, I do not doubt that he has left (his having left). *Nihil abest*, quin *miserrĭmus sim*, I lack nothing of being a most unhappy man.

4. Additional examples of all these constructions of *quin* are the following:—

Nihil ést, quin póssit depravári.	There is nothing but what can be corrupted.
Quis ést, quin cérnat, quánta vis sit in sénsibus?	Who is there that does not perceive what a power there is in our senses?
Nihil tám difficile *ést, quin* quaeréndo investigári *póssit.*	There is nothing so difficult that cannot be investigated by examination.
Núlla móra *fúit, quin* decérnerent béllum.	There was no delay about their finishing the war.
Fácere nôn pótui, quin tíbi sententiam méam *declarârem.*	I could not refrain from declaring to you my opinion.
Nôn *dúbito, quin* dómi *sit.*	I do not doubt but that he is at home.
Nôn ést dúbium, quin Helvétii plúrimum *póssint.*	There is no doubt but that the Helvetii are the most powerful and influential.
Haûd múltum ábfuit, quin ab exúlibus *interficerêtur.*	He had a narrow escape from being murdered by the exiles.
Tenéri nôn pótui, quin (hôc) tíbi *declarârem.*	I could not refrain from declaring this to you.
Impedíri nôn pótest, quin progrediâtur.	He cannot be prevented from advancing.
Nôn póssumus, quin álii a nóbis *dissentiant, recusâre.*	We cannot refuse to allow others to dissent from us.
Dubitándum nôn ést, quin núnquam *póssit* utílitas cum honestâte conténdere.	It is not to be doubted, that utility can never pretend to compete with honor.

Remarks.

1. *Quin* in the sense of *qui, quae, quod non* commonly is used only for the nominative; and where it seems to stand for *quo non* or *cui non*, it may be resolved into *ut non*. Yet it is also found for *quod non*

acc. E. g. *Nego in Siciliâ quidquam fuisse*, quin (= quod non) *conquisierit*, I maintain that there was nothing in Sicily which he has not tried to rake together.

2. *Qui non* frequently occurs instead of *quin;* and so likewise *ut non*. E. g. *Quis est*, qui *hoc* non *sentiat?* Who is there that does not feel sensible of this? *Fieri non potest*, ut *eum tu in tuâ provinciâ* non *cognōris*, It is not possible that you should not have made his acquaintance in your own province.*

3. After *non dubito*, "I doubt not," the Acc. cum Inf. is sometimes put instead of *quin*. E. g. *Pompeius* non dubitat, ea, *quae de reipublicâ nunc sentiat, mihi valde* probari, Pompey doubts not but that his present sentiments with reference to the republic are acceptable to me. *Dubito* and *non dubito*, in the sense of "I hesitate," are commonly followed by the infinitive, but sometimes also by *quin*. E. g. *Non dubito respondēre*, I do not hesitate to reply. *Non dubitāvi, id a te per litteras petere*, I did not hesitate (or scruple) to ask that of you by letter. *Dubitātis, judices*, quin *hunc vindicetis*, Do you hesitate, judges, to defend this man?

4. The English "I doubt whether" is expressed by *dubito sitne, dubito num* or *numquid*, or in double sentences by *dubito sitne — an, dubito utrum — an*. But the expressions *dubito an, dubium est an*, have (like *nescio an*, page 538) the affirmative sense, "I am inclined to." E. g. *Dubitat* an *turpe non sit*, He is inclined to consider it no disgrace.

5. *Quin* in the sense of *why not?* has the indicative; sometimes also, with a similar force, the imperative or the first person plural of the subjunctive. E. g. *Quin conscendimus* equos? Why not mount our horses immediately? *Quin uno verbo dic*, Say it in one word! *Quin experiāmur*, Let us make the attempt at once!

VI. *Quōmĭnus* (= *ut eo mĭnus*, "that not") is generally put only after verbs denoting prevention or hinderance, and which may likewise be followed by *ne*, or, where a negative precedes, by *quin*.

The principal verbs of this class are *defendĕre, deterrēre, impedīre, intercedĕre, obsistĕre, obstāre, officĕre, prohibēre, recusāre*. To these add *stat* or *fit per me, quominus; non pugno, nihil moror, non contineo, quominus*, and many others. E. g.:—

Aĕtas *non impedit, quô mĭnus* litterārum stúdia *teneāmus*, úsque ad últimum témpus senectútis.	Age does not prevent us from adhering to the study of letters, even to the very end of our life.
Rēbus terrénis múlta extérna,	Many external circumstances can

* *Qui non* and *ut non*, instead of *quin*, are necessary when no negation precedes, or when *non* belongs not to the leading verb, but to some other word of the sentence. E. g. *Non adeo imperitus sum, ut nesciam*, I am not so ignorant as not to know (where *non* belongs to *imperitus*).

quóminus perficiántur, póssunt *obsístere*.	act as obstacles to the accomplishment of earthly things.
Quid *óbstat*, *quóminus* déus *sit* beâtus?	What prevents God from being happy?
Epaminóndas nôn *recusâvit*, *quóminus* lêgis poênam *subiret*.	Epaminondas did not refuse to submit to the penalty of the law.
Caêsar cognôvit, *per Afránium stâre*, *quô minus* proélio *dimicárent*.	Cæsar was informed, that it was owing to Afranius, that they did not engage in battle.
Ego têcum in éo *nôn pugnâbo*, *quóminus*, útrum vélis, *éligas*.	I will not oppose your choosing whichever of the two you please.

Remarks.

1. After the verbs *impedio*, *deterreo*, *prohĭbeo*, and *recuso*, the infinitive is sometimes used instead of *quominus*. E. g. *Pudor impĕdit exquirĕre*, Shame prevents further inquiry. *Prohibentur exire*, They are prohibited from going out. *Quae facĕre ipse recuso*, Which I myself refuse to do.

2. *Quo secius* may take the place of *quomĭnus*. E. g. *Impedimento est*, quo secius *lex ferātur*, It prevents the bill from passing.

The kitchen.	Culīna, ae, *f.*
The church.	Aedes, is, *f.*; templum, i, *n.*; ecclesia, ae, *f.* (*the assembly*).
Divine service.	Sacra publica, *n. pl.*
The school.	Schŏla, ae, *f.*; lūdus, i, *m.*
The high school.	Acadēmĭa, ae, *f.*; gymnasium, i, *n.*
The university.	Universĭtas litterārum.
The dancing-school.	Lūdus saltatōrius.
The fencing-school.	Lūdus pugnatōrius.
The play, comedy.	Comoedia, ae, *f.*; fabŭla, ae, *f.*
The drama.	Drāma, ătis, *n.*
The opera.	Drāma musicum.
The exchange.	Curia mercatōrum.
The bank.	Aerārium publĭcum.
To go to church.	In templum īre. / Sacra publica adīre.
To be at church.	In templo esse. / Sacris publĭcis adesse.
To go to school.	In lūdum litterārum īre *or* ītāre. / Schŏlam frequentāre.
To be at school.	In lūdo (schŏlā) esse.
To go to the play.	Īre spectātum comoediam (fabŭlam).
To be at the play.	Fabŭlae adesse.
To be fond of the play.	Libenter fabŭlam spectāre.
To act a play.	Fabŭlam agĕre (dāre).
To go to the opera.	Drāma musicum auditum īre.
To be at the opera.	Drāmăti musĭco adesse.
To go a fishing.	Piscātum īre, piscāri.

Fishing.	Piscātio, ōnis, *f.*: piscātus, ūs, *m.*
Where is the wife of the tailor?	Ubi est sartōris úxor?
She is in the kitchen.	In culínā ést.
Whose school did he go to?	Cújus schólam frequentâbat?
He frequented the public school.	Schólam públicam frequentâbat.
Will you go to the opera?	Visne auditum íre drâma músicum?
I am not disinclined to go.	Auditum íre nôn nólo.
Were you at church this morning?	Adfuistíne hódie mâne sácris públicis?
I was not present.	Nôn ádfui.
Are you fond of hunting?	Delectarísne venatiónibus?
I am not.	Nôn deléctor.
The entire day, all day.	Tōtum diem (*Acc.*)
The whole year.	Annum intĕgrum.
An entire week.	Hebdomădem intĕgram.
The whole morning.	Tōtum māne.
The whole evening.	Tōtum vespĕrum.
The whole night, all night.	Tōtam noctem.
Three entire days.	Tōtos trēs dies, trēs ipsos dies, tŏtum triduum.
Six entire months.	Tōtos sex menses.
The whole society.	Tŏtus (universus) conventus *or* circŭlus.
This week.	Hâc hebdomăde.
This year.	Hōc anno.
Next week.	Hebdomăde proximā.
Last week.	Hebdomăde praeteritā *or* proxime elapsā.
The person (individual).	Persōna, ae, *f.*
The belly-ache.	Tormĭna, ōrum, *n. pl.*
The stomach-ache.	Dŏlor stomăchi.
The fruit.	Pōma, ōrum, *n.*
The peach.	Mālum Persĭcum.
The cherry.	Cerāsum, i, *n.*
The strawberry.	Frāgum, i, *n.*
The plum.	Prūnum, i, *n.*
The pear.	Pĭrum, i, *n.*
The potato.	Bulbus (i, *m.*) solāni.
Vegetables.	Olus, ĕris, *n.*, *or pl.* olĕra.
Pulse.	Legūmen, ĭnis, *n.*
Pastry.	Opus pistōrium. / Crustŭla, ōrum, *n. pl.*
The tart.	Scriblīta, ae, *f.*
The dish.	Patĭna, ae, *f.*; lanx, *gen.* lancis, *f.*
The small dish.	Patella, scutŭla, ae, *f.*
The table-cloth.	Mantēle, is, *n.*
The maid-servant.	Ancilla, ae, *f.*
The aunt.	Cognāta; amĭta (*paternal*); matertĕra (*maternal*), ae, *f.*

The cousin.	Amitīna; consobrīna, ae, *f.*
The niece.	Fratris (*or* sorōris) fīlia.
The neighbor (female).	Vicina, ae, *f.*
The actor.	Histrio, ōnis, *m.*; actor scenĭcus.
The actress.	Scenĭca, ae, *f.*
The countess.	*Comitissa, ae, *f.*
The country woman.	Rustĭca, ae, *f.*
The cook.	Cŏqua, ae, *f.*
The foolish woman.	Stulta, inepta, ae, *f.*
The sister-in-law.	Affīnis, is, *f.*; gloe, *gen.* glōris, *f.*
The merchandise, goods.	Merx, *gen.* mercis, *f.*; *pl.* merces.
The power, might.	Potentĭa, ae, *f.*; potestas, ātis, *f.*
The gazette, newspaper.	Acta publĭca *or* diurna, ōrum, *n.*
The cold (in the head).	Gravēdo, ĭnis, *f.*
To have a cold.	Gravedĭne laborāre.
To take a cold.	Gravedĭne affĭci.
To have a cough.	Laborāre tussi.
To make one sick.	Morbum alicui afferre. Aliquem valetudĭne tentāre.
This makes me sick.	Hŏc mĭhi áffert morbum. Hŏc mē dolōre áfficit.
The cough.	Tussis, is, *f.* (*acc.* im).
Violent.	Grăvis, is, e.
Violently.	Valde, graviter.
All at once, suddenly.	Subĭto, repentino, derepentĭne (*adv.*).
At once, immediately.	Stătim, illĭco, e vestigio.

Exercise 161.

Where is your cousin? — He is in the kitchen. — Where is your mother? — She is at church. — Is your sister gone to school? — She is gone thither. — Does your mother often go to church? — She goes thither every morning and every evening. — She goes thither as soon as she gets up. — At what o'clock does she get up? — She gets up at sunrise. — Dost thou go to school to-day? — I do go thither. — What dost thou learn at school? — I learn to read, write, and speak there. — Where is your aunt? — She is gone to the play with my little sister. — Do your sisters go this evening to the opera? — No, madam, they go to the dancing-school? — Is your father gone a hunting? — He has not been able to go a hunting, for he has a cold. — Do you like to go a hunting? — I like to go a fishing better than a hunting. — Is your father still in the country? — Yes, madam, he is still there. — What does he do there? — He goes a hunting and a fishing there. — Did you hunt when you were in the country? — I hunted the whole day. — How long have you stayed with (*apud*) my mother. — I stayed with her the whole evening. — Is it long since you were at the castle? — I was there last week. — Did you find many people there? — I found only three persons there. — Who were those three persons? — They were the count, the countess, and their daughter. —

Are these girls as good as their brothers? — They are better than they. — Can your sisters speak German? — They cannot, but they are learning it. — Have you brought anything to your mother? — I brought her good fruits and a fine tart. — What has your niece brought you? — She has brought us good cherries, good strawberries, and good peaches. — Do you like peaches? — I do like them much. — How many peaches has your neighbor (fem.) given you? — She has given me more than twenty of them. — Have you eaten many cherries this year? — I have eaten many of them. — Were there many pears last year? — There were not many. — Have you read the newspaper to-day? — I have read it. — Is there anything new in it? — I have not read anything new in it. — Does he eat to live, or does he live to eat? — He lives to eat. — Why do you study Latin? — I study it, in order that I may read, speak, and write it. — Is he so bad, that he must be punished? — He is. — Did your father exhort you not to go to the play? — He begged and conjured me not to go there. — He was sick yesterday so that he could not come to the lesson (*ad scholam*). — Are you afraid that it will rain to-day? — I am rather afraid that it will not rain. — Is your brother afraid to speak Latin? — He is afraid; for he is as yet ignorant of the language. — He should be more diligent, in order that he may be able to speak more readily (*facilius*). — I give you this advice, not that I think you need it, but in order to encourage (*animum alicui addĕre*) you. — I cannot refrain from writing to you. — There is no doubt but that you are correct. — I do not doubt but that he will arrive to-morrow. — Can he prevent you from advancing? — He cannot prevent me. — He could refrain from weeping, when he heard that you were so unfortunate and unhappy. — What can prevent us from being happy? — Nothing can prevent us from being as happy as any one ever was.

Lesson LXXXIX. — PENSUM UNDENONAGESIMUM.

SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER CONJUNCTIONS. — *Continued.*

A. The subjunctive is put after various other particles, besides those already considered in the preceding Lesson.

I. After particles denoting a wish, such as *utĭnam*, *utĭnam ne*, *ut* or *uti*, *o* or *o si*, "O that," "would that," the verb is always in the subjunctive.

In this construction the present and perfect subjunctives are used of things considered as possible, the imperfect and pluperfect when the wish is regarded as a vain or impossible one. E. g.

Utĭnam hábeam!	*Utinam habúerit!*	O that I may have! I wish that he may have had!

Útinam hâbêrem! Útinam habuísset!	Would that I had! O that he had had!
Útinam módo conâta efficere *póssim!*	May I but be able to accomplish my endeavors!
O míhi praetéritos *réferat si* Júppiter ánnos!	O that Jupiter may restore to me my past years!
Íllud *útinam ne* vére *scríbĕrem!*	Would to God that what I have written were no reality!
Útinam mínus vítae cúpidi *fuissêmus!*	O that we had been less desirous of preserving life!
Ut tê dii *pérduint!*	May the gods destroy you!

REMARK. — The particle is sometimes omitted. E. g. *Tecum ludĕre sicut ipsa possem!*

II. After the particles of comparison *quasi*, *quam si*, and after *tamquam*, *ut*, *velut*, *similĭter ac*, *idem ac*, *aeque ac*, *perinde ac*, *proinde ac*, with or without *si*, and *ceu*, "as if," "just as if," the verb is always in the subjunctive. E. g.

Sed quíd égo his téstĭbus útor, *quasi* rês dúbia aut obscûra *sít?*	But why do I use witnesses like these, as if the case were a doubtful or an obscure one?
Quaêstor ést fáctus, *quam si ésset* súmmo lóco nâtus.	He was made questor, as if he had been of the highest rank by birth.
Párvi prímo órtu sic jácent, *tánquam* omníno síne ánimo *sínt.*	Infants, when they are just born, lie as if they were entirely without life.
Crudelitâtem éjus, *vélut si* coram *adésset*, horrébant.	They shrunk from his cruelty, as if he were present before them.
Similiter fácis, *ac si* mê *róges.*	You act just as if you were asking me.
Delêta est Aúsŏnum gens, *perínde ac si* internecívo béllo *certásset.*	The Ausonian nation has become extinct, as if it had engaged in internecine warfare.

III. The particles *non quod*, *non eo quod*, *non ideo quod*, and *non quia*, "not because," *non quo*, "not as if," and *non quin*, "not but that," are followed by the subjunctive, but the *sed quod* or *sed quia* of the subsequent clause requires the indicative. E. g.

Nŏn idcírco quorúndam amicôrum úsum dimísĕram, *quod* íis *succensêrem*, *sed quód* eôrum me suppudêbat.	I had given up the acquaintance of certain friends, not because I was angry with them, but because I was somewhat ashamed of them.
Nŏn quô vérba únquam pótius, quám rês, *exercúerim*, *sed quia* assuévĕram militáribus ingéniis.	Not that I have ever dealt in words rather than in substance, but because I had become accustomed to military minds.

Crásso commendatiônem nôn súm pollícitus, *nôn quîn* éam valitûram apud tê *arbitrârer*, *séd* (*quod*) míhi egêre commendatiône nôn *vidêbâtur*.	I did not promise Crassus any recommendation, not because I thought that it would have no effect with you, but because he did not seem to me to need any recommendation.

IV. The subjunctive is likewise put after the conjugations *dum, mŏdo* or *dummŏdo*, "provided," and *dum ne, mŏdo ne* or *dummŏdo ne*, "provided not." So also after *ut* and *ne*, when they signify "although," "although not," and after *nēdum* or *ne*, "not to say," "much less," "much more." E. g.

Neque, *dum* sîbi régnum *parâret*, quídquam pénsi habêbat.	Nor did he have a regard for anything, provided he might win royal authority.
Cícero ómnia postpósuit, *dúmmŏdo* praecéptis pátris parêret.	Cicero disregarded everything, provided he might obey the instructions of his father.
Dum ílle *ne sis*, quém égo ésse nólo, sis méā caúsā, quí lúbet.	So long as you are not what I do not wish to be, you may be what you please, for aught I care.
Ût désint víres, támen est laudánda volúntas.	Although the strength be wanting, yet the wish is to be commended.
Vêrum *ut* hóc nôn *sit*, támen sérvet rempúblicam.	Though this be not so, it may nevertheless save the republic.
Ne sit súmmum málum dólor, málum cérte est.	Although pain is not the greatest evil, it is still unquestionably an evil.
Núnquam sufférre éjus súmptus quéat, *nêdum* tû *póssis*.	He never can defray his expenses, much less can you.
Vix in ípsis téctis frígus vitâtur, *nêdum* in mári et in vîā *sit* fácile abésse ab injúriā tempŏris.	The cold can scarcely be avoided in the houses themselves; much less easy it is to be exempt from the ill effects of the season at sea and on the roads.
Quíppe secúndae rês sapiéntium ánimos fătigant; *ne* ílli corrúptis móribus victóriae *temperárent*.	Since prosperity tries the minds of the wise even, much less could they who are men of corrupt morals restrain themselves from an abuse of the victory.

V. *Quamvis* (*quantumvis, quantumlibet*), "however," and *licet*, "although," commonly take the subjunctive; but *utut*, "however," and *quamquam*, "although," have more frequently the indicative. E. g.

Lícet strénuum métum *pútes* ésse, velócior támen spês est.	Although you may consider fear rapid in its operation, yet hope is quicker.

Quámvis licet Ménti delúbra et Virtúti et Fídei *consecrêmus*, támen haêc in nóbis ípsis síta vidêmus.	Although it be true, that we dedicate shrines to the Intellect, to Virtue, and to Faith, we nevertheless perceive that they reside in ourselves.
Quód túrpe ést, íd, *quámvis occultêtur*, támen honéstum fieri núllo módo pótest.	That which is morally disgraceful, however it may be concealed, can never by any means become honorable.
Vítia méntis, *quantúmvis*, exígua *sínt*, in május excédunt.	The vices of the mind, however small they may be, increase and spread.
Útut haêc *sínt*, támen hóc fáciam.	However these things may be, I shall nevertheless do it.
Quámquam excellêbat abstinéntiâ, támen exsílio décem annórum multâtus ést.	Although he was noted for his moderation, he yet was punished with an exile of ten years.

REMARK. — Tacitus uses the subjunctive after *quamquam* as after *quamvis*. Cicero only occasionally. Later authors reverse the rule, and put *quamquam* with the subjunctive, and *quamvis* with the indicative.

VI. *Dum*, *donec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of "as long as," or "while," require the indicative; but when they signify "until," they may have either the indicative or subjunctive. E. g.

Aegróto *dum* ánima *ést*, spês ésse dícitur.	As long as the patient has life in him, there is said to be hope.
Cáto *quoad víxit*, virtûtum laûde crêvit.	Cato advanced in renown for virtue as long as he lived.
Delíbĕra hóc, *dum* égo *rédeo*.	Think this over until I return.
De comítiis, *donec rédiit* Marcéllus, siléntium fúit.	Respecting the election, there was nothing said until Marcellus returned.
Expectâte, *dum* cónsul aut dictâtor *fíat* Kaéso.	Wait, until Kaeso becomes consul or dictator.
Quoad perrémtum sít éo, quo súmpta nâvis ést.	Until they may have arrived at the spot for which the ship was taken.

VII. *Antequam* and *priusquam* are commonly followed by the present subjunctive, when they imply a reference to the future, and by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive when they imply a causal connection between two past events. But when these conjunctions express merely a relation of time, the verb is in the indicative. E. g.

Tragoédi quotídie, *ántequam prounúntient*, vôcem sénsim éxcitant.	Tragic actors gradually tune their voice every day, before they begin to declaim.

Ante vidêmus fulguratiônem, *quam* sónum *audiâmus*.
We perceive the lightning before we hear its voice.

In ómnibus negótiis *prius*, *quam aggrediâre*, adhibénda est praeparátio diligens.
You should make diligent preparations in every transaction, before you set to work at it.

Caêsar ad Pompéii cástra pervênit *prius*, *quam* Pompéius sentire *pósset*.
Cæsar arrived at Pompey's camp before Pompey could perceive it.

Saépe mágna índoles virtûtis, *priúsquam* réi públicae prodésse *potuísset*, exstíncta fuit.
It has often been the case, that a great natural capacity for virtue was lost, before it could become an advantage to the republic.

Dúbo óperam, ut ístuc véniam *ante*, *quam* pláne ex tío ánimo *efflúo*.
I shall endeavor to come to your place, before I am entirely forgotten by you.

Mémbris útimur *prius*, *quam didícimus*, cújus éa utilitâtis caúsā habeâmus.*
We use our limbs, before we have learnt the end for which we have them.

OF THE CONSTRUCTION OF "QUUM."

B. *Quum* or *cum* expresses either a relation of time, and is equivalent to *tum quum*, *eo tempore quum*, or *ex eo tempore quum*, "then when," "when," "while," "after," or "since"; or it denotes the relation of cause and effect, and is equivalent to the English "since," "although," "because." The former is called the *quum temporâle*, and is generally followed by the indicative, the latter the *quum causâle*, and is followed by the subjunctive.

I. The clause introduced by *quum temporale* may either be the leading or a subordinate one, and the verb may be in any tense of the indicative.

Fácile ómnes, *quum valémus*, récta consília aegrótis dámus.
When we are well, we all of us can easily give advice to those who are sick.

Áger quum múltos ánnos *quiévit*, uberióres efférre frúctus sólet.
When land has been left fallow for many years, it usually yields more abundant crops.

Qui nôn defêndit injúriam, néque propúlsat a súis, *quum pótest*, injúste fácit.
He who does not repel injustice, nor protect his friends against it, when he can, acts unjustly.

Quúm haêc in Hispániā *gerebántur*, comitiôrum jám appetêbat díes.
While these things were carried on in Spain, the day of the elections was approaching.

Vôs *tum* paruístis, *quum páruit* némo, qui nóluit.
You obeyed at a time when no one obeyed, that was not disposed to do so.

* In the last two of these examples, these conjunctions express merely a relation of time.

Quum inimíci nóstri ventre *dicéntur*, *tum* in Epirum íbo. — When our enemies will be reported as coming, then I shall go into Epirus.

Jám vêr appetêbat, *quúm* Hánnibal ex hibérnis *móvit*. — Spring was already approaching, when Hannibal moved out of his winter-quarters.

Vix ánnus intercésserat, *quum* Sulpícius *accusávit* C. Norbánum. — A year had scarcely elapsed when Sulpicius preferred an accusation against Norbanus.

Múlti ánni súnt, *quum* Fábius in aêre méo ést.* — It is many years since Fabius is my debtor.

Trigínta díes érant ípsi, *quum* hâs *dabam* lítteras. — There were thirty entire days, since the date of this letter.

Remark. — On the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive after *quum temporale*, see III.

II. *Quum causāle* is rendered by the English *since*, *because*, *although*, and is followed by the subjunctive. E. g.

Quae *cum* íta *sint*. — Since these things are so.

Quum sciam, *scírem*. — Since I know, though I knew.

Quum intellexérim, *intellexíssem*. — Since I have understood, had understood.

Socratis ingénium variôsque sermónes immortalitáti scríptis súis trádidit Pláto, *quum* lítteram Sócrates núllam *reliquísset*. — Plato in his writings has bequeathed us an immortal record of the genius and various discourses of Socrates, though Socrates himself had not left a syllable.

Dionýsius *quum* in commúnibus suggéstis consístere nôn *audêret*, concionári ex túrre áltā solêbat. — Dionysius was in the habit of harranguing the people from a high tower, as he did not dare to stand upon the usual platforms.

Coélo seréno intérdiu obscurâta lúx ést, *quum* lûna sub órbem sôlis *subísset*. — Daylight has sometimes been darkened, even under a clear sky, on account of the moon having passed beneath the orbit of the sun.

Druéntia, *quum* áquae vím *véhat* ingéntem, nôn támen návium pátiens ést. — The (river) Durance, although it carries a large quantity of water, is yet unfit for navigation.

Ego mê saépe nóva vidéri dícere intélligo, *quum* pervétĕra dicam. — I know that I have often the appearance of saying new things, when (i. e. although) I say something that is quite old.

Phócion fúit perpétuō paûper, *quum* divitíssimus ésse *pósset*. — Phocion was perpetually poor, when (i. e. although) he might have been very rich.

III. In narration *quum* is commonly followed by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, though generally rendered by the English *when* or *after*. E. g.

* On this use of *quum*, compare Lesson LVII.

Zenônem, *quùm* Athénis *éssem*, audiêbam frequénter.	I frequently heard Zeno's discourses, when I was at Athens.
Fúit témpus, *quum* rûra *cólĕrent* hómines, néque * úrbem *habérent*.	There was a time when men inhabited the country, and had no cities.
Ibi éum quùm Caêsar *vidísset*, níhil áspere, níhil acérbe díxit.	When Cæsar saw him there, he said nothing that was harsh, nothing that was bitter.
Thucýdides líbros súos tùm scripsísse dícitur, quùm a repúblicâ *remôtus* atque in exsílium *púlsus ésset*.	Thucydides is said to have written his books after he had been removed from public life and driven into exile.

REMARKS.

1. The subjunctive sometimes stands after *quum* where we might expect the indicative. E. g. *Si tibi* tum, quum petĕres *consulātum, affui*, If I assisted you at the time you were a candidate for the consulate, &c. But in most such cases there are generally other reasons for the subjunctive. E. g. *Qui dies est, quae nox*, quum *ego non ex istorum insidiis divino consilio* eripiar? † What day is there, what night, in which I was not saved from the wiles of these wretches, by a Divine Providence?

2. In Livy and Tacitus *quum* is sometimes also followed by the historical infinitive. E. g. *Nec multum erat progressa navis*, quum *dato signo* rucre *tectum loci*, Nor had the ship advanced far, when at the given signal the deck fell in.

To march.	*Ambulāre, incēdĕre.* *Castra movēre, movēre.* *Iter facĕre.*
To walk, to go on foot.	Incēdĕre, pedĭbus īre, ambulāre
To step.	Gradior, i, gressus sum.
To advance.	Prōgrĕdi, pergĕre.
To travel.	Proficisci, iter facĕre. Tendĕre, contendĕre (AD LOCUM).
To travel abroad.	Peregrināri.
To travel through a place.	Transire, iter facĕre per lŏcum.
To travel or pass by a place.	Alĭquem locum praetergrĕdi, praetervĕhi, non attingĕre.
To go (leave for) abroad.	Abire, discēdĕre, proficisci.
The traveller.	Peregrinātor, peregrīnus.
The wanderer (traveller on foot).	Viātor, ōris, *m*.
To travel a mile.	Mille passuum emetīri (emensus sum) *or* conficĕre.
To make a step.	Gradum *or* passum facĕre.
To take a step (i. e. measures).	Agĕre et moliri; consilium inīre.

* *Neque* here, as frequently, = *et non*.

† The subjunctive here depends upon the indefinite general question.

To enter on a journey.	Se dăre in viam; proficisci.
To make *or* deliver a speech.	Verba facĕre; oratiōnem habēre; dicĕre.
To transact business.	Rem gerĕre; negotiāri, mercatūram facĕre.
Business, a piece of business, an affair.	Negotium, i, *n.*; rēs, rĕi, *f.*; opus, ĕris, *n.*
To be engaged in anything.	Occupātum esse aliquā rē.
To be at leisure.	Otiōsum esse, vacāre.
Where is the traveller going to?	Quô téndit viâtor?
He is going towards Vienna.	Vindobónam vérsus téndit.
Is the merchant occupied with business?	Occupatúsne est mercâtor negótiis?
He is very much occupied (with it).	Est véro occupatíssimus.
He is distracted with business.	Disténtus est negótiis.
How many miles did he travel?	Quót mília pássuum eménsus est?
He has travelled twenty.	Vigínti.
Did the clergyman speak?	Fecítne vérba cléricus?
He did not.	Nôn fecit.
Did I transact the business well?	Gessíne rém béne?
You have transacted it in the best possible manner.	Sáne, éam quam óptime gessísti.
Was the master at leisure?	Vacavítne praecéptor?
He was not at leisure.	Nôn vacâvit.
To salt, season with salt.	*Salire, sāle condīre* (REM). *Sālem aspergĕre* (REI).
Salt meat.	Caro sāle condīta.
Salt fish.	Salsamenta, ōrum, *n.*
Fresh meat.	Caro rĕcens (*gen.* carnis recentis).
The food, victuals.	Cĭbus, i, *m.*; esca, ae, *f.*; cibaria, ōrum, *n.*
The dish, mess.	Cĭbus, i, *m.*; ferculum, i, *n.*
The milk.	Lac, *gen.* lactis, *n.*
The milk-food.	Cibus lactens; lactentia, ium, *n. pl.*
Milk soup.	Jūs lactens.
Salt meats.	Cibaria salsa, *n. pl.*
To partake of food, to eat.	Cibum capĕre *or* sūmĕre.
To attract.	*Attrahĕre, traxi, tractum.* *Ad se trahĕre* (ALIQUID, ALIQUEM.)
To allure, entice.	Allicio, ĕre, lexi, lectum. Allectāre (ALIQUEM AD SE).
To excite, to delight.	Delectāre; oblectāre.
To charm, enchant.	Rapio, ĕre, pŭi, ptum. Permulceo, ēre, si, sum. Admiratiōne afficĕre.
To enrapture, ravish.	Suavissime afficĕre. Voluptāte perfundĕre.

The beauty.	Pulchritūdo, ĭnis, *f.*
The harmony.	Harmonĭa, ae, *f.*; concentus, ūs, *m.*
The voice.	Vox, *gen.* vōcis, *f.*
The power, force.	Vīs, *plur.* vīres, *f.*
The power, authority.	Potestas, ātis, *f.*
To have power (influence) over ony one.	Multum (*or* plurĭmum) apud aliquem posse *or* valēre.
To occupy one's self with anything.	Versāri *or* occupāri in aliquā re.
To meddle with anything.	Se immiscēre (ŭi, mixtum *or* mistum) alicui rĕi.
To trouble one's head about anything.	Curāre rem; laborāre de re; se immiscēre rei.
The quarrel, contest.	Lis, *gen.* litis, *f.*; rixa, ae, *f.*
The commerce, traffic.	Mercatūra, ae, *f.*; negotia, ōrum, *n.*
I do not meddle with other people's business.	Ego mĕ aliénis negótiis nôn immísceo.
It is strange.	Mirábĭle dictu ést.
The art of painting.	Ars pingendi, ars pictōria.
Chemistry.	Chymĭca, ae, *f.*
The chemist.	Chymĭcus, i, *m.*
The art.	Ars, artis, *f.*
To look at some one.	Adspicĕre, adspectāre, intuēri aliquem.
To concern (some one).	Attingo, ĕre, tĭgi, tactum (ALIQUEM). Pertinēre (AD ALIQUEM *or* REM). Spectāre ad rem.
What is that to me?	Quíd ad mĕ? Quíd íd méā réfert *or* ínterest?
What is that to you?	Quíd tíbi cum íllā rê? Quíd id túā réfert?
I have nothing to do with that.	Id níhil ad mĕ áttinet. Id méā níhil ínterest.
As far as I am concerned.	Quód ad mĕ áttinet.
This concerns (has reference to) you.	Rês ad tê spéctat. De tê fábula narrâtur.
What has that to do with the matter?	Quid hóc ad rém?
I do not like to meddle with things that do not concern me.	Ego mĕ aliénis lítibus nôn nísi invítus immísceo.
Did the song of the maiden attract you?	Allexítne te cántus puéllae?
It truly enchanted me.	Ímmo mĕ suavíssime affécit.
The magnet attracts iron.	Mágnes férrum ad sê éllicit et tráhit.
Is he engaged in the art of painting?	Versatúrne in árte pingéndi?
No, he occupies himself with chemistry.	Nôn; in chýmicā versâtur.

The singing (song).	Cantus, *m.*
To repeat.	*Repĕto, ĕre, īvi (ĭi), ītum.* *Iterāre, retractāre* (ALIQUID).
The repetition.	Repetītio, iterātio, ōnis, *f.*
The beginning, commencement.	Initĭum; principĭum, i, *n.*
The wisdom.	Sapientia, ae, *f.*
The study, application to letters.	Tractātio litterārum. Litterārum studia, ōrum, *n.*
The goddess.	Dĕa, dīva, ae, *f.*
The nightingale.	Luscinĭa, ae, *f.*
The Lord.	Domĭnus, Deus, i, *m.*
The Creator.	Creātor, auctor, ōris, *m.*
To create.	Creāre, efficĕre.
The creation.	Creātio, ōnis, *f.* (*act.*). Mundus, i, *m.*; rērum natūra (*effect*).
The heaven.	Coelum, i, *n.*
The earth.	Terra, ae, *f.*
The solitude.	Solitūdo, ĭnis, *f.*
The goodness.	Benignĭtas, humanĭtas, ātis, *f.*
The cleanliness.	Munditia, ae, *f.*, *or* mundities, ēi, *f.*
The uncleanliness.	Immunditia, ae, *f.*
The government.	Magistrātŭs, ūs, *m.*, *or pl.* magistrātūs; senātus, ūs, *m.*
Sensible, reasonable.	Sānus, prūdens, modestus.
For my, thy, our sake; on my, thine own account.	Meā, tuā, nostrū causā *or* gratiā.
On his, on the father's account.	Ejus causā, patris causā *or* gratiā.
Not only — but also.	*Non mŏdo — sed* (or *vērum*) *etiam.* *Non tantum — sed etiam.* *Non sōlum — sed etiam.*
Not only not — but not even.	Non modo (non)* —— sed ne .... quĭdem.
He was not only unlike the preceding king, but even more cruel than Romulus.	*Non sŏlum* próximo régi dissímilis, *sed* ferócior *étiam* Rómulo fúit.
Such a man will never venture not only to do, but not even to think, anything that is not honorable.	Tālis vír *nôn módo* fácere, *sed ne* cogitāre *quidem* quĭdquam *audēbit*, quod nôn honéstum sit.

* In this construction the first *non* is generally omitted, when both members of the sentence have a common predicate, as in the second of the following examples, where *audēbit* is the common verb, and *ne — quidem* equivalent to *etiam non*.

Exercise 162.

Will you dine with us to-day? — With much pleasure. — What have you for dinner? We have good soup, some fresh and salt meat, and some milk-food. — Do you like milk-food? — I like it better than all other food. — Are you ready to dine? — I am ready. — Do you intend to set out soon? — I intend setting out next week. — Do you travel alone? — No, madam, I travel with my uncle. — Do you travel on foot or in a carriage? — We travel in a carriage. — Did you meet any one in your last journey (*ultĭmo in itinĕre vestro ad*) to Berlin? — We met many wanderers. — What do you intend to spend your time in this summer? — I intend to take a short journey. — Did you walk much in your last journey? — I like very much to walk, but my uncle likes to go in a carriage. — Did he not wish to walk? — He wished to walk at first, but after having taken a few steps, he wished to get into the carriage, so that I did not walk much. — What have you been doing at school to-day? — We have been listening to our teacher, who made a long speech on the (*qui verba faciēbat multa de*) goodness of God. — What did he say? — After saying, "God is the creator of heaven and earth; the fear of the Lord is the beginning of all wisdom"; he said, "Repetition is the mother of studies, and a good memory is a great benefit of God." — Why did you not stay longer in Holland? — When I was there, the living was so dear that I had not money enough to stay there any longer. — What sort of weather was it when you were on the way to Vienna? — It was very bad weather; for it was stormy, and snowed, and rained very heavily. — May I have leisure to read through the book? — Would that I had an opportunity to do (*faciendi*) what you have done! — O that he had never written that letter! — You act as if you were sad; what is the matter with you (*quid tristis es*)?

Exercise 163.

What are you doing all the day in this garden? — I am walking in it. — What is there in it that attracts you? — The singing of the birds attracts me. — Are there any nightingales in it? — There are some in it, and the harmony of their singing enchants me. — What does your niece amuse herself with in her solitude? — She reads a good deal and writes letters to her mother. — What does your uncle amuse himself with in his solitude? — He employs himself in painting and chemistry. — Does he no longer do any business? — He no longer does any, for he is too old to do it. — Why does he meddle with your business? — He does not generally meddle with other people's business (*alienis negotiis se immiscēre non assŏlet*); but he meddles with mine, because he loves me. — Has your master made you repeat your lesson to-day? — He has made me repeat it. — Did you know it? — I did know it pretty well. — Have you also done some exercises? — I have done some, but what is that to you, I beg? — I do not generally meddle with things that do not concern me; but I love you so much (*tantŏpere*), that I concern myself much about what you are doing. — Does any one trouble his head about you? — No one troubles his head about me; for I am not worth the trouble. — Not only

for the sake of cleanliness, but also for the sake of health, prudent people avoid (*vitāre*) uncleanliness, and wash themselves often. — Shall you buy that horse? — I shall buy it, although it is not an English one. — Though he is my cousin, he nevertheless does not come to see me. — Although they are not rich, they are nevertheless very benevolent. — I do not know, whether he is at home or not. — The question is (*quaerĭtur*), whether he will do it or not.

Lesson XC. — PENSUM NONAGESIMUM.

SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER RELATIVES.

A. Relative pronouns and adverbs are followed by the subjunctive, when the clause introduced by them contains the *consequence* or *result*, or the *cause*, *reason*, *purpose*, or *motive* of what has gone before.

B. When the relative is preceded by *is*, *hic*, *ille*, *tālis*, *tantus*, *ejusmŏdi*, *hujusmŏdi*, *adeo* or *tam*, so as to denote a consequence or result, its verb is in the subjunctive.

In this construction *qui* becomes equivalent to *ut ego*, *tu*, *ille*, &c.; — *cūjus* to *ut mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *illius*, *ējus*; — *cui* to *ut mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ei*, *illi*, and so through all the cases. E. g.

Ego *is sum*, *qui* nihil únquam méā pótius, quam meôrum cívium caúsā *fécĕrim*.
My character is such, that I have never done anything on my own account rather than on that of my fellow-citizens.

Ea est Romāna *gens*, *quae* víncta quiéscĕre *nésciat*.
Such is the character of the Roman race, that it cannot rest when conquered.

Non tû *is es*, *qui*, qui sis, *néscias*.
You are not such a man as to be ignorant of what you are.

Non ego *sum ille férreus*, *qui* frâtris moerôre nôn *móvĕar*.
I am not so heartless a man as not to be moved by the sorrow of my brother.

Innocéntia est affĕctio *tâlis* ánimi, *quae nóceat* némini.
Innocence is that disposition of the mind which does nobody any harm.

Est *hujúsmŏdi* réus, *in quô* hómine níhil *sit*, praeter súmma peccâta.
He is so guilty, that there is nothing in the man but the most culpable offences.

In córpŏre si quíd *ejúsmodi* est, *quod* réliquo córpori *nóceat*, úri secarique pátimur.
If there is anything in our body of such a character as to injure the remaining parts of it, we suffer it to be burnt or cut.

Núlla gens *tám féra*, némo ómnium *tám immânis* est, *cújus* méntem nôn *imbúerit* deôrum opínio.	There is no race so savage, no man so monstrous, whose mind is not imbued with the idea of a God.

REMARKS.

1. The demonstrative to which the relative refers is sometimes to be supplied. E. g. *Nunc dicis aliquid* (sc. ejusmodi), quod *ad rem* pertineat, Now you say something to the point.

2. This rule includes relative expressions containing a limitation or restriction. Such are, — *Quod sciam* or *intelligam*, As far as I know or understand. *Quod commodo tuo fiat*, So far as it can be done without inconvenience to you. *Quod sine alterius injuriâ fiat* or *fieret*, As far as it can be done without injury to another. *Quod salvâ fide possim*, So far as I can honorably.*

3. When a comparative precedes, the clause introduced by *quam qui* (*quam cujus*, *cui*, *quorum*, &c.) requires the subjunctive. E. g. *Major sum*, quam cui possit *fortúna nocére*, I am superior to the injuries of fortune. *Majóra deliquérant*, quam quibus *ignosci* posset, They had been guilty of too grave offences to be pardoned. †

C. When the relative is preceded by an indefinite expression, positive or negative, or by an indefinite question involving a negation, its verb is in the subjunctive.

Such expressions are *est*, *sunt*, *existunt*, *inveniuntur*, *reperiuntur* (with *homines* understood); — *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil est*; — *quis est? quid est? qui*, *quae*, *quod* (sc. *negotium*, &c.) *est? quantum est? quotusquisque est?* &c. E. g.

Sunt, *qui dícant*, *cénseant*.	There are those who say, those who suppose.
Sunt, *qui díxerint*, *vídérint*.	There are those who have heard, those who have seen.
Invéntus est, *qui* flámmis *impónéret* mánum.	There was one found who put his hand into the flames.
Fuérunt, *qui dícérent*.	There were those who said.
Est áliquid, *quod* nôn *opórteat*, etiámsi licet.	There is something which does not behoove us, although not unlawful.
Multi érunt, *quibus* récte lítteras dáre *póssis*.	There will be those whom you can properly trust with letters.
Némo est orátor, *qui* sê Demósthenis símilem ésse *nólit*.	There is no orator who is unwilling to be like Demosthenes.
Non déérunt, *qui* Cássii et Brúti *meminerint*.	There will not be wanting those who remember Cassius and Brutus.

* So frequently with *quidem*; as, *Quos* quidem *aut invenérim aut legérim*, As far at least as I have been able to find or read. But *quantum* in this construction has the indicative; as, *Quantum possum*, As much as (as far as) I can.

† For the same reason *quam*, even without a relative, is sometimes followed by the subjunctive. E. g. *In his litteris longior fui*, quam *aut* vellem (instead of velle), *aut quam me puduit fore*.

Helvétiis dómi *nĭhil erat, quô fámem tolerárent.*	The Helvetii had nothing at home, wherewith to still their hunger.
Quis ést, qui utília *fúgiat?*	Who is there that seeks to avoid the useful?
Quótus quísque est, qui voluptâtem *néget* ésse bónum?	How many are there among men, that deny pleasure to be a good?
Plúres auctóres *invénio,* qui* Romános Horátios *vócent.*	I find several authors who call the Horatii Romans.
Núm ámplius quíd *desíderas, quod respóndeas?*	There is nothing else that you desire to reply?
Nihil habébam róvi, *quód* post *accidísset,* quam *dedíssem* ad tê lítteras.	I have nothing new to communicate, that occurred after my writing this to you.

REMARKS.

1. This rule includes also the expressions *non est quod, nihil est quod* (*quare* or *cur*), "there is no ground or reason why"; and *est ut* (when it = *est cur*), "there is ground, reason." E. g. *Est quod gaudeas*, You have reason to rejoice. *Non est, quod te pudĕat*, You need not be ashamed. *Nihil est, quod pertimescat*, He has no cause to dread. *Non est, cur eorum spes infringātur*, There is no reason why they should be dejected. *Ille* erat ut *odisset defensorem salūtis meae*, He had reason to hate the defender of my safety. Non est *igĭtur* ut *mirandum sit*, There is consequently nothing to be wondered at. Quid est, cur *virtus ipsa per se non* efficiat *beatos?* What is the reason that virtue of herself does not make men happy?

2. The subjunctive also follows *habeo quod, non habeo quod.* E. g. *Non habeo, quod dicam*, I have nothing to say. *Quid habes, quod reprehendas?* What fault have you to find? *Non habeo, qui* (= *quâ re*) *utar*, I have nothing to live on. *Quo se vertĕret, non habēbat*, He knew not where to turn to.†

3. When, in connection with the expressions *sunt qui*, a particular and determinate subject is expressed, the verb is in the indicative. E. g. *Sunt autem* bestiae quaedam, *in quibus* inest *aliquid simile virtūtis*, There are certain animals in which there is something that resembles virtue. But when the subject is merely a general one, such as *multi, pauci, nemo*, &c., or is entirely suppressed, the subjunctive is the common construction, and the indicative in these cases is generally employed by poets only.

D. When the relative clause denotes the *purpose, object,* or *motive* of what has gone before, it may be resolved into a clause with *ut*, and the verb is in the subjunctive.

---

* This rule extends to the active verbs *habeo, reperio, invenio, nanciscor, desidero, quaero*, and *relinquo*, after all of which the relative may take the subjunctive. Cf. note 2.

† But this last example more properly belongs to Lesson LXXXVII. *D.* So likewise, *Non habeo* quid *dicam*, I know not what to say. *Quid faceret, non habēbat*, He knew not what to do. These are indirect questions.

The relative is then either *qui* in the sense of *ut is*, or *quo*, "in order that" (before a comparative), or *quā*, *ubi*, *unde*, "where," "whence," in the sense of "in order that there, or thence."

The verbs on which such clauses depend are especially those of choosing, ordering, devoting, sending, coming, going, and receiving. E. g.

Lítterae posteritâtis caúsā repértae súnt, *quae* subsídio oblivióni ésse *póssent.*	Letters were invented for the benefit of posterity, as a protection against oblivion.
Dolabélla vénĕrat ípse, *quī ésset* in consílio, et primus sententiam *díceret.*	Dolabella had appeared in person, so that he might take a part in the deliberation, and gave his opinion first.
Súnt múlti, qui erípiunt áliis, *quód* áliis *largiántur.*	There are many who rob some of that which they wish to lavish upon others.
Cohortârer vôs, *quô* ánimo *fortiôre essêtis.*	I should exhort you to be more resolute.
Darius póntem fēcit in Ístro flúmine, *quâ* cópias *tradúcĕret.*	Darius constructed a bridge, over the Danube, over which he might lead his forces.
Themístocli Artaxérxes Lampsacum úrbem donârat, *unde* vînum *súmeret.*	Artaxerxes made Themistocles a present of the city of Lampsacum, from which he might get his wine.

E. When the clause introduced by the relative contains the ground or reason of what has gone before, the verb is in the subjunctive.

The relative is then either *qui*, rendered by "that," "because," or "since," or *quippe qui*, *ut qui*, *utpote qui*, "as one who," "inasmuch as he," &c. E. g.

Mágna ést Pélŏpis cúlpa, *quī* nôn *erudíĕrit* fílium, nec *docúerit*, quátĕnus ésset quidque curándum.	The great fault of Pelops is, that he did not educate his son, nor teach him to what extent to carry everything.
Áctio malúimus íter fácere pédibus, *quī* incómmŏde *navigassémus.*	We preferred to start from Actium on foot, *because* we had had a bad passage at sea.
Sôlis cándor illústrior ést, *quíppe qui* in imménso múndo tam lónge latêque *collúceat.*	The light of the sun is brighter (than any other), inasmuch as it shines so far and wide in the immensity of the universe.
Súnt hómines natúrā curiósi, *ut qui* sermúncŭlis étiam fabéllisque *ducántur.*	Men are naturally curious, since they are influenced even by idle talk and fables.
A Catilínā Antónius nôn procul ábĕrat, *utpote qui* in fúgā *sequerétur.*	Antonius was not far from Catiline as he pursued him in his flight.

O fortunâte adoléscens, *quî* túae virtûtis Homêrum praecônem *invéněris!*
O lucky young man, for having found a Homer to proclaim thy valor!

Mê infélicem, *quî* per tót ánnos tê vidêre nôn *potúěrim!* *
How unfortunate I am, that I have not been able to see you for so many years!

F. After the adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, and *idoneus*, the question *for what?* is answered by the relative with the subjunctive, and sometimes by a simple infinitive. E. g.

Dígnus, indígnus est, *quî amêtur.*
He is worthy, unworthy of being loved.

Idóneus est, *quî ímperet.*
He is competent to command.

Quî modéste paret, vidêtur, *quî* aliquándo *impĕret*, *dígnus* ésse.
He who modestly obeys seems to be worthy of commanding at some future time.

Liviánae fábulae nôn sátis *dígnae* sunt, *quae* ítĕrum *legántur.*
The dramas of Livy are scarcely worth reading a second time.

(Méntem) sôlam censébant *idóneam* (ésse), *cui credierêtur.*
They held that the intellect alone was fit to be relied upon.

Núlla videbâtur *áptior* persôna, *quae* de aetâte *loquerêtur.*
There seemed to be no person better qualified to discourse on old age.

Lyricôrum Horátius fére sôlus *légi dígnus* ést.
Of the lyrical poets Horace is almost the only one worth reading.

Utérque óptimus érat, *dignúsque* álter *élĭgi* álter *éligere.*
They both were men of the first order; and worthy the one to be chosen, and the other to choose.

G. In narration, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are sometimes put after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is spoken of. E. g.

Elephánti tûtum ab hóstibus, *quacúmque incéderent*, ágmen praebébant.
The elephants formed a safe protection against the enemy, wherever they might march.

Domitiânus, *quóties* ótium *ésset*, áleā sē oblectâbat.
Domitian amused himself with dice-playing, whenever he was at leisure.

Sócrates *quam* sē *cúnque* in pártem *dedisset*, ómnium fácile fúit princeps.
Socrates was confessedly the first in everything to which he had applied himself.

Néc quísquam Pýrrhum, *quâ tulísset* ímpĕtum, sustinêre váluit.
Nor could any one stand against Pyrrhus, where he had charged upon the enemy.

Remark. — The subjunctive is thus sometimes put after *quum*,

* In this and the preceding example, the student should notice the *person* of the verb, which adapts itself to that of the antecedent of the relative.

"when"; *ubi* and *ut*, in the sense of "as soon as," and after *si*. E. g. *Id* ubi dixisset, *hastam in fines eorum emittebat*, When (*or* as soon as) he had said that, he sent the javelin within their limits. But in all the cases of this rule, the indicative is even more frequently used than the subjunctive.

To die of a disease.	*Morĭor (mori, mortuus sum) aliquo morbo.*
The small-pox.	Variōlae, ārum, *pl.*
The fever.	Febris, is, *f.*
The intermittent, tertian, quartan, continual fever.	Febris remittens, tertiāna, quartāna, quotidiāna.
To get the fever.	In febrim incĭdĕre (incĭdi, incāsum).
To have the fever.	Febri laborāre, febrim habōre.
An attack of fever; a fit.	Accessus febris; mōtus febriculōsus.
The fever comes on.	Febris accēdit.
The fever stops.	Febris decēdit.
The apoplexy.	Apoplexia, ae, *f.*
To be struck with apoplexy.	Corripĭor (i, reptus sum) apoplexiā.
To open (active).	*Aperio, īre, ĕrŭi, ertum.* / *Patefacio, ĕre, fēci, factum.*
To unlock, unbolt.	Reclūdo, ĕre, si, sum. / Rĕsĕro, āre, āvi, ātum.
To open, be open (*neut.*).	Aperĭor, īri, ertus sum. / Reclūdi, reserāri.
To stand or lie open.	Patĕo, ēre, patŭi, ——.
To close, shut (act.).	*Claudo, ĕre, si, sum.* / *Obsĕro, āre, āvi, ātum.*
To cover (shut).	Operĭo, īre, ŭi, rtum.
To shut, close (*neut.*).	Claudi, obserāri; operīri.
To sell well, readily (*of goods*).	Vendibĭlem (*or* -bĭle) ēsse. / Emptōres facile invenīre.
Of what disease did your sister die?	Quŏ mórbo mórtua est sóror túa?
She died of the small-pox.	Mórtua ést varĭōlis.
Did you ever get the fever?	Incidistīne únquam in fébrim?
Yes, I had the tertian fever once.	Sáne; in fébrim tertiânam quóndam incĭdi.
Was the old man struck with apoplexy?	Correptúsne est sénex apopléxiā?
He was struck.	Corréptus ést.
Did the wine sell well last year?	Invenítne vínum fácile emptóres ánno próxĭme elápso?
I do not know how it sold.	Haûd scío, quómodo venděrētur.
Will you shut the door?	Vísne óstium claúděre?
No, I will open it (wide).	Ímmo íd pótius patefácere málo.

Has he already locked (bolted) the door?	Obseravítne jam óstium?
He has not yet bolted it.	Nôndum obserâvit.
The key opens the door (fits the lock).	Clávis óstium áperit.
The door opens easily.	Óstium fácile aperitur.
The door does not shut.	Fóres híant.
The window shuts well.	Fenéstra ex tóto claûsa ést.
The window does not shut easily.	Fenéstra nôn fácile operitur.
The door of the temple stood open.	Jánua témpli patêbat.
Nature opened the way.	Natûra íter patefēcit.
They opened their ears to flatterers.	Aúres súas assentatóribus patefecérunt.
Letters can either be lost, or opened, or intercepted.	Líterae aut interíre, aut aperíri, aut intércipi póssunt.
From afar, afar off.	*E longinquo; procul; emĭnus.*
Summer clothes.	Vestes aestivae.
To conceive, comprehend.	Comprehendo, ĕre, di, sum. / Mente complector (i, plexus sum).
That is not said.	Hóc nôn dícitur.
That cannot be comprehended.	Hóc comprehéndi nôn pótest. / Hóc in intelligéntiam nôn cádit.
It is evident, manifest, clear.	Est plānum, evĭdens, manifestum, in aperto. / Constat, lūcet, líquet.*
According to the circumstances of the case.	*Pro rē, pro rē nātā.*
According to circumstances.	Ex tempŏre, pro tempŏre.
Under these circumstances.	His rêbus; quae cum íta sínt.
To proceed according to circumstances.	Ex rē consŭlĕre (ŭi, tum).
According as, as.	*Pro eo ut, prout* (cum Indic.).
As the circumstances admitted.	Próut facultátes homĭnis ferēbant.
As the case may demand.	Próut rês póstŭlat.
As far as the difficulty of the case admitted.	Pro éo ut difficúltas témporis túlit.
As far as I can.	Quántum in mê sítum est. Ut pótĕro.
According as I deserve.	Pro éo ut mérĕor.
It depends upon circumstances.	Hóc ex rê et ex témpore péndet.
Everything depends upon you alone.	In tê úno pósita súnt ómnia.
It all depends on this.	Hóc cáput réi est. / Ómnia húc rédĕunt.
To put, place, lay, set.	*Pōnĕre, locāre, statuĕre* (ALIQUID IN ALIQUO LOCO).

* On the construction of these expressions, see Lesson LIII. *B.* Rem. 2.

To put anything before the fire.	Appōnĕre *or* propōnĕre aliquid igni (ad ignem).
To put, or place upon.	Impōnĕre aliquem *or* aliquid in rem. Collocāre aliquid in re.
To put anything in its proper place.	Aliquid suo loco pōnĕre.
To put (seat) the boy upon the horse.	Impōnĕre pŭĕrum in equum.
To set the glass upon the table.	Scyphum in mensā statuĕre (ŭi, ūtum).
To put back anything to its place.	Aliquid suo loco repōnĕre.
To stick, fix, insert.	*Infigo, ĕre, fixi, fixum.* *Insĕro, ĕre, serŭi, sertum.* (ALIQUID REI *or* IN REM.)
To insert the thread into the needle.	Inserĕre fĭlum in acum.
To put the ring on the finger.	Anŭlum digĭto inserĕre.
The javelin sticks fast in the gate.	Hasta infigĭtur portae.
Do not put the glass upon the table; for it will break.	Ne scýphum in mensā státuas. Nam frangĕtur.
To be angry (at some one).	*Irascor, i, irātus sum.* *Succenseo, ēre, ŭi, sum.* *Irātum esse* (ALICUI).
To be angry (about anything).	*Graviter* or *moleste ferre* (ALIQUID).
To pretend to be angry with any one.	Se simulāre alicui irātum.
What are you angry about?	Quid succénses (irásceris)?
I am angry with you, for having carried away my book.	Tibi succénseo, quod míhi lĭbrum abstulísti.
He has done nothing for you to be angry about.	Níhil fēcit, quod succénseas.
I am angry that he did not come.	Irâtus sum, éum nôn venísse (*or* quod nôn vênit).*
Are you sorry for having done it?	Poenitétne tê fácti? Poenitétne tê hóc fecísse?
I am sorry for it.	Id mê poénĭtet. Dólet míhi válde.
I do not regret having lived.	Nôn poénĭtet mê vixísse.
Are the women handsome?	Súntne mulíeres formósae?
They are so.	Sunt véro.
They are well-bred and handsome.	Et béne morátae et formósae sunt.
What countrywoman is she?	Cujas éstílla? Unde vênit?
She is from France.	Dómo Francogálla ést. Ex Francogállia vênit.

* On the government of these verbs, see Lesson LIV. *II.*

What sort of a pen have you lost?	Quâlem pénnam (quid pénnae) amisísti?
A gold one.	Aúrĕam.
What sort of pens has your sister made?	Quáles pénnas fĭdit sóror túa?
Good ones.	Bónas.
To cut a pen.	Pennam *or* calămum findĕre (fĭdi, fissum).
To mend a pen.	Pennam *or* calămum temperāre.
To put pen to paper.	Calămum sumĕre; se ad scribendum conferre.
Happy.	Fēlix, īcis; beātus, a, um.
Unhappy, miserable.	Infēlix, īcis; mĭser, a, um.
Polite, courteous.	Urbānus, benignus, modestus, a, um.
Impolite, uncivil.	Inurbānus, a, um; rusticus, a, um.

Exercise 164.

Of what illness did your sister die? — She died of the fever. — How is your brother? — My brother is no longer living. He died three months ago. — I am surprised at it, for he was very well last summer when I was in the country. — Of what did he die? — He died of apoplexy. — How is the mother of your friend? — She is not well; she had an attack of ague the day before yesterday, and this morning the fever has returned. — Has she the intermitting fever? — I do not know, but she often has cold fits. — What has become of the woman whom I saw at your mother's? — She died this morning of apoplexy. — Did the wine sell well last year? — It did not sell very well; but it will sell better next year, for there will be a great deal of it, and it will not be dear. — Why do you open the door? — Do you not see how it smokes here? — I do not see it; but you must open the window instead of opening the door. — The window does not open easily; that is the reason why I open the door. — When will you shut it? — I will shut it as soon as there is no more smoke. — Why do you not put those beautiful glasses on the small table (*mensŭla*)? — If I put them upon that little table they will break. — Did you often go a fishing when you were in that country? — We often went a fishing and a hunting. — If you will go with us into the country, you will see the castle of my father. — You are very polite, sir; but I have seen that castle already. — Are you such a man, as to be capable of doing that (*hoc facĕre possis*)? — I am by no means so heartless; nor are you such a man as not to know who I am. — Such is our character, that we cannot be contented with anything but liberty. — Are there any who affirm that this is not true? — There are none. — Is there any one who does not understand? — There is no one. — There were many who said that you were mistaken. — Had your brother anything new to write to you? — He had many things to write to me. — Are you not fortunate for having found such a book? — I am as happy as any man in the world (for it). — Did he begin to write this morning? — He could not begin, because he had no ink. —

Is your brother competent (*idoneus*) to teach? — He is not competent to teach, but to write. — Is he worthy to command? — He is as worthy as any one. — Did your teacher often go out walking? — He took a walk as often as he was at leisure. — Has my son been diligent? — He was confessedly the first in everything to which he applied himself.

Lesson XCI. — PENSUM UNUM ET NONAGESIMUM.

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INTERJECTED CLAUSES.

A. Interjected clauses, in which the language or thoughts of the person spoken of are conveyed, or which are essential to the definition of what has gone before, have a verb in the subjunctive.

Clauses of this kind always occur in sentences, which are themselves dependent upon another proposition; e. g. in the construction of the Acc. cum Inf., or in sentences dependent on a conjunction, &c. They are commonly introduced either by a relative (pronoun or adverb), or by a conjunction. E. g.

Thāles, quī sapientíssimus in séptem fúit, hómines existimâre dixit oportêre, *ómnia, quae cernerêntur*, deōrum *ésse plēna*.	Thales, who was the wisest of the seven sages, said that men ought to consider all things *beheld by our senses* as full of divinities.
Caesar hortátus est mílites, *ne éa, quae accidissent, gráviter férrent*.	Cæsar exhorted his soldiers not to be chagrined *at what had happened*.

Remark. — Sentences, in which the language or sentiments of another (or of one's self) are stated *indirectly*, are said to be in the *oratio obliqua*, in contradistinction to the *oratio directa*, in which they are quoted as they were uttered. Thus the above clauses stated in the *oratio directa* are: "*Omnia*, quae cernuntur, *deōrum plēna* sunt." — "*Ne ea*, quae accidērunt, ferte *graviter*" (Do not be chagrined at what has happened).* Thus also in English: *I wrote him*, "*I shall come to-morrow*" (*oratio directa*); and: *I wrote him that I would come to-morrow* (*oratio obliqua*). And in the third person: *He said*, "*I have conquered*"; and indirectly: *He said that he had conquered*. — The following rules will elucidate these cases more fully.

B. When an interjected clause occurs in the construction of the *accusativus cum infinitīvo*, either as an expression of the

* The student will notice here the change of mood and tense in the direct statement: *quae accidĕrunt* instead of *quae accidissent*; *quae cernuntur* instead of *quae cernerentur*, and the imperative *ne — ferte* instead of *ne — ferentur*.

language or sentiments of the person spoken of, or otherwise as an essential part of that which is advanced in the statement, the verb of that clause is in the subjunctive. E. g.

Môs est Athénis, *laudári* in conciône *éos*, qui *sint* in proéliis *interfécti*.	It is customary at Athens to deliver public eulogies on those who have fallen in battle.
Sócrates dícere solêbat, *omnes in eo, quod scírent*, sátis *esse eloquéntes*.	Socrates was in the habit of saying, that all men were eloquent enough in what they knew.
Elêus Híppias, quum Olýmpiam venísset, gloriâtus est, *nihil esse* úllā in árte rêrum ómnium, *quód* ípse *nesciret;* nec sôlum hās ártes, *quibus* liberáles doctrínae atque ingénuae *contineréntur ;* sed ánulum, *quem habêret*, pállium, *quô amíctus*, sóccos, *quibus indútus ésset, sê* súā mánu *confecísse*.	Hippias of Elis, having come to Olympia, boasted, that there was nothing in any one of all the arts, which he himself did not understand; and that these arts were not only those, in which the liberal sciences were contained, but that he himself had manufactured with his own hand the ring which he wore, the cloak which he had on, and the shoes that were on his feet.
Príncipes Aeduôrum, nôn *dubitâre sê*, dicébant, *quîn*, si Helvétios *superávĕrint* Románi, únā cum réliquā Gálliā Éduis libertâtem *sint ereptúri*.	The leaders of the Aedui said, that they had no doubt but that, if the Romans conquered the Helvetii, they would deprive the Aedii, together with all the rest of Gaul, of their liberties.

Remarks.

1. When the interjected clause is an addition of the speaker or writer himself, and not the language or sentiments of the subject spoken of, the verb is in the indicative. E. g. *Cave tibi amicos esse crĕdas*, quos vicisti, Beware of regarding those whom you have conquered as your friends.

2. If the interjected relative clause is merely explanatory of a fact, or a circumlocution for a noun or adjective, its verb is sometimes in the indicative. E. g. *Caesar per exploratōres certior factus est, ex ĕā parte vici*, quam *Gallis* concessĕrat, *omnes noctu discessisse*, Cæsar was informed by his scouts, that during the night all had left that section of the village which he had conceded to the Gauls. *Nam sic habetōte, magistratĭbus* ĭisque, qui praesunt, *rempublicam continēri*, For these shall be your sentiments, that the republic is maintained by its magistrates and by those who are at the head of it.

C. When the interjected clause occurs in a sentence introduced by a conjunction, as an essential part of the purpose, request, precept, command, or supposition of the same, the verb of that clause is in the subjunctive. E. g.

Úbii orábant, *ut* sibi Caêsar auxílium *férret;* vel, *si* id fácere *prohiberêtur*, exércitum módo Rhênum *transportâret.*

The Ubii besought Cæsar to come to their assistance, or, if he was prevented from doing so, to bring at least his army across the Rhine.

Rex imperâvit, *ut, quae* béllo ópus *essent, pararéntur.*

The king ordered such preparations to be made, as might be necessary for the war.

Éo simus ánimo, *ut* níhil in mális *ducâmus, quód sit* vel a déo immortáli vel a natúrā *constitûtum.*

Let us be so disposed, as to consider nothing an evil, that may have been appointed either by the immortal God or by nature.

REMARKS.

1. When the subjunctive clause introduced by *ut* does not denote a purpose, command, &c., but merely a result or definition (as after *tam, ita, talis,** &c.), the verb of the interjected clause is in the indicative. E. g. *Eloquendi vis efficit, ut ea*, quae ignorāmus, *discĕre, et ea*, quae scīmus, *alios docēre possīmus*, The power of speech enables us to learn the things we are ignorant of, and to teach others what we know. *Asia tam opĭma est et fertilis, ut multitudĭne earum rērum*, quae exportantur, *facile omnĭbus terris antecellat*, Asia is so rich and fertile, that in the multiplicity of exportable products it easily excels all other countries.

2. The verb of the interjected clause is sometimes in the indicative, when the speaker adds it on his own account. E. g. *Xerxem litteris certiōrem fēci, id agi, ut pons*, quem in Hellesponto fecĕrat, *dissolverētur*, I informed Xerxes by letter, that a plan was on foot to destroy the bridge which he had constructed over the Hellespont.

D. Dependent clauses generally, introduced by relatives or conjunctions, take a verb in the subjunctive, when they convey the sentiments of the person or party spoken of, and not of the speaker himself. E. g.

Énnius nôn cénset, lugéndam ésse mórtem, *quam* immortálitas *consequâtur.*

Ennius does not think that death is to be regretted, which (in his opinion) is followed by immortality.

Sócrates accusâtus est, *quod corrúmpĕret* juventûtem et nóvas superstitiónes *indúceret.*

Socrates was impeached, because (as his enemies alleged) he corrupted the youth, and introduced new superstitions.

Nóctu ambulâbat in público Themístocles, *quod sómnum* cápere nôn *pósset.*

Themistocles was in the habit of walking abroad at night, because (he said that) he could not get any sleep.

Plínius májor perire ómne témpus arbitrabâtur, *quod* stúdiis nôn *impertirêtur.*

Pliny the elder considered all the time lost which (he said) was not devoted to his studies.

* Compare Lesson LXXXVIII.

Aristídes nónne ob éam caûsam expúlsus est pátriā, *quod* praeter módum jústus *esset*?	Was not Aristides expelled from his country, because (it was alleged) that he was too just?

REMARKS.

1. In all the above examples the writer himself does not indorse or positively affirm the opinion advanced in the dependent clause; if he did, the verb would be in the indicative.

2. On the use of the reflexives *se, sui, sibi,* and *suus* in this construction, see Lesson LXXV. *C.*

3. Instead of the subjunctive of the verb itself, the expressions *quod dicĕret, quod arbitrarētur,* "because he said," "because he thought," are sometimes put, and the verb is made dependent upon these. E. g. *Ab Atheniensibus, locum sepulturae intra urbem ut dārent, impetrāre non potui,* quod *religione se impediri* dicĕrent,* I could not prevail upon the Athenians to grant me a burial-place within the limits of the city, because they said that they were prevented from doing so by religious scruples.

The utility, use.	*Utilĭtas, ātis* f.; *ūsus, ūs,* m.
The advantage.	*Commŏdum, emolumentum, lucrum,* i, m.
To be of use.	Utilitātem *or* ūsum afferre (ALICUI). / Usŭi esse, prodesse, condūcĕre (ALICUI).
To be of great use.	Magnam utilitātem afferre; valde *or* plurimum prodesse; magnae utilitāti esse (ALICUI).
To be of little use.	Pārum utilitātis afferre; parvae esse utilitāti; pārum (non multum) prodesse (ALICUI).
To be of no use.	Nihil prodesse (ALICUI); longe abesse (AB ALIQUO).
To profit by, derive profit from anything.	Utilitātem, fructum, commŏdum capĕre *or* percipĕre ex aliquā re.
To turn anything to one's advantage or profit.	Aliquā rē ūti; aliquid in rem suam convertĕre; lucri facĕre aliquid.
To turn everything to one's own profit.	Omnia ad suam utilitātem referre.
To look to one's own advantage.	Commŏdis suis consulĕre *or* servīre.
To benefit (be useful) to any one.	Alicūjus commodis consulĕre *or* servire.
Of what use is this?	Cui úsŭi ést hóc? / Quid réfert? Quid pródest?

* Instead of the *quod religione se impedirētur* of the rule, or the *quod religione se impediri dicĕbant,* when the speaker himself is the authority for the truth of the assertion. This construction, although grammatically incorrect, is not uncommon.

That is of no use.	Hóc est núlli úsui. Hóc nihil pródest.
It is of use to me; it is to my advantage.	Hóc míhi pródest (míhi útile est). Est e rê méâ; est in rém méam.
It is for the advantage of the state.	Hóc ést e rê públicâ.
Of use, of advantage.	Ex ūsu, e rē, in rem (alicūjus).
Useful; advantageous.	Utĭlis; salutāris; fructuōsus.
Useless; of no use.	Inūtĭlis; sine utilitāte; carens fructu.
It is well, right, fair, just, proper (to do anything).	*Aequum, pār, jus, fas est* (ALIQUID FACERE).
It is not well, unjust, wrong (to (do anything).	Injustum, inīquum, nĕfas est (ALIQUID FACERE).
I consider it proper, right, fair.	Aequum esse censeo (e. g. te hoc facĕre, &c.).
Is it right to do this?	Aequúmne ést fácere hóc?
It is not right; it is wrong.	Nôn aequum est; néfas est.
Is it useful to write much?	Éstne útile (prodéstne) múltum scrĭbere?
It is very useful, of great use.	Est sáne máxime útile. Plúrimum pródest.
Did he derive much advantage from his books?	Cepítne multum frúctum ex líbris súis?
He derived not much from them.	Ímmo éi nôn múltum profuérunt.
Is it for your advantage?	Estne e rê túâ?
It is not; it is for my father.	Nôn est; est e rê pátris.
What is your name?	Quód ést tíbi nômen? Quínam vocâris?
My name is Charles.	Est míhi nômen Carôlus (Caróli, Carólo).* Appéllor Carôlus.
What do you call this (how is this called) in Latin?	Quíd ést (dícitur, vocâtur) hóc Latíne?
What does this signify in French?	Quid ést (sónat, signíficat) hóc Francogállice?
This signifies *parler* in French.	Hóc Francogállice *parler* ést (sónat, signíficat).
It is not easy to tell.	Nôn fácile est dictu.
Do they call him king, philosopher, Frederic?	Appellántne éum rêgem, philósophum, Fredéricum?
They do.	Fáctum.
To name, call.	Nomināre, appellāre, vocāre, dicĕre.
To give one a name.	Nōmen alicui dăre (indĕre, imponĕre).
The name, appellation (of a person or object).	Nōmen†; appellatio; vocabŭlum.

* Compare page 367.

† The *nomen* is properly the middle of the three names of a free Roman citi-

The name of emperor.	Nōmen imperatōris.
Called William; William by name.	Quī dícitur (vocâtur) Guiliélmus. Nómine Guiliélmus.
William.	Wilhelmus (Guilielmus), i, *m.*
Francis.	Franciscus, i, *m.*
James.	Jacōbus, i, *m.*
Elizabeth.	Elisabētha, ae, *f.*
Eleanor.	Leonōra, ae, *f.*
Wilhelmine.	Wilhelmīna, ae, *f.*
Schiller.	Schillĕrus, i, *m.*
Goethe.	Goethĭus, i, *m.**
Euripides.	Euripĭdes, is, *m.*
Plato.	Plato, ōnis, *m.*
George the Third.	Georgĭus Tertĭus.
Henry the Fourth.	Henrĭcus Quartus.
Charles the Great.	Carōlus Magnus.
Louis the Fourteenth.	Ludovĭcus Quartus Decĭmus.
To speak a language.	Aliquā linguā lŏqui *or* ūti.
Fluently, with facility.	Expedīte, făcīle; profluente celeritāte.
He speaks Latin fluently.	Linguā Latīnā făcīle lóquitur. Línguae Latínae perítus est.
Charles the Fifth spoke several European languages fluently.	Carōlus Quíntus linguārum Europénsium plúribus profluénte celeritâte utebâtur (loquebâtur).
Have you ever heard such a thing?	Audivistine únquam tâle quíd?
Never.	Núnquam.
I have never seen or heard such a thing.	Núnquam égo áliquid tâle neque vídi neque audívi.
Such a thing.	Aliquid tāle, tāle quid.
The army.	Exercĭtus, ūs, *m.*
The camp.	Castra, ōrum, *n.*
Europe. — European.	Europa, ae, *f.* — Europensis, e; Europaeus, a, um.
The works (of an author).	Opĕra; scripta, ōrum, *n.*
Sooner — than.	*Prius* (*citius, ante*) — *quam.*
Rather — than.	*Prius* (*potius, citius*) — *quam.*
He arrived sooner than.	Cítius, quám égo, advênit.
I will rather pay him than go thither.	Débitum éi sólvere pótius, quam éo íre, málo.
I will rather burn the coat than wear it.	Combûram pótius, quam gestábo, véstem.
Rather than squander my money, I will throw it into the river.	In flúvium conjícere praeópto, quam dilapidâre pecúniam.

zen, who had a *praenōmen*, *nōmen*, and *cognōmen* (family name). Sometimes, however, it stands generally for any one of these names.

* Modern proper names are either indeclinable without any change (e. g. Schiller, Goethe), or they assume analogous Latin terminations.

Sure, certain.	*Certus, explorātus, a, um.*
To be sure of a thing.	Rem explorātam habēre. Certo *or* pro certo scire. Explorātum mihi est.
Are you quite sure of it?	Satín' hóc tíbi explorâtum 'st?
I am sure of it.	Explorâtum hábeo. Pro cérto scío hóc.
I am sure that he has arrived.	Hóc cérto scío, éum advenísse.
To repair (or go) to any place.	*Se conferre aliquo.* *Ire, proficisci aliquo.*
To withdraw, retire anywhere.	Concēdĕre aliquo.
I went to my room.	Égo mê in conclâve méum cóntuli.
He repaired to that town.	Úrbem in íllam sê cóntulit.
He repaired to his army.	Ad exércitum súum proféctus ést.
I repaired to that place.	In lócum íllum proféctus súm.
He retired into the country to live.	Rûs habitâtum concéssit.
Go where you please.	I, quô tíbi collíbeat.
To go to any one, to meet any one.	Accēdĕre, se conferre ad aliquem. Adíre, convenīre aliquem.

Exercise 165.

When did you see my father's castle? — I saw it when I was travelling last year. It is one of the finest castles that I have ever seen; it is seen far off. — How is that said? — That is not said. That cannot be comprehended. — Cannot everything be expressed in your language? — Everything can be expressed, but not as in yours. — Will you rise early to-morrow? — It will depend upon circumstances; if I go to bed early, I shall rise early, but if I go to bed late, I shall rise late. — Will you love my children? — If they are good, I shall love them. — Will you dine with us to-morrow? — If you will get ready (*si vis apparāre*) the food I like, I shall dine with you. — Have you already read the letter which you received this morning? — I have not opened it yet. — When will you read it? — I shall read it as soon as I have time. — Of what use is that? — It is of no use. — Why have you picked it up? — I have picked it up, in order to show it to you. — Can you tell me what it is? — I cannot tell you, for I do not know; but I shall ask my brother, who will tell you. — Where have you found it? — I have found it on the bank of the river, near the wood. — Did you perceive it from afar? — I did not want to perceive it from afar, for I passed by the side of the river. — Have you ever seen such a thing? — Never. — Is it useful to speak much? — If one wishes to learn a foreign language, it is useful to speak a great deal. — Is it as useful to write as to speak? — It is more useful to speak than to write; but in order to learn a foreign language, one must do both. — Is it useful to write all that one says? — That is useless. — Does your uncle walk often? — He walks every morning before breakfast, because (he says) it is wholesome (*salutare*). — Why was he expelled from the academy? — He was expelled from it, be-

cause (it was alleged that) he was sick. — What did he boast of? — He boasted that he had not only learnt all the lessons which are contained in this book, but that he himself had with his own hand written all the exercises, belonging to every one of them. — What did your master command you to do? — He commanded me to bring him the book which he had lent me.

EXERCISE 166.

Where did you take this book from? — I took it out of the room of your friend (fem.). — Is it right to take the books of other people? — It is not right, I know; but I wanted it, and I hope that your friend will not be displeased; for I will return it to her as soon as I have read it. — What is your name? — My name is William. — What is your sister's name? — Her name is Eleanor. — Why does Charles complain of his sister? — Because she has taken his pens. — Of whom do those children complain? — Francis complains of Eleanor, and Eleanor of Francis. — Who is right? — They are both wrong; for Eleanor wishes to take Francis's books and Francis Eleanor's. — To whom have you lent Schiller's works? — I have lent the first volume to William and the second to Elizabeth. — How is that said in French? — That is not said in French. — How is that said in German? — It is said thus. — Has the tailor already brought you your new coat? — He has brought it to me, but it does not fit me well. — Will he make you another? — He must make me another; for rather than wear it, I will give it away. — Will you use that horse? — I shall not use it. — Why will you not use it? — Because it does not suit me. — Will you pay for it? — I will rather pay for it than use it. — To whom do those fine books belong? — They belong to William. — Who has given them to him? — His good father. — Will he read them? — He will tear them rather than read them. — Are you sure that he will not read them? — I am sure of it, for he has told me so.

Lesson XCII. — PENSUM ALTERUM ET NONAGESIMUM.

OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

A. The imperative of Latin verbs has two forms, called the imperative *present* and the imperative *future*. Both of these serve to express *a command*, sometimes also *a wish, an advice* or *exhortation*, that something should be done. But the imperative present requires the immediate performance of an injunction, whereas the future implies that something should be done in connection with (i. e. in consequence of, after, or simultaneously with) some other act. E. g. PRES. *Discēde!* Leave (be off)!

Discēdīte! Leave ye! FUT. *Quum legĕris, tum discedīto!* Leave, after you have read!

NOTE. — The second action, on which the imperative future depends, is not always expressed, but may generally be supplied from the context. — Compare *F.* II.

B. FORMATION OF THE IMPERATIVE.

1. The imperative present active is formed from the present infinitive, by dropping the termination "*re.*" As, —

1. amāre — ămā, *love thou.*
2. monēre — mŏnē, *remind thou.*
3. legĕre — lĕgĕ, *read thou.*
(3.) capĕre — căpĕ, *take thou.*
4. audīre — audī, *hear thou.*

2. The imperative present passive has the same form as the present infinitive active in all the conjugations. As, —

1. amāre, *be thou loved.*
2. monēre, *be thou reminded.*
3. legĕre, *be thou read.*
(3.) capĕre, *be thou taken.*
4. audīre, *be thou heard.*

3. The imperative future active is formed from the present by changing, 1. *ā*, 2. *ē*, 3. *ĕ*, 4. *ī*, into, 1. *āto*, 2. *ēto*, 3. *ĭto*, 4. *ĭto*, and the passive, by adding *r* to these terminations of the active As, —

1. amā — amāto, amātor, *thou shalt love, be loved.*
2. monē — monēto, monētor, *thou shalt remind, be reminded.*
3. legĕ — legĭto, legĭtor, *thou shalt read, be read.*
(3.) capĕ — capĭto, capĭtor, *thou shalt take, be taken.*
4. audī — audīto, audītor, *thou shalt hear, be heard.*

INFLECTION OF THE IMPERATIVE.

C. The following paradigms exhibit the inflection of the imperative, active and passive.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
Present.		*Present.*	
S.	amā, *love (thou).*	S.	amāre, *be thou loved.*
P.	amāte, *love ye.*	P.	amāmĭnī, *be ye loved.*
Future.		*Future.*	
S. 2.	amāto, *thou shalt love.*	S. 2.	amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*
S. 3.	amāto, *let him love.*	S. 3.	amātor, *let him be loved.*
P. 2.	amatōte, *ye shall love.*	P. 2.	amāmĭnor, *ye shall be loved.*
P. 3.	amanto, *let them love.*	P. 3.	amantor, *let them be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
Present.		*Present.*	
S.	monē, *remind (thou).*	S.	monēre, *be thou reminded.*
P.	monēte, *remind ye.*	P.	monēmĭnī, *be ye reminded.*
Future.		*Future.*	
S. 2.	monēto, *thou shalt remind.*	S. 2.	monētor, *thou shalt be reminded.*
S. 3.	monēto, *let him remind.*	S. 3.	monētor, *let him be reminded.*
P. 2.	monetōte, *ye shall remind.*	P. 2.	monēmĭnor, *ye shall be reminded.*
P. 3.	monento, *let them remind.*	P. 3.	monentor, *let them be reminded.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Present.		*Present.*	
S.	legĕ, *read (thou).*	S.	legĕre, *be thou read.*
P.	legĭte, *read ye.*	P.	legĭmĭnī, *be ye read.*
Future.		*Future.*	
S. 2.	legĭto, *thou shalt read.*	S. 2.	legĭtor, *thou shalt be read.*
S. 3.	legĭto, *let him read.*	S. 3.	legĭtor, *let him be read.*
P. 2.	legĭtōte, *ye shall read.*	P. 2.	legimĭnor, *ye shall be read.*
P. 3.	legunto, *let them read.*	P. 3.	leguntor, *let them be read.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Present.		*Present.*	
S.	audī, *hear (thou).*	S.	audīre, *be thou heard.*
P.	audīte, *hear ye.*	P.	audīmĭnī, *be ye heard.*
Future.		*Future.*	
S. 2.	audīto, *thou shalt hear.*	S. 2.	audītor, *thou shalt be heard.*
S. 3.	audīto, *let him hear.*	S. 3.	audītor, *let him be heard.*
P. 2.	audītōte, *ye shall hear.*	P. 2.	audīmĭnor, *ye shall be heard.*
P. 3.	audĭunto, *let them hear.*	P. 3.	audĭuntor, *let them be heard.*

So conjugate *apportā*, bring; *dā*, give; *laudā*, praise; *regnā*, rule; — *audē*, dare; *gaudē*, rejoice; *habē*, have; *jubē*, command; *studē*, strive; — *age*, come on (stir); *mitte*, send; *pōne*, put; *scribe*, write; *sūme*, take; — *apĕrī*, open; *punī*, punish; *repĕrī*, find; *sentī*, feel; *venī*, come.

IMPERATIVE OF DEPONENT VERBS.

D. The imperative of deponent verbs follows the analogy of the passive voice. Thus: —

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Present.

S. hortāre, *exhort (thou).*
P. hortāmĭnī, *exhort ye.*

Future.

S. 2. hortātor, *thou shalt exhort.*
S. 3. hortātor, *let him exhort.*
P. 2. hortāmĭnor, *ye shall exhort.*
P. 3. hortantor, *let them exhort.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Present.

S. verēre, *fear (thou).*
P. verēmĭnī, *fear ye.*

Future.

S. 2. verētor, *thou shalt fear.*
S. 3. verētor, *let him fear.*
P. 2. verēmĭnor, *ye shall fear.*
P. 3. verentor, *let them fear.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Present.

S. loquĕre, *speak (thou).*
P. loquimĭnī, *speak ye.*

Future.

S. 2. loquĭtor, *thou shalt speak.*
S. 3. loquĭtor, *let him speak.*
P. 2. loquimĭnor, *ye shall speak.*
P. 3. loquuntor, *let them speak.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Present.

S. blandīre, *flatter (thou).*
P. blandīmĭnī, *flatter ye.*

Future.

S. 2. blandītor, *thou shalt flatter.*
S. 3. blandītor, *let him flatter.*
P. 2. blandīmĭnor, *ye shall flatter.*
P. 3. blandĭuntor, *let them flatter.*

So inflect *comitāre*, escort; *morāre*, delay (stay); *laetāre*, rejoice; *recordāre*, remember; — *merēre*, earn; *miserēre*, pity; *tuēre*, defend; — *fruĕre*, enjoy; *morĕre*, die; *obliviscĕre*, forget; *ulciscĕre*, revenge; *utĕre*, use; — *experīre*, experience (try); *largīre*, spend; *opperīre*, wait for (expect); *ordīre*, begin; *partīre*, divide.

IMPERATIVE OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

E. Of the irregular verbs, *possum*, *volo*, *malo*, *queo*, *nequeo*, and *fio* want the imperative mood. That of the rest is as follows: —

1. Esse, *to be.* — PRES. ĕs — este, *be thou, be ye.* FUT. 2. esto — estōte, *thou shalt be, ye shall be;* 3. esto — sunto, *let him be, let them be.*

So the compounds *abes*, *ades*, *dees*, &c. Some of which, however, like *possum*, do not admit of an imperative.

2. Edĕre, *to eat.* — PRES. ede *or* ēs — edīte *or* este. FUT. 2. edīto *or* esto — editōte *or* estōte; 3. edīto *or* esto — edunto.

So the compounds *adĕde*, *amběde*, *comĕde*, &c.

3. Ferre, *to bear.* — ACT. PRES. fĕr — ferte. FUT. 2. ferto — fertōte; 3. ferto — ferunto. — PASS. PRES. ferre — ferimĭni. FUT. 2. fertor — ferimĭnor; 3. fertor — feruntor.

So also *affer*, *confer*, *perfer*, &c.

4. Nolle, *to be unwilling.* PRES. nōli — nolīte. FUT. 2. nolīto — nolītōte; 3. nolīto — nolunto.

5. Ire, *to go.* — PRES. ī — īte. FUT. 2. īto — itōte; 3. īto — eunto.

So the compounds *abi*, *exi*, *peri*, *prodi*, *redi*, &c.

6. Inquam, *I say.* — PRES. inque — inquīte. FUT. inquīto. — The rest is wanting. That of *aio*, I say, is *ai*, but obsolete.

7. Memĭni, *I remember*, has only the forms *memento — mementote*, remember thou, ye.

8. A few verbs occur in the imperative alone. They are *apăge*, away, begone! *ave*, hail! *salve*, hail (good morning, &c.); *vale*, farewell; and *cedo*, say, tell me, let see. The remaining forms of these are *avēte, avēto; salvēte, salvēto; valēte, valēto.*

REMARKS.

1. The verbs *dīco, dūco, facio*, and *fĕro* drop the final *e* of the imperative present singular, and have *dic, duc, fac, fer*. So also the compounds of those verbs; as, *educ, calefac, effer, perfer*, &c. The only exceptions are the compounds of *facio*, which change the radical *a* into *i*; as, *confĭce, perfĭce*, &c. — Of the verb *scīre*, it is customary to say *scīto — scītōte* instead of *scī — scīte*.

2. In an imperative clause, the English "not" is always *ne* instead of *non*, and the English "nor" *neve* instead of *neque*. E. g. *Ne crucia te*, Do not torment yourself. *Ne saevi tantopere*, Do not be so fierce. *Ne audēto accedĕre neve loquĭtor*, Let him not venture to approach nor speak.

3. Instead of the simple imperative, it is not uncommon to employ the formulas *cura* (or *curāto*) *ut, fac ut* (or *fac* without *ut*), with the present subjunctive. E. g. *Cura, ut quam primum venĭas*, Try to come as soon as you can. *Fac* (*ut*) *animo forti magnōque sis*, Be brave (strive to be brave) and magnanimous. So also in prohibitions, *fac ne, cave ne* (or *cave* without *ne*), with the subjunctive, and *nōli* with the infinitive. E. g. *Fac ne venīre praetermittas*, Do not fail to come. *Cave* (*ne*) *putes*, Do not suppose (Beware of supposing). *Nōli existimāre*, Do not think. *Nolītōte dubitāre*, Be unwilling to doubt.

4. Instead of the imperative, the Romans frequently employ certain tenses of the indicative and subjunctive. They are, —

a) The first future indicative; as, *Facies* (= *facĭto*), *ut sciam*, Let me know. *Sed valēbis* (= *vale*), *meaque negotia vidēbis* (= *vide*), But farewell, and attend to my interests. *Tu non cessābis* (= *ne cessa*) *nosque dilĭges* (= *dilĭge*), Do you not cease from your efforts, and preserve your regard for us.

b) The second person of the present subjunctive. E. g. *Quum te bene confirmāris, ad nos* venias (= *venĭto*), When you shall have properly established your health again, you must come to see us. *Tuā quod nihil refert*, ne cures (= *ne cura*), Do not meddle with things that do not concern you. *Quod boni datur*, fruāre (= *fruĕre*), *dum licet*, Enjoy the proffered good while it is lawful.

c) The third person of the present subjunctive. E. g. *Audiat*, Let him hear. *Videat*, Let him see. *Desīnant furĕre*, Let them cease to rage. *Donis impii* ne *placare* audeant *deos*, The impious shall not dare to appease the gods with presents.*

* The subjunctive for this person is even more common than the imperative proper. Compare Lesson LXXXVII. *B.* Rem.

d) The second person of the perfect subjunctive, chiefly in negative commands with *ne*. E. g. *Hoc* ne fecĕris (= *ne facĭto*), You shall not do this. *Nihil* ignovĕris (= *ignoscito*), Do not pardon anything. *Misericordiā commōtus ne sis*, Do not be moved with compassion.

F. OF THE USE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

I. The imperative present and its equivalents (cf. *E.* Rem. 3, 4) are used in direct commands or prohibitions, addressed by the speaker himself, and on his own authority. E. g.

Sérva, óbsĕcro, haêc nóbis bóna.	Preserve these blessings unto us, I pray thee.
Justítiam *cole* et pietâtem.	Cultivate justice and piety.
Subvenīte mísĕro; *īte* óbviam injúriae.	Come ye to the rescue of an unhappy man; face the injustice.
Prócul, o prócul *éste*, totôque *absístīte* lúco!	Away! away! Keep off from the entire grove!
Nímium *ne créde* colóri.	Do not trust beauty too much.
Quaéso, ánimum *ne despónde*.	Do not, I pray you, give up your courage.
Cúra, ut váleas.	Farewell!
Mágnum *fac* ánimum *hábeas* et spém bónam.	Keep up your courage and hope.
Fac, ne quíd áliud *cúres*, nísi út quám commodíssime convaléscas.	See that you attend to nothing else, except the most suitable recovery of your health.
Cáve, si me ámas, *exístimes*, mê abjecísse cûram reipúblicae.	Beware, I beseech you, of supposing that I have thrown aside the cares of public life.
Nóli tê *oblivísci* Cicerônem ésse.	Do not forget that you are Cicero.
Nolīte id *vélle*, quód fíeri nôn pótest.	Do not desire that which is impossible.
Tú níhil invítā *díces faciêsve* Minervā.	Say or do nothing but what you are fit for.
Si cértum est fácĕre, *fácias*: vêrum *ne* post cúlpam *cónfĕras* in mê.	If you are determined to do it, do so; but do not afterwards cast the blame on me.
Ne quaéras; *éfferant*, quae sêcum hûc attulérunt.	Do not ask me; let them take away what they have brought here with them.
Quód dúbĭtas, *ne féceris*.	Do not perform what you are in doubt about.

II. The imperative future is used in indirect commands or prohibitions, especially in contracts, laws, and wills, but also as the form of a request, demand, advice, or moral precept. E. g.

Amicítia hîs légibus *ésto*: — *Excédito* úrbibus, ágris, vícis, ca-	There shall be peace on these conditions: let him evacuate the

stéllis cis Taûrum usque ad Tánăim ámnem.

cities, fields, villages, and forts on this side of the Taurus as far as the river Don.

Régio império dúo *súnto*, iíque Cónsŭles *appellántor*, milítiae súmmum jûs *habénto*, némini *paréntо*; íllis sálus pópŭli suprêma léx *ésto*.

There shall be two persons of royal authority, and they shall be called Consuls; they shall have the chief command in war, shall be obedient to no one; the welfare of the people shall be their highest law.

Ímpius *ne audéto* placâre dónis íram deôrum.

No impious man shall dare to appease the anger of the gods with presents.

Hóminem mórtuum in úrbe *ne sepelíto*, *néve úrito*.

Thou shalt bury or burn a dead man in the city.

Nôn sátis ést púlchra ésse poémăta; dúlcia *súnto*, et quocúnque vólunt, ánimum auditôris *agúnto*.

It is not enough that poems be beautiful; they must be sweet, and must carry the minds of the hearer wherever they list.

Coeléstia sémper *spectáto*, ílla humâna *contémnito*.

You should always observe celestial things, and despise the things of earth.

Quum valetúdĭni túae consulúĕris, tum *consúlito* navigatióni.

When you shall have provided for your health, then provide for your voyage.

Ubi nôs lavérimus, si vóles, *laváto*.

You shall wash, if you choose, where we have washed.

Pýthio Apóllĭni .... dónum *mittitóte*, lascíviam a vóbis *prohibetóte*.

Send a gift to Pythian Apollo, guard against insolence.

Si quô híc gradiêtur, páriter *progredímĭnor*.

If this man advances anywhere, proceed ye at the same time.

Júcta álea *esto* (= Júcta *sit* áleă)!

Let the die be cast!

To obey, to render obedience. — *Pareo, ēre, ŭi.* / *Obedio, īre, īi, ītum.* / *Obtemperāre* (ALICUI).

To obey any one. — Alicui parēre, obtemperāre.

To obey any one's commands. — Alicui parēre atque imperāta facĕre. / Alicui dicto audientem esse.

To obey any one's precepts. — Alicujus praeceptis parēre *or* obedīre.

To comfort, console any one. — Consolāri aliquem. / Solatium alicui praebēre *or* afferre.

To offend any one. — Aliquem injuriā afficĕre. / Aliquem offendĕre, laedĕre.

To borrow (anything of any one). — Mutuāri, mutŭum sūmĕre (ALIQUID AB ALIQUO).

To lend (anything to any one).	Mutŭum dăre, commodāre (ALICUI ALIQUID).
To lend money to any one (on interest).	Pecuniam alicui foenŏri dăre.
To borrow money (of any one).	Pecuniam mutuam sumere, pecuniam petĕre (AB ALIQUO).
The patience.	Patientĭa, ae, *f.*; aequus animus.
The impatience.	Impatientia morae *or* spĕi.
To have patience.	Patientiā ūti; aequo animo esse.
Have patience!	Aéquo sis animo!
Be patient (wait)!	Exspécta! Máne!
Be attentive! (*pl.*)	Atténdite! Adestôte ánimis!
Go thither!	I illo! Ite illórsum!
Give it to me!	Dâ míhi hóc!
Lend me the book!	Cómmŏda míhi líbrum!
Lend me some money!	Dâ míhi mútuam pecúniam!
Be (ye) good.	Este bóni.
Know (ye) it.	Scitôte hóc.
Obey your instructors and never give them any trouble.	Praeceptóribus véstris paretôte, néque ĭis unquam moléstiam exhibetôte.
Pay what you owe, comfort the afflicted, and do good to those that have offended you.	Débĭta sólves, éos, qui aégri ánimi sint, consoláběris, iísque, qui tê injúriis affécerint, benígne fácies.
Love God, and thy neighbor as thyself.	Déum áma, proximúmque túum támquam temetípsum.
Let us always love and practise virtue; and we shall be happy both in this life and in the next.	Virtûtem sémper colâmus et exercitêmus; haêc quum fíunt, beáti érimus et in hâc et íllā in vérā vítā.
Let us see which of us (two) can shoot the best.	Videâmus, úter nóstrum sciéntius míttat sagíttas.
Sadness.	Tristitia, moestitia, ae, *f.*
The creditor.	Creditor, ōris, *m.*
The watch.	Horologium portabile.
The snuff-box.	Pyxis, ĭdis, *f.*
To add.	Addo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum. Adjicio, ĕre, jēci, jectum. (ALIQUID REI, AD REM.)
To build, construct.	Aedifĭco, āre, āvi, ātum. Exstrŭo, ĕre, xi, ctum.
To embark, to go on board ship.	Conscendĕre navem (*or simply* conscendĕre).
I embark for Europe.	Conscendo, ut in Eurōpam transmittam. In Eurōpam conscendo.
To set sail.	Vēlum in altum dăre. Solvĕre (i, solūtum), *sc.* navem.

To set sail for any place.	Vēla (navem, cursum) dirigĕre aliquo. / Navigāre ad locum.
He is sailing for America.	Cúrsum in Américam dírigit.
To sail with full sails.	Plenissimis velis navigāre *or* vehi.
He embarked on the sixteenth of last month.	Nâvem conscéndit séxto décimo ménsis próximi.
He set sail on the third instant.	Vêla dédit tértio hújus ménsis.
I am out of danger.	In pórtu návigo.
Flee with thy utmost speed!	Remígio velôque fúge!
We must do our utmost to avoid that.	Rês rémis velísque fugiénda est.
To execute a commission.	*Mandātum exsĕqui* or *persĕqui* (*secūtus sum*).
To give one a commission.	Mandāre alicui aliquid. / Alicui negotium dăre.
I have executed your commission.	Mandâtum túum fidéliter executus sum.
To do (*or* fulfil) one's duty.	Officium facĕre. Officio fungi. Officio suo non deesse.
To neglect one's duty.	Officio suo deesse. / Officium praetermittere *or* negligĕre.
To set one a task.	Pensum alicui praescribĕre *or* imperāre.
To do (*or* perform) one's task.	Opus suum facĕre (conficĕre). / Pensum imperātum absolvĕre *or* peragĕre.
It is my duty.	Méum offícium (*or* múnus) ést. / Méum ést.
I deemed it my duty.	Méum ésse putávi.
This man always fulfils his duty.	Hîc vír offícium súum sémper exséquitur.
He never swerves from his duty.	Ab officio núnquam discêdit (recêdit).
Have you done your task?	Absolvistîne pénsum imperâtum?
Not yet.	Nôndum absólvi.
To rely or *depend upon something.*	*Fulo, ĕre, fisus sum.* / *Confīdĕre* (ALICUI, REI *or* RE). / *Nitor, i, nixus sum* (RE).
Relying *or* depending upon anything.	Frētus *or* nixus aliquā re.
I rely upon you.	Confído tíbi. / In fíde túā requiésco.
I rely upon your humanity.	In humanitâte túā caûsam méam repóno.
You may rely upon him.	Confidĕre éi póssis. / In éjus fíde requiéscere tíbi lícet.
He relies upon it.	Confídit hôc.

You may depend upon it.	Ne dúbĭta. Fáctum púta.
To suffice, to be sufficient.	*Satis esse. Sufficĕre, fēci, fectum.* (AD REM, QUOD . . . .)
To be contented with something.	Contentum esse aliquā rē; nihil ultra desiderāre.
It is sufficient for me.	Hóc míhi sátis ést (súffĭcit).
It is abundantly sufficient for me.	Míhi abúnde ést. / Míhi abúnde sufficit.
Will this money be sufficient for that man?	Sufficiétne úlli pecúnia haêc?
It will.	Sufficiet. Sátis érit.
Has this sum been sufficient for him?	Núm haec súmma éi suffēcit?
It was not.	Nôn suffēcit.
He was contented with it.	Fúit éā conténtus. / Níhil últra desiderābat.
He would be contented, if you only add a few imperials.	Conténtus ésset, si paúcos tántum ádděres imperiáles.
Little wealth suffices for the wise.	Párvo (paúcis) sápiens conténtus ést.
That is to say (*i. e.*).	*Hoc est; id est: scilĭcet, nempe.*
And so on, and so forth (*&c.*).	*Et cetĕra, cetĕra; et sic de cetĕris.*
Say on, go on.	Áge! Pérge!
Otherwise, differently.	Alĭter, sĕcus (*followed by* ac, atque, quam).
In another manner.	Alio mŏdo, alĭter.
Else, otherwise.	Alĭter, aut; aliōqui.
If not.	Sin alĭter, sin mínus.
What else?	Quid áliud? Quid praetérea?
Have you anything else to say?	Num quíd praetérea tíbi dicéndum ést?
If I knew that, I should behave differently.	Íd si scírem, mê áliā ratióne (álio módo) gérĕrem.
If I had known that, I should have behaved differently.	Id si cógnitum habuíssem, mê áliter gessíssem.
I cannot do it otherwise.	Áliā ratióne fácĕre hóc nôn póssum.
Mend, else you will be punished.	Resipísce, sin mínus, puniēris.
If you go, very well; if not, I shall command you.	Si ábis, béne ést; sin mínus, tíbi mandábo.
To mend, reform.	*Resipisco, ĕre, pŭi* (*pīvi*). / *In meliōrem frugem redire.*
A man polite towards every one.	Homo erga omnes humānus (officiōsus).
A father who loves his children most affectionately.	Păter filiōrum suōrum amantissĭmus.
You have to learn the twentieth lesson, and to translate the exercises belonging to it.	Ediscéndum ést tíbi pénsum vicésimum, et verténda sunt Latíne ad id pertinéntia dictâta.

I have received with the greatest pleasure the letter which you addressed to me, dated the 6th instant.	Lítteras, quâs séxto hújus ménsis ad mê dedísti, cum maximâ voluptâte accépi.
I think he must have been sick, otherwise he would not look so pale.	Crédo éum aegrôtum fuísse, aliôquin spéciem tam pállidam nôn praebêret.
To translate.	Vertĕre, convertĕre, reddĕre.*

Exercise 167.

Have you executed my commission? — I have executed it. — Has your brother executed the commission which I gave him? — He has executed it. — Would you execute a commission for me? — I am under so many obligations to you, that I will always execute your commissions when it shall please you to give me any. — Ask the horse-dealer (*mango, ōnis*) whether he can let me have the horse at the price which I have offered him. — I am sure that he would be satisfied, if you would add a few florins more. — I will not add anything. If he can let me have it at that price, let him do so; if not, let him keep it. — Good morning, my children! Have you done your task? — You well know that we always do it; for we must be ill not to do it. — What do you give us to do to-day? — I give you the ninety-third lesson to study, and the exercises belonging to it to do, — that is to say, the 168th and 169th. Endeavor to commit no errors. — Is this bread sufficient for you? — It would be sufficient for me, if I was not very hungry. — When did your brother embark for America? — He sailed on the thirtieth of last month. — Do you promise me to speak to your brother? — I do promise you, you may depend upon it. — I rely upon you. — Will you work harder for next lesson than you have done for this? — I will work harder. — May I (*licétne mihi*) rely upon it? — You may. — Have patience, my dear friend, and be not sad; for sadness alters nothing (*nihil emendat*). — Be not afraid of your creditors; be sure that they will do you no harm. — You must have patience: I will pay all that you have advanced me (*mutuum dedísti*). — Do not believe that I have forgotten it, for I think of it every day (*in animo verso quotidie*). — Do not believe that I have had your gold watch, or that Miss Wilhelmine has had your silver snuff-box, for I saw both in the hands of your sister when you were at the concert. — What a beautiful inkstand you have there! pray, lend it to me. — What do you wish to do with it? — I wish to show it to my sister. — Take it, but take care of it, and do not break it. — Do not fear. — What do you want of my brother? — I want to borrow some money of him. — Borrow some of somebody else. — If he will not lend me any, I will borrow some of somebody else. — You will do well. — Do not wish (for) what you cannot have, but be contented with what Providence (*providentia divina*) has given you, and

---

* Thus, *in Latinum convertĕre, Latine reddere, ex Graeco in Latinum sermōnem convertere*, &c.

consider (*et repŭta*) that there are many men who have not what you have. — Life being short, let us endeavor to make it as agreeable as possible. — Have you done your exercises? — I could not do them, because my brother was not at home. — You must not get your exercises done by your brother, but you must do them yourself.

Lesson XCIII. — PENSUM NONAGESIMUM TERTIUM.

ADVERBS.

A. Adverbs are indeclinable particles, which serve to qualify verbs, nouns, adjectives, participles, and other adverbs. E. g.

Bĕne, récte, egrégie dixísti.	You have spoken well, correctly, nobly.
Natûra ratiôque cávet, ne quíd hómo *indecóre effeminatéque fáciat.*	Nature and reason enjoin that man should do nothing that is unbecoming or effeminate.
C. Flamínius, *cónsul ĭtĕrum.*	C. Flaminius, a second time consul.
Nímis múlta. Válde mágnus. Máxime idóneus.	Too many things. Very great. Most competent.
In ódium adducéntur adversárii, si quod eôrum *supérbe, crudéliter, malitióse fáctum* proferêtur.	Our adversaries will incur odium, if anything haughty, cruel, or malicious shall be alleged of them.
Nímis feróciter legátos nóstros increpant.	They are too ferocious in their clamors against our ambassadors.

B. Adverbs are divided into various classes, according to their signification. The principal relations expressed by them are those of space, time, quantity, quality, measure, number, degree, manner, &c.

I. Adverbs expressing determinations of space may be divided into those denoting, —

1. PLACE. E. g. *hic*, here; *ibi*, *istic*, *illic*, there; *ubi*, where (for a complete list of these see IV.); — *intus*, within; *subtus*, below; *alĭbi*, elsewhere; — *intro*, in, into the house; *retro*, backwards; *porro*, farther; *protĕnus*, forward; *sursum*, upwards; *rectā*, right on; *ultro citrŏque*, up and down; — *desŭper*, down, from above; *indĭdem*, from the same place; *utrimque*, from both sides; — *prope*, near; *longe*, *procul*, far; *passim*, here and there; *praesto*, at hand; — *uspĭam*, *usquam*, somewhere; *nusquam*, nowhere.

2. QUANTITY, DIMENSION, or MEASURE. E. g. *multum*, much; *paulum*, little; *parum*, but little, too little; *nĭmis*, *nimĭum*, too much; *satis*, enough; — *longe*, long; *late*, wide; *alte*, high; *crasse*, thick; *arte*, tight; — *modĭce*, moderately; *largĭter*, abundantly; *brevĭter*, shortly.

3. ORDER or RANK. E. g. *primo*, *secundo*, *tertio*, *quarto*, &c., in the first, second, third, fourth, &c. place; * *postrēmo*, in the last place; *deinceps*, one after another.

II. Adverbs expressing determinations of time may be divided into those denoting, —

1. TIME PROPER. E. g. *dĭu*, long; *paulisper*, *parumper*, for a little while; *usque*, incessantly; — *jam*, now; *nuper*, lately; *prĭdem*, long ago; *heri*, yesterday; *cras*, to-morrow; *olim*, once; *quondam*, at some time, once; *nondum*, not yet; *alias*, at another time; *ante*, *antea*, before; *post*, *postea*, afterwards; *interdum*, sometimes; *interim*, *interea*, meanwhile; *dudum*, long since; *unquam*, ever; *nunquam*, never, &c. To these add the correlatives of IV.

2. MULTITUDE or NUMBER. E. g. *saepe*, often; *quotidie*, daily; *identĭdem*, repeatedly; *deinde*, after that; *subinde*, directly after that; *denĭque*, finally, briefly; — *semel*, once; *bis*, twice; *ter*, *quater*, *quinques*, *sexies*, &c., three, four, five, six, &c. times. (On these numeral adverbs see Lesson XXI. E.)

3. ORDER or DIVISION. E. g. *prĭmum*, *itĕrum*, *tertĭum*, *quartum*, *postrēmum*, for the first, second, third, fourth, last time; * — *duplicĭter*, doubly; *bifariam*, in two parts, on two sides; *trifariam*, threefold, on three sides; *quadrifariam*, fourfold, on four sides; *multifariam*, *plurifariam*, *omnifariam*, on many, on several, on all sides; — *bipartĭto*, *tripartĭto*, *quadripartĭto*, in two, three, four parts, twofold, &c., &c.

III. Adverbs of quality may be subdivided into those denoting, —

1. QUALITY PROPER. E. g. *bene*, well; *male*, badly; *perpĕram*, incorrectly; *frustra*, in vain; *gratis*, for nothing; *sedŭlo*, busily; *subĭto*, suddenly; *tuto*, safely; *certo*, certainly; *raro*, seldom; *crebro*, frequently; *vulgo*, generally; *plerumque*, for the most part, &c.

2. MANNER. E. g. *facĭle*, easily; *docte*, learnedly; *eleganter*, elegantly; *gregatim*, in flocks; *felicĭter*, happily; *prudenter*, prudently, &c.

3. LIMITATION or DEGREE. E. g. *prope*, *propemodum*, nearly; *paene*, almost; *fere*, *ferme*, almost, about; *praesertim*, particularly; *precipue*, especially; *saltem*, at least; *dumtaxat*, only; *vix*, scarcely; *quidem*, indeed, at least; *ne — quidem*, not even; *prorsus*, entirely; *omnĭno*, altogether, wholly.

4. COMPARISON or SIMILITUDE. E. g. *sicut*, as, just as; *perinde*, just as if; *aliter*, *secus*, otherwise; *aeque*, equally; — *divinĭtus*, from God, divinely; *humanĭtus*, after the manner of men (and others in *ĭtus*); — *simul*, *unā*, together.

5. ASSENT, AFFIRMATION, or NEGATION. E. g. *ita*, *etiam*, yes;

* And so on from all the ordinals.

non, no; *haud*, not at all; *nae*, surely; *sane*, *profecto* (= *pro facto*), really, indeed; *utĭque*, undoubtedly; *vero*, truly, really; *nimĭrum*, *scilĭcet*, *videlĭcet*, *nempe*, of course, certainly, forsooth, namely; *quippe*, indeed, to wit; *aliōquin*, otherwise, if not; *imo* (*immo*), nay, rather; *nequāquam*, *haudquāquam*, by no means; *neutiquam*, *mĭnime*, not at all.

6. INTERROGATION. E. g. *num*, whether? *an*, perhaps? *-ne*, then? *cur*, why? *quīn*, *quidni*, why not?

7. POSSIBILITY, REALITY, NECESSITY. E. g. *forte*, by chance, perchance; *forsan*, *fortan*, *forsĭtan*, *fortassis*, *fortasse*, perhaps; *utĭnam*, would that! *certo*, certainly; *necesse*, necessarily.

IV. A number of adverbs are *correlative*, i. e. they have a certain mutual relation and correspondence of form and signification.

Correlatives correspond with each other as *demonstratives*, *relatives*, *interrogatives*, *indefinites*, and *generals*, and denote either a place, time, quality, or degree. The following is a list of the most important of them: —

DEMONST.	RELAT.	INTERR.	INDEF.	GENERAL.
hic, ibi, istic, illic	ubi	ubi?	sicubi, necubi, alicubi	ubicunque, ubiubi
huc, eo, istuc, illuc	quo	quo?	siquo, nequo, aliquo	quocunque, quoquo
hac, eā, istac, illac	quā	quā?	siquā, nequā, aliquā	quacunque, quāquā.
hinc, inde, istinc, illinc	unde	unde?	sicunde, necunde, alicunde	undecunque, undeunde
tum, tunc, dum, etiamnunc, nunc	quum	quando?	siquando, nequando, aliquando	quandoque, quandocunque
toties	quoties	quoties?	aliquoties	quotiescunque
tam (dam, nam)	quam	quam?	aliquam	quamquam
ita, sic	ut, uti	ut?	———	utcunque, utut.

REMARKS.

1. The relation denoted by adverbs may frequently be expressed by cases with or without prepositions. E. g. *cum curā* = *diligenter*, carefully, with care; *cum fide* = *fidelĭter*, faithfully; *cum voluptāte* = *libenter*, with pleasure; *eo tempore* = *tum*, at that time, then; *hoc loco* = *hic*, in this place, here, &c.

2. Adverbs of quality ending in *e* or *ter* (vide *C.* 1), and many of those in *o* (*C.* 6), are susceptible of comparison like adjectives. E. g. *docte*, *doctius*, *doctissime*; *fortĭter*, *fortius*, *fortissime*; *tuto*, *tutius*, *tutissime*. (See Lesson XLII.) Among comparatives may be included a few diminutives; as, *longe* — *longŭle*, somewhat far off; *saepe* — *saepicŭle*, *saepiuscŭle*, somewhat often, oftener; *melius* — *meliuscŭle*, a little better; *primum* — *primŭle*, first, firstly.

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

C. Adverbs are either *primitive* or *derivative, simple* or *compound.*

Primitive adverbs are irregular in form, and have consequently no definite terminations. E. g. *jam, nunc, tum, bis, semel, vix, sic, non,* &c.

Derivative adverbs, on the other hand, assume regular terminations, such as *ē, ter, um, ĕ, ĭtus, tim, sim,* &c.

Derivatives are formed either from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, or participles. They are as follows: —

1. Adverbs in *ē* denote *a quality,* and are formed from adjectives and participles of the first and second declensions. Those in *ter* denote *manner,* and are formed from adjectives and participles of the third declension. E. g. *altē,* high; *latē,* wide; *longē,* long, far; *liberē,* freely; *doctē,* learnedly; *libenter,* willingly; *eleganter,* elegantly; *fidelĭter,* faithfully; *prudenter,* prudently, &c. Hence redundant adjectives give rise to adverbs of both these terminations. E. g. *hilārē* and *hilarĭter,* from *hilărus* and *hilăris;* — *luculente, opulente, turbulente,* and *luculenter, opulenter, turbulenter,* from *luculentus* and *luculens,* &c. So also *humānē* and *humanĭter, firmē* and *firmĭter,** &c.

Irregular are *benĕ, malĕ* (with short *e*), and *omnīno,* from *bonus, malus,* and *omnis.*

2. Adverbs in *um* and *ĕ* are derived from neuter adjectives of the second and third declensions, without any change of form. E. g. *multum, paulum, parcum* (from *parcus*), *primum, secundum,* &c.; — *impunĕ, sublimĕ, facilĕ, difficilĕ* (instead of the more common *facilĭter, difficilĭter*), &c. So those in *ă* from neuters plural; as, *crebrā,* frequently; *acerbā,* fiercely.

3. Adverbs in *ĭtus* convey the notion of *origin, source,* or *manner,* and are derived from nouns and adjectives. E. g. *funditus, radicĭtus, stirpĭtus,* from the foundation, by the root, root and branch; *divinĭtus,* from God, divinely; *humanĭtus,* after the manner of men, human; *antiquĭtus,* of old, anciently; *penĭtus,* from or in the inmost part, inwardly.†

4. Adverbs in *tim* and *sim* denote the manner of a condition or state *distributively,* and are derived from supines, adjectives, and nouns. E. g. *conjunctim, incīsim, ordinātim, separātim, strictim,* conjointly, in short clauses, in regular order, separately, closely (briefly); — *gregātim,* in flocks; *acervātim,* in heaps; *furtim,* stealthily; *viritim,*

---

* Only a few adjectives in *us, a, um* have thus a double adverb, like those which are redundant.

† So, after the analogy of these, *comĭnus,* close at hand; *eminus,* from a distance; *intus,* within; *subtus,* below, from below; to which add *extrinsĕcus, intrinsĕcus,* and *mordĭcus.*

man by man; *singulātim*, singly; *paulātim*, by degrees; *privatim*, privately. So also *statim*, at once; *raptim*, rapidly; *cautim*, cautiously; *carptim*, by parts or bits; *caesim*, with the edge (opposed to *punctim*, with the point); *divisim*, separately; *sensim*, gradually, &c.

5. An extensive class of adverbs are accusatives (singular or plural) of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles. E. g. *bifariam*, *omnifariam* (sc. *partem*), in two parts, on all sides; *partim* (= *partem*), partly, in part; *examussim*, exactly; *affātim*, abundantly; — *foras*, (= *fores*), out of doors (motion); *alias*, elsewhere; — *versum* (or *-us*), towards, in that direction; *rursum* (or *-us*), again.* Pronominals are *hinc*, *istinc*, *illinc*, hence, thence; *huc*, *istuc*, *illuc*, hither, thither; *utrimque*, on both sides; *interim*, meanwhile; *quam*, how, how much; *quin*, *quidni*, why not? *nequidquam*, in vain, to no purpose.

6. Others again are ablatives (singular or plural) of nouns, pronouns, &c. E. g. *forte* (from *fors*), perchance, perhaps; *pridie* (from *pris* — *dies*), *postridie*, *perendie*, on the day before, the day after, the day after to-morrow; *heri*, yesterday; *luci*, by day; *temperi*, in time; *rite* (= *ritu*), properly; *frustrā*, in vain; *dextrā* (sc. *manū*), on the right hand; *laevā*, *sinistrā*, on the left; *certo*, with certainty; *crebro*, repeatedly; *oppido*, very, exceedingly; *merito*, deservedly, &c. Pronominal ablatives are *hic*, *istic*, *illic*, here, there; *ibi*, there; *alibi*, elsewhere; *ubi*, where; *ubique*, everywhere; *utrobique*, on both sides; *qui*, how?†

7. Adverbs derived from verbs are *dumtaxat* (= *dum* + *taxat*), merely, at least; *scilicet* (= *scire* + *licet*), it is plain, verily; and *videlicet* (= *vidēre* + *licet*), you can see, plainly. To these add *morticus*, with the teeth, tooth and nail (from *mordeo*).

8. Many adverbs of the Latin language are compounds. These are formed, —

a) By the union of two adverbs, or of an adverb and another part of speech. E. g. *sicut*, *velut*, *tamquam*, as if; *quousque*, how far? *jamdūdum*, long ago; — *alicūbi*, elsewhere; *nequāquam*, by no means; — *undelibet*, from any place you please; *ubīvis*, wherever you please; *adhuc*, thus far; *deinde*, thence, then; *necūbi*, lest anywhere.

b) By the union of other parts of speech. E. g. *hodie*, to-day; *postridie*, the day after; *quomodo*, how; *denuo* (= *de novo*), again; *scilicet*, forsooth; *postea*, afterwards; *aliōqui*, otherwise, &c.

Sweet.	*Dulcis*, *e*: *suāvis*, *e*. Adv. *dulcĭter*, *suavĭter*.
Mild, soft, gentle, placid.	Lēnis, mītis, mollis, e; placĭdus, a, um. *Adv.* lenĭter, mollĭter; placĭde.

* To these may be added *multum*, *tantum*, *solum*, *primum*, *secundum*, and all those enumerated in Case 2.

† Similar to these are the old datives of motion, *eo*, thither; *eodem*, to the same place; *hoc*, *isto*, *istoc*, *illo*, hither, thither; *quo*, whither; *aliquo*, somewhere; *alio*, in another direction.

Agreeable, grateful.	Grātus, jucundus, a, um; suāvis. *Adv.* jucunde, suavĭter.
Sweet wine, honey.	Vinum, mel dulce.
A sweet song; a sweet voice; sweet flowers.	Suāvis cantus; suāvis vox; suāvae flōres.
A mild air, breeze.	Aër mollis; ventus lēnis; aura, ae, *f.*
A gentle zephyr.	Zephyrus (i, *m.*) mollis.
A soft (placid) sleep.	Somnus placĭdus (suāvis)
Sour, acid.	*Acŭlus; acerbus, a, um.* *Acidŭlus* (= sourish).
Nothing can make life more agreeable than the society of and intercourse with our friends.	Vítae nóstrae suavitáti mélius consúlere níhil póssit, quam úsus consuetudòque cum amícis nóstris.
To cry, scream, shriek.	*Clamāre; conclamāre* (of several). *Clamōrem edĕre* or *tollĕre.* *Vociferāri.*
To raise a great clamor.	Altum clamōrem tollere. Maxĭmā vōce clamāre (clamitāre).
To cry out for help.	Vocāre aliquem in auxilium.
To help, aid (any one in anything).	*Juvo, āre, jūvi, jūtum.* *Adjuvāre, opitulāri.* (ALIQUEM IN ALIQUA RE.)
To help, succor (any one in distress).	Succurrĕre (curri, cursum). Subvenire, praesidio venire (ALICUI).
To assist one in doing anything.	Opĕram suam alicui commodāre *or* praebēre (AD REM, IN RE FACIENDA).
I will help you to do it.	Adjuvábo tê fácere hóc (hôc in faciéndo).
He assists me in writing.	Óperam súam míhi praêbet in scribéndo.
Shall I help you to work?	Adjuvabône te in laboránd̄o (laborâre)?
To inquire after some one.	*Quaerĕre percontāri, sciscitāri de aliquo.*
To reach, hand (anything to any one).	Porrigĕre, rexi, rectum. Praebēre, ŭi, itum. (ALICUI ALIQUID.)
To offer (proffer).	Offĕro, erre, obtŭli, oblātum. Deferre (ALICUI ALIQUID).
Complaisant, pleasing.	Benignus, officiōsus, liberālis, humānus.
To be so good, as, . . .	Esse tam benignum, ut . . . .
Be so good as to hand me that plate.	Sis tám benígnus, ut míhi scútulam íllam pórrigas.
Will you be so good as to come early in the morning?	Vis (visne) ésse tam benígnus, ut béne mâne vénias?

Do me the favor to write, as soon as you can.	Dâ mihi hóc, ut quam primum potes scríbas.
Please return as soon as you can.	Quam primum pótes rédeas quaéso.
Please hand me the book.	Quaéso mihi dês líbrum.
Be pleased to spare me.	Quaéso, parcas mihi.
If you please.	Si tibi plácet; sis (= si vis).
As you please.	Prout tibi líbet. Ex tuâ voluntâte.
I ask, beseech you (= please).	*A te quaeso, a te quaeso et peto, peto quaesoque* (UT, or SUBJ. without UT).
To knock at the door.	Pulsâre januam (fores, ostium)
Somebody is knocking at the door.	Pulsántur fóres.
To come to pass, to occur, happen.	Evenio, ire, vēni, ventum.
To happen, to befall (any one).	Accído, ĕre, ĭdi, ——. Contingo, ĕre, tĭgi, tactum. (ALICUI ALIQUID; UT, NE.)
It came to pass, happened by chance, that, &c.	Fórte evênit, ut ....
It commonly happens, that, &c.	Plerúmque évĕnit, ut .... Úsu venire sólet, ut ....
Did anything happen?	Accidítne áliquid? Numquid accidit?
Nothing (has happened).	Níhil.
A great misfortune has happened.	Áccidit (evênit) magna calámitas.
A misfortune has happened to him.	Áccidit éi málum.
I had a misfortune.	Áccidit míhi málum. Accépi calamitâtem.
One misfortune happened after another.	Accidêbat áliud ex álio málo.
If anything serious should happen to me (to you, to him), what will you do?	Si míhi (tibi, éi) áliquid humánĭtus áccidat, quid fácies?
If my life should be spared.	Si mihi vita contígĕrit.
We have now more leisure than we have had for a great while.	Tántum habêmus ótii, quántum jám díu nóbis nôn cóntigit.
Is any one knocking at the door?	Pulsátne álĭquis óstium?
No one is knocking.	Némo púlsat.
To pour.	*Fundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum* (REM EX RE, IN REM).
To pour into.	Infundĕre (aliquid rei).
To pour away; to shed.	Effundĕre, profundere (*sc.* aquam, sanguinem).
To fill one's cup.	Pocŭlum alicui infundĕre. Pocŭlum alicui temperāre, vīno implēre.

To shed tears; to weep.	Lacrĭmas effundĕre. / Lacrĭmāre, flēre.
With tears in one's eyes.	Lacrimans; ocŭlis lacrimantĭbus.
I cannot refrain from tears.	Lăcrĭmas tenēre nōn póssum.
What are you pouring into the cup?	Quid fúndis in póculum?
Wine.	Vinum.
He was pouring grain into the sack.	Fruméntum sácco infundēbat.
Will you fill my glass?	Visne mihi póculum temperâre (infúndere)?
Yes, I shall (will) fill it with pure wine.	Sáne, íd méro implébo.
I pour away the wine; for it is good for nothing.	Vinum effúndo. Nam nĭhili ĕst.
Who is crying?	Quís lăcrĭmat?
The mother has been crying all day long.	Măter tótum diem lăcrĭmas effūdĭt.
Full (of anything).	*Plēnus* (alicūjus rei *or* re). / *Replētus* (aliquā re).
Full, entire, whole.	Plēnus, intĕger, tŏtus.
A full glass of wine.	Scýphus vīni plēnus. / Integer scýphus vini.
A book full of errors.	Líber scátens vítiis.
To taste, to have a certain taste or *relish.*	*Săpĭo, ĕre, ĭvi (ĭi).* / *Alĭquo sapōre esse.*
To have a pleasant taste.	Jucunde săpĕre. / Suāvi esse sapōre.
To have a bitter taste.	Amāro esse sapōre.
Not to taste well.	Voluptāte carēre.
To like, relish anything.	Libenter sūmĕre (edĕre, bibĕre) áliquid; appetĕre.
To dislike (the taste of) anything.	Aliquid fastidire.
How does this wine taste? / How do you like this wine?	Quómodo hóc vinum sápit?
I like it very well.	Jucundíssime (sápit). / Suavíssimo est sapōre.
It tastes bitter.	Amáro sapōre ĕst.
I never tasted any better.	Ego núnquam jucúndius bĭbi.
He dislikes cheese.	Cáseum fástidit.
I have no relish for food or drink.	Cíbum potúmque fastídio.
He knows what is good.	Súpit éi palâtum.
The lady, mistress.	Domĭna, hĕra, ae, *f.*
The means.	Facultātes, um, *f.*
To have the means, to be able, to afford.	Habēre facultātes. Sunt mihi facultates (AD ALIQUID PERFICIENDUM).

I have not the means (I cannot afford).	Facultātes mihi dēsunt.
Can you afford to buy a horse?	Súntne tíbi facultátes ad équum comparándum?
I cannot.	Nôn sunt.
I have the means to live.	Hábeo únde vívam.
He has not the means to live.	Nôn hábet únde vívat.
To laugh (at anything).	*Rideo, ēre, risi, risum* (ALIQUID, DE RE).
To laugh at, deride any one.	Ridēre, deridēre, irridēre; risum habēre aliquem.
I am laughed at.	Rídeor. Rísui sum.
They are laughing at something.	Ridêtur áliquid.
You are laughed at.	Ridêris.
Do you laugh at that?	Ridêsne hóc?
I do.	Rídeo.
What are you laughing at?	Quíd rides?
I am laughing at you.	Tê irrídeo.
To meet with, meet; to find.	*Offendo, ĕre, di, sum.* *Incīdo, ĕre, di, ——.* *Invenīre, reperīre.*
To meet with any one (by chance).	Offendĕre aliquem; incidĕre in aliquem.
To find or catch any one in anything.	Deprehendĕre aliquem in aliquā re.
He was caught in theft.	In fúrto deprehénsus ést.
When have you met him?	Úbi éum offendísti?
I met him in the market.	In fóro in éum incidi.
We met them going to church.	Offéndimus éos ad templum cúntes.
I do not know what to do.	Néscio, quod fáciam.
I do not know where to go.	Néscio, quô mê convértam.
He does not know what to answer.	Néscit (nôn hábet), quod respóndeat.
We do not know what to buy.	Nescîmus (nôn habêmus), quod emâmus.
To trust one.	*Fīdo, ĕre, fīsus sum.* *Confidĕre* (ALICUI).
To confide, rely on any one.	Fidūciam pōnĕre in aliquo. Frētum esse aliquo.
To unbosom one's self to any one.	Se tōtum alicui committĕre. Omnia consilia alicui credĕre.
To distrust, mistrust any one.	Diffidĕre alicui.
Do you trust this man?	Confidísne huic hómini?
I do not trust him.	Nôn confído.
He trusts me.	Míhi confídit.
We must not trust everybody.	Nôn cuívis confídĕre lícet.
Let this be said in confidence!	Hóc tíbi sóli dictum púta! Hóc lápidi díxĕrim!

A word with you in confidence.	Tríbus vérbis tê vólo.
As to, as for, with respect to.	*Quod attinet ad.*
As to me, you, him, the book.	Quód ad mê, ad tê, ad íllum, ad líbrum áttinet.
With respect to the book which you demand, I do not know what to write you.	Quod ad librum, quem póscis, áttinet, nôn hábeo quód tíbi scríbam.
To speak Hungarian, Bohemian.	Hungaríce, Bohemice lŏqui
The goose.	Anser, ĕris, *m.*
The devil.	*Diabŏlus, i, *m.*

Exercise 168.

Do your scholars learn their exercises by heart? — They will rather tear them than learn them by heart. — What does this man ask me for? — He asks you for the money which you owe him. — If he will repair to-morrow morning to my house, I will pay him what I owe him. — He will rather lose his money than repair thither. — Charles the Fifth, who spoke fluently several European languages, said that we should speak Spanish with the gods, Italian with our mistress (*amicŭla*), French with our friend, German with soldiers, English with geese, Hungarian with horses, and Bohemian with the Devil. — Why does the mother of our old servant shed tears? What has happened to her? — She sheds tears because the old clergyman, her friend, who was so very good to her (*qui ei tam multa beneficia tribuĕrat*), died a few days ago. — Of what illness did he die? — He was struck with apoplexy. — Have you helped your father to write his letters? — I have helped him. — Will you help me to work when we go to town? — I will help you to work, if you will help me to get a livelihood. — Have you inquired after the merchant who sells so cheap? — I have inquired after him; but nobody could tell me what has become of him. — Where did he live when you were here three years ago? — He lived then in Charles Street, No. 55. — How do you like this wine? — I like it very well; but it is a little sour. — Have you already received the works of Cæsar and Cicero? — I have received Cæsar's only; as for those of Cicero, I expect to receive them next week. — How does your sister like those apples? — She likes them very well; but she says that they are a little too sweet. — Will you have the goodness to pass that plate to me? — With much pleasure. — Do you wish me to pass these fishes to you? — I will thank you to pass them to me. — Shall I pass the bread to your sister? — You will oblige me by passing it to her. — How does your mother like our food? — She likes it very well; but she says that she has eaten enough. — What dost thou ask me for? — Will you be kind enough to give me a little bit of that mutton? — Will you pass me the bottle, if you please? — Have you not drunk enough? — Not yet; for I am still thirsty. — Shall I pour out some wine for you? — No, I like cider better. — Why do you not eat? — I do not know what to eat. — Who knocks at the door? — It is a foreigner. — Why does he cry? — He cries because a great misfortune has happened to him. — What has happened

to you? — Nothing has happened to me. — Where will you go to this evening? — I don't know where to go to. — Where will your brothers go to? — I do not know where they will go to; as for me, I shall go to the theatre. — Why do you go to town? — I go thither in order to purchase some books. — Will you go thither with me? — I will go with you; but I do not know what to do there. — Must I sell to that man on credit? — You may sell to him, but not on credit; you must not trust him, for he will not pay you. — Has he already deceived anybody? — He has already deceived several merchants who have trusted him. — Must I trust those ladies? — You may trust them; but as for me, I shall not trust them; for I have often been deceived by the women, and that is the reason why I say, we must not trust everybody. — Do those merchants trust you? — They do trust me, and I trust them. — Why do those people laugh at us? — They laugh at us because we speak badly. — What are you laughing at? — I am laughing at your hat.

Lesson XCIV. — PENSUM NONAGESIMUM QUARTUM.

PREPOSITIONS.

A. Prepositions are particles, placed before certain cases of nouns or pronouns, in order to point out their relation to some other word of the sentence.

Prepositions primarily express either motion or a certain direction towards or from a place or object, in answer to the questions *whither? whence?* or else rest or motion in a place or object, in answer to the question *where?*

These purely local determinations are, however, frequently transferred to other ideas, and prepositions also express *relations of time* and *causal relations.*

B. Some Latin prepositions govern the accusative, others the ablative. Several are followed by either, according to the sense to be conveyed.

I. The prepositions which govern the accusative are, —

ad, *to, towards; at, near.*
adversus, adversum, *towards, against.*
ante, *before.*
apud, *at, with, in, near.*
circa, circum, *around, about.*
circiter, *about, towards.*
cis, citra, *on this side.*
contra, *against, opposite.*
erga, *towards, in respect to.*
extra, *without, beyond.*
infra, *below.*
intra, *within.*
inter, *between, among.*

juxta, *near, close by.*
ob, *for, on account of.*
penes, *with, in the power of.*
per, *through, by, during.*
pone, *behind.*
post, *after, behind.*
praeter, *beyond, by, before, except.*
prope, *near, close by.*
propter, *near; on account of.*
secundum, *along, next to; according to.*
supra, *above, over, upon*
trans, *beyond, over.*
ultra, *beyond.*

II. The prepositions which govern the ablative are, —

a, ab, abs, *from, from the part of.*
absque, *without.*
coram, *before, in the presence of.*
cum, *with, together with, beside.*
de, *from, down from, concerning.*
e, ex, *out of, from, after, since.*
prae, *before, for, on account of.*
pro, *before, for; in the place of; in consideration of, according to.*
sine, *without.*
tenus, *as far as, up to* (*after* its case).

III. The prepositions, which sometimes govern the accusative, and sometimes the ablative, are, —

in, *in, into, towards, upon.*
sub, *under, near, towards.*
subter, *under, beneath.*
super, *upon, above.*

REMARKS.

1. Prepositions generally *precede* the cases governed by them, except *tenus*, which is placed after them.*

2. *A* is put before consonants only, *ab* before vowels and sometimes also before consonants. The same rule applies to *e* and *ex*. — *Abs* is seldom used except in composition and before words beginning with *c, t, q*. E. g. *abscindo, abstrăho, absque.*

3. Compound prepositions either retain the case of the second component, or are converted into adverbs. E. g. *in ante diem*, until the day before; *ex ante diem*, from the day before; *ex adversum Athenas*, opposite to Athens. But adverbs are *circum circa*, all around; *desŭper*, from above; *insŭper*, above, besides; *praeter propter*, about, more or less; *prŏtinus*, onward, further on.

4. *Prope* is the only preposition compared, and retains its case after the comparative and superlative. E. g. *propius urbem*, nearer the city; *proxime Italiam*, nearest to Italy. But the adverb *prope* is followed by the dative; as, *propius Tiberi*, nearer to the Tiber.

5. A number of the above prepositions are originally adverbs, and still used as such without a case. Such are *ante*, before, in front; *circum* or *circa*, around; *citra*, on this side; *contra*, on the opposite side; *extra*, on the outside; *intra*, within; *infra*, below; *juxta*, close by; *post* or *pōne*, behind; *prope*, near. E. g. *Ante et post movēri*, To be moved forward and backward. *Ingrĕdi ante, non retro*, To enter forward, and not backward. *Prope, propius accēdĕre*, To approach near, nearer. *Ut supra, infra scripsi*, As I have shown above (i. e. before), below. *Juxta consistĕre*, To stand near.

* On the exceptions to this rule, see Lesson XCVII. *B.* VII.

6. Poets and later prose-writers employ also the adverbs *clam*, *palam*, *simul*, and *prŏcul* as prepositions with the ablative. E. g. *Clam vobis*, Without your knowledge. *Palam populo*, Before the eyes of the people. *Simul his*, Together with these. *Procul urbe*, Far from the city. *Procul dubio*, Without any doubt.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

C. Prepositions are frequently compounded with other parts of speech, especially with verbs.

The regular prepositions thus employed are called *separable*, in contradistinction to others which occur in composition only, and are hence called *inseparable*. In composition, the final consonant of prepositions frequently is assimilated or otherwise modified. (Cf. Lesson XXVII. *A.* Rem. 2.)

Prepositions generally add their proper signification to that of the word to which they are prefixed. Not unfrequently, however, they impart other shades, and sometimes even a different sense, to the original word.

I. The separable prepositions used in composition are, —

1. The following, which also occur either as adverbs or with cases: *ad*, to, towards, at, near, by; *ante*, before; *circum*, around, about, all around; *post*, after, behind; *prae*, before, very (with adjectives); *praeter*, past, by, beyond, besides; *super*, above, over, left, remaining; *subter*, beneath, under, privately. E. g. *advenio*, I arrive; *adduco*, I fetch, adduce; *antepōno*, I prefer; *circumduco*, I lead around; *posthabeo*, I esteem less; *praecēdo*, I go before; *praeclārus*, very celebrated; *praetervĕhor*, I ride by; *praeterquam*, besides; *superjacio*, I throw over or upon; *subterjacio*, I throw beneath. (Cf. Lessons LIX. *A.* and LXII. *B.*)

2. The following, which also occur separately, but with cases only: *a*, *ab*, *abs*, away, from, down, un-; *de*, away, from, off, down, entirely; *e*, *ex*, out, forth, upward, very, completely; *in*, in, on, at, into, against; *inter*, between, among; *ob*, towards, against, before, around; *per*, through, much, very, thoroughly; *pro*, before, forth, for; *sub*, under, from below, secretly, somewhat, rather; *trans*, beyond, over, across. E. g. *abeo*, I go away; *abjungo*, I unyoke; *abscīdo*, I cut off; *depello*, I drive down, away; *descendo*, I descend; *defungor*, I discharge, get rid of; *edormio*, I sleep away or out; *effĕro*, I carry forth or out; *exhaurio*, I draw out, exhaust; *ineo*, I go in (into); *inspicio*, I look into, inspect; *intercālo*, I interpose, insert between; *intersto*, I stand between or among; *oblendo*, I spread before or against; *obtūro*, I stop or close up; *occumbo*, I sink down, fall into; *perfĕro*, I carry through; *perficio*, I accomplish, carry to an end; *procēdo*, I go forth; *prodico*, I foretell; *proconsul*, a proconsul; *subeo*, I undergo; *surrĭgo* (or *surgo*), I lift or raise up; *subrūfus*, somewhat red, reddish; *transcendo*, I pass over, I cross; *transversim*, across, crosswise; and many others.

3. The following, which are compounded with adjectives only: *cis*, on this side; *extra*, outside, beyond; *intra*, within, on the inside; *ultra*, beyond, on the other side. E. g. *cisalpīnus*, on this side of the Alps, Cisalpine; *extraordinārius*, extraordinary; *intramurānus*, within the walls; *ultramundānus*, ultramundane.

II. The inseparable prepositions, employed in composition only, are, —

1. *Ambi* (*amb*, *an*), around, about, on both sides. E. g. *ambifariam*, double; *ambīgo*, I drive about; *amplector*, I embrace; *anquiro*, I send after; *anfractus*, a bend (in a road).

2. *Dis* (or *di*), asunder. E. g. *discēdo*, I leave; *dissipo*, I scatter, disperse; *dimitto*, I dismiss; *dirīmo*, I part, separate.

3. *Re* (*red*), re-, again, back. E. g. *redeo*, *revertor*, I return; *reclūdo*, I unlock, unbolt; *rejicio*, I reject; *remitto*, I send back again.

4. *Se* (for *sine*), aside, apart. E. g. *secēdo*, I step aside, retire; *sedūco*, I lead aside, astray; *sepōno*, I lay aside or apart; *secūrus*, secure, without care.

5. *Sus*, upward. E. g. *suscipio*, I undertake; *suscĭto*, I raise up, I rouse; *suspendo*, I hang up; *sustineo*, I hold up, sustain.

6. To these may be added *ve*, which denotes a faulty excess or deficiency (= *male*). E. g. *vegrandis*, ill-grown, diminutive; *vecors*, heartless; *vesānus*, insane, frantic. So also the negative prefixes *ne* and *in*, in compounds like *nefas*, not right, wrong; *inhumānus*, inhuman, ill-bred.

Who is here? *It is I.*	*Quis hic est?* *Quis ádest?* *Ego sum.*
Is it you?	Tûn' es? Númquid tû es?
It is not I.	Nôn égo sum.
Is it I?	Númquid égo sum? / Egóne sum?
It is you.	Dixísti: tû es.
It is he, she.	Is est, éa est.
It is they.	Illi (íi,ílli) sunt.
Are they your brothers?	Suntneílli frâtres túi?
They are.	Sunt.
Are these your books?	Núm hi líbri túi sunt?
They are not.	Nôn sunt.
Is this my father?	Est hícce páter méus?
It is.	Est.
Is it he, or not?	Is est, án nôn est?
Are you the man, pray?	Quaéso, an tû is es?
I am the man.	Is sum enimvéro.
Are you the man who is called doctor?	Ésne tû is, qui médicus appellâris?
You are the man who has honored me most frequently.	Tû es is, qui mê saepíssime ornâsti.

I am the same that I was as an infant, as a boy, and as a young man.
Égo ídem súm, quí et ínfans fúi, et púer, et adoléscens.

It will be agreeable to us at least, who love you.
Nóbis quídem, qui tê amâmus, érit grâtum.

Is it you who laugh?
Tûn' (ís) és, qui rides?

It is you who have done this.
Tû és ís, qui hóc fecísti.

It is you, gentlemen, who have said that.
Vôs éstis ís, víri nóbiles, qui haêc dixístis.

It is I who speak.
Égo súm ís, qui lóquor.

Is it they who speak?
Númquid ís sunt, qui loquúntur?

I have done this, who was a companion.
Haêc ís féci, qui sodâlis éram.

I am towards him what you wish me to be.
Is in íllum súm, quém tû mê ésse vis.

Do you give me that advice?
Ídne éstis auctóres míhi?

We are not of the number of those who hold to no truth.
Nôn súmus ís, quíbus níhil vêrum videâtur.

Nor are you such a man as not to know who you are.
Néque tû ís és, qui, quís sis, néscias.

I and my brother are going to write letters.
Égo et frâter meus lítteras datûri súmus.

You and your sister were at church.
Tû et sóror túa sácris públicis adfuístis.

You and I have written this.
Égo et tû haêc scrípsimus.

Lycurgus, the Spartan legislator.
Lycúrgus, Spartanôrum lêgum sánctor.

Religion, that daughter of heaven, is the most faithful companion of men.
Coélo ílla nâta, relígio, hóminum ést cómes fidelíssima.

The duty of a father, as the natural tutor of his children, is to provide for them.
Offícium pátris est, quippe tutôris filiôrum naturâlis, salúti suôrum consúlĕre.

This honor is due to my friend, who is a brave man.
Híc hónos amíco méo, víro egrégio, debêtur (tribuéndus ést).

I gave the father, the honest old man, the model of his family, that advice.
Dédi hóc consílii pátri, séni ílli probíssimo, familiaêque súae exemplári egrégio.

That happened under Constantine the Great, the first Christian emperor.
Evenérunt haêc sub Constantíno Mágno, Christianôrum íllo imperatôre prímo.

It concerns my friend, the Counsellor N.
Réfert (ínterest) familiâris méi, consilárii N.

I have been well acquainted with him, who was the father of his country.
Égo íllo, qui pátriae súae páter fuit, familiáriter ûsus súm.

To thee, my dearest friend, I give this ring.
Tíbi, amíco míhi caríssimo, húnc égo ánulum tríbuo.

Of me, who am his nearest relation, he asks nothing.
A mê, qui propinquíssimā éi cognatiône conjúnctus súm, níhil póstŭlat.

O philosophy, thou guide of our life, that leads us to virtue, delivers us from vice.	O vítae philosóphia dux, virtûtis indagátrix, expultríxque vitiórum.
The duty; part.	*Officium*, *i*, n.; *partes*, *ium*, f. pl.; *mûnus*, *ĕris*, n.
This is your duty, your part.	Túum hóc ést mûnus, túae pártes.
The companion.	Comes, ĭtis, *m.* & *f.*; socius, i, *m.*; socĭa, ae, *f.*
The guardian.	Tūtor, ōris, *m.*
The model.	Exemplum, i, *n.*; exemplar, āris, *n.*; specímen, ĭnis, *n.*
A model of a man.	Vir recti exempli.
A model of a woman.	Uxor singulāris exempli.
An example of moderation and prudence.	Temperantiae prudentiaeque specímen.
A model of every virtue.	Auctor (exemplar) omnium virtūtum.
The family.	Familia, ae, *f.*; dŏmus, ūs, *f.*
The people (nation).	Natio, ōnis, *f.*; gĕnus, ĕris, *n.*; pŏpŭlus, i, *m.*
Honest.	Prōbus, bŏnus, a, um.
True, faithful.	Fidēlis, fidēli animo.
A faithful servant.	Servus fidēlis domino.
Faithful children.	Filii pĭi (officii memŏres).
A true picture.	Pictūra veritāti símilis.
To look like, to appear.	*Aliquam* (*alicūjus*) *speciem habēre*, *praebēre* or *prae se ferre.* *Aliquā specie esse.* *Alicujus* (or *alicui*) *simĭlem esse.*
To look white, black, red, pale.	Albo, nigrō, rubro, pallĭdo esse colōre.
To look well (healthy).	Plēnum et speciōsum et colorātum esse.
To look respectable (in dress, &c.).	Decōro habĭtu esse. Formā esse honestā et liberāli.
How does he look?	Quáli est spécie? Quám fórmam prae sê fért?
He looks gay, sad, contented.	Spéciem hílāris, trístis, conténtī praêbet.
He looks modest.	Modéstiam prae sê fért.
He looks like a girl.	Vírginis ôs habĭtúmque gérit.
You look terribly.	Terríbili es fácie.
He looks like a slave.	Apparet húnc sérvum ésse.
You look like a doctor.	Spéciem praéfers médĭci.
He has the appearance of an honest man.	Spéciem víri bóni prae sê fért.
You are more stupid than you look.	Praeter spéciem stúltus és.
This beer looks like water.	Cerevísia haêc áquae símilis ést.

My (his, our) equals.	*Hominēs mei (sui, nostri) generis* or *ordĭnis.* *Hominēs meae (suae, nostrae) farīnae.* *Aequi et pāres mei (sui, nostri).*
One of our number.	Ûnus e nóbis.
He has not his equal.	Pârem hábet néminem.
To resemble any one.	*Simĭlem (consimĭlem) esse alicui* or *alicūjus.*
To resemble one in features.	Facie alicūjus simĭlem esse. Os vultumque alicujus referre.
To resemble one in manners.	Mores alicūjus referre.
Each other; mutually.	*Alius alii* or *alium.* *Alter alteri* or *alterum.* *Inter se; inter ipsos.* *Invĭcem; mutŭo.*
They love each other.	Álter áltĕrum ámat. Inter sê ámant.
They chided each other.	Álius álium increpábant.
We love each other.	Amâmus inter nôs.
They assist each other.	Álter álterum ádjŭvat. Álius alii subsídium férunt.
They looked at each other.	Inter sê aspiciébant.
They quarrel with each other.	Inter sê (ínvĭcem, mútuo) disséntiunt.
You struck each other.	Álter alterum verbéribus caecidístis.
Neither party could see the other.	Neútri álteros cernébant.
He resembles me.	Fácie mĭhi símilis ést.
I resemble your brother.	Égo frátri túo símilis súm.
You resemble me.	Tû mĭhi símilis és.
They resemble each other.	Inter se consímiles sunt.
We resemble each other.	Inter nôs consímiles súmus.
He resembles him, as one egg does the other.	Nôn ôvum tám símile óvo, quám hícílli ést.
The brother and the sister love each other.	Frâter et sóror inter sê ámant.
Are you pleased with each other?	Estísne inter vôs contenti?
We are so.	Súmus.
To drink to any one.	*Propīnāre alicui.* *Provocāre aliquem bĭbendo* (or *ad bibendum*).
To drink anything to any one.	Propīnāre (*or* praebibĕre) alicui aliquid. Pocŭlum alicui tradĕre.
To drink to any one's health.	Alicui salūtem propināre.

I drink to your health.	Salûtem tíbi propíno.
He drank a cup to him.	Cálicem súam éi propinâvit.
He challenged him repeatedly to drink.	Crébris éum propinatiónibus lacessívit.
To make the acquaintance of any one.	*Nosco, ĕre, nōvi, nōtum.* *Cognosco, ĕre, ōvi, ĭtum.* (ALIQUEM.)
To have made any one's acquaintance; to know one.	Alĭquem nosse, cognosse, vidisse.
To know any one very well, intimately.	Aliquem bene, probe, pulchre, optime, penĭtus nosse *or* cognosse.
To know each other.	Se inter se nosse.
To have (or enjoy) the acquaintance of any one.	Usus mihi et consuetúdo est (intercēdit) cum aliquo. Familiarĭtas mihi intercēdit cum alĭquo.
I have made his acquaintance.	Égo éum cognóvi (vídi).
I was glad to make his acquaintance.	Perlibénter éum vídi, éum cognóvi.
They know each other.	Nóti sunt inter sê.
They know each other very well.	Notíssimi sunt inter sê.
He knows himself thoroughly.	Pénĭtus ípsum sê nôvit.
To know any one by sight.	Aliquem de facie nosse.
Not to know any one.	Aliquem non nosse (*or* ignorāre). Aliquis mihi est ignōtus.
Do you know him?	Novístine éum?
I do not know him.	Éum ignóro. Est mĭhi ignôtus.
I am intimately acquainted with him.	Familiáritas mĭhi cum éo intercêdit. Útor éo familiáriter.
He is an acquaintance of mine.	Nôtus est mĭhi.
He is an old acquaintance of mine.	Úsus mĭhi vétus et consuetúdo cum éo intercêdit.
He is not a friend, he is but an acquaintance.	Nôtus tántum, nôn amícus, est.
She is an acquaintance of mine.	Nôta est mihi.
The acquaintance (knowledge of each other).	Notitia; ūsus, ūs, *m.* Consuetūdo, ĭnis, *f.*
Our acquaintance is quite recent.	Notítia ínter nôs nuper ádmŏdum est.
Again, once more.	*Ităum, denuo, rursus* (adv.).
Since, seeing that, as.	*Quoniam* (conj. c. Ind. or Subj.).
Since you have not done your exercises well, you must do them again.	Quóniam pénsa túa pérperam absolvísti, absolvénda sunt tíbi ítĕrum.
As he did not come, I sent for him.	Quóniam nôn vénerat, éum arcessívi.
As it is already night, go ye to your homes.	Vôs, quóniam jám nóx est, in véstra técta discédĭte.

Exercise 169.

Where have you become acquainted with that lady? — I have become acquainted with her at the house of one of my relations. — Is it thou, Charles, who hast soiled my book? — It is not I, it is your little sister who has soiled it. — Who has broken my fine inkstand? — It is I who have broken it. — Is it you who have spoken of me? — It is we who have spoken of you, but we have said of you nothing but good (*nihil nisi bonum*). — Why does your cousin ask me for money and books? — Because he is a fool; of me, who am his nearest relation and best friend, he asks nothing. — Why did you not come to dinner? — I have been hindered, but you have been able to dine without me. — Do you think that we shall not dine, if you cannot come? — How long did you wait for me? — We waited for you till a quarter past seven, and as you did not come, we dined without you. — Have you drunk my health? — We have drunk yours and that of your parents. — A certain man was very fond of wine, but he found in it two bad qualities (*qualitātes*). "If I put water to it," said he, "I spoil it, and if I do not put any to it, it spoils me." — How does your uncle look? — He looks very gay; for he is much pleased with his children. — Do his friends look as gay as he? — They, on the contrary, look sad, because they are discontented. — My uncle has no money, and is very contented, and his friends, who have a great deal of it, are scarcely ever so. — Do you like your sister? — I like her much, and as she is very complaisant towards me, I am so towards her; but how do you like yours? — We love each other, because we are pleased with each other. — Does your cousin resemble you? — He does resemble me. — Do your sisters resemble each other? — They do not resemble each other; for the eldest is idle and naughty, and the youngest assiduous and complaisant towards everybody. — Who knocks at the door? — It is I; will you open it? — What do you want? — I come to ask you for the money which you owe me, and the books which I lent you. — If you will have the goodness to come to-morrow, I will return both to you. — Do you perceive yonder house? — I do perceive it, what house is it? — It is an inn (*deversōrium*); if you like, we will go into it to drink a glass of wine; for I am very thirsty. — You are always thirsty when you see an inn. — If we enter it, I shall drink your health. — Rather than go into an inn, I will not drink. — When will you pay what you owe me? — When I have money; it is useless to ask me for some to-day, for you know very well that there is nothing to be had of him who has nothing. — When do you think you will have money? — I think I shall have some next year. — Will you do what I shall tell you? — I will do it, if it is not too difficult. — Why do you laugh at me? — I do not laugh at you, but at your coat. — Does it not look like yours? — It does not look like it; for mine is short and yours is too long, mine is black and yours is green.

Lesson XCV. — PENSUM NONAGESIMUM QUINTUM.

CONJUNCTIONS.

A. Conjunctions are particles, which serve to designate the relation between one predicate and another, and to effect the connection of sentences.

The relation of one predicate to another may be either equal or unequal. Hence there are two kinds of conjunctions, of which one connects *similar sentences*, or, when the repetition of the predicate is unnecessary, *similar parts* of a sentence, and the other *dissimilar sentences*.

The connection of dissimilar sentences is either a possible, real, or necessary one.

I. The following classes of conjunctions connect similar sentences or parts of them: —

1. COPULATIVES, or those which join or unite: — *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *-que* (enclitic), and; *et*, *etiam*, *quŏque*, also; *nec*, *neque*, and not, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVES, or those which separate or disjoin: — *aut*, *vel*, *-ve* (enclitic), *sive*, *seu*, or; *aut* — *aut*, either — or; *neve* — *neve*, *neu* — *neu*, neither — nor.

3. ADVERSATIVES, or those which indicate opposition: — *at*, *ast*, *vērum*, *vēro*, *enimvēro*, *autem*, *sed*, but, however; *atqui*, but yet.

II. The conjunctions connecting dissimilar sentences are as follows: —

1. CONDITIONALS, or those which express a condition: — *si*, if; *sin*, but if; *ni*, *nisi*, if not, unless; *modo*, *dummŏdo*, provided, so that; *dumne*, *dummŏdo ne*, provided that not.

2. CAUSALS, or those which indicate a cause, ground, or reason: — *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, *etĕnim*, for; *quia*, because; *quod*, that, because; *quando*, *quandoquĭdem*, *quoniam*, *quum* or *cum*, *siquĭdem*, since.

3. FINALS, or those denoting an object, end, or purpose: — *ut*, *uti*, that, in order that; *quo*, that, that the (with comparatives); *ne*, that not, lest; *neve*, *neu*, and that not, nor that; *quominus*, that not.

4. CONSECUTIVES, or those which denote a consequence: — *ut*, that, so that; *ut non*, that not, so that not; *quin*, that not, but what.

5. CONCESSIVES, or those which denote a concession: — *etsi*, *tametsi*, *etiamsi*, even though, although; *quanquam*, *quamvis*, although, however; and their corresponding adversatives, *tămen*, yet, still; *attămen*, *veruntămen*, yet, nevertheless.

6. ILLATIVES, or those which denote an inference or conclusion: — *ergo*, *igĭtur*, *itaque*, therefore; *ideo*, *idcirco*, *proinde*, *propterĕa*, therefore, on that account; *quāre*, *quōcirca*, *quapropter*, wherefore, on which account.

7. Among conjunctions may also be included a number of particles denoting a relation of time, and others used in questions or comparisons. Such are,—

a) The *temporal* conjunctions *quum*, *ut*, *ubi*, when; *quum primum*, *ut primum*, *simulac*, *simulatque* (or simply *simul*), as soon as; *postquam*, after; *antequam* and *priusquam*, before; *quando*, when, at what time; *dum*, *usque dum*, *donec*, and *quoad*, until.

b) The *interrogative* conjunctions *num*, *utrum*, *an*, and the enclitic *ne*. To these may be added *ec* and *en* in words like *ecquid*, *ecquando*, and *en unquam*, and also *numquid*, when it stands for *num*.

c) The *comparative* conjunctions *ut* or *uti*, *sicut*, *velut*, *prout*, *praeut*, the poetical *ceu*, *quam*, *tamquam* (with or without *si*), *quasi*, *ut si*, *ac si*, *ac*, and *atque*, all of which are rendered by the English *as*, *just as*, *as if*.

OF THE USE OF CONJUNCTIONS.

B. Copulative, disjunctive, and adversative conjunctions generally connect the same cases of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, the same moods of verbs, and particles belonging to the same word. E. g.

Mâter túa et sóror a mê dilĭgitur.	Your mother and sister are loved by me.
Cur tĭbi *fásces ac secúres*, *et tántam vim* impérii *tantáque ornaménta* dáta cénses?	Why do you suppose the fasces and the axes,* and such great power of office, with so many marks of honor, were given you?
Éa ésse díco, quae *cérni tángíve* póssunt.	I maintain the existence of those things, which can be seen or touched.
Vive *díu ac felíciter*.	Live long and happily.
Nôn módo prínceps, *sed* et *sólus* béllum indíxit.	He was not only the principal man that declared the war, but even the only one.
Pétĕres vel pótius rogáres, stupôrem hóminis *vel* dícam pécŭdis vidête.	You might ask or rather entreat us; look at the stupidity of the man, or I should rather say of the brute.

REMARKS.

1. This rule extends also to comparative conjunctions, and to all such as introduce clauses which are not subordinate or dependent on the preceding sentence, but co-ordinate or in the same construction with it.

2. The words connected with these conjunctions need not always be in the same case or mood, provided they sustain the same relation

* These were the emblems of office of the Roman consuls, &c.

to the general construction of the sentence. E. g. Meā *et* patris *causā*. — Tuā *non magis quam* reipublicae *refert*. — Veniēbat *quotidie*, et *frequentius etiam* venisset, *nisi*, &c.

3. The conjunction is often emphatically omitted. E. g. *Velim nolim*, Willing or unwilling. *Ire redire*, To go backward and forward. *Qui indicabantur, eos vocāri, custodiri, ad senātum adduci jussi*, Those who were indicated I ordered to be summoned, put into custody, (and) brought before the senate.

4. On the construction of the remaining conjunctions, which introduce subordinate or dependent clauses, compare Lessons LXXXVI.–LXXXIX.

DOUBLE CONJUNCTIONS.

C. Copulative and disjunctive conjunctions are frequently *doubled*, i. e. expressed in both members of the sentence, so as to connect them more emphatically. Such combinations are, —

et — et (ac, atque), et — -que, -que — et, -que — -que.*	*both — and, as well — as, at once — and.*
nec — nec, neque — neque, neque — nec, nec — neque.†	*neither — nor.*
et — nec (neque).	*both — and not.*
neque (nec) — et, nec (neque) — -que.	*not only not — but even (also).*
aut — aut, vel — vel.	*either — or.*
sive — sive, seu — seu.	*either — or, whether — or.*

EXAMPLES.

Tē *et* móneo *et* hórtor.	I (both) admonish and exhort you.
Et mári *et* térrā.	Both by sea and by land.
Offĭcia *et* servāta praetermissáque.	Duties both observed and omitted.
Militiaē*que* domī*que*.	Both abroad and at home.
Nōn póssum réliqua *nec* cogitāre *nec* scríbere.	The rest I can neither think of nor write.
Et rém agnóscit, *nec* hóminem ignōrat.	He not only knows the thing, but is besides not ignorant of the man.
Nec mīror *et* gaúdeo.	I not only do not wonder, but rejoice.
Nec tū interfuísti, *et* égo íd égi.	Nor had you anything to do with the affair, but I did it.

* In poetry only. † Rarely used.

Aut dísce *aut* discêde.	Either learn or leave (one of the two).
Vel imperatôre *vel* míllte mê utímini.	Use me either as your commander or as a soldier (as you please).
Sive cásu *sive* consílio deôrum.	Either by chance or by divine appointment (I know not which).*

D. Adverbs are sometimes doubled in the same way, and used to connect words or clauses like conjunctions. Such are,—

mŏdo — mŏdo, nunc — nunc.	*now — now, now — then again, at one time — at another.*
partim — partim.	*partly — partly.*
simul — simul, quā — quā.	*both — and, as well — as.*
tum — tum.	*both — and; at one time — at another.*
quum — tum.	*as — so especially; not only — but especially.*

EXAMPLES.

Módo hóc, *módo* íllud dícit.	He at one moment says one thing, and then again another.
Módo hûc, *módo* ílluc vólat.	He now flies hither, now thither.
Núnc síngulos provôcat, *núnc* ómnes íncrĕpat.	He sometimes challenges them individually, and sometimes provokes them as a mass.
Símul súi purgándi caúsā, *símul* ut, si quid póssent, de indúciis impetrárent.	Both in order to excuse themselves, and that they might, if possible, obtain some concessions respecting an armistice.
Pártim mê amíci deseruérunt, *pártim* prodidérunt.	My friends have partly deserted and partly betrayed me.
Quâ dóminus, *quâ* advocáti síbĭlis conscíssi.	Both the master and the advocates were put down with hisses.
Tum Graéce *tum* Latíne.	Both Greek and Latin.
Fortúna *quum* in réliquis rêbus, *tum praecípue* in bĕllo, plúrimum pótest.	The power of fortune is supreme, as in other things, so more especially in war.

E. Two conjunctions of different classes are sometimes placed in correlation with each other, or a conjunction with an adverb. E. g.

etsi, tametsi, etiametsi, ut, quamquam, quamvis — tamen, attamen, veruntamen, nihilomĭnus.	*although — yet, nevertheless.*
non mŏdo, non sōlum, non tantum — sed etiam, verum etiam.	*not only — but also.*
non dīcam (*or* dico) — sed.	*I will not say — but only.*

* The student will notice here the distinction between the words *aut*, *vel*, and *sive*. Cf. page 388.

non mŏdo (non) — sed ne — quidem.	*not only not — but not even.*
non mŏdo — sed vix.	*not only not — but scarcely.*
non mĭnus — quam.	*no less — than; as much — as.*
non magis — quam.	*no more — than; as much — as.*

EXAMPLES.

Tamétsi vicísse débeo, *támen* de méo jûre decêdam.	Although I ought to have conquered, I will nevertheless surrender part of my right.
Ut désint víres, *támen* est laudánda volúntas.	Though the ability be wanting, yet the will is to be commended.
Túllus Hostílius *nôn sôlum* próximo régi dissímilis, *sed* ferócior *étiam* Rómulo fúit.	Tullus Hostilius was not only unlike the preceding king, but even more warlike than Romulus.
Égo *nôn módo* tíbi *nôn* iráscor, sed *ne* reprehéndo *quídem* fáctum túum.	I am not only not angry with you, but I do not even reprehend what you have done.
Vêrum haec génera virtûtum *nôn sôlum** in móribus nóstris, *sed vix* jam in líbris reperiúntur.	But virtues of this description are not only not found in our practice, but scarcely now in books.
Quid est énim mínus *nôn díco* oratôris, *sed* hóminis?	For what is less becoming, I will not say to an orator, but to a man?
Alexánder nôn dûcis *mágis quam* mílitis múnia exequebâtur.	Alexander was wont to perform the duties of a soldier, no less than those of a commander.

To get into a scrape.	*Jurgia cum aliquo inceptāre.* *Rixas in se conflāre.* *In angustum venīre.*
To bring or get one into a scrape.	Aliquem jurgiis (*or* rixis) implicāre *or* illaqueāre. Ad incĭtas redigĕre.
To be involved in a scrape.	Rixis implicāri *or* illigāri.
To get out of a scrape (any one, one's self).	Expedīre, extricāre (aliquem, se) angustiis.
The quarrel, scrape.	Jurgĭum, i, *n.*; rixa, ae, *f.*
The snare.	Laquĕus, i, *m.*
Always, perpetually.	Semper, perpetuo.
I have got out of the scrape.	Mê expedívi. Sálvus evási.
He is getting into a scrape.	Ríxas in se cónflat.
He is in a bad scrape.	Ad íncitas redáctus ést.
That man perpetually gets into bad scrapes; but he always helps himself out again.	Hómo ílle perpétuo fére júrgiis se ímplicat, semper támen sê rúrsus éxpĕdit.

* Instead of *non solum non*. Cf. page 584.

Between.	*Inter* (Prep. cum Acc.).
There is a difference between.	Est (intercēdit) discrīmen inter....
The appearance, form, aspect.	Aspectus, vīsus, ūs, *m.*; species, ēi, *f.*; forma, ae, *f.*
The face, sight.	Os, ōris, *m.*
The mien, look.	Vultus, ūs, *m.*
The countenance, physiognomy.	Oris habītus *or* lineamenta. Ōs vultusque.
To have the appearance, to appear, seem.	Vidĕor, ēri, vīsus sum.
To look, appear.	Speciem aliquam habēre, praebēre *or* pre se ferre. Aliquā specie *or* formā esse. Vidēri.
To look well (healthy).	Vigōris speciem prae se ferre. Valetudinem vultu prodĕre.
To look sad.	Tristi esse vultu.
To look ugly.	Deformem habēre aspectum.
To look good.	Vidēri esse bonum, benignum. Speciem boni viri prae se ferre.
To look angry, contented, pleased.	Speciem irāti, contenti, hilāris prae se ferre.
To look pleased with one.	Arridēre alicui.
To look cross at one.	Torvis ocŭlis aliquem intuēri.
To receive one kindly.	Accipĕre (excipere) aliquem humanĭter, comĭter, benigne.
A good-looking man.	Vir formā honestā (specie insigni).
A bad-looking man.	Homo specie tenŭi.
Bad-looking people.	Homines specie tenŭi (*or* humili).
You look very well.	Spéciem bónam praébes. Vigôris spéciem prôdis.
He looks angry	Vúltum irâtum prae sê fért.
She appears to be angry.	Vidêtur esse irâta.
They appear to be contented.	Conténti ésse vidéntur.
They look pleased.	Vúltu hílari atque laeto sunt.
When I go to see that man, instead of receiving me with pleasure, he looks displeased.	Cum ístum vísito, tántum ábest, ut benígne mê excípiat, ut tórvis óculis mê intuéri sóleat.
The man whom you see appears desirous of approaching us.	Ille, quém vídes, nôs adire vélle vidêtur.
To visit, to go to see some one; to pay one a visit.	*Aliquem visĕre* (*sī, sum*). *Invisĕre, visitāre aliquem. Ad aliquem ire vīsĕre* (*ire et vīsĕre*).
To visit one on business.	Aliquem adire *or* convenīre.
To frequent, visit (a place).	Obire, adire, frequentāre, celebrāre.
To visit a sick person.	Aegrōtum visĕre (*or* visitāre). Ad aegrum ire visĕre.

To frequent any one's house.	Alicūjus dŏmum frequentāre *or* celebrāre.
To frequent a society.	Conventum (circŭlum) celebrāre.
The society; assembly.	Conventus, ūs, *m.*; circŭlus, i, *m.*
To be in society.	Circŭlos frequentāre. Multum inter hŏmines esse.
We have society to-day.	Convéntus visitántium (salutántium) apud nôs ést hódie.
To associate with some one.	Aliquo multum *or* familiariter ūti (ūsus sum). Est mihi cum aliquo consuētūdo (familiarĭtas).
To imagine.	Opināri, putāre; in opiniōnem venire.
He imagines that you will not come.	In opiniônem vênit, fóre, ut nôn vénias.
Does he often visit you?	Venítne saépe ad tê vísĕre?
He visits me every day.	Ímmo mê quotídie vísĭtat.
Did you ever associate with that man?	Fuítne tíbi cum íllo únquam consuetúdo?
Yes, I have associated much with him.	Sáne; éo múltum et familiáriter ûsus súm.
Did you frequent society, when you were in the city?	Celebrabâsne convéntus (círcŭlos), quum in úrbe ésses?
I did frequent it.	Véro, celebrâbam.
He is perpetually in society (among men).	Perpétuo fére inter hómines est.
It is all over with me! I am undone!	Áctum ést de mê! Périi!
It is all over!	Áctum ést! Áctum jám de ísto ést!
It is too late to consult to-day about what was done yesterday.	Fáctum fieri inféctum nôn pótest.
The spite, displeasure.	*Stomăchus*, *i*, m.; *molestia*, *ae*, *f.*
The grief, sorrow.	*Dŏlor*, *ōris*, m.; *aegritūdo*, *ĭnis*, f.; *sollicĭtūdo*, *ĭnis*, f.
To vex, spite, irritate one.	Molestiam exhibēre alicui. Stomachum alicui movēre. Vexāre, irritāre aliquem.
To hurt any one's feelings.	Aegre facĕre alicui. Aliquem (*or* alicūjus animum) offendĕre (IN ALIQUA RE).
To wound any one's feelings.	Aliquem mordēre.
To hurt any one's honor.	Alicūjus existimatiōnem offendĕre.
To detract from any one's reputation.	De famā alicūjus detrahĕre.
To feel hurt.	Dolēre, in maerōre esse. Aegre *or* moleste ferre (aliquid).

This hurts my feelings.	Hóc mihi aégre ést. Hóc mê mórdet.
You have vexed that man.	Moléstiam exhibuístiílli.
You have hurt that man's feelings.	Vírum ístum offendísti.
You have detracted from his honor.	Existimatiônem éjus offendísti. Dignitâtem éjus labefactavisti.
You have wounded him with words.	Tû éum vôce vulneravísti.
I did not wish to offend you.	Tê offensum nólui. Pâce túâ díxerim.
He takes it ill that you did not come.	Aégre fert, tê nôn venísse.
You should never offend against any one's honor or liberty.	Níhil ex cujúsquam dignitâte, níhil ex libertâte decérpĕris.
To swim.	*Nō, nāre, nāvi,* ——. *Nāto, āre, āvi, ātum.*
The art of swimming.	Ars nandi.
A good (fit) place for swimming.	Lŏcus ad nandum idonĕus (*or* opportūnus).
I know a good place for swimming.	Locum ad nándum idóneum cógnitum hábeo.
To experience.	*Experĭor, īri, pertus* or *pertĭtus sum.*
To suffer, endure.	*Pătĭor, pati, passus sum.* *Perpetĭor, i, pessus sum.* *Perferre, tolerāre* (ALIQUID).
To feel (experience).	Sentio, īre, si, sum.
To suffer, experience pain.	Dolēre, sentīre dolōrem.
I have experienced (suffered) a great deal.	Múlta égo expértus súm.
I have experienced a great many misfortunes.	Mála égo permúlta perpéssus súm.
He endures and suffers everything easily.	Pérfert et pátitur ómnia fácile.
His sick mind can neither suffer nor endure these things.	Ánimus éjus aêger haêc néque páti, néque pérpeti pótest.
We can endure neither our vices nor their remedies.	Néc vítia nóstra, néc remédia páti póssŭmus.
I know this rather from experience than from instruction.	Hóc mágis experiéndo quam discéndo cognóvi.
I had the misfortune to fall.	Accidit mihi, ut cáděrem.
He had the misfortune to lose all his children.	Accidit éi, ut líberos súos ómnes amítteret.
I feel a pain in my head, in my heart.	Dólet mihi cáput, pês. Cápite, péde labóro.
To neglect.	*Nōn curāre* (ALIQUID). *Neglĭgo, ĕre, lexi, lectum* (ALIQUID, FACERE ALIQUID).

To miss (neglect).	Negligĕre, praetermittĕre (rem, opportunitātem, &c.).
To omit.	Omittĕre, praetermittĕre, praeterīre (ALIQUID).
You have neglected your promise.	Promíssa túa neglexísti.
You have neglected to come to your lesson.	In schólam venīre neglexísti (praetermisísti).
He never neglects or omits anything.	Níhil únquam négligit, nec praetermíttit.
Did he neglect the opportunity of defending himself?	Númquid occasiônem súi defendéndi praetermísit?
So far from neglecting it, he has seized it eagerly.	Tántum ábest, ut praetermíserit, ut avidíssime amplexus sit.
To yield.	*Cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum* (ALICUI DE RE).
To yield to any one.	Cēdĕre, mōrem gerĕre, obsĕqui alicui (aliquā re).
To yield, give up one's place.	Cēdĕre loco *or* ex loco.
To yield to something; to acquiesce in it.	Cēdĕre rei; se accommodāre rei; acquiescĕre (ēvi, ētum) re, in re.
To yield to necessity.	Necessitāti parĕre (cēdĕre). / Veniam dăre necessitāti.
To make a virtue of necessity.	Errōres in consilium vertĕre.
We must yield to necessity.	Cedéndum ést necessitáti.
Did his brother acquiesce in his fate?	Núm frâter éjus fortúnā súā acquiêvit?
He did not acquiesce; but he has resolved to yield to necessity.	Nôn acquiêvit; nihilóminus véniam necessitáti dáre státuit.
Did the copyist omit anything?	Omisítne transcríptor aliquid?
He has omitted only a few words.	Paûca tántum verba omísit (praetériit).

EXERCISE 170.

Is it right to laugh thus at everybody? — If I laugh at your coat, I do not laugh at everybody. — Does your son resemble any one? — He resembles no one. — Why do you not drink? — I do not know what to drink; for I like good wine, and yours looks like vinegar. — If you wish to have some other, I shall go down into the cellar (*doliārium*) to fetch you some. — You are too polite, sir; I shall drink no more to-day. — Have you known my father long? — I have known him long, for I made his acquaintance when I was yet at school (*quum scholam adhuc frequentābam*). — We often worked for one another, and we loved each other like brothers. — I believe it, for you resemble each other. — When I had not done my exercises, he did them for me, and when he had not done his, I did them for him. — Why does your father send for the physician? — He is ill, and as the physician does not come, he sends for him. — Is that man angry with you?

— I think he is angry with me, because I do not go to see him; but I do not like to go to his house: for when I go to him, instead of receiving me with pleasure, he looks displeased. — You must not believe that he is angry with you, for he is not so bad as he looks. He is the best man in the world (*homo omnium praestantissimus*); but one must know him in order to appreciate him (*diligĕre carumque habēre*). — There is a great difference between you and him; you look pleased with all those who come to see you, and he looks cross at them. — Why do you associate (*utĕris*) with those people? — I associate with them because they are useful to me. — If you continue to associate with them you will get into bad scrapes, for they have many enemies. — How does your cousin conduct himself? — He does not conduct himself very well; for he is always getting into some bad scrape. — Do you not sometimes get into bad scrapes? — It is true that I sometimes get into them, but I always get out of them again. — Do you see those men who seem desirous of approaching us? — I do see them, but I do not fear them; for they hurt nobody. — We must go away, for I do not like to mix with people whom I do not know. — I beg of you not to be afraid of them, for I perceive my uncle among them. — Do you know a good place to swim in? — I do know one. — Where is it? — On that side of the river, behind the wood, near the high-road (*via publica*). — When shall we go to swim? — This evening, if you like. — Will you wait for me before the city-gate? — I shall wait for you there; but I beg of you not to forget it. — You know that I never forget my promises. — Have you reminded your brother not to write to-day? — I have both reminded and exhorted him. — Who has conquered (*pervīcit*)? — Cæsar has conquered both by sea and by land. — He has not only conquered, but even triumphed (*triumphāre*). — Does he speak Latin? — He speaks both Greek and Latin. — Can he write a letter? — He not only cannot write a letter, but he can scarcely read one.

Lesson XCVI. — PENSUM NONAGESIMUM SEXTUM.

INTERJECTIONS.

A. Interjections are particles denoting natural sounds, expressive of certain emotions of the mind.

The nature of these emotions, and their degree of intensity, are indicated by the tone or force with which this natural utterance is effected. Interjections thus take the place of an entire sentence, in which the verb would express the emotion, and an adverb its degree of intensity.

B. Interjections are classified according to the character of the emotion expressed by them. They denote, —

1. DELIGHT; as, *io, iu,* oh! ah! *euax* or *evax, euoē* or *evoe,* hurrah! huzzah!

2. LAUGHTER; as, *ha ha, ha ha he,* ha! ha!

3. GRIEF, PAIN; as, *ah,* ah! alas! *au,* hold! stop! *hei, heu, eheu, hoi, vae,* alas! woe! *o, oh, proh,* oh! alas!

4. SURPRISE; as, *aha,* aha! *atat, attate,* strange! ha! *hem, ehem,* ho! lo! how? there! *hui,* ha! ho! away! *papae,* strange! indeed! *tatae,* strange! wonderful! *vah,* hah! zounds!

5. DERISION; as, *hem,* ha! there! bravo! *vah, vaha, iohia,* ha! bravo!

6. PRAISE, APPLAUSE; as, *euge, eugepae, heia,* well done!

7. ENCOURAGEMENT; as, *eia,* up! come! on! and the imperatives *age, agĕdum,* pl. *agīte,* come on! come now!

8. CALLING; as, *heus, eho, ehodum,* ho! soho! hark you (ye)!

9. ANSWERING; as, *hem,** *ehem,* well! very well!

10. IMPRECATION; as, *vae,* woe!

11. DIRECTING ATTENTION; as, *en, ecce,* lo! behold!

12. AVERSION; as, *apăge* (an imperative), begone! away! fie! tush!

13. SILENCING; as, *'st,* hush!

REMARKS.

1. A number of substantives, adjectives, adverbs, and verbs are sometimes used like interjections. Such are: *Pax,* peace! be still! *Malum, indignum, nefas, infandum, misĕrum, miserabile!* as expressions of disgust or impatient astonishment. *Macte,* pl. *macti,* bravely! prosper! *Nae profecto,* surely! certainly! So *apage,* begone! *cedo,* give here! fetch hither (and also, pray tell me!); *sis* (= *si vis*), hear! do you hear? *agesis, agedum, agitedum,* come on! well! *sōdes* (= *si audies*), do you hear? hark you! To these add *quaeso, precor, obsecro* (sc. *te* or *vos*), I pray, I beg, prithee! pray! and *amabo* (sc. *te* and = *si me amas*), I pray you! pray do!

2. Among interjections may also be included the invocations of the deities, which frequently appear intercalated between the regular parts of a sentence. Such are *mehercule, hercŭle, mehercle, hercle, mehercules, hercules,* by Hercules! so help me Hercules! *pro Jupiter, per Jovem,* by Jupiter! *pol, edepol,* by Pollux! *ecastor, mecastor,* by Castor! *medius fidius,* by my faith! so help me God! *pro deum fidem, per fidem,* by my faith! faith!† &c.

---

* Some interjections, like *hem! vah!* &c., are used to express several different emotions.

† The expressions *mecastor* and *mehercules* may be resolved into, *Ita me Castor* or *Hercules juvet,* So help me Castor or Hercules! and *mehercule* into, *Ita me Hercule* (vocative) *juves,* So help thou me, Hercules!

C. Interjections either stand alone, or are followed by the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, or vocative.

With the nominative, *en*, *ecce*, *o* (cf. page 344).
With the accusative, *o*, *ah*, *heu*, *en*, *hem*, *pro*, *bene* (cf. page 343.)
With the dative, *vae*, *hei*, *heu*, *ecce* (cf. page 369).
With the genitive, *o*, *heu*, *proh*, &c. (cf. page 383, Rem. 8).
With the vocative, see *D*.

Sed *ecce núntii, ecce lítterae!*	Behold the messengers! See the letter!
En déxtra fidêsque!	There is our right hand and our plighted faith!
O fortunâta mórs, quae pro pátriā est potíssimum réddita!	Happy the death incurred especially for one's fatherland!
En míserum hóminem!	Lo there a wretched man!
Eheu me míserum!	Wretch that I am!
O hóminem fortunâtum, quí ejúsmodi núntios hábeat!	O lucky man, to have messengers like those!
Sed *béne Messâlam!* súa quísque ad pócula dicat.	The health of Messala! Let each one say so to his cup!
Hei (or *vae*) *mísero míhi!*	Woe is me!
Vae víctis esse!	Woe to the conquered!
O míhi núntii beáti (gen.)!	O blessed harbinger to me!
O patérni génĕris *oblíte* (voc.)!	O thou forgetful of thy ancestry!

OF THE USE OF THE VOCATIVE CASE.

D. The vocative case is the special form for calling or invoking the person or object addressed.

The vocative constitutes in itself an entire sentence, like an interjection, and frequently occurs in connection with one. But if the sentence in which the vocative occurs contains a finite verb or an imperative, these must agree with it in number and person. E. g.

O dĭi bóni! quíd ést in hóminis vítā díu?	Good gods! What can be said to last in human life?
Quae rês únquam, *pro sancte Júppiter!* nôn módo in hâc úrbe, sed in ómnibus térris ést gésta májor?	What greater exploit, O holy Jupiter! was ever achieved, not only in this city, but in any land?
Víncere *scîs, Hánnibal;* victóriā úti *néscis!*	You know how to conquer, Hannibal, but not to use your victory!
Équo *ne crédite, Teúcri!*	Do not trust the horse, Trojans!
Quinctíli Vâre, legiónes *réddite!*	Return the legions, Quinctilius Varus.
Úrbem, úrbem, *mî Rûfe, cóle* et in ístā lûce *vîve!*	Keep to the city, my Rufus, to the city, and live in that sun of yours!
Rûfe, míhi frústra ac nequíquam *crédite amice!*	O Rufus, in vain and to no purpose called my friend!

Primus *nâte* méo nómine *dícte* púer!	O son, the first boy, called by my name!
Sálve primus ómnium párens pátriae *appellâte;* primus in tógā triúmphum linguaêque laúream *mérite!*	Hail first of all called parent of thy country; the first, who in the toga earned a triumph and the wreath of eloquence!

REMARKS.

1. Participles sometimes occur alone in the vocative, but only in poetry. E. g. *Primā* dicte *mihi, summā* dicende *Camenā,* (O thou) sung in my first ode, to be sung in my last! And the two last of the above examples.

2. Poets, in imitation of the Greeks, thus frequently put the vocative of participles and adjectives where we might expect the nominative. E. g. *Quo* moritūre *mis?* Whither art thou hastening so precipitately, ready to perish? *Sic venias* hodierne! Thus may you come to-day! So the common expression: Macte *virtute esto!* Success to you! Go on and prosper!

3. The nominative, on the other hand, sometimes occurs instead of the vocative, especially in poetry. E. g. *Degĕner o populus!* O degenerate people! *Salve, urbis* genius! Hail, genius of the city! *Jane, veni;* novus *anne, veni!* Come Janus, come new year, come!

What a grief! What a joy!	*Quî dólor! Quód gaúdium!*
What a man!	Quî vír! Quántus (quâlis) vír!
How well you have done!	Quam béne fecísti!
How wretched the man is!	Quam míser ést hómo!

E. Obs. In exclamations, the Latin *qui, quae, quod,* or *quid* corresponds to the English "what a!" or "what!" *Quomodo, ut* or *quam* (with verbs and adjectives), to the English "how!" Sentences of this kind may also be introduced by *quantus, qualus, quoties,* &c.

What men!	Quî hómines!
How many men!	Quid hóminum!
What a fine book!	Quam púlcher líber!
What fine weather!	
What good people they are!	Quam ílli súnt benévŏli!
What a happiness!	Quánta felícitas!
How fortunate (how lucky)!	Quam félix! Quam fortunâtus!
How good you are!	Quam bónus és!
How stupid she is!	Quam stúlta ést!
How rich this man is!	Quam díves íste ést!
How handsome that woman is!	Quam formôsa ést múlier ílla!
How kind you are to me!	Quám és erga mê benévŏlus!
How happy you are!	Quam félix és!
What an affliction to my mind!	Quî moêror afflígit ánimum méum!
What language, what precepts, what a knowledge of antiquity!	Quî sérmo, quae praecépta, quanta notítia antiquitâtis!
How many, how great, how incredible misfortunes he has undergone!	Quot, quántas, quam incredíbiles haûsit calamitates!

To what a friend I have intrusted my property!	Qualíne amíco méa commendávi bóna!
How much is conveyed in so few words!	Quam múlta quam paúcis!
How insignificant man is!	Quam níhil est tótus homúncio!
How really troublesome the affair is!	Quam véro molésta ést rês!
How minute you are in imparting advice!	Quam níhil praetermíttis in consílio dándo!
How changed!	Quántum mutâtus!
How much she wept on the bosom of her daughter!	Quántum in sínu fíliae flêvit!
How those who are fond of praise are unwilling to accuse themselves!	Ut sê accusâre nólunt, qui cúpiunt laudári!
How blind I was not to see that before!	Mê caêcum, qui haêc ántea nôn vídërim!
How much I am indebted to you!	Quam múlta tíbi débeo!
How much I am obliged to you!	Quántum tíbi súm devínctus!
How many obligations I am under to you!	Quam múltis beneficii víncülis tíbi sum devínctus!
See how the matter has changed!	Víde, quam convérsa rês ést!
You remember how popular the law seemed.	Meminístis, quam populâris léx videbâtur.
Think of the shortness of life!	Vîta quam sít brévis, cógita!
How valuable knowledge is!	Quánti est sápëre!
To run up to or *towards* (any one).	*Accurro, ĕre, accurri* (or *accucurri*), *accursum* (AD ALIQUEM, IN LOCUM).
To hasten up.	Approperāre, advolāre (AD ALIQUEM, IN LOCUM).
To run to the assistance of any one.	In alicūjus auxilium accurrere, approperāre, advolāre.
To save, preserve.	Servāre, conservāre.
To deliver, rescue.	Eripio, ĕre, pŭi, eptum (ALIQUEM A RE, EX RE).
To liberate, free, save any one from anything.	Liberāre aliquem ab aliquā re.
To try to save one's self.	Salūtem petĕre; salūti suae consulĕre.
To wish any one safe.	Aliquem salvum esse velle.
To hasten, hurry.	Festināre, properāre, maturāre (REM, *or* NEUT.).
To plunder, rob.	Praedāri (IN GENERAL). / Pilāre, expilāre (ALIQUEM, REM).
Deliver us from misery!	Erípite nôs ex misériis!
Save me from danger, from death!	Éripe mê a perículo! / Sérva mê a mórte!
Hurry slowly!	Festína lénte!

He desires you to be safe.	Tê sálvum ésse vúlt.
They sought their safety in flight.	Salûtem súam fúgā petivérunt.
Many people had hastened up; but instead of extinguishing the fire, the wretches set themselves to plundering.	Múlti advolávĕrant; flámmas véro pérditi nôn módo nôn extinxérunt, sed praedári étiam coépe-rant.
To begin, commence (anything).	*Incipĕre, coepisse, inchoāre* (ALIQUID). *Initium facere* (REI).
To set about something.	Aggredior, i, gressus sum (REM, AD REM, FACERE REM.)
I begin to work.	Incípio (coépi) laborāre.
He has commenced to write.	Initium fecit scribéndi.
He has set himself to writing.	Aggressus est ad scribéndum.
I am beginning to speak.	Dícĕre aggrédior.
Have they been able to extinguish the fire?	Num extíngui potuérunt flámmae?
Have they succeeded in extinguishing the fire?	Contigítne ĭis, ut flámmas extínguerent?
They have not succeeded.	Non cóntigit.
To indicate, show.	*Indicāre, ostendĕre, significāre.*
To quarrel (with any one, with each other).	*Rixāri, jurgāre; altercāri; litigāre* (CUM ALIQUO, INTER SE).
To chide, reprove (any one).	Objurgāre, reprehendĕre (ALIQUEM).
To scold one.	Increpāre aliquem. Aliquem asperiōrĭbus verbis castigāre.
To dispute, contend about anything.	Certāre, disputāre, dimicāre, contendĕre (CUM ALIQUO, INTER SE DE RE.
The quarrel, dispute.	Rixa, ae, *f.*; jurgium, i, *n.*; lis, lītis, *f.*
Did your master ever scold you?	Núm tê magíster túus únquam increpuit?
Never.	Núnquam.
What are they quarrelling about?	Quám ob rém inter sê rixántur?
They are quarrelling about a slave.	De sérvo inter sê rixántur.
They are disputing about who shall go first.	Dispŭtant, quís eôrum primus îre débeat.
By all means, obstinately.	*Obstināto animo, pertinaciter, praefracte.*
By every means in one's power, with might and main.	*Omni vī; summā ope; manĭbus pedĭbusque.*
To pursue (any one).	Persĕqui, insĕqui; consectāri, insectāri (ALIQUEM).

To follow (any one, or *neut.*).	Sĕqui, consĕqui (ALIQUEM).
To come next in order.	Sĕqui, excipĕre (rem).
The following words.	Haec verba.
It follows from this, that, &c.	Hinc sĕquĭtur (*or* consĕquĭtur), ut ....
To lose one's wits.	Mente căpior (captus sum). De mentis potestate exire. Insānum fiĕri.
The proverb.	Verbum, proverbium, adagium, i, *n.*
The difference.	Discrimen, ĭnis, *n.*; differentia, ae, *f.*
There is a difference between.	Aliquid interest (*or* differt) inter .... Est quod dĭffĕrat inter ....
What a difference!	Quántum dĭffert!
The officer.	Praefectus militāris.
The ass.	Asĭnus, i, *m.*
The hare.	Lepus, ŏris, *m.*
To accept anything from any one.	Accipĕre (cēpi, ceptum) aliquid ab aliquo.
To our disgrace.	*Cum ignominiā nostrā.*
To my misfortune (ill luck).	*Cum meā calamitāte* (or *pernicie*).

Exercise 171.

Ah, it is all over with me! — But, bless me! (*pro Juppiter!*) why do you cry thus? — I have been robbed of my gold rings, my best clothes, and all my money: that is the reason why I cry. — Do not make so much noise, for it is we who have taken them all in order to teach you to take better care of your things (*tua*), and to shut the door of your room when you go out. — Why do you look so sad? — I have experienced great misfortunes: after having lost all my money, I was beaten by bad-looking men; and to my still greater ill-luck I hear that my good uncle, whom I love so much, has been struck with apoplexy. — You must not afflict yourself so much, for we must yield to necessity; and you know well the proverb: "It is too late to consult to-day about what was done yesterday." — Can you not get rid of that man? — I cannot get rid of him, for he will absolutely (*utique*) follow me. — He must have lost his wits. — What does he ask you for? — He wishes to sell me a horse, which I do not want. — Whose houses are these? — They are mine. — Do those pens belong to you? — No, they belong to my sister. — Are those the pens with which she writes so well? — They are the same. — Which is the man of whom you complain? — It is he who wears a red coat. — "What is the difference between a watch and me?" inquired a lady (of) a young officer. — "My lady," replied he, "a watch marks the hours, and near you one forgets them." — A Russian peasant, who had never seen asses, seeing several in Germany, said: "Lord (*mehercule*), what large hares there are in this country!" — How many obligations I am under to you, my dear friend! you have saved my life! without you I had been lost. — Have those miserable men hurt you? — They have beaten

and robbed me; and when you ran to my assistance they were about to strip (*exuere*) and kill me. — I am happy to have delivered you from the hands of those robbers. — How good you are! — Will you go to your friend's to-night? — I shall perhaps go. — And will your sisters go? — They will perhaps. — Was you pleased at the concert yesterday? — I was not pleased there, for there was such a multitude of people there that one could hardly get in. — I bring you a pretty present with which you will be much pleased. — What is it? — It is a silk cravat. — Where is it? — I have it in my pocket. — Does it please you? — It pleases me much, and I thank you for it with all my heart. — I hope that you will at last accept something of me. — What do you intend to give me? — I will not tell you yet, for if I do tell you, you will find no pleasure when I give it to you. — Why do those men quarrel? — They quarrel because they do not know what to do. — Have they succeeded in extinguishing the fire? — They have at last succeeded in it; but it is said that several houses have been burnt. — Have they not been able to save anything? — They have not been able to save anything; for, instead of extinguishing the fire, the wretches who had come up set themselves to plundering. — Why did our friend set out without me? — They waited for you till twelve o'clock, and seeing that you did not come, they left without you.

Lesson XCVII. — PENSUM NONAGESIMUM SEPTIMUM.

OF THE ORDER OF WORDS IN SENTENCES.

A. The order or succession of words in Latin sentences is determined by their degree of relative importance, which depends upon the intention of the speaker. The general principle of this order is, that *the most important word should occupy the first place*, and that those modifying, expanding, or defining it should *follow each other* in regular succession, according to their relative weight in the construction. This is called the *natural order*.

B. In unconnected sentences, the word which the speaker intends to make prominent is placed at the beginning. But words limiting or defining others are placed after them. E. g.

Rátio praéest, *appetítus* obtémperat.	Reason commands, desire obeys.
Hábet rês pública adolescéntes nobilíssimos, parátos defensóres.	The republic has noble young men, ready for its defence.
Sémper oratórum eloquéntiae moderátrix fúit auditórum prudéntia.	The intelligence of the audience has always been the regulator of the eloquence of orators.

Lacedaémone fúit honestíssimum domicílium senectûtis.	At Lacedæmon there was the most honorable home for old age.
Béllum sociâle. Senâtus populusque *Românus.*	The social war. The senate and people of Rome.
D. Brûtus *Imperâtor, Cónsul designâtus,* S. D.* Ciceroni.	D. Brutus commander, consul elect, to Cicero greeting.
Jûs *géntium.* Lex *natúrae.* Peritus *réi militâris.* Parâtus *ad perículum.*	The law of nations. The law of nature. Skilled in military affairs. Ready for danger.
Divina natûra dédit *ágros,* árs humâna aedificâvit *úrbes.*	Divine nature gave us our lands, and human art has built our cities.

I. According to the natural order, the subject precedes the predicate. The oblique cases, and other words serving to expand the predicate, are commonly put before the verb, which then occupies the last place in the sentence. E. g.

Cónsules núnquam *fúerant;* régibus *exáctis* creáti sunt.	There had never been any consuls; they were created after the expulsion of the kings.
Vídi Catônem in bibliothécā *sedéntem.*	I saw Cato sitting in the library.
Hábent opiniônem, Apóllinem mórbos *depéllĕre,* Jóvem impérium coeléstium *tenêre,* Mártem bélla *régĕre.*	They believe that Apollo cures diseases, that Jupiter is the ruler of the gods, that Mars presides over battles.
Hóminem natûra nôn sôlum celeritâte méntis *ornâvit,* sed étiam sénsus tánquam satéllites *attribuit* ac núntios, figurámque córporis hábilem et áptam ingénio humáno *dédit.*	Nature has not only endowed man with quickness of intellect, but has also furnished him with the senses as its satellites and messengers, and given him a suitable bodily form, adapted to the human mind.

REMARK. — The copula *sum* is put either at the end or between the subject and the predicate. E. g. *Haec vita mors* est. — *Numa Pompilius rex* creātus est. — *Patres* fuēre *auctōres.* — *Claudius* erat *somni brevissimi.* — *Facta dictis* sunt *exaequanda.*

II. An adjective denoting a quality is commonly put after its noun; but when that quality is represented as the leading or distinctive characteristic, it precedes it.

The same applies to the genitive, which may either follow the word limited by it, or, as the emphatic word, precede it. E. g.

---

* I. e. *Salūtem dīcit,* Sends greeting. In superscriptions to letters, the name of the writer usually comes first. The abbreviation S. D. then either precedes or follows the person addressed, which is always in the dative. Thus equally correct: *Cicero Trebatio S. D.* Among the later writers, however, the order is reversed, and the person addressed is put first.

Vir *óptimus*. Cīvis *bónus*. Poêna *mérĭta*. Díi *immortáles*. Júppiter *Optimus Máximus*.	A most excellent man. A good citizen. Merited punishment. The immortal gods. Jupiter the Supreme.
Magíster *équitum*.	The master of cavalry.
Curatóres *viârum*.*	The inspectors of roads.
Ornaméntum *civitâtis*.	The ornament of the state.
Auditor *Platônis*.	A hearer of Plato.
Bónus vir *or* cīvis. *Súmma* res pública. *Tuum* consílium. *Atheniensis* Demosthenes.	A good man, citizen.† The whole state. *Your* advice. The Athenian Demosthenes.
Senátūs consúltum. *Persârum* rex Darius. Eudóxus, *Platônis* auditor. Miltiades, *Cimônis* fílius.	A decree of the senate. The king of the Persians, Darius. Eudoxus, the hearer of Plato. Miltiades, the son of Cimon.

REMARKS.

1. An adjective or noun limiting the meaning of two or more nouns is placed either before or after them. E. g. Nostro *incommŏdo detrimentōque doleāmus*, Let us lament over our misfortune and loss. *Zeno non tam* rērum *inventor fuit, quam* verborum novōrum, Zeno was not so much an inventor of new things, as of new words.

2. When an adjective is limited by other words, it is put first, and separated from its noun by the words thus limiting it. E. g. *Tua* erga me *benignitas*, Your kindness towards me. *Maxĭma* post hominum memoriam *classis*, The largest fleet since the memory of man. *Brevissimus* in Britanniam *trajectus*, The shortest crossing into Britannia.

III. A demonstrative pronoun before its noun directs the attention to the latter; but when placed after it, it merely points out its relation to the predicate. E. g.

Hìc vir. *Haêc* ménsa. *Hóc* báculum. *Ílla* princípia et *hî* recéntes rêrum éxĭtus.	This man. This table. This staff. Those beginnings and this recent issue of things.
Haêc est méa et *hújus frâtris mêi* germâna pátria.	This is my proper country and that of this brother of mine.
Virginem égo *hánc* sum ductûrus.	I am going to marry this virgin.
Caêdem hánc ípsam contra rempúblicam senâtus fáctam ésse decrêvit.	The senate has declared, that this very carnage was made against the republic.
Túmulus is ípse, in quô cóndĭta úrbs est.	The very hill on which the city was built.

IV. *Quisque* is commonly put after *sibi, suus*, superlatives, or ordinals. E. g.

---

* In titles the genitive is thus commonly put last.

† I. e. one whose leading trait is goodness. *Vir bonus* is only in general opposed to *malus*.

Súa cuíque virtúti laûs própria debêtur.	Every virtue is entitled to its proper praise.
Súa cujúsque animántis natûra ést.	Every animal has its peculiar nature.
Mínime *sibi quísque* nôtus est, et difficíllime *de sê quísque* séntit.	Every one knows least of himself, and every one experiences the greatest difficulty in observing himself.
Epicuréos *doctíssimus quísque* contémnit.	The wisest men all despise the Epicureans.
Décimus quísque fústi necâtur.	Every tenth man was beaten to death.
Óptimi quíque expetébant a mê doctrínam.	The best men have all sought instruction from me.

REMARK. — *Sibi* and *suus* before *quisque* thus acquire a distributive signification. When the distribution is already contained in other words of the sentence, *quisque* precedes the reflexive. E. g. *Quanti* quisque se *ipse facit, tanti fiat ab amicis.* — *Gallos Hannibal . . . . in civitates* quemque suas *dimīsit.* — The same order is observed in *alius ullus;* e. g. *Neque* alia ulla *fuit causa.*

V. Adverbs before the words qualified by them denote that which is distinctive or characteristic; after them they merely limit or restrict their signification.

Béne fácta *mále* locâta *mále* fácta árbitror.	I consider ill-bestowed acts of kindness injuries.
Áccidit, ut réliquae (*sc.* náves) *fere* ómnes rejiceréntur.	It happened that nearly all the rest of the ships were driven back.
Flûmen Dûbis *paene* tótum óppidum cíngit.	The river Dubis surrounds nearly the entire town.
Históría exíguo témpŏre absólvi *nŏn pótest.*	History cannot be despatched in a short time.
Laélius *sémper fére* cum Scipiône solêbat rusticári.	Laelius generally was accustomed to rusticate with Scipio.
Lêgem *eísdem própe* vérbis in décimam tábulam conjecérunt.	They have expressed the law in nearly the same words in the twelfth table.
Quódsi Cnéus Itáliam relínquet, *fáciet* omníno *mále.*	But if Cneus will leave Italy, he will act very unwisely.

VI. The same applies to the oblique cases determining the predicate; before the verb they indicate the sense in which it is to be taken, after it they only specify or limit it (cf. I.). E. g.

Médici *ex quíbúsdam rêbus et adveniéntes et crescéntes mórbos* intélligunt.	Physicians understand both approaching and growing diseases from certain symptoms.
Epédorix et Viridómărus, insi-	Epedorix and Viridomarus, having

muláti proditiônis *ab Románis indictā caúsā* interfécti súnt.	been accused of treason, were killed by the Romans without any trial.
Ingénia humâna *súnt ad suam cuíque levándam cúlpam nímio plûs* facúnda.	Men are naturally too eloquent in palliating every one his own guilt.

VII. Prepositions, as their name implies, are generally placed before the cases governed by them. *T'ĕnus* and *versus* alone follow them. So also *cum* in *mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quōcum, quibuscum.* E. g.

Ab hóste ótium fúit.	There was rest from the enemy.
Mánum *de tábulā!*	Hands off from the picture!
Germáni státim *e sómno* lavántur.	The Germans bathe immediately after sleep.
Víx súm *apud mê.*	I am scarcely in my senses.
Póst móntem sê occultâvit.	He concealed himself behind the mountain.
Antíochus *Taúro tenus* regnâre jússus ést.	Antiochus was commanded to rule as far as the Taurus.
A Pompéio dissidêbat, *quôcum* junctíssime víxerat.	He was at variance with Pompey, with whom he had been on terms of intimacy.
Curándum ést, ut éos, *quibúscum* sermônem conferêmus, et veréri et dilígĕre videâmur.	We must endeavor to have the appearance of respecting and cherishing those with whom we engage in conversation.

REMARKS.

1. An adjective or relative pronoun is often emphatically put before the preposition, so that the latter stands between it and its noun. E. g. *Magno* cum *metu.* — *Quā* in *urbe.* — *Hanc* ob *causam.* — *Quem* ad *modum.* — *Nullā* in *re.*

2. Relatives, and sometimes also the demonstrative *hic*, are frequently put before their preposition, although no substantive follows. E. g. *Socii putandi*, quos inter (= inter quos) *res communicāta est.* — *Res, causa*, quā de (= de quā) *agĭtur.* So also: Hunc *adversus*; hunc *circum*; hunc *juxta*; quem *penes*; quam *super*; quem *ultra*, &c.*

3. Prepositions are sometimes separated from their cases, generally by an attributive genitive or an adverb, sometimes also by some other word. E. g. Post *vero Sullae* victoriam. — Post *autem Alexandri Magni* mortem. — Propter *vel* gratiam, *vel* dignitatem. — *Honore digni* cum *ignominiā* dignis *non sunt comparandi.* — In *suum cuique* tribuendo.†

---

* Poets and later prose-writers extend this transposition to personal pronouns and to substantives. E. g. Se *erga*; te *propter*; me *penes*; te *sine*; Scythas *inter*; Misēnum *apud* et Ravennam; thalamo *sub* flumĭnis.

† Poets extend this liberty much further. E. g. Per *ego te* deos *oro.* — *Vis animi pervicit et* extra *processit longe* flammantia moenia *mundi*, &c.

VIII. When two terms are opposed to or contrasted with each other, they are placed as near together as possible.

A word may thus be opposed to itself in a different form, or to one of kindred signification; as, *Manus manum lavat.* — *Aliis aliunde est periculum.** Or else two different terms may form an antithesis to each other; as, *Fragile* corpus animus *sempiternus movet.*

Hómines homínibus máxime útiles ésse póssunt.	Men can become eminently serviceable to each other.
Árma ármis propulsántur.	Arms are repelled by arms.
Níhil ést *ûnum úni* tam símile, tam pâr, quam ómnes inter nosmetípsos súmus.	Nothing resembles another so closely as we all do each other.
Nóxii ámbo, *álter in álterum* caûsam cónferunt.	Both mortal, they cast the blame upon each other.
Utérque utríque ést córdi.	They like each other.
Áliud áliis vidêtur óptimum.	One thing seems best to one, another to another.
Três frâtres *vidêre vídeor.*	It seems to me as if I saw three brothers.
Quae mê *movérunt, movíssent* éadem tê profécto.	The same things which affected me would certainly have affected you.
Mortáli immortalitâtem nôn árbitror contemnéndam.	I do not think that immortality should be despised by a mortal.
Rátio nóstra *conséntit, púgnat* orátio.	Our reason assents, but language opposes.
Est génus hóminum fallácium, *ad voluntâtem* loquéntium *ómnia, níhil ad veritâtem.*	There is a class of deceitful men, who always speak as others would have them, and never according to the truth.

REMARK. — This rule includes formulas like *Dii deaeque.* — *Dies noctesque.* — *Die ac nocte.* — *Domi bellique.* — *Domi militiaeque.* — *Terrâ marique.* — *Ultro citroque,* &c.

C. I. In sentences containing two or more connected clauses, the connecting word generally occupies the first place in the clause introduced by it.

The connecting word may be either a relative, a demonstrative pronoun or adverb, or a conjunction. Sometimes also another word, and always the one which bears the closest relation to what has gone before.

If the connective refers to a particular word of the preceding clause (e. g. a relative to its antecedent), the latter stands as near to it as possible.

Correlatives (e. g. *tantus — quantus,* &c.) occupy the same relative position in their respective clauses.

* I. e. "To some there is danger from one quarter, to others from another."

The conjunctions usually put at the beginning of their clause are: *et, ac, atque; sed, at, verum; vel, aut; nam, namque,* and *etenim.* Generally also *itaque.* E. g.

Lóquimur *de íis amícis, quós* nôvit vita commûnis.	We speak of such friends as are known in ordinary life.
Cónsul, quî ûnus supérerat, móritur.	The only surviving consul dies.
Hánnibal *três exércitus máximos* comparâvit. *Ex hîs* ûnum in Áfricam mísit.	Hannibal raised three very large armies. One of these he sent into Africa.
Tántum cuíque tribuéndum, *quántum* ípse efficere póssis.	You should assign to another no more than what you can perform yourself.
Némo orâtor *tam múlta* scrípsit, *quam múlta* nóstra sunt.	No orator has written as much as my writings amount to.
Fúror in sapiéntem cádere pótest, non pótest insánia. *Sed* haec ália quaéstio est.	The philosopher is susceptible of rage, but not of madness. But that is another question.
Nôn est in pariétibus rês pública, *at* in áris et fócis.	The republic is not in the walls of our homes, but upon our hearths and altars.
Alcibíades ad ómnes rês áptus consiliúque plênus. *Namque* imperâtor fuit súmmus mári et térrâ.	Alcibiades was fit for every kind of business, and full of sagacity; for he was the commander-in-chief by sea and land.
A tê péto, ne témere *náviges. Sólent naútae* festinâre quéstus súi caúsâ.	I ask of you not to be too rash about sailing. It is the custom of seafaring men to hurry for the sake of gain.
Pausánias nôn móres pátrios sôlum, sed étiam *cúltum vestitúmque* mutâvit. *Apparátu* régio utebâtur, véste Médiâ; *satéllites* Médi et Aegýptii sequebántur; *epulabâtur* môre Persárum .... *supérbe* respondêbat et crudéliter imperâbat. *Spártam* redíre nolêbat.	Pausanias changed not only the established customs of his country, but also his entire mode of life. He kept up the state of a king and wore a Persian dress. Medes and Egyptians constituted his retinue; he dined after the fashion of the Persians; his replies were haughty; his commands cruel. He was unwilling to return to Sparta.

II. The conjunctions *quoque, autem, vero, enim, quidem,* and the enclitics *que, ne,* and *ve,* always follow the emphatic word of the sentence. So frequently *etiam, igitur, tamen, ergo, deinde,* and *praeterea;* sometimes also *itaque* and *idcirco.*

These words then generally occupy the second or third place in the clause. When the copula *est* or a verb is the emphatic word, then *autem, enim, igitur,* and *ergo* often stand in the third, fourth, or fifth place. E. g.

Gýges a núllo videbâtur; *ípse autem* ómnia vidêbat.	Gyges was not visible to any one. But he himself saw everything.
Quíd ést énim libértas? Potéstas vivéndi, ut vélis.	For what is liberty? The power of living as you please.
Sénsit in sê íri Brûtus. *Ávide ítaque* sê certámini óffert.	Brutus perceived that he was assailed. Hence he at once offered to engage in the contest.
Núlli ést ígitur natúrae obédiens aut subjéctus Déus.	God is therefore obedient or subject to no nature.
Huîc hómini parcêtis ígitur, júdíces, cújus tánta peccâta sunt?	Will you then spare this man, O judges, whose crimes are so great?
Scímus músicen nóstris móribus abésse a príncipis persónā; *saltâre véro* in vítio póni.	We know that, according to our manners, music is incompatible with the character of our prince, and that dancing is considered a vice in him.
Scíre velim, quíd cógites, *de totâque* rê quid exístimes.	I should like to know what your plans are, and what you think of the entire business.
Quíd sapiénte póssit ésse praestántius, quum utâtur tot, *tam variísque* virtútibus?	What can be superior to the philosopher, when he enjoys so many and such a variety of virtues?
Nóstra córpŏra vertúntur, *nec quód fúimusve, sumúsve*, crâs érimus.	Our bodies undergo perpetual change, nor will we be to-morrow what we have been or are at present.

III. In quotations, the formulas *inquam*, *aio*, *dico*, *nego*, *quaeso*, *obsecro*, *censeo*, *credo*, *spero*, *opinor*, *existimor*, and *arbitror* are placed after the emphatic words. So also the vocative. E. g.

Caêsar, prolápsus in egressu nâvis, *Téneo tê, ínquit, Africa!*	Cæsar, advancing from the ship, exclaimed: Africa, I have you!
Vírtus, vírtus, ínquam, Cáii Fánni, et concíliat amicítias, et consérvat.	Virtue, virtue, I say, Caius Fannius, is at once the conciliator and the preserver of friendships.
Víde, quaéso, satísne réctum sít, nôs in ístis lócis ésse.	Pray see whether it is exactly right, that we should be in places like these.
Áttica méa, óbsecro tê, quid ágit?	Pray tell me, what is my Attica doing?
In eásdem solitúdines tú ipse, árbitror, vénies, in quíbus nôs consedísse aúdies.	You will, I think, get into the same retirement, in which you will hear that we have settled down.

IV. Conjunctions, relatives, interrogatives, and interjections, which commonly occupy the first place of a clause, are sometimes supplanted by the emphatic word. E. g.

Némo ést, *tíbi qui* suadêre, sapiéntius póssit te ípso.
There is no one that can give you better advice than you yourself.

Nôn quéo, *vétĕra ílla pópuli Románi gaúdia quánta* fúĕrint, judicâre.
I am unable to judge how great those former pleasures of the Roman people were.

Quid? *liberálitas gratuitáne* est, an mercenária?
What? Is liberality gratuitous or mercenary?

Sic profécto rês sĕ hábet, *núllum út* sít vítae témpus, in quô nôn déceat lepôrem humanitatémque versâri.
It is really so, that there can be no time of life, in which pleasantry and urbanity cannot be indulged in.

Tŭ quum ípse tántum librôrum hábeas, quôs hic tándem requíris? — *Commentários quôsdam*, inquam, *Aristotelíos*, quôs hic sciêbam ésse, *véni ut* auférrem, quôs légerem, dum éssem otiôsus.
As you yourself have so many books, which, pray, are you searching for here? — I came to take off certain commentaries of Aristotle, which I knew were here, in order that I might read them while I am at leisure.

REMARK. — So frequently *quod si*, *quod etsi*, *quod nisi*, *quod quoniam*, *quod quia*, *quod quum*, &c. E. g. *Sunt qui dicant, a me in exsilium ejectum esse Catilinam.* Quod *ego* si *verbo assequi possem, istos ipsos ejicerem qui haec loquuntur.*

V. Words properly belonging together according to the natural arrangement, are frequently separated by others, to which the speaker attaches greater importance.

Words thus crowded out of the first place in the sentence are often emphatically put at the end. E. g.

Justítia est ûna *ómnium* dómina et regina *virtûtum*.
Justice is pre-eminently the queen and mistress of all the virtues.

Aédui *équites* ad Caésarem *ómnes* revertúntur.
The cavalry of the Aedui all return to Cæsar.

In *hâc* súnt *ínsulâ* domicília Aegyptiórum.
This island contains abodes of Egyptians.

Recépto Caêsar *Óricō*, núllā interpósitā mōrā, Apollóniam proficíscitur.
After retaking Oricum, Cæsar, without any delay, advances into Apollonia.

Címon *barbarôrum* úno concúrsu *máximam vîm* prostrâvit.
Cimon defeated in one engagement a very large force of Barbarians.

Ínsula ést Mélita sátis *láto* ab Sicíliā *mári*, *periculosôque* disjúncta.
The island of Malta is separated from Sicily by a tolerably deep and dangerous sea.

Sít hóc a princípio persuâsum cívibus, *dóminos* ésse ómnium rêrum *ac moderatóres* déos.
Let the citizens first of all be persuaded of this, that the gods are the masters and governors of all things.

Quis potiône *úti* aut cíbo dúlci diútius *pótest*?
Who can use drink or sweet food any longer?

Hánc perféctam philosóphiam
I have always considered that to

sémper judicávi, quae de máximis quaestiónibus *copióse pósset, ornatêque dícere.*

be perfect philosophy which can discourse with copiousness and elegance on questions of the highest interest.

Hóc mélius, quám tû, fácere potest *némo.*

No one could do this better than you can.

Hôc témpore dáta ést Euméni *Cappadócia.*

At this time Cappadocia was given to Eumenes.

Propterea quód áliud íter habérent *núllum.*

Because they had no other road.

Ómnes múndi pártes úndique médium lócum capesséntes nitúntur *aequáliter.*

All parts of the world tend from every direction towards the central spot with equal forces.

ARRANGEMENT OF SENTENCES AND CLAUSES.

D. Clauses which mutually determine each other follow an arrangement similar to that of the words composing them.

I. Periphrastic clauses, or such as represent a noun, adjective, or adverb, occupy precisely the place in which the word for which they stand would be.

Clauses of this kind generally commence with a relative. But they include also those containing an infinitive with a case, and participial clauses.

Hómines imperíti facílius, *quod stúlte díxeris*, reprehéndere, quam, *quod sapiénter tacúeris.* laudâre póssunt.

Ignorant men can more easily find fault with a foolish remark of yours, than they can praise the wisdom of your silence.

Laudâre eloquéntiam, et, *quánta vis sít éjus, exprómere, quantámque* ís, *qui sínt éam consecûti, dignitâtem áffĕrat*, néque propósitum nóbis est hôc lóco, néque necessárium.

To praise eloquence, and to show the greatness of its force, and the dignity it bestows on those who have followed it, is neither our purpose in this place, nor is it necessary.

Profécto stúdia níhil prósunt perveniéndi áliquo, nísi íllud, *quód éo, quô inténdas, férat deducátque*, cognôris.

Your studies are of no avail in arriving at any result, unless you have become acquainted with that which carries and guides where you intend to go.

II. Relative clauses precede those of their antecedents when they contain the leading idea of the proposition; but when they merely expand or explain, they follow them. The same applies to clauses containing a comparison or an indirect question. E. g.

Nôn fecíssem hóminis paéne ínfimi mentiônem, nisi judicârem, *quî suspiciósius aut crimi-*

I should not even mention the well-nigh lowest man, unless I thought that I had never heard

nósius díceret, audivísse mê *néminem*.
any one that spoke more suspiciously and criminally.

Témpus ést hujúsmodi, ut, *ûbi quísque ést, ibi* ésse minime vélit.
The times are such now, that every one wishes to be least where he happens to be.

Frâter túus quánti mê fáciat sempérque fécerit, ésse hóminem, qui ignórat, árbitror *néminem*.
I believe there is no one who does not know how much your brother thinks of me, and has always thought of me!

Quemádmŏdum côram quî ad nôs intempestîve ádeunt, molésti saépe súnt, sic epístolae offéndunt, nôn lóco rédditae.
As those who come into our presence at improper seasons are often troublesome, so letters are offensive to us, that are not delivered at the proper time.

Quô májor ést in ánimis praestántia et divínior, éo majóre índigent diligéntiā.
The greater and diviner the superiority of intellect, the greater diligence it stands in need of.

Vérres íta sê géssit in his rêbus, *quási réus núnquam ésset futûrus*.
Verres has conducted himself in this business, as if he never were going to be impeached.

III. Clauses containing a determination of time or place, and those denoting a cause, condition, or concession, occupy the first place, when they contain the conditions necessary to produce the given result; but if they merely limit or explain, they are put last. E. g.

Alexánder, *quum interemísset Clítum*, familiârem súum, vix a sê mánus abstínuit.
When Alexander had killed Clitus, his friend, he could scarcely refrain from violence to himself.

Cogitâre debébas, *ubicúnque ésses*, tê fóre ín éjus ipsius, quém fúgis, potestâte.
You should have considered, that, wherever you might be, you would be in the power of the very man from whom you endeavor to escape.

Ut consuetúdinem dicéndi mutârem, éa caûsa míhi in Ásiam proficiscéndi fúit.
The cause of my going into Asia was, that I might change my manner of speaking.

Fábula étiam nonnúnquam, *etsi ést incredíbilis*, támen hómines cómmovet.
A fiction even sometimes affects men, although it be an incredible one.

Conténdi cum Clódio, *quum égo públicam caûsam, ille súam defénderet*.
I fought with Clodius when I defended the cause of the public and his own.

Scipióni érat mágna glória propósita,* *si Hannibalem in Africam retraxísset*.
Scipio would have had great glory before him, if he could have drawn Hannibal back into Africa.

* On this *erat proposita*, compare Lesson LXXXIV. *A.* III.

IV. The union of several clauses, harmoniously joined together, so as to express a complete thought, is called a *period.*

Periods are divided into several kinds, according to the style of composition to which they belong. The principal are the *historical*, the *didactic*, the *epistolary*, and the *oratorical.* Of these the epistolary is characterized by the greatest ease, freedom from restraint, and naturalness, while the oratorical aims at the severest symmetry, euphony, and harmony of all its members. E. g.

De méā in tê voluntâte sīc vélim júdices, mê, quibuscúnque rêbus ópus ésse intélligam, quánquam vídeam, quí sim hôc témpore et quid póssim, óperā támen et consílio, stúdio quídem cérte, réi, fámae, salúti túae praésto futûrum.

With respect to my disposition towards you, I wish you to think, that although I am aware what I am at present, and how little I can do, I shall nevertheless be ready to defend your interest, your reputation, and your welfare with my assistance and advice, at any rate with my endeavors.

The witness.	*Testis, is,* m.
An important witness.	Testis grăvis.
The guest (host).	Hospes, ĭtis, *m.*
The intimate friend.	Necessārius, i, *m.*
The tub.	Labrum, i, *n.*
The bath.	Balneum, i, *n.*
To depart this life.	A vitā discēdĕre.
To recommend any one.	Aliquem commendāre (ALICUI).
To recommend any one earnestly.	Aliquem in majōrem mŏdum commendāre.
The recommendation.	Commendatio, ōnis, *f.*
To report anything to any one.	Alicui aliquid deferre.
It has been so reported to me.	Íta ad mê delâta rês est.
To hold, possess.	Possĭdeo, ēre, ēdi, essum.
To hold openly or publicly.	Publice possidēre (ALIQUID).
Under another name.	Aliēno nomĭne.
To esteem or think much of any one.	Alĭquem magni făcĕre.
To treat any one generously.	Aliquem liberalĭter tractāre.
To write more fully and more frequently.	Et plurĭbus verbis et saepius scribĕre.
To be affected by anything.	Affectum esse alĭquā re.
I think I shall come to Rome.	In Rômam mê ventûrum púto.
I suppose you are aware.	Tê scire arbĭtror.
See that you take proper care of.	Fác, ut cúres (*cum Acc.*).
Take care of your health.	Dā ŏpĕram, ut váleas.
Out of respect for me.	Honôris méae caúsā.
You will do me a very great favor.	Id míhi veheménter grâtum érit.
I most earnestly request you.	Tê veheménter étiam atque étiam rógo.
Adieu.	Víle.

Exercise 172. — (Letters.)

1. Marcus Tullius Cicero to * * * greeting.*

I am deprived of an important witness of my high regard (*amōris summi*) for you, — of your father, of distinguished memory (*clarissimo viro*), who with his honors (*laudibus*), and especially with a son like you (*tum vero te filio*), would have overcome the destiny of (us) all (*superasset omnium fortunam*), if he had been so fortunate as to see you before he departed this life. But I hope that our friendship does not stand in need of any witnesses. May the gods prosper (*fortunāre*) your patrimony! You will at any rate (*certe*) have me (as one), to whom you may be as dear and agreeable (*jucundus*) as you were to your father. Adieu.

2. M. T. Cicero to * * * greeting.

I hope you are very well (*si vales, bene est*); I am well. We have thus far no reliable information (*quidquam certi*) either (*neque*) concerning Cæsar's arrival or (*neque*) concerning the letter, which Philotinus is said to have. If there is anything certain (*si quid erit certi*), I shall let you know (*certiōrem facĕre*) immediately. See that you take good care of your health. Adieu.

3. M. T. Cicero to * * * greeting.

I think that we shall come to Tusculanum either by the Nones (*Nōnis*),† or on the day after (*postridie*). Let everything be (*ut sint*) ready (for us) there. Perhaps there will be several with us, and we shall, I think, remain there for some length of time (*diutius*). If the tub is not in the bath, let it be (put) there (*ut sit*). So also whatever else may be (*Item cetera, quae sunt*) necessary for life (*ad virtum*) and health. Adieu.

4. M. T. Cicero to * * * greeting.

I earnestly recommend to you Hippias, the son of Philoxenus, of Calacta (*Calactīnus*), my guest and intimate friend. His property (*bona*), as (*quemadmodum*) the matter has been reported to me, is publicly held under another name, contrary to the laws of the Calactini. If this is so, the case itself (*res ipsa*) ought to prevail on your sense of justice (*ab aequitate tuā . . . impetrāre debet*), that you should help (*subvenīre*) him. But however that may be, I ask of you to relieve him (*expedīre*) out of respect for me, and to render him such assistance (*tantumque ei commodes*), both in this matter and in other respects (*et in cetĕris*), as (*quantum*) your honor (*fides*) and dignity will admit (*patietur*). You will do me a very great favor.

---

* For greeting put either *S. D.*, i. e. *Salūtem dicit*, or *S. P. D.*, *Salūtem plurimam dicit*. The name of the person addressed in the dative. E. g. *Plauco, Trebatio, Metello, Curiōni, Terentiae suae.*

† The Romans called the fifth day of the month *Nōnae, drum.* In March, May, July, and October, this was the seventh day. Consult Lexicon.

5. M. T. CICERO TO * * * GREETING.

I think you are aware how greatly I esteemed Caius Avianus Flaccus; and I had learned from himself (*ex ipso audieram*), (who was) a most excellent and agreeable (*gratus*) man, how generously he had been treated by you. The sons of this (man), worthy in every respect (*dignissimos*) of that father, and my intimate friends, whom I greatly cherish (*unice diligo*), I recommend to you as earnestly (*sic*) as I can recommend any one (*ut majore studio nullos commendāre possim*). Caius Avianus is in Sicily. Marcus is with us. My desire is (*te rogo*), that you should honor (*ornāre*) the merit (*dignitas*) of the one present with you (*illius praesentis*), and defend the interest (*rem*) of both (of them). You can do nothing in that province (that will be) more agreeable to me. I most earnestly request you to do so.

6. M. T. CICERO TO * * * GREETING.

I hope you are very well; I am well. If I had anything to write to you, I should do (so) in more words and more frequently. You see how matters stand at present (*nunc quae sint negotia*). As to how I am personally (*ego autem quomŏdo*) affected, you will be able to ascertain (*cognoscere*) from Leptas and Trebatius. See that you take proper care of (*Tu fac ut . . . cures*) your health and that of Tullia. Adieu.

7. M. T. CICERO TO * * * GREETING.

I have read your letter; from which I understand that Cæsar considers you very learned in the law. You have reason to rejoice, that you have come to those places where you might have the appearance (*ubi viderere*) of knowing something (*aliquid sapĕre*). But if (*quodsi*) you had also gone into Britannia, there certainly would have been no one in that great island more experienced (*peritior*) than you. And yet (*verum tamen*) I envy you somewhat (*subinvideo*), for having been called, of his own accord (*ultro*), by one to whom others cannot even aspire (*aspirare*), not on account of his pride, but on account of his occupation. But in that letter of yours you have written me nothing about your affairs, which, I assure you (*mehercule*), are no less an object of concern to me (*mihi non minori curae sunt*) than my own. I am very much afraid of your feeling cold in your winter-quarters (*in hibernis*); on which account I advise you to keep up (*utendum censeo*) a good fire (*camino luculento*). Mucius and Manilius are of the same opinion (*idem placebat* with the dat.), especially as you are but sparingly supplied with military cloaks (*qui sagis non abundares*). I hear however (*quamquam audio*) that you feel warm enough where you are (*istic*); on account of which intelligence (*quo quidem nuntio*) I was, I assure you, very much concerned about you (*de te timueram*). But you are more cautious in military affairs than in the law (*in advocationibus*), since you desired neither to swim in the ocean, (though) extremely fond (*studiosissimus homo*) of swimming, nor to see the esse-

clarii,* (though the man), whom before we could not even cheat blindfolded (*quem antea ne andabatam quidem*† *defraudare poteramus*). But jesting aside (*jam satis jocati sumus*), you yourself know how earnestly (*diligenter*) I have written to Cæsar about you; how often (I have done so), I (myself know). But I had already ceased to do so (*jam intermiseram*), lest I might seem to distrust the disposition (*voluntas*) of a man most generous and affectionate towards me. And yet (*sed tamen*) I thought that it was necessary to remind the man (*esse hominem commonendum*) in the letter (dat.) which I sent him last. I accordingly did so (*Id feci*). I wish you to inform me of the result (*quid profecerim*); and, at the same time, of your entire condition (*de toto statu tuo*) and of all your plans. For I am anxious (*cupio*) to know what you are doing, what you expect, (and) how long you suppose this absence of yours from us (*istum tuum discessum a nobis*) will be (i. e. last). For I assure you, that it is one consolation to me, which enables me to bear more easily (*quare facilius possim pati*) your absentment from us (*te esse sine nobis*), if it is an advantage to you (to be so); but if it is none, (then) nothing can exceed the folly of both of us (*nihil duobus nobis est stultius*); of me, for not drawing you to Rome; of you, for not flying hither (at once). . . . . Let me know therefore (*quare* at the beginning of the sentence) about all (these) matters, as soon as you can. I shall certainly help you (*juvero*), either with my sympathy (*consolando*), or with advice, or with substantial assistance (*re*).

---

* An *essedarius* was either a soldier or a gladiator, that fought from a war-chariot or *essedum*.

† An *andabata* was a sort of gladiator, who wore a helmet without visors, and thus fought like a blind man.

LATIN VERBS.

A. Paradigms to the regular Conjugations of Latin Verbs.

B. Anomalous Verbs.

C. Defective Verbs.

D. Verbs Irregular in the Formation of the Perfect and Supine.

I. First Conjugation.

II. Second Conjugation.

III. Third Conjugation.

IV. Fourth Conjugation.

E. Deponent Verbs.

F. Inchoative Verbs.

A. PARADIGMS TO THE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS OF LATIN VERBS.

(To Lesson XXVIII. *A–E.*)

Active Voice.

Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Supine.
1. Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum, *to love.*
2. Moneo,	monēre,	monŭi,	monĭtum, *to admonish.*
3. Lĕgo,	lĕgĕre,	lēgi,	lectum, *to read.*
4. Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum, *to hear.*

Indicative Mood.

Present, *I love, admonish, read, hear.*

1. S. ăm-o, ās, at; P. āmus, ātis, ant.
2. S. mŏn-ĕo, ēs, et; P. ēmus, ētis, ent.
3. S. lĕg-o, ĭs, it; P. ĭmus, ĭtis, unt.
4. S. aud-īo, īs, it; P. īmus, ītis, iunt.

Imperfect, *I loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. S. ām-ābam, ābās, ābat; P. abāmus, abātis, ābant.
2. S. mŏn-ēbam, ēbās, ēbat; P. ebāmus, ebātis, ēbant.
3. S. lĕg ēbam, ēbās, ēbat; P. ebāmus, ebātis, ēbant.
4. S. aud-iēbam, iēbās, iēbat; P. iebāmus, iebātis, iēbant.

Perfect, *I have loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. S. amāv- 2. monŭ- 3. lēg- 4. audīv- { i, isti, it; P. imus, istis, ērunt or ēre.

Pluperfect, *I had loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. S. amāv- 2. monŭ- 3. lēg- 4. audīv- { ĕram, ĕrās, ĕrat; P. erāmus, erātis, ĕrant.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present, *that I may love, admonish, read, hear.*

S. ăm-em, ēs, et; P. ēmus, ētis, ent.
S. mŏn-eam, eās, eat; P. eāmus, eātis, eant.
S. lĕg-am, ās, at; P. āmus, ātis, ant.
S. aud-iam, iās, iat; P. iāmus, iātis, iant.

Imperfect, *that I might love, admonish, read, hear.*

S. ăm-ārem, ārēs, āret; P. ārēmus, ārētis, ārent.
S. mon-ērem, ērēs, ēret; P. ērēmus, ērētis, ērent.
S. lĕg-erem, erēs, eret; P. erēmus, erētis, erent.
S. aud-irem, irēs, iret; P. irēmus, irētis, irent.

Perfect, *that I may have loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. S. amāv- 2. monŭ- 3. lēg- 4. audīv- { ĕrim, ĕris, ĕrit; P. erimus, eritis, ĕrint.

Pluperfect, *that I might have loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. S. amāv- 2. monŭ- 3. lēg- 4. audīv- { issem, issĕs, isset; P. issēmus, issētis, issent.

Future Tenses Indicative.

Future I., *I shall love, admonish, read, hear.*

1. S. ăm-ābo, ābis, ābit; P. ābĭmus, ābĭtis, ābunt.
2. S. mŏn-ēbo, ēbis, ēbit; P. ēbĭmus, ēbĭtis, ēbunt.
3. S. lĕg-am, ēs, et; P. ēmus, ētis, ent.
4. S. aud-iam, iēs, iet; P. iēmus, iētis, ient

Future II., *I shall have loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. S. amāv- 2. monŭ- 3. lēg- 4. audīv- { ĕro, ĕris, ĕrit; P. erĭmus, erĭtis, ĕrint.

ACTIVE VOICE. — *Continued.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

1. S. ăm-ā; P. āte, *love thou, love ye.*
2. S. mŏn-ē; P. ēte, *admonish thou, admonish ye.*
3. S. lĕg-ĕ; P. īte, *read thou, read ye.*
4. S. aud-ī; P. īte, *hear thou, hear ye.*

FUTURE.

1. S. ăm-āto, āto, *thou shalt, let him, love.*
   P. ăm-ātōte, anto, *ye shall, let them, love.*
2. S. mŏn-ēto, ēto, *thou shalt, let him, admonish.*
   P. mŏn-ētōte, ento, *ye shall, let them, admonish.*
3. S. lĕg-ito, ito, *thou shalt, let him, read.*
   P. lĕg-itōte, unto, *ye shall, let them, read.*
4. S. aud-ito, ito, *thou shalt, let him, hear.*
   P. aud-itōte, iunto, *ye shall, let them, hear.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
1. ăm-āre, *to love.*	1. amāv-isse, *to have loved.*
2. mŏn-ēre, *to admonish.*	2. monŭ-isse, *to have admonished.*
3. lĕg-ĕre, *to read.*	3. lĕg-isse, *to have read.*
4. aud-īre, *to hear.*	4. audīv-isse, *to have heard.*

FUTURE.

1. amāt-ūrum esse, *to be about to love.*
2. monit-ūrum esse, *to be about to admonish.*
3. lect-ūrum esse, *to be about to read.*
4. audīt-ūrum esse, *to be about to hear.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

1. ăm-ans, *loving.*
2. mŏn-ens, *admonishing.*
3. lĕg-ens, *reading.*
4. aud-iens, *hearing.*

FUTURE.

1. amāt-ūrus, *about to love.*
2. monit-ūrus, *about to admonish.*
3. lect-ūrus, *about to read.*
4. audīt-ūrus, *about to hear.*

GERUNDS.

1. am-andi, *of loving.*
2. mŏn-endi, *of admonishing.*
3. lĕg-endi, *of reading.*
4. aud-iendi, *of hearing.*

SUPINES.

1. amāt-um, *to love.*
2. monit-um, *to admonish.*
3. lect-um, *to read.*
4. audīt-um, *to hear.*

Passive Voice.

Pres.	Infin.	Perfect.	
1. Amor,	amāri,	amātus sum,	*to be loved.*
2. Monĕor,	monēri,	monĭtus sum,	*to be admonished.*
3. Lĕgor,	lĕgi,	lectus sum,	*to be read.*
4. Audĭor,	audīri,	audītus sum,	*to be heard.*

Indicative Mood.

Present, *I am loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. S. ăm-or, āris *or* re, ātur; P. āmur, āmĭni, antur.
2. S. mŏn-ĕor, ēris *or* re, ētur; P. ēmur, ēmĭni, entur.
3. S. lĕg-or, ĕris *or* re, ĭtur; P. ĭmur, ĭmĭni, untur.
4. S. aud-ĭor, īris *or* re, ītur; P. īmur, īmĭni, iuntur.

Imperfect, *I was loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. S. ăm-ābar, ābāris *or* re, ābātur; P. ābāmur, ābāmĭni, ābantur.
2. S. mŏn-ēbar, ēbāris *or* re, ēbātur; P. ēbāmur, ēbāmĭni, ēbantur.
3. S. lĕg-ēbar, ēbāris *or* re, ēbātur; P. ēbāmur, ēbāmĭni, ēbantur.
4. S. aud-īēbar, īēbāris *or* re, īēbātur; P. īēbāmur, īēbāmĭni, īēbantur.

Perfect, *I have been loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. amātus, 2. monĭtus, 3. lectus, 4. audītus, { sum *or* fui, es *or* fuisti, est *or* fuit, &c. (Cf. p. 243.)

Pluperfect, *I had been loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. amātus, 2. monĭtus, 3. lectus, 4. audītus, { ĕram *or* fuĕram, ĕrās *or* fuĕrās, ĕrat *or* fuĕrat, &c. (Cf. p. 464.)

Subjunctive Mood.

Present, *that I may be loved, admonished, read, heard.*

S. ăm-er, ēre *or* ris, ētur; P. ēmur, ēmĭni, entur.
S. mŏn-ĕar, eāre *or* ris, ĕātur; P. ĕāmur, ĕāmĭni, ĕantur.
S. lĕg-ar, āre *or* ris, ātur; P. āmur, āmĭni, antur.
S. aud-īar, īāre *or* ris, īātur; P. īāmur, īāmĭni, īantur.

Imperfect, *that I might be loved, admonished, read, heard.*

S. ăm-ārer, ārēre *or* ris, ārētur; P. ārēmur, ārēmĭni, ārentur.
S. mŏn-ērer, ērēre *or* ris, ērētur; P. ērēmur, ērēmĭni, ērentur.
S. lĕg-ĕrer, ĕrēre *or* ris, ĕrētur; P. ĕrēmur, ĕrēmĭni, ĕrentur.
S. aud-īrer, īrēre *or* ris, īrētur; P. īrēmur, īrēmĭni, īrentur.

Perfect, *that I may have been loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. amātus, 2. monĭtus, 3. lectus, 4. audītus, { sim *or* fuĕrim, sis *or* fuĕris, sit *or* fuĕrit, &c.

Pluperfect, *that I might have been loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. amātus, 2. monĭtus, 3. lectus, 4. audītus, { essem *or* fuissem, essēs *or* fuissēs, esset *or* fuisset, &c.

Future Tenses Indicative.

Future I., *I shall be loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. S. ăm-ābor, ābĕris *or* re, ābĭtur; P. ābĭmur, ābĭmĭni, ābuntur.
2. S. mŏn-ēbor, ēbĕris *or* re, ēbĭtur; P. ēbĭmur, ēbĭmĭni, ēbuntur.
3. S. lĕg-ar, ēris *or* re, ētur; P. ēmur, ēmĭni, entur.
4. S. aud-īar, īēris *or* re, īētur; P. īēmur, īēmĭni, ientur.

Future II., *I shall have been loved, admonished, read, heard.*

1. amātus, 2. monĭtus, 3. lectus, 4. audītus, { ĕro *or* fuĕro, ĕris *or* fuĕris, ĕrit *or* fuĕrit, &c. (Cf. p. 519.)

PASSIVE VOICE. — *Continued.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

1. S. ăm-ārĕ; P. āmĭnĭ, *be thou, be ye, loved.*
2. S. mŏn-ērĕ; P. ēmĭnĭ, *be thou, be ye, admonished.*
3. S. lĕg-ĕrĕ; P. ĭmĭnĭ, *be thou, be ye, read.*
4. S. aud-īrĕ; P. ĭmĭnĭ, *be thou, be ye, heard.*

FUTURE.

1. S. ăm-ātor, ātor, *thou shalt, let him, be loved.*
   P. ăm-āmĭnor, antor, *ye shall, let them, be loved.*
2. S. mŏn-ētor, ētor, *thou shalt, let him, be admonished.*
   P. mŏn-ēmĭnor, entor, *ye shall, let them, be admonished.*
3. S. lĕg-ĭtor, ĭtor, *thou shalt, let him, be read.*
   P. lĕg-ĭmĭnor, untor, *ye shall, let them, be read.*
4. S. aud-ītor, ītor, *thou shalt, let him, be heard.*
   P. aud-ĭmĭnor, iuntor, *ye shall, let them, be heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
1. ăm-ārī, *to be loved.*	1. amāt-um esse, *to have been loved.*
2. mŏn-ērī, *to be admonished.*	2. monĭt-um esse, *to have been admonished.*
3. lĕg-ī, *to be read.*	3. lect-um esse, *to have been read.*
4. aud-īrī, *to be heard.*	4. audĭt-um esse, *to have been heard.*

FUTURE.

1. amāt-um īrī, *to be about to be loved.*
2. monĭt-um īrī, *to be about to be admonished.*
3. lect-um īrī, *to be about to be read.*
4. audĭt-um īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.

1. amāt-us, *loved.*	3. lect-us, *read.*
2. monĭt-us, *admonished.*	4. audĭt-us, *heard.*

FUTURE.

1. am-andus, *to be loved.*	3. lĕg-endus, *to be read.*
2. mon-endus, *to be admonished.*	4. aud-iendus, *to be heard.*

SUPINES.

1. amāt-u, *to be loved.*	3. lect-u, *to be read.*
2. monĭt-u, *to be admonished.*	4. audĭt-u, *to be heard.*

B. ANOMALOUS VERBS.

The anomalous verbs of the Latin language are *sum, possum, vŏlo, nōlo, mālo, ĕdo, fĕro, fīo, eo, quĕo,* and *nequĕo.*

1. Sum, esse, fui, futūrus, *to be.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
SING. sum, *I am*	SING. sim, *that I may be*
ĕs, *thou art*	sis, *that thou mayst be*
est, *he is,*	sit, *that he may be,*
PLUR. sŭmus, *we are*	PLUR. simus, *that we may be*
estis, *ye are*	sītis, *that ye may be*
sunt, *they are.*	sint,* *that they may be.*
IMPERFECT.	
SING. ĕram, *I was*	SING. essem, *that I might be*
ĕrās, *thou wast*	essēs, *that thou mightst be*
ĕrat, *he was,*	esset, *that he might be,*
PLUR. ĕrāmus, *we were*	PLUR. essēmus, *that we might be*
ĕrātis, *ye were*	essētis, *that ye might be*
ĕrant, *they were.*	essent,† *that they might be.*
PERFECT.	
SING. fŭi, *I have been*	SING. fuĕrim, *that I may have been*
fuisti, *thou hast been*	fuĕris, *that thou mayst have been*
fuit, *he has been,*	fuĕrit, *that he may have been,*
PLUR. fuĭmus, *we have been*	PLUR. fuerĭmus, *that we may have been*
fuistis, *ye have been*	fuerītis, *that ye may have been*
fuērunt (fuēre), *they have been.*	fuĕrint, *that they may have been.*
PLUPERFECT.	
SING. fuĕram, *I had been*	SING. fuissem, *that I might have been*
fuĕrās, *thou hadst been*	fuissēs, *that thou mightst have been*
fuĕrat, *he had been,*	fuisset, *that he might have been,*
PLUR. fuerāmus, *we had been*	PLUR. fuissēmus, *that we might have been*
fuerātis, *ye had been*	fuissētis, *that ye might have been*
fuĕrant, *they had been.*	fuissent, *that they might have been.*

FUTURE TENSES INDICATIVE.

FUTURE I.	FUTURE II.
SING. ĕro, *I shall be*	SING. fuĕro, *I shall have been*
ĕris, *thou will be*	fuĕris, *thou will have been*
ĕrit, *he will be,*	fuĕrit, *he will have been,*
PLUR. ĕrĭmus, *we shall be,*	PLUR. fuerĭmus, *we shall have been*
ĕrĭtis, *ye will be*	fuerītis, *ye will have been*
ĕrunt, *they will be.*	fuĕrint, *they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT. SING. ĕs, *be thou.* este, *be ye.* PLUR. FUTURE. SING. esto, *thou shalt be;* esto, *let him be.* PLUR. estōte, *ye shall be;* sunto, *let them be.*

---

* Obsolete forms are *siem, sies, siet, sient,* and *fuam, fuas, fuat, fuant.*

† Another form for the imperfect subjunctive is *fŏrem, fŏres, fŏret,* &c.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. esse, *to be.* PERFECT. fuisse, *to have been.* FUTURE. futūrum (am, um) esse *or simply* fōre, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. (ens), *being.* FUTURE. futūrus, a, um, *about to be.*

REMARKS.

1. The participle *ens* is not used except as a substantive (the philosophical "being," "entity"), and in the compounds *absens* and *praesens.*

2. Like *sum* are conjugated the compounds *absum, adsum, desum, insum, intersum, obsum, praesum, subsum,* and *supersum.* The preposition *pro* of *prosum* becomes *prod* when an e follows; as, *prodes, prodest, prodĕram, prodĕro, prodes,* &c.

2. Possum, posse, potui, *I am able, I can.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
S. possum. potĕs, potest;	S. possim, possīs, possit;
P. possūmus, potestis, possunt.	P. possīmus, possītis, possint.
IMPERFECT.	
S. potĕram, potĕras, potĕrat;	S. possem, posses, posset;
P. poterāmus, poterātis, potĕrant.	P. possēmus, possētis, possent.
PERFECT.	
S. potŭi, potuisti, potŭit;	S. potuĕrim. potuĕris, potuĕrit;
P. potuĭmus, potuistis, potuērunt.	P. potuerīmus, potuerītis, potuĕrint.
PLUPERFECT.	
S. potuĕram, potuĕras, potuĕrat;	S. potuissem, potuisses, potuisset;
P. potuerāmus, potuerātis, potuĕrant.	P. potuissēmus, potuissētis, potuissent.

FUTURE TENSES INDICATIVE.

FUTURE I.	FUTURE II.
S. potĕro, potĕris, potĕrit;	S. potuĕro, potuĕris, potuĕrit;
P. poterĭmus, poterĭtis, potĕrunt.	P. potuerĭmus, potuerĭtis, potuĕrint.

IMPERATIVE (*wanting*). INFINITIVE.

PRES. posse. PERF. potuisse.

PARTICIPLE PRES. potens (*only used adjectively*).

3. Vŏlo, velle, volŭi, *I am willing, I wish.*
4. Nōlo, nolle, nolŭi, *I am unwilling.*
5. Mālo, malle, malŭi, *I would rather, I prefer.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		
S. vŏlo, vis, vult;	nōlo, non vis, non vult;	mālo, māvis, māvult;
P. volŭmus, vultis, vŏlunt.	nōlŭmus, non vultis, nōlunt.	malŭmus, mavultis, mālunt.
IMPERFECT.		
S. volēbam, as, at;	nolēbam, as, at;	malēbam, as, at;
P. volebāmus, &c.	nolebāmus, &c.	malebāmus, &c.

	PERFECT.	
S. volui, isti, it;	nolui, isti, it;	malui, isti, it;
P. voluimus, &c.	noluimus, &c.	maluimus, &c.
	PLUPERFECT.	
S. voluĕram, as, at;	noluĕram, as, at;	maluĕram, as, at;
P. voluerāmus, &c.	noluerāmus, &c.	maluerāmus, &c.
	FUTURE I.	
S. vōlam, ēs, et;	nōlam, ēs, et;	mālam, ēs, et;
P. volēmus, &c.	nolēmus, &c.	malēmus, &c.
	FUTURE II.	
S. voluĕro, is, it;	noluĕro, is, it;	maluĕro, is, it;
P. voluerīmus, &c.	noluerīmus, &c.	maluerīmus, &c.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
	PRESENT.	
S. vĕlim, is, it;	nōlim, is, it;	mālim, is, it;
P. velīmus, ītis, int.	nolīmus, ītis, int.	malīmus, ītis, int.
	IMPERFECT.	
S. vellem, ēs, et;	nollem, ēs, et;	mallem, ēs, et;
P. vellēmus, &c.	nollēmus, &c.	mallēmus, &c.
	PERFECT.	
S. voluĕrim, is, it;	noluĕrim, is, it;	maluĕrim, is, it;
P. voluerīmus, &c.	noluerīmus, &c.	maluerīmus, &c.
	PLUPERFECT.	
S. voluissem, ēs, et;	noluissem, es, et;	maluissem, es, et;
P. voluissēmus, &c.	noluissēmus, &c.	maluissēmus, &c.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
(*Wanting.*)	nōli — nolīte nolīto — nolitōte nolīto — nolunto.	(*Wanting.*)
	INFINITIVE MOOD.	
PRES. velle	nolle	malle
PERF. voluisse.	noluisse.	maluisse.
	PARTICIPLE.	
vōlens.	nōlens.	(*Wanting.*)
	GERUND.	
volendi volendo.	nolendi.	(*Wanting.*)

6. Edo, ĕre *or* esse, ēdi, ēsum, *I eat.*

PRES. INDIC. S. ĕdo, ĕdis *or* ēs, ĕdit *or* est; P. edīmus, edītis *or* estis, ĕdunt.
IMPERF. SUBJ. S. edĕrem *or* essem, edĕres *or* esses, edĕret *or* esset; P. edĕrēmus *or* essēmus, edĕrētis *or* essētis, edĕrent *or* essent.
IMPERAT. PRES. S. ĕde *or* ēs; P. edīte *or* este.
IMPERAT. FUT. S. edīto *or* esto, edīto *or* esto; P. editōte *or* estōte, eduntō.
INFIN. edĕre *or* esse. PASSIVE FORMS. edītur *or* estur; — edĕrētur *or* essētur.

The remaining tenses of this verb are regular.
The compounds of *edo*, inflected like it, are *adĕdo*, *amblĕdo*, *comĕdo*, *exĕdo*, *perĕdo*.

7. Fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *I carry, bear.*

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.
Indicative.	
Pres. S. fĕro, fers, fert; P. ferĭmus, fertis, fĕrunt.	S. fĕror, ferris *or* re, fertur; P. ferĭmur, ferĭmĭni, feruntur.
Imperf. ferēbam, as, at, &c.	ferēbar, āris *or* re, ātur, &c.
Perf. tŭli, isti, it, &c.	lātus sum *or* fui, &c.
Pluperf. tulĕram, as, at, &c.	lātus ĕram *or* fuĕram, &c.
Fut. I. fĕram, ēs, et, &c.	fĕrar, ēris *or* re, ētur, &c.
Fut. II. tulĕro, is, it, &c.	lātus ĕro *or* fuĕro.
Subjunctive.	
Pres. fĕram, ās, at, &c.	fĕrar, āre *or* ris, ātur, &c.
Imperf. ferrem, ēs, et, &c.	ferrer, ēre *or* ris, ētur, &c.
Perf. tulĕrim, is, it, &c.	lātus sim *or* fuĕrim, &c.
Pluperf. tulissem, es, et, &c.	lātus essem *or* fuissem, &c.
Imperative.	
Pres. S. fer; P. ferte.	S. ferre; P. ferĭmĭni.
Fut. S. ferto, ferto; P. fertōte, fĕrunto.	S. fertor, fertor; P. ferĭmĭnor, fĕruntor.
Infinitive.	
Pres. ferre. Perf. tulisse. Fut. latūrum esse.	Pres. ferri. Perf. lātum esse *or* fuisse. Fut. lātum īri.
Participles.	
Pres. ferens. Fut. latūrus.	Perf. lātus. Fut. ferendus.
Gerund.	**Supines.**
ferendi, do, dum, do.	lātum. — lātu.

So also the compounds *affĕro*, *antefĕro*, *auferō* (= *ab* + *fĕro*), *circumfĕro*, *confĕro*, *defĕro*, *differō*, &c. — Instead of *sustŭli*, the proper perfect of *suffĕro*, the form *sustinŭi* (from *sustineo*) is commonly employed, and *sustŭli*, as well as the supine *sublātum*, are considered parts of the verb *tollo*, I pick up, take away.

8. Fio, fĭĕri, factus sum, *I become, am made.*

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Present.	
S. fĭo, fīs, fit; P. fīmus, fītis, fĭunt.	S. fĭam, fĭas, fĭat; P. fiāmus, fiātis, fĭant.
Imperfect.	
S. fiēbam, as, at; P. fiebāmus, ātis, ant.	S. fĭĕrem, es, et; P. fierēmus, ētis, ent.
Future.	**Infinitive.**
S. fĭam, es, et; P. fiēmus, ētis, ent.	Pres. fĭĕri. Perf. factum esse. Fut. factum īri.

The remaining parts of this verb are from *facĕre*. Such are *factus*, *faciendus*, *factus sum*, *eram*, *ero*, &c.

Among the compounds of *fio* are the defective *infit*, he begins; *defit* (*defiunt*, *defiat*, *defĭĕri*), there is wanting, and *confit* (*confĭĕri*), there is made.

9. Eo, īre, īvi (ii), ĭtum, *I go.*

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Present.	
S. ĕo, īs, it; P. īmus, ītis, eunt.	S. eam, eas, eat; P. eāmus, eātis, eant.

IMPERFECT.

S. ībam, ības, ībat; P. ībāmus, ībātis, ībant.
S. īrem, īres, īret; P. īrēmus, īrētis, īrent.

PERFECT.

S. īvi, īvisti, īvit; P. īvīmus, &c.
S. īverim (iĕrim), īveris, &c. P. īverīmus, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

S. īveram (iĕram), as, at; P. īverāmus, &c.
S. īvissem, īvisses, īvisset; P. īvissēmus, &c.

FUTURE TENSES INDICATIVE.

FUTURE I.

S. ībo, ībis, ībit; P. ībīmus, ībītis, ībunt.

FUTURE II.

S. īvero, īveris, īverit; P. īverīmus, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. S. I — P. īte.
FUT. S. ito — P. ītōte; S. ito — P. eunto.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. īre.
PERF. īvisse *or* isse.
FUT. ītūrum (am, um), esse.

GERUND.

eundi, do, dum, do.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. iens, *gen.* euntis.
FUT. ītūrus, a, um.

SUPINES.

ACT. ītum. PASS. ītu.

So the compounds *abeo, adeo, coĕo, exeo, ineo, intereo, pereo, praetereo, prodeo, redeo.* But all these have generally *ii* instead of *īvi* in the perfect; as, *abii, exii, perii, prodii,* &c. To these add *veneo* (= *venum* + *eo*), I am sold. *Ambio,* I go around, is the only compound regularly conjugated like *audio,* and has consequently *ambiēbam, ambiens, ambiendi,* &c.

The only passive forms of *eo* are the impersonal *ītur* and *ītum est.* But the compounds of *eo* which have acquired a transitive sense have a regular passive voice; as, *adeo, ineo, praetereo.*

A future in *eam, ies, iet, ient* (instead of *ibo, ibis,* &c.), occurs only in later authors, and is confined to the compounds.

10. Quĕo, quīre, quīvi, quītum, *I can.*
11. Nequĕo, nequīre, nequīvi (nequĭi), nequītum, *I cannot.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

S. quĕo, quīs, quit; P. quīmus, quītis, quĕunt.
S. nequĕo, nequīs, nequit; P. nequīmus, nequītis, nequĕunt.

IMPERFECT.

S. quībam, as, at; P. quibāmus, &c.
S. nequībam, as, at; P. nequibāmus, &c.

PERFECT.

S. quīvi — quīvit; P. — — quivērunt.
S. nequīvi, nequisti, nequīvit (nequĭit); P. — — nequivērunt (nequiērunt).

PLUPERFECT.

S. — — nequiĕrat. P. — — nequiĕrant.

FUTURE.

S. quībo — —; P. — — quibunt.
S. — — — P. — — nequībunt.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

S. quĕam, quĕas, quĕat; P. queāmus, queātis, quĕant.
S. nequĕam, nequĕas, nequĕat; P. nequeāmus, &c.

IMPERFECT.

S.	quīrem	— quīret;	S.	nequīrem	— nequīret;
P.	—	— quīrent.	P.	nequirēmus	— nequīrent.

PERFECT.

S.	—	— quivĕrit.	S.	nequivĕrim	— nequiĕrit;
			P.	—	— nequiĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

S.	—	— —;	S.	—	— nequisset;
P.	—	— nequissent.	P.	—	— nequissent.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. quīre. PERF. quivisse (quisse). PRES. nequīre. PERF. nequivisse (nequisse).

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. quiens, *gen.* queuntis. PRES. nequiens, *gen.* nequeuntis.

These verbs are both conjugated like *eo*. Many of the forms, however, are seldom used, except those of the present. Nepos and Cæsar never employ any of them. Instead of *nequeo* Cicero frequently puts *non queo*.

Passive forms are *quītur, nequītur, quīta est, nequītum est*, but these are rarely used, and only in connection with an infinitive passive. E. g. *Forma nosci non quīta est*, The form could not be distinguished.

C. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective verbs are those which occur only in certain forms and connections.

The principal verbs of this class are *aio* and *inquam*, I say; *fāri*, to speak; the præteritives *coepi*, I have begun; *memĭni*, I remember; *nōvi*, I know; *ōdi*, I hate; the imperatives *apăge*, *ăve*, *salve*, and *vāle*. So also *cĕdo*, *quaeso*, and *fŏrem*.

1. Aio, *I say.*

INDIC. PRES. āio, āis, āit; P. — — āiunt.
" IMPERF. aiēbam, as, at; P. aiebāmus, ātis, ant.
" PERFECT. — — ālt.
SUBJ. PRES. — aias, aiat; P. — — aiant.
IMPER. ai (*obsolete*). PART. aiens (*only as adject.*).

Instead of the interrogative *aisne* the contracted *ain'* frequently occurs.

2. Inquam, *I say.*

INDIC. PRES. inquam, inquis, inquit; P. inquīmus, inquītis, inquiunt.
" IMPERF. inquiēbam, &c. P. inquiebāmus, &c.
" PERF. — inquisti, inquit; P. — inquistis, —.
" FUTURE. — inquies, inquiet; P. — — —.
SUBJ. PRES. — inquias, inquiat; P. — inquiātis, inquiant.
IMPERAT. S. inque, inquīto; P. inquite.

The present *inquam* sometimes supplies the place of the first person perfect, which is wanting.

3. Fāri, *to speak, say.*

INDIC. PRES. — — fātur; P. — — fantur.
IMPERAT. fāre. PART. fātus, a, um. GER. fando.

So the compound forms *affāmur, affamīni, affābar, effābor, effābĕris*. This verb rarely occurs except in poetry. The first person *for*, and the subj. *fer*, *fātur*, are never used.

4. Coepi, coepisse, coeptūrus, *I have begun.*
5. Memĭni, meminisse, ——, *I remember.*
6. Nōvi, novisse, ——, *I know.*
7. Ōdi, odisse, osūrus, *I hate.*

INDICATIVE PERFECT.

S.	coepi	memĭni	nōvi	ōdi
	coepisti,	meministi	novisti (nōsti)	odisti
	coepit,	meminit,	nōvit,	ōdit,
P.	coepĭmus	meminĭmus	novĭmus	odĭmus
	coepistis	meministis	novistis (nōstis)	odistis
	coepērunt.	meminērunt.	novērunt (nōrunt).	odērunt.

PLUPERFECT.

coepĕram, as, at, &c.	meminĕram, as, at, &c.	novĕram (nōram), as, at, &c.	oderam, as, at, &c.

FUTURE.

coepĕro, is, it, &c.	meminĕro, is, it, &c.	novĕro, is, it, &c.	oderо, is, it, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT.

coepĕrim, is, it, &c.	meminĕrim, is, it, &c.	novĕrim (nōrim), is, it, &c.	odĕrim, is, it, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

coepissem, es, et, &c.	meminissem, es, et, &c.	novissem (nossem, es, et, &c.	odissem, es, et, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

(*Wanting.*)	S. memento,		(*Wanting.*)
	P. mementōte.		

INFINITIVE.

coepisse.	meminisse.	novisse.	odisse.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. PASS. coeptus.	—	—	perūsus, exōsus (*active*).
FUT. ACT. coeptūrus.	—	—	osūrus.

Of the above verbs *memĭni*, *nōri*, and *ōdi* have a present signification. Hence the pluperfect has the sense of the imperfect, and the second future that of the first.

Instead of *coepi* the passive *coeptus est* is also used, especially in connection with the infinitive passive. E. g. *Oppugnāri coeptum est oppidum*, The town began to be besieged.

8. Apăge, *away!* Ave, Salve, *hail.* Vale, *farewell.*

Apăge has sometimes an accusative after it; as, *Apăge tē*, Away with you!

Salve also occurs in the present indic., *salveo*. *Vale* and *ave* are regular imperatives of the verbs *valeo*, I am well, and *aveo*, I am desirous, and are defective only in consequence of the change of signification.

All of these imperatives have also a plural and a future form; as,

S. ave. F. avēto. P. avēte.
S. salve. F. salvēto. P. salvēte.
S. vale. F. valēto. P. valēte.
FUTURE forms with the imperative force are *salvētis*, *valētis*.
INFINITIVES are *salvēre*, *valēre*.

9. Cĕdo, *give me*, or *say, tell.*

This verb may stand either as the singular or plural. Special plural forms are *cedīte* and *cette*. Its sense is similar to that of the French *tenez*.

10. Quaeso, *I pray, pray.*

This verb is most commonly interjected in the sentence, like the English "pray," "please." Its plural is *quaesumus.*

11. Fŏrem, *I might be.*

From the obsolete root *fŭo*, and contracted for *fuĕrem.* It is otherwise regular, and the infinitive is *fŏre*, "to be about to be." (Cf. page 666.)

D. VERBS WHICH ARE IRREGULAR IN THE FORMATION OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE.

Many Latin verbs are irregular in the formation of the second and third roots, which frequently assume the characteristics of another conjugation. These will be enumerated and examined in the following lists, according to their respective conjugations.

I. First Conjugation.

Regular verbs of the first conjugation end in *o, āre, āvi, ātum.* E. g.

Ambŭlo, ambulāre, ambulāvi, ambulātum, *to walk.*
Celo, celāre, celāvi, celātum, *to conceal.*
Impĕro, imperāre, imperāvi, imperātum, *to command.*
Vulnĕro, vulnerāre, vulnerāvi, vulnerātum, *to wound.*

Several verbs of the first conjugation follow the analogy of the second, and form their perfect in *ŭi* and the supine in *ĭtum.* A few more are otherwise irregular in these parts. They are: —

Crĕpo, āre, crepŭi, crepĭtum, *to ring, clatter, resound.*

Compounds are *concrepāre, discrepāre,* and *increpāre.*

Cŭbo, āre, cubŭi, cubĭtum, *to lie, recline.*

So the compounds *accŭbo, excŭbo, incŭbo, secŭbo,* and others. But the compos. of *cŭbo* which take an *m* before *b* are of the third conjugation (e. g. *discumbĕre*). — The regular perfects *cubāvi* and *incubāvi* also occur.

Dō, dăre, dĕdi, dătum, *to give.*

So *circumdăre, pessundăre, satisdăre,* and *venundăre.* But the remaining compos. belong to the third conjugation; as, *addĕre, condĕre, reddĕre,* &c. — Obsolete forms of the pres. subj. are *duim, duis, duit,* from the secondary *duo.*

Dŏmo, āre, domŭi, domĭtum, *to tame, curb.*

So the compos. *edŏmāre* and *perdŏmāre.*

Frĭco, āre, fricŭi, fricātum *or* frictum, *to rub.*

So the compos. *defricāre, infricāre, perfricāre,* and *refricāre.*

Jŭvo, āre, jūvi, jūtum, juvatūrus, *to assist, help.*

So also *adjuvāre, adjūvi, adjūtum, adjutūrus* or *adjuvatūrus.*

Lăvo, āre, lāvi, lavātum, lautum, *and* lōtum, *to wash.*

An infinitive *lavĕre* occurs in the older Latinity and in poetry.

Mĭco, āre, micŭi, ——, *to glitter, shine.*

So *emĭco, āre, emicui, emicātum.* But *dimĭco,* I contend, fight, has the regular perfect *dimicāvi.*

Nĕco, āre, āvi, ātum, *to kill,* is regular, but the

Compos. *enĕcāre* has *āvi, ātum* and *enecŭi, enectum.* The participle is commonly *enectus; internecāre* has *internecātus.*

Plĭco, āre, āvi *and* ŭi, ātum *and* ĭtum, *to fold.*

So the compos. *applicāre, complicāre, explicāre,* and *implicāre.* But *duplico, multiplico,* and *supplico,* which are derived from adjectives in *plex,* have regularly *āvi, ātum.*

Pōto, āre, āvi, potātum *and more commonly* pōtum, *to drink.*

The participle is *pōtus,* which is both passive, "drunk," and active, "having drunk." The compos. *appōtus* is active, "having drunk sufficiently"; and *epōtus,* passive, "emptied by drinking."

Sĕco, āre, sĕcui, sectum, secatūrus, *to cut.*

Compos. *desecāre, dissecāre, persecāre.* But *praesecāre* and *resecāre* have *cātum* or *ctum* in the supine.

Sŏno, āre, sonŭi, sonĭtum, sonatūrus, *to sound.*

So *consonāre, dissonāre, personāre, resonāre.*

Stō, stāre, stĕti, stătum, *to stand.*

So *antestāre, circumstāre, interstāre,* and *superstāre.* But the remaining compounds have *ĭti* in the perfect; as, *adstāre, constāre,* perf. *adstĭti, constĭti;* so *exstāre, instāre, obstāre, perstāre, praestāre,* and *restāre.* Some of these compounds want the supine. *Distāre* has neither perf. nor supine. *Praestāre* has (in later authors only) sup. *praestĭtum,* but very frequently *praestatūrus.*

Tŏno, āre, tonŭi, (tonĭtum,) *to thunder.*

So *attonāre* (part. *attonĭtus*), *intonāre* (part. *intonātus*); but *circumtonāre* wants the third root.

Vĕto, āre, vetŭi, vetĭtum, *to prohibit, forbid.*

☞ Among the irregularities of the first conjugation may be included the perfect participles of the verbs *coenāre* and *jurāre,* which are used in an active sense; — *coenātus,* "having dined"; *jurātus,* "having sworn." So the compounds *conjurātus,* "having conspired," and *injurātus,* "one who has not sworn." Among later authors *conspirātus* is used actively like *conjurātus,* and in the same sense.

II. Second Conjugation.

Regular verbs of the second conjugation end in *ĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum.* E. g.

Dēbĕo, debēre, debŭi, debĭtum, *to owe.*
Hăbĕo, habēre, habŭi, habĭtum, *to have.*
Mĕrĕo, merēre, merŭi, merĭtum, *to earn.*
Tăcĕo, tacēre, tacŭi, tacĭtum, *to be silent.*

The verbs of the second conjugation, which deviate from the forms exhibited in these examples, may be divided into, —

1. Those which are irregular or defective in the formation of the perfect or supine roots, but yet remain within the limits of the conjugation.
2. Those which follow the analogy of the third conjugation in the formation of those parts.
3. Those which want the second and third roots entirely.
4. Semideponentia.

1. The verbs of the second conjugation which are irregular or defective in the second or third root, but still do not transcend the limits of the conjugation, are, —

a) Those which have *vi* instead of *vŭi,* or *ēvi* instead of *ŭi,* in the perfect.

Căvĕo, ēre, cāvi, cautum, *to beware.*
So *praecavēre.*

Connīveo, ēre, nīvi *and* nixi, ——, *to close the eyes, to wink.*

Deleo, ēre, dēlēvi, delētum, *to extinguish, destroy.*

Făveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum, *to favor.*

Ferveo, ēre, fervi *and* ferbŭi, ——, *to glow, to be hot.*

Obsolete are the forms *fervit, fervat, fervĕre*, according to the third conj. The double perfect (in *vi* and *bŭi*) extends also to the inchoatives *defervescĕre, effervescĕre*, and *refervescĕre*. But *confervescĕre* has generally *conferbui.*

Flĕo, flēre, flēvi, flētum, *to weep.*

Fŏveo, fovēre, fōvi, fōtum, *to cherish.*

Mŏveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move.*

So the compos. *amovēre, admovēre, commovēre, permovēre*, &c.

The root OL, *to grow*, gives rise to the compos. *abolĕo*, I abolish; *abolesco*, I cease; *adoleo* and *adolesco*, I grow up; *exoleo* or *exolesco* and *obsolĕo* or *obsolesco*, I grow out of use; all of which have *ēvi* in the perfect.

The supine of *aboleo* is *abolitum*. The rest want this part entirely, but have given rise to the adjectives *adultus, exolētus*, and *obsolētus.*

Păveo, ēre, pāvi, ——, *to fear, tremble.*

From this the inchoative *expavesco, ĕre, expāvi*, of which the perfect is especially frequent.

The root PLE, *to fill*, gives rise to the compos. *complĕo, explĕo*, and *implĕo*, I fill, fill up; all of which have *ēvi, ētum.*

Vŏveo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, *to vow.*

So the compos. *devovēre*, to curse.

b) Those which have *tum* or *sum* instead of *ĭtum* in the supine.

Censeo, ēre, censui, censum, *to suppose, think.*

The participle *census* occurs with an active sense. So also *census sum*, from a deponent *censeor*. *Percenseo* wants the supine. *Accenseo* has *accensus; succenseo, successūrus;* and *recenseo*, two supines *recensum* and *recensītum.*

Dŏceo, ēre, docŭi, doctum, *to teach.*

So the compos. *dedocēre, edocēre*, and *perdocēre.*

Misceo, ēre, miscŭi, mistum *or* mixtum, *to mix.*

The supine *mixtum* is the more common and correct. Compos. are *admiscēre, commiscēre, immiscēre, permiscēre.*

Tĕneo, ēre, tenŭi, (tentum,) *to hold.*

Compos. *abstinēre, attinēre, continēre, detinēre, distinēre, retinēre*, and *sustinēre*, all of which have *tentum* in the supine. *Pertinēre* wants the supine, and the simple *tentum* rarely occurs.

Torreo, ēre, torrŭi, tostum, *to roast.*

c) Those which have *ŭi* in the perfect regularly, but no supine.

Arceo, ēre, arcŭi, *to drive away.*

But the compos. *coërcēre* and *exercēre* have a supine in *ĭtum.*

Calleo, ēre, callŭi, *to be callous.*

Candeo, ēre, candŭi, *to shine, to glow.*

Egeo, ēre, egŭi, *to want, need.*

Compos. *indigēre.*

Emineo, ēre, eminŭi, *to project, rise aloft.*

Floreo, ēre, florŭi, *to bloom, flourish.*

Frondeo, ēre, frondŭi (*and* effrondŭi), *to have leaves.*

Horreo, ēre, horrŭi, *to shiver, shudder.*

So *abhorrēre* and a number of inchoatives.

Langueo, ēre, langŭi, *to languish.*

Lăteo, ēre, lătŭi, *to be concealed, to be hid.*

Compos. *interlatēre, perlatēre*, and *sublatēre.*

Mădeo, ēre, mădŭi, *to be wet.*

Nĭteo, ēre, nĭtŭi, *to shine.*

Compos. *enitēre, internitēre*, and *praenitēre.*

Oleo, ēre, olŭi, *to smell.*
Compos. *obŏlēre*, *redŏlēre*, and *subŏlēre.*

Palleo, ēre, pallŭi, *to be pale.*

Păteo, ēre, patŭi, *to stand open.*

Rĭgeo, ēre, rigŭi, *to be stiff.*

Rŭbeo, ēre, rubŭi, *to be red.*

Sĭleo, ēre, silŭi, *to be silent.*

Sorbeo, ēre, sorbui, *to sip.*
The perfect *sorpsi* rarely occurs. Compos. are *absorbēre* and *exsorbēre.*

Sordeo, ēre, sordŭi, *to be filthy.*

Splendeo, ēre, splendŭi, *to shine.*

Stŭdeo, ēre, studŭi, *to strive.*

Stŭpeo, ēre, stupŭi, *to be astonished, amazed.*

Tĭmeo, ēre, timŭi, *to be afraid.*

Torpeo, ēre, torpŭi, *to be torpid.*

Tŭmeo, ēre, tumŭi, *to be tumid, to swell.*

Vĭgeo, ēre, vigŭi, *to be lively, strong.*

Vĭreo, ēre, virŭi, *to be green.*

Remark. — Besides the verbs here enumerated, there are a number of others, derived from adjectives. But these occur more rarely in the form here presented, and are generally inchoatives. Cf. *F.*

2. The verbs of the second conjugation which form the perfect and supine after the analogy of the third, are as follows: —

a) Those which have *i* in the perfect and *sum* in the supine.

Mordeo, ēre, momordi, morsum, *to bite.*

Pendeo, ēre, pependi, pensum, *to hang.*
The compos. *dependeo* and *impendeo* lose the reduplication: *dependi*, *impendi.*

Prandeo, ēre, prandi, pransum, *to dine.*
The participle *pransus* has an active sense, "having dined."

Sĕdeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *to sit.*
So the compos. *assidēre*, *circumsedēre* or *circumsidēre*, *desidēre*, *insidēre*, *obsidēre*, *possidēre*, and *supersedēre.* But *dissidēre* and *praesidēre* want the supine.

Strĭdeo, ēre, strĭdi, ——, *to hiss.*
This verb wants the supine. In poetry the infinitive is often *stridĕre.*

Spondeo, ēre, spopondi, sponsum, *to vow, promise.*
Compounds drop the reduplication; as, *despondeo*, *desponsi*; *respondeo*, *responsi.*

Tondeo, ēre, totondi, tonsum, *to shave.*
Compounds without reduplication are *attondeo*, *attondi*; *detondeo*, *detondi.*

Vĭdeo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *to see.*
So the compos. *invidēre*, *pervidēre*, *praevidēre*, and *providēre.*

b) Those which have *si* in the perfect and *sum* in the supine.

Ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, *to be on fire, to burn.*

Denseo, ēre, densi, densus (*adjective*), *to thicken.*

Haereo, ēre, haesi, haesum, *to adhere, stick.*
Compos. are *adhaerēre*, *cohaerēre*, *inhaerēre.*

Jubeo, ēre, jussi, jussum, *to command, bid.*

Maneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to remain.*
Compos. *permanēre*, *remanēre.*

Mulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, *to soothe, caress.*
Compos. *demulcēre* and *permulcēre.* The participle *permulctus* for *permulsus* is doubtful.

Mulgeo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, *to milk.*
Comp. part. *emulsus.*

Rideo, ēre, rīsi, rīsum, *to laugh.*
Compos. *arridēre*, *deridēre*, *irridēre*, *subridēre.*

Suadeo, ēre, suāsi, suāsum, *to advise.*
Compos. *dissuadēre*, *persuadēre.*

Tergeo, ēre, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.*
This verb is even more frequently of the third conj., *tergo, ĕre, si, sum.* But the compos. *abstergēre, detergēre, extergēre*, are more commonly of the second.

c) Those which have *si* or *xi* in the perfect, and *tum* in the supine, or supine wanting.

Augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, *to increase.*
Frigeo, ēre, frixi, ——, *to be cold.*
Indulgeo, ēre, indulsi, indultum, *to indulge.*
Lūceo, ēre, luxi, ——, *to shine.*
Lūgeo, ēre, luxi, ——, *to mourn.*
Torqueo, ēre, torsi, tortum, *to turn, twist.*
Compos. *contorquēre, distorquēre, extorquēre.*

d) Those which have *si* in the perfect, but no supine.

Algeo, ēre, alsi, *to be cold.*
The supine is wanting, but an adjective *alsus, a, um*, cool, cold, exists.
Fulgeo, ēre (*in poetry also* fulgĕre), fulsi, *to glitter.*
Turgeo, ēre, tursi (*rarely*), *to swell.*
Urgeo (urgueo), ēre, ursi, *to urge, impel.*

3. Those which have neither perfect nor supine.

Aveo, ēre, *to desire.* (Cf. p. 672.)
Calveo, ēre, *to be bald.*
Căneo, ēre, *to be gray.*
Cieo, cīēre, *to move, rouse.*
An obsolete form of this verb is *cio, cīre.* Both have the common perfect *civi*, supine *citum* (from *cieo*) and *citum* (from *cio*). Compos. are *concieo, excieo, incieo, percieo.* Participles in use are *concītus, excītus*, moved, excited; but *excītus*, called out. So *incītus* and *percītus* in the sense of "to move"; but *accīre*, to call, has only *accītus.* From *citum* the frequentative *citāre*, and the compos. *excitāre, incitāre*, and *suscitāre.*
Flāveo, ēre, *to be yellow.*
Foeteo, ēre, *to stink.*
Hĕbeo, ēre, *to be dull.*
Hūmeo, ēre, *to be moist.*
Līveo, ēre, *to be livid.*
Mīneo, ēre, *to hang over.*
Compos. *imminēre, prominēre.*
Moereo, ēre, *to mourn, to be sad.*
Polleo, ēre, *to have power.*
Renīdeo, ēre, *to shine*; *to smile.*
Scăteo, ēre (*sometimes* scatĕre), *to swarm with.*
Squāleo, ēre, *to be filthy.*
Vĕgeo, ēre, *to be active.*

4. The following semideponentia. (Cf. page 161, Rem. 4.)

Audeo, ēre, ausus sum, *to dare, venture.*
An obsolete perfect is *ausi*, from which the future subjunctive *ausim, ausis, ausit, ausint.* The poets use the participle *ausus* and *inausus* in a passive sense.
Gaudeo, ēre, gavisus sum (*Part. Fut.* gavisūrus), *to rejoice.*
Soleo, ēre, solĭtus sum, *to be accustomed.*
Compos. impers. *assŏlet.*

III. Third Conjugation.

The verbs of the third conjugation exhibit the greatest diversity in the formation of their perfect and supine. The regular formation of the perfect has already been explained on page 237, Rem. 3, notes † and ‡, and that of the supine on page 246, Rem. 3. For the sake of clearness on this point, we will here enumerate the different classes of regular verbs, arranged according to the termination of their first root,

and then add to each class the verbs which deviate from the established rule.

1. Verbs which have a vowel or a *v* before the final *o* of the present, form their perfect in *i* and the supine in *tum*. E. g.

Acuo, ĕre, acŭi, acūtum, *to sharpen.*
Compos. *exacuĕre*, *peracuĕre*, and *praeacuĕre.*

Arguo, ĕre, argŭi, argūtum, *to accuse.*
Compos. *coarguĕre*, *redarguĕre.* The perf. part. is commonly *convictus.*

Congruo, ĕre, congrŭi, ——, *to agree.*
Supine wanting. So also *ingruĕre* (primitive root not in use).

Imbuo, ĕre, imbŭi, imbūtum, *to dip, steep.*

Induo, ĕre, indŭi, indūtum, *to put on.*
So also *exuĕre.*

Luo, ĕre, lŭi, lūtum (luitūrus), *to pay, atone for.*
From another *lŭo*, I wash, are derived the compos. *abluĕre*, *eluĕre*, *diluĕre*, and *polluĕre*, all of which have a supine in *lūtum.*

Metuo, ĕre, metŭi, ——, *to fear.*
The supine *metūtum* rarely occurs.

Minuo, ĕre, minŭi, minūtum, *to diminish.*
Compos. *comminuĕre*, *deminuĕre*, *diminuĕre*, and *inminuĕre.*

(Nuo, *to beckon*, is not used.)
Compos. *abnŭo*, *ĕre*, *abnŭi*, *abnutūrus*, to deny, refuse. Others are *annuĕre*, *innuĕre*, and *renuĕre*, all without supine.

Pluo, ĕre, plŭi, *generally impersonal* pluit, *it rains.*
Compos. *compluĕre*, *impluĕre*, and *perpluĕre*, commonly likewise impersonal and without supine.

Ruo, ĕre, rŭi, ruitūrus, *to fall.*
Compos. have supine in *rūtum*; as, *diruĕre*, *obruĕre*, and *proruĕre.* But *corruĕre* and *irruĕre* want the supine.

Solvo, ĕre, solvi, solūtum, *to loosen, untie.*
Compos. *absolvĕre*, *dissolvĕre*, *exsolvĕre*, *persolvĕre.*

Spuo, ĕre, spŭi, spūtum, *to spit.*
Compos. *conspuĕre* and *despuĕre.*

Statuo, ĕre, statŭi, statūtum, *to place, establish.*
Compos. *constituĕre*, *destituĕre*, *instituĕre*, *restituĕre*, and *substituĕre.*

Sternuo, ĕre, sternŭi, ——, *to sneeze.*
From this the frequentative *sternutāre.*

Suo, ĕre, sŭi, sūtum, *to sew.*
Compos. *consuĕre*, *dissuĕre*, and *resuĕre.*

Tribuo, ĕre, tribŭi, tribūtum, *to bestow, impart.*
Compos. *attribuĕre*, *contribuĕre*, and *distribuĕre.*

Volvo, ĕre, volvi, volūtum, *to roll.*
Compos. *evolvĕre*, *involvĕre*, and *pervolvĕre.* Frequentative *volutāre.*

Irregular verbs of this class are, —

Căpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, captum, *to take.*
So *antecapĕre.* But other compounds change *ă* into *i*, and the supine *a* into *e*; as, *accipĕre*, *excipĕre*, *decipĕre*, *percipĕre*, *praecipĕre*, *recipĕre*, *suscipĕre*, all of which have *ceptum* in the supine.

Cŭpĭo, ĕre, cupīvi, cupītum, *to desire.*
An imperf. subj. *cupĕret* occurs. Compos. *discupĕre* and *percupĕre.*

Făcĭo, ĕre, fēci, factum, *to do, make.*
So *arefacĕre*, *calefacĕre*, *consuefacĕre*, *frigefacĕre*, *labefacĕre*, *patefacĕre*, *satisfacĕre*, and *tepefacĕre*, all of which have *fio*, *fiĕri*, *factus sum* in the passive. Other compounds change *a* into *i*, and have a passive in *icior*, supine in *ectum*; as, *afficio*, *afficior*, *affectum.* So also *conficĕre*, *deficĕre*, *interficĕre*, *officĕre*, *perficĕre*, *proficĕre*, and *reficĕre.*

Fluo, ĕre, fluxi, fluxum, *to flow.*
Compos. *affluĕre*, *confluĕre*, *effluĕre*, *interfluĕre.*

Fŏdio, ĕre, fōdi, fossum, *to dig.*
Compos. *confodĕre*, *effodĕre*, *perfodĕre*, *suffodĕre.*

Fŭgio, ĕre, fūgi, fugĭtum, *to flee.*
Compos. *aufugĕre, confugĕre, effugĕre,* and *perfugĕre.*

Jăcio, ĕre, jēci, jactum, *to throw.*
So *superjacĕre,* which however has also *superjectum.* Other compounds change *a* into *i,* and in the supine into *e;* as, *abjicio, abjēci, abjectum.* So also *adjicĕre, dejicĕre, ejicĕre, injicĕre, objicĕre, rejicĕre, transjicĕre,* or *trajicĕre.*

(Lacio, *frequentat.* lactāre, *I allure,* obsolete.)
Compos. in use are *allicio, ĕre, allexi, allectum,* to allure; and so *illicĕre* and *pellicĕre.* But *elicio* has *elicui, elicĭtum.*

Pārio, ĕre, pepĕri, partum (*but* paritūrus), *to bring forth.*
An infinitive *parīri* instead of *părī* occurs.

Quătio, ĕre, ——, quassum, *to shake.*
Compos. *concutio, ĕre, cussi, cussum.* So *discutio, excutio, incutio, percutio, reperculio.*

Răpio, ĕre, rapŭi, raptum, *to seize, rob.*
Compos. *arripio, arripŭi, arreptum.* So *abripĕre, deripĕre, eripĕre, surripĕre.*

Săpio, ĕre, sapīvi *and* sapŭi, ——, *to taste; to be wise.*
So *resipĕre,* to smell after. But *desipĕre* has no perfect.

Spĕcio, ĕre, spexi, spectum, *to see.*
Compos. *aspicio, spexi, spectum.* So also *conspicĕre, despicĕre, dispicĕre, inspicĕre, perspicĕre, respicĕre,* and *suspicĕre.*

Strŭo, ĕre, struxi, structum, *to build.*
So *construĕre, exstruĕre, destruĕre,* and *instruĕre.*

Vīvo, ĕre, vixi, victum, *to live.*

2. Verbs ending in *bo* or *po* form their perfect in *psi* and the supine in *ptum.* E. g.

Carpo, ĕre, carpsi, carptum, *to pluck.*
Compos. *concerpo, concerpsi, concerptum.* So *decerpĕre* and *discerpĕre.*

Glūbo, ĕre, glupsi, gluptum, *to peel.*

Nūbo, ĕre, nupsi, nuptum, *to veil, to marry.*
Compos. *obnūbĕre.*

Rēpo, ĕre, repsi, reptum, *to creep.*
Compos. *adrepĕre, irrepĕre, obrepĕre, prorepĕre,* and *subrepĕre.*

Scalpo, ĕre, scalpsi, scalptum, *to carve, engrave.*

Scribo, ĕre, scripsi, scriptum, *to write.*
So the compos. *adscribĕre, describĕre, inscribĕre,* and *praescribĕre.*

Sculpo, ĕre, sculpsi, sculptum, *to cut, sculpture.*
Compos. *exsculpĕre* and *insculpĕre.*

Serpo, ĕre, serpsi, serptum, *to creep.*
So *inserpĕre, proserpĕre.*

Irregular verbs of this class are,—

Accumbo, ĕre, cubŭi, cubĭtum, *to recline.*
So all the compounds of *cubāre,* which assume an *m;* as, *discumbĕre, incumbĕre, occumbĕre, procumbĕre,* and *succumbĕre.*

Bibo, ĕre, bibi, bibĭtum, *to drink.*
Compos. *ebibĕre, imbibĕre.*

Lambo, ĕre, lambi, lambĭtum, *to lick.*

Rumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, *to burst, break.*
Compos. *abrumpĕre, corrumpĕre, erumpĕre, interrumpĕre, irrumpĕre, perrumpĕre, prorumpĕre.*

Scăbo, ĕre, scabi, ——, *to scratch, rub.*

Strĕpo, ĕre, strepŭi, strepĭtum, *to rumble, rattle.*

3. Verbs ending in *do* or *to* form their perfect in *si* and the supine in *sum.* E. g.

Claudo, ĕre, clausi, clausum, *to shut.*
The compos. are derived from another form, *clūdo;* as, *concludĕre, excludĕre, includĕre, secludĕre.*

Divīdo, ĕre, divīsi, divīsum, *to divide.*

Laedo, ĕre, laesi, laesum, *to hurt, injure.*
Compos. *allidĕre, collidĕre, elidĕre, illidĕre.*

Lūdo, ĕre, lūsi, lūsum, *to play.*
Compos. *alludĕre, colludĕre, deludĕre, eludĕre,* and *illudĕre.*

Plaudo, ĕre, plausi, plausum, *to clap, beat.*
So *applaudĕre.* The remaining compos. have *ōlo, ōsi, ōsum;* as, *complodĕre, explodĕre, supplodĕre.*

Rādo, ĕre, rāsi, rāsum, *to scrape.*
So *abradĕre, circumradĕre, corradĕre, deradĕre,* and *eradĕre.*

Rōdo, ĕre, rōsi, rōsum, *to gnaw.*
Compos. *abrodĕre, arrodĕre, circumrodĕre, derodĕre,* and *perrodĕre.*

Trūdo, ĕre, trūsi, trūsum, *to push.*
Compos. *detrudĕre, extrudĕre, protrudĕre.*

Vādo, ĕre, ——, ——, *to go, walk.*
Perfect and supine wanting. But *evādo, evāsi, evāsum.* So also *invadĕre* and *pervadĕre.*

The irregular verbs of this class are, —

a) Those which form their perfect in *di* and the supine in *sum.* E. g.

Accendo, ĕre, accendi, accensum, *to set on fire.*
So *incendĕre* and *succendĕre.*

Cūdo, ĕre, cūdi, cūsum, *to pound, forge.*
Compos. *excudĕre, procudĕre.*

Defendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to defend.*

Edo, ĕre, ēdi, ēsum, *to eat.*
So *exedĕre* and *comedĕre, ēdi, ēsum* (but also *comestus*).

Fundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum, *to pour.*
Compos. are *affundĕre, confundĕre, diffundĕre, effundĕre, infundĕre, offundĕre,* and *profundĕre.*

Mando, ĕre, mansi, (*rarely*) mansum, *to chew, masticate.*

Offendo, ĕre, di, sum, *to offend.*

Prehendo (prendo), ĕre, di, sum, *to lay hold of.*
Compos. *apprehendĕre, comprehendĕre, deprehendĕre,* and *reprehendĕre.*

Scando, ĕre, di, sum, *to climb.*
So *ascendĕre, conscendĕre, descendĕre, inscendĕre.*

Strīdo (*also* strīdeo), ĕre, strīdi, ——, *to creak, grate.*

b) Those which have reduplicated perfect. E. g.

Cădo, ĕre, cecĭdi, cāsum, *to fall.*
Compos. *incido, incīdi, incāsum.* So *occidĕre* and *recidĕre.* But the remaining compos. want the supine; as, *accĭdi, concido, decido,* and *excido.*

Caedo, ĕre, cecidi, caesum, *to cut.*
Compos. *abscido, abscīdi, abscīsum.* So *concidĕre, decidĕre, excidĕre, incidĕre, occidĕre, praecidĕre,* &c.

Condo, ĕre, condĭdi, conditum, *to construct.*
So the remaining compos. of *dăre,* except those mentioned on page 673; as, *abdĕre, addĕre, dedĕre, edĕre, perdĕre, reddĕre, tradĕre,* and *vendĕre.* But *abscondĕre* has generally perf. *abscondi* instead of *abscondĭdi;* and instead of the passive *vendi,* it is common to say *venire.*

Crēdo, ĕre, crēdidi, crēditum, *to believe.*
So *accrēdĕre, accredĭdi.*

Pēdo, ĕre, pĕpēdi, peditum, *to break wind.*

Pendo, ĕre, pependi, pensum, *to weigh.*
Compos. *appendo, appendi, appensum.* So likewise without reduplication *dependĕre, expendĕre, impendĕre, perpendĕre, suspendĕre.*

Tendo, ĕre, tĕtendi, tensum *or* tentum, *to stretch.*
Compos. *extendo, extendi, extensum* and *extentum;* and so with both supines *detendĕre, ostendĕre, protendĕre,* and *retendĕre.* The rest have supine in *tum* only; as, *attendĕre, contendĕre,*

distendĕre, intendĕre, obtendĕre, praetendĕre, and *subtendĕre.* (But more commonly *extentum, protentum,* and vice versa *ostensum.*)

Tundo, ĕre, tŭtŭdi, tunsum *and* tūsum, *to beat, strike.*

Compos. have only *tūsum,* and no reduplication; as, *contundo, contŭdi, contūsum.* So *extundĕre, obtundĕre,* and *retundĕre.*

c) Those which have *ss* in the supine, or are otherwise irregular.

Cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *to give place, to retire.*

So the compos. *abscēdo, accēdo, antecēdo, concēdo, decēdo, discēdo, excēdo, incēdo, intercēdo, recēdo,* and *succēdo.*

Fīdo, ĕre, fisus sum, *to trust.*

So *confīdĕre, diffīdĕre;* but these have sometimes perf. *confīdi, diffīdi,* instead of *confisus sum,* &c.

Findo, ĕre, fĭdi, fissum, *to cleave, split.*

So *diffindĕre, diffĭdi.*

Frendo, ĕre, ——, fressum *and* frēsum, *to crush, grind.*

Instead of this also *frendĕre, frendŭi.*

Mĕto, ĕre, messŭi, messum, *to reap.*

Compos. *demetĕre.* Instead of *messui* and *demessui* more commonly *messem fēci.*

Mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send.*

So the compos. *admitto, amitto, committo, demitto, dimitto, emitto, immitto, omitto, permitto, praetermitto, promitto, remitto,* and *submitto.*

Pando, ĕre, pandi, passum (*more rarely* pansum), *to lay open, set open.*

Expandĕre has *expansum* and *expassum;* but *dispandĕre,* only *dispansum.*

Pĕto, ĕre, petīvi *or* petĭi, petītum, *to ask.*

Compos. are *appĕto, compĕto, expĕto, oppĕto,* and *repĕto.*

Scindo, ĕre, scĭdi, scissum, *to split, to tear.*

Compos. *conscindo, conscĭdi, conscissum.* So also *discindĕre, interscindĕre, perscindĕre, proscindĕre,* and *rescindĕre.* But *abscindo* has only *abscindĕre, abscĭdi,* and *exscindo* only *exscindĕre.*

Sīdo, ĕre, sĭdi *or* sēdi, sessum, *to take a seat, sit down.*

Perfect and supine commonly from *sĕdĕre.* Compos. *consīdo, conscĭdi, consessum.* So *assīdĕre, desīdĕre, insīdĕre, resīdĕre,* and *subsīdĕre.*

Sisto, ĕre, stĭti (*obsolete*), stătum, *to put, set.*

But *sisto* in the sense of "to stand still" has *stĕti, stātum.* The compos. are all intransitive and have *stĭti, stitum;* as, *consisto, constĭti, constĭtum.* So *adsisto, desisto, existo, insisto, obsisto, persisto,* and *resisto. Circumsto* has either *circumstĕti* or *circumstĭti.*

Sterto, ĕre, stertŭi (*obsolete* sterti), ——, *to snore, snort.*

Verto, ĕre, ti, sum, *to turn.*

So the compos. *adverto, animadverto, averto, converto, everto, perverto,* and *subverto.* — *Divertĕre, praevertĕre,* and *revertĕre* are more frequently deponents in the present and imperfect.

4. Verbs ending in *go, co, cto, quo,* and *guo* form their perfect in *xi* and the supine in *ctum.* E. g.

Cingo, ĕre, cinxi, cinctum, *to gird, surround.*

Compos. *accingĕre* and *discingĕre.*

Cŏquo, ĕre, coxi, coctum, *to cook.*

So *concoquĕre* and *decoquĕre.*

Dico, ĕre, dixi, dictum, *to say.*

So the compos. *addico, contradico, edico, indico, interdico,* and *praedico.*

Dūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *to lead, conduct.*

So the compos. *abdūcĕre, addūcĕre, circumdūcĕre, condūcĕre,* and a number of others.

Fligo, ĕre, flixi, flictum, *to strike* (obsolete).

Compos. *affligĕre, confligĕre, infligĕre.* But *profligāre* is of the first conjugation.

Frigo, ĕre, frixi, frictum (*rarely* frixum), *to roast.*

Jungo, ĕre, junxi, junctum, *to join together.*
So compos. *adjungo, conjungo, disjungo, sejungo,* and *subjungo.*

Lingo, ĕre, linxi, linctum, *to lick.*

Mungo, ĕre, munxi, munctum, *to blow the nose.*
Compos. *emungĕre.*

Plango, ĕre, planxi, planctum, *to strike; to lament.*

Rĕgo, ĕre, rexi, rectum, *to guide, direct.*
Compos. *arrigĕre, corrigĕre, dirigĕre, erigĕre, porrigĕre.* To these add *pergo* (for *perrigo*), *perrexi, perrectum,* and *surgo* (for *surrigo*), *surrexi, surrectum.* Compos. of *surgo* are *assurgo, consurgo, exsurgo,* and *insurgo.*

Stinguo, ĕre, ——, ——, *to extinguish* (rarely used).
Compos. in use are *extinguo* and *restinguo,* which have regularly *inxi, inctum.* So also *distinguo* and *instinguo,* but from another root.

Sūgo, ĕre, suxi, suctum, *to suck.*

Tĕgo, ĕre, texi, tectum, *to cover.*
Compos. *contegĕre, detegĕre, obtegĕre, protegĕre,* and *retegĕre.*

Tingo (tinguo), ĕre, xi, ctum, *to dip in, moisten.*

Trăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, *to draw.*
So compos. *attrăho, contrăho, detrăho, extrăho, pertrăho, protrăho, retrăho,* and *subtrăho.*

Ungo (*or* unguo), ĕre, unxi, unctum, *to anoint.*
Compos. *perungĕre* and *inungĕre.*

Vĕho, ĕre, vexi, vectum (*frequent.* vecto), *to carry, convey.*
So *advehĕre, invehĕre.* — The passive is *vĕhor, vĕhi, vectus sum,* to drive, ride. So *circumvĕhor, invĕhor, praetervĕhor.*

The irregular verbs of this class are, —

a) Those which reject the *n* before *ctum* in the supine, or assume *xum.*

Ango, ĕre, anxi, ——, *to choke.* (Supine wanting.)

Clango, ĕre, ——, ——, *to sound.*

Figo, ĕre, fixi, fixum, *to fix* or *fasten in.*
So *affigĕre, transfigĕre.*

Fingo, ĕre, finxi, fictum, *to form, fashion.*
Compos. *affingĕre, confingĕre, effingĕre,* and *refingĕre.*

Flecto, ĕre, flexi, flexum, *to bend.*
Compos. *inflectĕre.*

Mingo (*or* mejo), ĕre, minxi, mictum, *to make water.*

Necto, ĕre, nexi *or* nexŭi, nexum, *to tie, bind.*

Ningo, ĕre, ninxi, ——, *to snow* (*commonly impers.* ningit, *&c.*).

Pecto, ĕre, pexi, pexum, *to comb.*

Pingo, ĕre, pinxi, pictum, *to paint.*
Compos. *appingĕre, depingĕre,* and *expingĕre.*

Plecto, ĕre, ——, ——, (*commonly only passive* plector,) *to punish.*
Another *plecto,* to braid, is obsolete, but exists in the deponents *amplector* and *complector, plexus sum.*

Stringo, ĕre, strinxi, strictum, *to draw tight.*
Compos. *adstringĕre, constringĕre, distringĕre, obstringĕre,* and *perstringĕre.*

b) Those which do not change the characteristic consonant in the perfect.

Ăgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to drive; to do.*
Compos. *cōgo* (for *coăgo*), *cōēgi, coactum.* So also *abigĕre, adigĕre, exigĕre, perăgĕre, redigĕre, subigĕre,* and *transigĕre.* — *Prodigĕre* wants the supine; *ambigĕre* and *satagĕre* have neither perfect nor supine.

Dĕgo, ĕre, dēgi, ——, *to pass, spend* (vitam, *life, &c.*).

Frango, ĕre, frēgi, fractum, *to break.*
Compos. *confringĕre, effringĕre, perfringĕre,* and *refringĕre.*

Ico (*or* icio), ĕre, īci, ictum, to *strike; to make* (*e. g.* foedus, *a treaty*).

Lĕgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *to read.*
So compos. *perlegĕre, praelegĕre,* and with *i* in the root *colligĕre, deligĕ-*

re, *eligĕre*, and *seligĕre*. But *dĭligo*, *intelligo*, and *neglĭgo* have *lexi* in the perfect.

Linquo, ĕre, līqui, ——, *to leave.* (Poetical.)
Compos. *relinquo*, *reliqui*, *relictum*. So also *delinquĕre* and *derelinquĕre*.

Vinco, ĕre, vīci, victum, *to conquer, vanquish.*
Compos. *convincĕre*, *devincĕre*, and *evincĕre*.

c) Those which reduplicate in the perfect.

Pango, ĕre, pepĭgi, pactum, *to make a compact.*
But *pango*, I set or fix in, has *panxi* or *pĕgi*, *panctum*. The compos. *compingo*, *impingo* have *pĕgi*, *pactum*. So also *oppango*, *oppĕgi*. But *depango* and *repango* have no perfect.

Parco, ĕre, peperci, parsum, *to spare, save.*
The perfect *parsi* is obsolete, and the supine *parcitum* uncertain. Compos. *comparcĕre*.

Pungo, ĕre, pupŭgi, punctum, *to stab.*
Compos. *compungo*, *punxi*, *punctum*. So *dispungĕre* and *interpungĕre*.

Tango, ĕre, tetĭgi, tactum, *to touch.*
Compos. *attingo*, *attĭgi*, *attactum*. So *contingo*, *contĭgi*, and the impersonals *contingit*, *contĭgit*; *obtingit*, *obtĭgit*.

d) Those which form their perfect in *si* and the supine in *sum*.

Mergo, ĕre, mersi, mersum, *to immerse, dip.*
So *demergĕre*, *emergĕre*, *immergĕre*, *submergĕre*.

Spargo, ĕre, sparsi, sparsum, *to scatter.*
Compos. *adspergĕre*, *conspergĕre*, *expergĕre*, and *respergĕre*, all with *spersi*, *spersum*.

Tergo, ĕre, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.*
But also *tergeo*, *ēre* (compare p. 677).

Vergo, ĕre, ——, ——, *to incline* or *turn.*

5. Verbs ending in *lo*, *mo*, *no*, and *ro* are mostly irregular.

The following in *mo* may be regarded as regular:—

Cōmo, ĕre, compsi, comptum, *to adorn.*

Dēmo, ĕre, dempsi, demptum, *to take away.*

Prōmo, ĕre, prompsi, promptum, *to take out, to draw.*
So compos. *deprōmĕre*, *exprōmĕre*.

Sūmo, ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, *to take.*
Compos. *absūmĕre*, *adsūmĕre*, *consūmĕre*, *desūmĕre*.

Temno, ĕre, ——, ——, *to despise.* (Poetical.)
Compos. *contemnĕre*, *contempsi*, *contemptum*.

The irregular verbs of this class are,—

a) Those which have *vi* in the perfect.

Cerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, *to sift.*
In the sense of "to see," the perfect and supine do not occur. Compos. *decerno*, *decrēvi*, *decrētum*; and so *discernĕre*, *excernĕre*, and *secernĕre*.

Lino, ĕre, lēvi (*or* līvi), lĭtum, *to smear on, daub on.*
So compos. *collino*, *illino*, *oblino* (part. *oblĭtus*), and *perlino*. Other compos. are of the fourth conj., as *allīnĕre*, *circumlinĕre*, and *illinĕre*.

Sĕro, ĕre, sēvi, sătum, *to sow.*
But *sero*, I join, connect, has *serŭi*, *sertum*. The compos. *consĕro* and *insĕro* have either *sēvi*, *sĭtum* or *serŭi*, *sertum*, according to the sense. *Desĕro*, *dissĕro*, and *exsĕro* have *serŭi*, *sertum* only.

Sino, ĕre, sīvi, sĭtum, *to allow, permit.*
From this perhaps also *situs*, situate. Compos. *desino*, *desĭi*, *desĭtum*. Instead of perf. also *desĭtus est*.

Sperno, ĕre, sprēvi, sprētum, *to disdain.*

Sterno, ĕre, strāvi, strātum, *to prostrate.*

So compos. *consterno*, *insterno*, and *prosterno*.

Tĕro, ĕre, trīvi, trītum, *to rub*.

So *conterĕre*. But *attĕro* has either *attrīvi* or *atterŭi*.

b) Those which reduplicate in the perfect.

Căno, ĕre, cecĭni, cantum, *to sing, sound*.

Compos. *succino*, *succinŭi*, *succentum*. So also *occino* or *occăno*. But *accino*, *intercino*, and *recino* (or *recăno*) want the perf. and supine.

Curro, ĕre, cucurri, cursum, *to run*.

The compos. *accurro*, *decurro*, *excurro*, *incurro*, *percurro*, and *praecurro* have more frequently *curri* than *cucurri* in the perfect.

Fallo, ĕre, fefellī, falsum, *to deceive*.

Compos. *refello*, *refelli* without supine.

Pello, ĕre, pepŭli, pulsum, *to drive away*.

Compos. *appello*, *appŭli*, *appulsum*. So the rest, *compello*, *depello*, *expello*, *impello*, *perpello*, *propello*, and *repello*.

c) Those which follow the analogy of the second conjugation.

Alo, ĕre, alŭi, alĭtum *or* altum, *to nourish*.

Altus in Cicero and Sallust, *altus* in later writers.

Cello (*not in use*), *but*

Compos. *antecello*, *excello*, and *praecello*, I excel, perf. *cellŭi*, supine wanting. But *percello*, *percŭli*, *perculsum*, to strike down.

Cŏlo, ĕre, colŭi, cultum, *to cultivate*.

So *excolĕre*, *incolĕre*, and *percolĕre*.

Consŭlo, ĕre, ŭi, ultum, *to consult*.

Gĕmo, ĕre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to sigh, groan*.

Compos. *congĕmo* or *congemisco*, *ingĕmo* or *ingemisco*, perf. *ŭi*, supine wanting.

Gigno, ĕre, genŭi, genĭtum, *to beget, produce*.

Perf. and supine from the obsolete *geno*. So *ingignĕre* and *progignĕre*.

Mŏlo, ĕre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to grind* (*in a mill*).

Occŭlo, ĕre, ŭi, ultum, *to conceal, hide*.

Pōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to lay, place*.

Obsolete perf. *posivi*. Compos. *antepōno*, *appōno*, *compōno*, *depōno*, *dispōno*, *expōno*, *oppōno*, *praepōno*, *postpōno*, and *sepōno*.

Trĕmo, ĕre, ŭi, ——, *to tremble*.

Compos. *contremĕre*.

Vŏmo, ĕre, ŭi, ĭtum, *to vomit*.

Compos. *evomĕre*, *revomĕre*.

d) Those which are otherwise irregular in the perfect and supine.

Ĕmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, *to buy*.

Compos. *adĭmo*, *adēmi*, *ademtum*. So *cŏĕmĕre*, *dirimĕre*, *eximĕre*, *interimĕre*, *perimĕre*, and *redimĕre*.

Fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear, carry*. (Cf. page 669.)

(Fŭro), fŭrĕre, ——, ——, *to rage*.

Perf. and supine wanting. So also first person singular. For the perf. commonly *insanīvi*.

Gĕro, ĕre, gessi, gestum, *to carry, bear; perform*.

Compos. *congĕrĕre*, *digerĕre*, and *ingerĕre*.

Prĕmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, *to press*.

Compos. *comprimĕre*, *deprimĕre*, *exprimĕre*, *opprimĕre*, and *supprimĕre*.

Psallo, ĕre, psalli, ——, *to play on a stringed instrument*.

Quaero, ĕre, quaesīvi, quaesītum, *to inquire, to seek*.

So compos. *acquiro*, *conquīro*, *exquiro*, *inquīro*, *perquīro*, and *requiro*.

Ūro, ĕre, ussi, ustum, *to burn*.

So *adūrĕre*, *comburĕre*, *exurĕre*, and *inurĕre*.

Vello, ĕre, velli *or* vulsi, vulsum, *to pluck, pick.*
So *avello, evello,* and *revello.* But *convello* and *divello* have only *velli* in the perfect.

Verro, ĕre, verri, versum, *to sweep.*
Compos. *everrĕre.*

6. Verbs in *so* and *xo* are, —

Depso, ĕre, depsŭi, depsĭtum *and* depstum, *to knead.*
Pinso, ĕre, pinsŭi *or* pinsi, pinsĭtum *or* pistum, *to pound, grind.*
Texo, ĕre, texŭi, textum, *to weave.*
Compos. are *attexo, contexo, obtexo, pertexo, praetexo,* and *retexo.*

Viso, ĕre, vīsi, ——, *to go to see, to visit.*
A supine *visum* is borrowed from *vidĕre.*

Some of this class follow the analogy of the fourth conjugation: —

Arcesso (*or* accerso), ĕre, arcessīvi, arcessītum, *to send for.*
Capesso, ĕre, capessīvi, capessītum, *to take up, lay hold of.*
Facesso, ĕre, facessīvi, facessītum, *to perform, accomplish.*
Incesso, ĕre, incessīvi (*or* incessi), ——, *to attack, assail.*
Lacesso, ĕre, lacessīvi (*or* lī), lacessītum, *to provoke.*

7. Verbs in *sco* form their perfect and supine as follows: —

Compesco, ĕre, compescŭi, *to curb, restrain.*
Cresco, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, *to grow.*
So the compos. *concresco, decresco,* and *excresco.* But *accresco, incresco,* and *succresco* want the supine.
Disco, ĕre, didĭci, (discĭtūrus), *to learn.*
Compos. *addisco, addidĭci.* So also *ediscĕre* and *dediscĕre.*
Dispesco, ĕre, dispescŭi, ——, *to divide, separate.*
Glisco, ĕre, ——, ——, *to begin, spread.*
Hisco, ĕre, ——, ——, *to yawn; to mutter.*
Nosco (gnosco), ĕre, nōvi, nōtum, *to become acquainted with.*
So *ignosco* and *dignosco.* But *agnosco, cognosco,* and *recognosco* have supine *agnĭtum, cognĭtum,* and *recognĭtum.*
Pasco, ĕre, pāvi, pastum, *to pasture, feed.*
Posco, ĕre, poposci, ——, *to demand, ask.*
So *deposco, exposco,* both with *poposci,* and *reposco* without perfect.
Quiesco, ĕre, quiēvi, quiētum, *to rest.*
Compos. *acquiescĕre, conquiescĕre,* and *requiescĕre.*
Suesco, ĕre, suēvi, suētum, *to accustom one's self.*
Part. *suētus,* accustomed. Compos. *consuesco, consuesco, desuesco,* and *insuesco.*

IV. Fourth Conjugation.

Regular verbs of this conjugation form their perfect in *īvi* or *ĭi,* and the supine in *ītum.* E. g.

Audĭo, audīre, audīvi *or* audĭi, audītum, *to hear.*
Erŭdĭo, erudīre, erudīvi *or* erudĭi, erudītum, *to instruct.*
Mūnĭo, munīre, munīvi *or* munĭi, munītum, *to fortify.*
Vestĭo, vestīre, vestīvi *or* vestĭi, vestītum, *to clothe.*

Irregular in one or both of the characteristic parts are the following: —

Amicio, īre, icŭi *or* ixi, ictum, *to clothe, put on.*
The perf. *amicŭi, amixi,* and *amicīvi* scarcely ever occurs.

Aperio, īre, aperŭi, apertum, *to open.*
So *operio* and *cooperio.* But *comperio* and *reperio* have *pĕri, pertum.*

Cio, īre, cīvi, cītum, *to move, excite.*
This is the old and regular form for *cieo, civi, citum,* on which see p. 677. 3.

Eo, īre, īvi, ĭtum, *to go.* (See page 669.)

Farcio, īre, farsi, fartum (farctum), *to stuff.*
Supine more rarely *farsum.* Compos. *confercio* and *refercio, fersi, fertum.* Others are *infercio* and *effercio.*

Ferio, īre, ——, ——, *to strike.*
In the perf. active *percussi,* and in the passive *ictus sum,* are commonly used.

Ferocio, īre, ——, ——, *to be insolent, wild.*

Fulcio, īre, fulsi, fultum, *to prop.*
The perfect of *fulcio* has the same form as that of *fulgeo.*

Haurio, īre, hausi, haustum, *to draw.*
Supine more rarely *hausum;* but frequently *haustūrus.*

Punio, īre, īvi *or* ĭi, ĭtum, *to punish.*
Regular, except that its passive forms sometimes occur in a deponent sense.

Quĕo, quīre, quīvi *or* quĭi, quĭtum, *to be able.* (Cf. page 670.)

Raucio, īre, rausi, rausum, *to be hoarse.*
Compos. *irraucio.*

Sălio, īre, salŭi *or* salĭi, saltum, *to spring, leap.*
Compos. *desilīre, exsilīre, insilīre,* &c., generally perf. *silŭi,* rather than *silĭi* or *silīvi.* But *salire,* to salt, is regular.

Sancio, īre, sanxi, sanctum *and* sancitum, *to ordain, appoint.*
Sanctus is generally participle, and *sanctus* adjective.

Sarcio, īre, sarsi, sartum, *to patch, mend.*
Compos. *resarcire.*

Sentio, īre, sensi, sensum, *to feel, think.*
So *consentīre, dissentīre,* and *praesentīre.* But instead of *assentio,* commonly *assentior* deponent.

Sepelio, īre, īvi, sepultum, *to bury.*

Sepio, īre, sepsi, septum, *to hedge in.*

Vĕnio, īre, vēni, ventum, *to come.*
Compos. *advenire, convenire, invenīre, obvenire,* and *pervenire.*

Vincio, īre, vinxi, vinctum, *to bind.*
So compos. *devincire.*

Remark. — Desiderative verbs in *ūrio* generally have neither perfect nor supine; as, *dormitūrio, īre,* I desire to sleep; *coenatūrio, īre,* I desire to dine. The only exceptions are *esŭrio, esurīvi, esurītūrus,* I am hungry; *nuptūrio, nupturīvi,* I wish to get married, and *partūrio, parturīvi,* I wish to bring forth.

E. DEPONENT VERBS.

I. Deponent verbs of the first conjugation are all regular, and conjugated like *hortor* (page 173, *A*). E. g.

Adversor, āri, ātus sum, *to oppose, resist.*
Arbitror, āri, ātus sum, *to suppose, think.*
Aspernor, āri, ātus sum, *to despise.*
Auxilior, āri, ātus sum, *to help.*
Calumnior, āri, ātus sum, *to calumniate.*
Crimĭnor, āri, ātus sum, *to accuse.*
Cunctor, āri, ātus sum, *to hesitate.*
Domĭnor, āri, ātus sum, *to rule.*
Epŭlor, āri, ātus sum, *to feast.*
Fenĕror, āri, ātus sum, *to lend on interest.*
Glorior, āri, ātus sum, *to boast.*
Hospĭtor, āri, ātus sum, *to be a guest.*

Imĭtor, āri, ātus sum, *to imitate.*
Jacŭlor, āri, ātus sum, *to throw.*
Licĭtor, āri, ātus sum, *to bid.*
Luctor, āri, ātus sum, *to struggle.*
Medĭcor, āri, ātus sum, *to heal.*
Modĕror, āri, ātus sum, *to moderate.*
Negotior, āri, ātus sum, *to do business.*
Odōror, āri, ātus sum, *to smell.*
Osculor, āri, ātus sum, *to kiss.*
Parasĭtor, āri, ātus sum, *to act the parasite.*
Philosophor, āri, ātus sum, *to philosophize.*
Proelior, āri, ātus sum, *to fight.*
Ratiocĭnor, āri, ātus sum, *to reason, compute.*
Rusticor, āri, ātus sum, *to rusticate.*
Sciscĭtor, āri, ātus sum, *to inquire into.*
Stipŭlor, āri, ātus sum, *to stipulate.*
Suspĭcor, āri, ātus sum, *to suspect.*
Testificor, āri, ātus sum, *to witness, attest.*
Tūtor, āri, ātus sum, *to protect.*
Urīnor, āri, ātus sum, *to dive.*
Vāgor, āri, ātus sum, *to ramble.*
Venĕror, āri, ātus sum, *to venerate.*
Vociferor, āri, ātus sum, *to vociferate.*

To the above might be added many others equally regular.

The following occur only in certain authors as deponent, and more commonly as active verbs: *communicor, commurmŭror, fluctuor, frutĭcor, lacrĭmor, luxurior, nictor,* and *velificor.*

Cicero employs *adŭlor, arbitror, criminor,* and *dignor* both as deponent and as passive verbs.

II. The deponent verbs of the second conjugation are, —

Fateor, ēri, fassus sum, *to confess.*
Compos. *confiteor, confessus sum; profiteor, professus sum.* But *diffiteor* wants the participle.

Liceor, ēri, licĭtus sum, *to offer a bid.*
So compos. *pollicĕri.*

Medeor, ēri, ——, *to heal.*
Participle commonly *medicātus* from *medicāri.*

Mereor, ēri, merĭtus sum, *to merit, earn.*
Compos. *commerĕri, demerĕri,* and *promerĕri.*

Misereor, ēri, miserĭtus or misertus sum, *to pity.*
Frequently impersonally *miseretur* or *miseret me.*

Reor, rēri, ratus sum, *to suppose.*

Tueor, ēri, tuĭtus sum, *to guard, protect.*
An obsolete form of this is *tuor* of the third conjugation, from which the adjective *tutus.* Compos. are *contuĕri* and *intuĕri.*

Vereor, ēri, verĭtus sum, *to fear.*
Compos. *reverĕri* and *subverĕri.*

III. The deponent verbs of the third conjugation are, —

Apiscor, apisci, aptus sum, *to gain, acquire.* (Obsolete.)
Compos. *adipiscor, adeptus sum,* and *indipiscor, indeptus sum,* with the same sense.

Divertor, *to turn aside;* praevertor, *to outstrip;* and revertor, *to return.*
The perfect of these verbs is derived from the active form *verto;* hence commonly *reverti, revertĕram,* &c., for *reversus sum.* The part. *reversus,* however, has an active sense, "having returned."

Expergiscor, expergisci, experrectus sum, *to awake.*
From this *expergefacere,* part. *expergefactus.* But the verb *expergĕre,* part. *expergītus,* is obsolete.

Fruor, frui, fruĭtus *or* fructus sum, *to enjoy.*
Compos. *perfruor, perfructus sum.*

Fungor, fungi, functus sum, *to perform.*
Compos. *defungi, perfungi.*

Grădior, grădi, gressus sum, *to step, walk.*
Compos. *aggredior, aggrĕdi, aggressus sum.* So also *congrĕdi, digrĕdi, egrĕdi, ingrĕdi, progrĕdi,* and *regrĕdi.*

Invĕhor, invĕhi, invectus sum, *to inveigh against.*

Irascor, irasci, ——, *to be angry.* (Inchoative.)
Irātus sum has the sense of the present, "I am angry." For the perf. *succensui* is used.

Lābor, lābi, lapsus sum, *to glide, slip, fall.*
Compos. *collābi, delābi, dilābi, prolābi,* and *relābi.*

Lŏquor, lŏqui, locūtus sum, *to speak.*
Compos. *allŏqui, collŏqui, elŏqui, interlŏqui, oblŏqui.*

Miniscor (*not used*).
From it the compos. *comminiscor, comminisci, commentus sum,* to devise, imagine; and *reminiscor, reminisci,* with the perf. *recordātus sum,* to remember. — The part. *commentus* has a passive sense, "devised," "invented."

Mŏrior, mŏri, mortuus sum, *fut. part.* moritūrus, *to die.*
Obsolete infinitive *morīri.* Compos. *commori, demori,* and *emori.*

Nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum, *to obtain.*
Part. sometimes written *nanctus.*

Nascor, nasci, nātus sum, *to be born.*
Original form *gnascor,* which still exists in *agnatus* and *cognatus.* Compos. *enascor, innascor,* and *renascor.*

Nītor, nīti, nīsus *or* nixus sum, *to strive, to rely upon.*
Compos. *adnīti, connīti, enīti,* and *obnīti.*

Obliviscor, oblivisci, oblītus sum, *to forget.*

Paciscor, pacisci, pactus sum, *to bargain, stipulate.*
Compos. *compacisci* or *compeciscī, depacisci* or *depecisci,* all with *pactus sum.*

Pascor, pasci, pastus sum, *to feed, graze.*

Patior, pāti, passus sum, *to suffer.*
Compos. *perpetior, perpĕti, perpessus sum.*

Plecto, plectĕre, *to plait, braid,* gives rise to the
Compos. *amplector* and *complector, complexus sum,* to embrace.

Proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, *to travel, to depart.*

Quĕror, quĕri, questus sum, *to complain.*
Compos. *conquĕri.*

Ringor, ringi, ——, *to show one's teeth; to chafe.*

Sĕquor, sĕqui, secūtus sum, *to follow.*
Compos. *assĕqui, consĕqui, exsĕqui, insĕqui, obsĕqui, persĕqui, prosĕqui,* and *subsĕqui.*

Ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, *to revenge, punish.*

Utor, ūti, ūsus sum, *to use, enjoy.*
Compos. *abūti, deūti.*

Vescor, vesci, ——, *to eat, feed upon.*
The place of a perfect is supplied by *ēdi.*

IV. The deponent verbs of the fourth conjugation are, —

Adsentior, adsentīri, adsensus sum, *to assent.*
Also active, in the same sense, *adsentio, adsensi, adsensum;* but more commonly deponent.

Blandior, blandīri, blandītus sum, *to flatter.*

Experior, experīri, expertus sum, *to experience.*
But *comperior,* I learn, am informed, is only used in the present; perf. *compĕri* from *comperio.*

Largior, largīri, largītus sum, *to lavish.*
Compos. *delargior.*

Mentior, mentīri, mentītus sum, *to lie, to tell falsehoods.*

Metior, metīri, mensus sum, *to measure.*
Compos. *dimetīri, emetīri,* and *permetīri.*

Molior, molīri, molītus sum, *to labor, strive, toil.*
Compos. *amolīri* and *demolīri.*

Opperior, opperīri, oppertus *or* opperītus sum, *to wait for, expect.*

Ordior, ordīri, orsus sum, *to begin, commence.*

Compos. *exordīri* and *redordīri.*

Orior, orīri, ortus sum (*fut. part.* oritūrus), *to rise.*

The Pres. Indic. follows the third conjug. *orĕris, oritur, orimur.* But imperfect either *orīrer* or *orĕrer.* So the compos. *coorior* and *exorior.* But *adorior* has commonly *adoriris* and *adoritur,* instead of *adorĕris* and *adoritur.* — The fut. part. *oriundus* has the peculiar sense "sprung or descended from."

Partior, partīri, partītus sum, *to divide.*

Compos. *dispertior, dispertītus sum.* So also *impertior* or *impartior.* All these also active, *partio, dispertio,* and *impertio.*

Potior, potīri, potītus sum, *to take possession of.*

The Pres. and Imperf. Subj. sometimes follow the third conjugation, *potītur, potimur, poterētur, poterēmur.*

Punior, punīri, punītus sum, (*instead of the active* punio,) *to punish*

Sortior, sortīri, sortītus sum, *to draw lots.*

F. INCHOATIVE VERBS.

Inchoative verbs end in *sco,* and are formed either from nouns or adjectives, or from other verbs.

The verbs from which inchoatives are formed are commonly of the second conjugation, but the inchoatives themselves are invariably of the third.

The inchoatives derived from verbs generally have the perfect, and sometimes also the supine, of their primitives.

The inchoatives derived from nouns or adjectives either want the perfect entirely, or assume *ui,* like those derived from verbs.

The following lists exhibit the most important verbs of this class.

1. Inchoatives derived from verbs, with the perfect and supine of their primitives: —

Abolesco (*oleo*), ĕre, abolēvi, abolētum, *to be annihilated.*

Adolesco (*oleo*), ĕre, adolēvi, adultum, *to grow up.*

Conlesco (*alo*), ĕre, coalui, coalĭtum, *to coalesce.*

Concupisco (*cupio*), ĕre, concupīvi, concupītum, *to desire.*

Convalesco (*valeo*), ĕre, convalui, convallĭtum, *to convalesce.*

Exardesco (*ardeo*), ĕre, exarsi, exarsum, *to grow hot, to become inflamed.*

Exolesco (*oleo*), ĕre, exolēvi, exolētum, *to grow out of use.*

Indolesco (*doleo*), ĕre, indolui, indolĭtum, *to feel pain.*

Inveterasco (*invetĕro*), ĕre, inveterāvi, ātum, *to grow old.*

Obdormisco (*dormio*), ĕre, obdormīvi, ītum, *to fall asleep.* (*So also* edormisco, *to take one's fill of sleep.*)

Revivisco (*vivo*), ĕre, revixi, revictum, *to revive, come to life again.*

Scisco (*scio*), ĕre, scīvi, scītum, *to decree, ordain.*

2. Inchoatives derived from verbs, with the perfect of their primitives: —

Acesco (*aceo*), ĕre, acui, *to grow sour.* *So also* concesco *and* peracesco.

Albesco *and* exalbesco (*albeo*), ĕre, exalbui, *to grow white.*

Aresco (*areo*), ĕre, arui, *to become dry.*

Calesco (*caleo*), ĕre, calui, *to grow warm.*

Canesco (*caneo*), ĕre, canui, *to turn gray.*

Conticesco (*taceo*), ĕre, conticui, *to become silent.*

Contremisco (*tremo*), ĕre, contremui, *to begin to tremble.*
Defervesco (*ferveo*), ĕre, deferbui, *to cease fermenting.*
Delitesco (*lateo*), ĕre, delitui, *to be concealed.*
Effervesco (*ferveo*), ĕre, efferbui, *to begin to boil.*
Excandesco (*candeo*), ĕre, excandui, *to grow hot.*
Extimesco *and* pertimesco (*timeo*), ĕre, extimui, *to become frightened.*
Floresco *and* de- *or* efflloresco (*floreo*), ĕre, efflorui, *to begin to blossom.*
Haeresco *and* ad- *or* inhaeresco (*haereo*), ĕre, inhaesi, *to adhere to, to inhere.*
Horresco *and* ex- *or* perhorresco (*horreo*), ĕre, exhorrui, *to be terrified.*
Ingemisco (*gemo*), ĕre, ingemui, *to begin to sigh.*
Intumesco (*tumeo*), ĕre, intumui, *to begin to swell.*
Irraucisco (*raucio*), ĕre, irrausi, *to grow hoarse.*
Languesco *and* e- *or* relanguesco (*langueo*), ĕre, elangui, *to become languid.*
Liquesco (*liqueo*), ĕre, licui, *to begin to melt.*
Madesco (*madeo*), ĕre, madui, *to become wet.*
Marcesco *and* com- *or* emarcesco (*marceo*). ĕre, emarcui, *to decay, wither.*
Occallesco (*calleo*), ĕre, occalui, *to become callous.*
Pallesco *and* expallesco (*palleo*), ĕre, pallui, *to turn pale.*
Putresco (*putreo*), ĕre, putrui, *to decay.*
Resipisco (*sapio*), ĕre, resipui, *to recover one's senses again.*
Rubesco *and* erubesco (*rubeo*), ĕre, erubui, *to become red, to redden.*
Senesco *and* consenesco (*seneo*), ĕre, consenui, *to grow old.*
Stupesco *and* obstupesco (*stupeo*), ĕre, obstupui, *to become astonished.*
Tabesco (*tabeo*), ĕre, tabui, *to wither; pass away.*
Tepesco (*tepeo*), ĕre, tepui, *to become tepid.*
Viresco *and* con-, e-, *or* reviresco (*vireo*), virui, *to turn green.*

3. Inchoatives derived from nouns and adjectives, without a perfect:—

Aegresco (*aeger*), ĕre, *to fall sick.*
Ditesco (*dives*). ĕre, *to become rich.*
Dulcesco (*dulcis*), ĕre, *to turn sweet.*
Grandesco (*grandis*), ĕre, *to grow up.*
Gravesco *and* ingravesco (*gravis*), ĕre, *to become heavy; to grow worse.*
Incurvesco (*curvus*), ĕre, *to become crooked.*
Integrasco (*integer*), ĕre, *to begin anew or afresh.*
Juvenesco (*juvenis*), ĕre, *to grow young again.*
Mitesco (*mitis*), ĕre, *to grow gentle.*
Mollesco (*mollis*), ĕre, *to become soft.*
Pinguesco (*pinguis*), ĕre, *to become fat.*
Plumesco (*pluma*), ĕre, *to become fledged.*
Puerasco *and* repuerasco (*puer*), ĕre, *to grow up to be a boy.*
Sterilesco (*sterilis*), ĕre, *to become sterile.*
Tenerasco *and* teneresco (*tener*), ĕre, *to become tender.*

4. Inchoatives derived from nouns or adjectives, with a perfect in *ui*:—

Crebresco *and* in- *or* percrebresco (*creber*). ĕre, crebrui, *to increase, to grow frequent.*
Duresco *and* obduresco (*durus*), ĕre, durui, *to grow hard.*
Evanesco (*vanus*), ĕre, evanui, *to vanish.*
Innotesco (*notus*), ĕre, innotui, *to become known.*
Macresco (*macer*), ĕre, macrui, *to become lean.*
Mansuesco (*mansuetus*), ĕre, mansuēvi, *to grow gentle.*
Maturesco (*maturus*), ĕre, maturui, *to become ripe.*
Nigresco (*niger*), ĕre, nigrui, *to turn black.*
Obmutesco (*mutus*), ĕre, obmutui, *to become dumb* or *mute.*
Obsurdesco (*surdus*), ĕre, obsurdui, *to become deaf.*
Recrudesco (*crudus*), ĕre, recrudui, *to break open afresh* (of wounds).
Vilesco and evilesco (*vilis*), ĕre, evilui, *to become low, of trifling value.*

INDEX.

N. B. The figures of this Index refer to the pages of the book; the letters or figures after the page-reference, to the divisions or remarks of the lesson contained on that page. The dash —— indicates the repetition of the word at the head of the article. The abbreviation *constr.* stands for *construction of*; *id.* for *the same page*.

A, ab, abs, how used, 624, Rem. 2. With passive verbs. 165, *H.*
ab adolescentia, 319, Rem. 5.
abest, in the expressions *tantum abest ut . . . ut*, 197, *C*, and *non multum abest quin*, 570.
abhinc, how used, 317, *D.*
Ablative, terminations of, 50, *C*; of gerunds, 116, *d*; —— after comparatives, 224–225; —— of place: *where?* 308, *B*; *whence, id. C*; —— of time: *when?* 316, *B*; *within what time?* 317, *C*; —— of cause, 418, *B*; —— of the means or instrument, 419, *C*; —— of mode or manner, 425, *A*; —— signifying *with respect to, in point of*, 426, *B*; of quality, 427, *C*; of the price or value, 434, *A*; after verbs of plenty or want, 435, *B*; after verbs denoting separation, difference, or distance, 436, *C*; after *utor, fruor, fungor*, &c., 448, *A*; after *dignus, indignus, contentus*, &c., 444, *B*; after *natus, prognatus*, &c., 445, *C*; after prepositions, *id. D*; after verbs compounded with *a, de*, or *ex*, 446, *E*; after verbs of placing, putting, sitting, &c., 446, *F.* —— Ablative Absolute, 451–455. Ablat. of the perf. part. used absolutely, 455, *E.*
absolvere, with the gen., 408, *A.*
Abstract Nouns, 88. 3.
abundare, constr., 435, *B.*
abunde, with the gen., 881, *A.* 4.
-abus, ablative pl. in, 46, note †.
accedit ut, 297, *F.* 1; *accedit quod*, 299, Rem. 2.
Accents, 5, *I.*
Accentuation, 6, *I.* 1–6.
accidit ut, 297, *F.* 2.
accusare, with the gen., 408, *A.*
Accusative, terminations of, 50, *C*; of gerunds, 116, *c*; of place, 308, *A*, and 309–310; of time, 315, *A*; denoting extent of space, 440, *D*; after transitive verbs, 324, *A*; omitted, 325, Rem. 4; after verbals, 326, Rem. 7; after neuter verbs, 326, *B* and 327, *C*; after compound verbs, 332, *A*; after impersonal verbs, 334, *B* and *C*; in the sense of *as to, with respect to*, 335, *D*; after interjections and in exclamations, 343, *D*; after prepositions, 344, II.; — as the subject of an infinitive, 287, *A*; omitted, 292, Rem. 12.
Accusatives, two, after *docere* and *celare*, 340, *A*; after verbs of asking, inquiring, and demanding, 341, *B*; after verbs of naming, calling, esteeming, &c., 342, *C.*
Accusativus cum Infinitivo, as the subject of a finite verb, 287, *B*; —— as the object of a finite verb, after *verba sensuum et affectuum*, 288, II. 1; as the object of a volition, 289. 2; after *verba declarandi*, 290. 3; as the *appositum* of a noun, &c., 290, *C*; in impassioned exclamations, 290, *D*; —— exchanging with *ut*, 294 and 295; with *quod*, 298, *H.*
ac si, with the subj., 576, II.
Active voice, 110; regular conjugation of, 664–665.
ad, constr., 156, note †.
adeo, followed by *ut*, 566.
adhuc locorum, 382, Rem. 2.
adesse, constr., 157.
Adjectives, declined, singular, 18 and 21; plural, 49 and 50; —— agreement of, 186–189; used instead of adverbs, 187, Rem. 6; belonging to two or more nouns, 188, Rem. 10; to a collective

noun, 188, Rem. 11; used substantively, 193; in the neuter gender, 194, Rem. 4; used partitively, 188, Rem. 12; instead of the genitive of nouns, 374, Rem. 6; —— derivation of, 504–507; used adverbially, 616, *C.* 2, and 617. 6; —— comparison of, 212–217. Adjectives followed by the dative, 351–353; by the genitive, 390–393; by the ablative, 444–445; by an infinitive, 283, *C;* —— in the construction of the ablative absolute, 453, *D;* place in the sentence, 649, II.
ad id locorum, 382, Rem. 2.
admonere, with Acc. cum Inf. or *ut*, 295, *D;* with the gen. 399, *B.*
adspergere, constr. 368, *D.*
Adverbs, 613, *A;* of place, 613, *B.* 1; of time, number, and order, 614, II.; of quality, manner, &c., 614, III.; correlative, 615, IV.; —— numeral adverbs, 94, *F;* ordinal adverbs, 614. 3 (of I.) and 3 (of II.); —— with the genitive, 383, Rem. 6, and 385, Rem. 4; used as prepositions, 624, Rem. 5; —— comparison of, 220–221.
Adverbs, derivation of, 616, in *ē* and *ter*, *id.* 1; in *um* and *ĕ*, *id.* 2; in *tus*, *id.* 3; in *tim* and *sim*, *id.* 4; —— formed from the accusative of nouns, &c., 617. 5; from ablatives, *id.* 6; from verbs, *id.* 7; compounds, *id.* 8.
aedes, omitted, 375, *b.*
aequalis, constr., 351. 1.
aeque ac, 212, *B.* 1.
aestimare, with the genitive, 398, *A.*
affatim, with the gen. 383, Rem. 6.
affinis, constr., 352. 6.
Agent, after passive verbs, expressed by the ablative with *a* or *ab*, 165, *H;* by the dative, 117, *D* and 365, *A.*
Agreement, 149, *F;* of verbs, 153, *A;* of adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, 186–189; of relatives, 200–202 and 206–208.
ain' for *aisne*, 182.
aio, inflected, 671, *C.* 1.
alienare, constr., 437, Rem. 2.
alienus, constr. 352, note *.
aliquantum, with the gen., 66, Rem. 6.
aliquid with the gen. 22, *C;* distinct from *aliquod*, 65, Rem. 1.
aliquis, declined, 34 and 64.
aliquo, adverb, 138.
-alis, adjectives in, 505, *C*, 4.
alius and *alter*, difference between, 92, *B.*
alius — alium, *alter — alterum*, with verb in the plural, 154, *B*, Rem. 2; —— place of, 653, VIII.
alter, declined, 92.
ambi, inseparable preposition, 626, II.
ambire, conjugated, 670, Remarks.
ambo, declined and defined, 97.
amicus, constr., 351, note ‡.
Amplificatives, 89. 8.
amplius, with *quam* omitted, 105, *E.*
an, in disjunctive questions, 547, II. 2.
animans, gender of, 485, Rem. 4.
animi for *animo*, 392, Rem. 2.
an non, how used, 547, II. 3.
Anomalous, comparison, 218; verbs, 666–671.
Answers to questions, how expressed, 545, IV.
ante, denoting relations of time, 318, *E.*
Antecedent, 201, Rem. 1; commonly precedes the relative, *id.* Rem. 5; understood, *id.* Rem. 7; entirely suppressed, 202, Rem. 8; attracted into the case of the relative, *id.* Rem. 9; double antecedent, 206, *A*, 1.
Antepenult, 6; its accent, 6. 3.
antequam and *priusquam*, constr., 578.
-anus, adjectives in, 506, II. 1.
apage, 606. 8.
Apodosis, 551, *B.*
Aposiopesis, 326.
appellare, with two accusatives, 342, *C.*
appetens, with the genitive, 392, *B.*
Apposition, 179, *A;* in the oblique cases, 180, Rem. 2; of a pronoun and a noun, *id.* 3; between nouns of different genders, *id.* 4; to two or more nouns, *id.* 5; between adjectives, 181, Rem. 9; to an entire clause, *id.* Rem. 10; genitive instead of, *id.* Rem. 11; between a genitive and an ablative, *id.* Rem. 12.
aptus, constr. 352. 8; *aptus qui*, with the subjunctive, 590, *F.*
apud, 157.
aqua, understood, 193, Rem. 3.
-ar, nouns in, 13, note ‡.
arguere, with the genit., 408, *A.*
-arius, adjectives in, 506, 7.
-as, nouns in, 16. 8; Greek acc. plur. in, 500, Rem. 8; adjectives in *as* and *anus*, 507. 2.
Assimilation of consonants in composition, 124, Rem. 2.
"At home" and "home," how expressed, 132, *G.*
Athos, declined, 497.
atque, 76, *H.*
Attraction, 202, Rem. 9; 169. 6; 367, note.
-atus, participles in, 259, *A;* adjectives in, 506. 10.
auscultare, 197, note †.
ausim for *ausus sim*, 289, *e.*
aut and *vel*, defined, 388, *C.*

aut — aut, 888 and 634.
autem, place of, 38, *B*.
avarus and *avidus*, with the genit., 391. 1.
ave, 606. 8.
-ax, verbals in, with the genit., 393, Rem. 2.

B.

bellum, construed like names of towns, 310, *b*, *c*.
bene te, 343, note.
benedicere, with the dat., 358, Rem. 8.
biduum, *triduum*, 322.
-bilis, adjectives in, 505; with the dat., 353. 10; with the supine in *u*, 250, Rem. 2.
boni facio or *consulo*, 399, Rem. 2.
bos, declined, 16, note ‖.
breri, with *tempore* understood, 194, Rem. 3.
-bundus, verbal adjectives in, 504, *B*.

C.

C, sound of, 3, *E*. 1.
canere receptui, to sound a retreat, 367, Rem. 2.
capitis or *capite damnare*, 410, note.
Cardinal numbers, 73, *B*; list of, 76–78.
caro, omitted, 193, Rem. 3.
Cases of nouns, 7, *K*.
Cause, ablative of, 418; various other modes of expressing, 419, Rem. 1–6.
causa and *gratia*, with *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, 584; omitted, 375, *b*.
cave, form of imperative, 606, Rem. 3; with the subjunct. without *ne*, 297, *G*.
-ce and *-cine*, enclitic, 37, Rem. 1.
cedo, imperative, 672. 9.
celare, with two accus., 340, *A*.
ceu, with the subjunctive, 576, II.
Ch, sound of, 3, *E*. 2.
cio or *cieo*, 677. 3 and 686.
circumdare and *circumfundere*, constr., 368, *D*.
cis, *citra*, 345.
clam, adv. and prep., 625, Rem. 6.
Clauses, co-ordinate and subordinate, 149, *E*; arrangement of, 657, *D*.
coenare and *habitare*, with the genit., 399, Rem. 2.
coepi, conjugated, 672. 4.
Collective nouns, 88, *E*. 2; with a plural verb, 154, *B*.
collibet or *collibitum est*, 404.
com, for *cum*, in composition with verbs, 125, note 4.
commiserari, constr., 401, Rem. 1.
communis, with dative, 352. 6.
Comparative degree, 212, *A*. 3; formation of, 213, *C*; expressed by *minus*, *magis*, 212, *B*. 2, 3; by *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, and *supra*, 227, Rem. 5; rendered emphatic by *magis*, *minus*, *potius*, *id.* Rem. 6.
Comparatives, inflected, 217, *A*; —— construction of: with the ablative, 224, *A*; with ablative omitted, 225, Rem. 1; with *quam*, 225, *B*; with *quam* omitted, 227, *C*; two comparatives connected by *quam*, 228, *D*; modified by adverbs, 229, *F*.
Comparison, of adjectives, 212–217; regular, 213, *C*; anomalous, 213, *D*; defective, 214, *E*; by *aeque — ac*, *minus — quam*, 212, *B*; by *magis*, *maxime*, 216, *F*; —— adjectives which admit of none, 216, *G*.
Comparison, of adverbs, regular, 220, *A*; anomalous, *id. B*; defective, *id. C*.
compertus, with the genitive, 410, Rem. 5.
complere, constr. 435, *B*, and Rem. 1.
complures, declined, 104, *C*; sense of, 107.
compos, with the genitive, 391. 4.
Compound, substantives, 60, *D*; verbs, 124–126; adverbs, 617. 8; —— subject, 148, *D*; predicate, *id.*; sentences, 149, *D*; words, how divided, 5, *d*.
conducit, with the dative, 356, *A*.
confidere, constr., 358, Rem. 4.
Conjugatio Periphrastica, 261, *D*.
Conjugation of verbs, 110, *B*; of regular verbs, 664–665; of anomalous verbs, 666–671; of defective verbs, 671–673; of impersonal verbs, 371; —— verbs of the four conjugations alphabetically arranged, 673–689.
Conjunctions, classified, 632–633; copulative, disjunctive, and adversative, how used, 633; double, 634, *C*; omitted, *id.* Rem. 3; in correlation with each other, 635, *E*; adverbs repeated like conjunctions, *id. D*; place of in sentences, 653, *C*, and 654, II.
conjunctus, with the ablat., 426, note.
conscius, constr., 391, note †.
Consecutio Temporum, 527–531.
consentaneum est, 288, Rem. 2.
consentire, constr., 359 and 538–539.
considere, constr., 446, *F*.
Consonants, sounds of, 2–3.
Constructio ad synesin, 168, Rem. 2.
Construction, of sentences, 147–150; of the comparative, 224–230; of the

superlative, 231–234; of names of places, 308–310; of time, 315–319.
consulere, constr., 358, Rem. 5.
contentus, with the ablat., 444, *B.*
contingit ut, 297, *F.* 2.
Contracted syllables, their quantity, 5, *H.* 2.
Contraction of the second root of verbs, 239.
convenit mihi, constr., 358, Rem. 4.
Correlatives, 201, Rem. 3, and 208. 11; adverbs, 615, IV.
crederes, you would have supposed, 538, Rem. 2.
Crime, expressed by the genit., after verbs, 408, *A.*
crimine, omitted, 409, Rem. 1.
cujus, a, um, 41, Rem. 4.
-culus, a, um, diminutives in, 89. 7.
-cum, with the abl., 133; annexed to pronouns, *id.* note; place of, 652, VII.
-cunque, pronoun in, 41, *C;* adverbs, 615.
cupere, constr., 128, note.
cupidus, with the gen., 391. 1.
cura ut, for the imper., 606, Rem. 3.
curare, constr., 256–257, and 294, *C.*

D.

damnare, constr., 408, *A.*
dare, with *a* short, 111, note ‡; construction of, 113, *G.*
Dative, terminations of, 50, *C;* of gerunds, 116, *b;* as the remote object of transitive verbs, 349; after neuter verbs, 350, *C;* denoting possession or want with *esse* or *deesse*, 350, Rem. 2; after adjectives, 351–353; after various intransitive verbs, 356, *A;* after verbs compounded with *satis, bene*, and *male*, or with certain prepositions, 358–360; —— dative of the agent, after participles in *dus*, 365, *A;* after passive verbs, 366, Rem. 3; —— after adverbs and interjections, 369, *F;* used instead of the genit., 374, Rem. 7; constructions instead of, 368, *D.*
Datives, two, after *sum, fio, do*, &c., 366, *B;* by attraction with *mihi est nomen*, 367, *C;* by attraction with *licet esse*, 169, Rem. 6.
debebat, indic. instead of the subjunctive, 536.
decet and *dedecet*, constr., 335, Rem. 2.
Declension of nouns, first, 7–8; second, 10–11; third, 12–13; genitive of the third, 15–17; fourth, 24; fifth, 26; —— of adjectives, first and second, 17–18; third, 21–22; —— declension of the plural of nouns and adjectives, 44–51; —— declension of Greek nouns, 496–500.
dedocere, constr., 340, *A.*
deesse, with the dat., 350, Rem. 2.
Defective, nouns, 61, 67, and 70–72; —— adjectives, 62. 7 and 72, *C;* —— verbs, 671–673.
defit, with the dat., 350, Rem. 2.
defungi, constr., 443. *A.*
Degrees of comparison, explained, 212.
delectari, constr., 298, *H*, and 376.
delectat me, 334, *C.*
Demonstrative pronouns, 36–37; plural of, 54; used as determinatives before relatives, 201, Rem. 2; as partitives, 381, *A.* 3; in the acc. after neuter verbs, 327, Rem.; for reflexives, 473. 2; omitted, 22, *D*, and 153, Rem. 1; place of, 650, III.
Denominative, verbs, 137, *C;* adjectives, 504, *A.*
Dependent clauses, 149, *E;* containing an indirect question, 561; containing the opinion of another, 597, *D.*
Deponent verbs, 110. 3; present, 173–174; perfect, 245; imperfect, 276–277; pluperfect, 464, *E;* first future, 514; second future, 521; imperative, 604–605; infinitive, 253–254; participles, 260, *C;* lists of, 686–689.
Derivation, of substantives, 88–89; of verbs, 136–137; of adjectives, 504–507; of adverbs, 616–617.
Desideratives, 136, *B.* 2, and 686, Rem.
designare, with two accusatives, 342. *C.*
Determinative pronouns, 42 and 54–55.
deterrere with *quominus* and *ne*, 571, VI.
dic, imperative, 606, Rem. 1.
dicere, omitted, 154, Rem. 5.
dicitur, constr., 292, Rem. 9.
dies, gender of, 26, *A.*
Difference, degree of, expressed by the abl., 229, Rem. 3 and 4.
difficilis, with supines, 249, *C;* with the inf. or *ad*, 250, Rem. 4.
dignari, with the abl., 443, *A.*
dignus, with the abl., 444, *B;* with supines, 249, *C;* with *qui* and subj., 590, *F.*
Diminutive, nouns, 89. 7; verbs, 137. 4; adjectives, 507, *D.*
Diphthongs, 1, *C;* quantity of, 5, *H.* 2.
dis or *di*, prefix to verbs, 125, *B.*
distare, constr., 436, *C*, and 473.
Distributive numerals, 74, *D;* use of, *id. E;* list of, 76–78.
docere, constr., 340, *A*, and Remarks.

dolere, how used, 190, and 298, *H.*
domus, declined, 24, *A*; construction of, 132.
donare, constr., 368, *D.*
donec, constr., 578, *D.*
Doubtful gender, 484, note.
dubito, constr., 571, Rem. 4; *non dubito*, 570. 3, and 571, Rem. 3; *dubito an*, 571, Rem. 4.
duc, imperative, 606, Rem. 1.
duim, for *dem*, 141, Rem.
dum and *dummodo*, with the subj., 577, IV.
dum, for *duorum*, 73, Rem. 2.
duo, declined, 73, *B.*
-dus, participles in, 117.

E.

E, nouns in, 12, *A*; Greek nouns in *ē*, 496, *B*; adverbs in, 616. 1.
e or *ex*, use of, 14, *E.*
ecce, with Nom. and Acc., 343, *D.* I.; in pronouns like *eccum*, *eccillum*, &c., 37, Rem. 2.
ecquid in questions, 8, note.
ecquis, declined, 64; sense of, 65, Rem. 3.
edepol, 642, Rem. 2.
edim for *edam*, 141, Rem.
editus, with the abl., 545, *C.*
edo, conjugated, 668.
efficere ut, 296, *E.*
egere, constr., 113, *H.*
ejus for *suus*, 470, Rem., 473, Rem. 2.
Elision, 4, *F.*
Ellipsis, of nouns, 193, Rem. 3; of subject, 153, Rem. 1 and 2; of the pronominal subject acc., 292, Rem. 12; of the verb, 154, Rem. 5, and 325, 5; of the object of verbs, 325, 4; of *is*, *ea*, *id*, 14, *D*; of *non*, 584, note; of conjunctions, 634, Rem. 3.
Emphatic word, in sentences, 648, *A* and *B.*
Enclitics, their influence on the accent, 6, Rem. 5.
emere, constr., 398, *A*, and 434, *A.*
en, interjection with the nom., 344.
-endus and *-undus*, participles in, 117, Rem.
enim and *nam*, place of, 388 and 654.
eninvero, in answers, 545, IV.
-ensis, adjectives in, 507. 2.
-entissimus, superlative in, 213, *D.* 3.
eo, with comparatives, 230, Rem. 4; with the genit., 382, Rem. 3.
eo (to go), conjugated, 669. 9.
Equality, comparison of, 212, *B.*
-er, annexed to the infinitive passive, 161, note †; thrown out in the past tenses, 239, *e.*
-ēre for *-erunt*, 238, note.
-errimus, superlative in, 213, *D.* 1.
esse, omitted, 292, Rem. 11.
est qui, *est quod*, *est ut*, with the subj., 587, *C*, and 588, Rem. 1.
et — et, *et — neque*, &c., 634, *C.*
etiamnum, 100.
-eus, adjectives in, 505, *C.* 1.
evenit ut, 295, *F.* 2.
expedire, constr., 437, Rem. 1.
expers, with the genit., 391. 4.
ex quo (*tempore*), 429 and 431.
exuere, constr., 368, *D.*

F.

fac, imperative, 606, Rem. 1; with the subj., *id.* Rem. 3.
facere, passive of, 163, *F.*
facere certiorem, 343, Rem. 2.
facere ut, 292, *E*, and Rem. 1.
facilis, with supines, 249, *C*; with the infin. or *ad*, 250, Rem. 4.
fallit me, 334, *C.*
fari, defective, 671. 3.
fas, with supines, 249, *C*; with the infin., 27, note ‡.
faxo, *faxim*, 239, *E.*
febris, omitted, 393, Rem. 3.
Feminine, gender, 483; nouns, 486, II.; 491, *A* and *B*, Except. 1 and 2; 492, II.; 493, *E.*
fer, imperative, 606, Rem. 1.
ferax, with the genit., 393, Rem. 2.
fero, conjugated, 669. 7.
fertilis, with the genit., 391. 4.
fidere, constr., 444, Rem. 3.
fieri non potest quin, 570, Rem. 2.
filius and *filia*, omitted, 375, *b.*
fio, conjugated, 669. 8; with the genit., 410, *B.*
flagitare, with two accusatives, 341, *B.*
flocci habere, 398, *A.*
foras and *foris*, 152.
forem, 666, note.
fore ut, how used, 255, Rem. 1, and 292, Rem. 8.
Frequentative verbs, 136, *B.* 1.
fretus, with the abl., 444, *B.*
frui, with the abl., 443, *A.*
fugit me, 334, *C.*
fungi, with the abl., 443, *A.*
Future tense, first, 511–514; subjunctive, 515–516; —— second or perfect, 519–523; subjunctive, 523.
futurum esse ut, 255, Rem. 1, and 292, Rem. 8.

G.

G, sound of, 3, *E.* 3.
gaudeo, 161, Rem. 4; with the abl., 419, Rem. 2; with Acc. cum Inf. or *quod*, 298, *H.*
Gender, 483, *A;* —— natural gender, of living beings, 483, *B* and *C;* *mobilia*, 484, II.; *communia*, III.; *epicoena*, 485, *b;* —— of inanimate objects, masculines, 485, I.; feminines, 486, II.; neuters, *id.* III.; —— grammatical gender, first decl., 491, *A;* second decl., *id. B;* third decl., *id. C;* fourth decl., 493, *D;* fifth decl., *id. E.*
Genitive, terminations of, 50, *C;* singular of the third declension, 15–17; —— plural, of the 2d decl. contracted, 47, note; of the 3d decl., 48, Rem. 2; —— after nouns, 373; subjective and objective, *id.* Rem. 2; of pronouns, *id.* Rem. 4; adjective used instead of, *id.* Rem. 6; the noun before it omitted, *id.* Rem. 8; —— of quality and measure, 375, *B;* of the whole, 381, *A;* of neuter adjectives after *hoc*, *id*, *aliquid*, &c., 282, Rem. 1; after neuter adjectives, 383, Rem. 5; after adverbs, *id.* Rem. 6, and 282, Rem. 2–4; after *tenus* and interjections, 383, Rem. 8; —— plural, after partitives, 383–386; after nouns denoting a part of a genus, 385, Rem. 2; its place supplied by *ex*, *de*, *inter*, *id.* Rem. 6; —— genitive, after adjectives, 390–392; after participles in *ns*, 392–393; of the price or value, 398–399; after verbs of reminding, remembering, and forgetting, 399–401; after *poenitet*, *piget*, &c., 401; of the crime, 408–410; after *esse* and *fieri* with *res* or *negotium* understood, 410–411; after *refert* and *interest*, 411–412; —— place of, 649, II.
genitus, with the abl., 445, *C.*
gentium, after *ubi*, &c., 382, Rem. 2.
genus for *generis*, 375, Rem. 2.
Gerundives, constr., 118, *E;* genit. singular of, in agreement with a plural, 119, *F.*
Gerunds, 115, *A;* constr., *id. B;* cases of, how used, 116.
gloriari, constr., 444, Rem. 2.
gnarus, with genit., 391. 2.
Grammatical gender, 483 and 491–493.
gratiā and *causā*, with the genit., 419, Rem. 5; with the genit. of gerunds, 116, *a;* omitted, 375, *b.*
gratias agere, with *quod*, 298, *H.*
gratis constare, 399, Rem. 5.
gratum or *pergratum facere*, 564.
Greek nouns, 496; 1st declension, *id. B;* 2d decl., 497, *C;* 3d decl., 498, *D;* gender of, 491–493.
Gutturals, 2, *D.*

H.

H, sound of, 3, *E.* 4.
habere, with two accusatives, 342, *C;* with the genit., 398, *A;* with two dative, 366, *B.*
habeo or *non habeo quod*, with the subj., 588, Rem. 2.
haud scio an, 538.
hei with the dat., 369, *E.* 2.
heu with the acc., 343, *D.*
Hiatus, 4, *F.*
hic and *ille*, declined, 36 and 54; distinguished, 37, Rem. 3.
Historical, infinitive, 268, 4; —— period, 659, IV.
hoc with the gen., 381, *A.* 3; *hōc*, with comparatives, 230, Rem. 4.
homo and *homines* omitted, 193, *A*, Rem. 1 and 2.
hortor with *ut*, 295, *D.*
hortus and *horti*, 71, *D.*
huc with the gen., 382, Rem. 3.
hujus non facio, phrase, 399, Rem. 2.
humus, constr., 310. 6. *c.*
Hypothetical propositions, 551–554.

I.

I, sound of, 2; nouns in, 13; vocative in, 10, note †.
-icus, adjectives in, 505, *C.*
id with the genit., 381, *A.* 3.
id aetatis, 336, *b.*
id agere ut, 294, *C.*
idem, declined, 42, *E*, and 55, *G;* with the genit., 381, *A.* 3; *idem — qui*, *ac*, *atque*, *cum*, 43, *F.*
idoneus with the dat., 352. 8; with *qui* and the subj., 590, *F.*
id temporis, 336, *b.*
-idus, adjectives in, 504. *B.*
igitur, place of, 654, II.
ignarus, with the genit., 391. 2.
-ilis and *ilis*, adjectives in, 504, *B*, and 505, *C.*
ille, declined, 36 and 54; sense of, 37, Rem. 2.
-illimus, superlative in, 213, *D.* 2.
illud with the gen., 381, *A.* 3.
-im, adverbs in, 616 4.
immo, sense of, 546, Rem. 2.
impatiens, with the gen., 392, *B.*

impedire, constr., 571, VI. and Rem. 1.
imperare, constr., 292, Rem. 3.
Imperative mood, formation and inflection of, 602–605; various formulas for, 606, Rem. 3; its place supplied by other moods, *id.* Rem. 4; —— use of imp. present, 607, I.; future, *id.* II.
Imperfect tense, formation and inflection of, active, 268–271; passive, 274–276; deponent, 276–277; —— its use, 266–268.
imperitus, with the gen., 391
Impersonal verbs, defined and classified, 301–304; with the acc., 334, *B* and *C*; with the dat., 356, *A*; with the gen., 401, *C* and 411, *C*; with the abl., 411, *C*.
impertire, constr., 368, *D*.
imponere, constr., 447, Rem.
"I must," "I am obliged," how expressed, 171, *D*.
in, constr., 151, *H*.
Inceptive or
Inchoative verbs, 186, *B*. 3; lists of them, 689–690.
Indeclinable, nouns, 61, *E*; adjectives, *id.* *E*. 7.
Indefinite, pronouns, 34 and 64; adverbs, 615, IV.
Independent sentences, 149, *E*.
Indicative mood, used in absolute assertions, 534, I.; in direct questions, 535, II.; in conditional clauses, *id.* III.; peculiar use of, 536, *B*; in general relative expressions, 537, II.; with *sive — sive*, *id.* III.; in interjected clauses, 596, Rem. 1 and 2; 597, Rem. 1 and 2.
indigere, constr., 113, *H*.
indignus, with the ablat., 444, *B*; with *qui* and the subj., 510, *F*.
Indirect, questions, 560, *D*; discourse, 595, Rem.
induere, constr., 368, *D*.
Inferiority, expressed by *minus — quam* and *minime*, 212, *B*. 2.
Infinitive, different forms and tenses of, 253–255; future expressed by *fore ut*, 255, Rem. 1, and 292, Rem. 8; used substantively, 61, Rem. 6; historical, 268, Rem. 4; instead of *ut*, 296, Rem. 1; as the subject of a verb, 281, I.; as the object of what verbs, *id.* II. and 282, Remarks; with a subject in the acc., 287, *A*; used after certain nouns, adjectives, and verbs, instead of the gerund, 282, Rem. 2. —— Infin. present instead of the participle, 291, Rem. 2; in the sense of the imperfect, *id.* Rem. 3; in the sense of the perfect, *id.* Rem. 4; instead of the future, *id.* Rem. 6. —— Infin. perf. in the sense of the pluperf., 291, Rem. 3; in the sense of the present, *id.* Rem. 5. —— Infin. passive used impersonally, 292, Rem. 7; *esse* omitted, *id.* Rem. 11.
Inflection, 7, *K*.
inimicus with the dat., 351. 4.
"In order to," "for the purpose of," how expressed, 143, *D* and 248, *A*; 249, Rem. 4.
inquam, *inquit*, conjugated, 671, *C*. 2; place of, 655, III.
inscius with the genit., 391. 2.
inscribere, constr., 447, Rem.
insolitus, with the dat., 352. 7.
inspergere, constr., 368, *D*.
"Instead of," how expressed, 197, *C*.
Instrument, ablat. of the means and, 419, *C*; expressed by *per*, *opera*, &c., 420, Rem. 1 and 2.
insuetus, with the gen.. 391. 3.
Intensive, pronoun (*ipse*), 29, *D*; used for the demonst. *is*, 473, Rem. 3; —— verbs, 137. 5.
inter with the gerund, 116, *c*.
interdicere, constr., 438, Rem. 4.
interea loci, 382, Rem. 2.
interesse, with the dat., 157 and 358, *B*.
interest, constr., 411, *C*.
Interjected clauses, in the subjunct., 595–597; in the indic., 596, Rem. 1 and 2, and 597, Rem. 1 and 2.
Interjections, 642–644; construction of, 643.
interrogare, constr., 341, *A*.
Interrogative, pronouns, 39–41; adverbs, 544, II. and 615; sentences, 543–548.
Intransitive verbs, with the acc. of kindred signification, 326, *B*; with the acc. generally, 327, *C*; with the dat., 350, *C*; made transitive by composition, 332, *A*.
-inus, adjectives in, 506. 6.
inveniuntur qui, with the subj., 587, *C*.
-io, verbals in, 89. 9.
ipse, declined, 30 and 53; used for the reflexive, 473. 3.
irasci, with the dat., 356, *A*.
ire, with the supine, 248, Rem. 1.
iri, in the fut. infin. passive, 132. 7, and 249, Rem. 3.
is, declined, 36, *A*, and 54, *D*; for the reflexive, 473. 2; omitted, 31, note, and 292, Rem. 12.
is — qui, 42, *D*, and 55, *G*.
-is for *-ibus*, 48, Rem. 3; *-is* for *-es*, acc. pl., *id.* Rem. 4.

iste, declined, 86, *A* and 54, *D*; defined, 37, Rem. 4.
istic and *illic*, 37, Rem. 6.
istud, with the gen. 381, *A*. 3.
itaque, place of, 654, II.
iter, gen. *itineris*, 16, note §.
-iter, adverbs in, 616, *C*. 1.
-itus, adverbs in, 616, *C*. 3.
-ius, genitives in, 40, note ‡.

J.

J, value of, 3, *E*. 5.
jamdudum, jampridem, 428 and 429.
jecur, gen. *jecineris*, 16, note §.
jubere, constr., 296, Rem. 3.
jucundus, with the dat., 351. 3, and 249, *C*.
jugerum, 47, note *.
junctus, with the abl., 426, note.
Juppiter, gen. *Jovis*, 16, note §.
juris consultus, 391, note †.
jusjurandum, declined, 60.
juvat me, constr., 334, *C*.
juxta, prep., 623, *B*. 1; adv., 624, Rem. 5.

K.

K, power and use of, 3, *E*. 6.

L.

Labials, 2, *D*.
laborare, constr., 190.
lactari, with the abl., 443, *A*.
latet me or *mihi*, 334, *C*. and 335, Rem. 3.
laurus, declined, 81, *E*. 2.
Leading sentences, 149, *E*.
-lentus, adjectives in, 506. 8.
Letters, classification and sounds of, 1–3; value as numerals, 76–77.
liberare, constr., 437, Rem. 1.
libet and *libitum est*, with the dat., 302, Rem. 1.
licere, with the genit. or abl., 398, *A* and 434, *A*.
licet esse, with the acc. or dat., 169, Rem. 6.
licet as conjunction, 575, V.
Liquids, 2, *D*.
litterae, 71, *D*; with distributives, 74, *E*.
loci and *locorum*, 382, Rem. 2.
loci and *loca* distinguished, 88, *F*. 1.
Long syllables, 5, *H*. 1, 2, and note.
longe with superlatives, 233, *E*. 1.
longus, with the acc., 375, Rem. 1, and 440, *D*.
longum est, for the subj., 536, *B*. I.
ludis, in answer to *when?* 317, Rem. 3.
-lus, la, lum, diminutives in, 89. 7.

M.

M, sound of, 3, *E*. 7; final, silent in verse, *id*. and 4, note.
macte and *macti*, 63, *d*, and 642, Rem. 1.
magis, with comparatives, 216, *F*; superfluous, 227, Rem. 6.
magnam partem, 336, Rem. 2.
magni, parvi, &c., after verbs of valuing, 398, *A*.
magno, parvo, &c., after verbs of buying and selling, 434, *A*.
maledicere, constr., 359. 4.
malim, with the subj., 557, *A*.
mallem, sense of, 558, Rem. 2.
malo, conjugated, 667. 5.
manifestus, with the gen., 410, Rem. 5.
Manner, ablat. of, 425, *A*; adverbs of, 614, III. 2.
Masculine gender, 483, *A*; nouns, 485, *D*. I.; 491, *A*, *B*, and *C*; 492, II., Except. 1–5; 493, *D*.
materfamilias, declined, 60.
Means, ablat. of, 419, *C*; expressed by *per*, &c., 420, Rem. 1–2.
Measure, genitive of, 375, *B*; accusative of, *id*. Rem. 1, and 440, *D*.
mederi, with the dat., 356, *A*.
medicari, constr., 358, Rem. 3.
medius fidius, 642, Rem. 2.
mehercule, 642, Rem. 2 and note †.
melius erat, for *fuisset*, 536, *B*. I.
memini, with the infin. pres. 291, Rem. 4; constr., 399, *B*, and 400, Rem. 2–3.
memor, with the gen. 391. 2.
in mentem venit, 401, Rem. 4.
-met, suffix, 29, *B*, Rem.
metuere, constr., 568, III.
meum, tuum, suum, &c. *est*, 411, Rem. 2.
mi, voc. of *meus*, 10, note †; for *mihi*, 29, *B*.
militia, constr. 310. 6, c.
mille and *milia*, 73, *C*.
minus, declined, 106, *F*; with the gen., 106; without *quam*, 105, *E*.
miror, with *quod* or infin., 298, *II*.
misereor and *miseresco*, constr., 401, Rem. 1.
miseret, with the acc., 344, *B*; with the gen. 401, *C*.
modo, with the subj. 577, IV.
modo — modo, 635, *D*.
monere, constr., 295, *D*, and 299, *B*.
Monosyllables, 5. 4.
Moods, 110. 5; —— indicative, 534–538; subj., 551–598; imperat. 602–

608; infinitive, 253 – 255, and 281 – 293.
mos or *moris est*, constr., 288, Rem. 2, and 298, Rem. 2.
Motion, verbs of, with *ad* or *in*, 156, *E.*
multo, with the compar., 230, Rem. 4; with the superl., 233, *E.* 1.
multum, with the genit., 381, *A.* 2.
mutare and *commutare*, constr., 508.
Mutes, 2, *D.*

N.

nae, 542, I.
nam and *enim*, 388 and 654.
Names, proper, of persons and places, 88, *E.* 4; adjectives derived from, 506, II.; Greek names, 496 – 500; —— of winds, months, &c., 485, *D.* I.; of trees, islands, plants, &c., 486, II.
natu, with *major*, *minor*, 214, note †, and 427, note.
natus, "old," with the acc., 316, Rem. 2; "born of," with the abl., 545, *C.*
nauci habere, 398, *A.*
ne, conj. with the subj., 567, II.; after verbs of fearing, 568, III.; omitted, 297, *G*; —— with the imperat., 606, Rem. 2.
-ne, enclitic, 545. III.
nec — nec, 634, *C.*
necne, 547, II. 3.
necesse est, constr., 171, *D.*
nedum, with the subj., 577, IV.
nefas, with supine, 249, *C*; with subject. infin., 288, Rem. 2.
Negative sentences, 542, II.
Negations, two, 543, III.
negligens with the gen., 392, *B.*
nego, for *non dico*, 353.
negotium, understood, 410, *B.*
nemo, declined, 35, *E.*
nemo est qui, with the subj., 587, *C.*
nemo non, 543, III.
ne non, for *ut*, 568, III.
neque — neque, 634, *C.*
nequeo, conjugated, 670, 11.
ne — quidem, 423.
nequis, 64 and 66, Rem. 5.
nescio an, 538.
nescius, with the gen., 391. 2.
nere, how used, 567, Rem 2, and 606, Rem. 2
neuter, 98, Rem. 4.
Neuter, nouns, 486, III.; of the 2d decl., 491, *B*; of the 3d, 493, III.; of the 4th, 493, IV.; —— adjectives, used substantively, 193, *A*, and 194, Rem. 4, 5, and 6; with the genit., 381, *A.* 2; as adverbs, 616, *C.* 2; —— pronouns with the genit., 381, *A* 3; —— possessives used for genit. of person. pron., 411, Rem. 2; —— verbs, with the acc., 326, *B*, and 327, *C*; participles of, 260, Rem. 3; —— adverbs, with the genit., 381, *A.* 4.
nihil with the genit., 22, and 381, *A.* 1.
nihili aestimare, 399, Rem. 4.
nihil non, 543, III.
nihilominus, 635, *E.*
nisi, with the indic., 535, III.; with the subj.. 551 – 554.
nisi forte with the indic., 554, Rem. 2.
niti with the abl., 443, *A.*
nocte and *noctu*, 316, *B*, and 317, Rem. 2.
nolim, with the subj., 557, *A.*
nollem, sense of, 558, Rem. 2.
nolo, conjugated, 667. 4.
nomen est mihi, constr., 367, *C.*
nominare, with two acc., 342, *C.*
Nominative, 7, *K*; subject, 153, *A*; omitted, *id.* Rem. 1 and 2; two or more of different persons, 155, *D*; —— after verbs, 167 – 169; after interjections, 643, *C.*
nomine, 409, Rem. 1.
non, "no," 445, IV.; before and after a negation, 543, III.; place of, 651, V.
nondum, 325.
non est quod, 588, Rem. 1.
non magis (or *minus*) — *quam*, 227, Rem. 9.
non modo — sed, 635. *E.*
non modo, for *non modo non*, 584, note.
nonne, 545, II.
non nemo, *non nihil*, 543, III.
nunquam, 533, III.
nonnullus, 63, and 65, Rem. 2.
non nisi, only, 543, III.
non quo, *non quod*, 576, III.
nostri and *nostrum*, distinguished, 53, Rem.
Nouns, cases of, 7; —— declension of: 1st decl., 8; 2d decl., 10; 3d decl., 12 – 17; 4th decl., 24; 5th decl., 26; plural of all declensions, 44 – 51; —— compound, 60; —— irregular: indeclinable, 61, *E*; defective in case, 61, *F*; defective in number, 67 and 70 – 72; redundant, 81 – 84; —— classification of: common, 88, *E.* 1; collective, *id.* 2; abstract, *id.* 3; proper, *id.* 4; patronymic, *id.* 5; patrials or gentiles, *id.* 6; diminutives, 89. 7; amplificatives, *id.* 8; verbals, *id.* 9; —— gender of, determined by their signification, 483 – 486; determined by declension, 491 – 493; —— Greek, 496 – 498.
nubere, with the dat., 350, *C*, and note.

nullius tertius, 240.
nullius for *neminis*, 85, *F.*
nullus est qui, with the subj., 587, *C.*
nullus non, 543, III.
num, how used, 545, III.
Number, of nouns, 7, *K*; of verbs, 112, *D*; —— of the verb with several subjects, 154, *C*; with one subject and *cum*, 155, Rem. 5.
Numerals, cardinal, 73, *B*; distributive, 74, *C*; list of both classes, 76–78; —— ordinal, 94, *D*; adverbial, *id. E*; list of both classes, 94–96; —— adverbs from, 614. 3, and II. 2, 3.
numquid, in questions, 8, note *.
numquis, how used, 68, *A.*
nunc — nunc, 635, *D.*
nunquam non, 543, III.
nusquam, 613, *B.* I.

O.

O, quantity of final, 11, Rem. 2.
o, interj., 642, *B.* 3; with nom., &c., 643, *C.*
ob, 623, *B.* 1; place of, 652, VII. and Rem. 1.
obire, constr., 332, *A.*
Object, of active verbs in the acc., 112, *F*; remote in the dat., 113, *G.*
Objective genitive, 373, Rem. 2.
Oblique cases, place of, 649, I.
oblivisci, 399, *B.* and 402.
obstare with *quominus* and *ne*, 571, VI.
occurrit ut, 297, *F.*
odi, conjugated, 672. 7.
oe, diphthong, 2.
officere with *quominus* and *ne*, 571, VI.
olere, constr., 327, *C.* 2.
Omission, of *quam* after *plus*, &c., 227, *C*; of personal pronouns before verbs, 153, Rem. 1; of the antecedent, 202, Rem. 8; of the acc. after verbs, 325. 4; of the subject acc., 292, Rem. 12; of the reduplication in compounds, 676, *a*; 680, *b*; 684, *b* and *c*; of nouns before the genit., 375, *b*; of *ut* before the subj., 297, *G*; of *ne* after *cave*, 606, Rem. 3. Compare *Ellipsis.*
omnium, with superlatives, 218.
-on, gen. plur. of Greek nouns, 500, Rem. 6.
"One," "people," "they," how expressed, 330.
operâ alicujus, for *per aliquem*, 420, Rem. 1.
operam dare ut, 294, *C.*
oportebat and *oportuit*, for the subj., 536, *B.* 1.
oportet, constr., 334, *C*, and 335, Rem. 2.
oppidum in appos. with names of towns, 181, Rem. 12, and 309. 4, c.
opus with supine in *u*, 249, *C.*
opus est, constr., 436, Rem. 4.
orare, constr., 295, *D.*
Oratio Obliqua, 595, Rem.
orbare, constr., 435, *B.*
Order or rank, adverbs of, 614.
Ordinal numerals, 94, *D*; list of, *id. F.*
oriundus, sense of, 689 (*orior*).
ortus, with the abl., 445, *C.*
-os, nouns in, 16. 13; quantity of final, 51, Rem.
o si, with the subj., 575, *A.* 1.
-osus, adjectives in, 506. 8.

P.

paene and *prope*, 310.
palam, 625. 6.
Paradigms of declension, to nouns: 1st decl., 8; 2d decl., 10; 3d decl., 12–13; 4th decl., 24; 5th decl., 26; —— to the plural of nouns, 46–49; to compound nouns, 60–61; to Greek nouns, 496, 497, and 499; —— to adjectives, 18 and 21; plural, 49–50; —— to pronouns, personal, 29–30; demonstrative, 36; interrogative, 40; determinative, 42; indefinite, 64–65; to the plural of pronouns, 53–55. —— Paradigms of conjugation, to regular verbs, 664–665; to anomalous verbs, 666–671; to defective verbs, 671–673. On the special tenses, see *Present*, *Imperfect*, &c.
parcere, with the dat., 356, *A.*
par erat, for the subj., 536, *B.* I.
pariter — ac, 212, *B.* 1.
pars, omitted, 193, Rem. 3.
pars — pars with a plural verb, 154, *B.*
particeps with the gen., 391. 4.
Participles, in *ns* declined, 21 and 50. 3, Rem.; with the genit., 392, *B*; in *dus* how used, 117–119; —— how formed, 259–260; in *rus* seldom used in the genit. pl., 261, Rem. 7; used as adjectives or nouns, 260, Rem. 2; of neuter verbs, *id.* Rem. 3; of deponent verbs, *id.* Rem. 4; perfect pass. with active sense, *id.* Rem. 5; perfect active participle, how rendered, 261, Rem. 6; in the *Conjugatio Periphrastica*, 261. *D*; —— agreement, use, and government of, 262; used instead of clauses, 263, *F*; instead of verbal nouns, *id.* Rem. 2; instead of the infin., 262, Rem. 3; perfect part. with *habeo*, *teneo*, &c.,

id. Rem. 4; part. in *rus* after verbs of motion, *id.* Rem. 5; part. in *dus* used to denote an intended effect, *id.* Rem. 6; —— in the ablative absolute: pres. and perf., 451–452; future active, 452, Rem. 2; future passive, *id.* Rem. 3; perfect alone, 455.
Particles, 7. 2.
partim, 336. 2, *a.*
partim — partim, 635, *D.*
Partitives, with the genit. pl., 383–384; with the gen. sing. of collective nouns, 385, Rem. 1; with *ex*, *de*, *inter*, &c., *id.* Rem. 6.
Parts of speech, 6, *J.*
parum, with the gen., 87, *D.*
parvi, *parvo*, see *magni*, *magno*.
Passive voice, 160; paradigms of, 665; —— verbs, construction of, 160, *A*; 165, *H*; nominative after, 167, *A*; 168, *B*; 169. 2; 170. 3; with reflexive sense, 477; with the accus., 341, Rem. 4; in the constr. of the Acc cum Inf., 292, Rem. 9.
patiens, with the genit., 392, *B.*
Patrials or gentiles, 88. 6.
Patronymics, 88. 5.
pensi and *pili habere*, 398, *A.*
penum and *penus*, 82. 4.
Penult, 6; when accented, 6. 2 and 3.
percontari, constr., 341, *B.*
perduim, for *perdam*, 141, Rem.
Perfect tense, definite and indefinite, 236, *A*; —— active, formation of, 236–238; inflected, 238–239; —— passive, 243–244; —— deponent, 245.
perficere ut, 296, *E.*
perinde ac, with the subj., 576. II.
Periods, 659, IV.
Periphrastic, forms of the verb, 131, *D* and *E*; conjugations, 261, *D.*
peritus with the genit., 391. 2.
permittere, constr., 294. *B.*
Persons of verbs, 110, *B*; with nominatives of different persons, 155, *D.*
persuadere, constr., 295, *D.*
pertaesus, in an active sense, 260, Rem. 5.
petere, constr., 295, *D*, and 342, Rem. 2.
piget, with the acc., 334, *B*; with the genit., 401, *C.*
Place, whither, acc. of, 308, *A*; where, gen. and abl. of, *id. B*; whence, abl. of, *id. C*; adverbs of, 613, *B.* 1.
plenus, with the genit., 391. 4.
plerique, wants the genit., 62. 7, *b.*
Pluperfect tense, use of, 461; formation of, 462, *B*; —— inflection of, active, *id. C*; passive and deponent, 464–465.
Plural, of nouns and adjectives, 44–50: of pronouns, 52–55; of verbs after collective nouns, 154, *B*; of abstract nouns, 67, note; of the adjective belonging to two or more nouns, 99, *B.*
Pluralia tantum, 70–72.
plus, declined, 104, *C*; with the genit., *id. D*; without *quam*, 105, *E.*
poenitet, constr., 334, *B*, and 401, *C.*
pondo, 61. 5; —— *libram*, 375, Rem. 2.
poscere, constr., 341, *B.*
Position, syllables long by, 5, *H.* 1.
Positive degree, 212. *A.* 1; with comparative force after prepositions, 227, Rem. 5; for the superl. after *quam*, 234, Rem. 4.
Possessive pronouns, 29; declined, 8, 10, and 80; used for subject. genit., 374, Rem 4.
possum, conjugated, 667.
post, 623. *B.* I.; —— or *pŏne*, as adverbs, 624, Rem. 5.
postea loci, 382, Rem. 2.
postquam, with the perf. indic., 465.
potens, with the genit., 391. 4.
poterat, for the subj., 536, *B.*
potior, constr., 343, *A.*
potius superfluous, 227, Rem. 6.
praebere, with two acc., 342, *C.*
Predicate, 147, *A*; modified or expanded, 148, *C*; simple or compound, 149, *E*; nouns in the —— after neuter and passive verbs, 167; adjective, pronoun, or participle, 168, *B.*
praeditus, with the abl., 444, *B.*
praeesse, with the dat., 359. 3.
Prepositions, 623, *A*; with the acc., *id. B.* I.; with the abl., 624. II.; with acc. or abl., *id.* III.; in composition, 625–626, and 124–126; change of final consonant in, 124, Rem. 2; inseparable, 626, II.; —— compounded with verbs governing the dat., 358, *B*; the acc., 332, *A*; the abl., 360, Rem. 2; —— place of, in sentences, 652, VII.
Present tense, active indicative, 112, *D*; subjunctive, 141, *A*; passive, 161–163; deponent, 173–174.
Preterite verbs, 271, Rem. 9, and 672.
Price, genitive of, *tanti*, *quanti*, &c., 398, *A*; ablative of, 434, *A.*
primus for *primum*, 187, Rem. 6.
primusquam, constr., 578, VII.
pro se quisque, with a plural verb, 154, *B*, Rem. 2.
procul, with the abl., 625, Rem. 6.
prohibere, with *quominus* or *ne*, 571, VI.

pro nihilo putare, 399, Rem. 4.
Pronouns, classified, 28–29; personal, 29; possessive, 28, *A.* 4; demonstrative, 36–37; interrogative, 39–40; relative, 41; determinative, 42; indefinite, 64–66; —— plural of all these, 52–55.
prope as prep. and adv., 624, Rem. 4.
Proper nouns, 88, *E.* 4.
proprium, understood, 410, *B.*
proprius, with the genit., 391. 3.
prosum, how conjugated, 667, Rem. 2.
Protasis, 551, *B.*
prudens, with the gen., 391. 2.
-pte, suffix, 33, note *.
pudet, with the acc., 334, *B*; with the genit., 401, *C.*
pugnam pugnare, 326, *B.*
punior, as deponent, 689.
purgare, with the gen., 408, *A.*
Purpose, indicated by *ut* and subj., 566, I.; negatively by *ne*, 567, II.; by *quo*, 569, IV.; by the relative with the subj., 588, *D*; by the supine in *um*, 248, *A*; by an infinitive, gerund, or participle, 249, Rem. 4.
putare, with two acc., 342, *C.*

Q.

Q, sound of, 3, *E.* 8.
qua, correlative, 615, IV.
qua — qua, 635, *D.*
quaeso, 673. 10.
qualis, defined, 80, *B.*
qualis — talis, 208, Rem. 11.
quam after comparatives, 225–226; omitted, 227, *C*; with the superlative, 233, *D* and *E*; —— *pro*, 227, Rem. 7; —— *qui* with the subj., 587, Rem. 3.
quam est, sunt, &c., 225, Rem. 3, and 226, notes.
quamquam and *quamvis*, constr., 577, V.
Quantity, of syllables, 5, *H*; of the terminations of nouns, 50–51; adverbs of, 614. 2; adjectives and nouns of, with the genit., 381, *A.*
quanto with comparatives, 230. Rem. 4.
quantum with the genit., 381, *A.* 2.
quantum possum, 587, note *.
quasi, with the subj., 576, II.
-que, enclitic, how used, 76, *H.*
-que — et, 634, *C.*
queo, conjugated, 670. 10.
Questions, how asked, 544–546; disjunctive, 547–548; doubtful, 560, *C*; indirect, 560–562.
qui interrogative, 39, *A*; relative, 41, *B*; plural of, 54, *E*; agreement of, 200, *A*; with the subj., 586–591; abl., for *quo*, 143, note †.
quicumque, 41, *C*; with the indic., 537, II.
quid with the genit., 381, *A.* 3.
quidem, declined, 64, *A*; defined, 65, Rem. 2.
quid plura? 154, Rem. 5.
quidquam, how used, 19, note *.
quin with the subj., 569, V.; with the indic. and imper., 571, Rem. 5.
quippe qui, 589, *E.*
quis, declined, 40; —— and *qui* disting., 40, Rem. 2.
quis est qui, with the subj., 587, *C.*
quisnam and *quinam*, 40, Rem. 1.
quisquam and *quispiam*, 34.
quisque, 455–456; with comparatives, 232, *B*; used distributively, 650, IV.
quisquis with the indic., 537, II.
quo, correlative, 615, IV.; with comparatives, 230, Rem. 4; with the genit., 382, Rem. 2 and 3; for *ut eo*, 569, IV.
quoad, constr., 578, VI.
quocum, quacum, quibuscum, for *cum quo*, 652, VII.
quod for *id quod*, 202, Rem. 8; referring to *res*, 207, Rem. 8; to an entire clause, 208, Rem. 9; in restrictive clauses, 587, Rem. 2; with the genit., 381, *A.* 3.
quod, conj., "because," 320; "that" or "because," 298, *H*; in explanatory clauses, 299, Rem. 3; "as to," "as far as," "since," *id.* Rem. 5.
quominus, with the subj., 571, VI.
quoniam, constr., 630.
quo secius, 572, Rem. 2.
quot — tot, 208, Rem. 11.
quoties or *quotiens?* 94, *E.*
quotus? 94, *D.*
quum or *cum*, with the indic., 579, *B.* I.; with the subj., 580. II. and III.; with the historical inf., 581, Rem. 2.
quum primum, with the perf. indic., 278.
quum — tum, 535, *D.*

R.

raptum eunt, for *eripiunt*, 248, Rem. 1.
-re, for *-ris*, 2d person sing. of passive verbs, 162, note.
-re, insepar. prep., 626, II. 3.
recordari, with the genit., 399, *B.*
recusare, with *quominus* and *ne*, 571, VI.
redolere, with the acc., 327, *C.* 2.
Redundant nouns, 81–84.

Reduplication, 237, Rem. 6; dropped in compos., 676, *a*; 680, *b*; 684, *b* and *c*, &c.
refert, constr., 411, *C*.
refertus, constr., 391. 1.
Reflexive, pronouns, construction of, 469–472; instead of demonstratives, 472, Rem. 1; —— verbs, 477, *A* and *B*.
Relative, pronouns, 41; plural of, 54–55; agreement of, 200; person of, 201, Rem. 4; antecedent repeated with, *id.* Rem. 6; anteced. expressed with the relative only, *id.* Rem. 6; relat. without antecedent, 202, Rem. 8; attracted into the case of the antecedent, *id.* Rem. 9; —— referring to two or more nouns, 206. 1; to a collective noun, *id.* 2; to a proper name and a generic term, *id.* 3; in agreement with a descriptive noun, 207. 4; in agreement with an adjective, *id.* 5; in agreement with a noun of a different gender, *id.* 6; referring to an antecedent implied, *id.* 7; referring to a noun of different gender, *id.* 8; referring to an entire clause, 208. 9; in the sense of *such, in consideration of*, *id.* 10; —— adjectives, *id.* 11; —— used instead of demonstratives, *id.* 12; —— followed by the subj., 586–590; —— place of, 653, *C*; —— clauses, after and before those of the antecedent, 201, Rem. 5, and 657, II.
relinquitur and *reliquum est ut*, 297, *F.* 1.
reliqua, "as for the rest," 336, Rem. 2. *a*.
reminisci, constr., 399, *B*.
reperiuntur qui, with the subj., 587, *C*.
repugnare with *quominus* and *ne*, 571, VI.
res, declined, 26, *A*; how used, 29, note.
respublica, declined, 61.
restat ut, 297, *F.* 1.
revertor, how used, 321, note.
reus, with the gen., 410, Rem. 5.
-rimus and *-rilis* of verbs, quantity of, 520, note.
rogare, with two acc., 341, *B*; with *ut* or *ne*, 295, *D*.
Roots, of nouns and adjectives, 213, note *; —— of verbs, 111, Rem. 1; second, of verbs, 237–238; third, 243, Remarks; lists of verbs irregular in the 2d and 3d roots, 673–686.
rudis, with the gen., 391. 2.
rus, constr., 157, *F*, and 310. 6, *b*.
-rus, participles in, 131, *D.* 2; denoting a purpose, 143, *D*, and 249, Rem. 4; with *sum, fuit*, &c., 261, *D*; in the ablat. absol., 452, Rem. 2.

S.

S, power of, 3, *E.* 9; final, elided, 4, note.
saepe, compared, 220, *A*.
salve, defect. verb, 672. 8.
sapere, with the acc., 327, *C.* 2.
satis or *sat*, with the genit., 86. *C*; compounds of, with the dat., 359. 4.
satus, with the abl., 545, *C*.
scilicet, 546, Rem. 1.
scito, for *sci*, imperat., 606, Rem. 1.
se and *suus*, construction of, 469–473; *se* before infinitive omitted, 292, Rem. 12.
se, inseparable prefix, 626. 4.
secus for *sexus*, 61, *E.* 5, and 375, Rem. 2.
sed and *autem*, 38, *B*.
Semi-deponentia, 161. 4.
Sentences, construction of, 147–150; simple and compound, 149, *E*; form of, 541; affirmative, 542, I.; negative, *id.* II.; interrogative, 543–548; conditional, 535, III. and 551–554; arrangement of, 657–659.
sequitur ut, 297, *F.* 1.
seu or *sive*, 632, I. 2, 550, and 388.
Short syllables, 5, *H*.
si and *nisi*, with the indicat., 535, III.; with the subj., 551–554.
sicut, with the subj., 576, II.
similis, constr., 351, *D.* 1.
Simple, subject and predicate, 148, *D*; sentences, 148.
simul, with the abl., 625. 6.
simul — simul, 635, *D*.
simul ac or *atque*, with the perf. indic., 278.
sin, sin autem, 554.
sin minus, 554.
Singular of nouns for the plur., 68. 6.
Singularia tantum, 67, *B*.
singuli and *terni*, always distributive, 74, note ‖.
siqui, siquis, 64 and 554.
sis, for *si vis*, 642, Rem. 1.
sive — sive, with the indic., 537, III.
sodes, for *si audies*, 642, Rem. 1.
soleo, 161. 4, and 241.
solum, tantum, only, 79.
solus, declined, 40, note ‡.
Space, extent of, in the acc., 440, *D*.
stare, to cost, with the gen., 398, *A*; with the abl., 434, *A*.

studere, with the dat., 356, *A*; with the inf. or *ut*, 294, *C*.
studiosus, with the gen., 391. 1.
suadeo, constr., 295, *D*.
sub, constr., 151, *H*.
Subject of a sentence, 147, *A*; how expanded, 148, *B*; simple and compound, *id. D*; place of, 649, I.
Subject-accusative, 287, *A*; of pronouns omitted, 292, Rem. 12.
Subject-nominative, agreement of verb with, 153, *A*; omitted, *id.* Rem. 1 and 2; its place supplied by an infinitive, 154, Rem. 3; before the historical infinitive, *id.* Rem. 4; two or more with a plural verb, *id. C*; with a singular verb, 155, Rem. 1–5; two or more of different persons, 155, *D*.
Subjective genitive, explained, 373, Rem. 2; represented by the possessive pronoun, 374, Rem. 4.
Subjunctive mood, 110. 5; present, 141–142; use of, 142–143, and 551; first future, how expressed, 515–516; future perfect, 523; —— in hypothetical propositions, 551–554; in a potential sense, 557; expressing a wish, command, request, permission, 558, *C*–560; in doubtful questions, 560, *C*; in indirect questions, *id. D*.–562; after conjunctions, 566–572 and 575–581; after relatives, 586–591; in interjected clauses, 595–598; exchanging with the Acc. cum Infin., 294–298.
Substantives, plural of, 44–49; classification and derivation of, 88–89; used as adjectives, 187, Rem. 5; expressed by a participle, 263, Rem. 2; verbal, with the case of their verb, 326. 7, *a*. See under *Nouns*.
succensere, with the dat., 356, *A*; with *quod*, 298, *H*.
sui, declined, 29, *B*, and 53, *C*.
sui, *sibi*, *se*, how used, 469–478.
sum, conjugated, 666; compounds of, 667; with the dat. of the possessor, 350, *C*, Rem. 1; with two datives, 366, *B*; with the genit. of the value, 398, *A*; with the genit. of quality and measure, 375, ; with the genit. and *res*, *negotium*, &c. understood, 410, *B*; with the abl. of quality, 427, *C*; with the abl. of the value, 434, Rem. 1.
sunt qui with the subj., 587, *C*.
super and *subter*, by what cases followed, 344, II. Rem. 2.
superest ut, constr., 297, *F*. 1.
Superiority, relation of, how expressed, 212, *B*. 3.
Superlative degree, 212; regular formation of, 213; —— construction of, 231–234; superl. of comparison, 231, I.; of eminence, *id.* II.; with *quisque* and *quique*, 232, *B*; two superl. connected by *ita* . . . *ut*, 232, *C*; in connection with *quam*, *quantus*, *qui*, &c., 233, *D*; its force, how increased, *id. E*.
superstes, constr., 353. 10, and note.
Supines, 110. 8, and 664–665; wanting in many verbs, 249, Rem. 4; —— in *um* after verbs of motion, 248, *A*; govern the cases of their verbs, *id. B*; —— in *u* after *fas*, *nefas*, and adjectives, 249, *C*; after verbs, 250, Rem. 3; constructions instead of, *id.* Rem. 4.
supplicare, with the dat., 350, *C*, and note.
sustuli not from *sufferre*, 669, under *fero*.
suus distinct from *ejus*, 33, *A*, and 470, Rem.; construction of, 469–472.
Syllables, 4, *G*; —— division of words into, *id.* 3, *a*–*d*; —— quantity of, 5, *H*.
Syncopation of tenses derived from the second root, 239, Remarks.
Synæresis, 4, *F*.
Synecdoche, 336, Rem. 1.
Syntax, of the accusative, 324–344; of the dative, 349–369; of the genitive, 373–412; of the ablative, 417–455.

T.

taedet, with the acc., 334, *B*; with the genit., 401, *C*.
talis, defined, 80, *B*.
talis, *tam*, &c. before *qui*, 586, *B*.
talis — *qualis*, constr., 201, Rem. 3, and 208. 11.
tam — *quam*, in comparisons, 212, *B*. 1.
tamen, 632, II. 5.
tamquam, with the subj., 576, II.
tanti, *quanti*, &c., as gen. of price, 398.
tanto with comparatives, 230, Rem. 4.
tantum with the genit., 103; adv. in the sense of "only," 79.
tantum abest, *ut* — *ut*, 197, *C*.
tantus before *qui*, 586, *B*.
tantus — *quantus*, constr., 201, Rem. 3, and 208. 11.
taxare, constr., 398, *A*, and 434, *A*.
-te, suffix, 29, *B*, Rem.
tempore and *in tempore* disting., 316, *B*, Rem. 1; —— omitted, 193, Rem. 3.

Tenses, 110; derivation of, 129–132; —— of the indicative how used, 527; —— of the subjunctive, in dependent clauses, 528–530; similar and dissimilar, 529, Rem. 1; of the indic. for the subj., 536, *B.* I. and 537, Rem. 1 and 2; —— of the subj. in hypothetical sentences, how used, 551, *B.* I. and II.; used one for another, 552, Rem. 1; present and perfect subj. and future indic. for the imperative, 606, Rem. 4; of the infinitive mood, see under *Infinitive*. Compare also *Present*, *Imperfect*, &c.
tempus traducere, *fallere*, &c., 479.
tenax, with the genit., 393, Rem. 2.
tentare, constr., 370.
tenus, after its case, 175, *B.*
-ter, adverbs in, 616, *C.* 1.
Terminations of nouns and adjectives, 50, *C*; of verbs, 664–665.
ti and *ci*, sound of, 3, *E.* 10.
Time, construction of *how long?* 315, *A*; *when?* 316, *B*; *within which*, 317, *C*; *how long ago?* *id.* *D*; *how long before* or *after?* 318, *E*; various other relations of, 319; —— adverbs of, 614, II.
timens, with the genit., 392, *B.*
timere, with *ne* and *ut*, 568, III.
toto and *tota*, abl. without *in*, 309, note *.
Towns, names of. See *Places*.
tradere with the part. in *dus*, 264, Rem. 6.
tribuere with the acc. and dat., 349, *B.*
tu, declined, 29; plural, 52, *A.*
tum — tum, 685, *D.*
tum temporis, 382, Rem. 4.

U.

U, sound of, 2; quantity of final, 24, *A*, Rem.
ubi and *ubicunque*, with the genit., 382, Rem. 2.
ullus declined, 65; use of, *id.* Rem. 4.
ultra, prep., 623, *B.* I.; in compos., 626. 3.
ultum ire, for *ulcisci*, 248, Rem. 1.
-ulus, *ula*, *ulum*, diminut. in, 89. 7.
-um, for *orum*, 47, note *; of distributives, 74, note †; adverbs in, 616. 2.
unde with the genit., 382, Rem. 2.
-undus for *endus* in participles, 117, Rem.
uni, *unae*, *una*, when used, 73, Rem. 1.
unquam, 234.
unus, declined. 73; how used, 75, *F.*
unusquisque, 456.
urbs, in appos. with names of towns, 181, Rem. 12, and 309. 4, *c* and *d*.
-us, nouns in, 10, *A*; 15, *G.* 14; 24, *A.*
usquam and *uspiam*, use of, 139, *F*; with the genit., 382, Rem. 2.
usque, constr., 175.
usus est, constr., 436, Rem. 5.
ut, with the subj., 566 and (instead of the Acc. cum Inf.) 294–295; in the sense of *so that*, 567, Rem. 1; after verbs of fearing, for *ne non*, 568; —— as adverb of manner, 567, Rem. 2; in the sense of *as soon as*, *id.*; in the sense of *would that*, 575; —— omitted, 297, *G.*
utcunque, with the indic., 537, II.
uter, declined, 39, *A.*
uterque and *ambo*, defined, 97, *A*; with the genit. pl., 383, *B.* 2; with a plur. verb, 154, *B*, Rem. 2.
uti. See *ut*.
utilis, constr., 351. 2; with the dat. of the gerund, 116, *b*.
utilius fuit, for subj., 536, *B.*
utinam, constr., 575, *A.* I.
ut ne, 568, Rem. 3.
ut non, 567, Rem. 1; for *quin*, 571, Rem. 2.
utor, with the abl., 343, *A.*
utpote qui, 589, *E.*
ut qui, 589, *E.*
utrique, how used, 98, Rem. 3.
utrum, in double questions, 547, II.
utut, with the indic., 537, II.
uxor, omitted, 375, *b*.

V

V, character of, 3, *E.* 5.
vacare, with the abl., 435, *B.*
vacuus, without the abl., 436, Rem. 3.
vae, with the dat., 369, *E.* 2.
valere, constr., 531.
vapulo, passive, 160, *A.* 3.
vel and *aut*, 388, *C*; *vel* with the superl., 233, *E.* 1.
vel — vel, 634, *C.*
velim, with subj., 557, *A*, and 558, *B.*
vellem, how used, 558, Rem. 2.
velut and *velut si* with the subj., 576, II.
vendere, with the genit., 398, *A*; with the abl., 434, *A.*
Verba sensuum et affectuum with the Acc. cum Infin., 288, II. 1; *verba declarandi* with the same, 290. 3.
Verbals, nouns, 89. 9; with the acc., 326. 7; adjectives, in *bilis* with the dat., 353, 10; in *ax* with the genit., 393, Rem. 2.

Verbs, transitive, neuter and deponent, 109–110; tenses, moods, and conjugations of, 110; principal parts and roots of, 111; —— conjugation of: regular, 664–665; anomalous, 666–671; defective, 671–673; impersonal, 301–304; —— compound, 124–126; —— primary and derivative, 136; frequentatives, 136. 1; desideratives, *id.* 2; inchoatives, *id.* 3; diminutives, 137. 4; intensives, *id.* 5; denominatives, *id. C*: —— neuter want the passive, 160, Rem. 2; semi-deponent, 161, Rem. 4; preteritive, 672; agreement of, 315, *A*; nominative after, 167–170; omitted, 325. 5; place of, in sentences, 649, I.; —— lists of verbs irreg. in the perf. and supine, 673–686; lists of deponent verbs, 686–689; lists of inchoatives, 689–690.
Verbs signifying *willingness, desire, permission*, &c., constr., 292, *B*, and 297, *G*.
Verbs of *resolving* or *endeavoring*, constr., 294, *C*.
Verbs of *requesting, exhorting, commanding*, constr., 295, *D*.
Verbs of *causing, effecting*, &c., constr., 296, *E*.
Verbs signifying *joy, sorrow, surprise*, and *wonder*, constr., 298, *H*.
Verbs of *inquiring, asking, demanding*, with two accusatives, 341, *B*.
Verbs of *naming, calling, considering*, &c., with two accusatives, 342, *C*.
Verbs signifying *to benefit, favor, please, trust*, &c., with the dative, 356, *A*.
Verbs of *valuing, buying, selling*, &c., with the genit., 398, *A*; with the ablat., 434, *A*.
Verbs of *reminding, remembering*, and *forgetting*, with the genit., 399, *B*.
Verbs of *plenty* or *want*, &c., with the abl., 435, *B*.
Verbs denoting *separation, difference*, or *distance*, with the abl., 436, *C*.
Verbs of *placing, putting, standing, sitting*, &c., with *in*, 446, *F*.
verisimile est with the Acc. cum Infin., 288, Rem. 2; with *ut*, 297, Rem. 1.
veritum est, impers., 334, *B*.
vero, "yes," 545, IV. 2; "but," place of, 654. II.
versus, prep., after its case, 344, Rem. 1.
verum, conj., place of, 654.
verum est, with the Acc. cum. Inf., 288, Rem. 2; with *ut*, 297, Rem. 1.
vescor, with the abl., 443, *A*.
vestri and *vestrum*, 53, Rem.
vetare, constr., 296, Rem. 3; with *quominus* and *ne*, 571, VI.
vicem, for *vice*, 336, *a*.
vicinus, with the dat., 352. 5.
videlicet, 617. 7.
videor, I seem, 169, *C* 3.
videre ut, 294, *C*.
vitam vivere, 326, *B*.
vocare with two acc., 342, *C*.
Vocative case, 7, *H*; of proper names in *ius*, 10, note †; use of the, 643–644.
Voices of verbs, active and passive, 110. 4; conjugated, 664–665.
volo, conjugated, 667. 3; with the nomin. and infin., 127, *F*; with the Acc. cum Inf., 289. 2; with *ut*, 294, *B*; with *ut* omitted, 297, *G*.
voti or *votorum damnari*, 410, note.
Vowel, before another vowel, 5, *H*. 3; before two consonants, *id.* 1; before a mute and liquid, *id.* 4.
Vowels, sounds of, 1, *C*.

W.

Words, classification of, 6, *J*; order of, in sentences, 648–657.

X.

X, sound of, 3; nouns in, 17. 19.

Y.

Y, sound of, 2; nouns in, 16. 4.

Z.

Z, power of, 3.

THE END.

ERRATA.

Page	Line	
2	15	read "*fret*," instead of "*fre.*"
40	16	read "NOM. ŭtĕr," instead of "NOM. ŭt."
89	12	read "puercŭlus," instead of "puerlŭlus."
97	27	read "I have them not," instead of "I have it not."
127	28	read "*nolo*," instead of "*volo.*"
141	34	read "*comĕdim*" for "*commedim*," and in the line below, "*comĕdam*" for "*commedam.*"
145	1	read "*occīdĕre*," instead of "*accīdĕre.*"
167	20	read "*nŏvus*," instead of "*nōvus.*"
220	36	read "Lesson XCIII," instead of "Lesson LXX."
246	16	read "*Quid éi*," instead of "*Quid éo.*"
272	36	read "(*venîret,*)" instead of "(*vénĕret.*)"
293	22	read "not lawful," instead of "now lawful."
315	12	read "*Revertûne*," instead of "*Revertátne.*"
341	9	read "tondēre," instead of "tondĕre."
371	14	read "visĕre," and on the line below, "(visĕre)," instead of "visêre."
400	11	read "*prístĭnae*," instead of "*pristínae.*"
532	15	read "nancisci," instead of "naucisci."
545	31	read "sine perturbatione."
576	41	read "succensêrem," instead of "succénserem."
578	26	read "has life in him," instead of "keeps up his spirits."
585	9	read "*in itinĕre vestro*," instead of "*itinĕre tuo.*"
593	44	read "Cujas," instead of "Cujus."
629	23	read "They looked," instead of "They look."
644	56	read "Quot, quantas," instead of "Quot, quantus."
650	18	read "*detrimentōque*," instead of "*detrimentaque.*"

KEY TO ADLER'S LATIN GRAMMAR

A

KEY

TO THE EXERCISES CONTAINED IN

ADLER'S PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE.

PREPARED BY THE AUTHOR.

BOSTON:
SANBORN, BAZIN & ELLSWORTH.
1858.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1858, by

G. J. ADLER,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Massachusetts.

ELECTROTYPED AT THE
BOSTON STEREOTYPE FOUNDRY.

PRINTED BY
GEORGE C. RAND & AVERY.

PREFACE.

I HAVE added this KEY to the Exercises of my PRACTICAL GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE, for the benefit of teachers, and of such students, as may not have the advantages of more extended oral or written authority upon the subject. But since the Latin, by the use or absence of particles, exhibits a far greater variety of construction in interrogative sentences, than the English, with certain shades of distinction not always indicated by the latter idiom, the questions, as here put, are not proposed as the only form, in which they may occur in every instance, and the student may not unfrequently have them in a different shape, though equally correct, according to the rules advanced in the several lessons and developed at large in Lessons LXXXV and XCVII. It is hoped, however, that this Latin version of the Exercises may serve, if not as an

absolute standard, at least as a useful aid to the efforts of the teacher, who, in his explanations, variations, and amplifications, can enhance the interest of the study at his pleasure, and that in this sense, properly used, it may prove an acceptable guide in the course here pointed out.

G. J. ADLER.

BOSTON, *March*, 1858.

KEY

TO

ADLER'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

1. DICTATA PRIMA.

HABESNE mensam (Estne tibi mensa)? — Etiam, domine, mensam habeo (Est mihi mensa). — Habesne mensam meam (Estne tibi mensa mea)? — Mensam tuam habeo (Est mihi mensa tua). — Habesne pennam tuam (Estne tibi penna tua)? — Pennam meam habeo (Est mihi penna mea). — Habesne saccharum (Estne tibi saccharum)? — Saccharum habeo (Est mihi saccharum). — Habesne saccharum meum (Estne tibi saccharum meum)? — Saccharum tuum habeo (Est mihi saccharum tuum). — Habesne chartam (Estne tibi charta)? — Chartam habeo (Est mihi charta). — Habesne chartam tuam (Estne tibi charta tua)? — Chartam meam habeo (Est mihi charta mea). — Habesne sal (Estne tibi sal? — Sal habeo (Est mihi sal). — Habesne sal meum (Estne tibi sal meum)? — Sal tuum habeo (Est mihi sal tuum).

2. DICTATA ALTERA.

Habesne pileum pulchrum (Estne tibi pileus pulcher)? — Etiam, domine, pileum pulchrum habeo (Est mihi pileus pulcher). — Habesne pileum meum nequam (Estne tibi pileus meus nequam)? — Habeo pileum tuum nequam (Est mihi pileus tuus nequam). — Habesne (Estne tibi) sal vile? — Habeo (Est mihi) sal vile. — Habesne (Estne tibi) sal tuum bonum? — Sal meum bonum habeo (Est mihi sal meum bonum). — Quod sal habes (tibi est)? — Sal tuum bonum habeo (mihi est). — Quod saccharum habes (tibi est)? — Saccharum meum bonum habeo (mihi est). — Habesne (Estne

tibi) saccharum meum bonum? — Saccharum tuum bonum habeo (mihi est). — Quam mensam habes (Quæ mensa tibi est)? — Mensam pulchram habeo (Mihi est mensa pulchra). — Habesne mensam meam pulchram (Estne tibi mensa mea pulchra)? — Mensam tuam pulchram habeo (Est mihi mensa tua pulchra). — Quam chartam habes (Quæ charta tibi est)? — Chartam vilem habeo (Charta mihi vilis est). — Habesne chartam meam turpem (Estne tibi charta mea turpis)? — Chartam tuam turpem habeo (Est mihi charta tua turpis). — Quem pileum vilem habes (Qui pileus vilis tibi est)? — Meum pileum vilem habeo (Pileus meus vilis mihi est). — Quam tæniam pulchram habes (Quæ tænia pulchra tibi est)? — Habesne pennam meam pulchram (Estne tibi penna mea pulchra)? — Habeo pennam tuam pulchram (Est mihi penna tua pulchra).

3. DICTATA TERTIA.

Habesne mensam ligneam (Num tibi est mensa lignea)? — Non, domine, eam non habeo (Non, domine, non est). — Quam mensam habes (Quæ tibi mensa est)? — Mensam ligneam habeo (Mensa mihi est lignea). — Habesne (Estne tibi) candelabrum meum aureum? — Non habeo (Non est). — Quod tibiale habes (Quod tibi tibiale est)? — Tibiale linteum habeo (mihi est). — Num tibiale meum linteum habes (tibi est)? — Tibiale tuum linteum non habeo. — Quam togam habes (Quæ toga tibi est)? — Togam meam e panno habeo. — Quem equum habes (Qui equus tibi est). — Equum ligneum habeo (Equus est mihi ligneus). — Num calceum meum scorteum habes (Num tibi calceus meus scorteus est)? — Non habeo (Non est). — Ecquid equum plumbeum habes (Estne tibi equus plumbeus)? — Non habeo (Non est). — Habesne equum tuum ligneum bonum? — Non habeo. — Quod lignum habes (tibi est)? — Lignum tum bonum habeo (mihi est). — Num aurum meum bonum habes (tibi est)? — Non habeo (Non est). — Quod aurum habes (tibi est)? — Aurum bonum habeo (mihi est). — Quem lapidem habes (Qui lapis tibi est)? — Lapidem tuum pulchrum habeo (Est mihi lapis tuus pulcher). — Quam tæniam habes (Quæ tænia tibi est)? — Tæniam tuam auream habeo (Tænia tua aurea mihi est). — Habesne canem meum formosum (Estne tibi canis meus formosus)? — Habeo (Est). — Habesne equum meum turpem (Num est tibi equus meus turpis)? — Non habeo (Non est).

4. DICTATA QUARTA.

Habesne riscum scorteum? — Riscum scorteum non habeo. — Num tibi est riscus meus bellus? — Non est mihi riscus tuus bellus. — Quem riscum habes? — Riscum ligneum habeo. — Habesne orbiculum fibulatorium meum vetulum? — Non habeo. — Quæ pecunia tibi est? — Est mihi pecunia bona. — Quem caseum habes? — Caseum vetulum habeo. — Estne tibi aliquid? — Est mihi aliquid. — Habesne canem meum magnum? — Non habeo. — An aurum tuum bonum habes? — Habeo. — Quem canem habes? — Canem sartoris habeo. — Num tibi est magnus vicini canis *? — Non est. — An tibi est aurea canis tænia? — Non vero, domine, non est. — Quam togam habes? — Bonam sartoris togam habeo. — Num tibi est vicini panis bonus? — Non est. — Habesne auream sartoris mei tæniam? — Habeo. — Estne tibi tænia canis mei belli? — Non est. — Habesne bonum pistoris boni equum? — Habeo. — Num equum sartoris boni habes? — Non habeo. — Esurisne? — Esurio. — Num es cupidus somni (somniculosus)? — Non sum cupidus somni. — Quod candelabrum habes? — Aureum pistoris mei boni candelabrum habeo.

5. DICTATA QUINTA.

Habesne librum meum (Num librum meum habes)? — Non habeo. — Quem librum habes? — Librum meum bonum habeo. — Estne tibi aliquid turpe? — Nihil turpe habeo (Non est mihi quidquam turpe). — Aliquid belli habeo (Est mihi aliquid belli). — Quæ mensa tibi est? — Est mihi mensa pistoris. — Utrum tibi est (Estne tibi) canis pistoris an vicini? — Est mihi canis vicini. — Quid habes? — Nihil habeo. — Habesne saccharum bonum an nequam? — Bonum habeo. — Utrum vicini equum habes bonum an malum? — Bonum habeo. — Aureumne tibi candelabrum est an argenteum? — Est mihi candelabrum argenteum. — Habesne chartam vicini mei an pistoris? — (Illam) pistoris tui habeo. — Utrum esuris an satis? — Esurio. — Esne (Utrum es) somniculosus an fessus? — Fessus sum. — Quid est tibi pulchri? — Non est mihi quidquam pulchri (Nihil pulchri habeo). — Habesne aliquid

* On this arrangement see Grammar, page 650, Rem. 2.

turpe? — Nihil turpe habeo. — Num calceum scorteum habes? — (Eum) non habeo. — Quid boni tibi est? — Est mihi bonum saccharum (Bonum saccharum habeo).

6. DICTATA SEXTA.

Utrum pannum habes (Habesne pannum) tuum an meum? — Neque tuum neque meum habeo. — Neque meum panem nec sartoris habeo. — Habesne baculum meum an tuum? — Meum habeo. — Utrum tibi est calceus sutoris an mercatoris? — Non est mihi nec sutoris nec mercatoris. — Num tibi est toga fratris mei? — Non est. — Quam chartam habes? — Chartam amici tui habeo. — Habesne canem meum an (illum) amici mei? — Amici tui (canem) habeo. — Utrum tibiale linteum habes meum an fratris mei? — Nec tuum nec fratris tui habeo. — Utrum tibi est (Estne tibi) bonus pistoris mei boni panis an (ille) amici mei? — Non est mihi neque pistoris tui boni neque amici tui. — Quem panem habes? — Meum habeo. — Quæ tænia tibi est? — Est mihi tua. — Utrum caseum habes bonum an nequam? — Nec bonum nec nequam habeo (Non habeo neque bonum nec nequam). — Habesne aliquid? — Nihil habeo. — Utrum canem meum bellum an turpem habes? — Ego nec canem tuum bellum nec turpem habeo. — Num tibi est baculum amici mei? — Non est. — Utrum es cupidus somni an esuris? — Neque cupidus somni sum neque esurio. — Utrum sal habes bonum an vile? — Nec bonum nec vile habeo (Non habeo nec bonum nec vile). — Utrum tibi est equus meus an hominis? — Non est mihi neque tuus neque hominis. — Quid habes? — Nihil pulchri habeo. — Esne fessus (Num fessus es)? — Non sum fessus.

7. DICTATA SEPTIMA.

Quem canem habes? — Ego neque pistoris neque amici mei canem habeo. — Num es somniculosus? — Non sum somniculosus. — Esurio. — Non esuris. — Sitione? — Non sitis. — Num embolus mihi est (Estne mihi embolus)? — Non vero, domine, non est. — Habeone lignum fabri tignarii? — Non habes. — An ego bonum Francogalli umbraculum habeo? — Habes. — Utrum ego clavos ferreos habeo fabri tignarii an tuos? — Meos habes. — Neque illos fabri tignarii neque meos

habes. — Quem stilum cerussatum habeo? — Francogalli habes. — Tuumne ego digiti munimentum habeo an sartoris? — Neque meum habes neque (illud) sartoris. — Quod umbraculum mihi est? — Tibi est umbraculum meum bonum. — Num ego bonum Francogalli mel habeo? — Non habes. — Quod buccellatum habeo? — Vicini mei boni (buccellatum) habes. — Estne tibi coffea mea an pueri mei? — Mihi est (illa) pueri tui boni. — Utrum embolum habes tuum an meum? — Nec tuum nec meum habeo. — Quid habes? — Bonum fratris mei boni stilum cerussatum habeo. — Loquorne vere? — Recte loqueris. — Estne mihi nefas? — Est tibi nefas. — Non est tibi nefas. — Utrum ego recte loquor (Rectene loquor) an erro? — Neque recte loqueris neque erras. — Esurione? — Esuris. — Non es cupidus somni. — Tu neque esuris neque sitis. — Quid boni habeo? — Tu nec coffeam bonam nec saccharum bonum habes. — Quid mihi est (Quid habeo)? — Nihil habes. — Quid habes (Quid tibi est)? — Aliquid pulchri habeo (Est mihi quiddam pulchri).

8. DICTATA OCTAVA.

Utrum esurit (Esuritne) an sitit? — Neque esurit nec sitit. — Habetne amicus pileum meum? — Habet. — Non habet. — Quis ovem meam habet (Cui est ovis mea)? — Amicus tuus eam habet. — Quis saccum meum magnum (amplum) habet? — Pistor eum habet. — Numquid (Num) adolescens librum meum habet? — Non habet. — Quid habet (Quid ei est)? — Nihil habet (Non est ei quidquam). — Utrum ille habet malleum an clavum? — Nec malleum nec clavum habet. — Utrum ei est umbraculum tuum an baculum tuum? — Non est ei neque umbraculum tuum nec baculum tuum. — Utrum habet (Habetne) coffeam meam an saccharum meum? — Nec coffeam tuam nec saccharum tuum habet; mel tuum habet. — Utrum ille buccellatum habet fratris mei an (illud) Francogalli? — Nec fratris tui nec Francogalli habet; (illud) pueri boni habet. — Quam navem habet (Quæ navis ei est)? — Navem meam bonam habet. — Estne ei ovis vetula an vervex (Utrum ei est ovis vetula an vervex)?

9. DICTATA NONA.

Utrum juvenis cultrum habet (Habetne juvenis cultrum) meum an pictoris? — Nec tuum habet nec pictoris. — Quis habet pulchrum fratris mei canem? — Amicus tuus eum habet. — Quid amicus meus tenet? — Panem pistoris bonum tenet. — Vicini boni pullum gallinaceum bonum habet. — Quid habes (tibi est)? — Nihil habeo (Non est mihi quidquam). — Utrum tibi est saccus meus an tuus? — Est mihi saccus amici tui. — Habeone cultrum tuum bonum? — Habes. — Non habes. — Num adolescens (eum) habet? — Non habet. — Quid habet? — Aliquid boni habet. — Nihil nequam habet. — Num est ei aliquid? — Non est ei quidquam. — Num cupidus somni est? — Non est cupidus somni (somniculosus). — Esurit. — Quis esurit? — Juvenis esurit. — Amicus tuus esurit. — Puer (filius) fratris tui esurit. — Sutoris mei frater esurit. — Puer sartoris mei boni sitit. — Qui(s) homo librum meum tenet? — Homo procerus (grandis) eum tenet. — Qui(s) homo equum meum habet? — Amicus tuus eum habet. — Caseum tuum bonum habet. — Habetne eum? — Sane quidem, domine, habet.

10. DICTATA DECIMA.

Utrum tibi est (Estne tibi) bos rustici an (ille) coqui? — Non est mihi nec bos rustici nec coqui. — Habetne rusticus oryzam suam? — Habet. — Num tu eam habes? — Eam non habeo. — Habetne ejus puer scopas ministri? — Habet. — Quis stilum cerussatum pueri habet? — Nemo eum habet. — Utrum frater tuus baculum tenet meum an pictoris? — Tenet nec tuum nec pictoris; suum proprium tenet. — Utrum ei est pecunia bona an vilis? — Est ei neque bona neque vilis. — Utrum equum habet ligneum an plumbeum? — Nec ligneum nec plumbeum equum habet. — Quid ei boni est? — Est ei mel meum bonum. — Num vicini mei puer librum meum habet? — (Eum) non habet. — Quem librum habet? — Librum suum pulchrum habet. — Tenetne librum meum (Meumne librum tenet) an suummet? — Suum proprium tenet. — Quis orbiculum fibulatorium meum aureum tenet? — Nemo eum tenet. — Num quis tibiale meum linteum habet? — Nemo habet.

11. DICTATA UNDECIMA.

Quam navem habet mercator (Quæ navis mercatori est)? — Suam propriam habet. — Quem equum habet amicus meus? — Meum habet. — Ecquid ille canem suum habet? — Non habet. — Quis canem ejus tenet (Cui est canis ejus)? — Nemo eum tenet (Nemini est). — Quis umbraculum fratris mei habet? — Aliquis id tenet. — Quas scopas habet famulus? — Suas proprias habet. — Esuritne aliquis (Num quis esurit)? — Nemo esurit. — Num quis est somniculosus? — Nullus somniculosus est. — Estne aliquis fessus? — Non est quisquam fessus. — Quis recte loquitur? — Nemo recte (vere) loquitur. — Egone (Num ego) buccellatum ejus habeo? — Tu non habes. — An ego fratris illius boni taurum (bovem) habeo? — Non habes. — Quæ gallina mihi est (Quam gallinam habeo)? — Ejus habes. — Num quis errat (Erratne aliquis)? — Nemo errat.

12. DICTATA DUODECIMA.

Quod fœnum habet peregrinus? — (Fœnum) rustici habet. — Num nauta speculum meum habet? — Non habet. — Utrum tibi candela est hæcce an illa? — Est mihi hæcce. — Utrum fœnum tenes horti mei an tui? — Nec tui horti nec mei fœnum teneo, verum (illud) peregrini. — Quod digitabulum tibi est? — Est mihi digitabulum ejus (illius). — Quam sellam habet peregrinus? — Suam propriam habet. — Quis candelam meam bonam habet? — Hic homo eam habet. — Quis speculum illud habet? — Peregrinus (id habet). — Quid famulus tuus tenet? — Arborem hujus horti tenet. — Num librum illius hominis habet? — Non illius hominis, sed hujus pueri librum habet. — Quem bovem habet hicce rusticus? — Vicini tui bovem habet. — Utrum ego epistolam habeo tuam an ejus? — Tu neque meam neque ejus habes, verum amici tui. — Estne tibi fœnum hujus equi? — Non est mihi ejus fœnum, verum ejus solea ferrea. — Habetne frater tuus meam scidulam an suam? — Illam nautæ habet (Scidulam nautæ habet). — Utrum hic peregrinus digitabulum habet meum an suum? — Neque tuum neque suum proprium habet, sed amici sui. — Utrum esuris an sitis? — Ego neque esurio nec sitio, sed cupidus somni sum. — Utrum ille est somniculosus an esurit? — Neque somniculosus est neque esurit, sed fessus est. — Estne mihi culter bonus an nequam? — Non est tibi nec bonus nec

nequam, verum turpis. — Quid mihi est? — Non est tibi quidquam boni, sed aliquid nequam (malum). — Quis asinum meum habet? — Rusticus eum habet.

13. DICTATA TERTIA DECIMA.

Num tibi est hortus, qui mihi est? — Non est mihi is, qui tibi est. — Quod speculum habes? — Habeo id, quod frater tuus habet. — Num ille habet librum, quem amicus tuus habet? — Non habet illum, quem amicus meus habet. — Quæ candela ei est? — Est ei candela vicini sui. — Ei est ea (illa), quæ mihi est. — Utrum arborem habet hanc an illam? — Habet neque hanc neque illam, sed eam, quam ego habeo. — Quem asinum habet homo? — Eum habet, quem puer ejus habet. — Utrum peregrinus sellam habet tuam an meam? — Nec tuam nec meam habet, bonam autem amici sui sellam habet. — Utrum habes digitabulum, quod ego habeo, an id (illud), quod sartor meus habet? — Non habeo neque id, quod tu habes, neque illud, quod sartor tuus habet; habeo autem meum proprium. — Utrum sutori tuo calceus est meus pulcher an ille pueri sui? — Non est ei nec tuus nec pueri sui, verum ille peregrini boni. — Quam domum habet pistor? — Nec tuam nec meam, sed illam fratris sui boni habet. — Quem currum habeo? — Utrum meum habeo an rustici? — Neque tuum habes neque rustici; eum habes, quem ego habeo. — Tenesne pilentum meum pulchrum? — Ego non teneo; sed Francogallus tenet. — Quid est Francogallo? — Non est ei quidquam (Nihil habet). — Quid tenet sutor? — Aliquid pulchri tenet. — Quid pulchri tenet? — Calceum suum pulchrum tenet. — Rectene loquitur sutor? — Non errat; vicinus autem hicce, pistor, vere loquitur. — Ecquid equus tuus esurit (Esuritne equus tuus)? — Non esurit, sed sitit. — Utrum fœnum habes asini mei an tuum? — Habeo idem, quod frater meus habet. — Habetne amicus tuus eundem equum, quem frater meus habet (Estne amico tuo idem equus, atque fratri meo *or* cum fratre meo)? — Non eundem equum, sed eandem togam habet. — Tenetne umbraculum meum? — Non tenet.

14. DICTATA QUARTA DECIMA.

Habesne mensas? — Ita est, domine, mensas habeo. — Num mensas meas habes? — Non vero, domine, mensas tuas

non habeo. — Teneone orbiculos fibulatorios tuos? — Tenes meos orbiculos fibulatorios. — Suntne mihi domus tuæ formosæ? — Sunt tibi domus meæ formosæ. — Habetne sartor orbiculos fibulatorios? — Orbiculos fibulatorios non habet, verum fila. — Tenetne sartor tuus orbiculos fibulatorios meos? — Sartor meus orbiculos fibulatorios tuos aureos tenet. — Quid habet puer? — Fila aurea habet. — Utrum ei sunt fila mea aurea an argentea? — Non sunt ei neque aurea neque argentea tua fila. — Utrum domos pulchras an scidulas bonas habet Francogallus? — Nec domos pulchras, nec scidulas bonas habet. — Quid habet? — Amicos suos bonos habet. — Num hic homo umbracula mea pulchra habet? — Non umbracula tua pulchra, sed togas tuas bonas habet. — Num quis (Ecquis) epistolas meas bonas habet? — Nemo epistolas tuas bonas habet. — Tenetne filius sartoris cultros meos bonos an munimenta digiti mea bona? — Tenet nec cultros tuos bonos, nec munimenta digiti tua bona, verum togas peregrini turpes. — Num mihi sunt bonæ amici tui tæniæ? — Non sunt tibi bonæ amici mei tæniæ, verum bonum vicini mei pilentum. — Utrum amicus tuus bella sutoris bacula habet, an venustos sartoris mei boni canes? — Amicus meus pulchros sutoris mei boni libros habet; non autem habet nec bella sutoris bacula nec venustos sartoris tui boni canes. — Utrum vicinus tuus vere loquitur an errat? — Neque vere loquitur neque errat. — Utrum sitit an esurit? — Neque sitit neque esurit. — Estne fessus an somniculosus? — Somniculosus est. — Egone (Num ego) somniculosus sum? — Non es somniculosus. — Quid habeo? — Schedulas meas pulchras habes. — Sellas vicini mei habes. — Suntne tibi (Num tibi sunt) cultri amici mei? — Amici tui cultri mihi non sunt; verum canes vicini mei (Cultros amici tui non habeo; habeo autem canes vicini mei).

15. DICTATA QUINTA DECIMA.

Habesne equos hosce an illos? — Non hosce sed illos habeo. — Suntne tibi togæ Francogallorum an illæ Anglorum? — Non sunt mihi illæ Francogallorum, sed (verum) illæ Anglorum. — Utrum pulchras Turcarum habes oves an illas Hispanorum? — Nec Turcarum nec Hispanorum habeo, verum illos fratris mei. — Utrum frater tuus formosos Hispanorum asinos habet an illos Italorum? — Non habet neque Hispano-

rum neque illos Italorum; habet autem formosos Francogallorum asinos. — Qui boves fratri tuo sunt? — Sunt ei illi Germanorum. — Utrum amicus tuus epistolas meas longas habet an illas Germanorum? — Non habet neque unas neque alteras. — Quas epistolas habet? — Habet epistolas parvas, quas tu habes. — Utrum ego domos habeo hasce an illas? — Neque hasce neque illas habes. — Quas domos habeo (Quæ domus mihi sunt)? — Anglorum habes (Tibi sunt illæ Anglorum). — Tenetne aliquis (Num quis tenet) orbiculos fibulatorios aureos sartoris? — Nemo tenet orbiculos fibulatorios aureos sartoris; tenet autem aliquis illos amici tui.

16. DICTATA SEXTA DECIMA.

Utrum ego schedulas peregrinorum an illas pueri mei habeo? — Non habes neque peregrinorum neque pueri tui, verum illas Turcarum magnorum. — Tenetne (Num tenet) Turca equum meum formosum? — Non tenet. — Quem equum tenet? — Suum proprium tenet. — Utrum vicinus tuus gallinam meam an ovem meam habet? — Vicinus meus neque gallinam tuam neque ovem tuam habet. — Quid habet? — Nihil boni habet. — Estne tibi nihil pulchri? — Non est mihi quidquam pulchri. — Num fessus es (Ecquid fessus es, *or* Fessusne es, *or* Esne fessus)? — Non fessus sum. — Quam oryzam habet amicus tuus? — Habet illam mercatoris sui. — Quod saccharum habet? — Habet id quod ego habeo. — Utrum coffeam habet mercatoris tui bonam an illam mei? — Neque illam tui habet neque illam mei; suam propriam habet. — Quæ naves Francogallo sunt? — Sunt ei naves Anglorum. — Quas domos habet Hispanus? — Easdem habet, quas tu habes (Easdem habet tecum). — Tenetne cultros meos bonos? — Tenet cultros tuos bonos. — Habetne tibialia lintea, quæ ego habeo? — Non eadem, quæ tu habes, verum illa fratris sui habet. — Qui tibi libri sunt? — Sunt mihi illi Romanorum. — Esuriuntne homines illi (Ecquid, num *or* numquid homines illi esuriunt)? — Non esuriunt, sed sitiunt. — Nec fessi nec somniculosi sunt.

17. DICTATA SEPTIMA DECIMA.

Tenesne pectines meos bonos? — Teneo. — Habesne bonos Anglorum equos? — Eos non habeo. — Quas scopas habes?

— Illas peregrinorum habeo. — Utrum togas tenes meas an (illas) meorum amicorum? — Neque tuas neque illas tuorum amicorum teneo. — Utrum habes meas an ejus (illius)? — Ejus habeo. — Ecquid Italus caseos habet eos, quos tu habes? — Non habet eos quos ego habeo, sed eos quos tu habes. — Tenetne puer tuus stilos cerussatos meos bonos? — Tenet. — Num ei sunt clavi fabri tignarii? — Non sunt. — Quid est ei (Quid habet)? — Sunt ei clavi sui ferrei (Clavos suos ferreos habet). — Num quis sartoris digiti munimenta habet? — Nemo ea habet. — Quis Hispanorum naves habet? — Angli eas habent. — Tenentne Angli has naves an illas? — Suas proprias naves tenent Angli. — Utrum fratres mei cultros habent meos an suos? — Fratres mei nec tuos nec suos cultros habent. — Utrum mihi sunt gallinæ tuæ an (illæ) coqui tui? — Neque meæ neque illæ coqui tui tibi sunt. — Quas gallinas habeo? — Rustici boni gallinas habes. — Quis boves meos habet? — Ministri tui eos habent. — Num Germani eos habent? — Germani eos non habent, verum Turcæ (eos habent). — Quis habet mensam meam ligneam? — Pueri tui eam habent. — Cui est panis meus bonus? — Amicis tuis est. — Tenentne Itali illi epistolas meas bonas? — Tenent non epistolas tuas bonas, sed libros tuos bonos. — Utrum esuriunt an sitiunt? — Neque esuriunt neque sitiunt, sed cupidi somni sunt. — Verene loquuntur (Loquunturne vere) an errant? — Errant. — Neque vere loquuntur neque errant. — Utrum cultros habent tuos an (illos) Anglorum? — Neque meos neque illos Anglorum habent. — Utrum mihi sunt specula ejus an illa coqui sui? — Non tibi sunt neque altera neque illa (neque hæc neque illa).

18. DICTATA DUODEVICESIMA.

Habesne saccharum (aliquantum sacchari)? — (Aliquantulum) habeo. — Estne tibi aliquantum bonæ coffeæ? — Est mihi aliquantulum. — Habeone aliquantulum salis? — Habes aliquantulum. — Suntne mihi aliqui calcei? — Sunt tibi aliqui. — Habeone canes aliquot bellos? — Nonnullos habes. — Estne homini aliquantum mellis? — Est ei aliquantulum. — Quid habet homo? — Panem bonum habet (Est ei aliquantum panis boni). — Quid est sutori (Quid habet sutor)? — Sunt ei aliqui calcei boni. — Habetne nauta buccellata? — Habet vero nonnulla. — Ecquid amicus tuus aliquot stilos cerussatos bonos habet? — Habet nonnullos. — Utrum tibi

est coffea bona an vilis? — Est mihi bona. — Utrum lignum habes bonum an nequam? — Bonum habeo. — Suntne mihi boves boni an nequam? — Sunt mihi aliquot nequam. — Ecqui est fratri tuo caseus bonus an vilis? — Non est ei nec bonus nec malus. — Quid boni habet? — Aliquot bonos amicos habet. — Quis pannum habet? — Vicinus meus aliquantulum habet. — Quis pecuniam habet? — Francogalli ejus aliquantum habent. — Cui est aurum? — Anglis est aliquantulum. — Quis equos aliquot bonos habet? — Germani nonnullos habent. — Cui est fœnum bonum? — Asino huic aliquantum est. — Quis panem bonum habet? — Hispanus nonnullum habet. — Cui sunt aliqui libri boni? — Francogallis nonnulli sunt. — Quis naves aliquas bonas habet? — Angli habent aliquos. — Num quis aliquod vinum habet? — Nemo ullum habet. — Suntne Italo equi formosi an turpes? — Sunt ei aliquot turpes. — Utrum tibi sunt mensæ ligneæ an lapideæ? — Non sunt mihi nec ligneæ nec lapideæ. — Num puer tuus libros pulchros mei habet? — Non illos pueri tui, sed suos proprios habet. — Suntne ei tibialia aliqua lintea? — (Ecquæ ei sunt tibialia lintea)? — Sunt ei nonnulla. — Quid habet Turca? — Nihil quidquam habet. — Quiddam mali habet. — Quis aliquid boni habet? — Peregrinus quidam aliquid boni habet. — Eccui est fœnum (Habetne aliquis fœnum)? — Agricolæ quidam fœnum et frumentum habent.

19. DICTATA UNDEVICESIMA.

Habetne Americanus pecuniam bonam? — Habet ejus aliquantulum. — Habentne Batavi caseum bonum? — Etiam, domine, habent Batavi nonnullum. — Estne Russo nihil casei? — Non est ei quidquam. — Suntne tibi tibialia bona? — Sunt mihi nonnulla. — Utrum tibi mel est bonum an vile? — Est mihi bonum. — Numquæ tibi est coffea bona (Habesne coffeam bonam)? — Non est mihi ulla (Nullam habeo). — Habesne coffeam nequam? — Nonnullam habeo. — Numquid Hiberno vini boni est (Ecquid Hibernus vinum bonum habet). — Non est ei ullum (Nullum habet). — Habetne aquam bonam? — Habet vero aliquantulum. — Numquid sal bonum habet Scotus? — Nullum habet. — Quid habet Batavus? — Naves bonas habet. — Numqui panis mihi est (Numquid panis habeo)? — Non est (Nullum habes). — Habeone amicos aliquot bonos? — Nullos habes. — Cui sunt amici boni?

— Francogallo nonnulli sunt (Francogallus aliquos habet). — Habetne famulus tuus aliquot togas vel scopas? — Habet vero aliquot bonas scopas, nullas autem togas. — Habetne aliquis fœnum? — Habet aliquis nonnullum. — Quis nonnullum habet? — Famulus nonnullum habet. — Numquid est homini huicce panis? — Nihil est. — Quis calceos bonos habet? — Sutor meus bonus nonnullos habet. — Utrum Russorum pileos bonos habes, an Batavorum? — Non habeo nec Russorum nec Batavorum; illos Hibernorum habeo. — Quos saccos habet amicus tuus? — Saccos mercatorum bonos habet. — Tenetne puer tuus bonos fabrum (= fabrorum) tegnariorum malleos? — Non vero, domine, eos non tenet. — Ecquid puero huicce parvulo sacchari est? — Non est. — Habetne frater amici tui pectines bonos? — Amici mei frater nullos habet; ego autem aliquos habeo. — Quis habet sellas bonas ligneas? — Nemo ullas habet.

20. DICTATA VICESIMA.

Habesne unam epistolam? — Unam epistolam et unum librum habeo. — Habetne famulus tuus unas scopas? — Senas scopas et quinque gallinas habet. — Suntne amico tuo aliquæ ædes? — Sunt ei denæ ædes et quinque hortuli. — Quid est adolescentulo? — Sunt ei mille libri (librorum) et duo (*or* bina) milia scidularum. — Quis habet mensam unam pulchram rotundam? — Opifex pileorum unam habet. — Sartoris nostri amicus decem mensas rotundas et viginti sellas habet. — Estne tibi famulus bonus? — Est mihi unus. — Habetne opifex tuus pileorum domum unam pulchram? — Duas habet. — Habeone tæniam auream bellam? — Unam habes. — Quid est fabro scriniario? — Sunt ei mensæ pulchræ. — Estne ei mensa una pulchra rotunda? — Est ei una. — Habetne pistor speculum unum magnum? — Habet (unum). — Num Scotus habet amicos, quos ego habeo? — Non habet eosdem, quos tu habes, verum tamen bonos amicos habet. — Tenetne libros tuos bonos? — Tenet. — Num ego malleos eorum bonos habeo? — Eos non habes, sed clavos ferreos tuos bonos habes. — Habetne opifex pileorum pileum meum bonum? — Non tuum, sed suum habet (Non habet tuum, verum suum). — Habeone calceos meos bonos? — Non tuos habes, ejus habes (verum ejus). — Quis meos habet? — Nonnemo (*or* aliquis) eos habet. — Suntne alicui duæ epistolæ (binæ litteræ)? — Fratri vicini nostri tres sunt. — Habetne coquus tuus duas

oves? — Quattuor habet. — Suntne ei sex bonæ gallinæ? — Sunt ei tres bonæ et septem nequam. — Estne mercatori vinum bonum? — Est ei nonnullum. — Habetne sartor togas bonas? — Nullas habet. — Habetne pistor panem bonum? — Habet vero aliquantulum. — Quid est fabro tignario? — Sunt ei clavi boni. — Quid est mercatori tuo? — Sunt ei boni stili cerussati, bona coffea, bonum mel, et bona buccellata. — Quis ferrum bonum habet? — Amicus meus bonus nonnullum habet. — Loquorne recte an erro? — Erras. — Ecquis cupidus somni est? — Sutor et cupidus somni est et sitit. — Num fessus est? — Non est fessus. — Tenetne famulus tuus vasa vitrea amicorum nostrorum? — Non tenet illa amicorum vestrorum, verum illa mercatorum magnorum. — Habetne sellam meam ligneam? — Non tuam, sed pueri sui habet. — Sitisne (Num sitis)? — Non sitio, verum vehementer esurio.

21. DICTATA UNA ET VICESIMA.

Quam multi (*or* quot) amici tibi sunt? — Sunt mihi duo amici boni. — Habesne octo riscos bonos? — Immo * novem habeo. — Habetne amicus tuus denas scopas bonas? — Non habet nisi trinas (Trinas tantum habet). — Habetne duas bonas naves? — Immo unam tantum habet (Non habet nisi unam). — Quot malleos habet faber tignarius? — Quattuor tantum (duntaxat) habet. — Quot calcei sutori sunt? — (Sunt ei) decem. — Num juveni decem boni libri sunt? — Non sunt ei nisi quinque. — Habetne pictor septem umbracula bona? — Non septem habet, verum unum. — Quam multos embolos habeo? — Tres tantum habes (Non habes nisi tres). — Num vicinus noster panem nostrum bonum habet? — Non nostrum, verum fratris sui habet. — Habetne equus noster aliquid fœni? — Habet vero aliquantulum. — Suntne sartoris nostri amico orbiculi fibulatorii boni? — Sunt ei nonnulli. — Habetne orbiculos fibulatorios aureos? — Non habet aureos, verum argenteos. — Quam multos (quot) boves habet frater noster? — Non ullos boves habet. — Quot togas habet juvenis vicinorum nostrorum? — Vicinorum nostrorum juvenis non habet nisi unam togam, sed ille amici tui tres habet. — Habetne verveces nostros bonos? — Habet. — Habeone ejus? — Non ejus habes, verum nostros. — Quot mihi sunt verveces boni? — Sunt tibi novem.

* On this use of *immo*, see Grammar, page 546, Rem. 2.

22. DICTATA ALTERA ET VICESIMA.

Cui sunt candelabra nostra argentea? — Mercatoris nostri puero sunt. — Habetne aves nostras magnas? — Non nostras, verum illas Hiberni magni habet. — Utrum Italo sunt oculi magni an pedes magni? — Sunt ei et oculi et pedes magni. — Quis tibialia lintea magna habet? — Hispanus nonnulla habet. — Habetne caseum? — Nullum habet. — Estne ei frumentum? — Est ei aliquantulum. — Quale frumentum habet? — Bonum frumentum habet. — Qualem oryzam habet coquus noster? — Bonam oryzam habet. — Quales mercatori nostro stili cerussati sunt? — Sunt ei boni stili cerussati. — Habetne pistor noster panem bonum? — Panem et vinum bonum habet. — Quis caseum bonum habet? — Vicinus noster nonnullum habet. — Tenetne sartoris nostri amicus pannum? — Tenet vero nonnullum. — Nullum tenet. — Quid habet? — Togas nostras nequam (viles) tenet. — Quis esurit? — Nemo esurit; sed amicus vicini nostri somniculosus est. — Quis cultros nostros ferreos tenet? — Scotus eos tenet. — Tenetne eos? — Tenet eos. — Quales amici tibi sunt? — Sunt mihi amici boni. — Ecquid amicus Anglorum nostrorum recte loquitur? — Neque recte loquitur neque errat. — Suntne ei aves pusillæ bonæ atque oves pusillæ bonæ? — Non sunt ei neque aves neque oves. — Quid habet Italus? — Nihil habet. — Habetne sartoris nostri puer aliquid pulchri? — Nihil pulchri habet, verum aliquid turpe. — Quid turpe habet? — Turpem canem habet. — Estne ei equus aliquis turpis? — Non est ei quisquam equus. — Quid habet amicus noster juvenis? — Nihil habet. — Estne ei liber aliquis bonus? — Est ei unus. — Habetne sal? — Non (nullum) habet. — Quot sumus? — Quinquaginta sumus. — Quot eorum sunt? — Mille eorum sunt. — Quot estis? — Viginti quinque sumus. — Quales pectines habes? — Pectines bonos habeo.

23. DICTATA VICESIMA TERTIA.

Estne tibi multum coffeæ? — Non est mihi nisi paulum. — Habetne amicus tuus multum aquæ? — Permultum habet. — Num peregrino est multum frumenti? — Non est ei permultum. — Quid habet Americanus? — Multum sacchari habet. — Quid est Russo? — Est ei multum salis. — Habemusne

multum oryzæ? — Paulum tantum habemus (Non habemus nisi paulum). — Quid nobis est? — Nobis est multum vini, multum aquæ, atque multi amici. — Multumne auri habemus? — Paulum tantum, sed tamen satis habemus. — Suntne tibi multi pueri? — Non sunt nobis nisi pauci (Paucos tantum habemus). — Habetne vicinus noster multum fœni? — Immo satis habet. — Habetne Batavus multum casei? — Permultum habet. — Numquid homo hicce animum (fortitudinem) habet? — Nullum habet. — Estne peregrino illo pecunia? — Non est ei multum, sed tamen satis. — Habetne pictoris puer candelas? — Habet vero nonnullas. — Ecquid nos epistolas bonas habemus? — Habemus nonnullas. — Nullas habemus. — Habetne faber scriniarius panem bonum? — Habet vero aliquantulum. — Non (nullum) habet. — An mel bonum habet? — Non (nullum) habet. — Estne Anglo (unus) bonus equus? — Est ei unus. — Quid est nobis? — Nobis sunt equi boni. — Quis domum unam pulchram habet? — Germanus unam habet. — Habetne Italus multa bella specula? — Permulta habet; frumenti autem non nisi pauxillum habet. — Num vicinus meus bonus equum habet eundem, quem tu habes? — Non eundem equum, sed eundem currum habet. — Habetne Turca easdem naves, quas nos habemus? — Non habet easdem; illas Russorum (*or* naves Russorum) habet.

24. DICTATA VICESIMA QUARTA.

Quot famulos habemus? — Unum tantum nos habemus, frater autem noster tres habet. — Quos cultros habetis? — Cultros ferreos habemus. — Quem saccum habet homo agrestis (rusticus)? — Saccum linteum habet. — Tenetne juvenis epistolas nostras longas? — Eas non habet. — Quis scidulas nostras bellas habet? — Pater nautæ eas habet. — Habetne faber tignarius clavos suos? — Faber tignarius clavos suos ferreos, et opifex pileorum pileos suos chartaceos habet. — Habetne pictor hortulos pulchros? — Habet vero nonnullos, frater ejus autem nullos habet. — Suntne vobis multa vasa vitrea? — Nobis non sunt nisi pauca. — Habetisne satis vini? — Habemus vero ejus satis. — Numquis scopas meas habet? — Nemo eas habet. — Utrum amicus opificis tui pileorum pectines habet nostros an vestros? — Non habet nec vestros nec nostros; suos habet. — Utrum puer tuus schedulam habet meam an tuam? — Immo fratris sui habet. — Tenesne bacu-

lum meum? — Non tuum, sed mercatoris habeo. — Num digitabula mea habes? — Non tua, sed (illa) vicini mei boni habeo.

25. DICTATA VICESIMA QUINTA.

Tenetne servulus tuus scopas meas? — (Eas) non tenet. — Quis chartulam meam habet? — Filiolus vicini nostri eam habet. — Numquis filiolæ meæ libellum habet? — Libellum filiolæ tuæ nemo habet; habet autem curriculum ejus aliquis. — Quid est puerculo? — Est ei opusculum amici sui. — Habesne aliquas domunculas? — Habeo vero decem domunculas et sex equuleos. — Quis bacillum meum tenet? — Fraterculus tuus (id) tenet. — Estne aliquis cupidus somni? — Filiola sartoris cupida somni est. — Quid homunculus ille habet? — Hortulos suos atque cultellos suos habet. — Num ille Romanus est (Estne Romanus)? — Non, domine, non Romanus, verum Arabs est. — Esne tu Celta (Tune Celta es)? — Non Celta, sed Germanus sum. — Quot infantulo illi oculi sunt? — (Sunt ei) duo. — Quot pileolos habes? — Unum tantum habeo. — Quis recte loquitur? — Filiolus meus recte loquitur. — Erratne aliquis? — Errat vero adolescentulus.

26. DICTATA VICESIMA SEXTA.

Suntne tibi aliquot libri? — Sunt mihi nonnulli. — Quot tibi verveces sunt? — Mihi non sunt nisi pauci (Paucos tantum habeo). — Ecquid pictoris magni amicus multa specula habet? — Non habet nisi pauca (Pauca tantum habet). — Habesne aliquot florenos? — Habeo vero aliquot. — Quot florenos habes? — Decem habeo. — Quot kreutzeros famulus tuus habet? — Non multos habet, duos tantum habet. — Num homines illi pulchra Italorum vasa vitrea habent? — Homines illi ea non habent, nos autem ea habemus. — Quid habemus (nobis est)? — Multum pecuniæ (pecuniam grandem) habemus (Nobis est multum pecuniæ). — Utrum tibi est pilentum Batavi an Germani? — Non est mihi neque alterum neque illud (alterum). — Utrum puer rustici epistolam habet pulchram an turpem? — Neque alteram neque illam (alteram) habet. — Utrum ei sunt digitabula mercatoris an illa fratris sui? — Non sunt ei neque altera neque illa (altera). — Quæ digitabula ei sunt? — Sunt ei sua propria. — Utrum equos

habemus Anglorum an (illos) Germanorum? — Neque alteros neque illos habemus. — Num umbracula Hispanorum habemus? — Non habemus; Americani ea habent. — Estne tibi multum piperis? — Non est mihi multum, verum tamen satis. — Habesne multum aceti? — Non habeo nisi pauxillum (paulum). — Tenentne Russi multum carnis? — Permultum tenent Russi; sed Turcæ non tenent nisi pauxillum (paulum). — Non aliud piper habes (Nihilne alius piperis habes)? — Non aliud habeo. — Non est mihi alia cerevisia? — Non est tibi alia. — Habemusne amicos bonos alios nullos? — Alios nullos habemus. — Multane indusia nautæ sunt (Suntne nautæ multa indusia)? — Non sunt ei multa; non sunt ei nisi duo. — Num tibi est crus ligneum? — Mihi non est crus ligneum, sed (verum) cor bonum. — Estne viro isti ingenium bonum? — Est ei et ingenium bonum et * cor bonum. — Quot brachia habet puer ille? — Unum tantum habet; alterum e ligno est. — Qualis est puero tuo indoles? — Est ei bona indoles.

27. DICTATA VICESIMA SEPTIMA.

Quotum volumen habes? — Primum habeo. — Tenesne alterum operis mei volumen? — Teneo. — Utrum tibi liber est primus an secundus? — Non est mihi neque alter neque ille. — Utrum volumen habemus quintum an sextum? — Neque alterum neque illum habemus. — Quotum volumen habemus? — Septimum habemus. — Quotus dies mensis est? — Octavus est. — Nonne undecimus est? — Non vero, domine, decimus est. — Habentne Hispani multos thaleros? — Non habent Hispani nisi paucos, Angli autem permultos habent. — Quis thaleros nostros habet? — Francogalli eos habent. — Estne adolescentulo multum ingenii? — Non est ei multum ingenii, sed multum fortitudinis (animi). — Quot brachia habet homo? — Duo habet. — Quot indusia ei sunt? — Duo tantum ei sunt (Non sunt ei nisi duo). — Sunt ei sex bona et decem nequam.

28. DICTATA DUODETRICESIMA.

Utrum thaleros tenes Francogallorum an (illos) Anglorum? — Ego neque Francogallorum neque Anglorum, sed illos

* On *et* . . . *et*, see Grammar, page 634, C.

Americanorum habeo. — Suntne Germano aliquot kreutzeri? — Sunt ei aliquot. — Suntne ei aliquot thaleri? — Sunt ei sex. — Habesne aliud baculum? — Aliud habeo. — Quod aliud baculum habes? — Aliud baculum ferreum habeo. — Suntne vobis candelabra aliquot aurea? — Sunt nobis aliquot. — Num viris istis acetum est? — Viris istis nihil est; sed amicis eorum nonnullum est. — Habentne pueri nostri candelas? — Pueri nostri nullas habent, sed (verum) amici puerorum nostrorum aliquas (aliquot *or* nonnullas) habent. — Num aliquot alios saccos habes? — Alios nullos habeo. — An caseos alios habes? — Habeo vero alios nonnullos. — Estne tibi alia caro? — Non est mihi alia. — Num amico tuo alii libri multi sunt? — Non sunt ei alii nisi perpauci (Alii ei non nisi perpauci sunt). — Quot schillingos habet puer ille? — Quinque tantum habet (Non habet nisi quinque). — Estne tibi alter equus? — Non est. — Tenentne ceteros libros? — Tenent. — Tenesne reliqua (Num cetera tibi sunt)? — Non teneo (Non sunt). — Quota hora est? — Hora duodecima est. — Non (hora) quinta est? — Minime, domine, quarta tantum est (Non est nisi quarta).

29. DICTATA UNDETRICESIMA.

Quotum ejus operis tomum habes? — Alterum habeo. — Quot tomos opus ejus habet? — Tres habet. — Utrum opus habes meum an fratris mei? — Ambo (utrumque) habeo. — Utrum peregrinus habet pectines (meos) an cultros meos? — Ambos (utrosque) habet. — Utrum tibi est panis (noster) an caseus noster? — Sunt mihi ambo (Est mihi uterque). — Utrum scyphum tenes meum an amici mei? — Non teneo neque unum neque alterum (Neutrum teneo). — Estne nobis adhuc fœnum (Estne nobis fœnum reliquum)? — Est nobis adhuc aliquantulum (Est nobis nonnullum reliquum). — Estne mercatori nostro adhuc (etiamnum) piper? — Est ei adhuc aliquantum. — Habetne aliquot candelas reliquas? — Habet vero nonnullas reliquas. — Numquid vobis adhuc est coffeæ? — Nihil coffeæ nobis reliquum est; reliquum autem habemus aliquantum aceti. — Habetne Germanus etiamnum aquam (reliquam)? — Nihil aquæ reliquum habet; reliquum autem habet aliquantum carnis. — Num nobis adhuc sunt tæniæ aureæ? — Tæniæ aureæ nobis nullæ reliquæ sunt; reliquæ autem nobis sunt argenteæ. — Habetne amicus noster saccharum reliquum? —

Non est ei reliquum. — Numquid mihi est adhuc cerevisiæ? — Nihil tibi ejus reliquum est. — Num juvenis tuus adhuc habet aliquos amicos? — Nullos reliquos habet.

30. DICTATA TRICESIMA.

Habetne frater adhuc unum equum (Estne fratri tuo unus equus reliquus)? — Habet vero adhuc (etiamnum) unum (Est ei unus reliquus). — Estne rustico unus bos reliquus? — Est ei unus reliquus. — Habetisne aliquot hortulos reliquos? — Habemus aliquot reliquos. — Quid est vobis reliquum? — Reliquæ sunt nobis aliquot bonæ naves, et aliquot boni nautæ. — Habetne frater noster aliquot amicos reliquos? — Habet nonnullos reliquos. — Estne tibi animus reliquus? — Non est mihi reliquus. — Estne tibi multum pecuniæ reliquum? — Est mihi multum reliquum; sed fratri meo reliquum est nihil. — Estne ei sat (satis) salis? — Non est ei satis. — Num nos satis orbiculorum fibulatorium habemus? — Non satis habemus. — Uter vestrum aliquid pecuniæ reliquum habet? — Neuter nostrum quidquam habet reliquum. — Alteruter nostrum permultum ejus reliquum habet. — Utrum nauta baculum meum, an saccum meum habet? — Neutrum habet. — Utrum tenes pileum meum an togam meam? — Ambos (utrumque) teneo. — Quis vestrum chartam meam habet? — Ego eam non teneo. — Estne juveni aliquid reliquum? — Non est ei quidquam reliquum (Nihil amplius habet). — Num candelas multas reliquas habes? — Non multas reliquas habeo.

31. DICTATA UNA ET TRICESIMA.

Estne tibi (una) toga? — Immo mihi complures sunt. — Habetne (unum) speculum? — Plures habet. — Qualia habet specula? — Pulchra specula habet. — Quis placentas meas bonas habet? — Plures homines eas habent. — Estne fratri tuus filius? — Sunt ei complures. — Estne tibi tantum coffeæ, quantum mellis? — Est mihi tantum alterius, quantum alterius (quantum de altero, tantum de alterâ *or* illâ). — Habetne tantum theæ, quantum cervisiæ? — Habet vero tantum de alterâ *or* unâ, quantum de alterâ. — Habetne homo iste tam multos amicos quam hostes? — Tam multos alterorum, quam

multos alterorum (de alteris, quam de illis) habet. — Suntne amici tui filio tot togæ quot indusia? — Sunt ei quot alterorum, tot alterarum (illarum). — Habemusne tam multas caligas quot calceos? — Habemus vero quot alterorum, tot alterarum (illarum). — Plures habemus alterarum quam alterorum (de alteris *or* unis, quam de alteris). — Estne nobis minus (Minusne nobis est) fœni quam illi? — Tantundem est nobis, quantum illi.

32. DICTATA ALTERA ET TRICESIMA.

Habetne pater tuus tantum auri, quantum argenti? — Plus hujus quam illius habet. — Estne ei tantum theæ, quantum coffeæ? — Est ei plus de hoc quam de illo. — Habetne navarchus tot nautas quot naves? — Plures ex unis quam ex alteris habet. — Habesne tot verveces quot ego habeo? — Totidem habeo. — Estne peregrino tantum animi, quam nobis? — Est ei tantundem. — Estne nobis tantum chartæ bonæ, quantum vilis? — Est nobis tantundem (tantum) alterius quantum illius. — Habemusne tantum casei quam panis? — Plus habemus hujus quam illius (de hocce quam de illo). — Habetne filius tuus tot placentas, quot libros? — Plures horumce quam illarum habet; plures ex alteris quam ex alteris habet. — Quot (Quam multos) libros habet? — Plus quinque (quina) milia habet. — Habetne plus viginti naves? — Minus viginti habet; non habet nisi quindecim (quindecim tantum) habet. — Num puerculus iste plus decem digitos habet? — Non plus decem habet.

33. DICTATA TRICESIMA TERTIA.

Quot liberos habes? — Unum tantum habeo, sed frater meus plures habet, quam ego; is quinque habet. — Habetne filius tuus tantum ingenii, quantum meus (habet)? — Minus ingenii quam tuus habet, sed plus fortitudinis (animi). — Liberi mei plus animi habent quam tui. — Estne mihi tantum pecuniæ quantum tibi est? — Immo tibi minus est. — Suntne tibi tot libri quot mihi (sunt)? — Immo mihi pauciores sunt. — Habeone tam multos inimicos quot pater tuus (habet)? — Pauciores quam ille habes. — Habentne Americani plures liberos (plus liberorum) quam nos? — Pauciores quam nos

habent. — Num nobis tot naves quot Anglis sunt? — Pauciores nobis sunt. — Habemusne pauciores cultros (minus cultrorum), quam liberi nostrorum amicorum? — Pauciores habemus quam illi. — Quot habent? — Plus octaginta habent. — Quot habemus nos? — Minus duodecim habemus.

34. DICTATA TRICESIMA QUARTA.

Quis pauciores amicos habet, quam nos (habemus)? — Nemo pauciores habet. — Tenesne tantum meæ theæ, quantum (quam) tuæ? — Tantum tuæ quantum (quam) meæ habeo. — Suntne mihi tot tuorum librorum quot meorum? — Pauciores meorum habes, quam tuorum. — Habetne Hispanus tantum vestræ pecuniæ quantum suæ? — Minus suæ propriæ habet quam nostræ. — Estne pistori tuæ minus panis quam pecuniæ? — Minus hujusce quam illius habet. — Suntne mercatori nostro pauciores canes quam equi? — Sunt ei pauciores horum quam illorum; pauciores ex unis quam ex alteris. — Sunt ei pauciores equi (equorum) quam nobis, et nobis est minus panis quam ei. — Habentne vicini nostri tot curros quot nos habemus? — Nos pauciores habemus. — Nos minus frumenti et minus carnis quam illi habemus. — Nos paulum tantum frumenti, sed sat (satis) carnis habemus. — Quot domus tibi sunt? — Sunt mihi plus triginta. — Quot equos (equorum) frater amici nostri habet? — Plus centum equos (equorum) et minus quinquaginta libros (librorum) habet. — Quantum pecuniæ habemus? — Nos minus decem schillingos habemus. — Num juvenis pauciora habet specula, quam nos (habemus)? — Immo plura (plus) habet, quam vos; plus mille habet.

35. DICTATA TRICESIMA QUINTA.

Amatne te frater tuus? — Vero, me amat. — Amasne tu eum? — Eum amo. — Amatne eum pater tuus? — Eum non amat. — Amasne me, fili mi bone? — Te amo. — Num hominem istum turpem amas? — Eum non amo. — Aperitne famulus fenestram? — Aperit (Vero, eam aperit). — Aperisne tu eam (Tune eam aperis)? — (Eam) non aperio. — Ecquid (Num) librum aperit? — (Eum) non aperit. — Disponisne libros meos? — Dispono. — Disponitne famulus caligas et calceos nostros? — Disponit vero et alteros et illas (Disponit

vero ambo). — Amantne nos liberi nostri? — Nos amant. — Num nos inimicos nostros amamus? — Eos non amamus. — Quid mihi das? — Non do tibi quidquam (Tibi nihil do). — Ecquid fratri meo librum das? — Do vero. — Dasne ei unum pileum? — Do ei unum aliquem. — Quid ei das? — Ego ei aliquid (quiddam) pulchri do. — Quid tibi dat? — Mihi nihil dat (Non dat mihi quidquam).

36. DICTATA TRICESIMA SEXTA.

Lavatne nauta tibialia sua? — Lavat. — Lavasne tu manus tuas? — Vero, eas lavo. — Lavatne frater tuus tot indusia quot tibialia? — Plura illorum quam horum (de unis quam de alteris) lavat. — Num tu indusia tua lavas? — Ea non lavo. — Utrum fratres tui tibialia lavant sua an nostra? — Nec tua nec sua propria lavant; lavant illa suorum liberorum. — Quid portat famulus tuus? — Mensam magnam portat. — Quid portant homines isti? — Sellas suas ligneas portant. — Quos libros portat juvenis? — Libros bonos portat. — Num eos legit (Legitne eos)? — Eos non legit. — Quid legis? — Nihil lego. — Quid dicunt homines? — Dicunt aliquid boni. — Quid dicis? — Non dico quidquam. — Quid agis (facis? — Nihil ago (facio). — Quid agunt (faciunt) pueri? — Aliquid mali (nequam) agunt (faciunt). — Libros bonos legunt. — Utrum hi homines (viri) esuriunt an sitiunt? — Neque esuriunt neque sitiunt.

37. DICTATA TRICESIMA SEPTIMA.

Audisne aliquid (Numquid audis)? — Nihil audio. — Auditne pater tuus aliquid? — Nihil neque audit neque videt. — Videsne aliquid (Numquid vides)? — Nihil quidquam video. — Videsne hortum meum magnum? — Video. — Videtne pater tuus navem nostram? — Non videt; sed nos videmus. — Quot naves vides? — Permultas videmus; videmus plus triginta. — Dasne mihi libros? — Do tibi aliquot. — Datne vobis pater vester pecuniam? — Nobis non dat. — Videtisne multos nautas? — Immo plures (plus) militum quam nautarum videmus. — Videntne milites multas cellas penarias? — Plures hortos (plus hortorum) quam cellas penarias vident. — Dantne vobis Angli placentas bonas (panificia bona)? — Dant

nobis nonnullas. — Dasne mihi tantum vini quantum cervisiæ? — Do tibi tantum ex altero quantum ex alterā. — Dasne mihi panificia aliquot amplius? — Non do tibi ulla amplius. — Num mihi das equum, quem habes? — Non do tibi eum (illum), quem habeo. — Quem equum mihi das? — Tibi do (illum) fratris mei. — Egesne pecuniā tuā? — Egeo. — Indigetne pater tuus famuli sui? — Indiget ejus. — Egesne aliquā re? — Nihil (nullā re) egeo. — Indigemusne pilento nostro? — Indigemus. — Egentne amici nostri vestibus suis? — Egent.

38. DICTATA DUODEQUADRAGESIMA.

Esne studiosus legendi? — Sum vero studiosus legendi. — Num fratres tui studiosi sunt legendi? — Non sunt studiosi legendi. — Quis legendi studiosus est? — Mercatores legendi studiosi sunt. — Venitne videndi causā (gratiā)? — Venit vero videndi causā. — Veniunt audiendi gratiā. — Estne vinum utile bibendo? — Utile est. — Non est utile bibendo. — Esne tu solvendo? — Solvendo sum. — Non sum solvendo. — Estne locus facilis ad capiendum? — Immo difficilis ad capiendum est. — Legisne inter ludendum? — Non lego inter ludendum. — Quā re hominis mens alitur? — Alitur discendo et cogitando. — Consumitne otium suum (in) legendo? — Immo vero, domine, (id in) ludendo consumit. — Legitne discendi gratiā? — Immo scribendi causā legit.

39. DICTATA UNDEQUADRAGESIMA.

Estne tibi legendum? — Non est mihi legendum. — Estne mihi dormiendum? — Est mihi dormiendum. — Estne fratri tuo eundum? — Est ei eundum. — Cui eundum est? — Iis eundum est. — Audendumne est? — Audendum est. — Non audendum est. — Quid est faciendum? — Suo cuique judicio utendum est. — Alisne tu canes ad venandum? — Non alo. — Estne tibi epistola scribenda (Scribendane est tibi epistola)? — Est mihi una scribenda. — Suntne mihi epistolæ scribendæ? — Sunt tibi nonnullæ scribendæ. — Cui sunt multæ epistolæ scribendæ? — Mercatori sunt multæ scribendæ. — Mihi non sunt ullæ scribendæ. — Cui est diligentia adhibenda? — Adhibenda et colenda est nobis omnibus.

40. DICTATA QUADRAGESIMA.

Estne tibi consilium epistolæ scribendæ? — Est mihi consilium plurium scribendarum. — Estne patri tuo consilium epistolarum scribendarum? — Est ei consilium et epistolarum et schedularum scribendarum. — Adestne tempus abeundi? — Abeundi tempus nondum adest. — Estne tempus loquendi? — Est vero tempus loquendi. — Esne tu occupatus (Occupatusne es) in litteris scribendis? — Ego non in litteris, sed in schedulis scribendis occupatus sum. — Studiosusne est filius tuus epistolarum scribendarum? — Non scribendarum, sed legendarum studiosus est. — Estne charta utilis scribendo? — Est. — Estne tibi copia (facultas) loquendi? — Est mihi copia loquendi (dicendi). — Cui est copia legendi? — Filio tuo copia est legendi et scribendi. — Quis venit videndi causā? — Ego videndi gratiā venio. — Quis ad naves comparandas missus est? — Missus est navarchus. — Estne tibi studium illud efficiendi? — Est. — Quid est nobis faciendum? — Suum cuique (nobis) tribuendum est.

41. DICTATA UNA ET QUADRAGESIMA.

Estne tibi adhuc (etiamnunc) voluntas amici mei domus emendæ (Cupisne etiamnum domum amici mei emere)? — Est mihi adhuc voluntas; sed non habeo pecuniam (pecuniā careo). — Estne tibi spatium ad laborandum? — Est mihi spatium; deest autem voluntas laborandi. — Estne ei otium ad bacula secanda? — Est ei otium ad aliquot secanda. — Cupisne panem (aliquantulum panis) secare? — Cupio nonnullum secare, sed cultro careo (deest mihi culter). — Estne tibi tempus (spatium) ad caseum secandum? — Est mihi spatium ad aliquantulum secandum. — Cupitne ille arborem (illam) secare? — Cupit vero eam secare, caret autem otio. — Estne ei spatium ad pannum secandum? — Est ei spatium ad nonnullum secandum. — Estne mihi (Mihine est) otium ad arbores secandas? — Est mihi otium ad eas secandas. — Estne pictori voluntas equi emendi? — Immo ei duorum emendorum voluntas est. — Habetne navarchus tempus ad loquendum? — Tempus quidem habet, caret autem voluntate loquendi. — Habesne studium currus emendi? — Habeo vero studium unius emendi. — Estne mihi voluntas domus emendæ? —

Est tibi voluntas unius emendæ. — Ecquid fratri tuo voluntas est bovis magni emendi? — Immo ei voluntas est parvi emendi. — Nobis est voluntas boum parvorum emendorum. — Quot equorum emendorum tibi est voluntas (Quot equos emere cupis)? — Est mihi voluntas quattuor emendorum (Cupio emere quattuor). — Estne alicui voluntas (studium) soparum emendarum? — Voluntas est homini huicce unarum emendarum (Homo hic unas emere cupit). — Quid emendi homini illi est voluntas (Quid emere cupit homo ille)? — Est ei voluntas unum pulchrum currum, tres pulchros equos, bonam theam et bonam carnem emendi (Unum pulchrum currum &c. emere cupit).

42. DICTATA ALTERA ET QUADRAGESIMA.

Cupidus es loquendi (dicendi)? — Cupidus sum, sed otio ad loquendum careo. — Audesne brachium tuum secare (Estne tibi animus brachii tui secandi)? — Non audeo (id secare). — Estne mihi fas (Licetne mihi) loqui? — Tibi non est nefas loqui, sed nefas tibi est arbores meas secare (Licet tibi quidem loqui, sed arbores meas secare tibi non licet). — Cupitne amici tui filius unā plus avium emere (Cupidusne est . . . unā plus avium emendi? — Cupit vero uno plus emere (Cupidus est unius plus emendi). — Estne tibi voluntas unā plus togarum pulchrarum emendi? — Est mihi voluntas unā plus emendi. — Cupimusne aliquot plus equorum emere? — Cupimus quidem aliquot plus emere, sed non amplius pecuniæ habemus. — Quid emendi vobis est voluntas? — Voluntas est nobis aliquid boni emendi, et vicinis nostris aliquid pulchri emendi voluntas est. — Num liberi eorum avium emendarum cupidi sunt? — Liberi eorum avium emendarum non cupidi sunt. — Estne tibi animus navarchi risci emendi (Audesne navarchi riscum emere)? — Est mihi cupiditas ejus emendi, sed non amplius pecuniæ habeo (non est mihi reliqua pecunia). — Quis canis mei pulchri emendi cupidus est? — Nemo ejus emendi cupidus est. — Cupisne emere aves meas pulchras, an illas Francogallorum? — Illas Francogallorum emere cupio. — Quem librum cupit ille emere? — Emere cupit eum, quem tu habes, eum quem filius tuus habet, et illum quem meus habet. — Habesne duos equos? — Unum tantum habeo, sed uno amplius emendi cupidus sum (unum amplius emere cupio).

43. DICTATA QUADRAGESIMA TERTIA.

Cupisne litteras meas (epistolam meam) servare? — Cupio eas (eam) servare. — Licetne mihi (Estne mihi fas) pecuniam tuam reponere? — Licet tibi eam reponere. — Cupitne sartor togam meam conficere? — Cupit vero eam conficere, sed non est ei spatium (sed otio caret). — Estne sartori tempus (spatium) ad togas meas reparandas? — Est ei tempus ad eas reparandas (reficiendas). — Audesne pileum meum comburere? — Comburere eum non audeo; cupidus sum ejus servandi. — Estne sartoris puero spatium ad caligas meas reficiendas? — Non est ei spatium ad eas reficiendas. — Quid amici nostri sartori est reficiendum? — Togæ nostræ veteres ei reficiendæ sunt. — Cui sunt reparandæ nostræ caligæ? — Reparandæ sunt sutori nostro. — Quid opifici pileorum nostro faciendum est? — Reficiendi sunt ei pilei vestri magni. — Estne fratris tui fabro tignario aliquid faciendum? — Reparandæ sunt ei mensæ nostræ magnæ et sellæ nostræ parvæ. — Visne meos viginti septem thaleros reponere? — Volo eos reponere (servare). — Utrum tollere vis thalerum illum an florenum illum? — Ego ambos (utrumque) tollere volo. — Num vis digitum ejus (illius) secare? — Non volo (Nolo) eum secare. — Vultne pictor acetum comburere? — Vult vero nonnullum comburere. — Num rusticus panem suum vult comburere? — Non suum, verum vicini sui comburere vult. — Estne tibi aliquid faciendum? — Non est mihi quidquam faciendum. — Estne nobis aliquid (Ecquid est nobis) faciendum? — Coffea nostra nobis calefacienda est. — Visne loqui? — Volo vero loqui (Loqui non nolo). — Vultne filius tuus laborare (opus facere)? — Non vult laborare.

44. DICTATA QUADRAGESIMA QUARTA.

Visne aliquid emere? — Volo quiddam emere. — Quid emere vis? — Libros aliquot bonos emere volo. — Quid ei est emendum? — Emendus est ei equus (aliquis) bonus. — Utrum emere vis hanc mensam an illam? — Ego neque hanc neque illam emere volo. — Quam domum amicus tuus emere vult? — Magnam fratris tui domum emere vult. — Vultne famulus tuus ignem meum (*or* mihi) accendere? — Vult (eum accendere). — Utrum pater tuus hos verveces emere vult an

hos boves? — Non vult emere neque alteros neque alteros. — Utrum umbraculum meum an baculum meum emere vult? — Ambo (utrumque) emere vult. — Vultisne ignem accendere? — Nolumus (unum accendere). — Quid facere (conficere) vis? — Acetum facere volo. — Visne cultrum meum quærere? — Volo eum quærere (Quærere eum non nolo). — Numquid tibi est quærendum (Estne tibi aliquid conquirendum)? — Non est mihi quidquam quærendum. — Estne ei otium ad filium meum quærendum? — Est ei otium, sed quærere eum non vult. — Quid ei faciendum est? — Accendendus est ei ignis, lavanda sunt tibialia mea lintea, emenda sunt bona coffea, bonum saccharum, bona aqua, atque bona caro. — Vultne ille riscum tuum bonum emere? — Vult eum emere. — Utrum emere vis domum meam magnam an parvam? — Nolo emere nec domum tuam magnam nec parvam; cupio emere illam amici nostri. — Num equos meos bonos emere vis? — Nolo eos emere. — Quot verveces emere vis? — Duo et viginti emere volo. — Vultne peregrinus multum frumenti emere? — Immo vero paulum tantum emere vult. — Visne magnam digitabulorum copiam emere? — Immo vero pauca tantum emere volo; liberi autem nostri permulta emere volunt. — Numquid illi quærere volunt caligas easdem, quas nos habemus? — Non eas quas vos habetis, sed eas quas pater meus habet, quærere volunt. — Utrum tu quærere vis togas meas, an illas Francogalli boni? — Nolo neque tuas neque illas Francogalli boni quærere; quærere volo meas atque illas filii mei boni.

45. DICTATA QUADRAGESIMA QUINTA.

Num tu vis (Cupisne) togam meam lacerare? — Nolo (Non cupio) eam lacerare. — Num frater tuus librum meum pulchrum lacerare vult (cupit)? — Non cupit eum lacerare. — Quid lacerare vult? — Cor tuum lacerare vult. — Apud quem est pater noster? — Apud amicum suum est. — Ad quem vis ire (tu ire vis)? — Ad te ire volo (cupio). — Visne domum meam ire? — Non tuam, sed in illam sartoris mei ire volo (cupio). — Vultne (Cupitne) pater tuus ad amicum suum ire? — Vult ad eum ire. — Apud quem (In eujus domo) est filius tuus? — Apud nos est (Domi nostræ est). — Voluntne liberi tui ad amicos nostros ire? — Volunt (Cupiunt) ad eos ire. — Estne peregrinus apud fratrem nostrum? — Est apud

eum. — Apud quem est Anglus (In cujus domo est)? — Apud te est (Tuæ domi est). — Estne Americanus apud nos (domi nostræ)? — Non, domine, non est apud nos; in domo amici sui (apud amicum suum) est. — Estne Italus apud amicos suos? — Est apud eos (In domo eorum est).

46. DICTATA QUADRAGESIMA SEXTA.

Visne domum ire? — Nolo ire domum (Domum ire non cupio); volo ire in domum filii vicini mei. — Num pater tuus domi est (Estne pater tuus domi)? — Non vero, domine, domi non est. — Apud quem (In cujus domo) est? — Apud bonos vicini nostri veteris liberos est. — Num in alicujus domum ire vis? — Nolo in cujusquam domum ire. — Apud quem est filius tuus? — Apud neminem est (Non est in domo cujusquam); domi suæ est (apud semet ipsum est). — Quid domi facere vult? — Bonum vinum bibere vult. — Visne epistolas meas domum tuam portare? — Immo eas in domum paternam portare volo. — Quis scidulas meas portare vult? — Juvenis eas portare vult. — Num eas domum meam portare vult? — Non; in domum fratris sui (*or* fraternam) eas portare vult. — Estne ejus pater domi? — Domi suæ non est; apud peregrinum (in peregrini domo) est. — Quid est tibi ad bibendum (Quid bibendum habes)? — Non est mihi quidquam ad bibendum (Nihil bibendum habeo). — Estne filio tuo aliquid ad bibendum? — Sunt ei bonum vinum et bona aqua ad bibendum. — Vultne famulus tuus libros meos ad fratres meos portare (ferre)? — Vult eos in domum eorum portare. — Quid tu domum meam portare vis? — Domum tuam portare volo duas gallinas, tres aves, bonum panem et bonum vinum. — Num tu has sellas domum meam portare vis? — Non has, sed (verum) illas portare volo. — Quid facere vult Germanus domi? — Laborare et bonum vinum bibere vult.

47. DICTATA QUADRAGESIMA SEPTIMA.

Quid est tibi domi (Quid domi habes)? — Non est mihi quidquam domi (Nihil domi habeo). — Estne tibi domi aliquid ad bibendum? — Nihil ad bibendum habeo; non habeo nisi aquam nequam. — Habetne centurio tantum coffeæ quantum sacchari domi? — Tantum de illā quantum de alterā habet

domi. — Visne tot thaleros quot orbiculos fibulatorios in fratris mei domum portare? — Ego in domum ejus tot alterorum quot alterorum portare volo. — Visne vasa vitrea magna domum meam portare? — Volo aliquot domum tuam portare. — Cupitne mercator tot boves quot verveces emere? — Emere cupit quot ex alteris tot ex alteris (tot horum quot illorum). — Reparandine sunt sutori tot calcei quot caligæ? — Reparandi sunt ei quot illorum tot harum. — Estne ei tantum vini quantum aquæ ad bibendum? — Est ei ad bibendum tantum alterius quantum alterius (quantum de hac tantum de illo). — Cupítne Turca vasa (aliqua) vitrea confringere? — Cupit vero nonnulla confringere (Cupidus est aliquot confringendi). — Estne cupidus vini bibendi? — Non est cupidus bibendi. — Visne aliquid de me emere (Numquid a me emere vis)? — Nolo de te quidquam emere (Nihil a te emere volo). — De quo (A quo) tu vis frumentum tuum emere? — Volo id de mercatore magno emere. — De quo boves suos emere volunt Angli? — De (a) Batavis eos emere volunt (cupiunt). — Numquid Hispani emere volunt? — Nihil emere volunt (cupiunt).

48. DICTATA DUODEQUINQUAGESIMA.

Visne aliquo ire? — Nusquam ire volo (Nolo usquam ire). — Num filius tuus ad aliquem ire vult? — Ad nullum (neminem) ire vult. — Quando vis juvenem tuum ad pictorem ducere? — Ego illum hodie ad eum ducere volo. — Quo ille has aves portare (ferre) vult? — Non vult eas usquam portare. — Visne medicum hunc ad hominem ducere? — Volo illum ad eum ducere. — Quando (Quo tempore) illum vis ad eum ducere? — Ego illum hodie ad eum de ducere volo. — Voluntne medici ad fratrem tuum bonum venire? — Nolunt ad eum venire. — Num quem mihi famulum mittere vis? — Nolo tibi quenquam mittere. — Visne filium aliquem ad medicum mittere? — Volo unum ad eum mittere. — Apud quem (Quocum) est medicus? — Apud neminem (Cum nemine) est. — Visne ire aliquo? — Vero, ad bonos Americanos ire volo. — Estne ei otium ad veniendum domum meam? — Non est ei otium ad veniendum (eo). — Vultne (cupitne) centurio unā plus epistolarum scribere? — Vult vero scribere unā amplius. — Visne scribere schedulam? — Volo unam scribere. — Cupidusne est amicus tuus tot epistolarum scribendi quot ego? — Cupidus est totidem scribendi.

49. DICTATA UNDEQUINQUAGESIMA.

Ubi frater tuus est? — Domi est. — Quo (quorsum) tu ire vis? — Domum ire volo (cupio). — Quo pater tuus ire vult? — Domum tuam ire vult. — Quo vis hanc epistolam portare? — Ego eam in domum vicini mei portare volo. — Estne filius tuus domi? — Est (ibi). — Quo vult sutor caligas meas portare? — Vult eas domum tuam portare. — Vultne eas domum portare? — Vult eas eo portare. — Visne saccharum bonum domum tuam mittere? — Volo eo mittere nonnullum. — Vultne pistor bonum panem domum mittere? — Vult eo mittere nonnullum. — Visne venire ad me (ad me venire)? — Volo ad te venire. — Quo tu ire vis? — Ad Francogallos ire volo. — Voluntne Itali boni domum nostram ire? — Nusquam ire volunt (Nolunt usquam ire). — Visne filium tuum domum meam ducere? — Ego eum non tuam, verum in centurionis domum deducere volo. — Quando tu eum in centurionis domum ducere vis? — Ego eum cras illuc ducere volo. — Habesne multas epistolas scribendas? — Non habeo nisi paucas scribendas (Paucas tantum scribendas habeo). — Quam multas epistolas scribendas habet vicinus noster vetus? — Scribendas habet tam multas (tot) quot tu (habes). — Cui sunt epistolæ longæ scribendæ? — Scribendæ sunt aliquot adolescentulo. — Quot litteræ ei adhuc scribendæ sunt? — Scribendæ sunt ei adhuc sex. — Quot ei mittendæ sunt? — Mittendæ sunt ei viginti. — Num mittendas habet tot epistolas quot pater ejus? — Pauciores mittendas habet (Mittendæ sunt ei pauciores). — Mittendine sunt opifici pileorum adhuc aliquot pilei? — Non sunt ei amplius mittendi. — Audetne filius tuus epistolam unam longam scribere? — Audet vero unam scribere. — Vultne scribere tot epistolas quot meus? — Vult vero scribere totidem. — Visne tot currus quot equos emere? — Plus horum quam illorum emere volo.

50. DICTATA QUINQUAGESIMA.

Potesne (Scisne) mihi panem secare? — Possum (Scio) tibi aliquantum secare. — Habesne cultrum ad secandum mihi aliquantulum (qui *or* quo mihi aliquantulum seces)? — Non habeo. — Potesne digitabula tua lavare? — Possum quidem ea lavare, sed facere hoc non cupio. — Potestne (Scitne) sartor

togam mihi facere? — Potest (Scit) tibi unam facere (conficere). — Visne ad medicum loqui? — Volo (ad eum loqui). — Cupitne filius tuus me videre, ut mecum (ad me) loquatur? — Te videre cupit (vult), ut tibi det thalerum. — Num me occidere (interficere) vult? — Non te occidere vult; te videre modo vult. — Cupitne amici nostri veteris filius (unum) bovem occidere (mactare)? — Immo duos occidere (mactare) cupit (vult). — Quantum pecuniæ (Quantam pecuniam) mittere mihi potes? — Ego tibi triginta thaleros mittere possum. — Visne mihi mittere epistolam meam? — Volo tibi eam mittere. — Visne mittere aliquid sutori? — Vero, ei caligas meas mittere volo. — Num vis ei togas tuas mittere? — Immo vero eas ad sartorem meum mittere volo. — Potestne mihi sartor togam meam mittere? — Mittere eam non potest. — Possuntne (Sciuntne) liberi tui scribere epistolas? — Sciunt (nonnullas scribere).

51. DICTATA UNA ET QUINQUAGESIMA.

Estne tibi scyphus ad vinum bibendum? — Est mihi unus, vino autem careo; non habeo nisi aquam. — Visne mihi dare pecuniam, ut (aliquantulum) emam? — Dare tibi non nolo (Volo tibi dare), sed non habeo nisi pauxillum (paulum tantum habeo). — Visne mihi dare quod habeas? — Volo tibi dare. — Potesne bibere tantum vini quantum aquæ? — Tantum ex uno quantum ex alterâ bibere possum. — Estne vicino nostro lignum ad ignem accendendum (qui *or* quo ignem accendat)? — Habet quidem nonnullum ad unum accendendum, caret autem pecuniâ ad emendum panem et carnem (qui *or* quâ panem et carnem emat). — Visne ei aliquantulum commodare? — Volo ei commodare (Commodare ei non nolo). — Cupisne ad Germanum loqui? — Cupio (volo) ad eum loqui. — Ubi est? — Apud filium centurionis est. — Cupitne (Vultne) Germanus ad me (mecum) loqui? — Cupit vero ad te (tecum) loqui. — Utrum cum meo fratre loqui vult an cum tuo? — Cum utroque loqui vult. — Possuntne sartoris nostri liberi laborare (opus facere)? — Possunt laborare, sed nolunt.

52. DICTATA ALTERA ET QUINQUAGESIMA.

Habetne faber tignarius pecuniam ad malleum emendum (qui *or* quâ malleum emat)? — Habet nonnullam ad unum

emendum (qui *or* quā unum emat). — Estne navarcho pecunia, qui (*or* quā) navem emat? — Est ei, qui (*or* quā) unam emat. — Habetne rusticus pecuniam ad oves emendas? — Non habet ad (quasquam) emendas (Non habet, quā emat). — Estne tibi otium ad patrem meum videndum? — Non est mihi otium ad eum videndum. — Vultne (Cupitne) pater tuus me videre? — Non te videre vult. — Habetne famulas scopas ad domum everrendam? — Habet vero unas ad eam everrendam. — Vultne eam everrere? — Vult eam everrere. — Estne mihi (Num mihi est) sat salis ad carnem meam saliendam (qui *or* quo carnem meam saliam)? — Non est tibi satis ad eam saliendam. — Num amicus tuus domum meam venire vult, ut me videat? — Non vult nec domum tuam venire nec te videre. — Cupidusne est vicinus noster equi sui occidendi? — Non est cupidus ejus occidendi. — Num tu amicos tuos interficere vis? — Immo inimicos meos modo interficere volo. — Visne cum liberis (ad liberos) sutoris tui loqui? — Volo cum iis (ad eos) loqui. — Quid iis dare vis? — Ego iis placentas magnas (panificia magna) dare volo. — Visne (Num vis) iis aliquid cummodare? — Non habeo, quod iis commodem. — Habetne coquus adhuc salem ad carnem saliendam? — Habet adhuc aliquantulum. — Reliquumne est ei aliquid oryzæ? — Est ei permultum reliquum. — Vultne mihi dare aliquantulum? — Vult vero tibi dare aliquantulum. — Ecquid liberis meis egenis dare vult? — Vult iis nonnullum dare. — Utrum occidere vult gallinam hanc an illam? — Neutram occidere vult. — Utrum occidere vult bovem hunc an illum? — Ambos (utrumque) occidere vult. — Quis nobis buccellata mittere vult? — Pistor vobis aliqua mittere vult. — Ecquid habes boni (Estne tibi aliquid boni), quod mihi des? — Nihil boni habeo (Non est mihi quidquam boni), quod tibi dem.

53. DICTATA QUINQUAGESIMA TERTIA.

Visne amico tuo (ad amicum tuum) respondere (rescribere)? — Volo ei (ad eum) rescribere. — Sed cui tu vis rescribere? — Ego patri meo bono rescribere volo. — Nonne vis amicis tuis bonis rescribere? — Volo iis rescribere. — Quis mihi rescribere vult? — Rescribere tibi (ad te) vult Russus, sed non potest. — Vultne Russus epistolam ad me scribere? — Vult unam ad te scribere. — Possuntne Hispani ad nos rescribere? — Rescribere ad nos non possunt, sed nos ad eos

rescribere possumus. — Quid Anglo faciendum est? — Rescribendum est ei ad epistolam (ad litteras). — Cui epistolæ (Ad quam epistolam) est ei rescribendum? — Rescribendum est ei ad epistolam Francogalli boni. — Estne mihi rescribendum ad epistolam aliquam? — Rescribendum tibi est non ad epistolam, sed ad schedulam. — Cui schedulæ (Ad quam schedulam) mihi rescribendum est? — Rescribendum tibi est ad illam centurionis magni. — Rescribendumne est nobis ad epistolas mercatorum? — Est nobis ad eas rescribendum. — Visne sartoris tui schedulæ rescribere? — Volo ei (ad eam) rescribere. — Ecquis (Numquis) epistolæ meæ magnæ rescribere vult? — Nemo ei (ad eam) rescribere vult. — Utrum pater rescribere tuus vult ad hanc schedulam an ad illam? — Non rescribere vult neque ad hanc neque ad illam. — Quibus schedulis respondere vult? — Respondere vult solum illis amicorum suorum bonorum. — Vultne ad litteras meas (*or* epistolæ meæ) respondere (rescribere)? — Vult vero ad eas respondere. — Vultne pater tuus aliquo ire? — Nusquam ire vult (Non vult ire usquam). — Ubi est frater tuus? — In hortis amici nostri est. — Ubinam est Anglus? — In hortulo suo est. — Quonam vos ire cupitis (vultis)? — In Francogallorum hortos inire cupimus (volumus). — Ubi est filius tuus? — In conclavi suo est. — Vultne in horreum inire? — Vult (in id) inire. — Visne (in) theatrum magnum inire? — Nolo ego inire, sed filius meus cupidus est ineundi. — Ubi est Hibernus? — In theatro est. — Estne Americanus in silva? — Inest.

54. DICTATA QUINQUAGESIMA QUARTA.

Visne venire ad me, ut in silvam ineamus? — Non est mihi voluntas in silvam ineundi. — Quod (in) theatrum inire vis? — (In) theatrum magnum inire volo. — Utrum inire vis hortos meos an illos Batavi? — Non cupio inire neque tuos neque illos Batavi; ego Francogallorum hortulos inire volo. — Num in illos Germanorum inire vis? — Nolo eo inire. — Suntne Americanis magna mercium receptacula? — Sunt iis nonnulla. — Suntne Anglis penora * magna? — Sunt iis nonnulla. — Habentne Germani tot receptacula mercium quot penora? — Tot horum quot illorum habent. — Visne penora nostra magna videre? — Volo vero in receptacula tua mer-

* See Grammar, page 84, 4.

cium inire, ut ea videam (Volo vero videndi causā in, &c.). — Estne vobis multum fœni in cellis vestris penariis? — Est nobis ejus permultum, sed non est nobis satis frumenti. — Vultisne aliquid (aliquantum) emere? — Volumus vero nonnullum emere. — Estne nobis tantum frumenti, quantum vini in cellis nostris penariis? — Est nobis tantum ex altero quantum ex altero. — Tenentne Angli tantum panni quantum chartæ in mercium suis receptaculis? — Immo plus alterius (de altero) quam alterius (de alterā) tenent. — Estne patri tuo otium ad scribendum epistolam ad me? — Cupit quidem unam ad te scribere, sed otio caret hodie. — Quando vult ad illam fratris mei respondere? — Respondere vult ad eam cras (crastino tempore). — Visne domum meam venire, ut magna mea mercium receptacula videas? — Non possum hodie domum tuam venire; epistolæ mihi scribendæ sunt. — Ubi est culter? — Sub mensā est. — Estne amicus tuus intus? — Est (intus). — Intro it. — Cupisne foras ire (Visne exire domo)? — Immo vero intro ire cupio. — Estne pictor foris? — Non est foris.

55. DICTATA QUINQUAGESIMA QUINTA.

Ubi est noster amicus? — In foro est. — Ubi est frater meus? — Ruri est. — Visne rus ire? — Nolo eo ire. — Quo (quorsum) ire cupis? — Ad forum ire cupio. — Estne frater tuus domi? — Non; saltationi interest (adest). — Quo ire vult filius tuus? — Ad (in) locum publicum ire vult. — Itne Anglus rus, ut agros videat? — Rus non it, ut agros videat, sed ut silvas, aves, aquam videat, et (ut) theam bibat. — Ubi est filius rustici? — In agris est frumentum secans (frumenti secandi causā). — Num filius equitis (hominis nobilis) aliquo ire vult? — Non usquam ire vult; fessus est. — Quo ferre (portare) vult frumentum quæsitoris filius? — Ferre vult aliquantum in cellam penariam fratris tui. — Vultne eo portare vinum et carnem? — Utrumque eo portare vult.

56. DICTATA QUINQUAGESIMA SEXTA.

Estne tibi otium ad standum juxta fenestram? — Non est mihi otium ad standum juxta fenestram. — Estne frater tuus domi? — Non est (domi). — Ubi est? — Ruri (est). — Num quid est ei ruri faciendum? — Nihil ei quidquam ibi faciendum

est. — Quo ire vis? — In theatrum ire volo. — Estne Turca in theatro? — Inest. — Quis in hortis est? — Liberi Anglorum et illi Germanorum ibi sunt. — Ubi vult pater tuus mecum loqui? — In cubiculo (conclavi) suo tecum loqui vult. — Quocum (Ad quem) loqui vult frater tuus? — Cum Hiberno (Ad Hibernum) loqui vult. — Non ad Scotum loqui vult? — Vero, ad eum loqui vult. — Ubi ad eum (cum eo) loqui vult? — Loqui vult ad eum (cum eo) in theatro. — Cupitne Italus cum aliquo loqui? — Cupit (Vult) vero loqui cum medico. — Ubi ad eum loqui vult? — Loqui vult ad eum inter saltandum (in saltatione). — Potesne mihi mittere pecuniam? — Possum tibi mittere nonnullum. — Quantam pecuniam mittere mihi potes? — Mittere tibi possum triginta duo thaleros. — Quando mihi pecuniam illam mittere vis? — Volo tibi eam hodie mittere. — Visne mihi eam mittere rus? — Volo tibi eam illo mittere. — Visne famulum tuum in forum mittere? — Volo eum illo mittere. — Emendumne est tibi aliquid in foro? — Emenda * sunt mihi bonus pannus, bonæ caligæ et boni calcei.

57. DICTATA QUINQUAGESIMA SEPTIMA.

Quid facere vult lanius ruri? — Boves ibi et verveces emere vult, ut eos occidat (*or, better*, quos occidat). — Visne gallinam emere, ut eam (*or* quam) occidas? — Volo unam emere, sed occidere eam non audeo. — Num nauta aliquem interficere vult? — Neminem interficere vult. — Cupisne epistolas meas comburere? — Facere non audeo. — Utrum quærere vult famulus cultrum meum an chartam meam? — Utrumque quærere vult. — Quem cultrum cupis (vis)? — Cultrum meum magnum cupio (volo). — Quos boves lanius occidere vult? — Occidere vult boves magnos (grandes). — Qualem penum (Quid peni) emere vult mercator? — Bonum penum emere vult (Emere vult penum bonum). — Ubi (eum) emere vult? — (Emere vult eum) in foro. — Ad quem (eum) mittere vult? — Mittere vult (eum) ad inimicos nostros. — Visne mihi mittere uno plus librorum? — Volo tibi mittere aliquot amplius. — Potesne bibere tantum vini quantum vicinus tuus (bibere potest)? — Tantum bibere possum; amicus autem noster Russus plus quam uterque nostrum bibere (portare) potest.

* See Grammar, page 99, B. 3.

— Potestne Russus bibere tantum hujus vini quantum illius? — Tantum de uno, quantum de altero bibere potest. — Habesne aliquid boni ad bibendum? — Nihil boni ad bibendum habeo.

58. DICTATA DUODESEXAGESIMA.

Potestne amicus Hispani penum portare? — Potest vero nonnullum portare. — Quo penum portare vult? — Portare vult (nonnullum) ad cellas penarias nostras. — Visne emere penum, ut eum (*or, better*, quem) in cellas penarias nostras portes? — Immo nonnullum emere volo, ut eum (*or* quem) rus portem. — Visne ad fenestram ire, ut adolescentem videas? — Non est (Deest) mihi otium ad eundum (ad fenestram). — Estne tibi aliquid faciendum? — Scribenda est mihi epistola. — Ad quem scribenda tibi est epistola? — Scribenda mihi una est ad amicum meum. — Visne litteras ad quæsitorem mittere? — Volo ad eum mittere. — Quid ad eum scribere vis? — Ego ad litteras ejus respondere volo. — Potesne scribere tot epistolas, quot ego? — Ego plus (plures), quam tu, scribere possum. — Potesne dare litteras ad amicos tuos absentes? — Possum litteras ad eos dare. — Estne tibi charta ad scribendum? — Est. — Potestne quæsitor litteras mittere ad aliquem? — Litteras mittere (dare) potest ad neminem.

59. DICTATA UNDESEXAGESIMA.

Amarisne (Diligerisne) a patre tuo? — Amor (Diligor) ab eo. — Amaturne ab eo frater tuus? — Amatur (Diligitur) ab eo. — A quo ego amor (diligor)? — Amaris (diligeris) a parentibus tuis. — Amamurne (Diligimurne)? — Amamini (Diligimini). — A quo amamur (diligimur)? — Amamini (Diligimini) ab amicis vestris. — Amanturne (Diligunturne) hi homines? — Amantur (Diliguntur) a nobis et ab amicis suis bonis. — A quo ducitur cæcus? — (Ducitur) a me. — Quo (Quorsum) eum ducis? — Duco eum domum. — A quo nos vituperamur (reprehendimur)? — Vituperamur (Reprehendimur) ab inimicis nostris. — Quam ob rem ab iis vituperamur? — Quia (Quod) nos non amant. — Afficiminine pœnâ (*or* Puniminine) a magistro vestro? — Nos pœnâ non afficimur (non punimur), quia seduli et boni sumus. — Audimurne? — Audimur. — A quo audimur? — Audimur a vicinis nostris.

— Auditurne magister ab alumnis (a discipulis) suis? — Auditur ab iis. — Qui liberi laudantur? — Ii, qui boni (bene morati) sunt. — Qui pœnâ afficiuntur? — Illi, qui ignavi (segnes) et mali (malis moribus) sunt. — Utrum vos laudamini an vituperamini? — Nos nec laudamur nec vituperamur (reprehendimur). — Amaturne amicus noster a magistris suis? — Vero, et amatur et laudatur ab iis, quia assiduus beneque moratus est; sed frater ejus a suis despicatui habetur (*or* contemnitur), quia nequam et ignavus est. — Scribiturne epistola? — Scribitur. — A quo scribuntur libri illi? — Scribuntur ab amicis nostris. — Ad quem (*or* cui) mensa mittitur? — Mittitur ad vicinum nostrum. — Quo mittuntur cultri (illi)? — Domum nostram mittuntur. — Mitterisne aliquo? — Nusquam mittor. — Num indusia nostra ab aliquo lavantur? — Non lavantur ab ullo (A nemine lavantur). — Fitne frater tuus sedulus? — Non fit. — Calefitne coffea nostra? — Calefit. — A quo reparantur (reficiuntur) togæ nostræ? — Reparantur a sartore. — Num equi nostri ab aliquo emuntur? — A nemine emuntur. — A quo bibitur vinum? — Bibitur ab amicis nostris. — Legiturne liber a quoquam? — Non legitur ab ullo (A nemine *or* nullo legitur). — A quo leguntur libri boni? — Leguntur a sapientibus doctisque. — Quâ re delectaris? — Ego libris meis novis delector. — Quomodo hostes (inimici) nostri occiduntur (interficiuntur)? — Interficiuntur gladio.

60. DICTATA SEXAGESIMA.

Visne apportare (afferre) saccharum? — Volo nonnullum apportare (afferre). — Mi fili, visne aquam apportare? — Etiam, mi pater, apportare volo (non nolo). — Quo tu ire vis? — Ad puteum ire cupio (volo), ut aquam apportem (afferam). — Ubi est frater meus? — Apud (ad) puteum est. — Visne filium meum arcessi jubere? — Volo eum arcessi jubere. — Vultne centurio puerum meum adduci jubere? — Vult vero eum adduci jubere. — Ubi est? — In angulo navis est. — Potesne litteras ad me dare? — Possum unas ad te dare. — Oportetne me aliquo ire? — Oportet te in hortos inire (Oportet ineas in hortulum). — Oportetne ego jubeam aliquid afferri? — Oportet vero jubeas afferri bonum vinum, bonum caseum et bonum panem. — Quid ego faciam oportet (Quid me facere oportet, *or* Quid mihi faciendum est)? — Oportet scribas (Te oportet scribere) epistolam unam longam.

— Ad quem me oportet epistolam longam scribere? — Scribas oportet unam ad amicum tuum. — Estne puerculus tuus diligens? — Est vero et modestus et diligens (non minus diligens quam modestus). — Num hi pueri inepti et segnes sunt? — Non sunt neque inepti neque segnes. — Quis appellaris? — Ego doctus et sapiens appellor. — Fiuntne illi docti? — Fiunt. — Evaditne orator? — Evadit. — Manentne boni? — Non manent. — Incedone ego imperator? — Incedis. — Num illi habentur formosi? — Immo vero deformes habentur (existimantur). — Cupiuntne fieri clementes? — Cupiunt clementes fieri. — Licetne mihi esse beato (beatum)? — Licet. — Videmur nos justi esse? — Non videmini.

61. DICTATA UNA ET SEXAGESIMA.

Quid nos faciamus (*or* facere) oportet (Quid nobis faciendum est)? — Oportet vos eatis (*or* ire) in silvas ligni secandi causā (*or* ut lignum secetis). — Quid Anglum facere oportet (Quid Anglus faciat oportet)? — Habetne Hispanus aliquid faciendum? — Laborandum est ei. — Ubi laborare potest? — Laborare potest in conclavi suo et in meo. — Quando mihi dare vis pecuniam? — Dare tibi volo hodie vesperi. — Oportetne me domum tuam venire? — Oportet (te domum meam venire). — Quando (Quo tempore) me domum tuam venire oportet? — Hodie mane. — Utrum domum tuam veniam oportet mane an vesperi? — Et mane et vesperi venias oportet (Necesse tibi est venire et mane et vesperi). — Quo ego eam necesse est? — Necesse est eas in campum magnum, ut cum mercatoribus (ad mercatores) loquare. — Quo ire rustico necesse est? — In agros ire ei necesse est, ut fœnum secet. — Necessene est mihi tibi aliquid servare? — Necesse est serves mihi aurum meum bonum et opera mea bona. — Oportetne liberos amicorum nostrorum facere aliquid? — Oportet eos (Necesse est iis) laborare mane et vesperi. — Quid tibi sartor reficiat oportet? — Reficiat oportet mihi togam meam veterem (Necesse est ei togam meam veterem reficere). — Quam gallinam coquus occidat oportet? — Occidat et hanc et illam oportet (necesse est). — Utrum tibi mittam oportet libros hos an illos? — Oportet mihi mittas et hos et illos. — Habesne aliquid ad bibendum (Habesne quod bibas)? — Nihil ad bibendum habeo (Non habeo quod bibam). — Quid ad bibendum habent? — Nihil ad bibendum habent nisi aquam. — Quo

te ire oportet? — Me in hortos inire oportet. — Necessene est iis scribere? — Non necesse est. — Oportetne nos loqui (*or* loquamur)? — Oportet. — Oportetne me jubere (ego jubeam) aquam afferri? — Oportet jubeas (aliquantulum) afferri (apportari). — Cui necesse est librum apportari jubere? — Necesse est fratri nostro eum apportari jubere. — Jubentne me arcessi (adduci)? — Non jubent (te arcessi).

62. DICTATA ALTERA ET SEXAGESIMA.

Loquunturne Latine (Num illi Latine loquuntur)? — Loqui non possunt. — Nosne loquimur? — Non loquimur. — Cui blandimini? — Nulli (Nemini) blandimur. — Hortanturne aliquem (Ecquem hortantur)? — Hortantur vero amicos suos. — Hortanturne te, ut ad eos venias? — Me non hortantur, ut ad eos veniam, sed ut litteras ad eos mittam. — Vererisne aliquid (Numquid vereris)? — Nihil vereor. — Verentur, ne interficiantur? — Non verentur. — Quo usque ire vis? — Ire volo usque ad extremam silvam. — Quo usque frater tuus ire vult? — Ire vult usque ad terminum illius viæ. — Quo usque extenditur vinum? — Extenditur usque ad fundum dolii (usque ad imum dolium). — Quo usque extenditur aqua? — Extenditur usque ad ima putei (imo tenus puteo). — Quorsum is? — Ad forum eo. — Quo imus nos? — Rus imus. — Isne usque ad locum publicum? — Immo ego usque ad fontem eo. — Quo tempore ad forum it coquus tuus? — Eo it quotidie mane (quot diebus mane). — Potesne ad equitem loqui? — Possum vero quotidie ad eum loqui. — Possumne patrem tuum videre? — Potes eum videre quotidie vesperi (nullo non vespere). — Quotā horā ego videre eum possum? — Videre eum potes quotidie vespere horā octavā. — Visne hodie ad me venire? — Venire ad te hodie non possum, verum cras. — Quotā horā cras venire vis? — Venire volo mediā horā post octavam. — Non venire potes quadrante horæ post octavam? — Non possum. — Quotā horā it filius tuus ad centurionem? — Ad eum it quadrante horæ ante primam. — Quotā horā domi est amicus tuus? — Mediā nocte.

63. DICTATA SEXAGESIMA TERTIA.

Cupidusne es in publicum prodeundi? — Non sum (cupidus in publicum prodeundi). — Quo tempore domo exire (in

publicum prodire) vis? — Exire volo mediā horā post tertiam. — Vultne pater tuus in publicum prodire? — Non vult in publicum prodire; domi se tenere vult. — Visne hic manere (morari), amice mi carissime? — Manere hic non possum; in mercium receptaculum ire me oportet (Necesse est mihi in mercium receptaculum ire). — Necessene est tibi ire ad fratrem tuum? — Est mihi necesse ad eum ire. — Quotā horā epistolæ tuæ tibi scribendæ sunt? — Scribendæ sunt mihi mediā nocte (Necesse est scribam eas mediā nocte). — Utrum ad fratrem tuum is vesperi an mane? — Eo ad eum et vesperi et mane (mane non minus quam vesperi). — Quo is hoc tempore? — In theatrum (ad spectaculum) eo. — Quo is hodie vesperi? — Nusquam eo; necesse est maneam domi, ut epistolas scribam. — Suntne fratres tui domi (Num fratres tui domi sunt)? — Non sunt (ibi). — Ubi sunt? — Ruri sunt. — Quo eunt amici tui? — Domum eunt. — Suntne sartori tuo tot liberi quot sutori tuo (sunt)? — Sunt illi totidem. — Habentne sutoris tui filii tot caligas quot pater eorum (habet)? — Immo plures, quam ille, habent. — Habentne liberi opificis nostri pileorum tantum panis quantum vini? — Plus alterius (de uno) quam alterius (de altero) habent. — Habetne noster faber tignarius filium unum reliquum? — Immo plures eorum reliquos habet. — Sitiuntne Itali? — Vero, et esuriunt et sitiunt. — Habentne aliquid faciendum? — Nihil faciendum habent. — Utrum Hibernorum filii (liberi) esuriunt an sitiunt? — Neque esuriunt neque sitiunt, sed fessi sunt.

64. DICTATA SEXAGESIMA QUARTA.

Estne tibi otium ad prodeundum in publicum? — Non est mihi otium ad prodeundum. — Quid tibi domi faciendum est? — Necesse est scribam epistolas ad amicos meos. — Estne tibi cubiculum tuum everrendum (scopis purgandum)? — Est mihi everrendum. — Estne tibi necesse fratribus tuis pecuniam commodare (Commodandane tibi est pecunia fratribus tuis)? — Necesse est commodem iis aliquantulum. — Estne tibi in hortos eundum? — Eundum et mihi eo. — Quotā horā tibi eo eundum est? — Eundum mihi est eo quadrante horæ post duodecimam. — Eundumne est tibi ad fratrem meum horā undecimā noctis? — Immo vero eundum est mihi ad eum mediā nocte. — Ubi sunt fratres quæsitoris nostri? — In silvā magnā sunt, ut arbores magnas secent (arbores magnas secan-

tes). — Habentne pecuniam, qui (*or* quā) panem vinumque emant? — Habent. — Oportetne Francogallorum liberos ad Anglorum liberos ire? — Oportet. — Visne vinum et scyphos afferri jubere? — Licetne Turcæ apud Russum manere? — Licet illi apud eum (hunc) manere. — Non est illi nefas apud hunc manere. — Visne mihi dare pecuniam, ut panem opportem? — Volo tibi dare, ut panem et cerevisiam apportes. — Ecquid liberi tui quotidie in publicum prodeunt? — Prodeunt vero quotidie mane (quot diebus mane). — Quando (Quo tempore) tu in publicum prodis? — In publicum prodeo quot diebus mane. — Quotā horā in publicum prodit frater tuus? — Prodit horā nonā. — Quo usque ire cupit? — Usque Romam (ire cupit). — Quo usque in aquam inire audet? — Pectoris tenus inire audet.

65. DICTATA SEXAGESIMA QUINTA.

Visne (vin') mihi officium præstare (mihi gratum facere)? — Etiam, domine; quā re? — Vin' fratri tuo mandare, ut mihi equum suum vendat? — Volo ei mandare, ut tibi eum vendat. — Vin' jubere ministros meos cubicula mea magna scopis purgare? — Volo eos jubere (ea) purgare (everrere). — Visne filium tuum jubere ad patrem meum venire? — Volo eum (ad eum) venire jubere. — Cupisne mihi aliquid dicere (Habesne quod mihi dicas)? — Non habeo quod tibi dicam. — Habesne quod patri meo dicas? — Habeo vero verbum, quod ei dicam (pauca quæ ei dicam). — Num fratres tui currum suum vendere volunt? — Vendere non volunt. — Johannes! adesne? — Etiam, domine, adsum (hic sum). — Vin' tu ad opificem meum pileorum ire, ut jubeas eum pileum meum reficere? — Volo ad eum ire. — Visne ad sartorem ire, ut ei mandes, ut togas meas reparet (reficiat)? — Volo ad eum ire. — Visne in forum ire? — Volo eo ire (Ire eo non nolo). — Quid mercator habet ad vendendum? — Ad vendendum habet digitabula scortea pulchra, pectines, et bonum pannum. — Habetne aliqua indusia ad vendendum? — Habet nonnulla ad vendendum (quæ vendat). — Cupitne mihi equos suos vendere? — Cupit tibi eos vendere. — Quis tragœdiam Thyestem legere scit (potest)? — Ego quidem eam legere non possum (*or* non scio, *or* nescio), sed frater meus cupidus est ejus legendi. — Quis librum meum legit? — Discipulus tuus, frater meus, eum legit. — Quis mihi cultrum vendere cupit (vult)? — Ejus ami-

cus, pistor tibi unum vendere vult. — Indigesne tu alicujus (Eccujus indiges) ? — Vero ; patris tui, mercatoris, indigeo. — Quem laudant (homines) ? — Inimicum nostrum, pictorem, laudant.

66. DICTATA SEXAGESIMA SEXTA.

Qua re eges (indiges) ? — Bono pileo egeo. — Egesne hoc cultro ? — Egeo. — Estne tibi opus pecuniâ ? — Opus est. — Num fratri tuo opus est piper (pipere) ? — Non opus est. — An ei opus sunt caligæ ? — Non opus sunt. — Quid fratri tuo opus est ? — Non est ei opus quidquam (Nihil opus est). — Cui opus est saccharum (saccharo) ? — Nemini eo opus est. — Numquid patri tuo opus est ? — Nihil ei opus est. — Quid mihi opus est ? — Opus est tibi nihil. — Indigesne tu libro meo ? — Vero, eo indigeo. — Indigetne eo pater tuus ? — Non indiget. — Estne amico tuo opus hoc baculo (hocce baculum) ? — Est ei opus. — Utrum ei opus sunt hi emboli an illi ? — Non opus sunt ei neque hi neque illi. — Indigesne tu mei ? — Tui indigeo. — Quando ego tibi opus sum ? — Nunc. — Quid mihi dicere vis (Quid habes quod mihi dicas) ? — Volo tibi dicere quiddam novum (aliquid novi). — Quid tibi vis ? — Cupio ad te (tecum) loqui. — Indigetne filius tuus nostri ? — Indiget vero et tui et fratrum tuorum. — Indigesne famulorum meorum ? — Eorum indigeo. — Numquis fratris mei indiget ? — Nemo ejus indiget.

67. DICTATA SEXAGESIMA SEPTIMA.

Estne serum ? — Non serum est. — Quota hora est ? — Quadrans horæ post decimam est. — Quâ horâ pater tuus in publicum prodire vult ? — Prodire vult dodrante horæ post octavam (quadrante horæ ante nonam). — Utrum vendere vult equum hunc an illum ? — Neutrum vendere vult. — Utrum emere vult togam hanc an illam ? — Utramque emere vult. — Habetne uno plus equorum ad vendendum ? — Habet vero uno plus, sed vendere eum non cupit (non vult). — Habetne uno plus curruum (pilentorum) ad vendendum ? — Non habet uno plus curruum ad vendendum ; ad vendendum autem habet aliquot amplius boum. — Quando eos vendere vult ? — Vendere vult eos hodie. — Utrum eos vendere vult mane

an vesperi? — Vendere vult eos hodie vesperi. — Quotā horā? — Dimidiā (*or* mediā) horā post quintam. — Potesne ire ad pistorem? — Non possum ad eum ire; sero est. — Quam serum est? — Media nox est. — Cupisne videre hominem illum? — Cupio eum videre, ut eum cognoscam. — Cupitne pater tuus fratres meos videre? — Cupit eos videre, ut eos cognoscat. — Vultne equum meum videre? — Vult eum videre. — Quotā horā eum videre vult? — Videre vult eum horā sextā. — Ubi eum videre vult? — Videre vult eum in loco publico (in campo). — Habetne Germanus multum frumenti ad vendendum? — Non habet ad vendendum nisi pauxillum. — Quales cultros ad vendendum habet mercator? — Bonos cultros ad vendendum habet. — Quot cultri ei reliqui sunt? — Reliqui sunt ei sex. — Habetne Hibernus multum vini reliquum? — Non multum reliquum habet. — Estne tibi satis vini ad bibendum? — Non est mihi permultum, sed tamen satis. — Potesne multum vini bibere? — Multum bibere possum. — Potesne bibere singulis diebus (quotidie)? — Bibere possum quotidie et mane et vesperi. — Potestne frater tantum bibere quantum tu? — Plus, quam ego, bibere potest.

68. DICTATA DUODESEPTUAGESIMA.

Ubi est pater tuus? — Domi est. — Non exit domo? — Domo exire non potest; capitis doloribus laborat. — Doletne tibi caput (Laborasne capitis doloribus)? — Ego non capitis, sed aurium doloribus laboro. — Quotus dies mensis hodiernus est? — Decimus est hodiernus. — Quotus dies mensis cras (crastinus) est? — Crastinus (Cras) est tertius decimus. — Quales tibi dentes sunt? — Sunt mihi dentes boni. — Quales fratri tuo dentes sunt? — Sunt ei dentes nequam. — Dolentne Anglo dentes? — Non dolent ei dentes (Non afficitur dentium doloribus); sed altero oculo ægrotat. — Ecquid Italus altero oculo ægrotat? — Non altero oculo, verum altero pede ægrotat. — Egone digito laboro (Doletne mihi digitus)? — Non digito, sed genu laboras. — Visne mihi aliquantulum panis secare? — Secare tibi non possum; dolent mihi digiti. — Vultne mihi aliquis caseum secare (Numquis mihi caseum secare vult)? — Nemo tibi secare vult. — Num quem quæris (Quærisne aliquem)? — Neminem quæro. — Num quis aurium dolore afficitur? — Nemo aurium dolore afficitur. — Quid quærit pictor? — Nihil quærit. — Quem quæris? — Filium tuum quæro. —

Quis me quærit? — Nemo te quærit. — Reperisne, quod quæris? — Ego vero, quod quæro, reperio; sed navarchus (centurio) non reperit, quod quærit.

69. DICTATA UNDESEPTUAGESIMA.

Quis faucium doloribus afficitur? — Nos faucium doloribus afficimur. — Ægrotatne aliquis oculis? — Germani oculis ægrotant (oculorum infirmitate laborant). — Facitne mihi sartor togam? — Non facit (conficit); notalgiâ afficitur. — Conficitne sutor caligas meas? — (Eas) non conficit; cubitis ægrotat. — Affertne nobis mercator marsupia pulchra? — Domo exire non potest; ægrotat pedibus. — Reperitne Hispanus umbraculum, quod quærit? — Reperit. — Reperiuntne (Inveniuntne) lanii, quas quærunt, oves? — Reperiunt (Inveniunt). — Invenitne sartor suum digiti munimentum? — Non invenit. — Reperisne, quam quæris, chartam? — Non reperio. — Reperimusne quod quærimus (Nosne reperimus quod quærimus)? — Non reperimus quod quærimus. — Quid facit (agit) eques (homo nobilis)? — Facit quod tu facis (Idem facit *or* agit tecum). — Quid in cubiculo suo agit? — Legit. — Quot linguas scit frater tuus (Quot linguarum sciens est frater tuus)? — Unam solam scit (Unius tantum sciens est). — Reperiuntne quod quærunt? — Non reperiunt. — Laboratne magister noster oculorum infirmitate? — Laborat. — Afficerisne notalgiâ (Numquid notalgiâ afficeris)? — Non afficior.

70. DICTATA SEPTUAGESIMA.

Legisne? — Ego non lego. — Dantne operam litteris equitis filii? — Dant operam. — Cui rei operam dant? — Operam dant linguæ Germanicæ. — Studesne linguæ Anglicæ? — Non est mihi tempus ad ei studendum. — Quæruntne Batavi hanc navem an illam? — Utramque (ambas) quærunt. — Utrum famulus scopas quærit (conquirit) has an illas? — Non quærit neque has neque illas. — Quis linguam Germanicam discit? — Centurionum et equitum filii eam discunt. — Quo tempore linguæ Francogallicæ studet amicus tuus? — Studet ei (quotidie) mane. — Quotâ horâ ei studet? — Horâ decimâ studet. — Studetne ei singulis diebus (quotidie)? — Studet ei quot diebus mane et vesperi. — Quid agunt liberi fabri tignarii? —

Legunt. — Leguntne Germanice? — Immo vero Francogallice legunt; nos autem Anglice legunt. — Quid legit filius tuus? — Libros Francogallicos legit. — Quem tu librum legis? — Ego librum Germanicum lego. — Legisne tu tantum, quam (quantum) ego? — Plus (plura) lego, quam tu. — Legitne pater tuus eundem librum, quem ego lego? — Non legit eum (illum), quem tu legis, sed eum (hunc), quem ego lego. — Legitne tantum, quantum ego? — Minus legit, sed plus discit, quam tu. — Commodasne mihi librum? — Commodo tibi unum. — Commodantne tibi amici tui libros? — Commodant mihi nonnullos.

71. DICTATA UNA ET SEPTUAGESIMA.

Loquerisne Hispanice? — Non vero, domine; Italice loquor. — Quis Polonice loquitur? — Frater meus Polonice loquitur. — Ecquid vicini nostri Russice loquuntur? — Non Russice, sed Arabice loquuntur. — Loquerisne Arabice? — Immo vero Græce et Latine loquor. — Quem cultrum habes? — Cultrum Anglicum habeo. — Quam pecuniam istam habes? — Estne pecunia Italica an Hispanica? — Immo pecunia Russica est. — Estne tibi pileus Italicus? — Immo mihi pileus Hispanicus est. — Esne Germanus (Tune Germanus es)? — Non vero, ego Anglus sum. — Num Græcus es? — Non, Hispanus sum. — Suntne hi homines Poloni? — Immo vero Russi sunt. — Num Russi Polonice loquuntur? — Non Polonice, verum Latine, Græce et Arabice loquuntur. — Estne frater tuus mercator? — Immo vero faber scriniarius est. — Numquid hi homines mercatores sunt? — Non, fabri tignarii sunt. — Sumusne nautæ? — Non vero, sutores sumus. — Esne stultus (Tune stultus *or* fatuus es)? — Non sum (stultus). — Quid (Quis) est homo ille? — Sartor est. — Precarisne mihi aliquid? — Jubeo te salvum esse (salvere) *or* Saluto te mane. — Quid mihi juvenis precatur? — Jubet te salvere (Salutat te vesperi). — Quorsum me ire oportet? — Oportet tu eas ad amicos nostros, ut eos salvere jubeas. — Veniuntne liberi tui ad me, ut me vesperi salutent? — Immo ad te veniunt, ut te salutent mane.

72. DICTATA ALTERA ET SEPTUAGESIMA.

Auditne (Observatne) homo id quod ei dicis (imperas)? — Audit (Observat). — Observantne liberi medici id quod nos iis imperamus? — Non observant (curant). — Audisne ea quæ frater tuus tibi dicit (imperat)? — Audio (Observo). — Isne in theatrum? — Tantum abest, ut in theatrum eam, ut in cellam penariam eam. — Visne mihi auscultare? — Auscultare tibi non nolo, sed non possum; auribus ægroto (aurium doloribus afficior). — Corrigitne pater tuus schedulas tuas an meas? — Corrigit neque tuas neque meas. — Quas schedulas corrigit (emendat)? — Corrigit (Emendat) eas, quas ipse scribit. — Observatne ea quæ ei imperas? — Observat. — Nudasne caput, ut ad patrem meum loquare? — Vero, caput nudo (pileum capiti detraho), ut ad eum loquar. — Auditne frater tuus id, quod pater noster ei imperet (imperat)? — Audit. — Affertne minister noster cerevisiam? — Immo vero acetum affert, quum cerevisiam afferre debeat. — Emendasne meam epistolam? — Non emendo; oculorum infirmitate laboro. — Detrahitne sibi famulus togam, ut ignem accendat? — Detrahit. — Detrahisne tibi digitabula, ut mihi des pecuniam? — Detraho (ea, ut tibi dem pecuniam). — Excalceatne ille pedes (Num calceos pedibus detrahit), ut domum tuam ineat? — Excalceat. — Quis mensas et sellas aufert (tollit)? — Ministri eas auferunt (tollunt). — Visne hunc scyphum auferre (tollere hunc scyphum)? — Non est mihi voluntas ejus tollendi. — Nefasne est ei caligas detrahere pedibus? — Immo ei licet (fas est) eas detrahere. — Tollisne aliquid (Num quid aufers)? — Nihil tollo (aufero). — Nudatne aliquis caput (Numquis pileum detrahit capiti)? — Nemo caput nudat (Nemo pileum detrahit).

73. DICTATA SEPTUAGESIMA TERTIA.

Ornatusne est eques oculis glaucis? — Immo atris oculis et parvulo ore ornatus est. — Præditusne es bonâ memoriâ (Valesne memoriâ)? — Ego memoriâ parum valeo, sed frater meus memoriâ singulari præditus est. — Potestne loco patris (in vicem patris) scribere? — Non potest. — Mittuntne panem salis vice? — Immo sal panis vice mittunt. — Visne meam vicem saltatum ire? — Tuam vicem ire non possum. — Quid

facis (agis), quum ludere debeas? — Operam do litteris, quum ludere debeam (potius quam ludo). — Discisne potius quam scribis? — Immo vero scribo potius quam disco. — Quid agit quæsitoris nostri filius? — In hortos init, quum in agros ire debeat. — Leguntne liberi vicinorum nostrorum? — Immo scribunt potius quam legunt (quum legere debeant). — Quid facit (agit) noster coquus? — Accendit ignem, quum in forum ire debeat. — Venditne pater tuus bovem suum? — Equum suum potius quam bovem suum vendit. — Prodeuntne medici in publicum? — Immo in cubiculis suis manent potius quam prodeunt (quum in publicum prodire debeant). — Quotā horā ad te venit medicus noster? — Quotidie mane dodrante horæ post octavam (quadrante horæ ante nonam) venit. — Operamne dat pictoris filius litteris Anglicis (*or* linguæ Anglicæ)? — Immo litteris Græcis potius quam Anglicis operam dat. — Bovesne occidit lanius? — Immo vero oves occidit, quum boves occidere debeat. — Auscultasne mihi? — Vero, tibi ausculto. — Auscultatne mihi frater tuus? — Immo loquitur potius quam tibi auscultat (Non modo tibi non auscultat, sed etiam loquitur). — Audisne quæ tibi dico (*or* dicam)? — Audio (Observo) quæ mihi dicis (imperas).

74. DICTATA SEPTUAGESIMA QUARTA.

Cogitasne operam dare linguæ Arabicæ? — Cogito vero operam dare linguæ Arabicæ et Syriacæ. — Scitne Anglus linguam Polonicam? — Non scit, sed eam discere cogitat. — Peritusne es nandi (Habesne scientiam nandi)? — Non sum peritus nandi, verum ludendi. — Scitne (Potestne) consobrinus tuus facere togas? — Facere non scit (nescit, non potest); sartor non est. — Estne mercator (Mercatorne est)? — Non est. — Quis (Quid) est? — Medicus est. — Quorsum is? — In hortos meos eo, ut cum hortulano loquar. — Quid ei dicere vis? — Imperare ei volo, ut fenestram cubiculi sui aperiat. — Auscultatne tibi (Datne tibi aures) hortulanus tuus? — Vero, mihi auscultat (Dat mihi aures). — Ecquid bibere vis vinum ex malis confectum? — Non, cupidus sum cerevisiæ bibendæ; habesne ejus aliquantulum? — Non habeo; sed afferri jubere volo. — Quando afferri jubere vis? — Nunc. — Jubesne afferri (apportari) mala? — Jubeo (nonnulla afferri). — Estne tibi multum aquæ? — Est mihi satis ad pedes meos lavandos. — Habetne frater tuus satis aquæ? — Non habet

nisi pauxillum, satis tamen ad muccinium suum humectandum. — Scisne tu theam conficere (Perituṣne es theæ confici-endæ) ? — Conficere non nescio (Peritus sum). — Observat consobrinus tuus quod (quæ) ei imperas (imperes) ? — Observat. — Habetne scientiam nandi ? — Non habet (scientiam nandi). — Quorsum it ? — Nusquam it ; domi se tenet.

75. DICTATA SEPTUAGESIMA QUINTA.

Isne arcessitum (*or* arcessere) patrem tuum ? — Eo eum arcessitum (arcessere). — Licetne mihi consobrinum meum arcessitum ire ? — Licet tibi eum arcessitum ire. — Reperitne famulus tuus, quem quærit, hominem ? — Vero, eum reperit. — Ecquid filii tui, quos conquirunt, amicos reperiunt ? — Non reperiunt (inveniunt). — Quo tempore (Quando) saltatum ire cogitas ? — Cogito ire hodie vesperi. — Cogitantne consobrini tui ire rus ? — Vero, eo ire cogitant. — Quando eo ire cogitant ? — Cras (eo ire cogitant). — Quotā horā ? — Mediā horā post octavam. — Quid tibi vendere cupit mercator ? — Vendere mihi cupit muccinia. — Cogitasne aliqua emere ? — Nolo emere ulla. — Scisne tu aliquid (Numquid scis) ? — Nihil quidquam scio. — Quid scit consobrinus tuus ? — Legere et scribere scit (Peritus est legendi et scribendi). — Scitne linguam Germanicam ? — Non scit (Nescit). — Scisne tu linguam Hispanicam ? — Scio. — Sciuntne fratres tui linguam Græcam ? — Non sciunt, sed discere eam cogitant. — An ego linguæ Anglicæ sciens sum ? — Non scis, sed operam ei dare cogitas. — Possuntne liberi nostri legere Italice ? — Legere quidem possunt, sed non loqui.

76. DICTATA SEPTUAGESIMA SEXTA.

Cupidusne es vini adusti bibendi ? — Non, vinum bibere cupio. — Vendisne vinum adustum (Num tu vinum adustum vendis) ? — Ego non vendo, sed vicinus meus mercator vendit. — Visne mihi apportare tabacum ? — Volo tibi apportare ; quod tabacum (quid tabaci) cupis ? — Ego tabacum sternutatorium cupio, sed amicus meus Germanus tabacum fumarium cupit. — Ostenditne tibi mercator pannum ? — Non ostendit. — Affertne famulus tuus vinum ex malis confectum ? — Af-

fert. — Estne tibi opus aliquid amplius? — Opus est mihi farina; visne mihi aliquantum ejus apportari jubere? — Emitne amicus tuus mala? — Emit (nonnulla). — Emitne muccinia? — Tantum abest, ut muccinia emat, ut tabacum emat (Tabacum potius quam muccinia emit). — Ostendisne mihi aliquid? — Ostendo tibi vestes meas aureas et argenteas. — Quo it patruelis tuus? — Saltatum it. — Isne tu saltatum? — Ego in theatrum potius quam saltatum eo. — Itne hortulanus in hortos? — In forum it, quum in hortos ire debeat. — Mittisne servum tuum ad sutorem? — Immo eum ad sartorem potius quam ad sutorem mitto.

77. DICTATA SEPTUAGESIMA SEPTIMA.

Cogitantne fratres tui rus ire (Propositumne est fratribus tuis rus ire)? — Cogitant (eo ire). — Estne tibi propositum ad patruelem meum ire? — Est mihi propositum ad eum ire. — Num quid facere tibi est propositum? — Non propositum est (mihi quidquam facere). — Cogitasne hodie vesperi in theatrum ire? — Inire quidem cogito, sed non hodie vesperi. — Accipisne aliquid? — Accipio vero pecuniam. — A quo accipis? — Accipio a patre meo, a fratre meo et a consobrino meo. — Accipitne filius tuus libros? — Accipit vero quosdam. — A quo accipit? — Accipit (aliquot) a me, ab amicis vicinisque suis. — Ecquam pecuniam accipit homo pauper? — Accipit ejus nonnullum. — A quo accipit? — Accipit aliquantulum a divitibus. — Num quid vini accipis? — Nihil (vini) accipio. — Egone pecuniam accipio? — Non accipis. — Accipitne servus tuus vestes (vestimenta)? — Non accipit. — Accipitisne libros, quos amici nostri accipiunt? — Non accipimus eosdem, quos amici tui accipiunt; alios autem accipimus. — Accipitne amicus tuus litteras, quas ad eum das (mittis)? — Vero, eas accipit. — Num tu, quæ tibi mitto, mala accipis? — Ea non accipio. — Accipitne Americanus tantum vini adusti, quantum vini ex malis confecti? — Accipit vero tantum de uno, quantum (quam) de altero. — Accipiuntne Scoti tam multos libros, quam multas epistolas? — Accipiunt vero tam multos (*or* tot) alterorum, quam multas (quot) alterarum.

78. DICTATA DUODEOCTOGESIMA.

Consequiturne Anglus principatum? — Consequitur. — Accipitne patruelis tuus tantam pecuniam, quantam ego? — Immo majorem (*or* grandiorem) accipit quam tu. — Accipitne Francogallus epistolas suas? — Accipit eas. — Quo tempore eas accipit? — (Accipit eas) vesperi. — Quo tempore tu litteras tuas accipis? — Accipio eas mane. — Quotā horā? — Dodrante horæ post nonam (Quadrante horæ ante decimam). — Accipisne tot epistolas quot ego? — Immo plures (earum) accipio quam tu. — Accipisne aliquas hodie? — Accipio vero nonnullas hodie et cras. — Excipitne pater tuus tot amicos quot (pater) noster? — Pauciores quam tuus excipit. — Excipitne Hispanus tot hostes (inimicos) quot amicos? — Excipit vero tot alterorum (ex unis), quot alterorum (ex alteris). — Accipisne uno amplius thalerorum? — Accipio (uno amplius). — Ecquid filius tuus uno amplius (plus) librorum accipit? — Uno amplius accipit. — Quid accipit medicus? — Bonum tabacum, bonum tabacum sternutatorium, et bona muccinia accipit. — Accipitne vinum adustum? — Vero, nonnullum accipit.

79. DICTATA UNDEOCTOGESIMA.

Propositumne tibi est hodie vesperi in theatrum ire? — Immo mihi cras inire propositum est. — Proficiscerisne hodie? — Nunc proficiscor. — Quando litteras ad amicos tuos dare cogitas? — (Cogito litteras ad eos dare) hodie. — Respondentne (Rescribuntne) amici tui litteris tuis (ad litteras tuas)? — Respondent. — Extinguisne ignem? — Non extinguo. — Accenditne servus tuus candelam? — Accendit. — Cogitat hic homo tuum mercium receptaculum succendere? — Cogitat (succendere). — Accipitne servus tuus indusia? — Accipit. — Accipitne tot, quot famulus meus? — Totidem accipit. — Accipisne aliquid hodie (Ecquid hodie accipis)? — Accipio vero nonnihil quotidie. — Ducisne aliquem (Num quem ducis)? — Nullum (neminem) duco. — Quem tu manu ducis (Cui manus das)? — Filium meum manu duco (Ego filio meo manus do). — Quo eum ducis? — Duco eum ad nostros vicinos, ut eos salvere jubeamus (ut eos mane salutemus). — Quid est filius tuus? — Medicus est. — Ducitne famulus

tuus aliquem manu? — Manu ducit puerum meum (Manus dat puero meo). — Quem me manu ducere oportet? — Hominem cœcum manu ducere te oportet. — Oportetne ille ducat ægrum? — Oportet (eum ducat). — Quo eum ducat oportet? — Oportet eum ducat domum. — Quorsum ille ducit equum? — In stabulum (eum ducit). — Dasne manus puero (infanti) an homini cœco? — Ambos (utrumque) duco. — Quando peregrinus proficisci cogitat? — (Proficisci cogitat) hodie mane. — Quotā horā? — Mediā horā post primam. — Non hic manere cupit? — Non manere cupit.

80. DICTATA OCTOGESIMA.

Estne frater tuus grandior, quam meus? — Immo non æque grandis est, sed melior, quam tuus. — Estne pileus tuus æque nequam (vilis) ac patris tui? — Immo melior est, sed non æque niger. — Ecquid indusia Italorum tam candida sunt, quam illa Hibernorum? — Candidiora sunt, sed non æque bona (sed minus bona). — Numquid amicorum nostrorum bacula longiora sunt, quam nostra? — Non longiora, sed graviora sunt. — Quibus sunt digitabula pulcherrima? — Francogallis sunt. — Cujus equi formosissimi sunt? — Mei formosi sunt, vestri formosiores quam mei sunt; sed illi amicorum nostrorum formosissimi sunt omnium. — Estne equus tuus bonus? — Bonus quidem est, sed tuus melior est, et Angli equus omnium, qui nobis noti sunt, equorum optimus est. — Habesne calceos bellos? — Bellos quidem habeo, sed frater meus venustiores * habet quam ego. — A quo eos accipit? — Accipit eos ab amico suo optimo (carissimo). — Estne vinum tuum tam bonum, quam meum? — Immo melius est. — Venditne mercator muccinia bona? — Vendit vero omnium, quæ mihi nota sunt, mucciniorum optima. — Habemusne nos plures libros (plus librorum), quam Francogalli? — Plus, quam illi, habemus; sed Germani plures habent quam nos, et Angli omnium plurimos habent. — Estne tibi hortulus pulchrior (Pulchriorne tibi est hortulus), quam ille nostri medici? — Pulchrior (mihi est). — Ecquid Americanus pulchriorem domum habet, quam tu? — Pulchriorem habet. — Nobisne sunt liberi tam formosi, quam vicinis nostris? — Immo nobis formosiores sunt.

* The comparative of *bellus* is wanting. Grammar, page 215.

81. DICTATA UNA ET OCTOGESIMA.

Estne toga tua tam longa quam mea (æque longa ac mea)? — Immo brevior (minus longa), sed venustior est. — Prodisne hodie in publicum? — Non, hodie non prodeo. — Quo tempore in publicum prodit frater tuus? — Prodit quadrante horæ post duodecimam. — Estne hic homo grandior natu quam ille? — Vero, grandior est, sed ille robustior est. — Uter horum liberorum melior est? — Ille, qui operam dat litteris, melior est, quam is, qui ludit. — Everritne tuus servus tam bene (scienter) quam meus (æque scienter ac meus)? — Immo melius (scientius), quam tuus, everrit. — Legitne Germanus tot librorum nequam, quot bonorum? — Immo vero plus bonorum quam nequam (malorum) legit. — Venduntne mercatores plus sacchari, quam coffeæ? — Plus alterius (ex uno) quam alterius (ex altero) vendunt. — Conficitne sutor tuus tot caligas quot calceos? — Plus unarum quam alterorum conficit. — Scis tu nare tam bene, quam filius equitis? — Melius ego nare scio (possum) quam ille; sed ille melius scit Germanice loqui, quam ego. — Legitne tam scienter quam tu? — Scientius, quam ego, legit. — Laborasne capitis dolore? — Immo vero ego aurium doloribus laboro (afficior). — Observat consobrinus tuus ea quæ tu ei dicis (imperas)? — Non observat (Non curat). — Num quæsitoris tui filius in silvam init? — Non vero, domi se tenet; pedibus ægrotat. — Discisne tu tam bene, quam hortulani nostri filius? — Ego melius (scientius), quam ille, disco, sed ille melius, quam ego, laborat. — Cujus currus pulcherrimus est? — Tuus pulcher est, sed centurionis pulchrior est, et noster omnium est pulcherrimus. — Numquis (Ecquis) tam pulchra mala habet, quam pulchra nos habemus (Eccui sunt æque pulchra mala atque nobis)? — Nemo tam pulchra habet (Æque pulchra sunt nemini).

82. DICTATA ALTERA ET OCTOGESIMA.

Exordirisne (Incipisne) loqui (Facisne initium loquendi *or* dicendi)? — Vero, exordior (Incipio). — Incipitne frater tuus linguam Italicam discere? — Incipit (eam discere). — Potesne jam Germanice loqui? — Nondum (Adhuc non) possum; verum incipio (initium facio). — Num amici nostri jam loqui incipiunt? — Non adhuc loqui, verum legere incipiunt. —

Facitne pater noster jam initium epistolæ suæ scribendæ? — Nondum (initium) facit. — Potesne jam nare (natare)? *or* Peritusne es jam nandi? — Nondum (possum), sed discere incipio. — Num filius tuus loquitur, priusquam audit? — Immo audit, antequam loquitur. — Auscultatne tibi frater tuus, ante quam loquitur? — Immo vero loquitur ante, quam auscultat. — Ecquid liberi tui legunt prius, quam scribunt? — Immo scribunt, priusquam legunt. — Num servus tuus scopis purgat receptaculum mercium, antequam cubiculum purgat (everrit)? — Immo cubiculum prius, quam mercium receptaculum scopis purgat. — Bibisne (Potasne), antequam in publicum prodis? — In publicum prodeo, antequam bibo. — Lavat consobrinus tuus manus suas, priusquam pedes suos lavat? — Immo vero pedes suos ante, quam manus suas lavat. — Extinguisne ignem (carbones), antequam candelam extinguis? — Ego neque ignem neque candelam extinguo. — Estne tibi propositum (*or* Cogitasne) in publicum prodire, priusquam epistolas tuas scribis? — Immo ego epistolas meas prius scribere cogito, quam in publicum prodeo. — Ecquid filius tuus caligas suas prius pedibus detrahit, quam sibi togam exuit? — Filius meus nec caligas pedibus detrahit, nec togam sibi exuit.

83. DICTATA OCTOGESIMA TERTIA.

Cogitasne brevi (propediem) proficisci? — Cras proficisci cogito. — Loquerisne tam sæpe, quam ego? — Ego minus sæpe loquor, sed frater meus sæpius (frequentius) loquitur quam tu. — Prodeone in publicum æque frequenter ac pater tuus? — Tu minus frequenter (quam ille) prodis; bibit ille autem sæpius, quam tu. — Incipisne cognoscere hunc hominem? — Incipio (eum cognoscere). — Jentatisne bene mane? — Nos quadrante horæ post nonam jentamus (jentaculum sumimus). — Jentatne patruelis tuus maturius, quam tu? — Immo vero serius (tardius) jentat, quam ego. — Quotâ horâ sumit jentaculum? — Jentaculum sumit horâ octavâ, et ego mediâ horâ post sextam. — Non jentas nimio mane (præmature)? — Immo vero nimis sero (post tempus, tardius) jento. — Sumitne pater tuus jentaculum suum tam bene mane, quam tu? — Immo serius (tardius), quam ego, jentat. — Concluditnè epistolas suas prius, quam jentaculum sumit? — Immo vero jentaculum sumit ante, quam eas concludit. — Estne pileus

tuus nimis magnus (amplus)? — Neque nimis amplus, neque nimis parvus est. — Num hortulanus noster jentat prius, quam in hortum init? — Immo in hortum init ante, quam jentat (jentaculum sumit). — Ecquid tu legis Francogallice tam sæpe, quam Germanice? — Immo ego Francogallice lego sæpius, quam Germanice. — Numquid nimis (nimium) loquitur medicus? — Non satis loquitur. — Potantne Germani nimis (nimium) vini? — Immo vero non satis ejus potant (bibunt). — Potantne plus cerevisiæ, quam vini ex malis confecti? — Plus alterius (ex altero) quam illius (ex illo) potant (bibunt). — Estne vobis multum pecuniæ? — Non est nobis ejus satis. — Habentne consobrini tui multum frumenti? — Paulum tantum habent, sed tamen satis. — Reliquumne vobis est multum vini adusti? — Non est nobis multum ejus reliquum. — Habesne tam multas mensas, quam multas sellas? — Ego tam multas alterarum quam multas illarum habeo. — Accipitne amicus tuus tot epistolarum (epistolas), quot scidularum (scidulas)? — Immo plus (plures) harum quam (illarum) accipit. — Numquid concludis ante, quam incipis? — Necesse est incipiam prius, quam concludo.

84. DICTATA OCTOGESIMA QUARTA.

Estne lingua Anglica locupletior, quam lingua Francogallica? — Est vero locupletior. — Num tam locuples est, quam (æque locuples est ac) lingua Græca (Græcorum)? — Non tam (æque) locuples est; minus locuples atque minus flexibilis est, quam Græca. — Quæ linguarum omnium est locupletissima? — Nulla linguarum locupletior est, quam Græca. — Ecquid præstantius est auro (quam aurum)? — Vero, virtutes multo præstantiores sunt. — Numquid in homine est ratione divinius? — Nihil divinius est vel pulchrius. — Ecqua (Numqua) species pulchrior esse potest humanâ (quam humana)? — Nulla species vel figura pulchrior esse potest. — Quid in homine magno laudabilius est clementiâ (quam clementia)? — Nihil est laudabilius. — Estne amicus tuus doctior fratre suo (quam frater ejus est)? — Est quidem multo doctior, sed non æque bonus. — Doctiorne est vicino nostro (quam vicinus noster)? — Immo non tam (æque) doctus est (Minus doctus est). — Quis Romanorum fuit eloquentissimus? — Romanorum oratorum eloquentissimus fuit Cicero. — Favesne alicui (Num cui faves) magis, quam mihi? — Ego nemini

magis, quam tibi, faveo. — Amarisne tantum a patre tuo, quantum ab amico tuo? — Immo ego magis (plus) ab illo amor, quam ab altero. — Estne homo ille altero inferior (inferior quam alter) ? — Non inferior est. — Numquid aliud libertate quærimus? — Nihil aliud quærimus. — Estne vicinus noster felix ante alios (aliis felicior) ? — Minus felix est. — Quis beatior nobis est (Quis præ nobis beatus est) ? — Nemo. — Debetne patria (nostra) nobis esse æque cara, ac liberi nostri? — Debet nobis esse non minus cara. — Quantum pecuniæ tibi reliquum est? — Reliquum mihi est plus tertia pars. — Quantum fratri tuo reliquum est? — Reliqui ei sunt minus decem thaleri. — Quot sumus? — Plus quinquaginta sumus.

85. DICTATA OCTOGESIMA QUINTA.

Ubi tu fuisti? — In foro fui. — Interfuistine saltationi? — Interfui. — Adfuine ego spectaculo? — Adfuisti (Interfuisti). — Tune interfuisti? — Ego non interfui. — Unquamne in theatro fuit consobrinus tuus? — Nunquam ibi fuit. — Fuistine jam in campo (loco publico) ? — Nunquam ego ibi fui. — Cogitasne eo ire? — Cogito (eo ire). — Quando eo ire vis? — Cras eo ire volo. — Quotâ horâ? — Horâ duodecimâ. — Fuitne filius jam in hortis meis magnis? — Nondum ibi fuit. — Propositumne est ei eos videre? — Propositum ei est (eos videre). — Quo tempore eo ire vult? — (Ire eo vult) hodie. — Cogitatne hodie vesperi saltatum ire? — Cogitat eo ire. — Adfuistine jam saltationi? — Nondum adfui. — Quando (eo) ire cogitas? — Cras (ire cogito). — Fuistine jam in conclavi Angli? — Nondum infui. — Fuistine in cubiculis meis? — Infui. — Quo tempore (Quando) ibi infuisti? — (Infui ibi) hodie mane. — In tuone ego fui cubiculo an in illo amici tui (Fuine in tuo cubiculo an, &c.) ? — Tu neque in meo neque in illo amici mei fuisti, verum in illo Itali.

86. DICTATA OCTOGESIMA SEXTA.

Utrum Batavus in nostris cellis penariis fuit an in illis Anglorum? — Fuit neque in nostris neque in illis Anglorum, verum in illis Italorum. — Fuistine jam in foro? — Ego ibi nondum fui, sed (tamen) eo ire cogito. — Fuitne ibi quæsito-

ris nostri filius? — Fuit. — Quando (Quo tempore) ibi fuit? — (Ibi fuit) hodie (hodierno tempore). — Cogitatne filius vicini nostri ad forum ire? — Cogitat vero (eo ire). — Quid ibi emere vult? — Emere ibi vult gallinas (pullos gallinaceos), boves, caseum, cervisiam et vinum ex malis confectum. — Fuistine jam in domo patruelis mei? — Jam fui. — Num amicus tuus jam ibi fuit? — Nondum (ibi) fuit. — Nosne jam in domo amici nostri fuimus? — Nondum ibi fuimus. — Unquamne (En unquam) domo nostrā fuerunt amici nostri? — Nunquam (ibi) fuerunt. — Tun' unquam in theatro fuisti? — Nunquam ego infui. — Estne tibi voluntas epistolæ scribendæ? — Est (mihi voluntas unius scribendæ). — Ad quem litteras dare (mittere) vis? — Ad filium meum (litteras dare volo). — Fuitne pater tuus jam ruri? — Nondum (non adhuc) fuit; sed eo ire cogitat. — Cogitatne eo ire hodie? — Immo cras eo ire cogitat. — Quotā horā proficisci vult (cogitat)? — Mediā horā post sextam proficisci vult (cogitat). — Cogitatne proficisci (Num proficisci cogitat) ante, quam jentaculum sumit? — Immo jentaculum prius sumere cogitat, quam proficiscitur. — Fuistine alicubi (Ecquo loco fuisti)? — Nusquam fui.

87. DICTATA OCTOGESIMA SEPTIMA.

Habuistine (Tenuistine) meum digitabulum? — Habui (Tenui). — Habuistine muccinium meum? — Non habui. — An umbraculum meum habuisti? — Non habui. — Fuitne tibi culter meus pulcher? — Fuit. — Quando tibi fuit? — Heri (mihi fuit). — Habuine ego tua digitabula? — Habuisti. — Ecquid frater tuus malleum meum ligneum habuit? — Habuit. — Num tæniam meam auream habuit? — Non habuit. — Habueruntne (Tenueruntne) Angli navem meam bonam? — Habuerunt (Tenuerunt). — Quis tibialia mea lintea habuit? — Servi tui ea habuerunt. — Tenuimus nos ferreum vicini nostri boni riscum? — Tenuimus. — Num nos pilentum ejus pulchrum tenuimus? — Non tenuimus. — Habuimusne mensas peregrinorum lapideas? — Non habuimus. — Habuimusne crus ligneum Hiberni? — Non habuimus. — Habuitne Americanus opus meum bonum? — Habuit. — Num cultrum meum argenteum habuit? — Non habuit. — Habuitne juvenis primum operis mei tomum? — Non primum, verum alterum habuit. — Habuitne eum? — Etiam, domine, eum habuit. — Quando eum habuit? — (Habuit eum) hodie manę.

— Fuitne tibi saccharum? — Fuit. — Fuitne mihi charta bona? — Fuit. — Habuitne nauta vinum adustum? — Habuit. — Tun' aliquantum habuisti (Ecquid tu habuisti)? — Nihil (*or* non) habui. — Laboravistine capitis dolore? — Immo vero dentium doloribus laboravi. — Fuitne tibi aliquid boni (bonum)? — Fuit mihi vero nihil mali. — Fuitne heri locus saltationi? — Fuit. — Quo tempore locus est (*or* datur) saltationi? — (Locus ei datur) hodie vesperi.

88. DICTATA DUODENONAGESIMA.

Habuitne Germanus bonam cervisiam? — Habuit (nonnullum). — Fueruntne tibi panificia magna? — Fuerunt. — Ecquæ (Numquæ) fratri tuo fuerunt? — Non (*or* Nulla) fuerunt. — Habuitne hortulani nostri filius farinam? — Vero, habuit. — Habuerunt Poloni bonum tabacum? — Habuerunt. — Quid tabaci (Quale tabacum) habuerunt? — Tabacum fumarium et tabacum sternutatorium habuerunt. — Fuitne Anglis tantum sacchari, quantum theæ? — Fuit iis tantum unius, quantum alterius. — Verene locutus est medicus? — Immo erravit. — Locutusne est Batavus recte an erravit? — Nunquam ille neque recte locutus est neque erravit. — Numquid mihi mel emere non licuit (Fuitne mihi nefas mel emere)? — Emere tibi non licuit (Nefas fuit tibi emere). — Quid tenuit patruelis tuus? — Caligas tuas et calceos tuos tenuit. — Habuitne buccellata mea bona? — (Ea) non habuit. — Quid habuit Hispanus? — Nihil habuit. — Quis fortitudinem habuit? — Angli (nonnullam) habuerunt. — Fueruntne Anglis multi amici? — Fuerunt vero iis multi. — Num nobis (Nobisne) multi inimici fuerunt? — Non multi fuerunt. — Fueruntne nobis plus amicorum quam hostium (inimicorum)? — Immo nobis plures (plus) fuerunt horum quam illorum. — Habuitne filius tuus plus vini quam carnis? — Immo plus hujus (de hacce) quam illius (de illo) habuit. — Fuitne Turcæ plus piperis quam frumenti? — Vero, plus alterius, quam alterius habuit. — Numquid pictor habuit? — Nihil habuit.

89. DICTATA UNDENONAGESIMA.

Quoties tu librum illum legisti? — Bis. — Numquid hominem istum unquam audivisti? — Ego eum nunquam audivi.

— Tun' eum interdum audiisti? — Vero, eum nonnunquam audivi. — Isne tu nonnunquam in theatrum? — Vero, ego interdum ineo. — Ivitne frater tuus saltatum? — Ivit. — Ivitne saltatum toties, quoties tu (ivisti)? — Sæpius ivit, quam ego. — Is tu interdum in hortos? — Inivi vero antehac sexcenties (iterum ac sæpius). — Itne coquus tuus vetulus interdum in forum? — Vero, eo it iterum ac sæpius. — Ivit eo nudius tertius. — Ivistine saltatum sæpius, quam fratres tui? — Ego sæpius ivi, quam illi. — Interfuit consobrinus tuus sæpe spectaculo? — Non uno tempore interfuit (Interfuit vero diversis temporibus). — Esurivistine interdum? — Ego vero sæpe esurivi (esurii). — Sæpene sitiit famulus tuus (Sitivitne famulus tuus sæpe)? — Immo vero nunquam neque esurivit (esuriit) neque sitivit (sitiit). — Ivistine ad mature spectaculum? — Immo eo tardius ivi. — Ivi ego saltatum æque mature ac tu? — Maturius tu ivisti quam ego. — Ivitne frater tuus eo tardius (post tempus)? — Immo vero maturius (nimis mature) ivit. — Numquid fratres tui habuerunt? — Nihil habuerunt. — Quis marsupium et pecuniam meam habuit? — Servus tuus utrumque habuit. — Habuitne baculum meum an pileum meum? — Utrumque (ambo) habuit. — Utrum equum meum habuisti, an fratris mei? — Ego neque tuum neque fratris tui habui. — Utrum ego schedulam tuam habui an illam medici? — Utramque (utrasque *or* ambas) habuisti. — Quid habuit medicus? — Nihil habuit. — Ecquis (Numquis) candelabrum meum aureum habuit? — Nemo habuit. — Quando tu saltationi interfuisti? — Interfui heri vesperi. — Num quem ibi invenisti? — Nullum (Neminem) inveni.

90. DICTATA NONAGESIMA.

Quam ob rem (Cur) puer ille laudatus est? — Laudatus est, quia (quod) litteris bene studuit. — Ecquid tu aliquando laudatus es? — Vero, ego sæpe laudatus sum. — Cur puer ille alter punitus est (pœnâ affectus est)? — Punitus est (pœnâ affectus est), quia nequam ignavusque fuit. — Estne puer iste (hicce) præmio ornatus? — Vero, ornatus est, quia bene laboravit. — Quando homo ille punitus est (pœnâ affectus est)? — Punitus est nudius tertius. — Quam ob rem nos æstimati sumus (magni facti sumus)? — Quia studiosi et obedientes fuimus. — Cur (Quam ob rem) homines isti in odio fuerunt? — Quia minus (= non) obedientes fuerunt (fuere). — A quo

scopis purgatum est cubiculum? — Purgatum est a servo tuo. — Quoties purgatum (eversum) est? — (Purgatum *or* eversum est) bis. — Lectusne est liber tuus toties, quoties meus? — Sæpius quam tuus lectus est. — Cur liber ille combustus est? — Quia nequam fuit. — Jussusne es tu scribere? — Non scribere, verum dicere (loqui) jussus sum. — Quo missus est juvenis? — Rus missus est. — A quo tu eruditus es? — Eruditus sum a parentibus et magistris meis. — Laceratusne est liber ab aliquo? — Vero, laceratus est a liberis nostris. — Lotane sunt indusia nostra? — Nondum lota sunt. — Quando fracta sunt vasa vitrea nostra? — (Fracta sunt) heri. — Punitusne tu es tam severe, quam ego? — Immo ego severius punitus sum, quam tu. — A quo scriptæ sunt hæ epistolæ? — Scriptæ sunt ab inimicis nostris. — Ecquid amicus noster a magistris suis amatus (dilectus) est? — Vero, amatus et laudatus ab iis est, quia assiduus et bene moratus fuit; frater ejus autem a suis despicatui habitus est, quia nequam et ignavus fuit.

91. DICTATA UNA ET NONAGESIMA.

Quid ex (de) amico nostro factum est? — Factus est jurisconsultus (causidicus). — Quid de consobrino nostro factum est (Quid factus est consobrinus noster)? — Factus est miles (Relatus est inter milites). — Factusne est ægrotus patruus tuus (Inciditne in morbum patruus tuus)? — Factus est ægrotus, et ego in locum ejus successi (ego muneris ejus factus sum successor). — Cur hic homo non laboravit? — Laborare non potuit (*or* nequivit), quia in morbum incidit. — Convaluitne (Estne factus sanus)? — Convaluit (Factus est sanus). — Quid de eo factum est? — Factus est mercator. — Quid de liberis ejus factum est? — Liberi ejus facti sunt adulti. — Quid ex filio tuo factum est? — Vir magnus factus est. — Factusne est doctus? — Factus est doctus. — Quid de libro meo factum est? — Haud scio (*or* Nescio), quid de eo factum sit. — Num (eum) laceravisti? — Non laceravi. — Quid ex vicino nostro factum est? — Non scio (Nescio), quid ex eo factum sit. — Quando pater tuus profectus est? — Profectus est heri. — Profecti jam sunt amici nostri? — Nondum profecti sunt. — Ad quem (*or* Quocum) locutus es? — Ego ad vicinum meum (cum vicino meo) locutus sum. — Numquis ad viros illos locutus est? — Nemo ad eos locutus est. — Cujus

pecuniam largiti sunt? — Largiti sunt pecuniam suam (propriam). — Hortatusne est te aliquis (Ecquis te hortatus est)? — Magister meus me hortatus est. — Num frater tuus principatum consecutus est? — Non consecutus est. — Tun' cuiquam blanditus es (Blanditusne es alicui)? — Nunquam ego cuiquam blandior. — Blandiunturne nobis inimici nostri? — Vero, nobis blandiuntur. — Mansitne (Tenuitne se) pater tuus domi? — Mansit (se tenuit). — Tenuitne se domi heri (hesterno tempore)? — Se non domi tenuit. — Solitusne es in theatrum ire? — Non solitus sum inire. — In cujus locum successit frater tuus? — In patris (sui) locum successit (Factus est successor paterni muneris).

92. DICTATA ALTERA ET NONAGESIMA.

Habesne, quod facias (Ecquid tibi faciendum est)? — Nihil (Non) habeo, quod faciam (Non est mihi quidquam faciendum). — Quid faciendum habet frater tuus (Quid est fratri tuo faciendum)? — Litteras scribendas habet (Scribendæ sunt ei litteræ). — Quid tu fecisti? — Ego nihil feci. — Ecquid ego feci? — Vero, vestes meas laceravisti (lacerasti). — Quid liberi tui fecerunt? — Laceraverunt (Laceravere) libros suos bonos. — Quid fecemus nos? — Vos nihil fecistis, sed fratres vestri sellas meas pulchras combusserunt (combussere). — Confecitne jam sartor togam tuam? — Nondum confecit. — Confecitne jam sutor caligas tuas? — Vero, jam confecit. — Num tu interdum pileum confecisti? — Nunquam ego ullum confeci. — Confecistine jam marsupium tuum? — Nondum (haud dum) confeci. — Ecquid vicini nostri aliquando libros confecerunt? — Confecerunt vero quondam (olim) quosdam. — Quot togas confecit sartor tuus? — Confecit earum triginta vel quadraginta. — Utrum togas confecit bonas an nequam? — Et bonas et nequam confecit (Nequam non minus quam bonas confecit). — Detraxitne pater noster pileum capiti (Nudavitne pater noster caput)? — Detraxit (Nudavit). — Exuerunt sibi fratres tui togas? — Exuerunt (Exuere). — Utrum pedibus detraxit medicus tibialia sua an calceos suos? — Non pedibus detraxit neque una neque alteros. — Quid abstulit (sustulit) ille? — Nihil abstulit, detraxit autem pileum suum magnum capiti. — Quis tibi dixit hoc? — Famulus meus (dixit). — Quid tibi dixit patruelis tuus? — Mihi nihil dixit.

— Quis vicino tuo dixit hoc? — Angli ei (hoc) dixerunt. — Esne tu (Tun' es) frater adolescentis illius (*or dat.*, adolesti illi)? — Sum vero. — Ecquid puer ille filius tuus est? — Est. — Quot tibi liberi sunt? — Mihi non sunt nisi duo (Duos tantum habeo). — Ivitne quæsitor in forum? — Non inivit (iniit). — Estne ægrotus? — Est. — Ego ægrotus sum? — Non es. — Esne tu tam grandis, quam ego (æque grandis atque ego)? — Sum. — Ecquid amici tui tam divites sunt, quam se esse dicunt? — Sunt vero. — Esne tu æque fessus, ac frater tuus? — Immo ego magis fessus sum (præter eum fessus sum).

93. DICTATA NONAGESIMA TERTIA.

Venistine questum? — Non ego questum veni; sciscitatum et congratulatum veni. — Missine sunt illi spectatum? — Missi sunt spectatum et congratulatum. — Redivitne (Rediitne) bellatum? — Immo vero pacem petitum rediit. — Locutusne es patri meo (ad patrem meum)? — Locutus sum (ad eum *or* ei). — Quando tu ad eum locutus es? — Nudius tertius ad eum locutus sum. — Esne tu interdum cum Turcâ locutus? — Nunquam ego cum eo locutus sum. — Quoties tu ad centurionem locutus es? — Ego sexies ad eum locutus sum. — Num eques unquam tecum locutus est? — Nunquam mecum collocutus est. — An tu cum filio ejus sæpe locutus es? — Sæpe cum eo collocutus sum. — Sæpiusne tu cum eo locutus es, quam nos? — Immo ego minus frequenter cum eo locutus sum, quam vos. — Ad quem filiorum equitis locutus es? — Locutus sum ad minimum natu. — Ad quos homines locutus est frater tuus? — Locutus est ad hosce. — Quid filius hortulani tui secuit? — Arbores secuit. — Messuitne (*or* Secuitne) frumentum? — Messuit (Secuit). — Messuitne (Secuitne) tantum fœni quantum frumenti? — Messuit vero tantum de altero, quantum de altero. — Sustulistine meum cultrum? — Sustuli. — Quid vos sustulistis? — Nihil sustulimus. — Num quid combussistis? — Nihil quidquam combussimus. — Num tænias meas pulchras combussisti? — Ego eas non combussi. — Quos libros combussit Græcus? — Suos (proprios) combussit. — Quas naves combussere Hispani? — Nullas naves combusserunt. — Tun' chartam combussisti? — Non combussi. — Num medicus schedulas aliquas combussit? — Non (Nullas) combussit. — Aususne es pileum meum comburere? — (Comburere eum) ausus sum.

— Quando eum combussisti? — Ego eum heri combussi. — Ubi eum combussisti? — (Ego eum) in conclavi meo (combussi). — Quis indusium suum laceravit? — Deformis vicini nostri puer eum laceravit. — Ecquis (Numquis) libros tuos laceravit? — Nemo eos laceravit. — Fasne est hoc facere? — Immo nefas est. — Estne mirabile dictu? — Est vero permirabile. — Quid est optimum factu? — Optimum est proficisci. — Quid est tam jucundum cognitu atque auditu, quam lingua Latina? — Nihil est jucundius. — Quid ille ausus est? — Non est dictu dignum, quod ausus est (Nihil dictu dignum ausus est).

94. DICTATA NONAGESIMA QUARTA.

Bibistine vinum (Ecquid tu vinum bibisti)? — Bibi, vero. — Multumne ejus bibisti? — Immo ego pauxillum tantum bibi. — Ecquid tu cervisiam bibisti? — Bibi. — Bibitne frater tuus multum vini ex malis confecti? — Non multum ejus bibit, sed tamen satis. — Quando vinum (de vino) bibisti? — Bibi aliquantum heri et hodie. — Portavitne (Tulitne) servus epistolam? — Quo portavit (tulit) eam? — Portavit eam ad amicum tuum. — Attulistisne (Apportavistisne) nobis mala? — Vero, attulimus (apportavimus) vobis nonnulla. — Quot mala nobis apportavistis? — Apportavimus vobis (eorum) viginti quinque. — Quando tu ea attulisti? — Ego ea hodie mane attuli. — Quotā horā? — Dodrante horæ post septimam. — Misistine tu puerculum tuum ad forum? — Vero, eum eo misi. — Quo tempore tu eum illuc misisti? — Hodie vesperi. — Dedistine litteras ad patrem tuum? — Dedi (litteras ad eum). — Rescripsitne tibi (Ecquid ad litteras tuas rescripsit)? — Nondum rescripsit. — Unquamne tu litteras ad medicum misisti (dedisti)? — Nunquam misi (dedi). — Deditne ille nonnunquam litteras ad te? — Sæpe dedit. — Quid tibi (ad te) scripsit? — Scripsit mihi (ad me) quiddam. — Ecquid amici tui aliquando litteras miserunt (dedere) ad te? — Vero, frequenter miserunt. — Quoties ad te litteras dederunt? — Litteras ad me dederunt plus tricies. — Vidistine unquam filium meum? — Ego eum nunquam vidi. — Viditne aliquando te? — Vero, me sæpe vidit. — Vidistine tu aliquando homines Græcos? — Ego frequenter vidi. — Vidistine jam Syrum aliquem? — Vidi vero jam unum. — Ubi unum vidisti? — In theatro. — Ecquid fratri meo librum dedisti? — Dedi. —

Dedistine mercatori pecuniam? — Dedi ei nonnullam. — Quantam ei dedisti? — Dedi ei quindecim thaleros. — Dedistine liberis vicinorum nostrorum bonorum tænias aureas? — Dedi iis aliquot. — Visne panem dare pauperi? — Dedi ei jam aliquantulum. — Visne mihi vinum dare? — Dedi tibi jam aliquantum. — Quando mihi dedisti? — Olim (tibi dedi). — Ecquid mihi nunc dare vis? — Dare tibi nequeo (non possum).

95. DICTATA NONAGESIMA QUINTA.

Commodavitne tibi Americanus pecuniam? — Commodavit. — Ecquid tibi sæpe commodavit? — Commodavit mihi non uno tempore (nonnunquam, interdum). — Quando tibi commodavit? — Commodavit mihi olim (quondam) aliquantum. — Num Italus tibi aliquando pecuniam commodavit? — Nunquam (mihi) commodavit. — Estne egenus (pauper)? — Pauper non est; divitior est te (quam tu). — Visne mihi unum thalerum commodare? — Immo tibi duo commodare non nolo. — Venitne puer tuum ad meum? — Venit (ad eum). — Quando? — Hodie mane. — Quo tempore? — Primâ luce. — Venitne maturius, quam ego? — Quotâ horâ tu venisti? — Ego mediâ horâ post quintam veni. — Maturius ergo ille venit, quam tu. — Quo ivit frater tuus? — Saltatum ivit. — Quando (eo) ivit? — Ivit (eo) nudius tertius. — Datusne est locus saltationi? — Datus est. — Habuitne locum sero? — Immo mature locum habuit. — Quotâ horâ? — Mediâ nocte. — Discitne frater tuus scribere (*or* artem scribendi)? — Vero, discit. — Scitne jam litteras (*or* legere)? — Nondum scit (legere). — Didicistine aliquando linguam Germanicam? — Didici vero olim (quondam), sed tamen ejus non sciens sum. — Didicitne pater tuus unquam linguam Francogallicam? — Nunquam didicit. — Discitne eam in præsentiâ (nunc)? — Discit. — Novistine tu Anglum, quem ego novi? — Quem tu novisti, ego non novi; novi autem alium. — Ecquid amicus tuus novit eundem equitem, quem ego novi (cognovi)? — Non eundem novit, verum alios. — Num tibi (Tibine) noti fuerunt iidem homines, qui mihi noti fuerunt? — Non mihi noti fuerunt iidem, verum alii. — Curavistine aliquando (nonnunquam) togam tuam reficiendam? — Curavi (eam nonnunquam reficiendam). — Jussistine jam caligas tuas reparari (refici)? — Nondum (eas) reparari jussi. — Jussitne non-

nunquam consobrinus tuus tibialia sua reparari (Curavitne, &c., tibialia sua reparanda) ? — Vero, reparari ea jussit pluribus temporibus. — Utrum tu reficiendum curasti pileum tuum an calceum tuum ? — Ego neque alterum neque illum reficiendum curavi. — Curavistine lavanda mea focalia an mea indusia ? — Ego neque una neque altera lavanda curavit. — Quid tibialium (Quæ tibialia) lavari jussisti ? — Lavari jussi tibialia lintea. — Jussitne pater tuus unam mensam confici ? — Jussit unam confici. — Tune aliquid conficiendum curavisti (curasti) ? — Nihil ego conficiendum curavi.

96. DICTATA NONAGESIMA SEXTA.

Esne amaturus ? — Amaturus sum. — Illine lecturi sunt (Num illi lecturi sunt, *or* Lecturine sunt illi, *or* Suntne illi lecturi) ? — Non sunt lecturi ; scripturi sunt. — Disciturine sumus linguam Latinam (litteras Latinas) ? — Disciturі sumus. — Lecturusne fuisti librum, quem ego tibi commodavi ? — Lecturus fui. — Fueruntne fenestram aperturi ? — Fuerunt eam aperturi. — Estne ille libros suos venditurus ? — (Eos) non venditurus est. — Num ego (Egone) in theatrum sum iturus ? — Non es initurus. — Fuitne tibi pecuniam daturus ? — Fuit mihi nonnullum ejus daturus. — Venturusne fuit medicus ? — Vero, venturus fuit. — Esne (tu) amandus ? — Amandus sum. — Cui amandus est puerculus tuus ? — Amandus est parentibus suis et magistris. — Legendane est epistola (Estne epistola legenda) ? — Legenda est. — Cui ? — Legenda est amicis ejus et vicinis. — Estne ignis accendendus (Accendendusne est ignis, *or* Ignisne accendendus est, *or* Num accendendus est ignis, &c.) ? — Non est accendendus ; extinguendus est. — Estne tibi proficiscendum ? — Est mihi proficiscendum. — Quando ei fuit proficiscendum ? — (Proficiscendum ei fuit) hodie mane. — Eundumne tibi est in hortos ? — Non est mihi ineundum. — Ecquid nobis nunc jentandum est (Estne nobis nunc jentandum) ? — Nondum nobis jentandum est. — Quid nobis faciendum est ? — Loquendum est nobis Latine, et mittendæ (dandæ) sunt nobis epistolæ (litteræ) ad amicos nostros.

97. DICTATA NONAGESIMA SEPTIMA.

Vidistine aliquem scribentem (scribere)? — Vidi vero patrem meum juxta carbones scribentem et legentem (scribere et legere). — Audieruntne nos loquentes (loqui)? *or* Num nos loquentes audiverunt? — Non audierunt. — Ubi (tu) amicum nostrum vidisti? — Vidi eum stantem juxta fenestram. — Ubi fuit puerculus tuus heri vesperi? — Fuit in cubiculo suo, librum legens, quem ei dedisti. — Estne servus noster in agris? — Non, in hortis est arbores secans. — Habetne fenestram apertam? — Immo vero eam clausam habet. — Visne te excusatum? — Volo (me excusatum). — Visne missos facere honores? — Missos facere non possum (non queo). — Perfidiam nonne perspectam habes? — Perspectam habeo. — Deditne tibi epistolam legendam? — Dedit. — Cui dedisti indusia lavanda? — Dedi ea servo meo. — Num nobis commodaverunt libros discindendos? — Immo eos nobis legendos et memoriā tenendos commodaverunt. — Visne mittere mihi digitabula tua reficienda? — Mittere tibi nolo. — Accepitne sartor togas reficiendas (reparandas)? — Vero, togas et indusia reficienda accepit. — Ubi pileum tuum reparandum reliquisti? — Ego eum apud pileorum opificem reliqui. — Venitne peregrinus (hospes) ad nos (domum nostram)? — Vero, venit allaturus tibi tabacum, quod de eo emisti. — Utrum illud evenit ante urbem conditam, an post (postea)? — Postea (post) evenit. — Vixitne Socrates post Christum natum (Num Socrates post Ch. nat. vixit)? — Immo vero ante vixit. — Ornatusne est frater tuus præmio? — Immo vero pœnā meritā affectus est. — Ecquid venientes nautas vides (conspicis)? — Non venientes, verum abeuntes eos video. — Ubi tu digitabula tua invenisti? — Ego ea super mensā posita (jacentia) inveni. — Invenistine vicinum tuum ad focum sedentem? — Non, eum in hortis suis ambulantem inveni.

98. DICTATA DUODECENTESIMA.

Legebatne (Ecquid ille legebat)? — Legebat. — Quotā (Quā) horā? — Legebat hodie mane inter horam septimam et octavam. — Scribebasne (Ecquid scribebas), quum ego domum venirem (veni, veniebam)? — Scribebam vero epistolam ad fratrem meum. — Dabatne operam litteris, quum ego in

publicum prodirem (prodivi)? — Non operam ille dabat litteris, quum tu in publicum prodires, sed quum in theatro esses. — Numquid tu laborabas, quum ego ludebam (luderem)? — Immo ego ludebam, quum tu laborabas (laborares). — Quo tempore ille litteras (epistolam) scribebat? — Scribebat eas mediâ nocte. — Convalescebatne eo tempore, quum eum vidisti? — Non convalescebat. — Ubi eras tum, quum ego medicum arcesserem (arcessebam)? — In hortis meis eram. — Aperiebasne fenestram, quum ego præteribam? — Aperiebam. — Num liberi frangebant vasa vitrea nostra? — Non frangebant. — Quid faciebas tum, quum ego domum ibam (irem)? — Librum, quem noster amicus mihi commodavit, legebam. — Quid dixit frater tuus, quum cubiculum ejus intrares? — Nihil dixit. — Intererasne (Aderasne) saltationi? — Non intereram (aderam). — Eratne puer diligens? — Erat vero non minus diligens, quam bene moratus. — Poteratne domo exire hodie mane? — Non poterat (Non quibat *or* Nequibat). — Domine eras (Tune domi eras), quum (ego) pecuniam meam acciperem? — Domi non eram. — Cupiebatne patrem suum videre? — Videre eum valde cupiebat. — Calefiebatne coffea? — Non calefiebat. — Volebatne linguam Latinam (litteras Latinas) discere? — Facere nolebat. — Quis edebat? — Vicinus noster edebat et bibebat (potabat). — Venitne, ut te videret? — Venit, ut me videret, et (ut) mihi librum novum daret. — Habebasne, quod ad amicum tuum scriberes, cum ruri esses? — Habebam vero multa, quæ ad eum scriberem. — Habesne nihil (Non habes), quod edas, hodie mane? — Nihil habeo. — Scribebantne æque bene ac (tam bene quam) dixerunt? — Immo melius scribebant (scribere solebant). — Loquebarisne Francogallice, quum Lutetiæ esses? — Vero, (et) Francogallice et Latine loquebar.

99. DICTATA UNDECENTESIMA.

Eratne tibi propositum linguam Anglicam discere (Cogitavistine ling. Angl. discere)? — Erat mihi propositum (eam discere), sed non potui invenire bonum magistrum. — Cogitabatne frater tuus currum emere? — Cogitabat quidem unum emere, carebat autem pecuniâ. — Cur tu laborabas? — Laborabam, ut linguam Latinam (litteras Latinas *or* Latine) discerem. — Quam ob rem tu hominem illum amabas (diligebas)? — Eum amabam, quia (quod) me amabat. — Ecquid

jam filium centurionis vidisti? — Vero, eum jam vidi. — Loquebaturne Anglice? — Immo vero Græce et Latine loquebatur. — Ubinam eras (fuisti) eo tempore? — In Italiâ eram. — Quem hortabatur magister? — Discipulos suos hortabatur. — Ecquid non diligentes habebantur? — Non, segnes et nequam habebantur. — Num tu rus ire jubebaris? — Non jubebar eo ire. — Quando mittebatur epistola? — Mittebatur heri (hesterno tempore). — Aperiebaturne fenestra (tum), quum nos præteribamus (præteriremus). — Aperiebatur. — Audiebaturne magister, quum loqueretur (loquebatur)? — Vero, audiebatur, quum clarâ voce loqueretur (loquebatur). — Quam ob rem puer pœnâ est affectus (*or* afficiebatur)? — Pœnâ affectus est, quia negligens nequamque erat. — Potuistine (Poterasne) amicos tuos tueri? — Non potui (Non poteram *or* Nequibam) eos tueri. — Ecquid blandiri tibi solebant? — Solebant (mihi blandiri). — Num tu venisti, ut mihi blandireris? — Non vero, veni, ut tecum colloquerer. — Vivitne amici tui frater etiamnunc? — Vivit vero (Vitâ fruitur *or* In vitâ est) etiamnunc. — Num parentes tui vitâ fruuntur (in vitâ sunt) etiamnunc? — Vitâ non amplius fruuntur. — Eratne frater tuus in vitâ (Vivebatne frater tuus) etiam tum, quum tu in Germaniâ esses? — In vitâ erat (Vivebat) non amplius. — Dormiebasne etiam tum (tunc), quum ego hodie mane veniebam (venirem)? — Dormiebam non amplius. — Loquebaturne magister tuus clare (clarâ voce)? *or* Solebatne magister tuus clarâ voce loqui? — Clarâ voce (solebat). — Solesne clare loqui, quum litteris Latinis operam das? — Soleo. — Advenitne tandem consobrinus tuus? — Avenit tandem. — Discisne tandem linguam Francogallicam? — Vero, tandem disco. — Quid post sumptum jentaculum facere soles? — Simul ac (Simul ut) jentavi (jentaculum sumpsi), ego litteras meas scribere incipio. — Ego, simul ac caput meum nudavi, vestes (vestimenta) mihi exuo. — Bibisne (Potasne), simul ac cibum sumpsisti? — Bibo. — Quid egerunt (fecerunt) illi post sumptum cibum vespertinum? — Postea dormierunt (dormiere).

100. DICTATA CENTESIMA.

Promisistine aliquid (Ecquid *or* Numquid pollicitus es)? — Nihil promisi (pollicitus sum). — Ecquid mihi das, quod promisisti? — Do vero. — Multumne tu pecuniæ accepisti? —

Pauxillum tantum accepi. — Quantum ejus accepisti? — Unum solum thalerum accepi. — Quo tempore epistolam tuam accepisti? — Hodie (accepi). — Numquid accepisti? — Nihil quidquam accepi. — Pollicerisne mihi, te ad saltationem venturum (esse)? — Polliceor me venturum. — Daturne locus saltationi hodie vesperi? — Datur. — Quantam pecuniam dedisti filio meo? — Dedi ei quindecim thaleros. — Non tu ei amplius (plus) promisisti? — Immo (ei) dedi, quantum ei promisi. — Num inimici nostri pecuniam suam acceperunt? — Non acceperunt (accepere). — Habesne signatam Romanorum signo pecuniam? — Habeo. — Quid nummorum habes? — Ego asses, sestertios, denarios et aureos habeo. — Ex quot assibus efficitur sestertius? — Ex quattuor. — Quam valorem habet aureus? — Aureus centum sestertiis valet (Aureus valorem habet centum sestertium). — Estne tibi pecunia Germanorum signo signata? — Vero, sunt mihi thaleri (imperiales), floreni, kreutzeri, grossi et oboli. — Quot grossos continet florenus? — Florenus grossorum sexdecim vel kreutzerorum sexaginta continet (Florenus ex sedecim grossis vel sexaginta kreutzeris efficitur). — Suntne tibi aliquot oboli? — Sunt mihi eorum aliquot. — Ex quot obolis efficitur drachma (Quot obolorum continet drachma)? — Drachma ex sex obolis efficitur (Drachma obolorum sex continet). — Mina argenti Græcorum valorem habet eandem cum denario Romanorum. — Ex quot minis efficitur talentum? — Talentum ex minis sexaginta efficitur (Talentum minarum sexaginta continet). — Visne mihi togam tuam commodare? — Commodare tibi eam non nolo, sed usu contrita est. — Contritine sunt usu calcei tui? — Non usu contriti sunt (Non detriti sunt). — Visne eos fratri meo commodare? — Volo illi eos commodare. — Cui pileum tuum commodavisti? — Non eum commodavi; dono eum dedi alicui. — Cui dedisti? — Pauperi (eum dedi).

101. DICTATA UNA ET CENTESIMA.

Ecquid fraterculus tuus jam litterarum syllabas ordinare scit? — Scit vero. — Ordinatne eas bene? — Bene (Recte) ordinat. — Quemadmodum (Quomodo) litterarum syllabas ordinavit puerculus tuus? — Mediocriter (sic satis) ordinavit. — Quomodo scripserunt liberi tui epistolas suas? — Male (nequiter, perperam) scripserunt. — Scisne Hispanice (linguam His-

panicam)? — Scio. — Loquiturne consobrinus tuus Italice? — Loquitur vero bene. — Quemadmodum amici tui loquuntur? — Non male loquuntur. — Observantne ea, quæ tu iis dicis (imperas)? — Observant. — Quomodo (Quo pacto) tu linguam Anglicam didicisti? — Didici eam hoc pacto (hoc modo). — Vocavistine me (Mene vocasti)? — Non te vocavi, verum fratrem tuum. — Advenitne (Venitne)? — Nondum advenit (venit). — Ubi tu vestes tuas (vestimenta tua) madefecisti? — Ego eas ruri madefeci. — Visne eas in sole exponere, ut siccescant? — Volo eas exponere (ut siccescant). — Ubi pileum meum posuisti? — Ego eum mensæ (in mensâ *or* in mensam) imposui. — Vidistine librum meum? — Vidi. — Ubi est? — Positus est super (Impositus est) risco fratris tui. — Positumne est muccinium tuum in sellâ? — Positum est. — Quando tu ruri fuisti? — Ego ibi nudius tertius fui (*or simply* Nudius tertius). — Invenistine ibi patrem tuum? — Inveni (eum ibi). — Quid dixit (dicebat)? — Nihil dixit. — Quid tu ruri egisti? — Nihil quidquam egi (*or* agebam).

102. DICTATA ALTERA ET CENTESIMA.

Justumne est (Estne justum), me scribere? — Vero, justum est. — Te facere hoc non consentaneum est (Non consentaneum est, te hoc facere). — Apertum est, eum litteras (illas) scripsisse. — Estne verisimile, eum nobis librum misisse (librum ad nos misisse)? — Non verisimile est. — Estne tempus, nos abire? — Nondum (tempus) est; tempus est jentare (jentandi). — Num fas est, me saltatum ire? — Non est fas (Nefas est). — Fuitne facinus, civem Romanum vinciri? — Fuit (Erat) vero facinus audacissimum. — Apparetne, eum erravisse? — Non apparet. — Constat, te erravisse, me autem vere (recte) locutum esse. — Oportuitne (Oportebatne) te laborare? — Laborare me non oportuit, oportuit me autem scribere. — Estne necesse, nos linguam Latinam discere? — Necesse est. — Licetne nobis in theatrum ire? — Non licet. — Intelligiturne, eum advenisse? — Intelligitur, eum nudius tertius advenisse. — Intelligitur, eum cras (crastino tempore) adventurum esse. — Necessene est, me scribere? — Necesse quidem est, sed epistolam tuam brevem esse oportet.

103. DICTATA CENTESIMA TERTIA.

Videsne, me scribere? — Video. — Videbatne, nos venire? — Non videbat. — Audiverunt (Audiebantne), me legere (me legentem). — Te non audierunt (audiebant). — Auditne, me litteras ad te dedisse? — Audit. — Miraris (Num miraris), me tuis operibus lætari? — Minime miror. — Sentitne, se mortalem esse? — Vero, sentit. — Ecquid ille sperat, te venturum esse? — Immo vero sperat, me domi mansurum (esse). — Num tu credis, illum librum tuum lecturum (esse)? — Non credo, (illum eum lecturum esse). — Scisne, rem ita se habere? — Non certe scio, sed credo, rem ita se habere. — Gaudesne (Lætarisne), eum convaluisse? — Valde gaudeo (lætor). — Doleo, eum ægrotum esse (*or* quod ægrotus est). — Cupitne, te sibi librum mittere? — Me non librum sed chartam ipsi mittere cupit. — Num me rus ire vis? — Non, te in urbe manere volo. — Jubetne nos scribere? — Nos non scribere, verum libros, quos nobis commodavit, legere jubet. — Vetatne te in theatrum ire? — Me non vetat. — Ecquid tu me jubes memet ipsum cognoscere (noscere)? — Jubeo te. — Dixitne, se ægrotum esse? — Immo dixit, se sitire. — Numquid illi scribunt, nos advenisse? — Non scribunt. — Tune negas, me recte loqui? — Negare (hoc) non cupio. — Confiterisne, te erravisse? — Immo vero nego, me erravisse. — Simulavitne (Simulabatne), se dormire? — Simulavit (Simulabat). — Pollicitusne est, se venturum (esse)? — Polliceri non potuit (non quivit *or* nequivit.)

104. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUARTA.

Visne me tecum in theatrum ire (*or, also,* Visne, ut (ego) tecum in theatrum eam)? — Ego non te, verum (sed) fratrem tuum mecum ire volo. — Optasne me litteras ad patrem tuum dare (Optasne, ut ego litteras dem *or* mittam ad patrem tuum)? — Vero, volo, ut litteras ad eum des. — Sinisne, me saltatum ire (*or* ut saltatum eam)? — (Ego te ire) non sino. — Ecquid ille epistolas a nobis scribi patitur (Num ille patitur, ut epistolæ a nobis scribantur)? — Non patitur. — Num te coegerunt, ut te munere tuo abdicares (*also* te munere tuo abdicare)? — Me cogere non potuerunt (nequiverunt). — Flagitavitne, te secum in publicum prodire? — Flagitavit (Flagitabat).

— Recusatne ad nos venire? — Recusat. — Statuistine linguam Latinam discere? — Decrevitne operam dare linguæ Francogallicæ (litteris Francogallicis)? — Decrevit. — Quid agit? — Id agit, ut hunc librum ediscat (memoriæ mandet). — Studesne fieri diligens (te fieri diligentem *or* ut diligens fias)? — Studeo vero esse et diligens et bonus (me esse diligentem bonumque *or* ut sim diligens atque bonus). — Videndumne est, ut proximum nostrum amemus? — Videndum est quam maxime.

105. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUINTA.

Rogasne me, ut domi maneam (*or* me domi manere)? — Immo vero te et oro et hortor, ut in publicum prodeas (in publicum prodire). — Hortatusne est te, ut rus ires (rus ire)? — Non, me hortatus est, ut litteras (unas) scriberem (litteras scribere). — Admonesne me, ut iracundiæ resistam (iracundiæ resistere)? — Vero, te admoneo. — (Te) moneo obtestorque, ut eos (hos *or* illos), qui te amant, caros habeas. — Monuitne te, rem ita se habere (habuisse)? — Monuit et persuasit mihi, rem ita se re vera habere (habuisse). — Imperaveruntne, ut aliquis interficeretur (*or* Jusseruntne aliquem interfici *or* occidi)? — Imperaverunt, ut miles interficeretur (Jusserunt militem interfici). — Vetatne ille librum legi? — Immo vero (eum) legi jubet (imperat, ut legeretur). — Num pater tuus tibi scripsit, ut domum redires? — Immo mihi scripsit, ut ruri manerem (me tenerem). — Dixistine famulo tuo, ut tibi librum apportaret (afferret)? — Dixi. — Imperatne tibi præceptor (magister) tuus, ut operam des studiis (Jubetne te magister tuus operam dare studiis)? — Imperat (Jubet). — Ecquid ei persuasisti, ut librum meum legeret (librum meum legere)? — Persuadere ei non potui (nequivi). — Numquid fieri potest, ut ego errem? — Fieri non potest, ut erres. — Quando fuit, ut ego errarem? — Sine, te exorem, ut scribas. — Fac sciam, quando venias. — Cave credas, eum tibi amicum esse. — Gaudesne, me litteras ad amicum tuum dedisse (*or* quod ego litteras ad amicum tuum dedi)? — Delector, quod fecisti hoc (te hoc fecisse). — Dolesne, quod librum tuum amisisti (*or* te librum tuum amisisse)? — Valde doleo, quod eum amisi (me eum amisisse). — Ecquid miratur ille, quod ego medicum non adduxi (me medicum non adduxisse)? — Immo miratur, quod

non veniat (eum non venire). — Gratiasne mihi agis, quod te molestiâ liberavi? — Vero, gratias tibi ago toto pectore. — Gratularisne mihi, quod convalui (sanus factus sum)? — Gratulor. — Cur magister ejus queritur? — Queritur super hoc, quod ille negligens et ignavus est.

106. DICTATA CENTESIMA SEXTA.

Hodiene in publicum prodis (Prodisne hodie in publicum)? — Non ego unquam, quum pluit, in publicum prodeo. — Pluvitne (Pluitne *or* Pluebatne) heri *or* hesterno tempore? — Non pluvit (pluit, pluebat). — Ninxitne? — Ninxit. — Quam ob rem tu non in forum is? — Non eo, quod (quia) ningit. — Visne tibi umbraculum? — Vero, si unum habes. — Visne mihi commodare umbraculum? — Commodare tibi unum non nolo. — Qualis est tempestas? — Tonat et fulgurat. — Lucetne sol? — Non lucet; nebulosum est cœlum. — Audisne tonitrum? — Non audio. — Quam diu tonitrum audiisti (audiebas)? — Ego eum usque ad horam quartam mane audivi (audiebam). — Estne nunc tempestas bona (Bonane nunc est tempestas)? — Non est; valde flat ventus et vehementer tonat. — Pluitne? — Pluit vero valde (vehementissime). — Nonne tu rus is? — Quomodo ego rus ire queam (possim)? nonne vides, quam vehementer fulguret? — Ningitne? — Non ningit, sed grandinat. — Grandinabatne heri (hesterno tempore)? — Non grandinabat, sed valde tonabat (tonuit). — Estne tibi umbella? — Est mihi una. — Visne mihi eam commodare? — Volo (tibi eam commodare). — Lucetne sol? — Lucet; sol mihi oculos nocet. — Serenumne est cœlum? — Immo vero deterrima est tempestas; cœlum obscurum est. — Solis lumine non utimur. — Qualis est tempestas hodierna (hodie)? — Tempestas deterrima est. — Flatne ventus (Estne tempestas ventosa)? — Valde flat ventus (Tempestas valde ventosa est). — Eratne (Fuitne) heri tempestas procellosa? — Procellosa (fuit *or* erat). — Cur non rus ivisti? — Non ivi, quod (quia) cœlum erat procellosum. — Isne tu hodie mane in forum? — Cogito eo ire, si tempestas non est procellosa. — Cogitasne hodie mane mecum jentare (jentaculum sumere)? — Cogito tecum jentare, si esurio.

107. DICTATA CENTESIMA SEPTIMA.

Cogitatne Polonus de hoc vino (hoc de vino) bibere? — Bibere de eo cogitat, si sitit. — Delectarisne ire pedibus, iter faciens (quum itinera facis)? — Pedibus ire non delector. — Ecquid iter fecisti in Italiam pedibus? — Non ivi pedibus, quia viæ nimis lutulentæ erant. — Num in rhedâ (*or* curru) invehi delectaris? — Immo vero ego equo vehi delector. — Invectus est consobrinus tuus aliquando equo? — Non unquam (nunquam) invectus est equo. — Equitavistine nudius tertius? — Immo ego hodie equitavi. — Ecquid frater tuus tam sæpe equitat, quam tu? — Sæpius equitat, quam ego. — Tune interdum equitavisti (Vectusne es interdum equo)? — Nunquam equitavi (equo vectus sum). — Ecquid vis in rhedâ (curru) rus vehi hodie? — Immo vero equo eo vehi volo (eo equitare volo). — Delectarisne itinera facere? — Non delector. — Num pater tuus delectatur itinera facere hieme? — Non delectatur itinera facere hieme; itinera facere vere atque æstate delectatur. — Estne jucundum, iter (*or* itinera) facere vere? — Jucundum est iter facere vere et auctumno, sed injucundum est iter facere hieme et æstate. — Fecistine (Faciebasne) interdum itinera hieme? — Sæpe ego itinera feci et hieme et æstate (hieme non minus, quam æstate). — Peregrinatur frater tuus sæpe (frequenter)? — Non amplius peregrinatur; multum autem quondam peregrinatus est. — Quo tempore tu equo invehi (equitare) delectaris? — Ego equo vehi (equitare) delector mane post jentaculum sumptum. — Jucundumne est iter facere ruri? — Jucundum est (iter facere ibi). — Quorsum curritur? — Curritur in forum. — Ventumne est in domum? — Nondum ventum est. — Ridebaturne in theatro? — Vero, ridebatur et clamabatur. — Diciturne, eum advenisse (Diciturne advenisse)? — Non, dicitur, eum ruri mansisse (se tenuisse) *or* dicitur ruri mansisse. — Jucundumne est hodie pedibus ire? — Non jucundum est. — Quando ortus est ventus? — Ortus est hodie mane horâ quartâ.

108. DICTATA CENTESIMA OCTAVA.

Visne fratri meo librum unum aliquem commodare? — Commodavi ei jam unum (ego ei jam jam unum commodavi). — Visne ei uno amplius (plus) commodare? — Immo ei duobus

plus commodare volo (non nolo). — Dedistine aliquid pauperibus? — Dedi vero iis pecuniam. — Quantum pecuniæ tibi dedit frater tuus? — Pauxillum (paulum) tantum dedit; non dedit mihi nisi duos thaleros. — Quot annos habet (Quotum annum agit) frater tuus? — Viginti annos habet (Annum agit vicesimum). — Esne tu (Tun' es) ejusdem ætatis cum eo (Esne tu tam grandis natu, quam ille (*or* is)? — Immo vero ego minor natu sum. — Quotum annum agis? — Ego vix duodeviginti annos habeo (natus sum). — Tu quot annos habes (natus es)? — Ego circiter duodecim annos habeo (natus sum). — Egone te minor natu sum? — Haud (Non) scio. — Quotum annum vicinus noster agit? — Tricesimum pæne annum agit (Vix triginta annorum est). — Suntne amici nostri ejusdem ætatis nobiscum? — Immo majores nobis natu sunt. — Quot annos (annorum) habent? — Alter undeviginti annos habet, alter viginti. — Estne pater tuus ejusdem ætatis cum meo (æque grandis natu atque meus)? — Immo ille tuo major natu est. — Legistine librum meum? — Nondum legi (perlegi). — Perlegitne (Conclusitne*) amicus tuus librum suum? — Vero, prope perlegit. — Intelligisne quod tibi dico (Capisne meam sententiam)? — Intelligo quod mihi dicis (Capio). — Intelligitne Anglus ea, quæ nos ei dicimus (Capitne Anglus sententiam nostram)? — Intelligit (Capit). — Comprehenditisne, quæ vobis dicimus (dicamus)? — Comprehendimus. — Ecquid tu linguam Germanicam intelligis? — Nondum intelligo, sed (verum) disco. — Intelligimusne, quod (= id quod *or* ea quæ) dicunt (dicant) Angli? — Non intelligimus (Sententiam eorum non capimus). — An Germani, quod nos dicimus (dicamus), intelligunt? — Vero, intelligunt. — Nosne, quæ illi dicant, comprehendimus? — Vix comprehendimus. — Audisne strepitum? — Nihil audio. — Audivisti ventorum strepitum? — Audivi (Audii). — Quid tu audis? — Latratum canum (*or* Canes latrantes) audio (accipio). — Cujus est hicce canis? — Canis est Scoti.

109. DICTATA CENTESIMA NONA.

Ubi est frater tuus? — Londini est. — Non Berolini erat? — Non, Carthagine erat. — Tun' unquam Syracusis fuisti? — Nunquam ego Syracusis fui, verum (sed) Romæ. — Estne ami-

* The former to finish reading, the latter generally.

cus tuus Novo Eboraco? — Non, Athenis est. — Cogitasne in Italiam proficisci? — Immo ego Romam et Athenas proficisci cogito. — Ubi (Quo loco) studet filius tuus litteris? — Lutetiæ (Parisiis) studet. — Revertitne ex Asiā? — Non adhuc (Nondum) revertit. — Unde venit? — Venit Lutetiā (Parisiis *or* Lutetiā Parisiorum) Londinum. — Et ego ex Germaniā veni in Americam. — Ecquid (Numquid) baculum tuum amisisti (perdidisti)? — Non amisi (perdidi). — Amisitne servus tuus schedulam meam? — Amisit. — Ubi mansisti? — Domi mansi (me tenebam). — Perdidit pater tuus aleā tantam pecuniam, quantam ego? — Plus ejus ille perdidit, quam tu. — Quantam ego aleā perdidi? — Tu vix unum thalerum perdidisti. — Ubi (Quo loco) mansit (moratus est) frater tuus? — Domi mansit (moratus est). — Manseruntne (Moratine sunt) amici tui ruri? — Manserunt (Commorati sunt). — Esne tu (Tun' es) æque doctus, atque medicus Anglus? — Non ego æque doctus sum. — Æquene doctus est medicus Francogallus ac tu (atque tu, quam tu *or* tecum)? — Immo doctior est, quam ego sum. — Ecquis (Numquis) doctior est, quam medici Francogallici? — Nemo doctior est, quam illi sunt. — Perlegeruntne fratres tui libros meos? — Nondum (eos) perlegerunt. — Quam multos eorum perlegerunt? — Vix duo eorum perlegerunt. — Abstulitne tibi hortulani mei filius aliquid? — Libros (meos) mihi abstulit (dempsit). — Quid tu ei (*or* ab eo) abstulisti (dempsisti)? — Nihil ab eo abstuli. — Dempsitne ille (Abstulitne) tibi pecuniam? — Dempsit (Abstulit) vero (mihi nonnullum). — Quantam pecuniam (Quantum pecuniæ) tibi dempsit (tibi *or* a te abstulit). — Dempsit mihi (Abstulit a me) duos fere thaleros.

110. DICTATA CENTESIMA DECIMA.

Cur tu hominem illum amas? — Ego eum amo, quod bonus est. — Quam ob rem vicinus noster canem suum verberat? — Quod (*or* Propterea, quia) puerculum ejus momordit (morsu vulneravit). — Quā de causā pater noster me amat? — Te ob eam causam amat, quod bonus es. — Amantne nos amici nostri? — Nos idcirco amant, quia boni sumus. — Cur mihi vinum affers? — Tibi affero propterea, quia sitis. — Quam ob rem bibit pileorum opifex? — Bibit propterea, quod sitit. — Videsne nautam, qui in nave est? — Ego non eum, qui in nave est, video, verum illum, qui in campo (loco publico) est. — Legisne illos libros, quos pater meus tibi dedit? — Vero, eos

lego. — Novistine eos Italos, quos nos novimus? — Non novimus eos (illos), quos vos novistis, novimus autem alios. — Emisne equum, quem vidimus? — Ego non eum, quem vidimus, emo, verum alium. — Quærisne, quod amisisti (perdidisti)? — Quæro. — Invenis (Reperis) hominem, quem quæsivisti? — Eum non invenio (reperio). — Occiditne lanius bovem, quem in foro emit? — Occidit. — Ecquid coqui nostri gallinas, quas emerunt (emere), occidunt? — Vero, eas occidunt. — Reparatne pileorum opifex pileum eum, quem ego ei misi? — Reparat (Reficit). — Ecquid sutor caligas, quas ei misisti, reficit? — Eas non reficit propterea, quia detritæ sunt. — Jacetne toga tua in sellâ? — Jacet, vero. — Jacetne (Positane est) in sellâ, cui ego eam imposui? — Non, in aliâ jacet (posita est). — Ubi est pileus meus? — In conclavi est, ubi (*or* in quo) tu eum vidisti. — Opperirisne (Manesne) aliquem? — Neminem opperior (maneo). — Manesne hominem, quem ego hodie mane videbam? — Maneo. — Ecquid librum tuum opperiris? — Opperior. — Expectasne patrem tuum hodie vesperi? — Expecto. — Quotâ horâ in theatrum ivit? — Ivit eo horâ septimâ. — Quotâ horâ inde revertitur? — Revertitur inde horâ undecimâ. — Revertitne quæsitor tuus a foro? — Nondum revertit. — Quotâ horâ revertit frater tuus rure? — Revertit (Rediit) inde decimâ horâ vesperi.

111. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNDECIMA.

Quâ (Quotâ) horâ tu amici tui domo revertisti? — Ego inde horâ undecimâ mane reverti (redii). — Mansistine (Commoratusne es) diu cum eo? — Mansi (commoratus sum) cum eo circa unam horam. — Quam diu in saltatione manere (saltationi adesse *or* interesse) cogitas? — Ego aliquot momenta manere cogito. — Quam diu Anglus tecum commoratus est? — Commoratus est mecum (per) duas horas. — Diune tu rure manere (morari) cogitas? — Immo per æstatem manere (morari) cogito. — Quam diu fratres tui in urbe mansere (commorati sunt)? — Commorati sunt (Permanserunt) ibi per hiemem. — Quantam pecuniæ ego tibi debeo? — Non mihi multum ejus debes. — Quantum tu sartori tuo debes? — Non debeo ei nisi quinquaginta thaleros. — Quantum tu sutori tuo debes? — Debeo ei jam septuaginta thaleros. — Egone tibi quidquam (aliquid) debeo (Numquid tibi debeo)? — Nihil debes. — Quam multum tibi debet Francogallus? — Debet mihi plus,

quam tu. — Tantumne tibi debent Angli, quantum Hispani? — Vix tantum debent. — Debeone tibi tantum (pecuniæ), quantum frater meus? — Immo mihi plus (majorem) debes, quam ille. — Debent tibi amici nostri tantum, quantum nos (debemus)? — Tu mihi minus (minorem pecuniam) debes, quam illi. — Quā de causā tu mercatori das pecuniam? — Do ei aliquantum propterea, quod mihi muccinia vendidit. — Cur non (Quin) bibis? — Ego ideo non bibo, quia non sitio. — Quid (causæ) est, quod tæniam tollas? — Ego eam idcirco tollo, quia mihi opus est. — Quid est, cur isti (homini) pecuniam commodes? — Commodo ei propterea, quod ejus indiget. — Quam ob rem frater tuus operam dat litteris? — Operam idcirco litteris dat, quia linguam Latinam (*or* Latine) discere cupit. — Sitisne? — Ego non sitio, quippe qui biberim. — Bibit jam consobrinus tuus? — Nondum bibit; nondum (non adhuc) sitit. — Ostenditne (Monstratne) tibi famulus cubiculum, quod everrit (scopis purgat)? — Ostendit (Monstrat) mihi non id, quod nunc everrit, verum illud, quod heri everrit (everrebat). — Jentasne ante, quam in publicum prodis? — Immo vero in publicum prodeo, prius quam jento (jentaculum sumo). — Quid agit (facit *or* facere solet) frater tuus ante, quam epistolas suas scribit? — Chartam, atramentum et pennas (calamos) emit (emere solet), priusquam (antequam) eas scribit.

112. DICTATA CENTESIMA DUODECIMA.

Ubi habitas? — In plateā habito (domicilium habeo). — Quo loco pater tuus habitat? — In * amici sui domo habitat (Apud amicum suum domicilium habet). — Ubi domicilium habent fratres tui? — Domicilium habent in plateā numero centesimo vicesimo. — Habitasne apud patruelem (consobrinum) tuum? — Apud eum (in domo ejus) habito. — Habitat ne etiamnunc, ubi (quondam) habitabat? — Non amplius habitat, ubi quondam habitabat. — Ubi in præsentiā (*or* nunc) habitat? — In viā Wilhelminā numero centesimo quinto decimo habitat (domicilium habet). — Ubi est frater tuus? — In hortis (hortulo *or* horto †) est. — Quo ivit consobrinus tuus? — In hortos iniit. — Ivistine heri ad spectaculum? — (Eo)

* See Grammar, page 652, Rem. 1–3.
† Grammar, page 71, *D.*

ivi. — Ecquid amicum meum vidisti? — (Eum) vidi. — Quando eum vidisti? — Ego eum hodie mane vidi. — Quorsum ivit? — Non scio (Haud scio *or* Nescio.) — Detersitne servus vestes meas penicillo? — Vero, eas detersit. — Everritne cubiculum meum? — Everrit. — Quam diu hic permansit? — Usque ad meridiem. — Quam diu (Quo usque) scripsisti? — Ego usque ad mediam noctem scripsi. — Quam diu (Quo usque) ego laboravi? — Tu usque ad quartam horam mane laboravisti (laborabas). — Quam diu (Quo usque) frater meus apud te moratus est? — Moratus est (Permansit) apud me usque ad vesperam. — Quo usque (Quam diu) laborabas? — Ego adhuc (adhuc usque) laborabam. — Diune etiam tibi scribendum est? — Scribendum est mihi usque ad diem perendinum. — Laborandumne est medico etiam diu? — Laborandum est ei usque ad diem crastinum. — Morandumne mihi hic est diu (longum tempus)? — Morandum tibi est usque ad diem solis. — Oportetne fratrem meum longum tempus apud te manere? — Manere eum portet apud me usque ad diem lunæ. — Quam longum tempus (Quam diu *or* Quousque) mihi laborandum est (me laborare oportet)? — Laborandum tibi est (Laborare te oportet) usque ad diem perendinum. — Estne tibi diu (longum tempus) loquendum (dicendum)? — Loquendum mihi est unam etiam horam. — Locutusne es longum tempus? — Locutus sum usque ad diem proximum (posterum). — Mansistine diu (longum tempus) in cubiculo meo? — Mansi ibi usque ad momentum præsens. — Ecquid tibi longum tempus (diu) hac in domo habitandum est? — Vero, est mihi in eā longum etiam tempus habitandum. — Quousque tibi etiam in eā habitandum est? — Usque ad diem solis. — Quot triumphas triumphavit Dentatus? — Triumphavit eorum novem. — Qualem vitam vivit pater tuus? — Otiosam atque tranquillam vitam vivit. — Quis Turnum saltare solitus est (solebat)? — Romani (eum saltare) solebant (soliti sunt).

113. DICTATA CENTESIMA TERTIA DECIMA.

Habitatne amicus tuus apud te (tecum) etiamnunc? — Apud me (Mecum) non amplius habitat. — Quam diu (Quam longum tempus) tecum habitabat? — Unum tantum annum mecum habitabat. — Quam longum tempus tu in saltatione permanebas (saltationi aderas)? — Permanebam (Aderam) usque ad mediam noctem. — Quam longum tempus in curru

mansisti? — Ego per unam horam in eo mansi. — Permansistine in hortis adhuc usque? — Vero, adhuc usque in iis permansi. — Venitne centurio hucusque (ad hunc usque locum)? — Venit vero hucusque (hactenus). — Quousque venit mercator? — Usque ad terminum viæ venit. — Venitne Turca usque ad extremam silvam? — Venit vero usque eo (ad illum usque locum). — Quid facis (agis) mane? — Lego (Libros lego). — Et quid facis (agis) postea? — (Deinde) jentaculum sumo et laboro. — Jentasne, antequam (libros) legis? — Non, domine; ego libros lego ante, quam jento. — Ludisne, quum laborare debeas? — Immo tantum abest, ut ludam, ut laborem (Immo vero laboro potius, quam ludo). — Itne (Aditne) frater tuus ad spectaculum, quum in hortos ire debeat? — Non it (adit) ad spectaculum. — Quid agis vesperi? — Laboro (Opus facio *or* Operor). — Quid egisti (fecisti) hodie vesperi? — Ego vestes tuas (vestimenta tua) periculo detersi (extersi) et in theatrum inii. — Moratusne es in theatro longum tempus (*or* diu)? — Immo vero panca tantum momenta (ibi) moratus sum. — Visne hic expectare (opperiri)? — Quam diu expectare (opperiri) me oportet? — Expectare te oportet, donec (dum) pater meus revertatur (redeat). — Venitne aliquis (Ecquis venit)? — Venit vero aliquis. — Quid sibi voluerunt? — Ad te loqui (Tecum colloqui) voluerunt. — Opperiri non voluerunt? — Nolunt opperiri. — Quid homini illi dicis? — Dico ei, ut opperiatur (expectet). — Ecquid me diu (longum tempus) mansisti (oppertus es)? — Ego te unam horam (totam horam) mansi (oppertus *or* opperitus sum). — Potuistine meam epistolam legere? — Potui (eam legere). — Ecquid eam intellexisti? — Vero, eam intellexi. — Eccui eam ostendisti (Ostendistine eam alicui)? — Ego eam nemini (nulli) ostendi. — Attuleruntne vestes meas (Ecquid vestimenta mea allata sunt)? — Nondum ea attulere (Nondum *or* non adhuc allata sunt). — Num cubiculum meum everrerunt et vestes meas periculo exterserunt (Eversumne est cubiculum meum et extersæne sunt penicillo vestes meæ? — Non adhuc fecerunt (Nondum factum est).

114. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUARTA DECIMA.

Clepseruntne tibi aliquid (Surreptumne tibi est aliquid)? — Clepserunt mihi (a me) omne bonum vinum (Surreptum est mihi omne bonum vinum). — Furatine sunt aliquid patri

tuo (a patre tuo)? — Vero, omnes ejus libros bonos furati sunt (Surrepti sunt ei omnes ejus libri boni). — Numquid furaris (clepis, surripis)? — Nihil furor (clepo, surripio). — Numquid tu unquam furatus es (Clepsistine aliquando aliquid)? — Nunquam ego quidquam furatus sum (*or* clepsi *or* surripui). — Clepseruntne tibi (a te) mala tua (Cleptane tibi mala tua sunt)? — Clepserunt (Clepta sunt). — Quid mihi (a me) furati sunt (clepserunt)? — Clepserunt tibi omnes libros bonos. — Quando tibi currum (rhedam) surripuerunt? — Surripuerunt mihi eum (eam) nudius tertius. — Clepseruntne unquam (aliquando) aliquid a nobis? — Nunquam a nobis quidquam clepserunt. — Bibitne (Potavitne) faber tignarius omne vinum? — Bibit (Potavit). — Laceravitne puer tuus omnes libros suos? — Omnes laceravit. — Quam ob rem eos laceravit? — Propterea, quia litteris studere non vult. — Quantam pecuniam tu aleā perdidisti? — Omnem ego meam pecuniam perdidi. — Scisne, ubi pater meus sit? — Nescio (Non *or* haud scio). — Tune librum meum non vidisti? — (Eum) non vidi. — Scisne, quomodo hoc vocabulum scribatur? — Scribitur hoc pacto. — Tingisne aliquid (Inficisne aliquid colore)? — Vero, pileum meum tingo (colore inficio). — Quo colore eum inficis (tingis)? — Ego eum colore nigro (atro) inficio (tingo). — Quo colore tu vestes tuas inficis (tingis)? — Inficio (Tingo) eas flavo colore. — Pœnitetne te? — Me non pœnitet. — Pigetne eum? — Piget eum valde. — Nonne eos pudet? — Vero, eos et pudet et tædet. — Juvatne te, fratrem tuum advenisse (quod frater tuus advenit)? — Vero, me valde juvat. — Scisne, librum tuum surreptum (cleptum) esse? — Me non fugit (præterit) eum surreptum esse. — Loquerisne ad me? — Non ad te loquor, verum ad peregrinum stantem juxta te.

115. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUINTA DECIMA.

Curasne riscum tuum colore inficiendum? — Curo. — Quo colore eum inficiendum curas? — Colore eum viridi inficiendum curo. — Quo colore tu tibialia tua lintea inficienda curas? — Ego ea albo (candido) colore inficienda curo. — Curatne consobrinus tuus muccinium suum colore inficienda? — Curat (id tingendum). — Ecquid id colore rubro inficiendum curat? — Immo id cano colore inficiendum curat. — Quo colore togas suas inficiendas curavere amici tui? — Colore viridi infici-

endas eas curavere. — Quo colore Itali rhedas suas inficiendas curaverunt? — Curaverunt eas inficiendas cæruleo colore. — Quid pilei habet homo nobilis (eques)? — Duos pileos habet, album et nigrum. — Habeone ego pileum? — Immo diversos habes. — Infecitne jam colore tinctor tuus focale tuum? — Infecit (Tinxit). — Quo colore id tinxit (infecit)? — Flavo colore tinxit (infecit). — Suscipisne aliquando peregrinationes (Facisne nonnunquam itinera)? — Sæpe suscipio (Frequenter facio). — Quo ire (tendere) hac æstate cogitas? — In Germaniam ire (tendere) cogito. — Nonne in Italiam is (tendis)? — Eo (Tendo). — Fecistine aliquando itinera? — Nunquam feci. — Estne amicis tuis propositum in terram Batavorum (in Hollandiam) ire? — Est eis propositum eo ire. — Quando proficisci cogitant? — Perendino die proficisci cogitant. — Profectus jam est frater tuus in Hispaniam? — Nondum eo profectus est. — Esne tu in Hispaniâ peregrinatus? — Vero, ibi peregrinatus sum. — Quando proficisceris? — Crastino tempore (Cras) proficiscor. — Quotâ horâ? — Quintâ (horâ) mane. — Detrivistine usu omnes tuas caligas? — Detrivi, vero, omnes. — Quid fecerunt (fecere) Turcæ? — Naves nostras bonas omnes combusserunt. — Conclusistine omnes tuas litteras? — Ego eas omnes conclusi. — Quousque iter fecisti? — Iter feci usque in Germaniam. — Fecitne ille iter usque in Italiam? — Immo iter fecit usque in Americam. — Quousque ivere (iverunt) Hispani? — Usque Londinum iverunt. — Quousque venit homo iste pauper? — Hucusque (ad hunc usque locum) venit. — Venitne usque domum tuam? — Immo usque in patris mei domum venit.

116. DICTATA CENTESIMA SEXTA DECIMA.

Vocasne me? — Vero, te voco. — Ubi es? — In monte sum (In summo monte sum); venisne sursum (ascendisne)? — Sursum non venio (Non ascendo). — Quo loco tu es (Tu quo loco es)? — Sub radicibus montis sum; visne descendere (num deorsum venire vis)? — Descendere non possum (nequeo, non queo). — Cur non (*or* Quin) descendere potes? — Propterea, quod pedibus ægroto. — Quo loco (Ubi) habitat consobrinus tuus? — Citra flumen habitat. — Ubi (situs) est mons? — (Situs) est trans flumen (fluvium). — Quo loco stat (sita est) amici nostri domus? — Trans (ultra) montem stat (sita est). — Estne amici tui hortus citra silvam, an ultra? —

Ultra est. — Num ultra viam (sita) est cella penaria nostra? — Immo citra sita est. — Quo loco (Ubi) tu hodie mane fuisti? — Ego magno in monte fui. — Quam sæpe (*or* Quoties) montem ascendisti? — Ter ascendi. — Utrum pater noster est infra an supra (*or* in inferiore an in superiore parte)? — Supra (In superiore parte) est. — Ecquid tibi vicini pueri libros tuos reddidere (restituerunt)? — Reddidere (Restituerunt). — Quando tibi eos restituerunt (reddiderunt)? — (Restituerunt eos) heri. — Cui baculum tuum (dono) dedisti? — Dono id dedi viro nobili (*or* equiti). — Cui digitabula sua donaverunt viri nobiles? — Donaverunt ea Anglis (iis Anglos). — Quos Anglorum iis donaverunt? — Eos, quos hodie mane apud me (domi meæ) vidisti. — Quibus hominibus tu pecuniam das? — (Ego do) iis, quibus tu das. — Dasne tu alicui pecuniam? — Do vero iis, qui eā indigent. — Quis te musicam docuit? — Nemo; ego musicam nunquam didici. — Celavitne te frater tuus consilium suum? — Non celavit (celabat). — Rogavitne te aliquid? — Vero, me pecuniam rogavit (rogabat). — Quid te peregrinus percontatus est (percontabatur)? — Me viam percontatus est (percontabatur). — Quem tu præceptorem habuisti? — Ego præceptores habui unum Anglum et alterum Germanum.

117. DICTATA CENTESIMA SEPTIMA DECIMA.

Accepistine munera (dona)? — Accepi nonnulla. — Quid donorum (munera) accepisti? — Pulchra dona (munuscula) accepi. — Accepitne fraterculus tuus aliquid dono? — Diversa munera (dona) accepit. — A quo accepit? — Accepit nonnulla a patre meo et a tuo. — Venisne tu ex hortis? — Non ex hortis, verum domo venio. — Quorsum is? — In hortos eo. — Unde (Ex quo loco) venit Hibernus? — Ex hortis venit. — Venitne ex iisdem hortis, ex quibus (unde) tu venis (venias)? — Non ex iisdem venit. — Quibus ex hortis venit? — Venit ex illis amici nostri veteris. — Unde venit puer tuus? — De spectaculo (theatro) venit. — Quanti pretii est ille currus? — Quingentorum thalerum est (Quingentis thaleris valet). — Valetne hicce liber tanti, quanti ille? — Immo pluris valet. — Quanti pretii equus meus est (Quanti equus meus valet)? — Tanti valet (est), quanti ille amici tui. — Tantine valent equi tui, quanti illi Francogallorum? — Non tanti valent (Minoris pretii sunt). — Quanti pretii est iste

culter? — Nullius pretii est (Nihilo valet). — Estne servus tuus tanti, quanti meus? — Immo melior tuo est (Melior est, quam tuus). — Esne tu tanti, quanti frater tuus? — Immo ille melior (pluris) est, quam ego. — Esne tanti, quanti consobrinus tuus? — Tanti sum. — Ecquid nos tanti sumus, quanti vicini nostri (sunt)? — Immo pluris (meliores) sumus. — Num umbraculum tuum tanti valet (est), quanti meum? — Minoris valet (est). — Cur non tanti est, quanti meum? — Propterea, quia non æque elegans est, quam (ac, atque) tuum. — Visne equum tuum vendere? — Volo eum vendere. — Quanti pretii est? — Ducentorum florenorum est (Ducentis florenis valet). — Cupisne (eum) emere? — Non, ego jam unum emi. — Cogitatne pater tuus equum (aliquem) emere? — Cogitat quidem unum emere, sed non tuum.

118. DICTATA CENTESIMA DUODEVICESIMA.

Erasne heri in domo medici? — Eram in domo ejus. — Quid dicit (ait)? — Dicit, se non venire posse. — Cur non (Quin) mittit filium suum? — Filius ejus in publicum non prodit. — Cur non in publicum prodit? — Quia ægrotus est. — Habuistine (Habebasne) marsupium meum? — Affirmo tibi, me id non habuisse. — Vidistine id? — (Id) vidi. — Ubi est? — In sellâ jacet (posita est). — Habuistine meum cultrum? — Affirmo tibi, me eum habuisse. — Ubi eum posuisti? — Posui eum in mensâ (Imposui eum mensæ). — Visne eum quærere? — (Ego eum) jam quæsivi. — Reperistine (eum)? — (Eum) non reperi. — Quæsivistine digitabula mea? — Quæsivi quidem, sed ea non reperi. — Habetne servus tuus pileum meum? — Habuit eum, sed non amplius (non jam) habet. — Extersitne eum penicillo? — Extersit. — Suntne libri mei super mensâ tuâ? — Sunt (Positi sunt) super eâ. — Estne tibi vinum? — Non est mihi nisi pauxillum, sed (tamen) tibi dare volo, quod habeam. — Visne mihi aquam dare? — Dare tibi non nolo. — Habesne multum vini? — Multum habeo. — Visne mihi aliquantum ejus dare? — Volo tibi (ejus aliquantum) dare. — Quantum (pecuniæ) tu mihi debes? — Nihil tibi debeo. — Perbenigne! *or* Facis amice! — Oportetne me afferre vinum? — Oportet aliquantum afferas. — Oportetne ego eam saltatum? — Necesse est eas. — Quo tempore (Quando) me ire oportet? — Te ire oportet hodie vesperi. — Oportetne me arcessere fabrum tignarium? —

Oportet eum arcessas. — Necessene est ire in forum? — Necesse est eo ire. — Quid faciendum est, ut linguam Russicam discamus (ut aliquis ling. Russ. discat*)? — Opus est multâ diligentiâ. — Opusne est multâ diligentiâ, ut linguam Germanicam discamus (ut aliquis ling. Germ. discat)? — Opus est multâ. — Quid mihi faciendum est? — Emendus tibi est liber bonus (Te librum bonum emere oportet *or* Necesse est emas librum bonum). — Quid ei faciendum est? — Necesse est sedeat quietus (Oportet eum sedere quiete). — Quid nobis faciendum est? — Laborandum est vobis. — Estne tibi multum laborandum, ut linguam Arabicam discas? — Multum mihi laborandum est, ut eam discam. — Non laborat frater tuus? — Deest ei voluntas laborandi. — Habetne ad sumptum (*or* unde vivat)? — Habet. — Cur me in forum ire oportet (Quam ob rem eundum est mihi in forum)? — Te eo ire oportet, ut bubulam emas. — Cur mihi operandum est? — Operandum tibi est, ut ad sumptum habeas. — Quid vis (Quid tibi opus est), domine? — Pannum opto (Opus est mihi panno). — Quanti pretii est ille pileus? — Tribus thaleris valet. — Opusne tibi sunt tibialia? — Opus sunt mihi aliquot. — Quanti pretii sunt illa tibialia? — Duodecim kreutzeris valent. — Non est tibi opus nisi hoc (Numquid aliud vis)? — Non est mihi opus nisi hoc (Aliud nihil cupio). — Non tibi calcei opus sunt? — Non mihi ulli opus sunt. — Egesne multâ pecuniâ? — Multâ egeo. — Quantum tibi ejus opus est (Quantum ejus habeas necesse est)? — Opus sunt mihi sex thaleri (Necesse est habeam sex thaleros). — Quantum fratri tuo opus est? — Non ei opus sunt nisi sex grossi (Sex tantum grossis eget). — Non est ei opus plus (Non majore, *sc.* pecuniâ, indiget)? — Non est ei opus plus (Majore non indiget). — Indigetne consobrinus tuus majore pecuniâ (Estne consobrino tuo opus plus)? — Non tantâ eget, quantâ ego (Non opus est ei tantum, quantum mihi). — Quid tibi opus est? — Opus sunt mihi pecunia et calcei (Pecuniâ et calceis indigeo). — Habesne nunc, quod tibi opus sit (quæ tibi opus sint)? — Habeo, quod mihi opus est (quæ mihi opus sunt). — Habetne frater tuus, quæ ei opus sint? — Habet, quæ ei opus sint (sunt).

* Compare Grammar, page 330, *D.*

119. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNDEVICESIMA.

Habemus nos, quod nobis opus sit (est)? — Non habemus, quod nobis opus sit (est). — Quid nobis opus est? — Opus est nobis domo pulchrā, hortis amplis, rhedā formosā, equis bellis (venustis), diversis (*or* aliquot) servis, multāque pecuniā. — Non est nobis opus nisi hoc? — Nihil nobis opus est nisi hoc. — Quid mihi faciendum est? — Scribenda tibi est epistola. — Ad quem epistola mihi danda est? — Danda est tibi epistola ad amicum tuum. — Eundumne est mihi in forum? — Licet tibi eo ire. — Visne patri tuo dicere, me hic eum expectare (opperiri)? — Volo ei dicere (nuntiare). — Quid patri tuo dicere (nuntiare) vis? — Dicere (nuntiare) ei volo, te hic eum expectare (opperiri). — Quid famulo meo dicere vis? — Dicere ei volo, te epistolam tuam conclusisse. — Solvistine pretium mensæ tuæ (pro mensā tuā)? — Solvi (pro eo). — Solvitne patruus tuus libri pretium (pro libro suo)? — Solvit (pro eo). — Solvine ego sartori pretium vestium mearum (pro vestimentis meis)? — Solvisti (ei pro iis). — Num tu mercatori pretium equi solvisti? — Nondum solvi. — Solvimusne pro digitabulis nostris? — Vero, (pro iis) solvimus. — Ecquid jam solvit consobrinus tuus pro caligis suis (pretium caligarum suarum)? — Nondum solvit (pro iis). — Solvitne tibi frater meus, quod tibi debet (debeat)? — Solvit. — Solvisne, quod debeas (debes)? — Vero, solvo, quod debeo (Debita *or* debitum solvo). — Solvistine pistori (*or acc.*, pistarem)? — Vero, ei (*or* eum) solvi. — Solvitne patruus (avunculus) tuus lanio pro carne (*or* carnis pretium)? — Solvit (ei pro eā). — Solvistine famulo tuo operæ pretium (*or* mercedem suam)? — Solvi. — Ecquid tibi solvit dominus tuus mercedem? — Solvit (mihi eam). — Quando tibi eam solvit? — (Solvit mihi eam) nudius tertius. — Quid ab hocce homine postulas (petis)? — Postulo ab eo librum meum. — Quid me puer iste rogat? — Te pecuniam rogat (mendīcat). — Rogasne me aliquid (Ecquid tu a me petis)? — Te unum thalerum rogo (Peto a te unum thalerum). — Rogasne me panem (Postulasne a me panem)? — Rogo (te eum). — Rogantne te pauperes pecuniam? — Vero, me aliquantulum rogant (mendicant). — Quem hominem tu pecuniam rogas (A quo tu pecuniam petis *or* postulas)? — Ego illum, quem tu rogas, aliquantulum rogo (Peto ab eo, a quo tu petis).

120. DICTATA CENTESIMA VICESIMA.

A quo tu saccharum postulavisti (Quem saccharum rogavisti)? — A mercatore aliquantum postulavi (Mercatorem rogavi). — Quem pecuniam rogaverunt (mendicaverunt) pauperes? — Homines nobiles nonnihil rogaverunt (mendicaverunt). — Quos hominum nobilium rogaverunt? — Eos, quos novisti, aliquantum rogaverunt. — Cui tu carnis pretium solvis (pro carne solvis)? — Ego laniis solvo (Laniis pro eā solvo). — Cui frater tuus caligarum pretium solvit (pro caligis solvit)? — Sutori (Sutorem) solvit. — Quem nos pro pane solvimus (Cui nos panis pretium solvimus)? — Pistorem nostrum pro eo solvimus (Pistori nostro solvimus). — De quo locuti sunt homines? — De amico nostro locuti sunt. — Ecquid loquuntur homines de libro meo? — Vero, loquuntur. — Quā de re nos loquimur? — De bello loquimur (colloquimur). — Vosne non de pace loquimini? — Non loquimur (colloquimur) de eā. — Probasne discipulos tuos? — Probo (Eos approbo). — Quot annos habes? — Vix decem annos habeo. — Ecquid frater tuus Latine (linguam Latinam) scit? — Non scit. — Cur (eam) non scit (Cur ejus non sciens est)? — Propterea, quod eam non didicit. — Cur eam non didicit? — Quia otium (spatium, tempus) ei defuit. — Estne pater tuus domi (Domine est pater tuus, *or* Num domi est pater tuus)? — Non est; in Angliam profectus est. — Cogitasne hac æstate in Italiam ire (proficisci)? — Cogito eo ire (proficisci). — Estne tibi propositum morari ibi longum tempus? — Mihi per æstatem morari propositum est. — Quam dudum (Quo usque) frater tuus domi manet (se domi tenet)? — Usque ad horam duodecimam (ad meridiem). — Curastine digitabula tua colore inficienda? — Vero, (ea inficienda) curavi. — Quo colore ea inficienda (tingenda) curavisti? — Ego ea colore fusco inficienda curavi. — Visne patri tuo dicere (nuntiare), me hic fuisse (me adfuisse)? — Volo ei dicere (nuntiare). — Non vis opperiri (expectare), dum (donec *or* quoad) revertatur? — Opperiri non possum (nequeo).

121. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNA ET VICESIMA.

Jamne cœnavisti? — Nondum cœnavi. — Quā (Quotā) horā cœnas (cœnare soles)? — Ego horā sextā cœno (cœnare

soleo). — Apud quem cœnas? — Apud unum (*or* aliquem) de amicis meis cœno (cœnare soleo). — Apud quem (Quocum) heri cœnavisti? — Ego apud aliquem de cognatis meis cœnavi. — Quid edistis (manducavistis)? — Nos bonum panem, bubulam, mala, atque panificia (placentas) manducavimus (edimus). — Quid bibistis? — Bonum vinum, bonam cerevisiam, et bonum ex malis confectum vinum bibimus (potavimus). — Apud quem cœnat hodie patruus tuus? — Apud nos cœnat. — Quotā horā cibum vespertinum sumit pater tuus? — (Cibum vespertinum sumit) horā nonā. — Sumisne tu cibum vespertinum maturius, quam ille? — Immo ego serius (tardius), quam ille, cibum vespertinum sumere soleo. — Quotā horā jentas? — Horā decimā jento. — Quotā horā sumpsistis heri cibum vespertinum? — Nos cibum vespertinum sero sumpsimus. — Quid edistis? — Paulum tantum carnis et frustulum panis edimus (Non manducavimus nisi pauxillum carnis et frustulum panis). — Quando sumpsit frater tuus cibum vespertinum? — Cibum vespertinum post patrem meum sumpsit. — Quo is (*or* Tu quo is)? — Eo ad unum ex cognatis meis, ut cum eo jentem (Jentatum eo ad unum de cognatis meis). — Cœnatisne mature? — Immo vero tarde (sero) cœnamus (cœnare solemus). — Visne digitabula mea manu tenere? — Volo ea tenere. — Quis pileum tuum manu tenuit? — Servus meus eum tenuit. — Visne conari loqui (*or* ut loquare)? — Conari non nolo. — Tentavitne fraterculus tuus aliquando pensa imperata peragere (*or* dictata scribere)? — Tentavit. — Tun' aliquando (*or* unquam) pileum conficere tentavisti? — Nunquam ego ullum conficere tentavi. — Num nos illam cerevisiam gustavimus? — Nondum gustavimus. — Quod vinum tu gustare vis? — Gustare volo id, quod tu gustavisti. — Gustaveruntne Poloni vinum illud adustum? — Gustaverunt. — Multumne de eo biberunt? — Non multum ejus (de eo) biberunt. — Visne hoc tabacum gustare? — Ego id jam jam gustavi. — Quale tibi videtur? — Videtur mihi bonum esse. — Quin illud ex malis confectum vinum gustas? — Quia non sitio (non sum sitiens). — Quid est tibi nomen? — Nomen mihi est Carolus (Carolo, Caroli). — Quid est patri tuo nomen? — Est ei nomen Wilhelmus. — Non est ei nomen Fredericus (Frederico, Frederici)? — Non, verum Jacobus (*or* Jacobus est). — Estne hoc tibi honori? — Immo vero mihi dedecori est.

122. DICTATA CENTESIMA ALTERA ET VICESIMA.

Quem quæris? — Hominem quæro, qui mihi equum vendidit. — Quæritne cognatus tuus aliquem? — Quærit vero unum (*or* aliquem) ex notis suis. — Quærimusne nos aliquem? — Quærimus unum de vicinis nostris. — Quem tu (Tu quem) quæris? — Ego aliquem de nostris amicis quæro. — Quærisne unum (aliquem) ex servis meis? — Immo vero ego unum ex meis quæro. — Conatusne es ad avunculum (patruum) tuum loqui? — Conatus sum ad eum loqui. — Tentavistine patrem meum videre (visere)? — Tentavi eum videre (visere). — Potuistine eum videre (Fuitne tibi potestas ejus videndi)? — Non potui eum videre (Videre eum non quivi *or* nequivi). — Quem quæris? — Ego patrem meum quæro. — Quem tu quæris? — Ego sartorem quæro. — Quæritne hic homo aliquem? — Vero, te quærit. — Ecquid te quærunt? — Vero, me quærunt. — Mene quærunt? — Non te, verum (sed) aliquem de amicis tuis quærunt. — Quærisne medicum? — Vero, eum quæro. — Quid a me petis (postulas)? — Peto a te aliquid carnis (Te carnem rogo *or* postulo). — Quid me fraterculus tuus rogat? — Rogat te aliquantulum vini et aquæ. — Rogasne (Postulasne *or* Poscisne) me plagulam chartæ? — Te unam rogo. — Quot plagulas chartæ amicus tuus postulat? — Duas postulat. — Postulasne me libellum? — Postulo. — Quid rogavit (postulavit) consobrinus tuus? — Mala aliquot et frustulum panis postulavit. — Nondumne jentavit? — Vero, jam jentavit, sed tamen etiam nunc esurit. — Quid avunculus tuus poscit (postulat)? — Scyphum vini postulat. — Quid postulat Polonus? — Scyphulum vini adusti postulat. — Adhuc non bibit? — Vero, jam bibit quidem, verum tamen sitit etiam nunc.

123. DICTATA CENTESIMA VICESIMA TERTIA.

Cernisne (Notasne) hominem venientem (*or* qui venit)? — Non cerno (noto). — Quid cernis (notas)? — Ego montem magnum et ædiculam cerno (observo) — Non silvam quoque cernis (percipis)? — Cerno vero et eam (Eam quoque percipio). — Notasne homines, qui in hortos ineunt? — Non cerno (noto) eos, qui in hortos ineunt, verum illos, qui ad

forum eunt. — Videsne hominem, cui ego pecuniam commodavi? — Non video eum, cui tu commodavisti, sed illum, qui tibi commodavit. — Notavistine (Observastine) domum parentium meorum? — Notavi. — Gaudesne (Delectarisne) pileo amplo? — Ego non pileo amplo, sed umbraculo magno delector. — Quid facere amas (delectaris)? — Scribere amo (delector). — Videsne puerculos illos lubens (Amasne videre puerculos illos)? — Vero, lubens eos video (Amo eos videre). — Appetisne cervisiam (Delectarisne *or* Amasne bibere cervisiam)? — Appeto (Bibere delector). — Num frater tuus vinum ex malis confectum appetit? — Non appetit. — Quid appetunt milites? — Vinum et aquam appetunt (bibere delectantur). — Utrum tu vinum appetis an aquam? — Utrumque (*or* ambo) appeto (*or* amo). — Gaudentne hi liberi studiis litterarum? — Gaudent vero et studiis litterarum et ludis (Gaudent non minus litteris studere, quam ludere). — Juvatne te legere et scribere? — Juvat me et legere et scribere (Gaudeo et legendo et scribendo). — Quam sæpe (Quoties) in die tu cibum sumere soles? — Quater. — Quotiens in die liberi tui bibunt (bibere solent)? — Iterum ac sæpius in die bibere solent. — Bibisne tam sæpe, quam (atque) illi? — Immo ego sæpius bibo. — Quoties in anno saltatum ire solet consobrinus tuus? — Bis in anno ire solet. — Isne tu tam sæpe, quam ille? — Ego nunquam eo. — Itne coquus tuus sæpe in forum? — Vero, eo it quotidie mane. — Isne sæpe ad avunculum meum (in domum avunculi mei)? — Eo ad eum (in domum ejus) sexies in anno. — Appetisne altilia? — Amo vero altilia, sed non appeto pisces. — Quid tu appetis? — Ego frustum panis et scyphum vini appeto (amo). — Quid piscium appetit frater tuus? — Esoces appetit. — Mandasne aliquid memoriæ? — Memoriæ mandare non delector. — Ecquid discipuli tui memoriæ committere delectantur? — Amant quidem operam dare litteris, sed memoriæ mandare non (minime) delectantur. — Quot in die pensa imperata peragunt (scribunt)? — Duo tantum peragunt (scribunt), sed ea bene peragunt. — Appetisne coffeam an theam? — Utrumque appeto (amo). — Legisne litteras (epistolam), quas (quam) ego ad te misi (dedi)? — Lego. — Comprehendisne eas (eam)? — Comprehendo. — Intelligisne hominem, qui tecum loquitur? — Non intelligo. — Cur eum non intelligis? — Eum idcirco non intelligo, quia nimis male loquitur. — Accepistine epistolam? — Accepi unam. — Visne ad eam rescribere (respondere)? — Rescripturus sum ad eam.

124. DICTATA CENTESIMA VICESIMA QUARTA.

Cogitasne hodie vesperi in theatrum ire? — Cogito inire, si tu (quoque) is. — Propositumne est patri tuo equum illum emere? — Est ei propositum eum emere, si pecuniam suam accipit (accipiat). — Propositumne est consobrino tuo in Angliam ire? — Propositum ei est eo ire, si ei solvunt (solvitur), quod ei debeant (debeatur). — Cogitasne saltatum ire? — Cogito eo ire, si amicus meus it. — Cogitatne frater tuus operam dare linguæ Germanicæ? — Operam ei dare cogitat, si doctorem bonum invenit (inveniat). — Qualis est tempestas hodie (hodierna)? — Tempestas egregia est (Sudum *or* serenissimum cœlum est). — Sudumne erat cœlum hesternum? — Immo vero mala erat heri tempestas. — Qualis erat cœli status hodie mane? — Malus erat, nunc autem cœlum serenum est. — Estne tempestas calida? — Vero, præcalida est. — Non frigida est tempestas? — Non frigida est. — Calidane tempestas est, an frigida? — Nec calida nec frigida est. — Ivistine rus nudius tertius? — Non (eo) ivi. — Cur eo non ivisti? — Eo non ivi propterea, quia mala erat tempestas. — Cogitasne cras rus ire? — Cogito eo ire, si tempestas bona (opportuna) est. — Clarumne est cubiculum tuum? — Non clarum est. — Visne in meo laborare (operari)? — Volo in eo (*or* ibi) laborare. — Estne clarum (ibi)? — Vero, admodum clarum est. — Potesne laborare (operari) in cubiculo tuo parvulo? — Laborare ibi non possum. — Cur non ibi laborare potes? — Laborare ibi ideo non possum, quia (*or* quod) nimis obscurum (cœcum) est. — Ubi nimis obscurum est? — In cubiculo meo parvo (Cubiculum meum parvum). — Clarumne est illud foramen? — Immo vero obscurum (tenebricosum, cœcum) est. — Siccæne sunt viæ? — Immo humidæ sunt. — Humidane est tempestas? — (Tempestas) non humida est. — Estne sicca cœli qualitas? — Vero, nimis sicca est. — Lucetne luna? — Luna (non lucet), humida est cœli qualitas. — Cur cœli qualitas sicca est? — Propterea, quod nimium solis et terra imbrium expers est. — Quando tu rus is? — Cogito eo ire cras, si tempestas serena est (sit), et si non (*or* nisi) pluit (pluat). — De quā re loquitur patruus tuus? — De tempestate serenā (De sudo cœlo) loquitur. — Loquiminine vos de pluviā (de imbribus)? — Loquimur (de eā *or* de iis). — Quā de re loquuntur illi homines? — De tempestate serenā et malā colloquuntur. — Nonne de vento (de ventis) col-

loquuntur? — Etiam, de eo quoque colloquuntur. — Numquid tu de patruo meo loqueris? — Non de eo loquor. — De quo loqueris? — Ego de te et de parentibus tuis loquor. — Quærisne aliquem? — Avunculum tuum quæro; estne domi (domine est)? — Non, apud amicum suum optimum (apud amicissimum suum) est.

125. DICTATA CENTESIMA VICESIMA QUINTA.

Didicitne (Discebatne) consobrinus tuus linguam Germanicam? — Immo adeo in morbum incidit, ut eam discere non posset (*or* non potuerit). — Didicitne eam frater tuus? — Carebat magistro (doctore) bono, ut eam discere non posset. — Isne tu saltatum hodie vesperi? — Ægroto pedibus, ut (eo) ire non possim (Ego tam (ita *or* sic) pedibus ægroto, ut non ire possim). — Intellexistine, quod Anglus ille dixit (dicebat)? — Ego linguæ Anglicæ non peritus sum (Anglice non scio), ut intelligere non potuerim. — Ecquid tu equum illum emisti? — Pecuniâ adeo carebam, ut (eum) emere non possem. — Isne rus pedibus (Pedibusne iter facis rus)? — Deest mihi pilentum, ut mihi pedibus ire necesse sit. — Vidistine hominem, a quo ego donum accepi? — (Eum) non vidi. — Vidistine equum formosum, de quo ego tecum colloquebar (collocutus sum)? — Vidi. — Viditne patruus tuus eos libros, de quibus tu cum eo sermonem habuisti (habebas)? — (Eos) vidit. — Num tu hominem vidisti, cujus liberi pœnâ affecti sunt? — (Eum) non vidi. — Quocum sermonem habebas, quum in theatro esses? — Sermonem habebam cum homine, cujus frater canem meum formosum necavit. — Vidistine puerculum, cujus pater factus est causidicus (jurisconsultus)? — (Eum) vidi. — Quem in saltatione vidisti? — Homines ibi vidi (videbam), quorum equos et pilentum tu emisti. — Quem nunc vides? — Hominem video, cujus servus speculum meum confregit. — Ecquid tu hominem audivisti (audisti), cujus amicus mihi pecuniam commodavit? — Non audivi (audii). — Quem audivisti? — Ego centurionem Francogallicum, cujus filius mihi amicus est, audivi (audii). — Extersistine penicillo togam, de quâ ego ad te locutus sum (*or* loquebar)? — Nondum (adhuc non) extersi. — Accepisti pecuniam, quâ tibi opus erat (esset)? — (Eam) accepi. — Habeone (ego) chartam, quâ indigeo? — Habes. — Habetne frater tuus libros, quibus ei opus erat? — Habet. — Habuis-

tisne sermonem cum mercatoribus, quorum tabernam nos conduximus? — Habuimus (sermonem cum iis). — Locutusne es ad medicum, cujus filius operam dedit linguæ Germanicæ? — Locutus sum ad eum. — Vidistine homines (illos) pauperes, quorum domus deflagratæ (igni deletæ *or* absumptæ) sunt? — (Eos) vidi. — Perlegistisne libros, quos tibi commodavimus? — Perlegimus. — Quid de iis dicitis (sentitis)? — Optimos eos libros esse dicimus (affirmamus). — Habentne liberi tui id, quod eis opus sit? — Habent quod (quodcunque) eis opus est.

126. DICTATA CENTESIMA VICESIMA SEXTA.

De quo homine tu loqueris? — Loquor de illo, cujus frater inter milites relatus est (factus est miles). — De quibus liberis locutus es (loquebaris)? — Locutus sum (Loquebar) de iis, quorum parentes docti sunt. — Quem librum legisti? — Illum legi, de quo tecum heri colloquebar. — Quam chartam tenet consobrinus tuus? — Illam, quæ ei opus est (*or* quā indiget), tenet. — Quos pisces edit (manducavit)? — Eos, quos tu non appetis, edit. — Quibus libris eges (tibi opus est)? — Iis egeo, de quibus tu ad me locutus es. — Num eges iis, quos ego lego? — (Iis) non egeo. — Ecquis (Numquis) togis illis eget, de quibus sartor meus mecum collocutus est (*or* colloquebatur)? — Nemo iis eget (indiget). — Num liberos vides, quibus ego panificia dedi? — Eos non video. — Quibus liberis panificia danda sunt (dari oportet)? — Danda sunt (Dari oportet) iis, qui litteris bene student, et qui obedientes beneque morati sunt. — Quibus tu hominibus das, quod edant et bibant (ad edendum et bibendum)? — Illis, qui esuriunt et sitiunt. — Quorsum ille cursum suum direxit? — Cursum suum Vindobonam versus direxit (Iter movit Vindobonam versus). — Ubi (Quo loco) habitabas, quum ego Berolini essem? — Monaci habitabam. — Ubi (Quo loco) erat pater tuus, quum tu Basiliæ esses? — Argentorati erat. — Erasne in Hispaniā tum, quum ego ibi eram (essem)? *or* Erasne in Hispaniā eodem tempore mecum? — Non eram ibi illo tempore; in Italiā eram. — Quo tempore jentabas, cum in Germaniā esses? — Jentabam, quum pater meus jentabat (jentare solebat *or* soleret). — Num venire potest hodie medicus? — Venire non potest (nequit); nam ipse ægrotus est. — Estne verum, unumquemque hominum aut bonum aut malum esse? — Verum est. — Hoc

pensum aut scribendum aut ediscendum est. — Nunquam nobis laudandi sunt illi, qui vel nequam vel ignavi sunt (sint). — Venitne ille domum tuam heri vesperi? — Capitis dolore adeo laborabat, ut venire non posset.

127. DICTATA CENTESIMA VICESIMA SEPTIMA.

Cogitasne unum pilentum emere? — Non possum unum emere; nam pecuniam meam adhuc non (*or* nondum) accepi. — Eundumne est mihi in theatrum? — Non tibi ineundum est; est enim mala tempestas. — Cur non is ad fratrem meum? — Nequeo ad eum ire (Ad eum ire non possum); nam solvere ei, quam ei debeo pecuniam, nondum possum (*or* pecuniam debitam ei solvere nondum queo *or* possum). — Quam ob rem hic præfectus militaris hominem istum gladio suo punctim vulnerat? — Gladio suo eum punctim vulnerat propterea, quod homo ei pugnum impegit. — Uter discipulorum colloqui incipit? — Qui (= Is, qui) assiduus (sedulus) est, colloqui incipit. — Quid facit alter, qui minus est? — Is quoque colloqui (*or* loqui) incipit, sed nec legere nec scribere potest. — Non observat ea, quæ tu ei dicis (imperas)? — Non observat (*or* curat), nisi eum verbero (verberibus cædo). — Quid facere solet, quum ad eum loqueris? — Post furnum sedet non verbum faciens. — Quo currit canis? — Post ædes (domum) currit. — Quid faciebat, quum eum verberabas (verberares)? — Latravit et post (pone versus) furnum cucurrit (cursu tetendit). — Cur patruus tuus canem illum miserum calce percutit? — Propterea, quod puerculum suum morsu vulneravit. — Quid causæ est, cur servus tuus aufugerit? — Ego eum (ita) verberibus castigavi (*or simply* verberavi *or* pulsavi), ut aufugerit (*or* aufugeret). — Quin illi liberi laborant? — Magister eorum eis colaphos impegit, ut laborare nolint. — Quam ob rem iis colaphos impegit? — Quia non obedientes erant. — Emisistine ictum sclopeto? — Vero, ictum emisi ter (ter sonum edidi). — Quem petiisti? — Petivi avem in arbore sedentem. — Petivistine hominem illum sclopeto? — Petivi eum sclopeto minoris modi. — Cur eum sclopeto minoris modi petiisti? — Propterea, quod me gladio punctim vulneravit. — Esne tu cupidus contentionis? — Non (ejus) cupidus sum. — Ego litterarum Latinarum perstudiosus sum. — Quid causæ est, quod frater tuus non laboret? — Quia laboris

insuetus est. — Visne illius hominis similis esse (*or* te illius hominis similem esse)? — Similis ejus esse non cupio. — Fuitne (Eratne) Cyrus par Alexandri? — Par ejus non fuit. — Num est pater tuus juris peritus? — Non est peritus. — Estne urbs referta peregrinorum? — Vero, referta est. — Quis Romanorum eloquentiæ princeps fuit? — Cicero (princeps fuit). — Esne tu amans patriæ tuæ? — Etiam, ejus amantissimus sum. — Patiensne es inediæ atque frigoris (frigorisque)? — Immo vero (eorum) impatiens sum. — Estne ille laudis appetens? — Est ejus appetentissimus. — Quid (*or* Quales) nos esse oportet? — Nos intelligentiæ virtutisque sitientes esse oportet.

128. DICTATA CENTESIMA DUODETRICESIMA.

Apportavistine mihi librum, quem mihi promisisti? — (Apportare eum) oblitus sum. — Attulitne tibi patruus tuus, quæ tibi pollicitus est, muccinia? — Oblitus est mihi ea afferre. — Dedistine jam litteras ad amicum tuum? — Nondum mihi fuit otium ad litteras (ad eum) dandas. — Num ad parentes tuos litteras mittere oblitus es? — Litteras ad eos mittere non oblitus sum. — Cujus est hæc domus? — Centurionis Anglici est, cujus filius epistolam ad nos dedit (misit). — Estne hæc pecunia tua? — Mea est. — A quo eam accepisti? — (Accepi eam) ab homine, cujus liberos vidisti. — Cujus sunt silvæ illæ? — Regis sunt. — Cujus illi equi sunt? — Nostri sunt. — Dixistine (Nuntiavistine) fratri tuo, me hic (hoc loco) eum expectare (manere)? — Dicere (nuntiare) ei oblitus sum. — Estne ille filius tuus? — Non meus est; amici mei est. — Ubi (Quo loco) tuus est? — Dresdæ est. — Convenitne tibi iste pannus? — Mihi non convenit (non placet, non probatur); non alium habes? — Ego alium quidem habeo, sed carior hocce est. — Visne mihi eum ostendere? — Volo tibi eum ostendere. — Ecquid hæ caligæ avunculo tuo conveniunt (placent)? — (Ei) non conveniunt (placent), quia nimis caræ (*or* cariores) sunt (sint). — Suntne hæ caligæ illæ, de quibus tu nobiscum collocutus es? — Eædem sunt. — Convenitne tibi nobiscum ire? — (Mihi) non convenit. — Decetne te in forum ire? — Vero, me decet eo ire (Me eo ire non dedecet). — Ivistine tu rus pedibus? — Me non decet (Dedecet me) pedibus ire, ut eo rhedâ vectus sim (veherer).

129. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNDETRICESIMA.

Quid tibi collibet (Quid imperas), domine? — Patrem tuum quæro. — Domine est (Estne domi)? — Non vero, domine, foris est. — Visne expectare (opperiri), dum (donec, quoad) revertatur? — Non est mihi tempus (spatium) ad expectandum. — Venditne hic mercator die cæcâ (pecuniâ non numeratâ)? — Vendit vero pecuniâ non præsenti. — Convenitne tibi emere pecuniâ præsenti (numeratâ)? — (Mihi) non convenit (non placet). — Ubi tu cultros istos bellos emisti? — Emi eos de mercatore, cujus tabernam tu heri vidisti (videbas). — Venditne tibi eos pecuniâ non præsenti (die cæcâ)? — Immo mihi eos pecuniâ numeratâ vendidit. — Ecquid tu sæpe (frequenter) pecuniâ numerata (præsenti) emis? — Non tam sæpe, quam tu. — Oblitus es hic aliquid (Ecquid hic oblitus es)? — Nihil oblitus sum. — Conveniſne (Placetne) tibi ediscere (memoriæ mandare *or* committere) hoc? — Bonâ memoriâ non instructus (*or* præditus) sum, ut memoriæ aliquid committere mihi non conveniat. — Processitne tibi epistola scribenda (Contigitne tibi, ut litteras scribas)? — Processit (Contigit). — Contigitne mercatoribus illis, ut equos suos venderent? — Non contigit. — Tentavistine atramentarium meum emundare (*or* ut atram. meum emundes)? — Tentavi quidem, sed non (parum *or* minus) processit (successit). — Proceduntne liberi tui in linguâ Anglicâ discendâ? — Procedunt vero feliciter (prospere). — Estne (Inestne) vinum hoc in dolio? — Inest (in eo aliquantum). — Numquid vini hoc in scypho est? — Non (nihil) inest. — Utrum inest vinum an aqua? — Non inest neque vinum neque aqua. — Quid inest? — Acetum (inest). — Ecqui sunt homines in cubiculo tuo? — Insunt vero nonnulli. — Numquis in cellâ penariâ est (inest)? — Nemo inest. — Fueruntne (Erantne) multi homines in theatro? — Multi ibi fuerunt (inerant). — Multine sunt liberi, qui ludere nolint? — Multi quidem sunt, qui litteris studere (operam dare) nolint, sed pauci, qui ludere nolint. — Emundavistine riscum meum? — Tentavi vero facere hoc, sed minus (*or* non) processit. — Cogitasne unum umbraculum emere? — Cogito unum emere, si mercator id mihi pecuniâ non numeratâ vendit (verdere vult). — Num meum retinere cogitas? — Immo vero ego id tibi reddere cogito, si unum emo (emam).

130. DICTATA CENTESIMA TRICESIMA.

Quotiens tu avem (volucrem) illam sclopeto petiisti? — Ego eam bis petivi. — Occidistine eam? — Vero, eam secundo ictu occidi. — Occidistine avem (*or* volucrem) illam primo ictu? — Immo eam quarto ictu occidi. — Petisne telo ignifero aves, quas super domibus, an illas, quas in hortulis vides (conspicis)? — Ego non peto neque eas, quas super domibus, neque eas, quas in hortulis video, sed illas, quas in arboribus observo. — Quoties (Quam sæpe) nos telis igniferis petiverunt hostes? — Petierunt nos semel atque iterum (iterum ac sæpius). — Ecquem (Num quem) occiderunt? — Nullum occiderunt. — Cupisne volucrem illam telo ignifero (*or* sclopeto) petere? — Cupio eam petere. — Cur non volucres illas sclopeto petis? — (Facere) non possum; nam pulvere pyrio careo. — Quot volucres sclopeto petiisti? — Petivi omnes, quas (*or* quascunque) oculis percepi; nullam tamen occidi; nam pulvis (pyrius) meus nequam erat. — Conjecistine oculos in illum hominem? — Vero, conjeci (oculos in eum). — Viditne (Notavitne) te patruus tuus? — Ego eum præterii, et tamen ille me non vidit (videbat *or* notabat); laborat enim oculorum infirmitate. — Fecitne tibi vir ille dolorem (Nocuitne tibi ille vir)? — Minime, domine; dolorem mihi nullum fecit (mihi non nocuit). — Quid faciendum est alicui, ut ametur (*or* nobis, ut amemur)? — Tribuenda sunt (nobis) beneficia iis, qui nobis injuriam intulerunt. — Nosne vobis unquam injuriam (detrimentum) intulimus? — Immo nobis potius beneficia tribuistis (nos beneficiis ornavistis). — Num cui injuriam infers (Numquid tu cuiquam noces)? — Nulli ego injuriam infero (Nemini nocere soleo). — Quid causæ est, cur tu his liberis dolorem (*or* ægre) feceris? — Ego iis nullum dolorem feci. — Effecine ego tibi dolorem? — Non tu, sed liberi tui, mihi dolorem fecisti. — Quid tibi doloris fecerunt (Quid injuriæ tibi intulerunt)? — Me in hortum rapuerunt (abripuerunt), ut me verberarent (*or* verberibus cæderent). — Ecquid te verberibus ceciderunt (verberaverunt)? — Me non ceciderunt; nam aufugi. — Estne frater tuus, qui filio meo nocuit? — Minime, domine, frater meus non est; nam is nemini unquam nocuit. — Bibistine de illo vino (Ecquid de vino illo bibisti)? — Bibi de eo, et mihi profuit (utile fuit, conducebat). — Quid tu de libro meo fecisti? — Imposui eum mensæ (in mensâ). — Ubi nunc jacet (posita

est)? — In (*or* super) mensā jacet. — Ubi sunt digitabula mea? — Posita sunt in sellā. — Ubi est baculum meum? — In flumen injectum est. — Quis id injecit? — Accusatusne est alicujus maleficii (sceleris)? — Non maleficii (sceleris), sed avaritiæ accusatus est. — Obligantne se proditionis? — Vero, proditionis et impietatis se obligant. — Absolvitne judex eos culpæ? — Non absolvit. — Estne liber factus tuus (Tuusne factus est liber)? — Non, fratris mei factus est. — Interestne (Refertne) tuā, me litteras dare ad amicum tuum? — Immo humanitatis plurimum refert, te litteras ad eum mittere. — Cujus est errare? — Cujusvis hominis est errare. — Estne meum facere id, quod justum est (sit)? — Est vero cujusvis hominis facere, quod justum est (sit).

131. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNA ET TRICESIMA.

Ego digitabula mea non video; ubinam sunt? — In flumine jacent. — Quis ea injecit? — Famulus tuus, propterea quod non amplius ulli usui fuerunt (*or* essent). — Quid tu de pecuniā tuā fecisti? — Domum eā emi. — Quid de (ex) illo ligno fecit faber tignarius? — Unam mensam et duas sellas ex eo fecit. — Quid fecit sartor ex (de) panno, quem ei dedisti? — Vestes ex eo fecit liberis tuis et meis. — Quid fecit pistor ex (de) farinā, quam tu ei vendidisti? — Panem ex eā fecit tibi mihique (tuā et meā causā). — Inventine sunt equi? — Inventi sunt. — Ubi inventi (*or* reperti) sunt? — Inventi (Reperti) sunt post silvam, citra flumen (fluvium). — Esne ab aliquo visus (Tun' ab aliquo visus es)? — Visus sum a nemine (*or dat.* nemini). — Præterivistine aliquem? — Ego te præterii, sed tu me non vidisti (observasti). — Ecquis (Num quis) te præteriit? — Nemo me præteriit. — Quā re ager cingitur? — Cingitur arboribus. — Quo morbo pater tuus mortuus est? — Non morbo ullo mortuus est, verum senectute. — Ecquid puniti sunt illi negligentiā? — Puniti sunt. — Ægerne est frater tuus vulneribus acceptis (*or* quæ acceperat)? — Non, æger est capitis doloribus. — Secasne carnem cultro? — Seco eam cultro et furcā (ego eam cultro et furcā seco). — Utrum tibi injuria facta est (fiebat) vi an fraude? — Facta est mihi (*or* Fiebat mihi) injuria et vi et fraude (*or* non minus vi, quam fraude).

132. DICTATA CENTESIMA ALTERA ET TRICESIMA.

Expectasne aliquem? — Vero, ego præfectum militarem, patruelem meum, expecto. — Non eum vidisti? — Etiam, ego eum hodie mane vidi; domum meam præteriit (præteribat). — Quid hic juvenis opperitur? — Pecuniam opperitur. — Opperirisne aliquid? — Etiam, librum meum opperior (expecto). — Opperiturne (Exspectatne) hic juvenis pecuniam suam? — Opperitur (exspectat). — Prætervectusne est rex hunc locum? — Non hunc locum, verum theatrum prætervectus est. — Nonne fontem novum prætervectus est? — Sane quidem, prætervectus est, sed ego eum non vidi (videbam). — (In) quā re tempus consumis? — Tempus in studiis litterarum consumo (contero). — (In) quā re tempus conterit frater tuus? — Tempus (in) legendo et ludendo conterit (consumit). — Consumitne hic homo tempus laborando? — Homo nihili est; tempus (suum) in bibendo et ludendo consumit (fallit). — In quā re tu tempus consumpsisti, quum Berolini esses? — Cum Berolini essem, ego tempus consumpsi in legendo et equitando. — In quā re liberi tui tempus conterunt? — Tempus in discendo conterunt. — Potesne mihi solvere debita (*or* id quod mihi debes)? — Solvere tibi non possum; nam quæsitor noster mihi pecunias meas afferre neglexit (prætermisit). — Quam ob rem vos sine me (me absente) jentavistis? — Tu horā nonā venire neglexisti, ut sine te jentaverimus. — Attulitne tibi mercator textum, quod apud eum emisti? — Id mihi afferre neglexit (prætermisit). — Venditditne tibi id pecuniā non numeratā (*or* die cæcā)? — Immo vero id mihi pecuniā præsenti vendidit. — Novistine illos homines? — Eos non novi (Mihi non noti sunt), sed eos nequissimos esse homines credo (arbitror); tempus enim in ludendo consumunt (consumere, conterere *or* fallere solent). — Cur tu hodie mane ad patrem meum venire neglexisti (prætermisisti)? — Sartor mihi togam, quam promisit (*or* promiserat), non attulit (*or* afferre prætermisit), ut ad eum ire non possem (nequirem).

133. DICTATA CENTESIMA TRICESIMA TERTIA.

Fuistine aliquando hoc in vico? — Infui ibi diversis temporibus (iterum ac sæpius). — Multine in eo (*or* ibi) equi

reperiuntur (Estne in eo copia equorum)? — Ne unus quidem in eo reperitur (*or* inest). — Fuistine jam (*or* aliquando) illā in terrā? — Semel in eā fui. — Reperiunturne ibi multi viri docti? — Multi quidem reperiuntur, sed tempus legendo (*or* librorum lectione) conterunt. — Insuntne in illo vico multi liberi studiosi? — Sunt quidem multi, sed et alii sunt, qui litteris studere nolint. — Sciuntne rustici hujus vici (pagi) artem legendi et scribendi? — Alii eorum legere sciunt, alii scribere, sed non legere, (et) multi et legere et scribere (*or* quum legere, tum scribere); pauci sunt, qui nec legere nec scribere didicerint. — Scripsistisne vos pensa imperata (*or* dictata)? — Vero, ea scripsimus (peregimus). — Multane vitia (menda) in iis reperiuntur (*or* insunt)? — Nulla vitia (in iis) reperiuntur; eramus enim valde assidui (perstudiosi). — Habetne amicus tuus multos filios? — Immo unum tantum habet; is vero nihili est; nam litteris studere non vult. — (In) quā re tempus consumit (conterere solet)? — Tempus consumit (in) ludendo et currendo. — Quam ob rem pater ejus eum non punit (Quid causæ est, cur pater ejus eum non puniat)? — Punire eum non audet. — Quid fecisti (de) texto (panno), quod (quem) emisti? — Abjeci; nam inutile (*or* nulli usui) erat. — Quomodo (Quemadmodum) epistolam suam scripsit filius tuus? — Scripsit eam cum multā curā diligentiāque. — Negligentissime eam scripsit. — Audiistine fraterculum tuum litterarum syllabas ordinare? — Audivi eum patientiā et silentio. — Estne amicus tuus natione Anglus? — Non, Francogallus genere (*or* domo) est. — Esne tu genere (*or* natione) Americanus? — Non vero, Germanus sum. — Illine Romani sunt? — Non, Russi sunt. — Quot sunt? — Centum numero sunt. — Nobisne pares sunt industriā? — Nobis non pares sunt. — Non nobis humanitate præstant? — Nobis non præstant. — Nos illis diligentiā non inferiores sumus. — Estne noster amicus vir magno ingenio? — Est vero vir summo ingenio et præstantissimā virtute. — Homines illi humili staturā, mediocri ingenio, nullāque virtute sunt.

134. DICTATA CENTESIMA TRICESIMA QUARTA.

Esne jam diu Lutetiæ (Estne jam longum tempus, ex quo (*or* cum) Lutetiæ es? — Quattuor annos (*or* Quattuor anni sunt). — Estne frater tuus jam diu Londini? — Decem jam

anni sunt, ex quo (*or* cum) ibi est. — Estne jam longum tempus, ex quo cœnavisti? — Est vero jam longum (*or* dudum), ex quo cœnavi, sed non longum est, ex quo cibum vespertinum sumpsi. — Quam dudum est, cum cibum vespertinum sumpsisti? — Duæ horæ et dimidia sunt (Altera jam hora et dimidia est). — Estne longum tempus, ex quo litteras a patre tuo (non) accepisti? — Non longum (haud dudum) est, quum unas ab eo accepi. — Quam diu est, ex quo epistolam accepisti ab amico tuo, qui in Germaniâ est? — Tertius jam mensis est, ex quo unam accepi. — Estne jam diu, ex quo (quum) cum homine locutus es, cujus filius tibi pecuniam commodavit? — Haud dudum est, ex quo cum eo locutus sum. — Estne jam longum tempus, quum (*or* quod) * parentes tuos (non) vidisti? — Jam perdiu est, ex quo eos (non) vidi. — Estne jam diu, quum amici mei filius domæ tuæ habitat (*or* Habitatne amici mei filius jam longum domæ tuæ)? — Duæ jam hebdomadæ sunt, ex quo ibi habitat (Duas jam hebdomadas ibi habitat). — Quam diu tu hos libros jam habes? — Ego eos jam hos tres menses habeo (Tertium jam mensem eos habeo). — Quam longum (tempus) est, ex quo consobrinus tuus profectus est? — Amplius jam mense (*or* mensis) est, ex quo (*or* quum) profectus est. — Quid factum est de homine (*or* homini), qui Anglice tam bene loquebatur? — Haud scio, quid de eo (*or* ei) factum sit; nam jam dudum (longum *or* diu) est, cum eum non vidi. — Estne jam longum tempus (*or* diu), ex quo nuntium accepisti de præfecto militari, qui amicum tuum gladii ictu vulneravit? — Amplius jam anno est, cum de eo nuntium (non) accepi. — Quam diu est, cum linguam Germanicam discis? — Tertius tantum mensis est, ex quo eam disco (*or* Tertium tantum mensem eam disco). — Potesne eam jam loqui? — Tu vides (perspectum habes), me jam initium loquendi facere (*or* me jam loqui incipere *or* cœpisse). — Estne jam diu, ex quo (*or* cum) liberi equitis Francogallici eam discunt? — Quintus jam annus est, ex quo eam discunt (Quinque jam annos eam discunt), et tamen nondum loqui cœperunt (incipiunt). — Quid causæ est, quod eam loqui non possint? — Loqui ob eam rem non possunt, quod eam male discunt. — Quam longum tempus est, ex quo hi liberi non biberunt? — Abhinc quadrantem horæ biberunt. — Quamdiu jam amicus tuus in Hispaniâ est? — Unum jam mensem ibi est. — Quando tu fratri meo

* Compare Grammar, page 299, *5, C.*

obviam venisti? — Ego ei abhinc quattuordecim dies (duabus abhinc hebdomadis) obviam veniebam. — Suntne multi milites in terrā (*or* patriā) tuā? — Est ibi legio trium milium hominum. — Quam longum tempus ego consobrini tui pecuniam retinui? — Retinuisti eam ad (*or* circiter) unum annum.

135. DICTATA CENTESIMA TRICESIMA QUINTA.

Quis est homo, qui modo (*or* recens) ad te locutus est (*or* tecum loquebatur)? — Homo doctus est. — Quid modo apportavit sutor? — Caligas et calceos, quos (*or* quæ) nobis confecit, apportavit (attulit). — Qui sunt homines, qui modo advenerunt? — Philosophi sunt. — Cujates sunt? — Londinenses (domo) sunt. — Quis est homo, qui modo profectus est? — Anglus est, qui omnes suas facultates (patrimonium suum integrum) in Francogalliā dilapidavit. — Cujas es? — Ego Hispanus sum, et amicus meus Italus est. — Visne fabrum claustrarium arcessere? — Cur me oportet fabrum claustrarium arcessere? — Necesse est faciat mihi clavem; perdidi enim illam, quæ ad cubiculum meum pertinet. — Ubi heri cœnavit patruus tuus? — Apud hospitem (cauponem) cœnavit. — Quid sumptus fecit? — Tres thaleros confecit (sumptum trium thalerorum fecit). — Quantum reditum menstruum pecuniæ ad sumptum habet? — Menstruum reditum ducentorum florenorum ad sumptum habet. — Estne opus (*or* necesse), me ad ephippiorum artificem ire? — Opus est te ad eum ire; nam opus est, ut ephippium reficiat. — Vidistine aliquem in foro? — Vidi vero ibi multos homines (multitudinem hominum). — Quomodo vestiti sunt? — Alii veste caeruleā, alii viridi, alii flavā, et nonnulli rubrā induti sunt. — Quanti tu equum tuum emisti? — Ego eum viginti (libris) pondo auri emi. — Vendiditne domum suam magno? — Vendidit vero magno; vendidit eam denis milibus talentorum (*or* decies mille talentis). — Constiteruntne tibi libri tui tanti, quanti mihi mei? — Tantidem mihi constitere; constiterunt mihi mille aureis. — Quanti habitas? — Denis thaleris in singulos menses habito. — Quanti doceris? — Doceor quinquaginta thaleris. — Quanti est frumentum hac in regione? — Medimnus frumenti hac in regione dimidio tantum thaleri est.

136. DICTATA CENTESIMA TRICESIMA SEXTA.

Qui sunt illi homines? — Is, qui canā veste indutus est, vicinus meus est, et ille nigrā togā indutus, medicus est, cujus filius vicinum meum fusti verberavit. — Quis est homo (vir) ille togā viridi indutus? — Unus de cognatis meis est. — Tun' Berolinensis domo es? — Non, Dresdensis sum. — Quantam pecuniam liberi tui hodie expenderunt? — Pauxillam tantum expenderunt; unum tantum thalerum expenderunt. — Ministratne tibi homo ille bene? — Bene mihi quidem ministrat; sed nimis expendit (diffundit). — Visne hunc famulum in servitium tuum recipere? — Volo eum recipere (*or* conducere), si mihi parate (bene) ministrare vult. — Possumne hunc servum in famulatum apud me recipere (*or* conducere)? — Potes eum recipere (conducere); nam mihi admodum bene (parate) ministravit. — Quam diu est, ex quo tibi ministrat? — Duo tantum menses sunt. — Eratne longum tempus in tuo ministerio (in famulatu apud te)? — In famulatu erat apud me sex annos. — Quantam mercedem dedisti ei in anno? — Dedi (dabam) ei centum thaleros. — Alebaturne a te (Utebaturne victu tuo)? — Vero, alebatur. — Quid ei ad manducandum dabas? — Dabam ei, quodcunque ego ipse edebam. — Probatusne tibi est? — Vero, mihi valde probatus est. — Vacatne culpā? — Prorsus vacat. — Num terra hæcce auro abundat? — Non abundat. — Implevitne scyphum suum vino? — Vero, eum mero implevit. — Decoratne domum suam picturis (tabulis pictis)? — Decorat. — Visne nos metu liberare? — Liberare te non queo (non possum). — Expulsine sunt patriā suā? — Non expulsi sunt.

137. DICTATA CENTESIMA TRICESIMA SEPTIMA.

Quam diu frater tuus jam (ex) urbe abest? — Duodecimum jam mensem abest (Duodecim jam menses sunt, ex quo abest). — Jussusne est patriā decedere? — Jussus est. — Ecquid in patriā tuā multi sunt philosophi? — Sunt vero in eā tam multi quam quot in tuā (*or* Quot in tuā, tot in eā sunt). — Quomodo hic pileus me decet (mihi convenit)? — Te optime decet (Tibi optime convenit *or* sedet). — Quomodo hic pileus fratri tuo sedet (convenit)? — Mirifice (pulcherrime) ei sedet

(convenit). — Estne frater tuus tam grandis, quam tu? — Grandior est, quam ego sum, sed ego eo major natu sum. — Quam altus (cujus altitudinis) hic homo est? — Quinque pedes et quattuor digitos altus est. — Quam alta est hospitis nostri domus? — Alta est sexaginta pedes (*or* Sexaginta pedum est). — Estne puteus tuus altus (= profundus)? — Etiam, domine, quinquaginta pedes altus est (Pedum quinquaginta est). — Quam diu illi homines jam in servitio patris tui sunt? — Amplius jam tertium annum in ejus servitio sunt (Amplius jam tres anni sunt, ex quo (*or* quum *or* quod) in famulatu apud eum sunt). — Estne jam diu, quum consobrinus tuus Lutetiæ Parisiorum est? — Sex prope anni sunt, ex quo (*or* cum) ibi est (habitat) *or* Ad sextum annum ibi est (habitat). — Quis cultrum meum perdidit? — Nemo eum perdidit; nam perditus jam erat tum, quum nobis eo opus fuit (*or* esset). — Estne verum, patruum tuum advenisse? — Affirmo tibi, eum advenisse (Persuadeas tibi volo, eum advenisse). — Estne verum, eum tibi affirmavisse, se tuis consiliis non defuturum? — Persuadeas tibi volo, id verum esse. — Estne verum, milia illa sex hominum, quos expectaveramus, advenisse? — Mihi ita nuntiatum est. — Visne cœnare apud nos? — Cœnare apud vos non possum (nequeo); nam modo jam manducavi. — Abjicisne pileum tuum (Num pileum tuum abjicis)? — Non abjicio; convenit (sedet) enim mihi mirifice. — Venditne amicus tuus togam suam? — Non vendit; nam ei mirifice convenit. — "Multi docti homines Berolini sunt; nonne ita est?" Sic interrogabat Cuvier hominem quendam domo Berolinensem. — "Non tam multi," respondit homo Berolinensis, "quam quot illo tempore, quum tu ipse ibi aderas (adesses)."

138. DICTATA CENTESIMA DUODEQUADRAGESIMA.

Quam ob rem te hominis illius miseret? — Ego eum ob eam causam commiseror, quod pecunias suas apud mercatorem quendam Hamburgensem deposuit, quas homo ille non vult ei reddere (*or* reddere recusat). — Num civi isti quidquam credis? — Ego ei nihil credo (committo). — Retinuitne tibi jam aliquid? — Ego ei nunquam quidquam mandavi (credidi *or* commisi), ut nunquam mihi quidquam retinuerit. — Visne pecunias tuas patri meo demandare (committere)? —

Volo ei eas demandare *or* committere. — Quæ occulta filius meus tibi credidit? — Quæ mihi credidit, ea tibi credere non possum; nam me rogavit, ut rem reticerem (*or* occultam tenerem). — Cui tu secreta tua credis? — Ego ea nemini (nulli) credo, ut nemo ea sciat. — Ornatusne est frater tuus præmio? — Immo potius pœnâ affectus est; sed te oro atque rogo, ut rem reticeas; nam nemo ejus conscius est. — Quid ei accidit? — Dicere tibi non nolo, quod ei acciderit, si mihi polliceris, te rem occultam habiturum (*or* fore, ut rem reticeas). — Pollicerisne (Promittisne), te rem tacitam habiturum (*or* fore, ut rem reticeas *or* celes)? — Vero, ego tibi polliceor; nam me ejus toto pectore miseret (*or* commiseror enim eum toto animo). — Ducisne (*or* Putasne) hoc dignitate tuâ alienum? — Non ita duco (puto). — Fungiturne ille justitiæ officiis? — Factum est. — Perfunctusne es iisdem periculis, quibus ego perfunctus sum? — Non iisdem perfunctus sum. — Quo (cibo) vescuntur? — Vescuntur piscibus et lacte. — Quis impedimentis potitus est? — Milites iis potiti sunt. — Quâ re lætaris? — Ego virtutis conscientiâ lætor. — Ecquid virtus ejus (*or* illius) imitatione digna est? — Non (eâ) digna est.

139. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNDEQUADRAGESIMA.

Quem commiseraris (Cujus te miseret)? — Ego amicum tuum commiseror (Me amici tui miseret). — Cur eum commiseraris (Quid causæ est, quod te ejus misereat)? — Eum commiseror propterea, quod æger est. — Ecquem mercatores Berolinenses commiserantur? — Neminem miserantur. — Offersne mihi aliquid? — Ego tibi anulum aureum offero (defero). — Quid tibi pater meus obtulit? — Mihi librum bonum obtulit (detulit). — Cui tu equos istos formosos offers (defers)? — Ego eos præfecto militari Francogallo offero (defero). — Offersne tu avunculo meo pilentum illud pulchrum? — Id ei offero (defero). — Offersne his liberis bonis caniculum meum bellum? — (Eum iis) offero; amo enim eos toto pectore. — Quid tibi detulerunt (*or* obtulere)? — Detulerunt mihi cervisiam bonam et carnem salsam (*or* sale conditam). — Cui tu pecuniam offers (defers *or* polliceris)? — Ego civibus (*or* oppidanis) illis Parisiensibus, qui mihi operam suam professi sunt, nonnullam offero. — Visne vestes meas curare (tibi curæ habere)? — Volo eas curare. — Ecquid pileum meum curare

vis? — Volo eum curare (mihi curæ habere). — Habesne tibi curæ librum, quem ego tibi commodavi? — Habeo eum mihi curæ. — Vultne hic homo equo meo providere? — Vult ei providere (eum curare). — Quis servo meo providere (consulere) vult? — Hospes ei providere vult. — Curatne servus tuus equos tuos? — Curat. — Habetne sibi curæ vestes tuas? — Habet eas sibi curæ; exterget enim eas penicillo quotidie mane. — Ecquid tu aliquando (unquam) cerevisiam Argentoratensem bibisti? — Nunquam bibi. — Estne jam diu, ex quo tu panem Lipsiensem edisti (edebas *or* manducabas)? — Tertius fere annus est, ex quo nullum edi. — Ducitne se sine periculo? — Nunquam, inimico suo vivo, se sine periculo ducere (putare) potest. — Salvane est respublica? — Quomodo salva esse potest his magistratibus?

140. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUADRAGESIMA.

Fecistine sororis meæ marito aliquid doloris? — Ego ei nihil doloris feci (effeci); is ipse autem digitum meum vulneravit. — Quā re tibi digitum vulneravit (secuit)? — (Vulneravit eum) cultro, quem ei commodavisti. — Quam ob rem tu puero illo pugnum (*or* colaphum) impegisti? — Propterea, quod me ad dormiendum retardabat. — Impediitne te aliquis, quominus scriberes (Retardavitne te aliquis a scribendo *or* ad scribendum)? — Nemo me impedivit, quominus scriberem; ego autem quemdam (aliquem) impedivi, quominus consobrino tuo noceret. — Advenitne pater tuus? — Omnes ajunt (In ore omnium est), eum advenisse; sed ego eum nondum (adhuc non) vidi. — Effecitne medicus filio tuo aliquid doloris? — Effecit ei dolorem; nam digitum ejus secuit (incidit). — Amputaveruntne crus hujus hominis? — Vero, id omnino amputaverunt. — Probaturne tibi servus tuus? — Valde mihi probatur; nam omnium horarum homo est. — Quid potest? — Nihil non potest (Omnia potest). — Potestne (Scitne) equitare (*or* Peritusne est artis equitandi)? — Potest (Scit). — Revertitne frater tuus tandem ex Germaniā? — Vero, inde revertit, et tibi equum pulchrum secum adduxit. — Imperavitne stabulario suo, ut eum ad me duceret? — Imperavit (ei, ut eum ad te duceret) *or simply* Factum est. — Quid de illo equo censes (putas)? — Puto eum pulchrum bonumque esse, et te rogo, ut eum in stabulum ducas. — In quā re (*or* Quomodo) tu tempus heri consumebas (conterebas)? — Ego ad

ambulationem publicam prodivi, et postea concentum obii. — Erantne multi homines in ambulacro publico? — Erat vero ibi magna vis hominum. — Quando frater tuus domum revertit? — Sole oriente revertit. — Quando natus est Augustus? — Cicerone consule natus est. — Cupisne linguam Latinam discere? — Discere eam, te duce et præceptore, non nolo. — Audito amicum tuum advenisse, statim ego ei obviam ire constitui. — Quam ob rem hi homines pœnâ affecti sunt (afficiebantur)? — Officiis neglectis pœnâ affecti sunt (afficiebantur).

141. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNA ET QUADRAGESIMA.

Quid agebas (egisti), quum litteras tuas conclusisses? — Ad fratrem meum ivi, qui me secum in theatrum deduxit, ubi unum de amicis meis, quem multis annis non videram, inveniebam (inveni). — Quid tu hodie mane, jentaculo sumpto, faciebas (fecisti)? — Postquam epistolam comitis Polonici perlegi (epistolâ comitis Polonici perlectâ), ego domo exii, ut theatrum principis, quod antea non videram (*or* vidissem), spectarem. — Quid fecit (egit) pater tuus hodie mane, postquam e lecto surrexit (quum e lecto surrexisset)? — Jentavit et domo exiit. — Quid agebat amicus tuus actis publicis lectis (*or* quum acta publica legisset)? — Exivit (Exiit) ad baronem. — Secuitne (Secabatne) carnem pane secto (quum panem secuisset)? — Immo vero panem secuit, postquam carnem secuit (*or* Panem carne sectâ secuit). — Quando (Quo tempore) tu proficisceris? — Cras proficiscor (proficisci cogito); sed antequam proficiscor, amicos meos iterum videre (*or* visere) cupio. — Quid liberi tui, jentaculo sumpto, egerunt (agebant)? — In publicum cum caro (*or* carissimo) suo præceptore prodierunt (prodibant). — Quo ivit (ibat) patruus tuus, quum cœnavisset (postquam *or* ubi cœnavit)? — Nusquam ivit (ibat); domi se tenuit (tenebat) litteras suas scribens (*or* et litteras suas scripsit). — Quid agere (*or* facere) soles, cibo vespertino sumpto (*or* quum cibum vespertinum sumpseris)? — In lectum me conferre soleo. — Quotâ horâ tu hodie mane e lecto surrexisti? — Ego quintâ horâ surrexi. — Quid fecit consobrinus tuus, quum de amici sui morte certior factus esset (*or* quum amici sui mortem cognovisset *or* *simply* de amici sui morte certior factus)? — Valde dolebat et

cubitum ivit, non verbum faciens. — Legistine (Legebasne), priusquam jentavisti? — Immo vero ego jentaculo sumpto (*or* postquam jentavi) libros legi (*or* legebam). — Ivistine cubitum, quum cibum vespertinum sumpsisses? — Cibo vespertino sumpto, ego epistolas meas scripsi, et deinde cubitum ivi. — Dolesne cognati tui morte? — Doleo vero vehementer. — Quando mortuus est amicus tuus? — Mense proxime elapso mortuus est. — Quid quereris? — De puero tuo (*or* Puerum tuum) queror. — Quam ob rem de eo quereris? — Propterea, quod occidit canem bellum, quem ab uno de amicis meis acceperam. — De quā re avunculus tuus questus est? — De facto tuo questus est (Questus est id, quod tu fecisti). — Ecquid de epistolā, quam ad eum misi, conquestus est? — De eā questus est.

142. DICTATA CENTESIMA ALTERA ET QUADRAGESIMA.

Quam longe abest Lutetia (a) Londino? — Lutetia (a) Londino milia passuum fere centum et quadraginta abest (*or* distat). — Quam longe est hinc Hamburgium? — Longe (Longule) est. — Estne longe hinc Vindobonam? — Milia passuum fere (circiter) centum et quadraginta sunt hinc Vindobonam. — Estne longius (a) Berolino Dresdam, quam (a) Lipsiā Berolinum (*or* Distatne Dresda longius (a) Berolino, quam Berolinum (a) Lipsiā)? — Longius est (a) Berolino Dresdam, quam (a) Lipsiā Berolinum (*or* Longius abest Dresda a Berolino, quam Berolinum Lipsiā). — Quam longe abest Berolinum (a) Lutetiā Parisiorum (Quam longe est a Lutetiā Berolinum)? — Centum fere et triginta milia passuum hinc Berolinum sunt. — Cogitasne brevi tempore (*or* mox *or* propediem) Berolinum ire? — Cogito eo brevi (propediem) ire. — Quam ob rem hoc tempore eo ire vis? — (Eo ire volo), ut libros bonos et equum bonum ibi emem, et ut amicos meos bonos visam. — Diune est, cum ibi non fuisti? — Duo fere anni sunt, ex quo ibi non fui. — Isne Vindobonam hoc anno? — Non eo; nam nimis longe est hinc Vindobonam. — Longumne tempus (Diune) est, ex quo amicum tuum Hamburgensem (non) vidisti? — Immo solum quattuordecim dies sunt, ex quo eum vidi (videbam) *or* Immo eum vidi abhinc quattuordecim dies. — Ecquid discipuli tui memoriæ mandare delectantur? — Memoriæ mandare (committere)

non delectantur (non amant); legere et scribere potius, quam memoriæ mandare, malunt. (Legunt et scribunt libentius, quam memoriæ mandant). — Bibisne cerevisiam libentius, quam vinum ex malis confectum? — Immo vero ego vinum ex malis confectum potius, quam cerevisiam, bibere malo (*or* Vinum ex malis confectum cerevisiæ antefero, præfero *or* antepono). — Amatne (*or* Delectaturne) frater tuus ludere? — Immo litteris operam dare mavult, quam ludere (*or* Libentius litteris operam dat, quam ludit). — Anteponisne (Præfersne) carnem pani? — Immo potius hanc illi antefero. — Mavisne bibere (magis), quam edere (manducare)? — Immo ego manducare potius, quam bibere malo; sed patruus meus bibere (potare) mavult, quam manducare. — Anteponitne levir tuus carnes piscibus? — Immo potius pisces carnibus anteponit *or* præfert (Pisces edere mavult, quam carnes). — Mavisne scribere, quam dicere (*or* loqui)? — Utrumque libenti animo facio. — Manducasne altilia libentius, quam pisces? — Numquid tu mel bonum saccharo antefers (anteponis *or* præfers)? — Neutrum amo.

143. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUADRAGESIMA TERTIA.

Sumitne (Bibitne) pater tuus coffeam libentius, quam theam? — Neutram amat. — Quid bibis (bibere soles) mane? — Ego poculum aquæ cum aliquantulo sacchari bibere soleo; pater meus bonam coffeam, frater meus minor natu bonam theam, et sororis meæ maritus scyphum vini boni bibere (sumere) solent. — Potesne intelligere, quod tibi dico? — Non vero, domine; nam nimis celeriter (celerius) loqueris. — Visne esse tam benignus, ut non tam celeriter (minus celeriter *or* lentius) loquare? — Volo minus celeriter loqui, si mihi auscultare (*or* aures dare) vis. — Num intelligere potes, quod frater meus tibi dicit? — Tam celeriter loquitur, ut intelligere non possim. — Ecquid discipuli tui ea, quæ tu iis dicis, intelligere possunt? — Vero, ea, quæ iis dico, intelligunt, quum (*or* si) lentè loquor; nam ut alicujus sententia capiatur (intelligatur), necesse est loquatur lentius. — Cur tu non quidquam (*or* nihil) de illo mercatore emis? — Erat mihi voluntas emendi de eo (ab eo) aliquoties duodena mucciniorum, aliqua focalia atque pileum album; sed omnia tam care vendit, ut nihil de eo (ab eo) emere possim (*or* queam). — Visne me ad alium

ducere? — Volo te ad filium illius ducere, de quo anno proxime elapso emisti. — Ecquid (Numquid) æque care vendit atque hicce? — Immo minore pretio (*or* ære pauciore) vendit. — Mavisne in theatrum, quam ad concentum, ire? — Immo ego ad concentum æque libenter, quam in theatrum eo; sed (ad) ambulacrum publicum adire non delector; nam reperiuntur (reperiri solent) ibi nimis multi homines. — Ecquid liberi tui libentius Italicam linguam discunt, quam Hispanicam? — Neutram libenti animo discunt; Germanicam solam discere delectantur (*or* amant). — Maluntne loqui potius, quam scribere? — Neutrum libenter faciunt. — Appetisne (Amasne) vervecinam? — Immo vero bubulam vervecinæ antefero. — Eduntne liberi tui panificia libentius, quam panem? — Utrumque amant (appetunt). — Numquid ille omnes, quos emerat, libros perlegit? — Tam multos eorum emit (comparavit), ut omnes perlegere non possit. — Cupisne aliquot epistolas scribere? — Ego earum jam tam multas scripsi, ut plures scribere non possim.

144. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUADRAGESIMA QUARTA.

Utrum epistolas scripsisti longas an breves? — Ego et longas et breves (*or* longas non minus, quam breves *or* tum longas tum breves) scripsi. — Habesne multa mala? — Habeo vero eorum tam multa, ut, quæ edam, nescio (non scio). — Ecquæ his liberis dare vis? — Pensis suis tam male studuerunt, ut iis quidquam dare nolim. — Quâ re lætaris? — Gaudeo felicitate, quæ tibi contigit. — Quâ re liberi tui lætantur? — Lætantur, quod te videant. — Gaudesne felicitate patris mei? — Gaudeo. — Num fratri meo blandiris? — Ego ei non blandior. — Ecquid hic magister (præceptor) discipulis suis blanditur? — (Iis) non blanditur. — Estne iis contentus (Probanturne ei)? — Est vero iis valde contentus, quum (*or* si) bene discunt (*or* diligentes sunt), sed minime iis contentus est, si non bene discunt (si non diligentes sunt). — Blandirisne mihi (Mihine blandiris)? — Tibi non blandior; nam te amo (diligo). — Videsne temetipsum illo in speculo? — Video memetipsum in eo. — Cur non ad focum manes? — Propterea, quod timeo, ne urar (adurar). — Accenditne hic homo ignem suum? — Timesne (Metuisne) illos homines deformes? — Eos non timeo; nemini enim nocent. — Quam ob rem illi

liberi aufugiunt? — Idcirco aufugiunt, quod te timent. — Aufugisne ab inimicis tuis? — Ego ab iis non aufugio; nam eos non metuo (timeo). — Potesne epistolam Latinam sine vitio (mendo *or* errore) scribere? — Possum (unam scribere). — Ecquis epistolas tuas emendat? — Nemo eas emendat (*or* corrigit). — Quot epistolas jam scripsisti? — Duodecim jam scripsi. — Ecquid tu tibimetipsi dolorem effecisti (*or* injuriam intulisti)? — Nullam effeci (Non intuli). — Quis sibi ipse dolorem effecit (*or* nocuit)? — Frater meus sibimetipsi dolorem effecit (*or* sibi ipse nocuit); nam digitum suum vulneravit. — Estne æger etiam nunc? — Immo sanior factus est. — Gaudeo audire, eum non amplius ægrotare; nam eum diligo (amo), et eum ex animo commiseratus sum. — Cur consobrinus tuus sibi pilos evellit? — Propterea, quod, quas pecunias debet (*or* *simply* debita), solvere non potest (possit). — Recidistine tibi pilos? — Ego eos non ipse recidi, verum recidendos curavi (sed mihi recisi sunt).

145. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUADRAGESIMA QUINTA.

Quā re liberi tui tempus fallunt? — Tempus fallunt litteris studendo, scribendo et legendo. — Quā re tu horas fallis? — Otium meum, quam optime possum, fallo; nam libros bonos lego, et litteras ad amicos scribo. — Suum cuique judicium est; quid est tuum? — Ego litteris operam dare, bonum librum legere, concentum obire, in ambulacrum publicum ire, et equitare gaudeo (amo *or* delector). — Ecquid medicus puero tuo injuriam intulit? — Digitum ejus incidit, injuriam autem ei nullam intulit. — Cur tu homini illi auscultas (aures das)? — Ego quidem ei aures do, sed tamen ei non credo (fidem tribuo); scio enim, eum esse mendacem. — Quin (Cur non) consobrinus tuus pileum suum penicillo exterget. — Eum non deterget propterea, quod timet, ne digitos suos inquinet. — Quid dicit (ait) tibi vicinus meus? — Nuntiat (*or* Dicit) mihi, te equum suum (*or* ejus) emere (comparare) velle; sed ego scio, ut fallatur; nam, quā eum emas, pecuniā cares (*or* nam ad eum emendum pecuniam non habes). — Quid dicitur (Quid ajunt homines) in foro? — Ajunt, hostem profligatum (victum *or* superatum) esse (Dicitur hostem, &c., *or* Hostis dicitur profligatus esse). — Credisne hoc (*or* nuntium)? — Sane quidem, credo; propterea, quod in ore omnium est. —

Num cubitum is mature (Dasne te mature somno *or* Num te mature in lectum confers)? — Immo ego sero cubitum eo (me in lectum confero); nam, si mature me in lectum confero, dormire non possum (non queo). — Quotā horā tu heri cubitum ivisti (*or* te in lectum contulisti)? — Cubitum heri ivi circiter quadrantem horæ post undecimam. — Quotā horā liberi tui se somno dant? — Cum occasu solis cubitum ire solent (se in lectum conferunt). — Surguntne e lecto bene mane (*or* matutini)? — Sole oriente e lecto surgunt (surgere solent). — Quotā horā tu hodie e lecto surrexisti? — Tarde ego hodie surrexi; nam tardius me heri vesperi in lectum contuleram. — Surgitne filius tuus tarde? — Immo vero bene mane surgere (*or* surgat) oportet; nunquam enim sero (*or* tarde) cubitum it. — Quid agit (agere solet), quum surgit (*or* postquam surrexit)? — Operam dat studiis, et postea jentaculum sumit (sumere solet).

146. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUADRAGESIMA SEXTA.

Vocasne (Citasne) me? — Te voco (cito). — Quid tibi collibet (Quid tibi vis)? — E lecto surgas oportet; nam multa jam dies (*or* sero jam) est. — Quam ob rem me vocas (me citas)? — Ego omnes meas pecunias aleā perdidi; venioque a te petere (*or* petitum a te), ut mihi aliquantam commodes. — Quota hora est? — Quadrans horæ jam post sextam est; et tu satis longum dormiisti. — Estne jam dudum, ex quo tu e lecto surrexisti? — Una hora cum dimidio est, ex quo surrexi (*or* Ego abhinc unam horam et dimidiam surrexi). — Abisne sæpe deambulatum? — Ambulatum ire soleo, quandocunque domi nihil faciendum invenio (*or* domi nihil habeo, quod faciam). — Cupisne ambulatum ire (*or* spatiari)? — Ambulatum ire non possum; nam nimis occupatus sum. — Vectusne est frater tuus equo? — Immo vectus (*or* vectatus) est curru (vehiculo *or* carpento). — Ecquid liberi tui frequenter deambulatum eunt? — Ambulatum eunt quotidie mane post sumptum jentaculum (*or* simul ac jentaverunt). — Spatiarisne (Ambulasne), postquam cœnavisti? — Quum cœnaverim (*or simply* Cœnatus *), ego primum theam bibere, deinde ambulare soleo. — Ducisne sæpe liberos tuos ambulatum? —

* Compare Grammar, page 260, Rem. 5.

Ego eos quot diebus et mane et vesperi ambulatum duco. — Potesne mecum ire (abire)? — Non tecum ire possum; nam fraterculum meum ambulatum ducere me oportet. — Quo loco deambulas? — In avunculi nostri hortis et agris deambulamus (deambulare solemus). — Gaudesne spatiari (*or* ambulando)? — Malo spatiari, quam edere et bibere (Ego libentius deambulo, quam manduco et bibo). — Num pater tuus equo vectari delectatur? — Immo carpento vectari mavult, quam equo. — Amandine sunt nobis liberi, qui non bene morati sunt (sint)? — Immo potius puniendi et despicatui habendi sunt. — Quis te docuit artem legendi (*or* legere)? — Doctus sum a præceptore Francogallo. — Docuitne te etiam scribere? — Docuit me artem et legendi et scribendi. — Quis fratrem tuum artem ratiocinandi (*or* arithmeticam) docuit? — Doctor aliquis Germanus eum docuit. — Visne nobiscum ambulatum ire (*or* ambulationem conficere)? — Ambulare vobiscum non possum; nam meum linguæ Germanicæ doctorem expecto (opperior). — Num frater tuus ambulare vult? — Non potest; instituitur enim arte saltandi.

147. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUADRAGESIMA SEPTIMA.

Habetisne linguæ Anglicæ præceptorem (doctorem)? — Habemus. — Traditne vobis et linguam Italicam? — Linguæ Italicæ non sciens est; sed nos linguæ Italicæ et Hispanicæ præceptorem habemus. — Quid de tuo olim* scribendi magistro factum est? — Factus est clericus. — Quid factum est de viro illo docto (erudito), quem hieme proxime elapsâ domi tuæ videbam? — Factus est mercator. — Et quid ex filio ejus factum est? — Relatus est inter milites (Factus est miles). — Meministine etiam nunc meum olim saltandi magistrum? — Memini eum etiam nunc; quidnam ei factum est? — Hic (*or* Hac regione) est, et videre eum potes, si tibi collibet. — Habesne linguæ Germanicæ præceptorem? — Habeo vero unum, et eum præstantissimum (optimum); nam is pater meus est (est enim pater meus), qui me linguâ Germanicâ et Anglicâ instituit. — Scitne pater

* When the English "old" is used in the sense of "former," the Romans commonly put the adverbs *olim* or *quondam* instead of *vetus* or *pristinus*.

tuus et Polonice? — Nondum scit; cogitat autem discere hac æstate. — Recordarisne tua promissa? — Vero, ea recordor. — Quid mihi promisisti (pollicitus es)? — Te linguâ Germanicâ instituere (*or* erudire) pollicitus sum; et promissum facere (efficere) cogito. — Visne initium facere hodie mane? — Immo ego potius hodie vesperi, si tibi libet, incipere volo (cogito). — Meministine hominem, cujus filius nos saltare docuit (nobis artem saltandi tradidit)? — Non amplius eum nemini. — Ecquid tu fratres meos meministi? — Præclare eos memini; nam eos, quum Berolini litteris operam darem, nullo non die videbam (videre solebam). — Meminitne me patruus tuus etiam nunc? — Affirmo tibi, eum te (*or* tui) meminisse etiam nunc. — Numquid tu Germanice melius (scientius) loqueris, quam patruelis meus? — Ego non æque scienter loquor (minus scienter loquor, quam ille); loquitur enim scientius (melius), quam multi Germanorum. — Quis discipulorum tuorum (*or* de *or* ex discipulis tuis) scientissime loquitur? — Ille, qui heri mecum ambulabat, unus omnium scientissime loquitur. — Ecquid patrui tui domus æque alta est, ac nostra? — Tua altior est, quam patrui mei; domus autem consobrini mei omnium, quascunque ego adhuc conspexi, altissima est. — Habetne amicus tuus tot libros, quot ego habeo (*or* Habetne amicus tuus quot libros ego habeo)? — Plures tu eorum, quam ille, habes; sed frater meus plures eorum habet, quam uterque vestrum. — Quis nostrum maximam pecuniam habet? — Tu maximam habes; nam ego non habeo nisi triginta thaleros, amicus meus decem tantum habet, tu autem quingentos habes.

148. DICTATA CENTESIMA DUODEQUINQUAGESIMA.

Quæ brevissima ad patrui tui castellum via est? — Hæc via brevior quidem est, quam illa (ea), quam nos heri ingressi sumus; sed pater meus unam novit, quæ omnium brevissima est. — Uterisne pilento meo? — Utor. — Ususne est pater tuus equo meo? — Usus est. — Cui usui tibi hicce equus est? — Est mihi ad equitandum extra urbem. — Usurpasne, quos tibi commodavi, libros? — Usurpo. — Licetne mihi cultrum tuum usurpare? — Licet tibi eum usurpare; sed cavendum est, ne te vulneres. — Licetne fratribus meis libros tuos usurpare? — Licet quidem iis eos usurpare, sed videndum

est, ne eos lacerent (*or* non sunt iis lacerandi). — Licetne nobis mensâ tuâ lapideâ uti (usitari)? — Licet vobis eâ uti, sed oportet caveatis, ne cam perdatis (*or* sed non est vobis vitianda). — Quo (cuinam rei) fratribus tuis opus est pecunia? — Opus est iis (aliquantum ejus) ad victum (*or* ad sumptum *or* unde vivant). — Cui usui nobis hicce culter est? — Nobis est ad secandum panem nostrum, carnem nostram (carnes nostras), et caseum nostrum. — Estne tempestas hodierna frigida? — Perfrigida est. — Visne ad focum (ignem *or* carbones) accedere? — Accedere non queo (non possum); timeo enim, ne urar. — Quam ob rem amicus tuus de foco discedit (abit)? — Discedit ab eo, propterea quod timet (metuit), ne uratur. — Accedisne ad focum? — Vero, accedo (appropinquo) ad eum propterea, quia valde algeo (quippe qui valde algeam). — Frigentne tibi manus? — Non manus, sed pedes mihi frigent (Non frigent mihi manus, verum pedes). — Abisne a carbonibus? — Abeo (Discedo, *sc.* ab eo). — Cur ab eo abis (discedis)? — Quia non algeo. — Utrum alges, an cales? — Ego neque algeo, neque caleo. — Quid causæ est, quod liberi tui ad focum appropinquent? — Appropinquant ob eam causam, quod algent (Appropinquant, quippe qui algeant). — Algetne aliquis? — Alget vero non nemo. — Quis alget? — Puerculus ille, cujus pater tibi equum (unum) commodavit, alget. — Cur non se (*or* corpus) calefacit (refovet)? — Propterea, quod pater ejus pecuniâ, quâ lignum emat, caret (*or* pecuniam ad lignum emendum non habet). — Visne ei dicere, ut sui calefaciendi causâ (*or* corporis refovendi causâ) ad me veniat? — Volo ei dicere hoc. — Numquid reminisceris? — Nihil reminiscor (memini *or* recordor). — Quid recordatur patruus tuus? — Promissa tua (*or* promissorum tuorum) recordatur (reminiscitur). — Quid ego ei promisi (sum pollicitus)? — Promisisti ei, te proximâ hieme cum eo in Germaniam iturum (profecturum). — Id facere (efficere) mihi propositum est, si tempestas non nimis frigida est. — Sæpene tibi manus frigent? — Manus meæ nunquam fere frigent, pedes autem sæpe. — Quid est, cur a carbonibus discedas? — Sesquihora jam est, cum ad carbones (*or* carbonibus) assedi; ut non amplius algeam (*or* quapropter non amplius algeo). — Ecquid amicus tuus carbonibus (*or* foco, ad focum) assidere non delectatur? — Immo vero valde delectatur foco assidere, sed non nisi alget. — Licetne ad patruum tuum accedere (*or* patruum tuum convenire)? — Licet ad eum accedere (eum convenire); neminem enim januâ prohibet.

149. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNDEQUINQUAGESIMA.

Rasistine tibi barbam hodie? — Rasi (*or* Posui). — Posuitne frater tuus barbam? — Barbam suam non ipse posuit (rasit *or* totondit), sed a tonsore rasus (*or* tonsus) est. — Rasitasne faciem tuam sæpe? — Ego barbam quotidie mane rado (abrado, tondeo, pono), et nonnunquam etiam vesperi. — Quando tu barbam vesperi ponere soles? — Quandocunque ego non apud memetipsum (*or* domi meæ) cœno. — Quam sæpe in die pater tuus barbam suam radere (*or* tondere) solet? — Semel tantum in die barbam radit (tondet); frater meus autem tam bene barbatus est, ut bis in die faciem rasitet necesse est (*or* rasitare coactus est). — Raditne avunculus tuus sæpe sibi barbam? — Non radit (tondet) nisi tertio quoque die; non est enim bene barbatus. — Quotā horā mane tu tibi vestes induis? — Induo me vestibus, simul ac jentavi; jentaculum autem sumo quotidie aut horā octavā aut quadrante horæ post octavam. — Num vicinus tuus sibi vestes induit, antequam jentat? — Immo vero prius jentat, quam se vestibus induit. — Quotā horā vesperi tu vestes tibi exuis? — Exuo mihi vestes, simul ac (*or* ubi) ex theatro reverti. — Inisne in theatrum quotidie vesperi? — Non ineo (inire soleo) quotidie vesperi; satius (melius) enim est, operam dare litteris, quam in theatrum ire. — Quotā horā tibi vestes exuis, quum in theatrum non inis? — Tum vestes mihi exuo, simul ac cibum vespertinum sumpsi, et cubitum eo (in lectum me confero) horā decimā. — Induistine jam infantem vestibus? — Nondum indui; nam adhuc dormit (dormit enim etiam nunc). — Quotā horā e lecto surgere solet? — E lecto surgit, simul ac expergefactus est. — Surgisne e lecto tam bene mane (tam matutinus), quam ego? — Haud scio quidem, quotā horā tu surgas; ego ipse autem, simul ac experrectus sum (*or* somno solutus sum), surgere soleo. — Visne servo meo dicere (imperare), ut cras mane me quartā horā expergefaciat? — Volo ei imperare. — Cur tu tam bene mane (tam matutinus) e lecto surrexisti? — Liberi mei tantum strepitum ediderunt (tantopere inter se strepuerunt *or* tam tumultuati sunt), ut me e somno excitarent. — Ecquid tu bene dormiisti? — Ego non bene dormivi; nam tu nimis tumultuabaris (*or* strepebas). — Quotā horā ego te expergefacere debeo (*or* te expergefaciam oportet)? — Licet tibi me cras mane horā sextā experge-

facere (e somno excitare). — Quotā horā experrectus est centurio bonus? — Experrectus est circiter quadrantem horæ post quintam mane.

150. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUINQUAGESIMA.

Quando hic homo in puteum descendit? — Descendit (in eum) hodie mane. — Ecquid inde rursus ascendit? — Vero, abhinc horam ascendit. — Ubi est frater tuus? — In cubiculo suo est. — Visne ei dicere, ut descendat? — Dicere ei non nolo; sed nondum vestibus indutus est. — Num est amicus tuus in monte etiam nunc? — Immo vero jam inde descendit. — Descendistisne hunc fluvium, an ascendistis? — Descendimus. — Cœnavitne jam amicus tuus? — Cœnavit, simul ac ex equo descendit (desiluit). — Dormitne jam avunculus tuus? — Credo (Puto), eum dormire; cubitum enim ivit, simul ac ex equo descendit. — Locutusne est ad te consobrinus meus, priusquam profectus est? — Locutus est ad me, antequam in pilentum escendit. — Vidistine fratrem meum? — Vero, videbam eum, antequam (in) navem ascendi. — Quomodo se gerebat filius meus? — Bene se gerebat. — Qualem se frater meus erga te præbebat (præbuit)? — Honeste se erga me gerebat; nam se erga omnes bene gerere solet. — Est operæ pretium, litteras ad hominem illum dare (mittere)? — Non est operæ pretium (litteras ad eum dare). — Pretiumne est, ex equo (*or* ex curru) descendere, ut placentam emamus (*or* placentæ emendæ causā)? — Non pretium est; nam haud dudum est, ex quo manducavimus. — Estne mihi operæ pretium, ex equo descendere, ut homini illi pauperi (egeno) aliquid dono dem? — Est; nam egens esse videtur; sed tamen ei aliquid dare potes non descendens. — Meliusne est in theatrum ire, quam operam dare litteris? — Satius est facere hoc, quam illud. — Præstatne ire cubitum, quam ambulatum? — Præstat facere hoc, quam illud. — Meliusne (Satiusne) est in pilentum escendere, quam in navem? — Non operæ pretium est aut in pilentum aut in navem escendere, quum (*or* si) nos iter facere non cupiamus.

151. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNA ET QUINQUAGESIMA.

Conduxistine jam cubiculum? — Ego jam unum conduxi. — Ubi id conduxisti? — In viâ Wilhelminâ, numero centesimo uno et quinquagesimo (id conduxi). — In cujus domo id conduxisti? — In domo ejus hominis, cujus filius tibi equum vendidit. — Cui cubiculum conduxit pater tuus? — Conduxit unum filio suo, qui modo ex Germaniâ advenit. — Dimisistine (Absolvistine) tandem illum hominem? — Dimisi (Absolvi). — Quam ob rem pater tuus equos suos missos fecit (dimisit *or* vendidit)? — Quod eorum non amplius indiguit (egebat). — Ecquid tu servum tuum missum fecisti (dimisisti)? — Dimisi eum propterea, quia (*or* quod) mihi non amplius parate serviebat (ministrabat). — Quâ de causâ tu pilentum tuum vendidisti? — Propterea, quod non amplius itinera facio. — Contigitne tandem mercatori tuo, ut saccharum suum deperditum extruderet (venderet)? — Contigit ei, ut id extruderet (venderet). — Vendiditne id pecuniâ non præsenti (*or* die cæcâ)? — Immo id pecuniâ numeratâ vendere potuit, ut die cæcâ non vendiderit. — Sperasne, te mature Lutetiam adventurum? — Spero, me quadrante horæ post octavam eo adventurum; nam pater meus me hodie vesperi expectat. — Quâ re commutavisti pilentum tuum, quo non amplius usitabaris? — Commutavi id cum equo Arabico pulchro. — Visne librum tuum (cum) meo permutare? — Facere non possum (non queo); nam mihi opus est ad linguam Germanicam discendam. — Quid est, cur caput tuum nudes (Quam ob rem pileum tuum capiti detrahis)? — Caput nudo, quia meum olim (*or* quondam) magistrum scribendi venire (venientem) video. — Mutasne pileum, ut in forum eas? — Eum non muto, ut in forum eam, sed (verum) ut concentum magnum obeam.

152. DICTATA CENTESIMA ALTERA ET QUINQUAGESIMA.

Cur vestem (vestes) mutat pater tuus? — Ad regem adire cogitat (*or* Ad regem iturus est), ut eum vestes mutare oporteat (*or* quam ob causam oportet vestem mutet). — Mutavistine pileum tuum, ut ad centurionem Anglum (Anglicum)

adires? — Mutavi; non mutavi autem pileum et caligas. — Quam sæpe (Quoties) in die tu vestem mutare soles? — Vestem muto, ut cœnem, et iterum, ut in theatrum eam. — Ecquid indusium frequenter mutas? — Vero, id quotidie mane muto. — Quando indusium suum mutat pater tuus? — Id mutat, quandocunque saltatum it. — Mutatne focale tam sæpe, quam tu (æque sæpe ac tu *or* tecum)? — Immo sæpius, quam ego muto; id enim sexies in die facere solet. — Mativistine equos sæpe (frequenter), quum iter Vindobonam faceres? — Mutavi eos tertiâ quâque horâ. — Visne mihi hunc aureum permutare? — Vero, ego tibi eum permutaturus sum; quid nummorum invicem vis? — Invicem volo thaleros, florenos, et kreutzeros (*or* Ego eum thaleris, florenis, et kreutzeris permutare cupio). — Ecquid tu per litteras agis cum amico meo? — Etiam, cum eo ago (*or* Factum est). — Quam longum tempus tu cum fratre meo per litteras agis? — Ego jam ad sextum annum litterarum commercio cum eo usitor. — Quâ de causâ tu te hominibus illis immisces (inseris)? — Ego me iis immisceo (insero), ut cognoscam, quid de me dicant (ajant). — Recognovistine patrem tuum? — Tam diu erat, ex quo eum non videram, ut eum non cognoscerem. — Loquerisne Latine etiam nunc? — Tam diu est, ex quo (*or* cum) non locutus sum, ut colloqui fere omnino oblitus sim.

153. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUINQUAGESIMA TERTIA.

Prodibitne pater tuus hodie in publicum? — Prodibit, si tempestas est (*or* erit) serena. — Ecquid soror tua in publicum prodibit? — Prodibit, nisi tempestas ventosa est (sit). — Amabisne fratrem meum? — Vero, eum toto pectore amabo, si tam bonus est (*or* sit), quam tu. — Num parentes tui cras rus ibunt? — Non ibunt; est enim nimis pulveris (nam viæ nimis pulverulentæ sunt). — Ibimusne ambulatum hodie (Num nos hodie spatiabimur)? — Non ambulatum ibimus; nam viæ nimis lutulentæ sunt (est enim nimis luti foris). — Perspicisne (Videsne) cognati mei castellum pone (post) illum montem? — Perspicio (Video). — Inibimusne? — Inibimus, si tibi collibet. — Inibisne (in) illud cubiculum? — Non inibo; nam fumat (inest enim fumus). — Saluto te mane, domina. — Non intro venies (*or* venire vis)? — Nonne resides (assides *or* assidere vis)? — Vero, in sellâ illâ magnâ resi-

dam. — Dicesne mihi (*or* Visne mihi dicere), quid de fratre tuo factum sit? — Tibi dicam (Dicere tibi non nolo). — Hic est sella, in quā sæpe residebat. — Quando mortuus est? — Supremum diem obiit abhinc duos annos. — Id vehementer doleo (Hoc est mihi permagno dolori). — Numquid omnem tuam pecuniam expendisti? — Ego non omnem expendi. — Quanta tibi reliqua est (Quantum ejus reliquum habes)? — Haud multum ejus reliquum habeo; unum tantum florenum reliquum habeo. — Quantam pecuniam sorores tuæ reliquam habent? — Tres tantum thaleros reliquos habent. — Satisne tibi reliquum est pecuniæ, quā sartori tuo debita solvas? — Est mihi quidem satis reliquum, quā ei debita solvam; sed si ei solvero, non mihi reliquum erit nisi pauxillum (*or* paulum tantum reliquum habebo). — Quantam pecuniam reliquam habebunt fratres tui. — Reliquos habebunt centum thaleros. — Loquerisne ad avunculum meum, si eum videbis (vides *or* videas)? — Si eum videbo (video *or* videam), ad eum loquar (cum eo colloquar). — Ibisne ambulatum cras (Spatiaberisne crastino tempore)? — Si tempestas est (erit) serena, ambulatum ibo; si autem mala est (erit, sit), domi me tenebo. — Solvesne sutori tuo debitum? — Solvam, quod ei debeam, si pecuniam meam cras accipio (*or* accipiam). — Cur tu abire vis? — Si pater tuus veniet (venit *or* veniat), non abibo; si autem non veniet, necesse est, ut abeam. — Quin assidis (considis, residis)? — Si tu mecum manebis (manere vis), residam; si autem abibis, tecum unā simul discedam. — Ecquid tu liberos meos amabis? — Si bene morati assiduique sunt, eos amabo; si autem segnes nequamque sunt, ego eos despicatui habebo atque pœnā afficiam. — Licetne mihi hoc pacto loqui (Estne fas, me his verbis loqui)? — Non erras (Non nefas est).

154. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUINQUAGESIMA QUARTA.

Quando in Italiam ibis? — Ibo, simul ut linguam Italicam didicero. — Quando fratres tui in Germaniam proficiscentur? — Proficiscentur eo, simul ut Germanice sciverint (linguæ Germanicæ scientes fuerint). — Quando (eam) discent? — Discent (eam), quum præceptorem idoneum invenerint. — Quanta pecunia nobis erit reliqua, quum equi nostri pretium persolverimus? — Quum id solverimus, nihil reliquum habebi-

mus nisi centum thaleros. — Nuntiavistine fratri meo, me pilentum vendere coatum fuisse? — Id ei nuntiavi. — Dedistine litteras ad eundem hominem, ad quem pater meus dederat? — Litteras non ad eundem dedi, verum (sed) ad alium. — Ecquid tibi jam rescripserunt? — Adhuc non (*or* Nondum) rescripserunt; spero autem, me hebdomade proximā litteras accipere (*or* accepturum). — Num tu unquam hominem hujusmodi vidisti? — Nunquam vidi hominem ejusmodi (Ego talem hominem nunquam vidi). — Spectavistine (Vidistine) jam templum nostrum? — Nondum spectavi. — Ubi (Quo loco) situm est? — Extra urbem situm est. Si (id) spectare (videre) vis, tecum unā simul ibo, ut id tibi monstrem. — Quis adest? — Ego sum. — Qui sunt illi homines? — Peregrini sunt, qui tecum colloqui volunt (*or* qui te convenire cupiunt). — Cujates sunt? — Americani sunt. — Ubi fuistis, ex quo ego vos non vidi? — Ad litus longum tempus commorati sumus, quoad (donec) navis quædam advenit, quæ nos in Francogalliam portavit. — Visne narrationem tuam persequi (continuare)? — Vix nos in Francogalliam advenimus, quum ad regem deducti sumus, qui nos benigne excepit, nosque in patriam propriam remisit. — Quem quæris? — Puerculum meum quæro. — Si eum invenire vis, eundum tibi est in hortos; nam ibi est. — Horti ampli (spatiosi) sunt, et invenire eum non potero, nisi mihi dicas (indices), quā in parte hortorum sit. — Sub arbore sedet, sub quā (ubi) nos heri residebamus (considebamus). — Nunc eum inveniam.

155. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUINQUAGESIMA QUINTA.

Cur liberi tui non in Francogalliā habitant (incolunt)? — Linguam Anglicam discere volunt (cupiunt); ea est causa (*or* en causa), cur (propter quam) in Angliā habitant. — Quā de causā tu foco assides (ad *or* juxta focum resides)? — Algeo manibus et pedibus; en causa (ea est causa), propter quam foco assideam (apud carbones sedeam). — Quo (cibo) vescuntur homines, qui juxta litus habitant (incolunt)? — Piscibus solum vescuntur. — Cur tu non amplius venatum is? — Ego totum hesternum diem venabar (in venatione eram), et nihil necavi nisi unam avem turpem; en causa (hæc est causa), cur non amplius venatum ibo. — Cur non edis (ēs *or* manducas)? — Non edam (manducabo), prius-

quam cibum appetam (libenter sumam). — Quā de causā frater tuus tantum cibi sumit (tam edax est)? — Cibum libenter sumit; en causa, cur tam edax est. — Si libros, quos tibi commodavi, perlegisti (perlegeris), quid est, cur mihi eos non reddas? — Ego eos denuo (iterum *or* rursus) legere cogito; en causa, cur eos tibi adhuc non reddiderim; sed tibi eos reddam, simul ut eos iterum perlegero. — Quin mihi vestes meas attulisti? — Non confectæ (paratæ) erant; quā de causā (*or* quapropter) eas non attuli; nunc autem (eas) affero; eccas adsunt. — Tu pensum tuum didicisti; quid est, cur (quod) soror tua suum non didicerit? — Ea cum matre meā simul ambulatum abiit; hæc causa est, cur id (= pensum suum) non didicit (didicerit); discet id autem cras. — Quando tu exercitia (*or* dictata) mea emendabis (corriges)? — Emendabo ea tum, quum mihi illa sororis tuæ attuleris. — Putasne, te in iis peccavisse (offendisse)? — Nescio (Non *or* Haud scio). — Si peccaveris, pensis tuis non bene studuisti; pensa enim bene ediscenda sunt, si ea vitiis carere (sine vitiis esse) vis. — Nihil interest; si mihi ea hodie non emendas (corrigis), ea ante diem crastinum non discam. — Oportet tu in exercitiis (dictatis) tuis scribendis non offendas (pecces); nam omnia habes, quæ tibi opus sint, ut ea omnino vitiis pura scribas (peragas).

156. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUINQUAGESIMA SEXTA.

Quomodo se habet (valet) pater tuus? — Non valet nisi sic satis (Parum tantum valet). — Quomodo se habet æger tuus? — Aliquantulo melius se habet hodie, quam heri (*or* hesterno tempore). — Estne diu, ex quo fratres tuos non vidisti? — Vidi eos abhinc duos dies (duobus diebus *or* ante hos duos dies). — Quomodo valent? — Admodum bene valent. — Tu quomodo te habes? — Ego me satis bene habeo (Mediocriter valeo). — Quam diu est, cum frater tuus linguam Germanicam discit? — Tres tantum menses sunt, ex quo eam discit (Tertium solum mensem eam discit). — Ecquid eā jam loquitur? — Vero, eā jam loquitur, legit, scribitque, scientius quidem, quam patruelis tuus, qui eam per hos quinque annos discebat (discit). — Diune est, ex quo (cum *or* quod) ab avunculo meo nuntium accepisti? — Vix tres menses sunt, cum nuntium ab eo accepi. — Quo loco tum (eo tempore)

morabatur? — Berolini morabatur; in præsenti (*or* nunc) autem Londini est. — Colloquerisne libenter cum patruo meo? — Vero, ego libentissime cum eo colloquor; illud autem mihi non jucundum est, quod me illudat (derideat). — Quam ob rem te illudit (deridet)? — Me ideo deridet, quia male loquor (Me illudit, quippe qui inepte loquar). — Quid causæ est, quod frater tuus amicis careat? — (Amicos sibi) nullos habet propterea, quod neminem non carpit (*or* quod omnes cavillatur). — Quomodo tu tibi victum paras (quæritas)? — Ego mihi victum laborando (opere faciendo) quærito. — Ecquid amicus tuus victum sibi scribendo quæritat (parat)? — Quæritat eum dicendo et scribendo. — Num homines hice nobiles victum sibi laborando (opere faciendo) parant (quæritant)? — Non sibi victum ullâ re faciendâ parant; nam nimis segnes ad laborandum sunt (segniores sunt, quam ut *or* qui laborent). — Videsne, quid fecerit? — Video. — Scivitne (Sciebatne), te advenisse? — Non scivit (Non sciebat *or* Nesciebat). — Egone tibi suasi, ut scriberes? — Me non rogavisti. — Ecquis (Num quis) ita cæcus est, ut hoc non intelligat? — Nemo ita cæcus est. — Hortabaturne (Hortatusne est) nos, ut librum ipsius legeremus? — Vero, nos hortabatur (hortatus est), ut eum studiose legeremus. — Eratne in eo, ut evaderet? — Non erat. — Teneri non potuit, quin evaderet. — Nihil eum impedire potuit, quo minus evaderet.

157. DICTATA CENTESIMA QUINQUAGESIMA SEPTIMA.

Quâ re faciendâ (*or* Quomodo) tu pecuniam illam lucratus (consecutus *or* nactus) es? — Ego eam laborando (*or* operando) lucratus (*or* nactus) sum. — Quid de vino tuo fecisti? — Ego id super mensam profudi. — Ubi est tuum? — In cubiculo meo parvulo super mensam magnam est; sed non est tibi de eo bibendum (*or* sed cave, ne de eo bibas); nam servandum est mihi patris causâ, qui ægrotus est. — Esne paratus ad proficiscendum unâ mecum? — Paratus sum. — Cur tu hominem illum illudis (derides)? — Non est mihi voluntas ejus illudendi. — Te rogo, ne id facias; nam si eum illudas (derideas), pectus ejus (*or* ei) vulnerabis (*or* percuties). — Quam ob rem hominem illum patibulo affixerunt (arbori infelici suspenderunt)? — Patibulo eum propterea affixerunt, quod aliquem necaverat. — Suspenderuntne arbori infelici

hominem, qui fratri tuo equum surripuit (equum a fratre tuo furatus est)? — Pœnā eum quidem affecerunt, sed non patibulo affixerunt; nam nostrā in terrā (patriā) neminem patibulo affigere solent, nisi (*or* præter) latrones (*or* latrones solos arbori infelici suspenderunt). — Ubi tu togam meam invenisti? — Ego eam in conclavi cæruleo inveni; de clavo pendebat. — Visne pileum meum arbori (*or* de arbore) suspendere? — Volo eum de eo suspendere. — Dubitasne de eo, quod tibi dico? — Non dubito (In dubium non voco). — Dubitasne id, quod ille homo tibi narravit? — Dubito (In dubium voco); sæpe enim mihi, quod non verum fuit (erat), narravit. — Cur tu promissa tua non servasti (effecisti)? — Ego non jam scio, quid vobis promiserim (pollicitus sim). — Nobis nonne promisisti, te nos die Jovis ad concentum deducturum? — Confiteor (Fateor), me hoc promisisse (pollicitum esse); sed locus concentui non datus est. — Fateturne frater tuus errorem (*or* vitium) suum? — Fatetur. — Quid ait (dicit) avunculus tuus de illā epistolā? — Ait quidem, eam optime scriptam esse; sed tamen fatetur, se erravisse, quod eam ad centurionem misisset. — Confiterisne nunc errorem tuum? — Fateor, illud (*or* id) esse errorem (*or* vitium). — Emistine tandem equum, quem emere voluisti? — Quomodo ego equum emerem, si pecuniam comparare non possim? — Nisi mihi debitum solvis (solveris), ego ire non potero. — Oportuitne me heri rus ire? — Te hoc facere oportuit (*or* Id facere debebas *or* debuisti). — Tu filium tuum instituere atque erudire debuisti. — Hæc epistola tibi scribenda erat (*or* fuit). — O quam facile erat (fuit), pensum tuum discere! — Longe utilius fuit (erat) domi se tenere. — Novistine illum hominem? — Quisquis est, nosse ego eum non cupio. — Utcunque sese res habet, officium tuum non servasti. — Sive hinc abis, sive manes, mihi perinde est. — Scribendum mihi erit, sive ægrotus sum, sive valeo.

158. DICTATA CENTESIMA DUODESEXAGESIMA.

Nonne miraris factum amici mei (*or* id quod amicus meus fecit)? — Id (illud) valde demiror. — Quid filius tuus miratur? — Fortitudinem tuam miratur. — Dolesne, quod litteras ad patruum meum dedisti (*or* te litteras ad patruum meum dedisse)? — Immo potius id gaudeo (lætor). — Quid doles

(Quid tibi dolori est)? — Non doleo inimici mei felicitate, verum amici mei morte. — Quomodo se habent fratres tui? — Bene (commode, belle, recte) se his paucis diebus habebant. — Gaudesne hoc (Estne tibi hoc gaudio)? — Gaudeo audire, quod commode valeant. — Num tu Saxo es? — Non vero, ego Borussus sum. — Ecquid Borussi linguam Francogallicam libenter discunt? — Vero, eam libenter discunt. — Loquunturne Borussi Germanice æque bene (belle), atque Saxones? — Saxones et Borussi linguâ Germanicâ bene loquuntur (utuntur); Austriaci autem eam non pure efferunt. — Quem hebdomadis diem agunt (*or* festum habent) Turcæ? — Festum habent diem Veneris; Christiani autem diem solis, Judæi diem Saturni, et Æthiopes (diem) natalem suum agunt. — Habetne soror tua tæniam meam auream? — Non habet. — Quis lagenam meam magnam habet? — Soror tua eam habet. — Videsne (Visisne) tu aliquando matrem tuam? — Sæpe eam video (viso). — Quando tu sororem tuam vidisti (visisti)? — Vidi (Videbam) eam abhinc tres menses et dimidium. — Quis nuces meas bellas habet? — Soror tua bona eas habet. — Ecquid illa et furcas meas argenteas habet? — Eas non habet. — Quid frater tuus queritur? — Queritur, dextram ei dolere (quod dextrâ manu ægrotet). — Quam lagenam sororcula tua fregit? — Fregit illam, quam mater mea heri emerat (comparaverat). — Utrum tu de meo jusculo, an de matris meæ, sorbuisti. — Non sorbui nec de tuo nec de matris tuæ, verum de illo sororis meæ bonæ. — Vidistine mulierem, quæ hodie mane apud me (mecum) fuit? — Eam non vidi. — Fecitne sibi mater tua aliquid doloris? — Nihil sibi doloris effecit. — Ægrotasne naso (naribus)? — Non ego naso, verum alterâ manu ægroto. — Num tibi digitum vulnerasti? — Non vero, domina; manum vulneravi (incidi). — Visne mihi pennam (calamum) dare? — Volo tibi unam dare. — Visne (habere) hanc, an illam? — Neutram volo. — Quam (habere *or* possidere) vis? — Illam volo, quam soror tua habet. — Potesne hac pennâ scribere? — Possum eâ scribere. — Tenebisne te domi, an equitabis extra urbem, an pilento (rhedâ, curru) vectaberis? — Domi me tenebo. — Abluitne sibi manus an pedes? — Utrumque factum est. — Didicit pensum suum, an non? — Didicit. — Non didicit. — Næ tu vehementer erras, si te laudatum iri putas, nisi assiduus es (sis).

159 DICTATA CENTESIMA UNDESEXAGESIMA.

Haberesne pecuniam, si pater tuus hic adesset? — Haberem (ejus nonnullum), si adesset. — Ecquid tu contentus fuisses, si ego libros aliquot habuissem? — Valde ego contentus fuissem, si tu nonnullos habuisses. — Si ille bene moratus fuisset, ego eum certe (profecto) non modo (*or* solum) laudavissem, sed etiam (*or* et) amavissem, honoravissem, atque præmiis ornavissem. — Laudaremur nos, si pensa imperata (dictata *or* exercitia) perageremus (scriberemus)? — Si ea sine ullo vitio (mendo) perageretis (scriberetis), laudaremini et præmiis ornaremini. — Ecquid frater meus pœnâ non affectus esset (fuisset), si pensa sua imperata peregisset (dictata sua scripsisset)? — Non affectus esset pœnâ, si ea peregisset (scripsisset). — Laudatane esset soror tua, nisi (*or* ni) sollers (perita) fuisset? — Ea certe non laudata esset (fuisset), nisi solertissima fuisset, et nisi a primâ luce usque ad vesperam laboravisset. — Daresne mihi aliquid (dono), si optime (egregie) moratus essem? — Si optime moratus esses, et si diligenter laborares, ego tibi librum pulchrum darem. — Dedisses litteras ad sororem tuam, si ego Dresdam profectus essem? — Vero, ego et litteras ad eam dedissem, et ei aliquid pulchri misissem, si tu eo profectus esses. — Loquererisne, si ego tibi aures darem? — Loquerer, si mihi aures dares, et si mihi responderes. — Locutusne esses ad matrem meam, si eam vidisses? — Si eam vidissem, ad eam locutus essem, eamque rogavissem, ut mihi horologium aureum pulchrum mitteret. — Si homines illi venirent, dandum tibi esset iis aliquid ad bibendum. — Hoc si facere posset, illud faceret. — Rusticus quidam, quum observasset, senes perspicillis ad legendum usitari solere, ad hominem optices gnarum adiit, et unum postulavit. Rusticus tum librum aliquem in manum sumpsit, et quum eum aperuisset, non bonum, inquit, esse (perspicillum). — Homo optices gnarus deinde aliud ex iis, quæ in tabernâ suâ præstantissima reperire posset, naso illius imposuit; sed quum rusticus tum etiam legere non quiret, "Mi amice," inquit illi mercator, "fortasse tune artis legendi prorsus imperitus es?" "Si peritus essem," respondit rusticus, "non opus mihi esset perspicillo tuo." — Semper ego mihi blanditus sum, frater mi carissime, te me tantopere amare, quantopere tu a me amaris (*or* ego te amo); sed nunc me falsum esse perspectum habeo. Scire velim,

quid causæ sit, cur tu sine me ambulatum ires? — Comperi (*or* Accepi), soror mea carissima, te mihi succensere, quod sine te ambulatum ierim. — Affirmo tibi, si scivissem, te non ægrotam esse, me te arcessiturum (abducturum) fuisse; sed medicum de valetudine tuâ interrogavi, qui mihi respondit, te his octo diebus lecto affixam fuisse.

160. DICTATA CENTESIMA SEXAGESIMA.

Age, facitne soror tua progressus? — Progrederetur, si æque assidua (diligens) esset, atque (ac *or* quam) tu. — Mihi blandiris. — Affirmo tibi, me magnopere contentum futurum (esse), si omnes meorum discipulorum laborarent, quantum tu (*or* tam laboriosi essent, quam tu). — Quin tu hodie in publicum prodis? — In publicum prodirem, si tempestas esset serena (*or* si sudum esset cœlum). — Eritne mihi cras voluptas tui videndi? — Veniam, si vis (si hoc tibi placet). — Aderone ego hic (hoc loco) etiam tum, quum tu adveneris? — Eritne tibi occasio in urbem eundi hodie vesperi? — Haud scio, sed ego nunc eo irem, si mihi esset potestas (opportunitas). — Non esset tibi tantum voluptatis (tanta felicitas), neque tam beatus (felix) esses, nisi (*or* ni) amicos et libros haberes. — Nunquam humanum genus in vitæ curriculo tam multas res adversas experirentur, neque tam infelix (miserum) essent, si non tam (*or* minus) cæcum essent. — Non tibi esset illa (*or* talis *or* tanta) erga pauperes inhumanitas, nec precibus eorum tam surdus esses, si tu ipse aliquamdiu in miseriis fuisses (*or* versatus esses). — Hoc non diceres, si me familiariter utereris. — Quin soror tua exercitia (dictata) sua peregit (scripsit)? — Peregisset (Scripsisset) ea, nisi retardata (impedita) esset. — Si plus laborares, sæpiusque loquereris, tu melius loquereris. — Affirmo tibi (Persuadeas tibi volo), domine, me diligentius (melius) disciturum, si mihi esset amplius spatii (temporis *or* otii). — Non de te, sed de sorore tuâ queror. — Non fuisset tibi causa de eâ querendi, si habuisset spatium ad perficiendum, quod ei faciendum (discendum) mandavisses. — Quid dixit tibi frater meus? — Dixit mihi, se ominum humani generis beatissimum futurum esse, si linguæ Latinæ, quæ omnium linguarum pulcherrima sit, sciens esset. — Scire velim, quid sit, quod ego non æque scienter (eleganter) tecum loqui possim? — En causa (*or* Dicam tibi causam): Tu æque scienter loquereris atque ego, si non tam timidus (minus timi-

dus) esses. Sin autem pensis tuis majore cum curā studuisses, loqui non metueres; nam, ut bene loquamur, discendum est (diligentia adhibenda est); et par est, ut, qui non bene scit, quod didicerit, timidus sit. — Tu non tam timidus (minus timidus) esses, si tibi persuasum esset, te non peccaturum. — (Homines) sunt, qui rideant, quum ego loquor. — Homines inurbani sunt; tu modo itidem rideas oportet, et te illudere desinent. — Si faceres, quod ego facio, bene (scienter, eleganter, belle) loquereris. — Operam te quotidie paulisper studiis dare oportet, et loqui brevi non amplius timebis. — Contendam (Enitar), ut consilium tuum sequar (consilio tuo obtemperem); stat mihi enim, quotidie mane horā sextā e lecto surgere, exinde usque ad decimam litteris operam dare, et mature me in lectum conferre. — Filius tuus assiduor esset vellem. — Diligentiores simus. — Consilio amicorum suorum aures dent (auscultent), neve ad verba sapientiæ surdi sint. — Immitemus optimos et sapientissimos humani generis (*or* inter homines). — Scisne, quid hoc sit? — Nescio (Haud scio), quid sit. — Nescio, utrum in publicum proditurus, an domi permansurus sit. — Scisne, utrum litteras suas concluserit, an non? — Haud scio. — Quæso, ne scribas. — Taceas (*or* Tace), sis.

161. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNA ET SEXAGESIMA.

Ubi est consobrinus tuus? — In culinā est. — Quo loco mater tua est? — In templo est (Sacris publicis adest). — Ivitne soror tua in ludum litterarum? — Vero, eo ivit. — Itne (Itatne) mater tua sæpe in templum? — Eo itat quotidie et mane et vesperi. — Eo itat, simul ac e lecto surrexit. — Quotā horā surgit (surgere solet)? — Sole oriente surgit (surgere solet). — Isne hodie in ludum litterarum? — Eo. — Quid in ludo (in scholā) discis? — Disco ibi artem legendi, scribendi atque dicendi (loquendi). — Ubi est amita (matertera) tua? — Comœdiam (fabulam) spectatum ivit cum sororculā meā. — Num sorores tuæ hodie vesperi drama musicum auditum eunt (*or* ibunt)? — Non vero, domina; in ludum saltatorium eunt (ibunt). — Venatumne ivit pater tuus? — Venatum ire non potuit; nam gravedine laborat. — Delectarisne venatum ire (*or* venationibus)? — Piscari malo (potius *or* magis), quam venatum ire. — Estne pater tuus ruri etiam nunc? — Vero, domina; est ibi etiam nunc. — Quid agit ibi? — Vena-

tum ibi et piscatum it (ire solet). — Esne venatus (*or* Venabarisne), quum ruri esses? — Venabar vero totum diem. — Quam diu tu apud matrem tuam commoratus es? — Commorabar apud eam totum vesperum. — Diune est, cum in castello (non) adfuisti? — Hebdomade præteritā ibi adfui. — Invenistine ibi multos homines? — Immo ego ibi nisi tres personas neminem inveni (Tres tantum personas ibi inveni). — Qui erant illæ tres personæ? — Comes, comitissa, et eorum filia erant. — Ecquid hæ puellæ æque bonæ (bene moratæ) sunt, atque (ac, quam) fratres earum? — Immo potius meliores illis sunt. — Possuntne sorores tuæ Germanice loqui? — Haud possunt (Non queunt); sed discunt. — Ecquid tu matri tuæ attulisti? — Vero, ego ei bona poma pulchramque scriblitam attuli. — Quid vobis attulit sororis (*or* fratris) filia? — Attulit nobis bona cerasa, bona fraga, atque bona mala Persica. — Amasne (Appetisne) mala Persica? — Valde (ea) amo (appeto). — Quot mala Persica tibi dedit vicina tua? — Dedit mihi eorum plus viginti. — Edistine hoc anno multa cerasa? — Vero, ego eorum multa edi (manducavi). — Num reperta sunt anno præterito (proxime elapso) multa pira? — Non multa (Pauca tantum) reperta sunt. — Legistine hodie acta diurna (*or* acta hodierna)? — Legi. — Inestne quidquam novi? — Nihil ego novi in iis legi (*or* Ego nihil, quod novi inesset, legi). — Editne, ut vivat, anne vivit, ut edat? — Vivit, ut edat. — Cur tu linguæ Latinæ operam das? — Operam eæ do, ut eā legam, loquar, atque scribam (ut eam legere, loqui scribereque possim). — Estne tam nequam (tam malis moribus), ut pœnā afficiatur necesse sit (*or* ut pœnā afficiendus sit)? — Est. — Hortatusne te est pater tuus, ne fabulam spectatum ires? — Me rogavit atque obsecravit, ne adirem. — Ægrotus erat hesterno tempore, ut ad scholam venire non posset. — Timesne, ne pluat hodie? — Immo potius timeo, ut (ne non) pluat. — Vereturne frater tuus Latine (linguā Latinā) loqui? — Veretur; est enim adhuc linguæ imperitus. — Oportet diligentior sit, ut facilius loqui possit. — Ego tibi hoc consilii do, non quod (*or* quia) te eo egere arbitror, sed ut tibi animum addam. — Teneri (*or* Facere) non possum, quin ad te scribam (litteras ad te dem). — Non est dubium, quin recte loquare. — Ego non dubito, quin cras adventurus sit. — Tene impedire potest, quin (quominus) progrediare? — Me non impedire potest. — Teneri non potuit, quin fleret (lacrimas effunderet), quum audivisset, te tam miserum tamque infelicem esse. — Quid nos impedire potest (possit), quin

(*or* quominus) beati (felices) simus? — Nihil obstat, quominus tam beati simus, quam qui beatissimi.

162. DICTATA CENTESIMA ALTERA ET SEXAGESIMA.

Visne hodie apud nos cœnare? — Libentissime (*or* Cum multâ voluntate). — Quid vobis ad cœnandum est (Quid habetis, quo cœnemus)? — Nobis est bonum jusculum, bona caro tum recens tum sale condita, atque cibaria salsa. — Appetisne (Amasne) lactentia? — Ego ea libentius manduco, quam quævis inter omnia alia cibaria. — Esne paratus ad cœnandum? — Paratus sum. — Cogitasne brevi proficisci? — Ego hebdomade proximâ proficisci cogito. — Facisne iter solus? — Non, domina, ego unâ cum avunculo (patruo) meo iter facio. — Utrum iter facitis pedestre, an curru (pilento) vehimini? — Curru vehimur. — Venistisne alicui obviam in vestro (ad) Berolinum itinere? — Vero, obviam venimus multis viatoribus. — In quâ re tu hac æstate tempus consumere cogitas? — Ego iter breve conficere cogito (Stat mihi iter breve facere). — Ivistine multum (longe) pedibus in ultimo tuo itinere? — Ego quidem pedibus ire valde (vehementer) delector; sed patruus meus pilento vectari gaudet. — Ecquid is pedibus ire nolebat? — A primo pedibus ire volebat, sed, quum aliquot gradus fecisset (*or* aliquot gradibus factis), pilentum ascendere voluit, ut ego pedibus non longule (multum) ierim (*or* quapropter ego pedibus non longe progressus sum). — Quid agebatis hodie in scholâ? — Auscultati sumus nostro præceptori, qui multa de Dei benignitate verba faciebat. — Quid dixit? — Quum dixisset: "Deus est auctor et cœli (cœlorum) et terræ (mundi); reverentia Domini initium sapientiæ est." "Repetitio," tum inquit, "studiorum mater est, et bona memoria permagnum est Dei beneficium." — Quin tu diutius in terrâ Batavorum moratus es? — Quum ibi essem, sumptus ad victum tanti erant (fiebant), ut pecunia, quâ diutius mansissem, mihi non satis esset (non sufficeret). — Qualis (Cujusmodi) erat tempestas, quum tu in itinere Vindobonam (versus) esses? — Pessima erat tempestas; nam cœlum erat procellosum, et ninxit, et vehementer pluit. — Ut mihi otium sit ad librum legendum! — Utinam mihi esset opportunitas faciendi id, quod tu fecisti! — Utinam ille ne litteras illas scripsisset! — Similiter facis ac si mœstus sis; quid tristis es?

163. DICTATA CENTESIMA SEXAGESIMA TERTIA.

Quid agis totum diem istis in hortis? — Ego in iis ambulo (spatior). — Quid inest, quod te attrahat (alliciat)? — Cantus avium me attrahit (allicit). — Ecquæ luciniæ insunt? — Insunt vero aliquot, et eorum cantūs harmonia me permulcet (admiratione afficit). — Quā re faciendā sororis tuæ (fratris tui) filia tempus fallit suā in solitudine? — Multum legit et litteras ad matrem suam mittit. — In quā re patruus tuus tempus fallit suā in solitudine? — Versatur in arte pingendi et in chymicā. — Mercaturam facit non amplius? — Non amplius facit (Non amplius negotiatur); nam senior (*or* ætate gravior) est, quam ut hoc faciat. — Cur se rebus tuis immiscet? — Alienis negotiis se immiscere non solet; meis autem se idcirco immiscet, quia me amat. — Jussit te magister tuus hodie pensum tuum iterare? — Jussit me id iterare (repetere, retractare). — Idne scivisti? — Vero, id mediocriter bene scivi (didici). — Scripsistine etiam (quoque) aliquot dictata? — Scripsi vero nonnulla; sed quid, quæso, tibi cum illā re (quid hoc tuā refert)? — Non ego me negotiis immiscere soleo, quæ nihil ad me attineant (quæ meā nihil intersint); sed te tantopere amo, ut meā multum referat, quod facias. — Ecquis de te laborat (Esne tu alicui curæ)? — Nemo de me laborat (Ego curæ sum nemini); nam non operæ pretium sum (non curā dignus sum). — Homines prudentes non modo munditiæ, sed etiam valetudinis causā, immunditiam vitant, sæpeque lavantur. — Emesne illum equum? — Ego eum emam, quamvis non sit Anglicus. — Quamquam ille patruelis meus est, tamen me non visum venit. — Quamvis (*or* Licet) non divites sint, tamen beneficentissimi sunt. — Nescio, utrum domi sit, annon. — Quæritur, utrum hoc facturus sit, annon.

164. DICTATA CENTESIMA SEXAGESIMA QUARTA.

Quo morbo mortua est soror tua? — Mortua est febri. — Quomodo se habet frater tuus? — Frater meus non jam (non amplius) in vitā est. — Mortuus est (Diem suum obiit) tribus abhinc mensibus. — Miror hoc; valebat enim admodum bene

æstate præteritâ, quum ego ruri essem. — Quo morbo obiit? — Apoplexiâ obiit (mortuus est). — Quomodo valet amici tui mater? — Parum valet; in febrim nudius tertius incidit, et hodie mane febris (motus febriculosus) iterum (denuo) accessit. — Laboratne febri intermittente? — Non scio (Nescio); sæpius autem frigidæ febris accessibus afficitur (corripitur). — Quid factum est mulieri, quam apud matrem tuam videbam? — Mortua est hodie mane apoplexiâ. — Eratne vinum anni proxime elapsi vendibile? — Parum vendibile erat; facilius autem anno proximo emptores inveniet; erit (*or* reperietur) enim ejus magna copia, neque carum erit. — Cur ostium aperis (recludis)? — Non vides, quantum fumi hic inest? — Non video (observo); sed fenestram potius, quam ostium, aperire (patefacere) te oportet. — Fenestra non facile aperitur; en causa, cur ostium aperiam (patefaciam). — Quando id claudes? — Id claudam (observam), simul ut non amplius fumi fuerit. — Quin tu vasa illa vitrea pulchra in mensulâ statuis (collocas)? — Si ea in mensulâ illâ statuam, frangentur. — Itabatisne sæpe piscatum, quum illâ in terrâ essetis? — Nos persæpe et piscatum et venatum itabamus. — Tu, si nobiscum rus eas (ibis), castellum patris mei videbis. — Benigne dicis (*or* Jam gratia est), domine; ego illud castellum jam jam vidi (spectavi). — Tune talis (is) est, ut hoc facere possis? — Minime ego ille (*or* tam) ferreus sum; neque tu is es, qui, qui sim, nescias. — Nos ii sumus, qui nullâ re nisi libertate acquiescere queamus (sciamus). — Num qui sunt, qui hoc (id) non ita se habere affirment? — Nulli sunt. — Num quis (quisquam) est, qui non intelligat? — Nemo est. — Multi sunt, qui te errare (falli) dixerint (dicerent). — Habebatne frater tuus aliquid novi, quod tibi (ad te) scriberet? — Vero, multa habebat, quæ mihi (ad me) scriberet. — Tu nonne felix es, qui librum hujusmodi inveneris? — Ego tam felix sum, quam qui felicissimus. — Incepitne ille scribere hodie mane? — Non incepit, quippe qui atramento careret. — Idoneusne est frater tuus, qui doceat? — Idoneus non est, qui doceat, sed qui scribat. — Estne dignus, qui imperet? — Est vero tam dignus, quam qui dignissimus. — Ecquid præceptor tuus sæpe in publicum prodibat? — In publicum prodibat, quotiescunque vacabat (quoties ei otium esset). — Fuitne filius meus diligens (studiosus)? — Vero, facile omnium princeps fuit, quam se cunque in partem dedisset.

165. DICTATA CENTESIMA SEXAGESIMA QUINTA.

Quando tu patris mei castellum videbas? — Videbam id anno proxime elapso, quum in itinere essem (*or* iter faciens). — Tam pulchrum est, quam quod ego adhuc castellorum pulcherrimum spectavi (Est unum de castellis, quæ ego adhuc pulcherrima conspexi); videtur (prospicitur) e longinquo. — Quid hoc (id, illud) dicitur? — Hoc omnino non dicitur. — Hoc intelligi non potest (non intelligibile est *or* in intelligentiam non cadit). — Ecquid non omnia linguâ tuâ dici (exprimi) possunt? — Omnia quidem eâ exprimi possunt, sed non similiter ac tuâ. — Surgesne cras e lecto bene mane? — Hoc ex tempore pendebit; si mature cubitum eam (iero), bene mane (e lecto) surgam; sin vero tarde (sero) me in lectum conferam (contulero), tarde et surgam. — Amabisne liberos meos? — Si bene morati sunt, eos amabo. — Visne cras apud nos cœnare? — Si vis apparare cibaria, quæ appetam, cœnabo vobiscum. — Legistine jam litteras, quas hodie mane accepisti (*or* quæ tibi hodie mane redditæ erant)? — Ego eas nondum (adhuc non) aperui. — Quando eas leges? — Legam eas, simul ut (quum primum) mihi erit otium. — Cui usui est hoc? — Nulli usui est (Nihil prodest). — Cur id sustulisti? — Id sustuli, ut tibi monstrem. — Potesne mihi dicere, quid sit? — Dicere tibi non possum; nam ipse nescio; sed fratrem meum interrogabo, qui tibi dicet. — Quo loco id invenisti? — Inveni id ad ripam, prope silvam (*or* prope a silvâ). — Perspexerasne id e longinquo (*or* eminus)? — Non necesse erat, ut id e longinquo perspicerem; præteribam enim juxta fluvium. — Vidistine unquam tale quid (quidquam hujusmodi)? — Nunquam. — Estne utile multum loqui (Ecquid multum loqui prodest)? — Si quis linguam aliquam peregrinam discere vult, utile est, ut permultum loquatur (prodest ei permultum loqui). — Prodestne (Refertne) tantum scribere, quantum loqui? — Utilius est loqui, quam scribere; si quis autem linguam aliquam peregrinam discere vult, utrumque faciat oportet. — Prodestne alicui scribere omnia, quæ dicat (*or* quæ dicatur). — Hoc prorsus inutile est. — Ambulatne patruus tuus sæpe? — Vero, quotidie mane ambulat, ante quam jentat, quod hoc salutare sit (*or* esse dicat). — Cur (Quam ob rem) ex academiâ expulsus (relegatus) est? — Expulsus est, quod ægrotaret *or* ægrotus esse diceretur). —

Quid gloriatus est? — Gloriatus est, se non modo pensa, quæ hoc in libro continerentur, omnia edidicisse (memoriæ mandavisse), sed semetipsum et exercitia (dictata), quæ ad unumquodque eorum pertinerent, suâ manu scripsisse. — Quid imperavit tibi magister tuus, ut facias? — Imperabat mihi, ut librum, quem mihi commodavisset, ipsi afferrem (apportarem).

166. DICTATA CENTESIMA SEXAGESIMA SEXTA.

Unde tu istum librum sumpsisti? — Sumpsi eum ex cubiculo amicæ tuæ. — Licetne (Estne fas) alienos libros absumere (auferre)? — Bene quidem scio, id non (*or* nemini) licere; sed mihi eo opus erat, nec hoc tibi, spero, displicebit; nam tibi eum reddam, simul ut perlegero. — Quinam vocaris? — Nomen est mihi Guilelmus (Guilelmo *or* Guilelmi). — Quid sorori tuæ nomen est? — Nomen est ei Leonora (Leonora appellatur). — Quam ob rem Carolus sororem suam accusat (incusat)? — Quod illa pennas ipsius abstulerit. — Quem hi liberi incusant? — Franciscus Leonoram, et Leonora Franciscum incusant. — Uter eorum jure (recte) incusat (queritur)? — Uterque eorum errat; Leonora enim librum Francisci, et Franciscus librum Leonoræ auferre volunt. — Cui tu Schilleri opera commodavisti? — Ego primum eorum volumen Wilhelmo, alterum autem Elisabethæ commodavi. — Quid illud dicitur Francogallice? — Id non dicitur Francogallice. — Quid vocatur hoc Germanice? — Dicitur (vocatur) hoc pacto. — Attulitne tibi jam sartor togam tuam novam? — Vero, eam mihi jam attulit; sed mihi parum convenit (non bene sedet). — Conficietne tibi aliam? — Necesse est, ut mihi aliam conficiat; nam dono hancce dabo, potius quam eam geram (gestabo). — Visne illo equo usitari? — Eo non usitabor. — Cur eo non usitaberis? — Quod mihi parum convenit. — Solvesne ejus pretium (Visne pro eo solvere)? — Pretium ejus solvam potius, quam eum usurpabo. — Cujus sunt libri illi pulchri? — Guilelmi sunt. — Quis ei eos dedit? — Pater ejus bonus. — Legetne eos? — Lacerabit eos potius, quam eos leget. — Certene scis, fore, ut eos non legat? — Certe scio (Hoc mihi persuasum est); nam is ipse mihi dixit (affirmavit).

167. DICTATA CENTESIMA SEXAGESIMA SEPTIMA.

Exsecutusne es mandatum meum? — Exsecutus sum. — Exsecutusne est frater tuus mandatum, quod ego ei mandavi (*or* mandaveram)? — Exsecutus est. — Visne mihi mandatum aliquod exsequi? — Ego tibi tam multis officiis obligatus (obstrictus) sum, ut mandata tua semper exsecuturus sim (*or* exsequi paratus sim), quandocunque tibi mihi aliquid mandare placebit (placeat). — Quære (*or* Percunctare) ex mangone, utrum mihi equum pretio, quod ei indicaverim (pollicitus sim), dimittere possit. — Certe scio (mihi persuasum est), fore, ut contentus esset, si tu aliquot thaleros amplius adderes (*or* adjicere tibi placeret). — Nihil amplius adjiciam (Nolo quidquam amplius addere). — Si mihi eum illo pretio dimittere possit, ut hoc faciat (*or* facito hoc); sin minus, eum retineat. — Salvete mane, liberi mei! Absolvistisne pensum vestrum imperatum? — Bene scis (*or* Te non præteriit), nos id nunquam non absolvere; nam nos ægroti simus necesse est, ut non absolvamus (*or* peragere negligamus). — Quid nobis hodie faciendum imperas? — Imperabo (Mandabo) vobis pensum nonagesimum ediscendum, et dictata, quæ eo pertineant, absolvenda (scribenda); hæc sunt centesima duodeseptuagesima et (atque) centesima undeseptuagesima. — Facite (*or* Cavete), ne quidquam peccetis! — Sufficitne tibi hicce panis? — Mihi sufficeret (Satis esset), ni (nisi) vehementer esurirem. Quando frater tuus in Americam conscendit? — Velum in altum dedit tricesimo mensis præteriti. — Pollicerisne mihi, te ad fratrem tuum loqui (locuturum)? — Tibi polliceor; ne dubita (*or* factum puta). — In fide tuâ requiesco. — Laborabisne diligentius pro (in, de) penso proximo, quam pro hocce (*or* hodierno) laboravisti? — Laborabo diligentius. — Licetne mihi (*or* Possumne) hoc confidere? — Factum putare tibi licet. — Fac, ut æquo sis animo, amice mi carissime, neve tristis sis; nam tristitia nihil emendat. — Tu creditores tuos ne metuas (vereare); persuasum tibi sit, fore, ut tibi nullam injuriam inferant. — Adhibenda est tibi patientia; solvam tibi, quodcunque mihi pecuniæ mutuum dedisti. — Cave credas, me hoc oblitum esse; nam id in animo verso quotidie. — Cave credas, me horologium portabile tuum aureum tenuisse, neque dominam Wilhelminam pyxidem tuam argenteam tenuisse; nam ego utrumque in sororis tuæ ma-

nibus tum videbam (perspiciebam), quum concentui adesses. — Quam pulchrum atramentarium tibi hic est! Quæso, id mihi commodes. — Quid eo facere vis? — Cupio id sorori meæ ostendere. — Accipe (id); sed tibi curæ sit, et cave frangas (*or* ne frangatur). — Ne timeas. — Quid a fratre meo postulas? — Pecuniam ab eo mutuam sumere cupio. — Sume ab alio (Fac *or* Cura, ut ab alio petas). — Si mihi mutuam dare nolit (*or* recuset), ab alio petam. — Bene (prudenter) facies. — Cave cupias (*or* Ne cupieris), quod possidere tibi non liceat (*or* quod habere nequeas), sed fac contentus sis eo, quod providentia divina tibi dederit, et reputa, multos inveniri (esse) homines, qui, quod tu possideas, non habeant. — Vita cum brevis sit, enitamur et contendamus, ut eam, quam gratissimam (jucundissimam) possimus, faciamus (reddamus). — Ecquid tu pensa tua imperata absolvisti (*or* dictata tua scripsisti)? — Absolvere ea non potui, cum frater meus domi non esset (propterea, quod frater meus non domi erat). — Non te oportet pensa tua imperata fratri tuo peragenda (facienda) mandare; sed absolvenda sunt tibi ipsi.

168. DICTATA CENTESIMA DUODESEPTUAGESIMA.

Ecquid discipuli tui dictata (exercitia) sua ediscunt (memoriæ mandant)? — Potius ea lacerare, quam ediscere (memoriæ mandare), malunt. — Quid poscit a me hicce homo? — Pecuniam, quam ei debes, a te postulat. — Si cras mane se domum meam conferet, solvam ei, quod ei debeam. — Pecuniam suam perdere potius, quam eo se conferre, mavult. — Carolus Quintus, qui compluribus linguarum Europensium profluente celeritate utebatur, dicere solebat, loquendum esse nobis (*or* nos colloqui debere *or* oportere) Hispanice cum diis, Italice cum nostrā amiculā, Francogallice cum nostro amico, Germanice cum militibus, Anglice cum anseribus, Bohemice denique cum diabolo. — Quid est, cur mater famuli nostri veteris lacrimas effundat? Quidnam ei accidit? — Ea idcirco lacrimat, quod clericus vetus, amicus ejus, qui ei tam multa beneficia tribuerat (*or* tribuisset), pluribus abhinc diebus diem suum obiit (obierit). — Quo morbo (ille) mortuus (absumptus) est? — Apoplexiā correptus est. — Ecquid tu patrem tuum in litteris suis scribendis adjuvisti? — Vero, eum adjuvi. — Visne me adjuvare (mihi operam tuam commodare)

in operando, quum (quando) in urbem inibimus? — Adjuvabo te operari, si me, unde vivam (*or* ad sumptum), quæritare adjuvabis. — Percontatusne es de mercatore, qui tam vili vendit? — Etiam, de eo percontatus sum; sed nemo mihi dicere potuit, quid de eo factum sit (esset). — Ubi habitabat, quum tu abhinc tres annos hac regione esses? — In viâ Carolinâ, numero quinquagesimo quinto, habitabat. — Quomodo tibi hoc vinum sapit? — Jucundissime (*or* admodum jucunde) sapit; sed aliquantum acerbius (acidulum) est. — Accepistine jam Cæsaris et Ciceronis opera? — Ego Cæsaris tantum (*or* sola) adhuc accepi; quod ad Ciceronis attinet, ego ea hebdomade proximâ accipere exspecto (spero). — Quomodo sorori tuæ mala illa sapiunt? — Jucundissime ei sapiunt (Maxime ea quidem appetit); tamen ea aliquantulo dulciora esse affirmat. — Visne esse tam benignus, ut mihi scutulam illam porrigas? — Magnâ cum voluntate (*or* Libentissime). — Visne me tibi hosce pisces porrigere? — Gratias tibi agam (*or* Gratum mihi facies), si mihi eos porriges. — Oportetne me sorori tuæ panem porrigere (præbere *or* deferre)? — Gratissimum mihi facies, si porriges. — Quomodo mater tua cibaria nostra appetit? — Valde ea appetit; ait autem se satis manducasse (*or* se cibo satiatam esse). — Quid me rogas? — Visne tam benignus esse, ut mihi frustulum (carnis) illius vervecinæ des? — Visne mihi, quæso, lagenam illam porrigere? — Nondumne satis bibisti (*or* potu satiatus es)? — Nondum; nam adhuc sitio. — Visne me tibi poculum vino implere (*or* poculum infundere)? — Non; vinum ex malis confectum præopto. — Cur non manducas? — Nescio, quid edam (manducem). — Quis ostium (januam) pulsat? — Peregrinus aliquis est. — Quid (*or* Quâ de causâ) lacrimat? — Lacrimat (flet) propterea, quod magnam calamitatem acceperit. — Quid tibi accidit? — Nihil mihi accidit. — Quo ibis hodie vesperi? — Non scio, quo eam (Quo eam, nescio). — Quo ibunt fratres tui? — Nescio, quo ituri sint; quod ad me attinet, ego in theatrum ibo (iturus sum). — Quam ob rem in urbem is? — Ego illo libros comparatum eo (*or* Eo illo, ut aliquot libros coëmam *or* librorum coemendi causâ). — Visne unâ mecum illo ire? — Volo tecum unâ ire; nescio autem, quid ibi faciam. — Oportetne me (Licetne mihi) homini illi die cæcâ vendere? — Par est, ut ei vendas, sed non die cæcâ; cave, ne ei confidas (credas); nam tibi debita non solvet. — Ecquem jam fraudavit (Fraudavitne jam aliquem)? — Fraudavit (Fefellit) vero jam complures mercatores, qui ei confisi erant

(qui ei crediderant *or* in diem vendiderant). — Oportetne mĕ mulieribus illis nobilibus confidere (credere)? — Licet tibi iis credere (in diem vendere); sed quod ad me attinet, ego eis non credam; sæpius enim ego a mulieribus falsus sum; en causa, cur dico, nos non cuivis credere oportere. — Confiduntne (Creduntne) tibi illi mercatores? — Confidunt mihi, et (sicut) ego iis confido. — Quā de causā homines illi nos deridĕnt (risos habent)? — Risos nos habent, quod male loquamur. — Quid tu rides? — Pileum tuum (De pileo tuo) rideo.

169. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNDESEPTUAGESIMA.

Ubi tu dominam illam cognovisti (vidisti)? — Ego eam apud quemdam de cognatis meis cognovi (vidi). — Tun' es, Carole, qui librum meum inquinasti? — Non ego sum; sororcula tua est, qui eum inquinavit. — Quis atramentarium meum pulchrum fregĭt? — Ego sum, qui (id) fregi. — Vosne illi estis, qui de me locuti estis? — Nos ii sumus, qui de te locuti sumus; sed nisi bonum nihil de te diximus. — Quā de causā consobrinus tuus me pecuniam atque libros rogat (poscit, postulat)? — Quia stultus est; a me, qui propinquissimā ei cognatione conjunctus suique amicissimus sum, nihil postulat. — Quin tu ad cœnam venisti? — Retardatus sum; sed (tamen) sine me cœnare potuistis. — Numquid putas (arbitraris), nos non cœnaturos, nisi sit, ut tu venire possis (*or* si tu venire non possis)? — Quo usque (temporis) me opperiebamini (*or* me exspectabatis)? — Nos te usque ad quadrantem horæ post septimam exspectabamus (opperiebamur); et, quoniam non veniebas (venisti), nos sine te cœnavimus. — Propinastisne mihi salutem? — Etiam, salutem nos et tibi et parentibus tuis propinavimus. — Homo quidam vini cupidissimus erat; sed (tamen) in eo duas malas qualitates inveniebat. "Si aquam ei adfundo," inquiebat, "ego id corrumpo (perdo), sin vero non (nihil) adfundo, me corrumpit (perdit)." — Quali specie est patruus tuus? — Hilarissimam speciem præ se fert; nam liberi ejus ei valde opprobantur (liberos suos valde approbat). — Ecquid amici ejus tam hilares esse videntur (tam hilarem speciem præbent), quam ipse? — Immo illi potius tristem speciem habent (præ se ferunt) propterea, quod sorte suā non contenti sunt. — Patruus meus pecuniā caret (pecuniam non habet), et tamen contentissimus est; sed

amici ejus, qui (*or* quanquam) grandem (*or* copiam ejus) habent, tamen vix unquam contenti sunt. — Diligisne sororem tuam? — Ego eam valde (maxime) diligo, et quoniam ea erga me officiosissima (benignissima) est, ego erga eam pariter (similiter *or* non minus) sum; tu autem quomodo tuam diligis? — Nos inter nos amamus (*or* alter alterum amamus) propterea, quod inter nos contenti sumus (*or* probamur). — Estne consobrinus tuus tibi consimilis? — Est mihi consimilis. — Ecquid sorores tuæ inter se consimiles sunt? — Non consimiles sunt inter se (Mores altera alterius non referunt); nam maxima earum natu ignava malisque moribus est, minima natu autem (e contra) assidua atque erga omnes humana (officiosa, benigna) est. — Quis pulsat ostium (januam, fores)? — Ego sum; tun' recludere vis? — Quid optas? — Venio te postulatum pecuniam, quam mihi debes, et libros, quos ego tibi commodavi. — Si tam benignus esse vis, ut cras venias, ego tibi utraque reddam (restituam). — Perspicisne domum illam? — Perspicio; quid domūs est? — Deversorium est; inibimus (intrabimus), si tibi collibitum est, ut scyphum vini bibamus (scyphum vini potatum); sum enim valde sitiens (nam valde sitio). — Tu semper (nunquam non) sitis, quum (*or* quotiescunque) deversorium vides. — Si intramus, ego tibi poculum propinabo. — Ego potius non bibere, quam deversorium quodvis inire, malo. — Quando mihi solves, quod mihi debes (debeas)? — Quum (*or* Simul ut) pecuniam habebo; me hodie aliquid postulare nihil prodest (inutile est); nam te non præterit (*or* fugit), nihil ab illo, qui nihil possideat (habeat), esse impetrandum. — Quando tibi pecuniam futuram arbitraris? — Credo (spero) fore, ut mihi anno proximo nonnulla sit. — Vis perficere (*or* Perficiesne) id, quod ego tibi dicam (dicturus sim)? — Perficiam, si non nimis est difficile. — Cur me rides (irrides, risum habes)? — Non te, sed togam tuam risum habeo. — Tuæ nonne specie consimilis est? — Non consimilis est; mea enim curta, tua longior est; mea nigra, tua viridis est.

170. DICTATA CENTESIMA SEPTUAGESIMA.

Numquid æquum (justum) est, te tali modo unumquemque irridere (*or* ut hunc ad modum omnes risos habeas)? — Ego, si togam (vestem) tuam derideo, non eā de causā omnes irrideo. — Ecquid filius tuus alicui (cuiquam) facie consimilis

est? — Non est similis ulli (Nemini consimilis est). — Quin (= Cur non) bibis? — Haud scio, quid bibam; nam ego bonum vinum appeto, et tuum aceto simile est. — Si aliud (*or* de alio) habere vis, in doliarium descendam, ut tibi ejus aliquantum apportem. — Benigne dicis (Jam gratia est), domine; ego hodierno tempore nihil amplius bibam. — Estne jam diu, ex quo tibi pater meus notus est? — Est vero jam diu; nam eum cognovi, quum scholam adhuc frequentabam. — Sæpe nos alter pro altero laborabamus; nam fratrum more (velut *or* tanquam fratres) inter nos amabamus. — Credo; nam inter vos consimiles estis. — Quandocunque ego pensa mea imperata non peregissem (dictata mea non scripsissem), is ea meâ vice peragebat (scribere solebat), et quum ille sua peragere neglexisset, ego ea ejus vice (pro eo) peragebam. — Cur pater tuus medicum adduci jubet? — Ægrotus est, et, quoniam medicus non venit, eum adduci (arcessi) jubet. — Succensetne (Iratusne est) tibi ille homo? — Eum idcirco mihi succensere (iratum esse) arbitror, quia ad eum visere non eam; sed ego domum ejus nisi invitus nunquam frequento; nam quum eum convenio (visito), tantum abest, ut me benigne (comiter) excipiat, ut torvis oculis me intueatur (intueri soleat). — Ne credas, eum tibi iratum esse; nam non is malus est, qui esse videatur. Homo omnium præstantissimus est (*or* Vir tam bonus, ut qui optimus, est), sed eum cognoscas oportet, ut eum diligas carumque habeas. — Magnum discrimen est inter vos (Pernimium interest inter vos); tu omnibus ad te visere venientibus arrides, ille autem eos torvis oculis excipere solet. — Cur tu hominibus illis familiariter uteris? — Ego iis idcirco familiariter utor, quod mihi utiles (usui) sunt. — Si familiariter iis uti pergis (Si consuetudinem cum iis continuas), tu rixis pessimis implicaberis, nam multos sibi inimicos habent. — Quomodo se gerit consobrinus tuus? — Se minus (*or* parum) honeste gerit; semper enim rixas aliquas in se conflat (perpetuo se jurgiis aliquibus implicat). — Tu nonne aliquando rixas malas in te conflas? — Verum quidem est, me nonnunquam in angustum venire; tamen ego semper me rursus expedio (extrico). — Videsne illos homines, qui nos adire velle videntur? — Vero, eos video, sed eos non metuo; nocent enim nemini. — Abeundum est nobis; nam ego me hominibus, quos ignoro, non libenter immisceo. — Ne eos timeas, te obsecro; nam patruum meum inter eos perspicio. — Notusne tibi est locus aliquis ad nandum opportunus? — Notus mihi est aliquis. — Ubi est (situs

est)? — Ultra fluvium, pone versus silvam, juxta viam publicam situs est. — Quando nos nare (natare) ibimus? — Hodie vesperi, si tibi collibet. — Visne me opperiri ante urbis portam? — Te ibidem opperiar (expectabo); sed te oro atque rogo, ne hoc obliviscare. — Non te fugit, me promissorum meorum nunquam oblivisci. — Monuistine fratrem tuum, ne hodie scriberet? — Vero, eum et monui et hortatus sum. — Quis pervicit? — Cæsar et mari et terrâ pervicit. — Non modo pervicit, sed etiam triumphavit. — Loquiturne Latine? — Loquitur vero tum Græce tum Latine. — Potestne epistolam scribere (Num epist. scribere scit)? — Immo vero epistolam non modo (non) scribere, sed vix legere potest (scit).

171. DICTATA CENTESIMA UNA ET SEPTUAGESIMA.

Ah, actum est de me! — Sed, pro Juppiter! quam ob rem tu tantum clamas (tantum clamorem edis *or* tollis)? — Ego anulis meis aureis, vestimentis meis optimis, atque omni meâ pecuniâ despoliatus sum; en causa (hæc est causa), cur clamem. — Ne tantum tumultuere, quæso; nam nos ii sumus, qui tibi omnia hæc abstulerimus, ut te tua (res tuas) melius custodire (curare), et cubiculi tui ostium domo exeuntem claudere (observare) edoceamus. — Cur tu tam tristis videris (tam tristi vultu es)? — Multa ego mala expertus (perpessus) sum; quum omnes meas pecunias perdidissem, ego ab hominibus humili specie (*or* deformibus) verberatus sum, et cum majore meâ calamitate ego nunc patruum meum, virum optimum, quem ego tantopere amo (a me tantopere amatum), apoplexiâ correptum esse cognosco. — Ne tantopere doleas (Noli tanto in mœrore esse); nam veniam necessitati dare nos oportet, nec tu verbum (adagium) illud ignoras: "Factum fieri infectum non potest." — Potesne illum hominem dimittere (absolvere, ablegare)? — Dimittere eum non possum; nam me utique (*or* præfracte) consectari vult. — Mente captus est. — Quid a te postulat? — Vendere mihi vult equum, quem ego non desidero. — Cujus hæ domus sunt? — Meæ sunt. — Tuæne hæ pennæ sunt? — Non, sororis meæ sunt. — Suntne hæ pennæ, quibus illa tam belle scribit? — Eædem (*or* Ipsæ) sunt. — Quis, quem accusas, homo est? — Ille est, qui togam rubram gestat. — "Quid interest inter horologium portabile et me?" hæc quæsivit femina quædam nobilis a præfecto militari.

"Domina mea," ille respondit, "horologium portabile horas indicat, et te coram nos earum obliviscimur." — Rusticus quidam Russus, qui nullos unquam asinos conspexisset, complures eorum forte in Germaniâ videns, "Mehercule," inquit, "quanti equi hac in terrâ inveniuntur!" — Quam multis beneficii vinculis ego tibi devinctus sum, amice mihi carissime! Tu me a morte servasti (Tu salutis meæ auctor es)! Sine tuâ operâ actum fuit (= fuisset) de me! — Ecquid tibi homines illi deperditi injuriam intulerunt? — Vero, me verberibus ceciderunt atque despoliarunt; et quum tu mihi succurreres (subvenires), in eo erant, ut me exuerent et occiderent. — Gaudeo hoc, quod te ex manibus illorum latronum eripui (*or* me te ex manib., &c., eripuisse). — Quam humanus es! — Adibisne ad amicum tuum hodie vesperi? — Ibo fortasse (*or* Nescio an iturus sim). — Ibuntne et sorores tuæ? — Ibunt fortasse (*or* Haud scio an ituræ sint). — Ecquid tibi concentus hesternus arridebat (probabatur *or* placebat)? — Parum mihi arridebat, aderat enim ibi tanta vis hominum, ut intrare vix possemus. — Affero tibi bellum munusculum, quod tibi valde arridebit (quod valde probabis). — Quid est? — Focale sericum (bombycinum) est. — Ubi est? — Id in marsupio meo teneo. — Placetne tibi (Ecquid tibi arridet)? — Vero, mihi valde arridet (maxime placet), et ego tibi gratiam pro eo refero, quantam maximam animus capere potest. — Spero, fore, ut tu quoque tandem aliquid a me accipias. — Quid mihi dare cogitas? — Hauddum tibi dicam; nam si tibi dicam, minorem inde voluptatem percipies (habebis) tum, quum tibi dabo. — Quam ob rem illi homines inter se rixantur? — Inter se propterea rixantur, quod, quid sibi faciendum sit, nesciunt. — Contigitne iis, ut flammas extinguerent? — Etiam, tandem quidem iis contigit; dicitur autem plures domos igni deletas esse (sed complures domus incendio deflagravisse dicuntur). — Nihilne quidquam ex flammis servare (eripere) potuerunt? — Nihil servare potuerunt; homines enim illi perditi, qui advolaverant, non modo flammas non extinguebant, sed prædari etiam cœperant. — Cur profectus est amicus noster sine me? — Te usque ad duodecimam horam opperiebantur, et quoniam non veniebas (venire negligebas), profecti sunt sine te.

172. DICTATA CENTESIMA ALTERA ET SEPTUAGESIMA. (EPISTOLÆ.)

1. M. T. C. C. CURIONI S. D.*

Gravi teste privatus sum amoris summi erga te mei, patre tuo, clarissimo viro: qui cum suis laudibus, tum vero te filio, superasset omnium fortunam, si ei cantigisset, ut te ante videret, quam a vitā discederet. Sed spero nostram amicitiam non egere testibus. Tibi patrimonium dii fortunent! Me certe habebis, cui et carus æque sis, et jucundus, ac fuisti patri. Vale.

2. M. T. C. TERENTIÆ S. P. D.

Si vales, bene est; valeo. Nos neque de Cæsaris adventu, neque de litteris, quas Philotimus habere dicitur, quidquam adhuc certi habemus. Si quid erit certi, faciam te statim certiorem. Valetudinem tuam fac ut cures. Vale.

3. M. T. CICERO TERENTIÆ SUÆ S. P. D.

In Tusculanum nos venturos putamus aut Nonis, aut postridie. Ibi ut sint omnia parata. Plures enim fortasse nobiscum erunt, et, ut arbitror, diutius ibi commorabimur. Labrum si in balneo non est, ut sit. Item cetera, quæ sunt ad victum et ad valetudinem necessaria. Vale.

4. M. T. C. ACILIO PROC.(ONSULI) S. P. D.

Hippiam, Philoxeni filium, Calactinum, hospitem et necessarium meum, tibi commendo in majorem modum. Ejus bona, quemadmodum ad me delata est res, publice possidentur alieno nomine, contra leges Calactinorum. Id si ita est, etiam sine meā commendatione ab æquitate tuā res ipsa impetrare debet, ut ei subvenias. Quoquo modo autem se res habet, peto a te, ut honoris mei causā eum expedias, tantumque ei commodes et in hac re et in ceteris, quantum tua fides dignitasque patietur. Id mihi vehementer gratum erit.

* Marcus Tullius Cicero Gajo Curioni salutem dicit.

5. M. T. C. ALLIENO PROCOS. S. P. D.

Et te scire arbitror, quanti fecerim C. Avianum Flaccum: et ego ex ipso audieram, optimo et gratissimo homine, quam a te liberaliter esset tractatus. Ejus filios dignissimos illo patre, meosque necessarios, quos ego unice diligo, commendo tibi sic, ut majore studio nullos commendare possim. C. Avianus in Siciliâ est. Marcus est nobiscum. Ut illius dignitatem præsentis ornes, rem utriusque defendas, te rogo. Hoc mihi gratius in istâ provinciâ facere nihil potes. Idque ut facias, te vehementer etiam atque etiam rogo. Vale.

6. M. T. C. TERENTIÆ SUÆ S. D.

S. V. B. E. V. Si quid haberem, quod ad te scriberem, facerem id et pluribus verbis, et sæpius. Nunc quæ sint negotia, vides. Ego autem quomodo sim affectus, ex Leptâ et Trebatio poteris cognoscere. Tu fac, ut tuam et Tulliæ valetudinem cures. Vale.

7. M. CICERO S. D. TREBATIO.

Legi tuas litteras; ex quibus intellexi, te Cæsari nostro valde jureconsultum videri. Est quod gaudeas, te in ista loca venisse, ubi aliquid sapere viderere. Quodsi in Britanniam quoque profectus esses, profecto nemo in illâ tantâ insulâ peritior te fuisset. Verumtamen * * * subinvideo tibi, ultro te etiam arcessitum ab eo, ad quem ceteri, non propter superbiam ejus, sed propter occupationem, adspirare non possunt. Sed tu in istâ epistolâ nihil mihi scripsisti de tuis rebus, quæ mehercule mihi non minori curæ sunt, quam meæ. Valde metuo, ne frigeas in hibernis. Quamobrem camino luculento utendum censeo. Idem Mucio et Manilio placebat; præsertim qui sagis non abundares; quamquam vos nunc istic satis calere audio; quo quidem nuntio valde mehercule de te timueram. Sed tu in re militari multo es cautior, quam in advocationibus; qui neque in Oceano natare volueris, studiosissimus homo natandi, neque spectare essedarios, quem antea ne Andabatam quidem defraudare poteramus. Sed jam satis jocati sumus. Ego de te ad Cæsarem quam diligenter scripserim, tute scis; quam sæpe, ego. Sed mehercule jam intermiseram, ne viderer liberalissimi hominis meique amantissimi voluntati ega me diffidere. Sed tamen his litteris, quas proxime dedi, putavi esse hominem commonendum. Id feci. Quid

profecerim, facias me velim certiorem, et simul de toto statu tuo consiliisque omnibus. Scire enim cupio, quid agas, quid exspectes, quam longum istum tuum discessum a nobis futurum putes. Sic enim tibi persuadeas velim, unum mihi esse solatium, quare facilius possim pati, te esse sine nobis, si tibi esse id emolumento sciam; sin autem id non est, nihil duobus nobis est stultius: me, qui te non Romam attraham, te, qui non huc advoles. * * * Quare omnibus de rebus fac ut quam primum sciam. Aut consolando, aut consilio, aut re juvero.

THE END.